





12520890R



NLM 05087634 6

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE













**PATHOLOGICAL PHYSIOLOGY  
OF INTERNAL DISEASES  
FUNCTIONAL PATHOLOGY**







# PATHOLOGICAL PHYSIOLOGY OF INTERNAL DISEASES

## FUNCTIONAL PATHOLOGY

BY

ALBION WALTER HEWLETT, M.D., B.S.

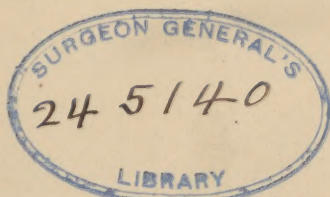
PROFESSOR OF MEDICINE, STANFORD MEDICAL SCHOOL

FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF INTERNAL MEDICINE AND

DIRECTOR OF CLINICAL LABORATORY, UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

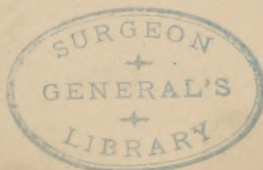


WITH ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY-ONE ILLUSTRATIONS IN TEXT



NEW YORK AND LONDON  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

1923



QZ  
4  
HG12p  
1923

Film No. 4969, no. 2

COPYRIGHT, 1916, 1923, BY  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY ✓

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

APR 25 '23 ✓  
©CIA705090 ✓

no 2



## Preface

The study of disease from the functional standpoint has progressed rapidly in recent years. Advances in physiology, biochemistry, immunology and experimental pathology, as well as the careful and systematic study of patients, have thrown much new light upon disturbances of function. To the physician these advances have been of increasing significance. Not only have they served to interpret the clinical pictures with which he comes in contact, but they have pointed the way to new diagnostic methods and have furnished new indications for treatment.

The present book deals with those changes in function that are presented by patients suffering from internal diseases. The rapid progress in this field and the fact that it has been attacked from so many points of view make its presentation by a single individual one of peculiar difficulty. It is to be hoped, however, that a selection and discussion of topics by one whose primary interest lies in the clinic will prove of value to those who are also dealing with patients.

In order to make the presentation more brief and more readable, historical and controversial matter has in general been omitted and the author has often expressed an arbitrary opinion on still debatable subjects. For more complete discussions the reader is referred to the larger monographs and reviews cited at the end of each chapter. In these, summarized accounts of the earlier literature will be found. Additional references, mainly to recent literature, have also been cited, and for the benefit of those who do not read foreign languages preference has been given to articles that have appeared in English.

A. W. HEWLETT





## Preface to Second Edition

Since the appearance of the first edition, no field of internal medicine has been more diligently cultivated than that which deals with the functional changes observed in disease. For this reason many additions and corrections appear in the present edition. This is particularly true of the sections which deal with cardiac arrhythmias, cyanosis, traumatic shock, metabolic rate, vitamins, respiratory disturbances, protein hypersensitiveness, acute hemorrhage and the endocrine diseases. A chapter on the functional aspects of organic nervous diseases has been added.

A. W. HEWLETT

STANFORD MEDICAL SCHOOL





# Contents

## Chapter I. The Circulation

	PAGE
<b>Heart</b> . . . . .	2
Dynamics of the Heart Muscle . . . . .	2
Isometric and Isotonic Contraction . . . . .	2
Reaction to Varying Arterial Resistance . . . . .	6
Reaction to Varying Inflows . . . . .	7
Influence of Heart Rate . . . . .	9
Normal Heart Shadow in Man . . . . .	10
Incompleteness of Ventricular Systole . . . . .	11
Dynamics of Weakened Heart. . . . .	12
Causes of Cardiac Weakness . . . . .	15
Fatigue . . . . .	15
Functional Insufficiency . . . . .	16
Anatomical Changes in the Myocardium . . . . .	16
Cardiac Dilatation . . . . .	17
Hypertrophy of the Heart . . . . .	19
Weight of the Heart . . . . .	19
Strength of the Hypertrophied Muscle . . . . .	21
Work of the Heart . . . . .	22
Effects of Exercise upon the Circulation . . . . .	22
Exercise and Cardiac Hypertrophy . . . . .	29
Valvular Lesions . . . . .	30
Aortic Stenosis . . . . .	31
Aortic Insufficiency . . . . .	33
Mitral Stenosis . . . . .	35
Mitral Insufficiency . . . . .	37
Valvular Lesions of the Right Heart . . . . .	38
Congenital Heart Lesions . . . . .	40
Combined Valvular Lesions . . . . .	41
Effect of Some Extraneous Factors upon the Heart . . . . .	41
Arterial Hypertension . . . . .	41
Pulmonary Disease . . . . .	42
Plethora, Anemia, etc. . . . .	44

	PAGE
Compensation and Decompensation . . . . .	45
Compensation . . . . .	45
Causes of Broken Compensation . . . . .	46
Effects of Decompensation . . . . .	48
Disturbances of Cardiac Rate and Rhythm . . . . .	49
Fundamental Properties of the Heart Muscle . . . . .	49
Refractory Period . . . . .	50
The Pacemaker of the Heart . . . . .	50
Sinus Node . . . . .	50
Tawara's Node and His Bundle . . . . .	51
Heart Muscle and Nerves . . . . .	52
Clinical Methods for Studying the Cardiac Mechanism . . . . .	52
Mechanical Methods . . . . .	52
Electrical Methods . . . . .	54
Sinus Variations in Rate and Rhythm . . . . .	57
Normal Heart Rate . . . . .	58
Sinus Tachycardias . . . . .	58
Sinus Bradycardias . . . . .	60
Sinus Arrhythmias . . . . .	61
Disturbances of Conduction . . . . .	63
Sino-auricular Block . . . . .	63
Auriculoventricular Block . . . . .	64
Lengthened $A_s$ - $V_s$ Interval . . . . .	64
Partial Block . . . . .	64
Complete Heart Block . . . . .	65
Nervous Control of Idioventricular Rate . . . . .	66
Causes of Auriculoventricular Block . . . . .	66
Nervous and Toxic . . . . .	66
Organic Causes . . . . .	68
Ectopic Beats, Extrasystoles . . . . .	68
Homogenetic Beats and Rhythms . . . . .	68
Heterogenetic Beats . . . . .	70
Auricular Extrasystoles . . . . .	70
Auriculoventricular Extrasystoles . . . . .	71
Ventricular Extrasystoles . . . . .	71
Interpolated Ventricular Extrasystoles . . . . .	72
Retrograde Extrasystoles . . . . .	72
Recurrence of Extrasystoles . . . . .	74
Pathogenesis of Extrasystoles . . . . .	74
Paroxysmal Tachycardia . . . . .	76
Auricular Paroxysms . . . . .	77
Auricular Flutter . . . . .	78



	PAGE
Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	80
Pulse Deficit in Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	83
Digitalis and Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	83
Permanent and Paroxysmal Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	83
Relation of Fibrillation to Ectopic Auricular Beats . . . . .	84
Pathogenesis of Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	85
Ventricular Fibrillation . . . . .	87
Pulsus alternans . . . . .	88
Heart Sounds and Heart Murmurs . . . . .	90
Changes in Loudness and Quality . . . . .	90
Split Sounds . . . . .	91
Accessory Heart Sounds . . . . .	92
Gallop Rhythm . . . . .	92
Valvular Murmurs . . . . .	94
Accidental Murmurs . . . . .	96
Some Manifestations of Heart Disease . . . . .	96
Cyanosis . . . . .	96
Congenital Heart Disease . . . . .	97
Cardiac Edema . . . . .	98
Pulmonary Edema . . . . .	99
Cardiac Sensations . . . . .	100
Palpitation . . . . .	100
Cardiac Pain . . . . .	101
<b>The Blood Vessels . . . . .</b>	<b>103</b>
Physiological Consideration . . . . .	103
Transient Arterial Hypertension . . . . .	107
Chronic Arterial Hypertension . . . . .	109
Relation to Renal Disease . . . . .	110
Immediate Cause of Chronic Hypertension . . . . .	111
Arterial Changes . . . . .	111
Secondary Lesions . . . . .	113
Hypotension . . . . .	114
Syncope . . . . .	115
Effects of Hemorrhage . . . . .	116
Surgical and Traumatic Shock . . . . .	118
Circulatory Failure in the Infectious Diseases . . . . .	120
The Pulse Pressure . . . . .	122
Local Vascular Changes . . . . .	123
Form of the Arterial Pulse . . . . .	125
References . . . . .	129

## Chapter II. Digestion and Absorption

	PAGE
Disturbances in the Esophagus . . . . .	139
Physiological Considerations . . . . .	139
Mechanical Obstructions of the Esophagus . . . . .	140
Spastic Obstructions . . . . .	141
Cardiospasm . . . . .	141
Atony of the Esophagus . . . . .	143
Insufficiency of the Cardiac Sphincter . . . . .	143
Aërophagia . . . . .	144
Esophageal Diverticula . . . . .	145
Disturbances of Gastric Secretion . . . . .	146
Physiological Considerations . . . . .	146
Stimulants to Gastric Secretion . . . . .	146
Nervous Secretion . . . . .	147
Chemical Secretion . . . . .	147
Properties of the Gastric Juice . . . . .	147
Hyperacidity and Hypersecretion . . . . .	148
Relation of Hyperacidity to Gastric Motility . . . . .	149
Effect of Hyperacidity on Gastric Digestion . . . . .	150
Symptoms of Hyperacidity . . . . .	150
Causes of Hyperacidity . . . . .	151
Hypersecretion . . . . .	152
Achlorhydria and Related Conditions . . . . .	152
Relation to Gastric Motility . . . . .	153
Effect on Gastric and Intestinal Digestion . . . . .	153
Symptoms of Achlorhydria . . . . .	154
Causes of Achlorhydria . . . . .	155
Excessive Secretion of Mucus . . . . .	156
Disturbances of Gastric Motility . . . . .	156
Physiological Considerations . . . . .	156
The Control of the Pylorus . . . . .	158
Gastric Motility in Secretory Disturbances . . . . .	160
Gastric Atony . . . . .	161
Nature of Atony . . . . .	161
Effect on Gastric Position . . . . .	162
Effect on Gastric Motility . . . . .	162
Etiology of Atony . . . . .	162
Pyloric Obstruction . . . . .	163
Causes . . . . .	163
Effect on Motility . . . . .	163
Acute Dilatation of the Stomach . . . . .	164

	PAGE
Vomiting . . . . .	166
Mechanism . . . . .	166
Causes of Vomiting . . . . .	167
Continuous Vomiting . . . . .	168
Gastric Motility after Gastro-enterostomy . . . . .	168
Peptic Ulcer . . . . .	170
Pathogenesis . . . . .	170
Relation to Gastric Secretion . . . . .	171
Vascular Disease . . . . .	172
Nervous Theories . . . . .	173
Infectious and Toxic Causes . . . . .	174
Conclusion . . . . .	174
Motor Activities of the Stomach in Ulcer . . . . .	174
Carcinoma of the Stomach . . . . .	176
Effects on Gastric Form and Motility . . . . .	176
Effects on Gastric Digestion . . . . .	176
Gastric Sensations . . . . .	178
Appetite, Hunger and Repletion . . . . .	178
Gastric Pain . . . . .	180
The Intestines . . . . .	182
Functions of the Small Intestines . . . . .	182
Functions of the Large Intestines . . . . .	183
The Exclusion of Pancreatic Juice from the Intestines . . . . .	184
The Exclusion of Bile from the Intestines . . . . .	187
Disturbances in the Functions of the Intestinal Mucosa . . . . .	188
Motor Disturbances of the Intestines . . . . .	189
Physiological Considerations . . . . .	189
Small Intestines . . . . .	189
Large Intestines . . . . .	190
Chronic Constipation . . . . .	192
Pathogenesis of Constipation . . . . .	193
Lack of Normal Stimuli . . . . .	193
Mechanical Causes . . . . .	194
Functional Motor Disturbances . . . . .	194
(a) Rectal Stasis . . . . .	195
(b) Ascending Stasis . . . . .	196
(c) Transverse Stasis . . . . .	196
(d) Ileal Stasis . . . . .	197
Symptoms of Constipation . . . . .	197
Diarrhea . . . . .	198



	PAGE
Pathogenesis of Diarrhea . . . . .	198
Excess of Stimuli . . . . .	198
Increased Irritability of the Intestines . . . . .	199
Motility Changes in Diarrhea . . . . .	199
Intestinal Obstruction . . . . .	200
Motor Disturbances . . . . .	200
General Symptoms . . . . .	201
Intestinal Paresis . . . . .	202
Intestinal Pain . . . . .	203
Intestinal Auto-intoxication . . . . .	204
References . . . . .	208

### Chapter III. The Metabolism

<b>The Energy Metabolism . . . . .</b>	<b>215</b>
Methods of Study . . . . .	215
The Rate of Metabolism . . . . .	217
Physiological Variations in a Given Individual . . . . .	217
(a) Muscular Exercise . . . . .	217
(b) Effect of Food . . . . .	220
The Basal Metabolism . . . . .	221
Normal Basal Metabolism . . . . .	221
Pathological Variations in the Basal Metabolism . . . . .	223
Obesity . . . . .	225
Obesity and Endocrine Disease . . . . .	227
Effect on Body Functions . . . . .	229
Starvation . . . . .	230
Partial Inanition . . . . .	233
<b>The Protein Metabolism . . . . .</b>	<b>234</b>
The Protein-building Stones . . . . .	235
Amino Acid Requirements of the Body . . . . .	238
Nitrogenous Equilibrium . . . . .	240
Protein Requirements of the Body . . . . .	240
Protein Starvation . . . . .	242
Excessive Protein Destruction . . . . .	242
Autolysis . . . . .	243
Imperfect Decomposition of Amino Acids . . . . .	245
Hepatic Disease, etc. . . . .	245
Cystinuria . . . . .	246
Diaminuria . . . . .	246
Alcaptonuria . . . . .	247
Ochronosis . . . . .	248
Melanin . . . . .	248

	PAGE
Diseases Due to Deficient Diets . . . . .	249
Inorganic Salts . . . . .	250
Vitamins . . . . .	251
Vitamin A . . . . .	251
Beriberi and Vitamin B . . . . .	252
Scurvy and Vitamin C . . . . .	253
Rickets . . . . .	254
Pellagra . . . . .	254
Some Disturbances in the Lipoids . . . . .	254
Lipemia . . . . .	254
Fatty Degeneration . . . . .	256
Local Cholesterol Deposits . . . . .	258
Acidosis . . . . .	259
Formation of Acids in the Body . . . . .	259
Lactic Acid . . . . .	259
The Neutrality of the Blood . . . . .	260
(1) Buffer Property of the Body Fluids . . . . .	260
(2) Elimination of Acids . . . . .	261
(3) Increased Ammonia Formation . . . . .	262
Definition of Acidosis . . . . .	262
Evidence of Acidosis . . . . .	263
Symptoms of Acidosis . . . . .	265
References . . . . .	265

## Chapter IV. Disturbances in Carbohydrate Metabolism

### Diabetes

General Considerations . . . . .	270
Hypoglycemia . . . . .	272
Renal Glycosurias . . . . .	272
Phlorhizin Glycosuria . . . . .	273
Other Renal Glycosurias . . . . .	275
Renal Glycosurias in Man . . . . .	276
Alimentary Glycosuria and Related Conditions . . . . .	276
Alimentary Glycosuria . . . . .	276
Alimentary Levulosuria . . . . .	280
Alimentary Galactosuria . . . . .	281
Glycosuria from Discharge of the Glycogen Reservoirs . . . . .	282
Nervous Glycosurias . . . . .	282
Glycosuria from Central Disease . . . . .	283
Emotional Glycosuria . . . . .	283
Glycosuria from Disease of the Hypophysis . . . . .	284
Epinephrin Glycosuria . . . . .	284

	PAGE
Toxic Glycosurias . . . . .	286
Diabetes Mellitus, Pancreatic Diabetes . . . . .	286
Experimental Pancreatic Diabetes . . . . .	287
The Pancreas in Human Diabetes . . . . .	288
Hyperglycemia in Diabetes . . . . .	290
Classification of Diabetes . . . . .	291
Derivation of Sugar in Diabetes . . . . .	292
Carbohydrates . . . . .	293
Proteins . . . . .	294
The D: N Ratio . . . . .	295
Fats . . . . .	297
Energy Requirements in Diabetes . . . . .	297
Energy Supply in Diabetes . . . . .	298
Glycogen in Diabetes . . . . .	299
Respiratory Quotient in Diabetes . . . . .	300
Effects of Exercise . . . . .	301
Theories of Diabetes . . . . .	301
Symptoms and Complications of Diabetes . . . . .	303
Emaciation and Polyphagia . . . . .	303
Polyuria and Thirst . . . . .	303
Diminished Resistance to Infection . . . . .	304
Nutritional Changes . . . . .	305
The Acetone Bodies . . . . .	305
Diabetic Coma . . . . .	305
Conditions in which Acetone Bodies Occur . . . . .	306
Interrelationship of the Acetone Bodies . . . . .	308
Derivation of the Acetone Bodies . . . . .	309
Cause of Diabetic Coma . . . . .	313
Pentosuria . . . . .	314
References . . . . .	314

## Chapter V. The Purin Metabolism. Gout

Normal Purin Metabolism . . . . .	321
Catabolism of Nucleoproteins . . . . .	321
Sources of Purin Bodies . . . . .	322
Conversion of the Purin Bodies . . . . .	322
Normal Excretion of Uric Acid . . . . .	324
Increased Purin Metabolism . . . . .	325
The Purin Metabolism in Gout . . . . .	325
Etiology of Gout . . . . .	325
Uric Acid Excretion in Gout . . . . .	326



	PAGE
Uric Acid in the Blood . . . . .	327
Local Deposits of Urates . . . . .	329
Cause of the Acute Attacks . . . . .	329
Effect of Cinchophen . . . . .	330
Theory of Gout . . . . .	331
References . . . . .	333

## Chapter VI. The Liver and Pancreas

<b>Functions of the Liver . . . . .</b>	<b>335</b>
Disturbances in the Secretion of Bile . . . . .	336
Important Constituents of the Bile . . . . .	336
Bile Pigments . . . . .	336
Bile Salts . . . . .	337
Cholesterol . . . . .	337
Jaundice . . . . .	337
Obstructive Jaundice . . . . .	338
Hemolytic Jaundice . . . . .	339
Catarrhal Jaundice—Infectious Jaundice . . . . .	340
Jaundice in Organic Liver Disease . . . . .	342
Icterus neonatorum . . . . .	342
Symptoms of Jaundice . . . . .	343
Functional Disturbances of the Hepatic Cells . . . . .	344
Urobilin in Hepatic Disease . . . . .	345
Carbohydrate Metabolism in Hepatic Disease . . . . .	347
Nitrogenous Metabolism in Hepatic Disease . . . . .	347
Other Functional Disturbances in Hepatic Disease . . . . .	349
Fibrinogen . . . . .	349
Blood Lipase . . . . .	349
Elimination of Phenoltetrachlorphthalein . . . . .	350
Cholemia . . . . .	350
Gall-stones . . . . .	351
Frequency . . . . .	351
Composition and Structure . . . . .	351
Pathogenesis of Gall-stones . . . . .	352
Secondary Infections in Cholelithiasis . . . . .	354
Biliary Colic . . . . .	354
 <b>Diseases of the Pancreas . . . . .</b>	 <b>355</b>
Fat Necroses . . . . .	355
Acute Hemorrhagic Necrosis of the Pancreas . . . . .	356
References . . . . .	357

## Chapter VII. Disturbances of Respiration

	PAGE
<b>Respiration Proper</b> . . . . .	360
The Dead Space . . . . .	360
Changes in Lung Volume . . . . .	362
The Regulation of Pulmonary Ventilation . . . . .	363
Afferent Nervous Stimuli . . . . .	363
Hydrogen Ion Regulation . . . . .	363
Other Changes in the Respiratory Center . . . . .	364
Transportation of Gases in the Blood . . . . .	365
Periodic Breathing . . . . .	367
Respiration and Acid Intoxication . . . . .	375
Respiration at High Altitudes . . . . .	376
Mountain Sickness . . . . .	376
Increased Atmospheric Pressure . . . . .	380
Caisson Disease . . . . .	380
Diminished Oxygen-carrying Capacity of the Blood . . . . .	382
Carbon Monoxid Poisoning . . . . .	382
Methemoglobinemia . . . . .	383
Anemia . . . . .	383
Cardiorespiratory Disease . . . . .	385
Short-circuiting the Pulmonary Circulation . . . . .	386
Stenosis of the Upper Air Passages . . . . .	388
Bronchial Asthma . . . . .	389
Pulmonary Emphysema . . . . .	391
Respiration in Cardiac Disease . . . . .	395
Cardiac Dyspnea . . . . .	396
Cardiac Asthma . . . . .	399
Orthopnea . . . . .	400
<b>Diseases of the Pleura</b> . . . . .	400
Pleural Pain . . . . .	400
Pleuritic Effusions . . . . .	402
Pneumothorax . . . . .	404
Open . . . . .	404
Closed . . . . .	405
Valvular . . . . .	405
<b>Protective Respiratory Mechanisms</b> . . . . .	408
Mechanical . . . . .	408
Cilia . . . . .	408
Smooth Muscle . . . . .	409
Coughing . . . . .	409
References . . . . .	411

# Chapter VIII. Disturbances of Kidney Function

	PAGE
Physiological Considerations . . . . .	416
Polyuria . . . . .	417
Diabetes insipidus . . . . .	420
Oliguria—Anuria . . . . .	424
Anuria . . . . .	426
Albuminuria . . . . .	428
Physiologic Albuminurias . . . . .	428
Pathologic Causes of Albuminuria . . . . .	431
Cylindruria . . . . .	432
Experimental Nephritis . . . . .	433
Retention of Nitrogenous Waste Products . . . . .	436
Non-protein Nitrogen in the Blood . . . . .	438
Retention of Individual Nitrogenous Products . . . . .	441
Nitrogen Waste in the Tissues . . . . .	442
Symptoms of Nitrogenous Retention . . . . .	442
Relation to Other Renal Functions . . . . .	442
Prognosis . . . . .	445
Salt Retention. Nephritic Edema . . . . .	445
Normal Relations . . . . .	445
Salt Retention in Nephritis . . . . .	447
Differences Between Salt and Nitrogenous Retentions . . . . .	452
Symptoms of Salt Retention . . . . .	452
Dry Retention . . . . .	453
Sodium Bicarbonate Edema . . . . .	453
Primary Water Retention . . . . .	453
Renal and Extrarenal Factors . . . . .	454
Relation of Edema to other Nephritic Manifestations . . . . .	456
Acidosis and Renal Disease . . . . .	456
Renal Function in Heart Disease . . . . .	459
Renal Function in Eclampsia . . . . .	460
Uremia . . . . .	460
Uremia with Marked Nitrogenous Retention . . . . .	461
Uremia without Marked Nitrogenous Retention . . . . .	463
Renal Calculi . . . . .	464
Precipitation of Sales in the Urine . . . . .	464
Composition of Calculi . . . . .	464
Hydronephrosis . . . . .	466
Experimental Production . . . . .	466
Etiology in Man . . . . .	466
Symptoms . . . . .	468
Renal Pain . . . . .	468
References . . . . .	469



**Chapter IX. Disturbances of Heat Regulation—Fever**

	PAGE
Physiological Variations in the Temperature of the Body . . .	477
(a) In Different Animals . . . . .	477
(b) Normal Variations of Temperature in Man . . . . .	477
Regulation Against Overheating and Overcooling . . . . .	479
Normal Regulation of Body Temperature . . . . .	479
Regulation against Overheating . . . . .	479
Sunstroke . . . . .	482
Regulation against Overcooling . . . . .	484
Freezing . . . . .	485
Effect of Spinal Cord Section . . . . .	486
The Conception of Fever . . . . .	488
Types of Fever . . . . .	488
Heat Regulation in Fever . . . . .	489
Sudden Changes of Temperature . . . . .	489
Continuous Fever . . . . .	490
Imperfect Heat Regulation in Fever . . . . .	492
Metabolism in Fever . . . . .	493
Nitrogenous Metabolism . . . . .	493
Non-nitrogenous Metabolism . . . . .	495
Salt and Water Retention . . . . .	496
Acidosis . . . . .	496
Causes of Fever . . . . .	499
Lesions of the Central Nervous System . . . . .	499
Simple Chemical Substances . . . . .	501
Injection of Foreign Protein . . . . .	501
Infections . . . . .	502
Significance of Fever . . . . .	503
References . . . . .	505

**Chapter X. Infection and Immunity**

<b>Conception of Infection . . . . .</b>	<b>510</b>
General Considerations . . . . .	510
Local and General Infections . . . . .	511
Septicemia . . . . .	512
Acute and Chronic Infections . . . . .	513
The Portals of Entry . . . . .	514
Skin . . . . .	514
Mucous Membranes Near Body Surface . . . . .	515
Gastro-intestinal Canal . . . . .	516
Respiratory Passages . . . . .	517

	PAGE
Defensive Properties of Infectious Microorganisms . . . . .	518
Virulence . . . . .	518
Offensive Properties of Infectious Microorganisms . . . . .	520
Ptomaines . . . . .	520
Soluble Toxins . . . . .	520
Endotoxins . . . . .	521
Non-specific Protein Poisons . . . . .	521
Immunity, Resistance and Susceptibility . . . . .	521
Natural Immunity . . . . .	522
Naturally Acquired Immunity . . . . .	524
Artificially Acquired Immunity . . . . .	526
Active Immunity . . . . .	526
Passive Immunity . . . . .	529
Mechanism of Antitoxic Immunity . . . . .	530
Toxin and Antitoxin . . . . .	530
Neutralization of Toxin by Antitoxin . . . . .	531
Formation of Antitoxin . . . . .	533
Bactericidal Properties of Blood Serum . . . . .	535
Amboceptor and Complement . . . . .	537
Isohemolysin Autohemolysin . . . . .	538
Specificity of Cytolysins . . . . .	539
Immunity and the Bactericidal Properties of the Blood Serum . . . . .	540
Complement Fixation . . . . .	541
Agglutination . . . . .	543
The Precipitin Reaction . . . . .	546
Phagocytosis . . . . .	547
General Principles . . . . .	547
Chemotaxis in Higher Animals . . . . .	549
Phagocytosis in Higher Animals . . . . .	550
Relation of Phagocytosis to Immunity . . . . .	551
Opsonins . . . . .	552
Bacterial Resistance to Phagocytosis . . . . .	553
Anaphylaxis and Protein Sensitization . . . . .	554
Specificity of Anaphylaxis . . . . .	555
Anaphylactic Reaction in Different Animals . . . . .	556
Guinea-pig . . . . .	556
Rabbit . . . . .	556
Dog . . . . .	557
Passive Anaphylaxis . . . . .	559
Desensitization . . . . .	560
Theory of Anaphylaxis . . . . .	560

	PAGE
Human Reactions to Foreign Protein . . . . .	562
The Reactions after Intravenous Injections . . . . .	563
Serum Sickness . . . . .	565
Diseases Dependent upon Hypersensitiveness . . . . .	568
Hypersensitiveness Due to Infection . . . . .	570
The Tuberculin Reaction . . . . .	570
Some Phenomena of Infection . . . . .	572
Cause of Symptoms . . . . .	572
Soluble Toxins . . . . .	572
Substances Derived from Bacterial Disintegration . . . . .	573
Substances Derived from the Host . . . . .	573
Incubation Period . . . . .	573
Anaphylactic Fever . . . . .	575
Circulatory Changes . . . . .	575
Other Analogies between Infection and Protein Intoxication . . . . .	575
Specificity of Infections . . . . .	576
References . . . . .	576

## Chapter XI. The Blood

<b>Functions of the Blood . . . . .</b>	<b>580</b>
Quantity of Blood . . . . .	580
Plethora . . . . .	582
Oligemia . . . . .	582
Hydremia . . . . .	583
Coagulation, Thrombosis and the Hemorrhagic Diseases . . . . .	586
Extravascular Clotting . . . . .	586
Thrombosis . . . . .	587
Hemorrhagic Diseases with Reduction in Blood Platelets . . . . .	590
Hemophilia . . . . .	592
Hemorrhagic Diseases from Diminished Fibrinogen . . . . .	594
Other Hemorrhagic Conditions . . . . .	594
Pathology of Red Blood Corpuseles . . . . .	595
Increased Destruction Hemolysis . . . . .	595
Rate of Destruction . . . . .	595
Types of Destruction . . . . .	596
Manifestations of Increased Destruction . . . . .	596
Causes of Hemolysis . . . . .	598
1. Hemolysis by Hypotonic Salt Solutions . . . . .	598
2. Lipoids and Lipoidal Solvents . . . . .	599
3. Snake Venom . . . . .	599
4. Bacterial Hemolysins . . . . .	599



	PAGE
5. Hemolysis by Specific Immune Sera . . . . .	599
6. Non-immune Sera . . . . .	600
Paroxysmal Hemoglobinuria . . . . .	601
Blackwater Fever . . . . .	602
Hemoglobinuria from Other Causes . . . . .	603
Methemoglobin and Red Cell Destruction . . . . .	603
Increased Destruction of Erythrocytes without Evident Signs	603
Regeneration of Red Corpuscles . . . . .	604
Clinical Evidence of Increased Regeneration . . . . .	604
Anatomical Evidence of Increased Regeneration . . . . .	605
The Stimulus to Regeneration . . . . .	605
Types of Regeneration . . . . .	606
Anemia . . . . .	607
General Considerations . . . . .	607
Classification of Anemias . . . . .	608
Anemia from Hemorrhage . . . . .	609
Simple Toxic Anemia . . . . .	611
Megaloblastic Toxic Anemias . . . . .	612
Pernicious Anemia . . . . .	613
Other Megaloblastic Anemias . . . . .	615
Pathogenesis of Pernicious Anemia . . . . .	616
Anemias from Defective Red Cell Formation . . . . .	617
Aplastic Anemia . . . . .	617
Chronic Hemolytic Jaundice . . . . .	618
Family Hemolytic Jaundice . . . . .	618
Acquired Hemolytic Jaundice . . . . .	619
Pathogenesis . . . . .	619
Relation of Spleen to Anemia . . . . .	620
Effect of Splenic Excision on Normal Animals . . . . .	620
Splenic Anemia and Related Conditions . . . . .	621
Effect of Splenectomy upon Pathological Hemolysis . . . . .	622
Chlorosis . . . . .	623
Polycythemia . . . . .	624
Classification . . . . .	624
Symptomatic Polycythemia . . . . .	625
Cyanosis . . . . .	625
Altitude . . . . .	625
Intoxications . . . . .	626
Cryptogenic Polycythemias . . . . .	626
Pathogenesis of Polycythemia . . . . .	627
The Transfusion of Blood . . . . .	629
Dangers of Transfusion . . . . .	629
(a) Hemolysis . . . . .	629

	PAGE
(b) Agglutination . . . . .	629
(c) Coagulation and Protein Intoxications . . . . .	630
Beneficial Effects of Transfusion . . . . .	631
Pathology of the Leukocytes . . . . .	632
Classification and Origin . . . . .	632
Classification . . . . .	632
Origin . . . . .	633
Some Biological Properties of the Leukocytes . . . . .	634
Chemotaxis . . . . .	634
Ferments . . . . .	634
Leukocytosis and Leukopenia . . . . .	635
Physiological Leukocytoses . . . . .	635
Pathological Leukocytoses . . . . .	635
(a) Neutrophilic Leukocytoses . . . . .	635
(b) Eosinophilic Leukocytoses . . . . .	636
(c) Lymphocytoses . . . . .	638
(d) Increases in the Large Mononuclears and Transi- tionals . . . . .	638
Leukopenia . . . . .	639
Pathogenesis of Leukocytoses . . . . .	639
Pathogenesis of Leukopenia . . . . .	640
Leukemia and Allied Conditions . . . . .	640
General Considerations . . . . .	640
Chronic Myeloid Leukemia . . . . .	641
Chronic Lymphatic Leukemia . . . . .	642
Acute Leukemia . . . . .	642
Chloroma . . . . .	643
Etiology of Leukemia . . . . .	643
Hodgkin's Disease . . . . .	645
References . . . . .	646

## Chapter XII. The Glands of Internal Secretion

<b>The Chemical Regulation of Body Functions . . . . .</b>	<b>655</b>
General Considerations . . . . .	655
The Endocrine Glands . . . . .	656
Evidences of Internal Secretion . . . . .	656
Types of Glandular Disturbance . . . . .	657
Disturbances of the Thyroid Gland . . . . .	658
Hypothyroidism . . . . .	658
Myxedema of Adults . . . . .	658
Mild Types of Hypothyroidism . . . . .	660

	PAGE
Sporadic Cretinism . . . . .	660
Relation of the Thyroid to Sporadic Cretinism and	
Myxedema . . . . .	661
Hyperthyroidism . . . . .	663
Experimental Hyperthyroidism . . . . .	663
(1) Effects of Thyroid Administration . . . . .	663
(2) Thyroid Stimulation . . . . .	664
Toxic Goiters . . . . .	664
Manifestations . . . . .	665
Pathogenesis of Exophthalmic Goiter . . . . .	668
Etiology of Toxic Goiter . . . . .	670
The Active Principle of Thyroid Secretion . . . . .	671
Endemic Cretinism, Endemic Goiter and the Goiter Heart . . . . .	671
Endemic Cretinism . . . . .	671
Endemic Goiter . . . . .	672
The Goiter Heart . . . . .	672
The Parathyroids . . . . .	673
Symptoms of Tetany . . . . .	673
Experimental Tetany after Parathyroidectomy . . . . .	674
Metabolism in Tetany . . . . .	674
Etiology of Tetany in Man . . . . .	675
Parathyroid Medication . . . . .	676
The Thymus and the Status Lymphaticus . . . . .	677
Effect of Thymus Excision . . . . .	677
Thymic Asthma and Thymic Death . . . . .	677
The Thymus in Graves' Disease . . . . .	677
Status Lymphaticus . . . . .	678
The Pituitary Gland . . . . .	678
Action of Pituitary Extracts . . . . .	679
Anterior Lobe Feeding . . . . .	679
Experimental Hypopituitarism . . . . .	680
Fröhlich's Syndrome and Related Conditions . . . . .	680
Acromegaly . . . . .	682
Other Types of Pituitary Disease . . . . .	683
The Pineal Gland . . . . .	684
Somatic Changes in Pineal Tumors . . . . .	684
The Adrenals . . . . .	685
Epinephrin . . . . .	685
Excision of the Adrenals . . . . .	688
Addison's Disease . . . . .	688
Hyperfunction of the Adrenals . . . . .	689
Internal Secretion of the Sex Glands . . . . .	690

Interrelations of the Internal Secretions . . . . .	PAGE 691
References . . . . .	692

## Chapter XIII. The Nervous System

<b>General Considerations . . . . .</b>	696
Disturbances of Sensation . . . . .	697
Disturbances of Common Sensation . . . . .	698
Irritative Sensory Symptoms . . . . .	705
Disturbances of Smell . . . . .	706
Disturbances of Taste . . . . .	707
Disturbances of Vision . . . . .	709
Disturbances of Hearing . . . . .	715
Disturbances of Equilibrium . . . . .	716
Disturbances of Motility . . . . .	718
<b>Paralysis and Paresis . . . . .</b>	720
Lower Neuron Paralysis . . . . .	721
Upper Neuron Paralysis . . . . .	722
Mixed Types of Paralysis . . . . .	723
Motor Apraxia . . . . .	723
Irritative Motor Symptoms . . . . .	725
Fibrillary Twitchings . . . . .	725
Myoclonic Contractions . . . . .	725
Convulsions . . . . .	726
Motor Disturbances Referable to the Corpora Striatum . . . . .	728
Ataxia . . . . .	730
Ataxia from Lack of Afferent Control . . . . .	731
Cerebellar Ataxia . . . . .	732
<b>Visceral Nervous System . . . . .</b>	733
Nervous Disturbances of the Internal Organs . . . . .	736
Cerebrospinal Fluid . . . . .	738
Hydrocephalus . . . . .	741
References . . . . .	743



## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.	PAGE
1.—Curve Showing the Relation of the Initial Length to the Tension and Energy Set Free During an Isometric Twitch of a Voluntary Muscle . . . . .	3
2.—Voluntary Muscle Working Under Conditions Similar to Those Imposed Upon the Heart Muscle . . . . .	4
3.—Schematic Relation Between the Volume and the Intraventricular Pressure During Systole and Diastole . . . . .	5
4.—Effect of Raising and Lowering the Arterial Resistance Upon the Volume and Output of the Ventricles in the Heart-lung Preparation . . . . .	6
5.—The Effect of Altering the Venous Supply to the Heart in the Heart-lung Preparation . . . . .	8
6.—Schematic Representation of the Relation Between the Normal and Weakened (Atonic) Heart Muscle . . . . .	13
7 & 8.—Compensatory and Excessive Dilatation from Raising the Blood Pressure in a Heart-lung Preparation . . . . .	14
9.—Effect of Bicycle Riding Upon the Pulse Rate and the Systolic Blood Pressure . . . . .	23
10.—The Effect of Bicycle Riding Upon the Blood Flow per Minute, the Pulse Rate and the Systolic Output at Each Beat . . . . .	24
11.—Shows the Effect of a Short Hard Run (100 Yards) Upon the Pulse Rate and the Blood Pressures . . . . .	25
12.—Effect of Bicycle Riding Upon the Blood Flow in the Arm of Man . . . . .	26
13.—The Blood Pressures and Pulse Rates Immediately After a Series of Graded Exercises . . . . .	27
14.—Effect of Exercise Upon the Size of the Heart . . . . .	29
15.—Effect of Experimental Aortic Stenosis Upon the Intraventricular Pressure Curve . . . . .	32
15a.—Arterial and Left Ventricular Pressures in the Normal and in Aortic Insufficiency . . . . .	33
16.—Effect of Mitral Stenosis Upon Ventricular Filling . . . . .	35
17.—Orthodiagrams of Normal Heart Shadow (Left) and of Heart Showing a Marked Dilatation of the Left Auricle Caused by Mitral Stenosis . . . . .	36
18.—Diagram of the Specialized Heart Tissues . . . . .	51
19.—Normal Venous Pulse Showing a Well Marked h Wave . . . . .	53
20.—Normal Electrocardiograms . . . . .	55
21.—Effect of Left Ventricle Preponderance and of Right Ventricle Preponderance . . . . .	55
22.—Effect of Conduction Changes in Branches of the His Bundle . . . . .	56
23.—Respiratory Irregularity in a Young Adult. The Waves are Normal . . . . .	61
24.—Respiratory Irregularity in a Young Adult. Lead III . . . . .	62
25.—Sino-auricular Block . . . . .	63
26.—Lengthened V-s-As Interval (About 0.37 Second) . . . . .	64
27.—Partial Heart Block . . . . .	65
28.—Complete Heart Block . . . . .	66
29 & 30.—Electrocardiogram from a Patient with Complete Heart Block . . . . .	67
31.—Rhythm Proceeding from the Upper Part of the A-V Node with Transition to Normal Rhythm . . . . .	69
32.—Rhythm Proceeding from the A-V Node with Transition from the Normal Rhythm . . . . .	69
33.—Auricular Extrasystole . . . . .	70
34.—Ventricular Extrasystoles . . . . .	72
35.—Interpolated Ventricular Extrasystole . . . . .	73

FIG.	PAGE
36.—Retrograde Extrasystole . . . . .	73
37.—Transition from a Normal Rhythm to a Pulsus bigeminus which Is Caused by the Regular Occurrence of a Ventricular Extrasystole After Each Normal Beat . . . . .	74
38.—Paroxysmal Tachycardia with Transition to a Normal Rhythm . . . . .	77
39.—Auricular Flutter. Lead III . . . . .	79
39a.—Auricular Flutter. Lead II . . . . .	79
40.—Auricular Flutter. The Ventricles Have Assumed the Full Auricular Flutter Rate . . . . .	79
41.—Auricular Fibrillation with Rapid Ventricular Action . . . . .	81
42.—Auricular Fibrillation with Slow Ventricular Action . . . . .	81
43.—Coarse Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	82
44.—Pulsus alternans . . . . .	89
45.—Electric Records of Heart Sounds . . . . .	90
46.—A Record of Auricular Sounds in a Case of Complete Heart Block . . . . .	93
47.—Change in the Murmur of Mitral Stenosis During Paroxysmal Auricular Fibrillation . . . . .	95
48.—Usual Distribution of the Pain and Sensory Disturbances in Angina Pectoris . . . . .	102
49.—The Effect of Intermittent Anuria Due to Malignant Disease Upon the Blood and Blood Pressure . . . . .	109
50.—Curve of Blood Flow through the Submaxillary Gland . . . . .	117
50a.—The Central Carotid Pulse of the Dog . . . . .	126
51.—The Carotid (Upper) and the Peripheral Arterial Pulse (Lower) . . . . .	126
52.—Sustained Volume Pulse in the Arm of Man . . . . .	127
53.—Pointed Volume Pulse in the Arm of Man during Fever . . . . .	127
54.—Dicrotic Pulse in Fever . . . . .	127
55.—Markedly Collapsing Pulse of Aortic Insufficiency . . . . .	128
56.—Kinematographic Records of the Gastric Outlines in Man Showing the Progress of the Peristaltic Waves a, b, and c, d . . . . .	157
57.—Tracings of the Shadow Cast by the Cat's Stomach at Hour Intervals After a Meal . . . . .	159
58.—Diagrams Showing the Filling of the Normal, Orthotonic Stomach (Upper Line) and of the Atonic Stomach (Lower Line) . . . . .	161
59.—Diagram Showing the Filling of a Dilated Atonic Stomach Caused by Pyloric Obstruction from Ulcer . . . . .	164
60.—Record of Hunger Contractions of the Human Stomach . . . . .	179
61.—Areas of Referred Pain as Given by Head . . . . .	181
61a.—Diagram Representing the Process of Rhythmic Segmentation . . . . .	189
62.—Metabolism in Calories Per Day Calculated for Men Engaged for 8 Hours . . . . .	219
62a.—Variations of Basal Metabolism with Age . . . . .	222
62b.—The Effect of Thyroid Medication on the Gaseous Metabolism of a Sporadic Cretin . . . . .	224
63.—Effect of Complete Starvation Upon the Body Weight, the Rate of Metabolism, the Tension of Carbon Dioxid in the Alveolar Air, and the Excretion of Ammonia in the Urine . . . . .	231
64.—Typical Curves of Growth of Rats Maintained on Diets Containing a Single Protein . . . . .	238
65.—Shows the Effect of Adding Tryptophan Alone and the Combination of Tryptophan and Lysin to Diets Containing Zein as the Sole Protein . . . . .	239
66.—The Necessity of Certain Lipins for Normal Growth . . . . .	252
67.—Daily Output of Endogenous Uric Acid in a Gouty Patient Showing a Marked Increase During the Acute Paroxysms . . . . .	326
68.—Effect of Administration of 3 gm. Cinchophen at 9 A. M. on the Uric Acid in the Urine and Blood . . . . .	331
69.—Diagram Showing (a) Diverticulum of Vater Containing a Calculus and (b) Separate Entrance of Common Bile Duct (de) and of Duct of Wirsung (dw) Into the Duodenum . . . . .	357

FIG.	PAGE
70.—Curves Showing the Saturation of Hemoglobin with Oxygen at Different Oxygen and Carbon Dioxid Pressures . . . . .	365
71.—Tracing Showing Typical Cheyne-Stokes Respiration . . . . .	368
72.—Biot's Breathing . . . . .	368
73.—The Alveolar Tension of Oxygen . . . . .	370
74.—Variations in Systolic Blood Pressure During Cheyne-Stokes Respiration . . . . .	373
75.—Irregular Breathing During an Acute Increase of Intracranial Pressure Induced Experimentally . . . . .	374
76.—Curves of Hemoglobin Dissociation When Lactic Acid is Added to Sheep's Blood . . . . .	376
77.—The Effect of Reduced Atmospheric Pressure Upon the Tension of Alveolar Gases . . . . .	377
77a.—The Effect of Residence in a High Altitude Upon the Alveolar Tension of CO <sub>2</sub> and O <sub>2</sub> . . . . .	378
78.—Comparison of the Degree of Cyanosis and the Percentage of Hemoglobin Unsaturated in Arterial Blood . . . . .	387
79.—Pulmonary Distention During Asthma . . . . .	389
80.—The Pulmonary Volume of Emphysematous Patients as Compared with a Normal Individual . . . . .	393
80a.—Chart Showing the Percentile Increase in Tidal Air per Minute when the Percentage of Inspired Carbon Dioxid is Raised . . . . .	394
80b.—Pulmonary Volumes in Cardiac Disease . . . . .	397
81.—Distribution of Pain Elicited on Touching the Diaphragmatic Pleura . . . . .	401
82.—Intrapleural Pressures in a Medium Sized Dog When Varying Amounts of Physiological Salt Solution Were Injected Into the Right Pleural Cavity . . . . .	403
83.—Closed Pneumothorax Showing the Movements of the Mediastinum and Diaphragm During Respiration . . . . .	406
84.—Artificial Polyuria in Rabbits Produced by Water . . . . .	420
85.—Diabetes insipidus . . . . .	421
85a.—The Effect of the Injection of Pituitary Extract Upon the Hourly Excretion of Urine in a Case of Diabetes Insipidus . . . . .	423
86.—The Effect of Intermittent Anuria Due to Malignant Disease Upon the Blood and the Blood Pressure . . . . .	427
87.—Normal Lordosis in a Boy 12 Years Old . . . . .	430
88.—Excessive Lordosis in a Boy 12 Years Old . . . . .	430
89.—Excessive Lordosis in a Young Girl . . . . .	430
90.—The Same Girl as in the Previous Figure, Showing Correction of the Lordosis by Placing One Foot on a Stool . . . . .	431
91.—Chronic Nephritis . . . . .	437
92.—Chronic Nephritis . . . . .	437
93.—Effect of Ingestion of a Large Quantity of Urea by a Normal Individual . . . . .	440
94.—Diagram Showing the Excretion of Phenolsulphoncphthalein and the Accumulation of Non-protein Nitrogen and of Urea Nitrogen in the Blood of a Rabbit During an Acute Nephritis Induced by Uranium Salts . . . . .	443
95.—Curves Showing the Relation of Amylase Excretion . . . . .	444
96.—Normal Individual. Table Showing the Intake and Urinary Output of Water and Sodium Chlorid . . . . .	448
97.—Normal Individual. Table Showing the Intake and Urinary Output of Water and Sodium Chlorid . . . . .	449
98.—The Production and Relief of Edema in a Nephritic Patient by Varying the Salt Intake . . . . .	450
99.—The Effect of Administration of Salt to a Nephritic Patient with Insufficient Salt Elimination . . . . .	451
100.—The Relation Between the Level of Sodium Chlorid in the Blood of a Nephritic Patient and the "Calculated" Level that Would Be Expected in a Normal Individual Who Was Excreting the Same Quantity of Salt in the Urine . . . . .	455



FIG.	PAGE
100a.—Effect of Uranium on a Dog. Acute Followed by Chronic Nephropathy . . . . .	457
101.—Effect of Ingestion of Large Quantities of Urea Upon a Normal Individual . . . . .	462
102.—Hydronephrosis with Compression of the Ureter by Aberrant Renal Vessels . . . . .	467
103.—Fluctuations in Body Temperature of G. W. H. During Normal Day . . . . .	478
104.—Fluctuations in Body Temperature of G. W. H. on the Tenth Day of In- version of the Daily Routine (Night Work) . . . . .	478
105.—The Body Temperature of Birds . . . . .	478
106.—The Relation Between the Mouth Temperature and the Blood Flow in the Arm During a Hot Tub Bath . . . . .	481
107.—The Effect of External Temperatures Upon the Body Temperatures of Rabbits After Spinal Cord Section . . . . .	487
108.—The Relation of Sudden Changes in Febrile Temperature . . . . .	489
108a.—Basal Metabolisms and Body Temperatures in Fever . . . . .	490
109.—Excretion of Chlorids in Lobar Pneumonia . . . . .	497
110.—Uncomplicated Lobar Pneumonia with Recovery Showing the Water and Salt Metabolism . . . . .	498
111.—The Relation of Toxin to Antitoxin, According to Ehrlich . . . . .	533
112.—The Relation of Amboceptor to Antigen and to Complement, According to Ehrlich . . . . .	537
113.—The Relation of Sensitizer and Antigen to Complement as Given by Zinsser to Represent the View of Bordet . . . . .	538
114.—Schematic Representation of the Complement-Fixation Reaction . . . . .	541
115.—Schematic Representation of the Formation and Reaction of Precipitins According to Ehrlich . . . . .	545
116.—Typical Anaphylactic Lung in the Guinea-pig . . . . .	557
117.—Anaphylactic Shock in the Dog . . . . .	558
117a.—Composite Curves Showing the Temperature, the Leucocyte Count and the Blood Pressure after the Intravenous Injection of Typhoid Vaccine . . . . .	564
118.—The Incubation Period in Serum Disease . . . . .	574
119.—Hydremia Produced in a Nephritic Patient by the Administration of Sodium Chlorid . . . . .	584
120.—Hydremia During Lobar Pneumonia . . . . .	585
121.—Normal Bleeding Time . . . . .	591
122.—Prolonged Bleeding Time . . . . .	592
123.—Effect of a Single Hemorrhage Upon the Hemoglobin and Blood Volume of a Rabbit . . . . .	610
124.—Effect of Repeated Transfusions of Blood Upon the Hemoglobin and Blood Volume of a Rabbit . . . . .	631
125.—Experimental Eosinophilia Produced by Infecting Guinea-pigs with a Mod- erate Number of the Parasite . . . . .	636
126.—Effect Upon Eosinophils of an Overwhelming Infection of a Guinea-pig with Trichinae . . . . .	637
127.—Effect of Bacterial Infection Upon the Eosinophils . . . . .	638
128.—True Myxedema Before and After Thyroid Treatment . . . . .	659
129.—Same Patient as in Previous Figure, Before and After Treatment . . . . .	659
130.—True Myxedema Before and After Treatment . . . . .	659
131.—True Infantile Myxedema (Sporadic Cretinism) . . . . .	660
132.—Photograph of Cretin Lamb About One Year Old and of a Normal Lamb of Eleven Months . . . . .	661
133.—The Effect of Thyroid Medication Upon the Gaseous Metabolism of a Spo- radic Cretin . . . . .	662
134.—Exophthalmic Goiter . . . . .	666
135.—Fröhlich's Syndrome . . . . .	681
136.—Pituitary Dystrophy in a Man 40 Years Old . . . . .	682
137.—Acromegaly . . . . .	683
138.—Obesity and Overgrowth Presumably Due to a Pituitary Dystrophy . . . . .	684
139.—Typical Curve of Calories Following Adrenalin . . . . .	686



# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xxxi

Fig.	PAGE
140.—Reaction Following Injections of Epinephrin . . . . .	687
141.—Diagram Representing Two of the Chief Paths of Sensory Conduction in the Spinal Cord . . . . .	700
142.—Segmental or Radicular Innervation of the Skin . . . . .	702
143.—Areas of the Human Cortex . . . . .	704
144.—Schema of the Peripheral Connections of the Facial, Auditory, Trigeminal and Glossopharyngeal Nerves and the Sympathetic . . . . .	708
145.—Diagram Showing How Fibers Cross in the Optic Chiasm . . . . .	709
146.—Diagram to Represent the Localization of the Different Portions of the Visual Field in the Visual Cortex . . . . .	714
147.—The Semicular Canals of the Ear Showing Their Arrangement in the Three Planes . . . . .	717
148.—Diagram to Show the Paths through which the Motor Cells of the Spinal Cord Are Influenced . . . . .	719
149.—Representation of the Points on the Cortex of the Precentral Convolution of Man from which Movements of the Opposite Half of the Body Were Obtained by Electrical Stimulation . . . . .	721
150.—Diagram to Illustrate the Difference in the Reflex Arc in the Voluntary and the Sympathetic Nervous Systems . . . . .	733
151.—Diagram of the Autonomic or Vegetative Nervous System . . . . .	735



# Chapter I

## The Circulation

The blood acts as a transporting medium for the body. In it oxygen is carried from the lungs to the tissues and carbon dioxid is carried from the tissues to the lungs. Nutrient materials, absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, are delivered to various parts of the body for use or for storage, and waste products are carried from the tissues to the excretory organs. Not only does the blood act as a carrying medium for supplies and wastes, but it also serves as a means of communication between different parts of the body; for substances that enter the blood from one organ may exert a controlling influence upon the physiological activities of other parts of the body.

**Cardiovascular System.**—In order to perform these functions the blood must be kept in constant circulation through the various organs and tissues. This is accomplished by the cardiovascular system, the heart and the blood vessels. The *left ventricle* receives blood from the lungs and pumps it into the aorta. The great arteries that branch off from the aorta act as a distributing system for the different parts of the body. The finer branches in which these arteries terminate, i. e., the arterioles and capillaries, oppose a considerable resistance to the flow of blood by reason of their small caliber. For this reason blood is held back in the aorta and larger arteries under an increased pressure. This high arterial pressure makes it possible to furnish blood to the upper portions of the body and particularly to the brain. Furthermore, when an increased supply of blood is required in any particular organ, the vessels leading to this organ can be opened more widely than usual, so that the blood flows through that region with increased speed; just as the opening of a tap in a city water system causes an increased flow of water to that particular part of the system. Owing to the resistance offered to the flow of blood in the arterioles and capillaries, the pressure falls rapidly in these vessels and the pressure in the veins that enter the thorax is but little above the atmospheric pressure.

The *right ventricle* receives blood from the large veins of the body and pumps it through the pulmonary circuit, where it undergoes alterations in its content of oxygen and of carbon dioxid. In the lungs the capillaries are short and offer relatively little resistance to the flow of

blood through them. For this reason the pressure in the pulmonary artery is only about one-fourth that in the aorta. Furthermore, as all portions of the lungs possess the same function there is no need for variations in the distribution of blood to different parts of the pulmonary area, and so far as we know such variations do not occur under normal conditions.

**Ventricular Outputs.**—The amounts of blood pumped out by the two sides of the heart must in the long run be equal to each other. Were this not so, all of the blood would tend to accumulate either in the pulmonary or in the systemic vessels. Such a condition is obviously incompatible with life. Under normal conditions slight variations undoubtedly occur in the distribution of blood between the pulmonary and systemic circuits, and under pathological conditions these variations may be increased; but in all cases a stationary condition is soon reached in which each side of the heart again pumps out equal amounts of blood. When we consider the numerous physiological and pathological variations in the circulation, both as regards blood pressure and rate of blood flow, it is evident that some physiological adjustment must control the activities of the two sides of the heart, so that in the long run the output from the one shall always equal the output from the other.

## The Heart

### Dynamics of the Heart Muscle

The heart muscle is obviously capable of adjusting its contractions to varying conditions, both as regards the quantity of blood that is to be pumped and the arterial pressure against which this pumping must be done. The laws governing its contractions appear to be very similar to those which govern the response of an isolated voluntary muscle, such as the frog's gastrocnemius, when the latter is stimulated by a single electric shock applied to its nerve. Since the manner in which the heart adapts itself to different demands is relatively difficult to study, it seems advisable to consider, first, the factors that govern the contractions of an isolated voluntary muscle, and, then, to compare these with the factors that govern the heart muscle itself.

#### *Isometric and Isotonic Contractions*

Two types of muscular contraction must be distinguished. In the *first*, or *isometric contraction*, the ends of the muscle are fixed and no shortening can take place. The state of contraction expresses itself by an increased tension in the muscle. In the *second*, or *isotonic type* of



*contraction*, the tension of the muscle remains constant throughout and the state of contraction expresses itself by a shortening. In either case the contraction is accompanied by a more active metabolism in the muscle and an increased liberation of heat.

**Elasticity and Tension.**—In considering the behavior of the contracting muscle it is of great assistance to adopt the conception of Weber, that the condition of contraction involves a change in the elastic properties of the muscle. During its relaxed state the muscle can be stretched, within physiological limits, by a relatively light load. During its contracted state, on the other hand, the muscle can be stretched only by relatively heavy

loads. If the length be fixed, the change in elasticity during contraction increases the tension. If the tension be fixed, the change in elasticity shortens the muscle. Furthermore, there exists a definite relation between the length of the muscle and its tension in both the relaxed and the contracted state. This relation can be determined by causing the muscle to contract isometrically after it has been stretched to different initial lengths. The curves plotted from such a series of measure-

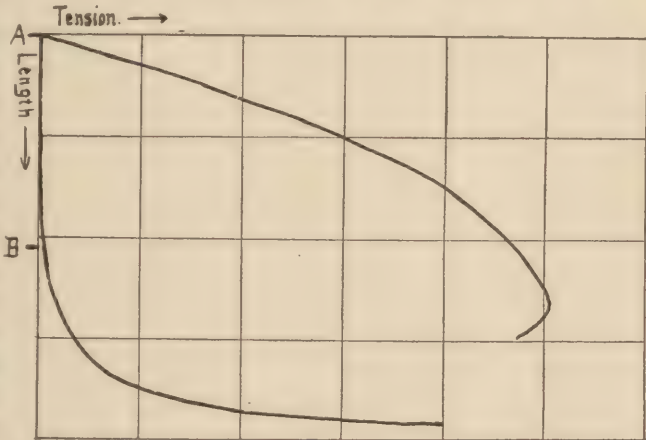


Fig. 1.—Curve Showing the Relation of the Initial Length to the Tension and Energy Set Free during an Isometric Twitch of a Voluntary Muscle. (A) Represents the Maximum Shortening of the Muscle and (B) Its Maximum Length in the Body. The Curve on the Left Represents the Relation between the Length and the Tension when the Muscle Is Relaxed. The Curve on the Right Represents This Relation when the Muscle Is Contracted. The Changes in Tension during an Isometric Contraction Are Represented by Horizontal Lines Drawn between the Two Curves at any Initial Length. The Changes in Length during an Isotonic Contraction Are Approximately Proportional to the Vertical Distance between the Two Curves. Note that Within Physiological Limits the Contractions of the Muscle Increase with its Initial Length. (Redrawn from a Figure of Patterson, Piper and Starling, Based on the Results of an Experiment of Blix, Jour. Physiol.)

ments are shown in Figure 1. It will be seen that when the muscle is relaxed, it may be stretched to and beyond its physiological length with but a slight increase of tension. When it is contracted, on the other hand, a considerable increase of tension accompanies each increase in length. The change in tension which occurs during any isometric contraction of the muscle is represented on this diagram by the horizontal distance between the two curves. It is evident that this change increases with each increase in the initial length of the muscle, up to and somewhat

beyond the normal physiological length of the muscle. The energy evolved during a contraction also becomes greater when the initial length of the muscle is increased.

**Isotonic Excursion.**—The height of isotonic contractions of the muscle at different initial lengths is also roughly represented on this diagram, for the height of a single twitch contraction is somewhat less than the vertical distance between the two curves. Within limits an increase in the initial length of the muscle will, therefore, cause a greater excursion of the ensuing contraction.

**Combined Contraction.**—The contraction of the cardiac muscle is neither a pure isometric contraction nor a pure isotonic contraction, but is a combination of the two. At the onset of ventricular systole the valves leading into the auricles close, and the first portion of the contraction takes place with a rise of intraventricular pressure, but with no expulsion of blood. It is an isometric contraction. When the intraventricular pressure rises sufficiently to open the semilunar valves, the left ventricle empties its contents more or less completely into the aorta, and at a pressure that corresponds approximately to the arterial blood pressure. The ventricular contraction at this time is predominantly an isotonic contraction.

The ventricular systole may be compared with the contraction of an "after-loaded" voluntary muscle, where the main weight is artificially supported during the muscular relaxation, but is lifted during its contrac-

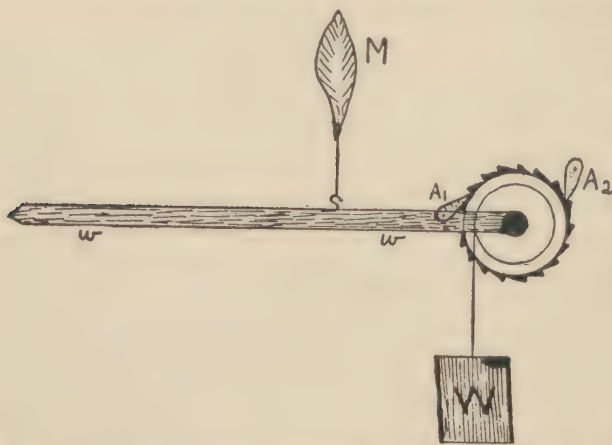


Fig. 2.—Voluntary Muscle Working under Conditions Similar to Those Imposed upon the Heart Muscle. During Relaxation It Is Stretched by the (Diastolic) Load ( $w$ ). During Its Contraction Its Tension Is First Increased without Shortening (Isometric Period). When the Tension Has Increased Sufficiently It Lifts the Heavy Load ( $W$ ) Expulsion of Blood Against the High Arterial Pressure. (From Patterson, Piper and Starling, *Jour. Physiol.*)

tion. During relaxation the tension of the muscle is determined solely by its length. When it contracts the muscular tension rises, but at first there is no shortening of the muscle (isometric period). After the tension has increased sufficiently to raise the weight, the muscle begins to shorten and the remainder of the contraction is approximately isotonic. As Henderson has pointed out, the conditions under which the heart

works may be duplicated for the voluntary muscle by having it raise a weight that is supported during relaxation by a ratchet (Fig. 2).

**Fiber Length and Linear Tension.**—In the heart there is no direct method for measuring either the length of the muscle fibers or the linear tension to which they are subjected. Since, however, the size of the ventricular cavity determines the length of the muscle fibers, and the intraventricular pressure determines the linear tension, the relation between ventricular volume and intraventricular pressure corresponds to the relation between the length and tension of a voluntary muscle. The relation

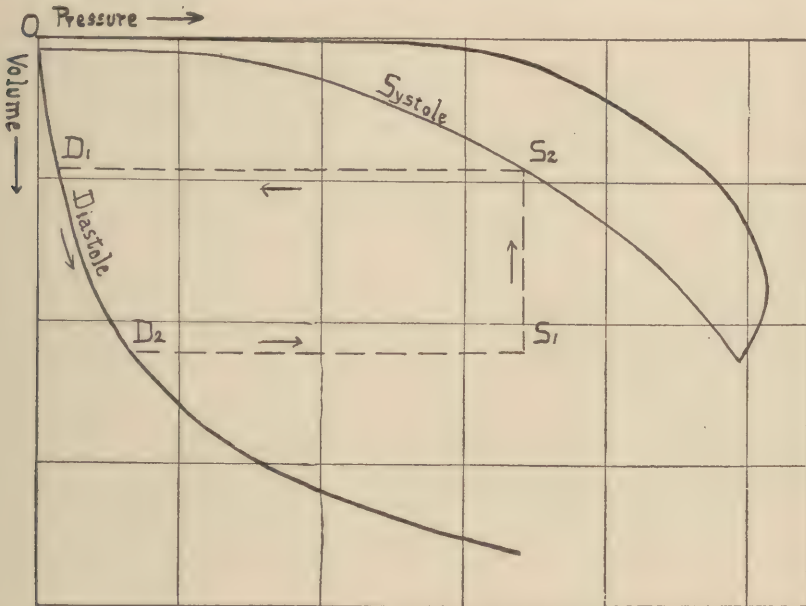


Fig. 3.—Schematic Relation between the Volume and the Intraventricular Pressure during Diastole (Curve to Left) and during Systole (Curves to Right), Based on Frank's Diagram. At the Onset of Diastole the Ventricle Relaxes and Assumes the  $D_1$  Position. As the Blood Enters, the Volume Increases with a Relatively Small Rise of Pressure to  $D_2$ . The Onset of Systole Alters the Properties of the Heart Muscle So That They Correspond to the Systolic Curve. The Heart Muscle Therefore Contracts, First Isometrically ( $D_2$  to  $S_1$ ) and Then Isotonically ( $S_1$  to  $S_2$ ). This Contraction Is Short of That Theoretically Possible, the Latter Being Indicated by the Upper of the Two Upper Curves.

between these two variables, as determined by Frank for the frog's heart, is shown in Figure 3.

**Diastolic and Systolic Volume.**—During diastole the size of the ventricular cavity is determined by the tone of the relaxed muscle and the pressure of the entering blood stream. An increase in diastolic volume may be due either to a loss of diastolic tone or to an increase in the filling pressure. The latter, according to Wiggers, varies from 2 to 6 mm. of mercury in the right ventricle of the mammalian heart. Dur-



ing systole, on the other hand, the size of the ventricular cavity is governed by the systolic tone of its muscle, and by the pressure against which its contents are expelled. An increase in the systolic volume may be due either to a loss of systolic tone or to an increase in arterial pressure.

### *Reaction to Varying Arterial Resistance*

In order to study the reaction of the heart muscle during variations in filling and in arterial resistance it is necessary to control: (1) the rate of the heart beat; (2) the blood supply to the heart; and (3) the arterial tension. The dynamics of the mammalian heart have been studied by

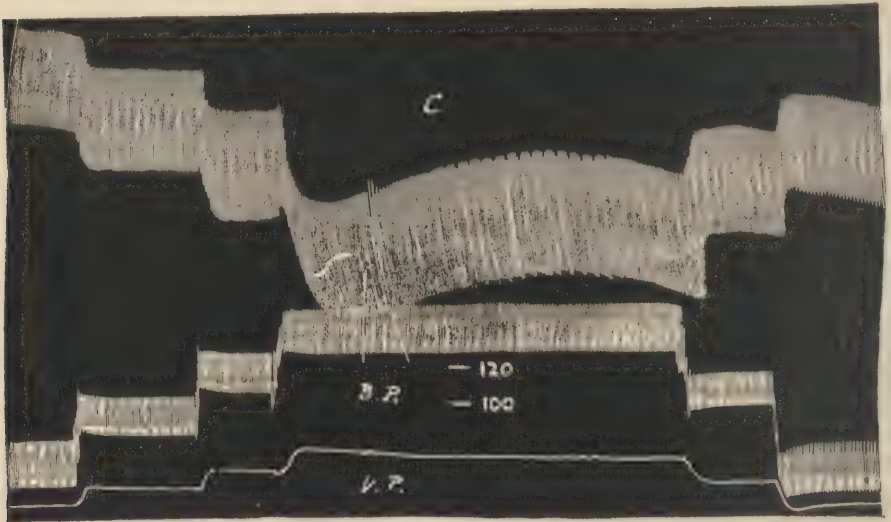


Fig. 4.—Effect of Raising and Lowering the Arterial Resistance upon the Volume and Output of the Ventricles in the Heart-lung Preparation. C Is the Cardiac Volume. the Downstrokes Representing Increases of Volume. B. P. Is the Blood Pressure. V. P. Is the Venous Pressure. Note That a Rise of Arterial Resistance Causes an Increase in the Volume of the Ventricle and a Rise of Venous Pressure But That the Cardiac Output (Excursion of C) Remains Constant at Different Levels of Arterial Pressure. (From Patterson, Piper and Starling, Jour. Physiol.)

Straub, Starling, and others by means of the “heart-lung” preparation. In such a preparation the perfused fluid flows through an unaltered pulmonary circuit. The arterial resistance as well as the inflow to the right auricle is controlled mechanically. The heart rate is governed partly by the temperature of the perfusion fluid, and partly by stimulation of the extrinsic cardiac nerves.

Using such a preparation Starling and his associates found, that with a constant heart rate the ventricular volume increases with each rise of the arterial pressure and diminishes with each fall, even though the output remains practically constant after the new conditions have become



established (Fig. 4). The primary ventricular dilatation after an arterial increase in pressure may be followed by some recovery, but the volume always remains greater at high than low pressure.

The immediate result of a rise in arterial pressure is a transient diminution in the systolic output, so that the ventricle fails to put out all of the blood coming to it. The volume of the ventricle, therefore, increases and the venous pressure becomes greater. But this enlargement of the ventricle during diastole lengthens the muscle fibers and increases their tension, and these changes, as we have seen, tend to cause a more powerful systole. After a few beats, therefore, the ventricle puts out the usual amount of blood against the increased arterial resistance. The physiological dilatation of the ventricle enables the muscle to develop greater energy, and the inflowing blood is expelled even though the blood pressure is raised. The physiological dilatation of the ventricle has acted as a compensatory process, which enables the heart to accomplish the extra work demanded of it.

### ***Reaction to Varying Inflows***

In other experiments Starling and his associates maintained the arterial pressure at a constant level, but varied the rate at which the blood entered the auricles. It was found that, under these conditions, the heart is capable of putting out widely varying amounts of blood. If the venous inflow be increased the ventricles are better filled during diastole. At this time the tension of the muscle is slight, and the ventricle takes up the extra blood coming to it with but a small increase in tension. The muscle fibers, being lengthened and more tense, show a larger excursion during their subsequent contraction, just as happens when the voluntary muscle is moderately extended during its period of relaxation. The output from the heart is, therefore, increased and it soon becomes equal to the inflow. The effect of varying the inflow upon the size and output of the ventricles is shown in Figure 5. It will be noted that the systolic as well as the diastolic volume of the ventricle increases when larger amounts of blood are being pumped. Apparently the ventricles not only dilate during diastole in order to take up the extra blood coming to them, but they do not contract so perfectly when the cavities contain large amounts of blood. The output, however, is increased.

**Control of Heart Output.**—From what has just been said, it is obvious that the output from the heart is governed not so much by the arterial resistance to be overcome as by the amount of blood that enters from the veins. When the venous pressure is increased, more blood enters the heart during diastole, and the increased length and tension of the muscle fibers cause them to contract with greater energy. This may serve to maintain the usual output against a heightened arterial pressure, or it

may serve to expel an increased amount of blood against the normal arterial resistance. In either case, the systolic as well as the diastolic

volume of the ventricle tends to increase.

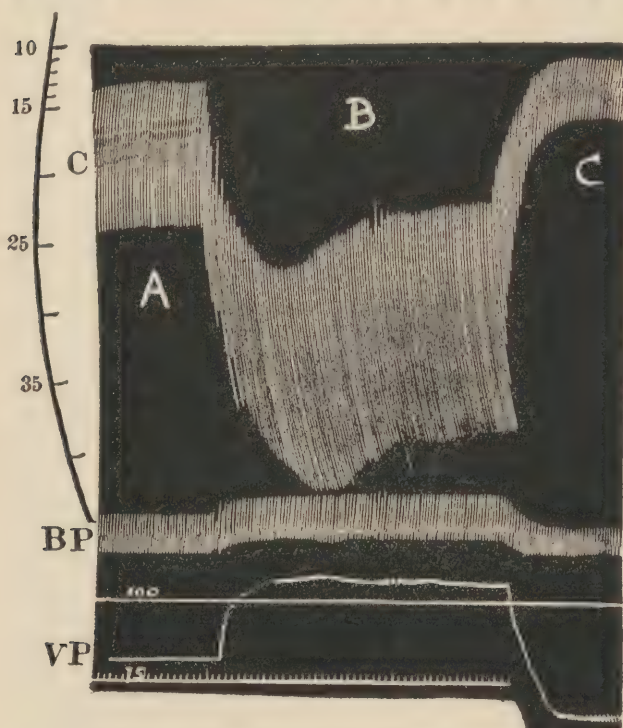


Fig. 5.—The Effect of Altering the Venous Supply to the Heart in the Heart-lung Preparation. C, B. P., and V. P. As in Fig. 4. Note that the Increased Inflow Produces a Dilation of the Ventricles with an Increase in Their Excursion. (From Patterson, Piper, and Starling, Jour. Physiol.)

**Equalizing Mechanism.**—The mechanism which equalizes the output from two sides of the heart under the conditions of Starling's experiment is now clear. If, for any reason, one side is given an increased amount of work to do, either by reason of an increased arterial pressure or by reason of an increased inflow of blood, it responds by a physiological dilatation of its cavity with increase in the diastolic length and tension of the muscle. This physiological dilatation enables it to meet the new requirements, and

prevents an excessive accumulation of blood either in the pulmonic or systemic circulation. It should be noted, however, that this compensatory mechanism depends in large part upon an increased pressure in the venous trunks. If the venous tone is lessened, so that blood collects in the veins without an increase in venous pressure, the output from the corresponding ventricle may not be increased.

**Cardiac Tonicity.**—This may be defined as the resistance which the heart wall offers to stretching. Changes in tone mean that the relation between internal pressure and volume, as diagrammed in Fig. 3, have changed. These changes play no small part in governing the heart volume. Hirschfelder found, experimentally, that the heart sometimes became smaller when the arterial pressure was raised. In man, after exercise, when the blood flow is still markedly accelerated, the heart outlines may be less than before. In both of these examples an increase of cardiac tone presumably accounts for the smaller heart volume.

*Influence of the Heart Rate*

In the heart-lung preparation, the heart rate may be slowed either by cooling the perfusion fluid or by stimulating the vagus nerve. When the heart is cooled, the longer diastole allows a more complete filling of the ventricle during its relaxation. The diastolic volume of the ventricle is increased and the output at each beat is also augmented. This may neutralize the effect of the slow heart rate so that the output per minute varies but little from that present when the heart is beating rapidly. Within limits, therefore, the output in a given time is not necessarily changed by variations in the heart rate, for the heart continues to expel the blood that comes to it, and the changes in rate may be compensated by changes in the output at each beat.

**Vagus Influence.**—When the heart is slowed by vagus stimulation similar conditions prevail, except that the ventricles are markedly distended in both systole and diastole because vagus activity lessens the tone of the heart muscle. With vagus slowing of the rate one would expect an increase in both the systolic and diastolic heart volumes. An acceleration of the rate from vagus inhibition would, on the other hand, lessen the size of the heart in both positions.

**DIASTOLIC FILLING OF THE VENTRICLES.**—Two views concerning diastolic filling have been advocated. (1) The ventricles dilate in a characteristic manner and this determines their filling under ordinary circumstances. (2) The filling of the ventricles is governed by the pressure of the inflowing blood together with the resistance to distention offered by the muscle.

**Diastolic Relaxation.**—(1) Henderson maintained that the filling of the ventricles normally depended upon the rapidity and duration of diastolic relaxation, and that, in a given heart, ventricular relaxation always followed a uniform curve. The relaxation was rapid at first, but by degrees, or perhaps quite suddenly, it became much more gradual. Furthermore, the pressure in the systemic veins usually sufficed to fill the right ventricle as rapidly as the latter relaxed, so that any increase of venous pressure above this “critical” limit did not materially influence ventricular filling. Only when the venous pressure was pathologically lowered, as in shock, was there an inadequate filling. According to Henderson’s hypothesis, therefore, the diastolic relaxation of a given heart always follows a uniform curve, and the volume output during systole is determined by the form of this relaxation curve and by the duration of diastole. Since relaxation is relatively rapid in early diastole, an increase in heart rate would, within limits, decrease the output per beat but increase the output per minute. A slowing of the heart rate would have the opposite effect.



**Ventricular Tone and Venous Pressure.**—(2) By diastolic tone we mean the resistance to stretching offered by the heart muscle during diastole. We know little about factors which alter the tone of the heart muscle, except that it is lessened by vagus stimulation.

The effect of venous pressure upon ventricular filling is better understood. Wiggers found that ventricular filling could be increased by raising the venous pressure above normal. All agree that when the venous pressure falls below normal a point is soon reached where the ventricles are incompletely filled and the output of blood is lessened. Such a reduced supply of blood to the heart plays an important rôle in the circulatory failure of surgical shock.

**Veno-pressure Control.**—The pressure in the large veins is controlled in part by the size and tone of these vessels, and in part by the rate at which blood flows into them from the smaller veins and capillaries. The tone of the large veins may be altered by nerve influences and by chemical substances.

### *The Normal Heart Shadow in Man*

The volume of the heart is determined in part by the thickness of its walls and in part by the size of its cavities. No direct measurements of these separate factors are possible in the living subject. The most accurate data with regard to the size of the heart in the living human subject are derived from x-ray studies. By this means the area of the heart shadow may be accurately determined. The effects of divergence in the rays are eliminated either by using the orthodiagraph or by placing the Röntgen tube at a considerable distance from the body. The records thus obtained do not permit an estimate either of the thickness of the muscle walls, or of the size of the individual cardiac chambers.

**Individual Variations.**—Orthodiagraphic studies have shown that, in a general way, the size of the heart shadow in different normal individuals increases with the height and the weight of the individual observed.

**Diminution.**—In a given man the size of the heart shadow may vary considerably under physiological conditions. The shadow outlines are determined mainly by the diastolic volume of the heart. When the heart is beating more rapidly and the diastolic filling is shortened, the cardiac shadow will therefore tend to be smaller. As a matter of fact, the rapid heart rate produced by the administration of *atropin* is usually associated with a diminution in the area of the heart shadow. This is caused not alone by the rapid heart action, but is due in part to the increased tone of the heart muscle during vagus paralysis. During marked pathological increases in the heart rate, such as occur in *paroxysmal tachycardia* (q. v.), the heart shadow, according to Dietlen, also becomes smaller.

**FROM CHANGED POSITION.**—The heart shadow becomes distinctly



smaller when an individual passes from the recumbent to the upright position. This change is due in part to the increased heart rate. In part it is probably due to a lessened blood flow to the right auricle, owing to a greater collection of blood in the splanchnic vessels.

**AFTER EXERCISE.**—After exercise the silhouette of the human heart is usually smaller than before, a fact that has now been established by numerous x-ray observations. This diminution in size is due in part at least to the more rapid heart rate, which, as we have seen, always tends to cause a considerable diminution in the diastolic volume of the heart. Only in patients with cardiac disease is there at times a definite increase in the heart shadow after exercise. The effect of exercise upon the circulation will be discussed more fully in succeeding paragraphs; but it may be pointed out here that most of the observations dealing with the effect of exercise upon the size of the heart shadow have been made, not during, but shortly after the exertion. It is by no means improbable that the cardiac volume changes rapidly when the exertion is over, and that during the exertion itself the diastolic volume may be normal or slightly increased.

### ***Incompleteness of Ventricular Systole***

In *physiological experiments* it is not uncommon to find that considerable residues of blood have been left in the ventricles at the end of systole. In Figures 4 and 5, for example, it will be seen that when the blood pressure or the cardiac output has been increased, the systolic volume of the ventricles may exceed the diastolic volume in other parts of the tracing. It is obvious that, under such experimental conditions at least, the ventricles may contain very considerable quantities of blood, even at the end of systole.

So far as *man* is concerned, we have no direct evidence that the ventricles ordinarily contain any considerable residue of blood at the end of systole; yet various observations with the x-ray indicate that such is, in all likelihood, the case. When the thorax is examined by means of a fluoroscopic screen, the ventricular movements during systole appear so slight, that it hardly seems possible that the ventricular cavities are emptied at each stroke. Furthermore, Moritz has observed that when a young and slender individual passes from the recumbent to the upright posture, the decrease in the size of the heart shadow may be so marked, that the systolic outline when recumbent is greater than the diastolic outline when upright. Considerable variations in the size of the heart shadow may also be produced by a Valsalva experiment, or by hot or cold baths. The interpretation of such changes is rendered uncertain, because the area of the heart shadow is determined not by the volume of the ventricles alone, but by the position of the heart and by the

size of the right auricle. Even though one admit this possible error, nevertheless it seems probable that in the normal man, as in animal experiments, there is often an appreciable, or even a very considerable residue of blood left in the ventricular cavities at the end of systole, and that this residue is liable to considerable fluctuations under normal as well as under pathological conditions.

### *Dynamics of the Weakened Heart*

When a voluntary muscle that is executing isometric contractions begins to tire, the fatigue becomes evident by the fact that the muscle no longer develops the same tension for a given initial length. If, however, the initial length be somewhat increased, the fatigued, like the normal, muscle develops a greater energy of contraction. Let us assume, for example, that a normal muscle with an initial length of 2 cms. develops a tension of 50 grams when contracted, and that the same muscle, at the same initial length, develops a tension of 30 grams when fatigued. If the fatigued muscle be now stretched to a length of 3 cm. it may develop a tension of 50 grams during contraction. The stretching has enabled it to develop a tension equal to that previously developed by the normal muscle. It is obvious, however, that when the initial lengths are the same the fatigued muscle develops less energy than the normal muscle, and that, furthermore, there is always a limit beyond which stretching of the muscle will not increase its energy. If this limit be approached, the maximum tension possible will be found to be greater for the normal than for the fatigued muscle. In other words, the potential capabilities of the normal muscle are greater than that of the fatigued muscle, even though they may both be doing the same work under the conditions of such an experiment.

**Weakened Ventricular Muscle.**—The properties of the fatigued voluntary muscle with its lessened capabilities under given conditions are probably not unlike the properties of a weakened heart muscle. When the ventricular muscle is weak the ventricles expel their contents less perfectly against a given arterial pressure and, consequently, the systolic volume of the heart is greater than normal. To this increased systolic residue there is added the blood which enters from the veins during diastole, and it is obvious that the diastolic volume of the ventricle will also tend to be increased. Within limits, however, this increase in the ventricular volume during diastole is advantageous, for a lengthening of the muscle fibers enables the weakened heart muscle to develop greater energy, just as the fatigued voluntary muscle develops greater energy when it is further extended. In consequence of this greater energy the weakened heart may, within limits, maintain a normal circulation. It pumps the usual amount of blood and maintains the usual arterial blood pressure. The only objective evidences of weakness may be a moderate dilatation

of the ventricular cavities and possibly also a slight rise of venous pressure. Such a dilatation, though evidence of weakness, is in itself a favorable and compensatory reaction, for it enables the weakened muscle to carry on the circulation. We have said that, within limits, the weakened heart muscle may carry on a normal circulation, both as regards the arterial pressure maintained and the amount of blood pumped. The limits of capability are, however, always less than the normal. When, as in muscular exercise, the arterial pressure is raised and unusual quantities of blood must be pumped, the weakened muscle is unable to do the work required of it, and the weaker the muscle the narrower will be its range of capabilities.

**PRESSURE AND DISTENSIBILITY.**—The relationship between the normal and the weakened muscle is represented schematically in Figure 6.

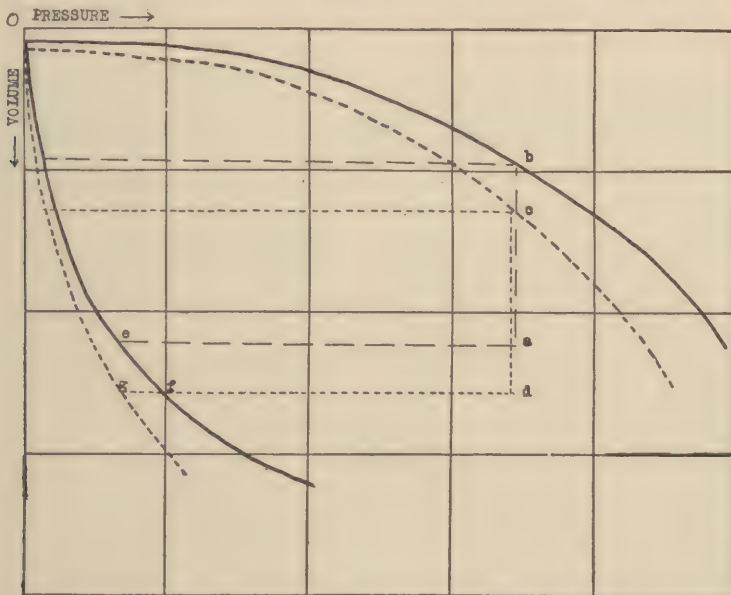
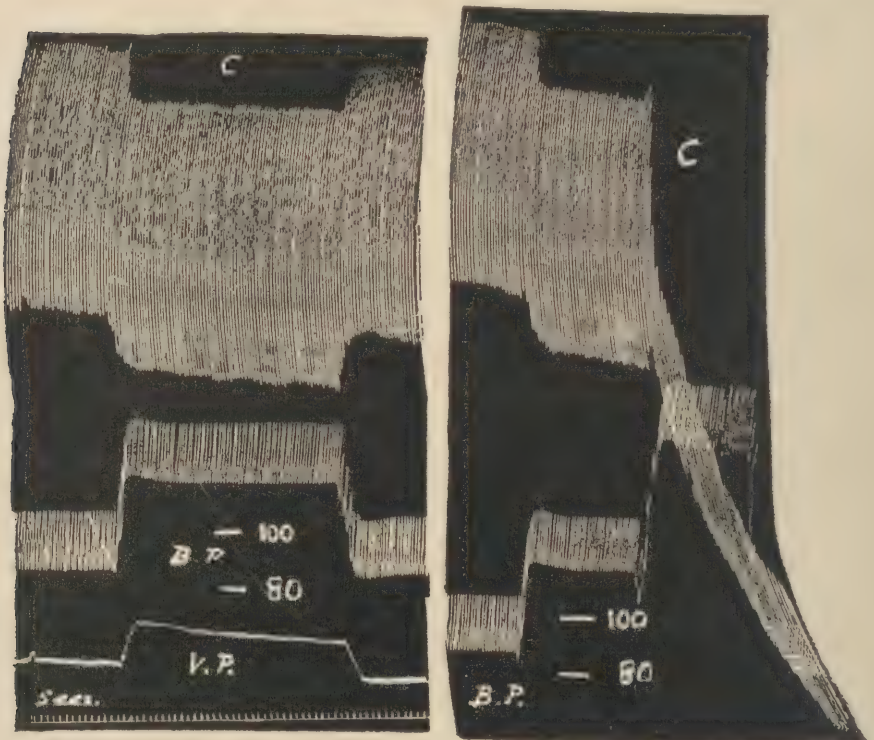


Fig. 6.—Schematic Representation of the Relation between the Normal and Weakened (Atonic) Heart Muscle. The Heavy Solid Lines Represent the Normal Muscle and the Course of Contraction Is Represented by e, a, b, Just As in Fig. 3. The Broken Lines Represent the Weakened Heart Muscle. It will Be Seen that by Dilating, this Muscle Is Able to Put Out the Same Amount of Blood against the Same Arterial Pressure as the Normal Heart. Furthermore, If the Curve of Diastolic Tone Follows the Dotted Line, There Is No Rise of Diastolic or of Venous Pressure.

The upper of the continuous lines, taken from Frank's curve for the frog's ventricle, represents the relation between the volume of a normal ventricle and the pressure developed during its contraction. The broken curve just below is drawn to represent this relation for the weakened ventricle. If the output during ordinary conditions of life be represented by the line *a b*, then it will be seen that the same volume, *c d*, may be put



out by the weakened heart at the same arterial pressure. In the latter case, however, the size of the heart is increased in both systole and diastole. The pressure during diastole and with this the venous pressure depend largely upon the distensibility of the ventricular muscle during diastole. This is represented by the lower curves. If this diastolic distensibility remains unaltered in cardiac weakness, then the diastolic and venous pressures are raised as a result of weakness of the heart muscle (tension at *f* is greater than tension at *e*). Such an increase is not necessary, however, for it is possible that the increased distensibility during systole which characterizes the weakened heart muscle is associated with an increased distensibility during diastole. If this be the case, then the venous pressure may not be increased, so long as the weakened heart is competent to do the work required of it (tension at *g* equals the tension at *e*). The diagram also shows that the range of accommodation of the



Figs. 7 and 8.—Compensatory and Excessive Dilatation from Raising the Blood Pressure in a Heart-lung Preparation. In the Figure on the Left the Rise of Pressure (B. P.) Causes a Dilatation of the Ventricles (Downward Movement of C), But They Then Continue to Pump Out the Blood Coming to Them. In the Figure on the Right the Further Rise of Arterial Pressure Causes a Further Ventricular Dilatation Which Rapidly Increases Because the Ventricles Can No Longer Pump Out the Blood Coming to Them. Only Prompt Measures Could Check This Acute Dilatation. (Reproduced from Patterson, Piper and Starling, Jour. Physiol.)



weakened muscle is less than that of the normal muscle. The maximum pressure that may be overcome is less, and the maximum output that may be attained against lower pressures is also probably less.

We have spoken thus far of the favorable effects of a moderate "compensatory" dilatation upon the dynamics of the heart. There is obviously a limit to the favorable effect of dilatation, however, and it is common knowledge that cardiac failure is usually associated with a marked dilatation of the heart. If the arterial pressure be gradually and continuously increased, a time will come when the ventricle is no longer capable of putting out all of the blood coming to it. There will then result a gradually increasing dilatation, owing to the continued and growing discrepancy between the ventricular output and the venous inflow (Figs. 7 and 8). Such a dilatation is, of course, incompatible with life, and the ventricle can recover only if the arterial pressure be lowered or the venous inflow be reduced.

### *Causes of Cardiac Weakness*

#### (a) **Fatigue**

When a voluntary muscle is made to execute a rapid series of contractions it does not have time to recuperate during the pauses, and fatigue with gradual loss of power sets in. Fatigue is more readily produced when there is an imperfect removal of waste products, or an insufficient supply of oxygen and nutrient material, all of which accompany deficient circulation through the muscle. Fatigue passes off if the muscle be allowed to rest, and it passes off more promptly if at the same time a good circulation be maintained.

**Normal Heart Muscle.**—The conditions in the heart muscle are obviously different from those in a voluntary muscle. Ordinarily the heart recuperates completely during the diastolic pause that succeeds each contraction. The work of the heart is increased very markedly during violent muscular exercise, for increased amounts of blood are pumped against a heightened blood pressure (page 25). Yet there is, as a rule, no evidence of cardiac fatigue, for very shortly after the most strenuous exertion the shadow of the normal heart is usually diminished rather than increased, and insufficiency rarely occurs. With a normal heart muscle, therefore, it would seem that the general fatigue which follows violent exercise is due, not to fatigue of the heart, but to fatigue of the voluntary muscles used during the exercise.

**Weakened Heart Muscle.**—We have seen, however, that if a voluntary muscle is insufficiently supplied with blood, it is fatigued by amounts of work that could ordinarily be performed without tiring. Similarly, when the heart muscle receives a poor blood supply, or when for some other reason it is already weakened, prolonged exercise may be followed by cardiac dilatation, and by a lessened working capacity that may persist

for a longer or shorter interval. Such dilatation and weakness as a result of prolonged work evidently have much in common with the fatigue of a voluntary muscle. Until more is known of the chemical and physiological changes during fatigue, however, the exact relation cannot be more definitely stated.

### (b) Functional Insufficiency

The weakness that develops when certain hearts are called upon to meet the demands of prolonged muscular exercise, shades imperceptibly into the weakness that is present constantly, even when no special demands are made upon the heart. Such weakness may, or may not, be associated with demonstrable anatomical changes in the muscle. Thus a sudden diminution in the blood supply to the myocardium may cause an acute cardiac insufficiency before anatomical changes in the muscle have had time to develop. A less marked but more prolonged interference with the coronary circulation may, in all probability, cause muscular weakness with little if any anatomical change. In severe anemias (Moritz), and during acute infections (Dietlen), there may be a transient enlargement of the heart shadow, for the reason that lack of oxygen or the presence of toxic substances has weakened the myocardium.

In such cases as well as in cachexias, inanition, etc., the anatomical changes in the muscle often seem insufficient to account for the weakness or dilatation observed clinically.

### (c) Anatomical Changes in the Myocardium

The relation between cardiac weakness and anatomical changes in the heart muscle is, in certain instances, an obvious one. A disappearance of muscle fibers with an increase in connective tissue can only lead to impaired function. Loss of muscle striations and imperfect staining of the muscle nuclei also indicate an impairment of muscular efficiency. In certain infectious diseases and particularly in acute rheumatic fever, definite changes have been found in the muscle fibers or interstitial tissue which suffice to explain the functional changes observed clinically.

**Fatty Changes.**—On the other hand, anatomical alterations may be present in the heart muscle when there is little if any evidence of functional impairment. Thus, cloudy swelling is not infrequently found in hearts that have shown no clinical evidence of insufficiency. The significance of "fatty degeneration" of the muscle fibers has been much discussed. Virchow's hypothesis, that the fat visible in such fibers was derived from a breaking down of muscle proteins, necessarily led to the assumption that fatty degeneration caused muscular weakness. It now seems certain, however, that this fat is derived either from fatty deposits elsewhere in the body, or from fatty substances previously present in the heart muscle but not demonstrable by microscopic methods. There is, therefore, no

longer a logical necessity for believing that fatty degeneration is a sign of serious muscular weakness. At the same time, the two may well go together. When marked fatty degeneration has been produced in animals by experimental phosphorus poisoning, the strength of the heart muscle (in the frog) is diminished and the hearts of dogs show an unusual tendency to cardiac dilatation as a result of exercise (de la Camp). Such marked fatty changes are, however, uncommon in patients dying of cardiac insufficiency, and it is by no means certain that the lesser grades of fatty degeneration seen at autopsy cause a serious myocardial weakness.

**Circulatory Changes.**—The heart muscle is very sensitive to changes in its blood supply. This has been abundantly proven by experimental investigations, and it is well known that disease of the coronary arteries is one of the most important causes of myocardial weakness in man, and particularly in the later decades of life. A lessened blood supply diminishes the working capacity of the muscle even though no anatomical changes are present. But changes in the structure of the heart muscle frequently accompany coronary sclerosis. When the blood supply is poor the muscle fibers may show nutritional changes, and an increased growth of connective tissue may take place. When the blood is entirely shut off from small areas of the myocardium there result local necroses with secondary scar formation. When the circulation is shut off from an extensive area the subsequent necrosis may lead to an aneurism or rupture of the heart wall. It is evident, therefore, that changes in the coronary circulation may produce insufficiency, both through readily demonstrable anatomical alterations, and through less evident nutritional disturbances of the heart muscle.

### *Cardiac Dilatation*

In the heart-lung preparation, as we have seen (page 6), a dilatation of the ventricles may be caused either by a weakening of the muscle with lessening of the ventricular tone, or by an increase in the demands upon the heart. The physiological dilatation that accompanies a rise of arterial pressure or a rapid inflow of venous blood is of a compensatory character, for it enables the ventricle to do the extra work demanded of it. In man also transient changes in the size of the heart may result from transient muscular weakness, or from transient increases in work. Under pathological conditions, the muscular weakness or the increase in work may be continuous rather than transient, and one would, therefore, expect that a continuous dilatation of the ventricles would result.

**Increased Work.**—Of pathological conditions in which the left ventricle is called upon to do an increased amount of work over long periods of time, the most important are continued arterial hypertension, aortic lesions, and mitral insufficiency. The effect of these conditions upon the left ventricle will be discussed more fully under the appropriate headings,



but it may be pointed out here that, in aortic as in mitral insufficiency, the left ventricle is required to pump unusual quantities of blood at each stroke. These valvular lesions are almost invariably accompanied by a dilatation of this chamber, and this dilatation plays an important part in the maintenance of the circulation. It is, therefore, the type of a favorable or compensatory dilatation.

In aortic stenosis and in chronic arterial hypertension, on the other hand, the quantity of blood pumped is not increased but the resistance opposed to the emptying of the left ventricle is greater than normal. In the heart-lung preparation such an increase in resistance also causes a compensatory dilatation of the ventricle. Possibly, however, such a dilatation does not occur in the intact animal, for Hirschfelder found that the ventricle of a dog's heart may overcome a heightened blood pressure with no increase in its size. It is probable that in man also the left ventricle may under unusually favorable circumstances overcome a high resistance without dilatation. In the earlier stages of aortic stenosis and chronic hypertension no dilatation of the left ventricle may be present. Under less perfect conditions, however, the left ventricle probably dilates somewhat, just as it does in the heart-lung preparation. The dilatation of the left ventricle that is not uncommonly observed in patients suffering from chronic hypertension may be in part similar to that which occurs in the heart-lung preparation. It enables the ventricular muscle to put forth greater effort and is, therefore, in a certain sense compensatory in character.

**Loss of Tone.**—Cardiac dilatation may also result from loss of muscular tone. The dynamics of the weakened heart muscle have already been discussed and need only be referred to in this place. It will be recalled that a weakening of the heart muscle leads to a dilatation of the ventricular cavity, but that in consequence of this dilatation the muscle may be able to expel the usual amount of blood against the usual blood pressure. Only when unusual demands are made upon such a heart do its limitations as compared with the normal become apparent.

**Physical and Structural Changes in Heart Muscle.**—Finally, cardiac dilatation is favored by physical or structural changes in the heart muscle. For example, a long-continued strain or a long-continued weakness causes a prolonged dilatation. As a result the muscle may become fixed in the new position, so that even though the strain be relieved or the muscular weakness disappear the ventricle remains permanently larger than before. Dietlen has observed, for example, that the dilatation of the heart during acute infectious diseases usually undergoes only a partial retrogression after recovery, the heart shadow being left permanently larger than before. Dilatation of a ventricular cavity ordinarily accompanies an hypertrophy of its walls. In many cases increased work is the common cause of both, or, again, the dilatation is due to a



weakness of the hypertrophied muscle. It seems not improbable, however, that the mass thickening of the muscle wall may in itself lead to an enlargement of the enclosed cavity.

**Excessive Dilatation.**—The types of dilatation discussed thus far are associated with a more or less perfect maintenance of the circulation. The heart pumps on the blood that comes to it and there is no necessary alteration in either the venous or arterial pressures. A temporary increase of work leads to a further but temporary increase in the size of the heart, which within limits aids the cardiac contractions. If, however, the acute dilatation exceed a certain limit it may exert a very unfavorable effect upon the cardiac function. Excessive dilatation lessens the contractile force of the muscle and the changes that characterize acute cardiac failure then supervene. The dilated ventricle fails to expel the blood coming to it, the venous pressure rises, and this in turn tends to distend the ventricular cavity still further during diastole. If the acute dilatation has been induced by sudden exertion or by a sudden increase in the arterial blood pressure, perfect rest or a reduction of the arterial pressure may allow the burdened ventricle to pump out the accumulated blood and to recover its previous size. If, however, the demands are not reduced below the functional capacity of the weakened muscle, the continued collection of blood in the dilated ventricle leads to a cardiac death.

## Hypertrophy of the Heart

It is common knowledge that when a voluntary muscle is exercised it grows larger. This hypertrophy is due mainly to an increase in the size of the individual muscle fibers. At the same time the strength of the muscle increases. Heavier loads than before can be lifted and more work can be done without fatigue.

The heart muscle also hypertrophies as a result of increased work, the hypertrophy again being due mainly to an increase in the size of the individual muscle fibers. The hypertrophied heart also possesses a greater working capacity than the normal. The maximum pressure attainable on clamping the aorta is increased, and, at a given arterial pressure, more blood can be pumped without developing insufficiency. Not only may hypertrophy involve the heart as a whole, but it may involve the musculature of individual cardiac chambers. When additional work is done by only one chamber, the muscle surrounding this hypertrophies, while the remainder of the heart is affected to a lesser extent if at all.

### *The Weight of the Heart*

When the heart is markedly hypertrophied, the change is obvious on inspection. Minor changes, however, are less easily determined, for the

amount of heart muscle varies considerably in different normal individuals. An approximate standard is furnished by comparing the size of the heart with the size of the subject's right fist. Any accurate estimate of the amount of heart muscle, however, can be obtained only by weighing, the most exact method being that used by W. Müller. According to this method, the heart muscle is first freed from the non-muscular tissues and is then divided into pieces, so that the weight of the different cardiac chambers can be calculated. Each piece is then weighed and the results are added. Such a method determines not only the total weight of the heart muscle, but also the absolute and relative weights of its constituent portions.

**Heart-Body Ratio.**—Müller found that the weight of the entire heart increased with the weight of the body, but that the proportion between the two tended to diminish as the body weight increased.

MÜLLER'S TABLE (FROM GROBER)

Body Weight in Kilograms	Absolute Weight of Heart in Grams	Ratio to Body Weight Milligrams per Gram
1-10	28.9	5.87
10-20	78.0	5.20
20-30	133.5	5.49
30-40	193.3	5.47
40-50	230.2	5.10
50-60	264.3	4.81
60-70	297.2	4.45
70-80	322.3	4.37
80-90	359.0	4.28
90-100	376.3	4.01
100-110	358.5	3.46

The above table may be used as a standard for determining whether a given heart is larger or smaller than the average. It should be remembered, however, that there are considerable individual variations from these average figures. In particular, it seems certain that of two individuals weighing the same, the one who is accustomed to do heavy work will have the larger heart; or again that the one who is tall and slender will have a larger heart than the one who is short and fat. Undoubtedly, therefore, it would be more exact to compare the weight of the heart, not with the weight of the body as a whole, but with the weight of its active tissues after eliminating the weight of the fat, the bones, etc., as well as that due to edemas or exudates. Such accurate measurements are, however, hardly possible at autopsies, so that our most accurate standard is the ratio between the heart weight and the body weight after

making some allowance for the amount of inactive tissue in the body. If this ratio between the heart and the body weights be excessive the heart is said to be hypertrophied.

### *Strength of the Hypertrophied Heart Muscle*

We have expressed the view that, when the heart muscle hypertrophies as a result of increased work, its strength is greater than before, and that it can now accomplish a given amount of work with greater ease, or can, when necessary, overcome a greater resistance than it could previously. This view is based, in part, upon the analogous increase in the working capacity of the hypertrophied voluntary muscle. In part, it is based on the fact that the heart of the trained athlete meets the demands made upon it with relative ease, and that the hypertrophied heart in valvular disease may under favorable conditions perform the extra work resulting from the valvular defect with no apparent difficulty. Finally, Hasenfeld and Romberg have studied the reserve force of the left ventricle in experimental aortic insufficiency, and have concluded from their experiments that, when the ventricle has been given time to hypertrophy, it can carry on the circulation and meet unusual demands better than the normal ventricle can immediately after the lesion has been produced.

**Weight and Strength.**—It must be admitted, however, that, even under favorable conditions, the strength of the hypertrophied heart muscle does not necessarily increase in proportion to the increase in its weight. It is obvious, in the first place, that an increase in the size of the individual muscle fibers, such as occurs in hypertrophy, is not the equivalent of a corresponding increase in the number of fibers. Then, too, as the heart hypertrophies, there may be no corresponding increase in the coronary blood stream, and since the myocardium is exceedingly sensitive to changes in its blood supply, the capabilities of the larger muscle may be restricted on this account.

**Associated Myocardial Changes.**—It must be admitted, furthermore, that in practice hypertrophy of the heart and cardiac weakness often go hand in hand. E. Albrecht has, indeed, expressed the view that the hypertrophied heart is from the start a diseased heart. It would seem, however, that the weakness observed clinically is due not to the hypertrophy itself, but to associated myocardial changes. Thus a given cause that leads to hypertrophy through increased work may, at the same time, damage the myocardium. In rheumatic fever, for example, myocardial disease and valvular disease frequently go hand in hand. So, too, in general arteriosclerosis the heightened blood pressure is not infrequently associated with a diminution in the coronary circulation. Furthermore, according to Krehl, the hypertrophied muscle is abnormally susceptible to damage, and constitutes a place of lessened resistance in the body



where infections are apt to localize. Finally, it seems probable that a primary myocardial weakness may cause secondary hypertrophy; for just as excessive work leads to hypertrophy of the normal muscle, so may normal work, which is excessive for the weakened heart, lead to its hypertrophy.

It is evident, therefore, that although cardiac hypertrophy may under certain conditions be evidence of a strong heart muscle, it is in practice often associated with myocardial weakness.

### *The Work of the Heart*

Since the chief cause of cardiac hypertrophy is an increase in the work of the heart, the factors which govern this work may be briefly summarized. The work of a ventricle consists partly in pumping blood into the arterial reservoir, and partly in imparting velocity to this blood. The latter factor may for practical purposes be disregarded, for, under ordinary circumstances, it makes up only about one per cent of the total work done by the ventricle. The former factor is represented by the product of the amount of blood pumped out by the ventricle and the pressure against which each portion is pumped. In man the mean arterial pressure may be roughly estimated. The determination of the cardiac output, however, is difficult and the accuracy of the various methods that have been proposed for this purpose is still under discussion. Apparently the most accurate of these methods depends upon the principle introduced by Bornstein in 1910. An inert gas is inspired, and the rate of its absorption from the pulmonary alveoli by the blood passing through the lungs forms the basis for computing the amount of blood that has passed through the lungs in a given time.

## **Effects of Exercise upon the Circulation**

The cardiovascular changes associated with exercise are important, not alone because of their physiological interest, but also because the reaction to exercise is the simplest and the most accurate clinical test of cardiac efficiency. The degree of circulatory failure in a given patient is estimated very largely by the amount of exercise that may be taken without inducing cardiac symptoms, or by the relation that exists between the exercise and the severity of the symptoms induced.

**Pulse and Blood Pressure.**—During brief or moderately prolonged periods of violent exercise, such as bicycle riding, the blood pressure is raised and the heart rate is accelerated. These changes occur very promptly after the exercise is started, the increase of pulse rate slightly preceding the increase of pressure. When the exercise is stopped, there is a rapid fall of both pressure and pulse rate. The primary fall of pulse



rate usually precedes the fall of pressure; but, unlike the latter, the pulse may remain elevated for some time above its original rate and only gradually return to the normal level (Fig. 9). Variations from these typical changes in pulse rate and blood pressure depend upon the character and duration of the exercise, and upon the cardiovascular apparatus of the individual tested. Exercises of strain, as where heavy weights are lifted, cause high blood pressures with little or no increase in heart rate. Mild continued exercises, such as walking, may cause an acceleration of the pulse with no increase or even a fall in the blood pressure. In prolonged exercises there may be a diminution of the heart rate and

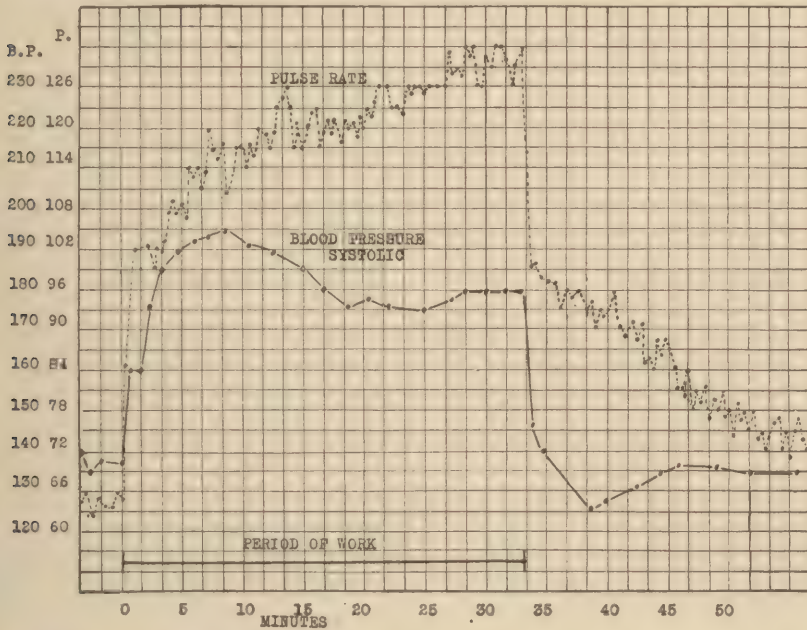


Fig. 9.—Effect of Bicycle Riding upon the Pulse Rate and the Systolic Blood Pressure. (From Bowen, *Am. Jour. Physiol.*)

also of the blood pressure. As a rule, however, there is during exercise an increase in the pulse rate or the blood pressure, or in both simultaneously.

**Systolic Output.**—Determinations of the rate of blood flow through the lungs, made by Zuntz, Krogh and Lindhard, Boothby and others, indicate that during exercise the amount of blood expelled at each systole is increased over the normal (Fig. 10). This view is supported by the well-established fact that exercise not only raises the systolic blood pressure but increases the difference between the systolic and the diastolic blood pressures (Fig. 11). An increase in this difference, i. e., in the pulse pressure in a given individual, indicates, in a general way, that the

ventricular output at each systole has been increased. The weight of evidence, therefore, favors the view that exercise not only increases the

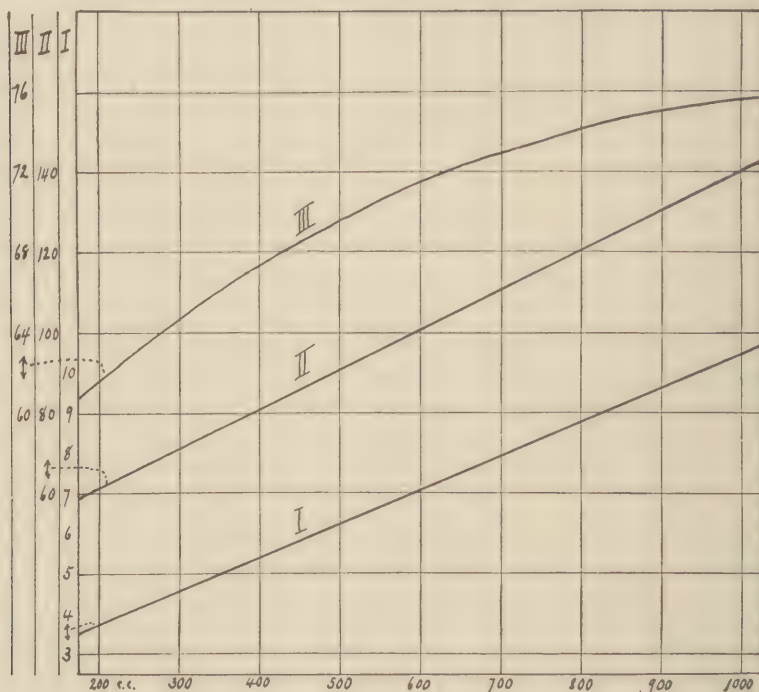


Fig. 10.—The Effect of Bicycle Riding upon the Blood Flow per Minute, the Pulse Rate and the Systolic Output at Each Beat. The Ordinates Represent (I) the Blood Flow per Minute, (II) the Pulse Rate per Minute, and (III) the Systolic Output per Beat. The Abscissa Represents the Amount of Work as Measured by the Oxygen Consumption per Minute in Cubic Centimeters. Note that with Increased Work the Pulse Rate and the Systolic Output at Each Beat Are Both Increased. (Charted from a Series of Experiments and Redrawn from Boothby, *Am. Jour. Physiol.*)

heart rate, but that it increases the amount of blood expelled at each systole of the ventricle.

**Venous Pressure.**—Violent and prolonged exercise causes a considerable rise in venous pressure. Hooker, who studied the venous pressure of man during bicycle riding, found that after a few minutes it rose ten or more centimeters (water pressure) above the previous level. This rise is apparently due to an increased flow of blood from the capillaries into the veins. This heightened venous pressure fills the right ventricle more completely during diastole, thus leading to the expulsion of more blood during systole.

**Local Blood Flow.**—Chauveau and Kaufmann have shown that in animals exercise causes a very marked acceleration of the blood flow through the muscles used, and the same can be easily demonstrated in man when the muscles in the forearm are exercised. During active exercise the

flow may also be increased through extremities that are not used, the increase being probably due to the high blood pressure and to the rise of body temperature (Fig. 12). As to the effect of exercise upon the blood flow through the internal organs we know little; but if one accepts the marked increase in general blood flow as determined by respiratory experiments, it would seem probable that the flow is also accelerated through the abdominal and other internal organs.

**Work of Heart.**—From what has been said it is evident that muscular exertion markedly increases the work of the heart. During violent exercise the mean blood pressure may be raised 50 per cent or more, while the rate of blood flow is increased to three or more times the normal. The total work of the heart which is represented by the product of these two factors would, therefore, be increased to four or more times its resting value. It is not surprising then that exercise is the great test of cardiac efficiency.

**Functional Heart Tests.**—Various authors have studied the cardiovascular changes during or following exercise with the object of devising a

test for estimating the functional capacity of the diseased heart. In such studies, particular attention has been paid to the changes in pulse rate and blood pressure which follow a standard exercise or a series of graded exercises. The promptness with which the *pulse rate* falls immediately after exercise has been used as a functional test of the circulation. Following mild exercise the pulse quickly returns to the resting rate, whereas after violent exercise the return is more gradual. In practice it has been customary to require the individual to hop one hundred times on one foot and to note the time required for the pulse to return to approximately the resting level. Ordinarily this return takes place in one or two minutes after lying down, whereas in certain patients the return is gradual and may require five or more minutes. Though extensively used the interpretation and practical value of this test is uncertain.

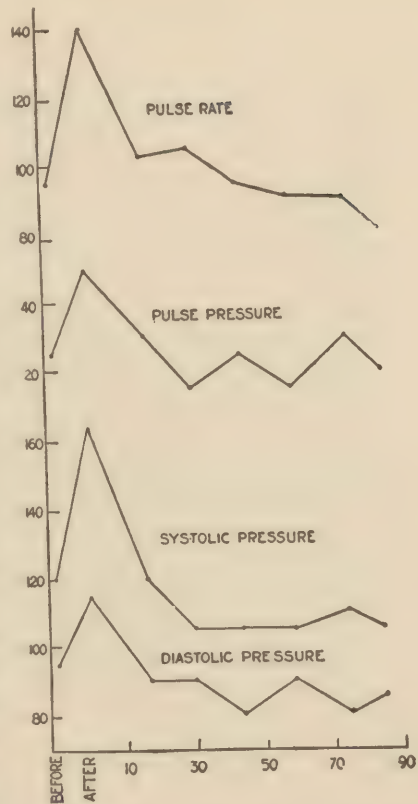


Fig. 11.—Shows the Effect of a Short Hard Run (100 Yards) upon the Pulse Rate and the Blood Pressures. Note that the Pulse Pressure Is Increased at the Time that the Pulse Is Most Rapid. (From Lowsley, *Am. Jour. Physiol.*)



Barringer determined the *systolic pressure* at successive short intervals after each of a series of graded exercises and noted that shortly after the milder exercises had been completed the systolic pressure fell smoothly, whereas shortly after the more violent exercises had been completed the systolic pressure tended to remain elevated or to rise somewhat. The latter type of reaction indicated, according to Barringer, a strain on the heart; and the exercise necessary just to cause this was taken as a measure of the functional capacity of the heart.

The causes of these fluctuations in blood pressure and pulse rate after exercise has been taken are as yet so little understood that a rational discussion of these and similar tests would be premature. Addis found, for example, that the changes in systolic pressure described by Barringer

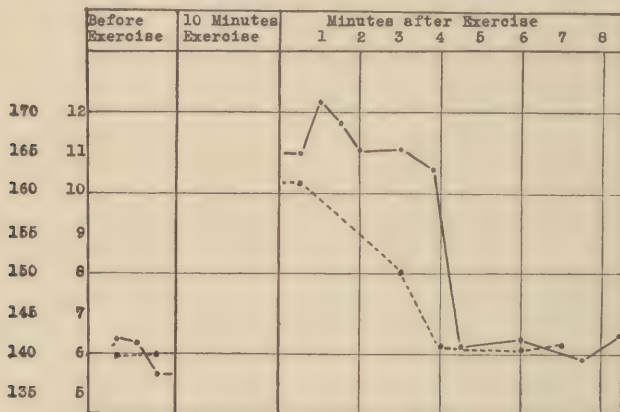


Fig. 12.—Effect of Bicycle Riding upon the Blood Flow in the Arm of Man. (Personal Observation.) Note that Immediately after the Exercise the Blood Flow (Unbroken Line) and the Systolic Blood Pressure (Broken Line) Are Both Increased and That They Fall to the Original Level at About the Same Time.

occurred if the individual stood after taking the exercises, but did not occur if he lay down (Fig. 13). According to his observations, the Barringer test gives evidence concerning the return flow of blood to the heart rather than the cardiac function. Addis believes that this failure in the return flow is the essential circulatory change in patients suffering from the so-called irritable heart.

Pooling of blood in the splanchnic area and other dependent parts of the body may be responsible for an important group of circulatory complaints—notably tachycardia and faintness—which come on when the individual exercises or even when he passes from the recumbent to the standing position. Crampton has compared the pulse rates and blood pressures in the reclining and standing positions. When the upright posture caused a marked increase in rate and a definite fall in pressure a circulatory asthenia was assumed to be present.

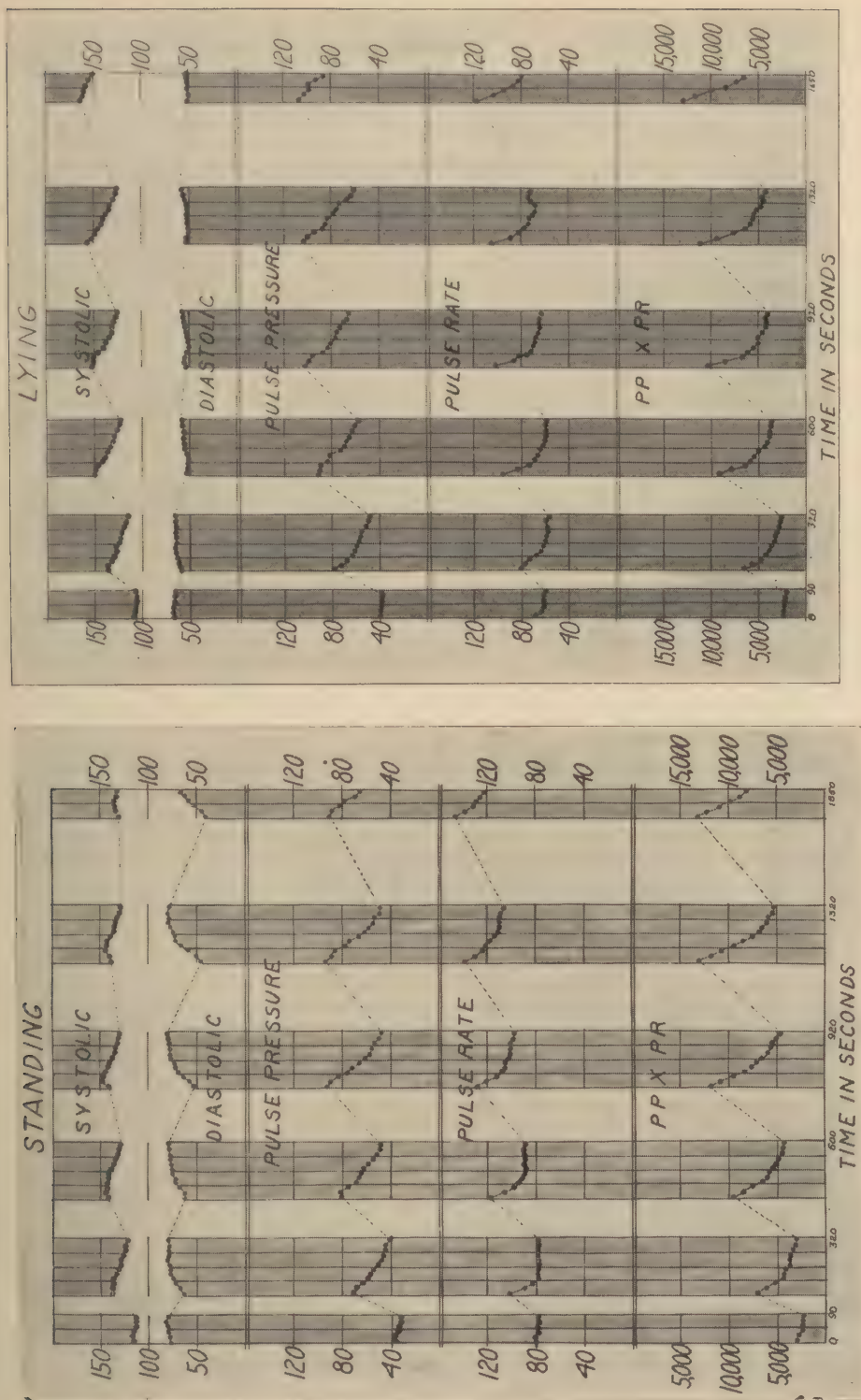


Fig. 13.—The Blood Pressures and Pulse Rates Immediately After a Series of Graded Exercises, Which Consisted in Hopping 100, 200, 300, 400 and 500 times. In the Series to the Left the Individual Stood Immediately after the Exercise. In the Series to the Right the Individual Lay Down Immediately after the Exercise. Note That in the Latter the Systolic Pressure Was Highest in the First Observation taken after the Exercise, while in the Former It Tended to Rise after the More Severe Exercises Had Been Completed. (Bar. Finger Test.) (From Addis, Arch. Int. Med.)

Until we are better informed concerning the mechanism which governs the pulse rate and the blood pressure after exercise and after changes of position it seems likely that physicians will continue to form their judgment of the degree of circulatory impairment by noting the effects produced by varying amounts of exertion upon the usual symptoms of cardiac insufficiency.

During the Great War, an estimate of the degree of circulatory impairment became important to those countries where it was necessary to use men with circulatory impairments in the less strenuous occupations connected with the war. In Great Britain, the functional tests, employed for sorting these men, consisted in subjecting them to a series of graded drills, beginning with the lighter exercises and gradually increasing to marches while carrying full packs. As the exercises increased in severity, certain men would show objective signs of circulatory distress, such as dyspnea, faintness or exhaustion. Less attention was paid to the nature of the circulatory impairment than to its degree. The men were classified according to the amount and kind of work which they could do without inducing objective signs of distress and they were then assigned duties commensurate with their capabilities. This method of estimating circulatory impairment justified itself by the experience that most men so classified were able to perform the duties assigned to them.

**Heart Shadow.**—According to Nicolai and Zuntz, the heart shadow of normal individuals is somewhat enlarged during exercise. It is certain, however, that this enlargement, if present, disappears very promptly when the exercise is discontinued, for numerous observations made shortly after cessation of exercise have shown that, at this time, the heart shadow is usually of normal or diminished size (Fig. 14). In patients with cardiac insufficiency, on the other hand, the heart shadow often remains enlarged for some time after the exercise has stopped. This enlargement does not appear to occur with sufficient regularity to be used as an early functional test; but it is, nevertheless, of great interest, for it indicates that the insufficient heart either dilates more readily during exercise, or does not recover from a physiological dilatation so readily as the normal. Such a failure to return to the normal size immediately after exercise is, as we have seen, comparable to the fatigue of a voluntary muscle (page 12).

**Acute Dilatation.**—The transition from such a mild and transient dilatation to one of a more serious and lasting character is a change in degree and not in kind. It is well known that patients suffering from heart disease may develop an acute dilatation of the ventricles as a result of unusual exercise. Such a dilatation may prove fatal, or it may incapacitate the patient for a longer or shorter time. A serious dilatation



rarely, if ever, occurs in a normal heart in consequence of violent exercise. It is true that acute dilatation has occasionally occurred when the heart was supposed to be normal; but since myocardial weakness may escape the most careful clinical examination, there is always a possibility that such weakness was present previous to the exercise. From the theo-

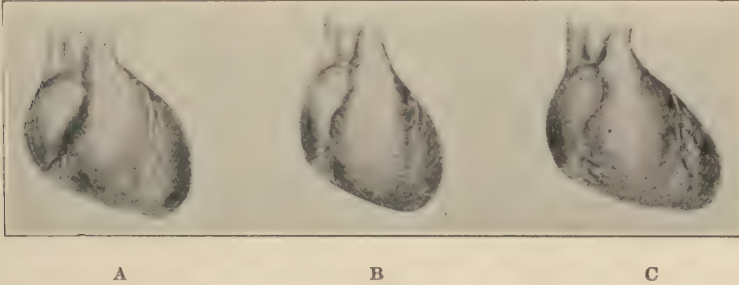


Fig. 14.—Effect of Exercise upon the Size of the Heart. (A) Before Exercise, (B) After a Long Bicycle Ride, (C) Four Weeks Later. Drawn from Orthodiagraph Tracings. (From Dietlen and Moritz, *Münch. med. Wochenschr.*)

retical standpoint, therefore, it remains to be proved that a serious acute dilatation can be caused in a normal heart from violent exercise. From the practical standpoint, however, violent athletic contests always carry with them a certain amount of danger to the heart, for serious damage is occasionally done to a heart that appeared to be normal on clinical examination.

### ***Exercise and Cardiac Hypertrophy***

We have seen that exercise increases the work of the heart and that increased work is a cause of cardiac hypertrophy. It is but natural, therefore, to expect that when violent exercise is frequently repeated over a considerable period of time the weight of the heart muscle will increase, and that this will occur with no proportionate increase in the total body weight. Such has indeed been found to be the case. Among different species of animals the relation of heart weight to body weight varies according to the amount of exercise usually taken. The hare and the deer, for example, have relatively large hearts. In birds the heart weight may make up 2.5 per cent of the total body weight, whereas in man it ordinarily makes up only about 0.5 per cent of the body weight. There may also be considerable differences in the ratio of heart weight to body weight within a given species. The wild rabbit, for example, has a somewhat larger heart than the tame rabbit. Race horses and coursing dogs have large hearts. A dog that is allowed to run about naturally has a larger heart than one of the same litter that is kept from exercise.

**Larger Heart Shadow.**—Similar observations have been made with

respect to man. Henschen observed that ski runners show at autopsy relatively large hearts. On x-ray examination athletes are found to have larger heart shadows than the average, and Schieffer has shown that the German soldiers develop larger heart shadows during their military training. It is probable that this increase in the size of the cardiac shadow is due in part at least to a thickening of the heart wall.

**Heart Weight and Skeletal Muscles.**—It has been assumed that, in such instances, the increase in the weight of the heart was accompanied by a proportional increase in the weight of the skeletal muscles. Yet such is not necessarily the case. Külbs took two dogs of the same litter and kept one quiet in a cage while the other was made to exercise vigorously. After several months the animals were killed and the relation of the weight of the heart to the weight of the skeletal muscles was determined. It was found that the heart in the exercised animal was considerably heavier (50 per cent), even when compared with the weight of the skeletal muscles. It is evident, therefore, that severe and prolonged exercise leads to an increase in the weight of the heart, which is proportionately greater than the increase in the weight of the skeletal muscles.

**Athletics and Late Cardiac Diseases.**—Beyond doubt this cardiac hypertrophy enables the individual to perform greater feats of strength and more sustained feats of endurance, and to that extent it is a favorable phenomenon. Thus Barach found that the six Marathon runners who had the smallest heart shadows in his series failed to finish the race, whereas seven of seventeen runners with moderate cardiac enlargements finished. The ultimate effect of this type of cardiac hypertrophy upon the heart has not, as yet, been satisfactorily determined. While some have held that the subsequent health of famous athletes shows no deviation from the normal, others have maintained that such athletes show in later life a peculiar tendency to cardiac affections (Harlow Brooks). It is at least certain that, while the hypertrophy may be of advantage during the period of great muscular strain, it is of no advantage in later life and that it, like other forms of hypertrophy, may cause an increased susceptibility to myocardial disease.

## Valvular Lesions

In every pump the orifices leading to and from the pump chamber are provided with valves which serve to direct the flow of liquid onward. In the heart, the auriculoventricular valves prevent a regurgitation from the ventricles into the auricles during systole, while the semilunar valves prevent a regurgitation from the arteries into the ventricles during diastole.

**Stenosis and Leakage.**—At each orifice two types of disturbance are possible. The first is due to a narrowing or stenosis of an orifice, which interferes with the free passage of blood onward. Stenoses are usually due to disease of the heart valves themselves, but occasionally, as in certain congenital lesions, the stenosis affects the arterial trunk beyond the insertion of the valves. The second type of valvular lesion is due to a leak, which allows an escape of blood backward during the time that the valves should be closed. Since the valves are attached to a more or less yielding ring composed of muscular and membranous tissues, their proper closure is dependent in part upon the condition of this ring. Regurgitation may, therefore, be due either to disease of the valves themselves, owing to a shortening or distortion of the segments (valvular insufficiency proper), or it may be due to a widening of the musculomembranous ring to which the valves are attached, so that the latter, though themselves normal, are unable to close the widened orifice (relative insufficiency).

### *Aortic Stenosis*

The aortic semilunar valves are thin membranous structures that normally oppose no resistance to the onward flow of blood during ventricular systole. According to Krehl, the aortic orifice is somewhat narrowed at this time by the contraction of the neighboring heart muscle, yet the blood flows smoothly past this narrowing into the wider aorta beyond without an appreciable obstruction. Disease of the semilunar valves may cause them to become stiff and rigid so that they obstruct the onward flow of blood. Furthermore, the edges of the diseased valves frequently become united at their lateral margins, thus leaving only a narrow orifice in the center.

**Three Stages of Stenosis.**—Experiments on animals have shown that, when the aorta is gradually obstructed just beyond the valves, the effects may be divided into three stages. Up to a certain point, constriction of the aorta produces no demonstrable effect upon the mechanism of the heart or blood vessels. The point at which this first stage of obstruction passes into the second stage, characterized by changes in the cardiac mechanism, seems to vary with the general peripheral resistance; for de Heer found that when the peripheral arterial resistance was low a relatively slight obstruction affected the cardiac mechanism, whereas when the resistance was high it required a greater constriction to produce changes. The second stage of obstruction is of particular interest to clinicians, because it causes circulatory changes that are still compatible with life. In the third or final stage of obstruction, the stenosis becomes so great that the heart can no longer maintain the circulation, and acute ventricular dilatation occurs.

**Second Stage.**—The second stage of aortic stenosis is characterized



by an increase in the pressure within the left ventricle during its systole. With progressing stenosis this systolic pressure may, in the dog, reach a maximum of 300 to 365 mm. of mercury. At the same time, the form of the intraventricular pressure curve changes. Instead of reaching its maximum in the earlier part of systole, the maximum is progressively shifted toward the end of systole, because the blood cannot escape freely from the contracting ventricle (Fig. 15). Furthermore, the total duration

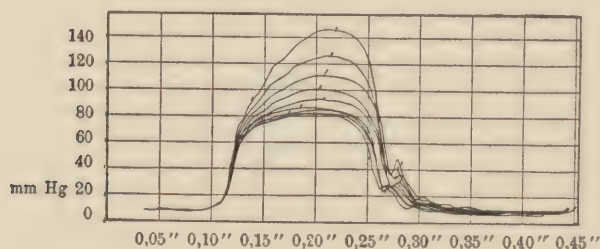


Fig. 15.—Effect of Experimental Aortic Stenosis upon the Intraventricular Pressure Curve. Note that as the Stenosis Increases the Intraventricular Pressure Rises, Particularly in the Latter Part of Systole. The Prolongation of Systole in this Experiment Is Not Marked. (From de Heer, Arch. f. Physiol.)

tion of systole tends to be increased with a lengthening of the period of systolic output. Such a lengthening is mechanically advantageous, for it enables the heart to force more blood past the obstruction. It should be remembered, however, that this prolongation of the systolic output is a late rather than an early effect of aortic obstruction.

**DYNAMIC CHANGES.**—The increased pressure within the ventricle during systole leads to dynamic changes, which are similar to those produced by a heightened arterial pressure (page 6). The ventricle empties itself less completely during systole, and the residual blood left in its cavity increases the ventricular volume during diastole. At the same time, there may be but little increase in the intraventricular pressure during diastole. This dilatation of the ventricle is not, necessarily, a sign of weakness; for, as we have seen, such a dilatation enables the muscle to develop greater energy during its subsequent contraction, and this heightened pressure forces more blood past the obstruction.

**Pulsus tardus.**—In experimental aortic stenosis the systolic output from the left ventricle is but slightly decreased during this second stage of obstruction. De Heer found a decrease of only 10 to 20 per cent. The systolic increase in the intraventricular pressure has compensated in large measure for the obstruction opposed to the onward flow of blood. The arterial blood pressure may be normal or it may be slightly reduced. The arterial pulse curve shows a rather typical change of form in marked cases of obstruction. Instead of attaining its maximum in the early part of systole, there is here, as in the curve of intraventricular pressure, a tendency to shift the maximum toward the latter part of the systolic period (pulsus tardus).

**Work of Left Ventricle.**—In aortic stenosis the work of the left

ventricle is increased owing to the marked rise in the intraventricular pressure during each systole. It is to be expected, therefore, that the left ventricle will hypertrophy, and such has indeed been found to be the case.

**Decompensation.**—So long as compensation is good the dilatation of the left ventricle is not marked, and the blood flow from the lungs is not seriously retarded. If the stenosis becomes excessive or if the left ventricle weakens, however, then a more marked dilatation of this cavity occurs, so that, eventually, there develops a relative insufficiency of the mitral valves along with the changes in the pulmonary circulation and in other parts of the heart that characterize that lesion.

**Aortic Insufficiency.**—A leak in the aortic valves allows blood to flow from the aorta into the left ventricle during diastole. The amount that regurgitates is difficult to estimate even in animals. Stewart held that

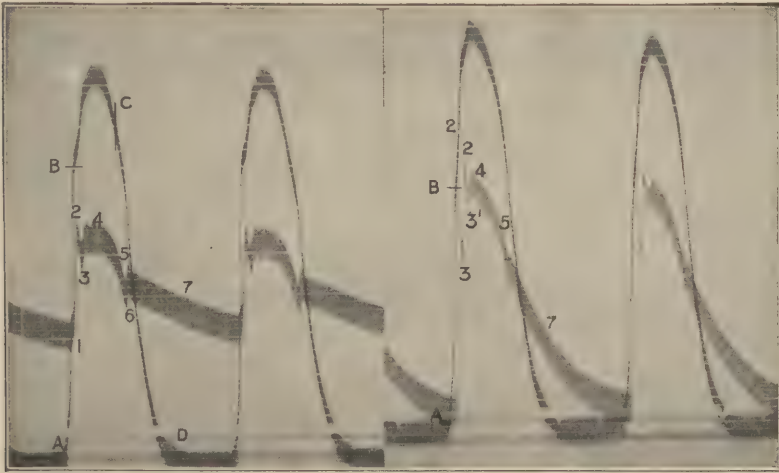


Fig. 15a.—Arterial and Left Ventricular Pressures in the Normal (Left) and in Aortic insufficiency (Right). Note That This Lesion Markedly Lowers the Minimum Arterial Pressure and Raises Slightly the Diastolic Pressure in the Ventricle. (From Wiggers.)

experimental valvular lesions, capable of causing all the characteristic changes of aortic insufficiency, allowed only a negligible regurgitation of blood. From MacCallum's experiments, however, it seems more probable that the backflow from the aorta may be considerable, and that, at times, it may even equal the inflow from the left auricle. Duroziez's sign, i.e., the production of a diastolic murmur by partially compressing the femoral artery, indicates that there is a backward movement of blood, in this artery, during diastole. The low diastolic arterial pressure indicates that blood escapes rapidly from the larger arteries. The constancy of these changes in severe cases of aortic insufficiency leads one to believe that considerable blood flows from the aorta into the left ventricle during diastole.

**Diastolic Pressure in the Left Ventricle.**—In experimental insufficiency, the increased filling of the left ventricle causes but a slight rise of diastolic pressure within this cavity (Fig. 15a). Under favorable conditions, the pressures in the left auricle and in the pulmonary circuit are not increased. The ventricle accommodates the influx of blood from the aorta without a marked rise of pressure, just as it does when the inflow from the veins is increased (page 7).

Patients with moderate aortic insufficiency seldom show marked pulmonary symptoms. This fact indicates that in them, as in experimental lesions, an obstruction to the flow of blood through the lungs is not an early manifestation of this valvular defect.

**Dilatation of Left Ventricle.**—Since the left ventricle receives and expels an increased quantity of blood at each systole, one would expect a dilatation of its cavity similar to that which occurs when the venous inflow is increased in the heart-lung preparation (page 7). Stewart, as well as MacCallum, found that in experimental aortic insufficiency the ventricular volume diminished rather than increased (increased tone). In man, however, the ventricular cavity appears to be dilated even when compensation has been good. This dilatation permits the ventricle to take up more blood and to develop greater power during its subsequent systole. It is, therefore, spoken of as a compensatory dilatation.

**Arterial Pressure.**—In aortic insufficiency the arterial pressure falls during diastole to an unusually low point. The systolic pressure, on the other hand, is usually normal or even somewhat increased and in no other condition is the difference between the two so marked. This uncommonly large pulse pressure indicates that the systolic output from the left ventricle is markedly increased.

**Primary and Secondary Hypertrophy.**—The work of the left ventricle in aortic insufficiency is increased, owing to the increased amount of blood that must be expelled at each systole. In consequence of this extra work, the left ventricle is always hypertrophied and often to a most marked degree. Since the extra work necessitated by aortic insufficiency falls directly upon the left ventricle, one should expect to find an hypertrophy of this chamber alone. This may indeed be found, as in one of Stadler's experiments. In most cases, however, in man as well as in animals, the hypertrophy, though most marked in the left ventricle, is not limited to this chamber but involves other parts of the heart. The cause for this extension is not altogether clear, but in many cases, it is to be regarded as a secondary effect of the aortic lesion. We have seen that, under favorable conditions, the additional blood that enters the left ventricle during diastole causes a dilatation of this cavity, with but little increase of pressure either in this cavity or in the left auricle. In such cases, the effects of the leak are borne entirely by the left ventricle. If, however, the collection of blood in the left ventricle during diastole causes



a marked rise of diastolic pressure in this chamber, it will interfere with the free influx of blood from the left auricle and will then lead to a pulmonary congestion. Furthermore, the dilatation of the left ventricle, which is almost constantly present in aortic insufficiency, may become so marked that it produces a relative insufficiency of the mitral valves, with the usual consequences for the other parts of the heart. Thus, aortic insufficiency may cause secondary changes, which bring about an hypertrophy of other chambers than the left ventricle.

**Heart Rate and the Amount of Regurgitation.**—The amount of blood that regurgitates in aortic insufficiency is determined not only by the size of the leak and the aortic pressure, but also by the duration of diastole. A fairly rapid heart rate with relatively short diastoles is mechanically advantageous. The increase in rate so frequently present is to be regarded as a compensatory phenomenon.

### *Mitral Stenosis*

Lesions of the auriculoventricular valves differ from lesions of the semilunar valves, in that the cardiac chamber immediately behind the lesion possesses only a weak muscular wall. The auricles are not provided

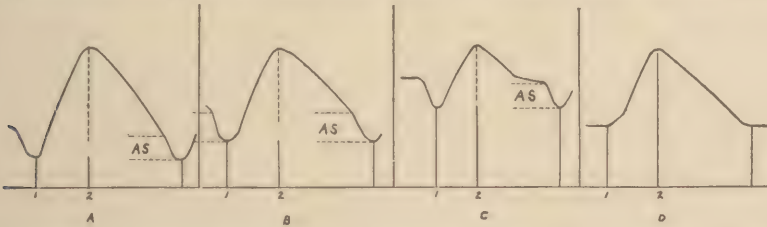


Fig. 16.—Effect of Mitral Stenosis upon Ventricular Filling. 1-2 Ventricular Systole. A Represents the Normal Relations. Auricular Systole (AS) Hardly Influences the Normal Ventricular Filling. B and C represent Increasing Grades of Stenosis. The Auricular Contractions Play a More Important Part in Ventricular Filling. D Represents a Degree of Stenosis Comparable to B, But the Auricle Is Inactive.

with valves that close during their systole, and thus prevent the blood from regurgitating. The entrance to the great veins is narrowed during auricular systole by the contraction of a ring of muscle. It is doubtful if this prevents some regurgitation. Under pathological conditions it is certain that considerable amounts of blood regurgitate during auricular systole.

**Marginal Fusion.**—In mitral stenosis the obstruction at the auriculoventricular orifice is usually produced by a fusion of the lateral margins of the valve leaflets, so that the latter become converted into a funnel-shaped structure with a small, round, oval or irregular hole at its end.

**Distention of Left Auricle.**—This stenosis obstructs the flow of blood from the left auricle to the left ventricle during ventricular diastole. Normally the ventricular filling takes place most rapidly during the first part of diastole, while the amount of blood added by the auricular

contraction is relatively insignificant. In experimental mitral stenosis the filling in early diastole is particularly diminished. The amount put in by the auricular systole may be normal or increased despite the obstruction, so that it makes up a large proportion of the whole (Fig. 16). Within limits the increased distention of the auricle caused by a mitral obstruction stimulates this chamber to more powerful contractions, just as an aortic stenosis causes more powerful contractions of the left ventricle and higher intraventricular pressures during its systoles. These more powerful auricular contractions may compensate for a moderate mitral obstruction, and eventually lead to hypertrophy of the auricular muscle from increased work.

**LIMITED COMPENSATION; FIBRILLATION.**—The ability of the thin-walled auricle to compensate a mitral stenosis is, however, limited. As the obstruction increases the auricle becomes more and more dilated and this dilatation eventually lessens the energy of its contractions. Fur-

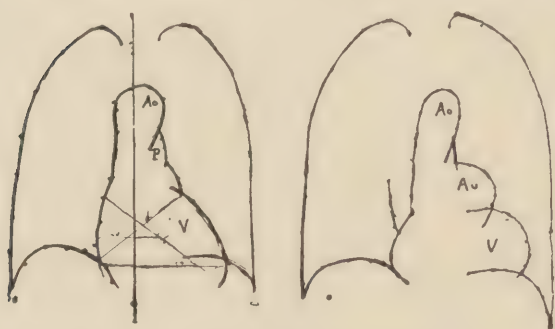


Fig. 17.—Orthodiagrams of Normal Heart Shadow (Left) and of Heart Showing a Marked Dilatation of the Left Auricle Caused by Mitral Stenosis (Right). (Kindness of Dr. Van Zwaluwenburg.)

thermore, there is a marked tendency in mitral stenosis to the development of auricular fibrillation, and since the fibrillating auricle is motionless from the mechanical point of view, any compensatory power which the auricle may have possessed previously is suddenly lost when fibrillation sets in.

Patients with mitral stenosis often show a very great enlargement of the left auricle. At autopsy it may even contain a pint or more of blood. During life the enlarged auricle often causes a characteristic prominence in the x-ray shadow of the left border of the heart between the shadow of the ventricles and that of the pulmonary artery (Fig. 17). Pressure by the enlarged auricle may also paralyze the recurrent laryngeal nerve.

**Pulmonary Engorgement.**—Since no adequate valvular arrangement exists between the left auricle and the pulmonary veins, any increased pressure in the left auricle tends to be transmitted to these veins and from them to the pulmonary capillaries. For this reason, mitral stenosis gives rise early to the symptoms of pulmonary engorgement. The increase of pressure in the pulmonary circuit also leads to a rise of pressure in the pulmonary arteries. The second pulmonic sound becomes accentuated, and the right ventricle in pumping against this increased pressure does more work and becomes hypertrophied. The rise of pressure in the

pulmonary circuit which is maintained by the extra work of the right ventricle, assists in forcing blood past the mitral obstruction and is, therefore, a compensatory process, for it aids in maintaining a normal rate of blood flow. Eventually, however, the right ventricle may weaken and dilate, so that blood collects in the systemic veins with the symptoms and signs of a general passive congestion.

**Reduced General Circulation.**—Mitral stenosis tends to reduce the circulation as a whole. The pulse is often remarkably small. At autopsy the left ventricle may be normal in size or it may be atrophied. This atrophy is an atrophy of disuse, and is due to the decreased amount of blood that is pumped by the left ventricle.

### *Mitral Insufficiency*

Leaks at the mitral orifice cause a regurgitation of blood into the left auricle during ventricular systole. Such leaks may be caused by *diseases of the valves themselves*. The vegetations that appear on the valves as a result of endocarditis may interfere with their close apposition, and ulcerations may cause valvular defects. More important, however, are the changes secondary to inflammation which cause shrinkage and deformities of the segments. Mitral leaks may also be due to changes in the muscular ring to which the valves are attached, or to changes in their cordæ tendineæ. The apposition of the valvular segments is assisted normally by the systolic contraction of the surrounding ring of muscle, while the papillary muscles with their cordæ tendineæ prevent the valves from being pushed back too far into the auricular chamber. When the heart muscle is weakened, the imperfect contractions of the mitral ring or of the papillary muscles may allow a leak to occur even though the valves themselves are normal. When the valves are diseased, a muscular insufficiency still further increases the leak. A dilatation of the left ventricle, such as may occur from myocardial weakness, from aortic disease, or from chronic arterial hypertension, is frequently associated with a dilatation of the muscular ring supporting the mitral valve. This gives rise to the type of mitral insufficiency which is spoken of as a *relative or muscular insufficiency*.

**Effect on Left Ventricle.**—So far as the left ventricle is concerned, the effects of mitral insufficiency are very similar to the effects produced when the ventricle must pump excessive quantities of blood (page 7). The blood that is regurgitated into the left auricle enters the ventricle again at the next diastole together with the blood that has come through the lungs. The left ventricle is more distended during diastole, and it contracts more energetically at the next systole with the expulsion of blood both into the aorta and into the left auricle. By increasing its stroke, the left ventricle may deliver the requisite amount of blood to the aorta



in spite of the mitral leak, and thus maintain a satisfactory circulation in the systemic vessels. The extra amount of blood pumped at each stroke, however, necessitates an increased amount of work on the part of the left ventricle, and this causes the hypertrophy that is regularly found at autopsy. The cavity of the left ventricle tends to become dilated on account of the increased amounts of blood that enter it at each diastole. In its earlier stages, this dilatation is of a compensatory character, for it enables the ventricle to do the extra work demanded of it.

**Auricular Pressure.**—The milder grades of mitral insufficiency may cause but a slight and transient increase in the intra-auricular pressure. The blood lost by the leak is returned to the ventricle at the next systole without a serious obstruction to the flow of blood through the pulmonary circuit. When the insufficiency is more marked, however, the pressure in the left auricle is continuously elevated, and the effects produced upon the left auricle, the pulmonary circuit and the right ventricle are in every way similar to those produced by mitral stenosis. The left auricle, at first, becomes moderately distended and hypertrophied but, finally, markedly dilated and weak. Auricular fibrillation is common. The pressure in the pulmonary circuit becomes increased with accentuation of the second pulmonic sound, the work of the right ventricle is increased, and eventually hypertrophy, weakness, and dilatation of this chamber occur. As in mitral stenosis the increased pulmonary pressure is, to a certain extent, a compensatory phenomenon, for it increases the filling of the left ventricle during diastole, and so increases the amount of blood that may be expelled from this cavity.

### *Valvular Lesions of the Right Heart*

Isolated valvular disease of the right side of the heart is relatively uncommon, for infectious processes localize more commonly on the valves of the left side. The effect of right-sided lesions upon the size of the cavities and the hypertrophy of the muscle is very similar to the effects produced by similar left-sided lesions; diseases of the pulmonary valves being comparable to aortic diseases, and diseases of the tricuspid valves being comparable to mitral diseases.

**Systemic Arterial and Venous Pressure.**—The right side of the heart differs, however, from the left side in that a rise of pressure in the systemic veins leads to no corresponding rise in the systemic arterial pressure. We have seen that in mitral disease the rise of pulmonary pressure is sustained by the increased work of the right ventricle and that this compensates to a certain degree for the unfavorable effects of the valvular defect. This mechanism finds no analogy in tricuspid disease, for there is here no rise in the systemic arterial pressure and no hypertrophy of the left ventricle.

**Tricuspid Insufficiency.**—Tricuspid insufficiency is most frequently of the relative type, being due to a dilatation or weakness of the right ventricle rather than to a disease of the valves. Clinically it is usually associated with disturbances on the left side of the heart, circulatory obstruction in the lungs or myocardial disease. The blood thrown back into the right auricle during ventricular systole tends to increase the pressure in this cavity and in the systemic veins. It was formerly held that such a regurgitation during systole would be immediately evident upon the venous pulse, and that instead of the normal fall in the venous curve during systole there would be a rise, producing the so-called positive venous pulse. We now know, however, that the normal fall in the venous pulse during ventricular systole is due in large measure to auricular diastole, and that, so long as the right auricle is contracting normally, this fall may occur even though tricuspid insufficiency be present. Only in marked cases of tricuspid insufficiency with failing contraction of the auricle is the positive venous pulse to be expected. We have learned, furthermore, that a positive venous pulse is frequently produced by conditions other than a tricuspid insufficiency, and particularly by a simultaneous contraction of auricles and ventricles (Fig. 32), as well as by an absence of normal auricular contractions, such as occurs in auricular fibrillations (Fig. 41). Except in marked instances of tricuspid regurgitation, therefore, the form of the venous pulse is of uncertain value as a diagnostic sign, and it must always be interpreted with due regard to the condition of the auricles.

**COMPENSATION. EFFECT ON LIVER.**—The heightened venous pressure in tricuspid regurgitation causes a more complete filling of the right ventricle with increased stroke and hypertrophy, just as occurs on the left side of heart during mitral regurgitation. By this means a certain degree of compensation is possible. The circulation may be maintained and the venous pressure may be kept from any considerable rise. It is obvious, however, that with increasing insufficiency the systemic venous pressure will rise, and that the usual signs of passive congestion of the internal organs will develop. The enlarged, tender, and later cirrhotic liver is familiar evidence of insufficiency of the right side of the heart. This enlargement of the liver may be due, in part, to the close proximity of the hepatic vein to the right auricle, but there seem to be, in addition, certain physiological differences between the liver and the other internal organs when all are subjected to a rising venous pressure. Thus Thacher found that when the venous flow to the right auricle was suddenly obstructed the volume of the liver and brain increased, whereas there was a reduction in the volume of the kidney, the spleen, the small intestines and the extremities. This reduction was due partly to a diminution in the arterial inflow, and partly to a constriction of the local blood vessels. Similar changes probably occur in any acute insufficiency of the right

heart. The liver, therefore, seems to act as a reservoir which takes up the excessive quantity of venous blood, whenever the systemic venous pressure is suddenly increased.

WEIGHT OF THE CARDIAC CHAMBERS.—The effects of an isolated tricuspid insufficiency upon the weight of the various cardiac chambers has been studied experimentally by Stadler. He found that the right ventricle, like the left in mitral insufficiency, is regularly hypertrophied in consequence of this lesion. The left ventricle in some animals was normal, in others it was diminished in weight. This diminution, like that occasionally seen in mitral stenosis, is due to relative disuse, owing to a reduction in the amount of blood coming to it.

### ***Congenital Heart Lesions***

Of the commoner congenital lesions, compatible with life and growth, *a stenosis at or just beyond the pulmonary orifice* leads to changes in the right heart analogous to those produced in the left by aortic obstructions. The right ventricle is markedly hypertrophied and eventually becomes dilated; and stasis occurs in the right auricle and the systemic veins. Not infrequently pulmonary stenosis is associated with an opening between the two ventricles or between the two auricles. In such cases the increased pressure on the right side of the heart may cause blood to pass through the abnormal openings to the left side of the heart without traversing the lungs.

The other common lesions: patent foramen orale, open ventricular septum, and patent ductus arteriosus, are all characterized by the fact that an opportunity is afforded for blood to pass freely between the systemic and the pulmonary circulation.

When there is no pulmonary stenosis, such direct communications between the two sides of the heart do not necessarily short circuit the lesser circulation. In *patent foramen orale* relatively little blood crosses the septum, because there is no great difference of pressure in the two auricles. Unless the opening is very wide or unless congestion occurs on one side or other of the septum (pulmonary disease) the lesion is usually not serious. In *open ventricular septum*, uncomplicated by pulmonary stenosis, blood passes back from the left to the right ventricle because the pressure in the former is greater than in the latter. In this way the right ventricle becomes hypertrophied and dilated.

In *patent ductus arteriosus*, blood flows from the aorta to the pulmonary artery, for the pressure in the former is normally three or more times that in the latter. Consequently, the pressure in the pulmonary artery is increased, the second pulmonic sound is accentuated, and the right ventricle becomes hypertrophied and eventually dilated. The loss of blood from the aorta may lower the diastolic pressure and occasionally



give rise to vascular signs analogous to those found in aortic insufficiency.

*Hypertrophy of the right ventricle* is common in congenital heart disease owing to the mechanical conditions just described. The left ventricle is relatively unaffected. For this reason electrocardiograms taken from patients with congenital heart disease frequently show the changes which characterize right ventricular preponderance (p. 56).

### ***Combined Valvular Lesions***

Valvular disease frequently involves more than one valve, and even when a single valve is affected there is often present both an insufficiency and a stenosis. Furthermore, any valvular lesion is apt to be complicated by a relative insufficiency at the mitral or tricuspid orifice, owing to ventricular dilatation or myocardial disease.

**Summation of Individual Effects.**—The effect of such combinations is in general a summation of the individual effects. Yet certain combinations prove relatively favorable, others unfavorable. The combination of aortic stenosis with mitral insufficiency, for example, is an unfavorable combination, for the heightened intraventricular pressure necessary to force sufficient blood through the narrowed aortic orifice increases the mitral leak. On the other hand, the combination of an aortic stenosis and a mitral stenosis is relatively favorable, for neither lesion during its period of compensation interferes with the other.

We have seen that, when the ventricle becomes very much dilated, a relative insufficiency may develop at its auriculoventricular orifice. The regurgitation, thus produced, may at times be of distinct benefit in that it relieves the ventricle of a certain amount of blood, and lessens, for the time being, the danger of serious dilatation. Particularly under conditions of unusual and temporary strain, such a leak may prove a safety valve which relieves the ventricle of imminent danger. Somewhat similarly the development of a relative tricuspid insufficiency, in patients with serious pulmonary congestion, may relieve the pulmonary congestion by allowing more blood to collect in the systemic veins. Such a change is unfavorable in that it reduces the total blood flow, yet it may relieve certain symptoms due to the pulmonary congestion.

## **Effect of Some Extraneous Factors Upon the Heart**

### ***Arterial Hypertension***

An increase in the systemic blood pressure may be due either to an increased output from the heart, or to an increased resistance in the peripheral vessels. The former is the main cause of the rise of blood pressure that accompanies muscular exertion. In most pathological conditions, however, arterial hypertension is due to an increase in the peripheral resistance.

**Acute.**—Transient rises of blood pressure may occur in association with emotional excitement, acute asphyxia, acute cerebral compression, lead colic and angina pectoris. Pal has grouped such temporary hypertension together and has called them *general vascular crises*. The effect produced by an acute rise of blood pressure upon the normal heart is comparable to that produced when the pressure, against which the left ventricle must pump, is suddenly raised in Starling's heart-lung preparation. Such a rise, as we have seen, causes a moderate increase in the size of the left ventricle which enables the ventricle to develop more energy, and to deliver a normal or nearly normal quantity of blood into the aorta despite the heightened blood pressure. It is possible, as Hirschfelder believes, that in the intact animal the heightened blood pressure may at times be associated with an increased ventricular tone, so that no dilatation whatever occurs. At any rate, the physiological dilatation, if present, is not extreme, and the normal heart may pump against enormous rises of blood pressure without signs of failure and without an appreciable rise of pressure in the pulmonary circuit. If, however, the ventricular muscle be already weakened by disease, an acute rise of blood pressure may be dangerous. The weakened heart is already somewhat dilated, and its ability to overcome a rise in arterial resistance is distinctly less than the normal. A sudden increase of resistance, due to vascular spasm, may so increase the strain on the left ventricle, as to lead to an acute and extreme dilatation with relative mitral insufficiency, pulmonary congestion, and possibly even death.

**Chronic.**—Chronic arterial hypertension is probably due to an increased resistance in the smaller arterioles throughout the body (page 112). It leads to an increase in the work of the left ventricle, and this, in turn, causes an hypertrophy of the ventricular muscle. At autopsy such ventricles always weigh more than the normal, and the ventricular cavity is often dilated. During life the aortic second sound is usually loud, and the ventricular enlargement is readily demonstrated by the usual methods of physical and x-ray examination. According to Pässler, hypertrophy of the right ventricle in patients with chronic arterial hypertension is a secondary phenomenon and is not present in those who have shown no evidence of cardiac insufficiency. He believes that in the earlier stages of chronic hypertension the left ventricle alone is affected. A weakening of its muscle or the development of a relative mitral insufficiency leads to a secondary congestion of the lungs and this in turn increases the work of the right ventricle and causes its hypertrophy.

### *Pulmonary Disease*

We have seen that a passive congestion of the pulmonary vessels, induced by mitral disease or by weakness of the left ventricle, leads to an

increased pressure in the pulmonary artery, and eventually to an hypertrophy of the right ventricle, which may in turn lead to dilatation.

**Obstruction of Circuit.**—The effect of obstructing portions of the pulmonary circuit has been studied experimentally by numerous observers. These studies have shown that it is possible to obstruct a large part of the pulmonary circulation, even up to three-fourths, without affecting the carotid pressure. A large part may also be obstructed without diminishing the output from the left heart, and without increasing the pressure in the systemic veins. It is evident, therefore, that a normal circulation may be maintained even though a considerable portion of the pulmonary vessels is thrown out of function. How is this accomplished? Evidently it must be done either by a rise of pressure in the pulmonary artery, which forces the normal quantity of blood through the reduced pulmonary circuit, or else there is a dilatation of the remaining pulmonary vessels. Both factors play a part; but since the rise of pressure in the pulmonary artery is not marked during such obstructions, the latter factor seems to be the more important, and one must conclude that the vessels in the lungs readily yield under slight increases of pressure.

**Pulmonary Distention.**—The circulation through the lungs is also influenced by the degree to which the lungs themselves are distended. The contention that a collapsed lung permits a more rapid flow of blood seems incorrect (page 407). It would appear rather that the normally distended, or slightly overdistended lung, offers less resistance to the flow of blood. Under pathological conditions pulmonary collapse is often associated with increased external pressure on the affected lung, and distention is often accompanied by a further lowering of the negative pressure to which the lung is normally subjected. These changes in external pressure likewise favor a more rapid blood flow through a distended, as compared with a collapsed, lung.

**Increased Work of Right Heart.**—Experimental studies as well as clinical experience indicate that the work of the right heart is increased only by extensive pulmonary disease. Patients who die of pulmonary tuberculosis usually show some hypertrophy of the right ventricle. According to Wideroe, this hypertrophy is more marked in elderly patients, in those who have long suffered from the disease and in those with extensive lesions. In this connection it may be pointed out, that the size of the heart shadow in tuberculous individuals as determined during life by the x-ray is, on the average, smaller than the normal heart shadow. The cause of this discrepancy between x-ray determinations and autopsy records is not evident; but it may depend either upon the low blood pressure, frequently seen in such patients, or upon an increased tone of the heart muscle, either of which might cause the ventricles to expel their contents more perfectly than usual.

**PULMONARY EMPHYSEMA.**—In pulmonary emphysema the loss of capil-



laries in the affected portions of the lungs together with the sclerosis of the pulmonary arterioles that may be present lead to a reduction in the total cross-section of the pulmonary circuit. In the earlier stages of the disease, this may be neutralized to some extent by the increased size of the thoracic cavity which increases the size of the lungs, and thus probably lessens the resistance in the remaining vessels. In such patients, the size of the heart shadow is often normal or even less than the normal. Eventually, however, the loss or narrowing of blood vessels together with the effects of continued cough lead to an hypertrophy of the right ventricle. The advanced stages of emphysema are not infrequently complicated by a serious insufficiency of the right heart with a rise of pressure in the systemic veins.

**VARYING INTRATHORACIC PRESSURE.**—Obstructions to the free transit of air through the air passages, such as occur in bronchial asthma and tracheal or laryngeal stenosis, influence the work of the heart. It is obvious that the normal respiratory variations of intrathoracic pressure will be markedly increased, when there is an obstruction to the free entrance and exit of air. These variations of pressure normally cause changes in the size of the capillaries and veins within the thorax, and changes in the blood flow to the heart. If these variations in blood flow be increased by stenosis of the respiratory passages, the heart is called upon to accommodate itself to unusually wide fluctuations in the inflow of blood during each phase of respiration. During coughing there is a sudden and transient increase in the intrathoracic pressure, which is followed by a sudden fall. Such sudden changes in intrathoracic pressure will likewise tax the heart and, particularly, the right ventricle. It seems probable, therefore, that the hypertrophy of the heart and particularly of the right ventricle that has been observed in patients suffering from chronic bronchitis and related conditions, is due in part to these sudden and unusual fluctuations in the intrathoracic pressure.

### ***Plethora, Anemia, etc.***

The older pathologists believed that plethora, or an increased amount of blood in the body, played an important part in producing cardiac hypertrophy. It seems not improbable that many of these supposedly plethoric individuals were, in reality, suffering from chronic arterial hypertension, and that the latter was the immediate cause of the hypertrophy observed. An increased amount of blood in the body does not necessarily lead either to hypertension or to an increased output from the heart, for the increase may well be taken up by a proportionate increase in the size of the blood vessels. Modern determinations have shown that the amount of blood in the body is usually increased in certain conditions, and particularly in polycythemia and in anemias of the chlorotic type (see Plethora). Yet

there seems to be no unusual hypertrophy of the heart in these patients, provided there is not an associated increase in arterial blood pressure. Nor did Hess find any cardiac hypertrophy, when plethora was artificially produced in animals by repeated injections of blood from other animals of the same species.

**Anemia and the Rate of Circulation.**—In anemia oxygen must be carried from the lungs to the tissues with a reduced amount of hemoglobin. This is accomplished in part by having the hemoglobin give up a greater proportion of its oxygen to the tissues. In addition there is, according to Plesch, an increased rate of blood flow whenever the anemia is at all severe. The maintenance of this rapid blood flow imposes considerable extra work on the heart. Marked cardiac hypertrophy, though rare, does occur occasionally. Slight hypertrophy appears to be common. (Cabot & Richardson).

**“Beer Heart.”**—It has long been known that the heavy beer drinkers of Munich not infrequently have unusually large hearts. This “beer heart” has been variously attributed to the amount of liquid taken, to the alcohol, or to the heavy work which these men often do. Later observations indicate that chronic hypertension is the probable cause of this cardiac hypertrophy.

## Compensation and Decompensation

### *Compensation*

A heart lesion is said to be compensated when the circulation is maintained in a normal or nearly normal manner. We have seen that compensation is accomplished by a variety of agencies, chief among which are an hypertrophy of the muscle and a “compensatory” dilatation of the cardiac chambers. These lead to an increase in the ventricular output, or to an increase in the energy of the ventricular contractions. It is usually assumed that the rate of blood flow during compensation is normal; but since this rate is not readily determined in man, the *ordinary criterion of a good compensation is an absence of cardiac symptoms*. The degree of compensation varies. When an individual is able to pursue the ordinary affairs of life in spite of his heart lesion, compensation is good. When his activities are only somewhat restricted, compensation is partial. Finally, when his activities are seriously interfered with or must be given up entirely, compensation has failed.

**Compensated Circulation Not Normal.**—Even though compensation be good and the normal quantity of blood be supplied to the body, nevertheless the compensated circulation is not a normal circulation. The very

changes necessary to maintain a normal flow of blood may carry with them certain disadvantages and certain dangers. We have seen that cardiac lesions cause an increase in the size of certain parts of the heart owing to dilatation and hypertrophy. This increase in size lessens the available lung space in the thoracic cavity; and while such a limitation is not ordinarily serious it may, in extreme cases, interfere with respiration. Of greater importance is the fact that mitral lesions usually cause an increased pressure in the pulmonary circuit. This serves the useful purpose of forcing more blood into the left ventricle. On the other hand, the collection of blood in the lungs is not without its disadvantages. It causes the anatomical changes characteristic of passive pulmonary congestion, increases the tendency to pulmonary infection, may cause microscopic or gross hemorrhages, and probably plays a part in the etiology of the dyspnea that occurs so early in mitral valve disease. In tricuspid disease a similar congestion of the systemic veins occurs, even though a normal amount of blood is being pumped by the heart. In aortic insufficiency the wide fluctuations in the arterial blood pressure at each beat cause violent pulsations of the arteries, and the associated throbbing sensations may become very distressing. These violent pulsations are also the probable cause of the arterial widening and the anatomical changes in the arterial walls, that have been repeatedly noted in connection with aortic insufficiency. It is evident, therefore, that in valvular as well as in muscular disease of the heart the average blood flow may be normal and yet changes of more or less importance have taken place in different parts of the circulatory apparatus.

### *Causes of Broken Compensation*

Only occasionally is there an abrupt failure in a previously normal circulation. The rupture of an aortic valve, the lodgment of an embolus in a coronary artery, the acute dilatation of an apparently normal heart during violent exercise, are examples of such sudden failure. As a rule, failure occurs in hearts which have shown previous evidence of disease, and in which a certain degree of compensation has been established. What are the causes of such a failure?

**Progressive Lesions.**—Compensation may fail because the original lesion is a progressive one, and the demands made by this lesion ultimately exceed the compensatory powers of the circulatory apparatus. In stenosis of the mitral valve, for example, the orifice may become so small that, in spite of all compensatory measures, sufficient blood cannot be forced past the narrowed orifice. Similarly an aortic leak may become so great that the greatest hypertrophy and dilatation, of which the left ventricle is capable, ultimately fail to maintain a satisfactory circulation.

**Extraneous Demands; Muscular Exercise.**—Compensation may also fail because increased demands of an extraneous character are made upon



the heart. A rise of blood pressure due to a widespread vascular constriction may overtax a weakened ventricle. In aortic insufficiency such a rise not only increases the resistance during the ventricular systole, but it increases the amount of blood that regurgitates during diastole. A rise of arterial pressure is particularly disadvantageous in this lesion. Of all extraneous demands made upon the heart, however, the most important is muscular exercise. During severe exercise the minute output of the heart is always increased and, according to the determinations of Krogh and Lindhard, it may even be five or more times the normal minimum. The blood pressure is also elevated. Both these factors increase the work of the heart. It is not surprising, therefore, that diseased hearts, which maintain an adequate circulation for the resting body, are unequal to the task of maintaining the increased circulation that is necessary during exercise. When the exercise ceases, the heart may again be capable of doing the work required of it, but the frequent repetition of excessive demands exercises an unfavorable influence on cardiac compensation. Conversely, if exercise be so restricted that the limits of compensation are never overstepped, time is given for the adjustments, and, particularly, for the hypertrophy requisite for compensation. For this reason rest in bed plays an important part in the treatment of every cardiac insufficiency. Occasionally muscular exertion so far exceeds the limits of accommodation, that a serious and even irreparable damage is done to the heart within a brief period of time.

**Disease of the Heart Muscle.**—A most important cause of cardiac decompensation is disease of the heart muscle. A progressive myocarditis or an advancing sclerosis of the coronary arteries ultimately reduces the strength of the muscle and causes insufficiency. Disease of the heart muscle is frequently due to an acute infection, and it is by no means uncommon to encounter patients whose symptoms of decompensation date from an apparently insignificant "cold." The changes induced by an infection may be of a chronic, progressive character, or they may be acute and terminate in recovery. Of great importance is the fact, that those who have once suffered from acute myocarditis as a result of chronic tonsillar disease are liable to further attacks of similar origin; and, for this reason, the removal of the primary source of infection becomes of paramount importance in the prophylactic treatment of such patients.

**Dangers of Hypertrophy.**—Hypertrophy of the heart seems to carry with it the danger of failure. In most cases, this failure is attributable to the factors just discussed, and possibly to some special susceptibility of the hypertrophied muscle toward infection. The view of certain observers that hypertrophy in itself leads, eventually, to weakness has been referred to elsewhere (page 21).

**Changes in Cardiac Rhythms.**—Finally, compensation may be disturbed by changes in the cardiac rhythm. Premature contractions with a

relatively small output of blood place an extra strain on the heart at the next heart beat. If these recur frequently, or in succession, they may lead to insufficiency in a heart that is already working near its limit. In other disturbances of rhythm, the auricles and ventricles contract simultaneously, and the auricles being unable to throw blood into the ventricles during their systole, empty a part of their contents back into the veins. It is obvious that this mechanism is an undesirable one. Most important of all the irregularities, however, is auricular fibrillation. In this arrhythmia the auricles are, from the mechanical standpoint, practically motionless. We have seen that in mitral stenosis the increased auricular contractions may play a part in forcing blood past a moderate obstruction, and that when fibrillation sets in this auricular compensation is lost. Auricular fibrillation is most serious, however, because it usually causes a rapid and very irregular ventricular rhythm. Many of the smaller ventricular systoles may fail to expel sufficient blood to cause a palpable radial pulse, the energy of ventricular contraction being wasted in simply raising the intraventricular pressure. It is not surprising, therefore, that the onset of auricular fibrillation frequently coincides with an aggravation of cardiac symptoms, and that the patient, who had formerly been comfortable, suddenly becomes breathless on exertion, and develops other evidences of cardiac insufficiency.

### *Effects of Decompensation*

The manifestations of cardiac decompensation depend, in the first place, upon a diminution in the minute output from the heart and a general slowing of the blood stream throughout the body. Owing to this slowing, the supply of oxygen and of food material to the tissues, and the removal of carbon dioxid and other waste products from them, will be interfered with. The character of the nutritional changes that follow is, however, but imperfectly understood. The manifestations of cardiac insufficiency depend, in the second place, upon an abnormal distribution of blood. There is a collection of blood in the veins and a passive congestion of various organs. When the left side of the heart weakens, this congestion is most marked in the lungs, and when the right side of the heart weakens, it is most marked in the systemic veins and organs.

While the manifestations of cardiac insufficiency, such as the dyspnea, the swollen liver, the albuminuria, the edema and the gastro-intestinal disturbances, are doubtlessly due to these two factors, lessened blood flow and venous congestion, the exact mechanism of their production, in each case, is more or less obscure, and it will be discussed under the appropriate headings.

**Dilatation of Heart Cavities.**—Decompensation is usually associated with the dilatation of one or more cavities of the heart. Any rise of venous pressure increases the diastolic filling of the corresponding auricle

and ventricle. The chambers thus affected contract more powerfully at first, and thus tend to pump more blood from the venous to the arterial side of the vascular system. Eventually, however, the energy of the contractions lessens, and this favors further dilatation of the cardiac chambers.

**Systemic Arterial Pressure.**—It might be assumed that a lessened output from the left ventricle would cause a fall of the systemic arterial pressure in all cases of broken compensation. Yet such is not the fact, and, even with advanced decompensation, the arterial pressure is usually maintained at a normal or even a heightened level. Furthermore, when compensation is reëstablished by rest and the use of digitalis, the blood pressure may fall to a lower level than that maintained during decompensation. Since the systolic output from the heart during decompensation is diminished, the blood pressure must be maintained at or above the normal level by an increase in the constriction of the peripheral arterioles, which thus compensate or overcompensate for the reduced cardiac output. Sahli has designated this condition as a “high pressure stasis.” According to Lang and Manswetowa, the increase in the blood pressure during decompensation is particularly marked in those suffering from mitral disease or from pulmonary emphysema. Possibly, as these authors suggest, this may be because the left ventricle is but little affected in these conditions. Possibly, also, it depends upon the more marked cyanosis, which often accompanies these conditions, and which may stimulate the vasomotor center and so increase the peripheral resistance.

## Disturbance of Cardiac Rate and Rhythm

### *Fundamental Properties of the Heart Muscle*

The heart muscle possesses certain fundamental properties which determine the rhythm and force of the cardiac contractions. Like living tissue in general, it is responsive to external stimuli, its most manifest response to such stimuli being a contraction. *Irritability* and *contractibility* are, therefore, two of the fundamental properties of the heart muscle. The heart muscle not only contracts in response to external stimuli, but it has, in addition, the property of *initiating spontaneous beats*. The exact mechanism that initiates such beats is not understood, but it is usually assumed that, after each cardiac contraction, there is a gradual accumulation of certain unstable compounds in the heart muscle which finally reaches a point where these suddenly decompose, and, in doing so, initiate a cardiac contraction. By virtue of the fourth property of the heart muscle, its *conductivity*, contractions which have been initiated in one region of the heart are conducted to adjacent regions. An impulse



wherever started tends, therefore, to produce a systole of the entire heart.

While the heart muscle as a whole appears to possess all of these fundamental properties, there is a relative differentiation of function in its different parts. The sinus node and the His bundle possess, to a high degree, the property of initiating beats; the His bundle and its branches conduct excitation waves with great speed; while the properties of contraction and of tone are highly developed in the heart muscle proper.

**The Refractory Period.**—An electrical stimulus applied to the heart muscle during diastole causes a cardiac contraction. During systole it is without effect. The muscle is then said to be refractory to the stimulus. This refractory period begins when the excitation wave enters the muscle and lasts to about the end of systole. After this, the excitability rapidly returns. The refractory period plays an important rôle in the analysis of certain cardiac irregularities, because a stimulus that reaches a chamber during its refractory period produces no systole. Conduction is also markedly depressed immediately after a wave has passed over the conducting tissues. It gradually returns to normal during early diastole.

**The Pacemaker of the Heart.**—Although any portion of the heart muscle is inherently capable of initiating contractions, the pace of the whole organ is ordinarily governed by impulses that arise from a single region, where the automatic rhythm is more rapid than in any other part of the heart muscle. Contractions initiated by this pacemaker spread to all parts of the heart and discharge the unstable compounds that are collecting elsewhere. The automatic rhythms of outside regions, therefore, do not become evident under normal conditions. If, however, the entire heart is not discharged with each beat, an opportunity is afforded for impulses to be built up in the undischarged regions. This happens, for example, in the ventricles when the conduction of impulses from the auricles is interrupted. The function of pacemaker will also pass from the normal to an abnormal site, whenever the inherent automatic rate of the latter exceeds the automatic rate of the former.

**Sinus Node.**—The pace of the heart is controlled normally by impulses that arise in the region of the sulcus terminalis, at the junction of the superior vena cava and the right auricle (Fig. 18). In this region there lies a club-shaped node of specialized tissue, the so-called sinus node, which differs from adjacent portions of the heart muscle in that the fibers are smaller, fusiform in shape and less definitely striated, while their nuclei are more elongated. This node contains numerous nerve fibers. The cardiac rhythm normally takes its origin in this node, and usually at about the level of its widest portion. The application of cold or of heat to this region causes a slowing or acceleration of the heart rate, whereas applications to other regions are for the most part without effect.

Furthermore, electric negativity, which always accompanies muscular contractions, usually appears in the widest portion of the sinus node before it appears in other parts of the auricles.

The wave of excitation, which originates in the sinus node, spreads over the auricular muscle in an ever widening circle. According to Lewis, Meakins and White, the rate of spread is approximately 1,000 mm. per second.

#### Tawara's Node and His Bundle.—

The conduction system between the auricles and ventricles consists of a node of specialized tissue, the auriculoventricular

node of Tawara, together with extensions from this node into the auricles and into the ventricles. The latter extension constitutes the bundle of His, and it is the sole functional connection between the auricles and ventricles. This bundle descends to the right side of the membranous interventricular septum. Here it gives off its left branch, which passes through the septum. The right branch continues down the right side of the septum and follows the moderator band to the bases of the papillary muscles, where it breaks up into branches. The left branch divides freely beneath the endocardium of the left side of the septum. Two main strands pass to the papillary muscles of the mitral valve. The ultimate ramifications of the His bundle consist of the well-known Purkinje fibers. These form an interlacing network which lines the inner surface of the ventricular muscle just beneath the endocardium.

Impulses travel through the Purkinje system at a rate of from 3,000

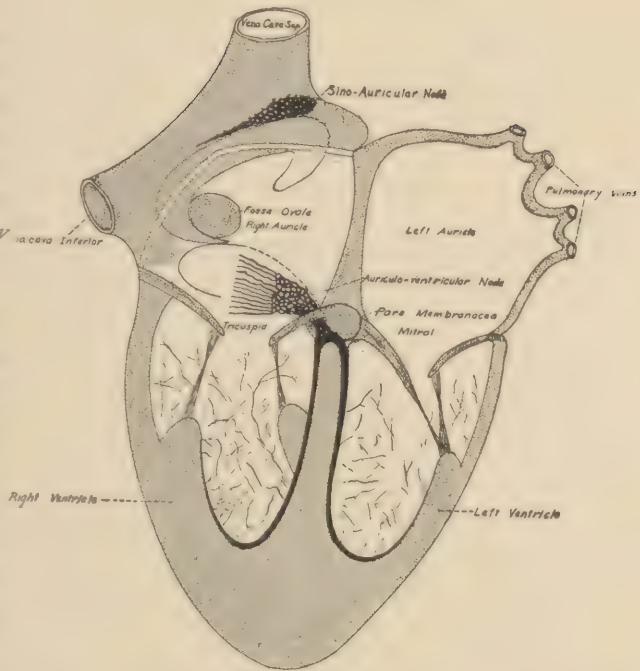


Fig. 18.—Diagram of the Specialized Heart Tissues. The Pace of the Heart Is Normally Determined by the Sino-auricular Node. Conduction from the Auricles to the Ventricles Occurs Through the Auriculoventricular Node. The Ventricular Prolongation from the Latter (His Bundle) Divides into Two Main Branches which Proceed Toward the Apex and Give off Branches to the Inner Surface of the Ventricular Walls. (Redrawn after Koch, *Ztschr. f. exp. Path. u. Therap.*)

to 5,000 mm. per second; while the rate of conduction in the ventricular muscle is about one-tenth as fast. For this reason the excitation wave coming from the auricles quickly spreads over the endocardial surface of the ventricles and penetrates the muscular walls in a direction roughly perpendicular to the endocardial surface.

### **Heart Muscle and Nerves**

**Myogenic and Neurogenic Theories.**—The heart, even though separated from all extrinsic nerves, continues to beat in a normal manner, and strips of cardiac muscle, if placed under proper conditions, execute rhythmic contractions. Whether in mammals this automatic activity of the heart resides solely in its muscular fibers (myogenic theory), or whether it depends in part or in whole upon nerve cells that lie imbedded in the muscle (neurogenic theory), is still a subject of physiological discussion. From the clinical standpoint, the decision of this question is not of immediate importance. In either case, the heart muscle together with the contained nerve cells constitutes an automatically contracting organ.

**Effects of Vagus and Sympathetic Nerve Stimulation.**—The heart receives extraneous nerve fibers from both vagi and from the cardiac sympathetic or accelerator nerves. Impulses conveyed by way of these nerves do not cause contractions of the heart directly, but they modify the fundamental properties of its muscle. In a general way, stimulation of the vagus depresses the fundamental properties, and particularly the tone (page 9), the rate of impulse formation and conduction, whereas stimulation of the sympathetic nerve acts in an opposite manner.

### ***Clinical Methods for Studying the Cardiac Mechanism***

The cardiac mechanism of man must ordinarily be studied by bloodless procedures. For this purpose two general methods are available. In the first, mechanical movements, produced by the heart or blood vessels, are recorded; in the second, records are made of the electric changes that accompany each wave of contraction as it sweeps over the heart muscle.

### **Mechanical Methods**

**Apex and Arterial Records.**—Mechanical records may be taken from various points. Movements due to ventricular contractions may be recorded either from the arteries, or from the neighborhood of the heart itself. Apex and other records of movements of the chest wall usually show a large number of waves. The details of such curves vary considerably, not only in different individuals but in the same individual, according to the point examined, the posture of the patient and the recording methods used. Frequently it is difficult to determine the significance of the individual waves on such cardiograms. Nevertheless, apex tracings



possess one distinct advantage over arteriograms, for all ventricular beats are usually recorded, whereas, during irregular heart action, some ventricular systoles may fail to produce an appreciable arterial pulse. Arterial records, on the other hand, are preferable as standards of measurement, because the onset of the pulse wave is usually sharply defined, whereas the exact onset of the ventricular contractions is sometimes difficult to determine in apex tracings.

**Venous Pulse.**—The modern analysis of cardiac irregularities received its first great stimulus from James Mackenzie's extensive and systematic studies of the venous pulse in patients suffering from heart disease. In the venous pulse, waves produced by auricular and by ventricular activities can usually be recognized, and the time relationships between these permit an analysis of the mechanism of many cardiac irregularities. Similar

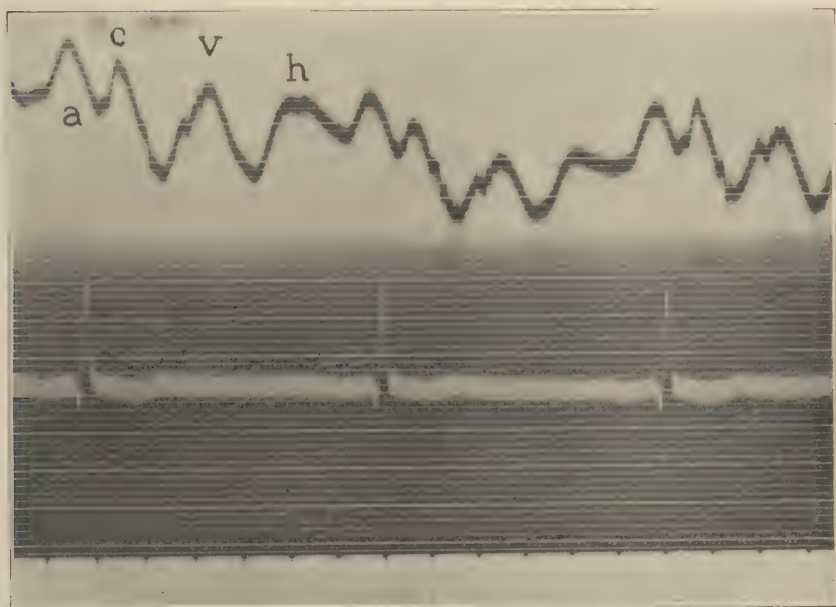


Fig. 19.—Normal Venous Pulse Showing a Well Marked h Wave. (This as Well as Other Electrocardiograms Were Kindly Furnished by Dr. F. N. Wilson.)

records of auricular and ventricular systoles may be obtained under favorable conditions from the apex region, from within the esophagus, and from liver pulsations. For practical purposes, however, a record of the venous pulsations has proved the most serviceable of the mechanical methods for studying cardiac irregularities.

**THE VENOUS WAVES.**—The analysis of the jugular pulse is made with reference to a simultaneous record of the apex, the arterial pulse or the electrocardiogram. At about the time of the carotid pulse and about

0.1 second before the radial pulse, a wave is seen in the venous record, which is called the *c* wave. This is usually preceded by the *a* wave, and is followed by the *v* wave (Fig. 19). The *a* wave is due to the contraction of the right auricle, the *c* and *v* waves are expressions of ventricular activity. The fall of the *v* wave is produced by the opening of the tricuspid valves and the subsequent rush of blood into the right ventricle. In slow heart rhythms there may also occur a well-defined pulsation after the *v* wave, the so-called *h* wave of Hirschfelder. In the analyses of most irregularities it is sufficient to remember that the *a* waves indicate auricular contractions, and that the *c*, *v* and *h* waves are referable to the activities of the ventricle. Except for the positive venous pulse (page 39), no definite significance can be attached to variations in the size of these waves.

### Electrical Methods

#### Muscular Contraction and Electrical Changes. Electrocardiogram.—

The second general method for studying the mechanism of the heart beat is the electrical method. Every muscular contraction is associated with electrical changes which begin as a primary negative electrical potential that travels over the muscle. The electrical currents generated by the heart may be recorded by connecting a very sensitive galvanometer, such as the string galvanometer of Einthoven, to the extremities of the body. For this purpose three methods of leading off the current from the body are in general use: *Lead I*, from the two arms; *Lead II*, from the right arm and left leg, and *Lead III*, from the left arm and left leg.

Electrocardiograms from a normal individual usually show a series of waves called the *P*, *Q*, *R*, *S*, and *T* waves (Fig. 20). Of these, *P* is evidence of auricular activity, while *Q*, *R*, *S* and *T* are produced by the activities of the ventricles. The electrocardiogram, like the venous pulse, enables one to recognize the time relationships between the auricular and ventricular contractions. In addition, however, the electrocardiogram indicates the direction in which contractions are spreading over the heart muscle. *P* is normally upright in all leads. Since we know that normal auricular contractions are initiated in the region of the sinus node, it may be assumed that, wherever *P* is upright in all leads, the auricular contractions originate in or near the sinus and spread in a normal manner from the right upper toward the left lower portion of the auricular muscle. Alterations of *P* may be due to various causes. When the contraction starts in some portion of the auricle other than the sinus region, *P* is frequently inverted or otherwise changed in one or more leads. Thus the inversion, seen in the first portion of Fig. 31, is due to the initiation of auricular contractions in the auriculoventricular node. Inversions of *P* in Lead III are not uncommon, but their significance is not established.

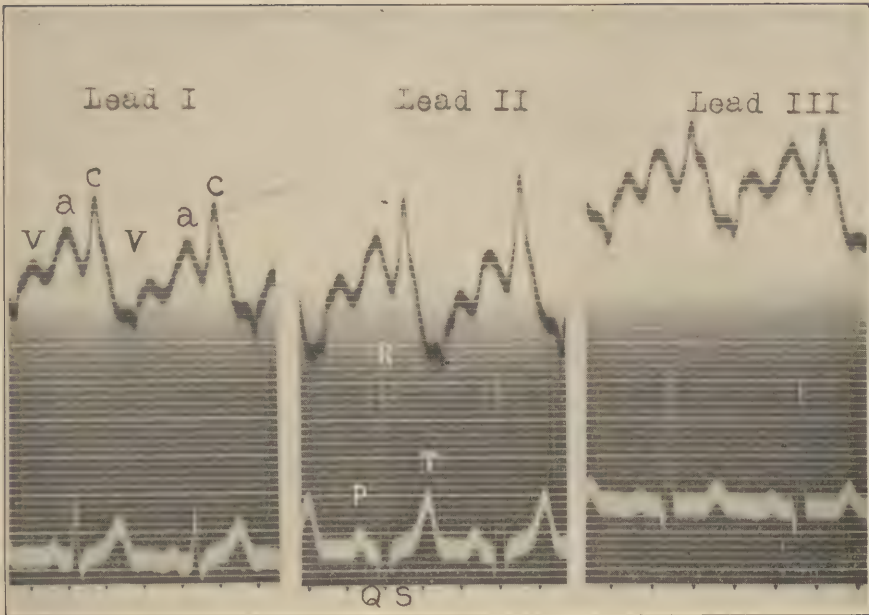


Fig. 20.—Normal Electrocardiograms. Note that R Is Highest in Lead II, Being Equal to the Sum of the Heights in Leads I and III.

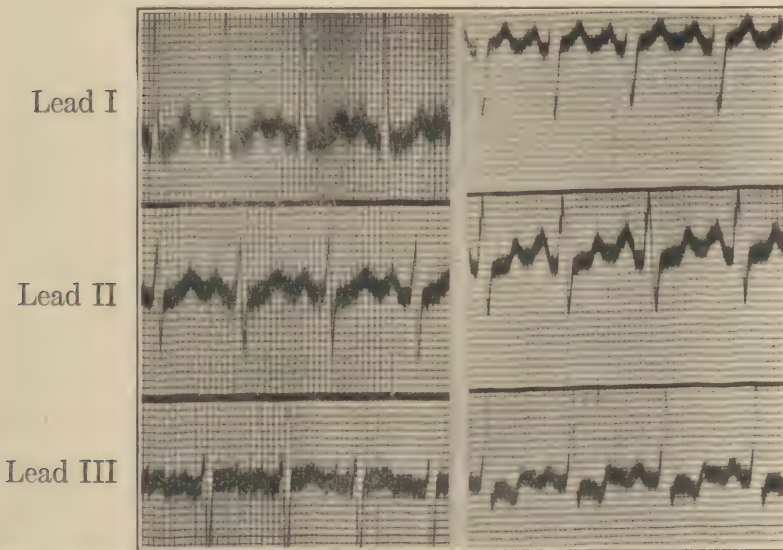


Fig. 21.—Effect of Left Ventricle Preponderance (Left) and of Right Ventricle Preponderance (Right) on the Electrocardiogram. In the Former, the Main Deflection of the QRS Group Is Directed Upward in Lead I and Downward in Lead III, while the Opposite Is the Case in Right Ventricle Preponderance. The Former from a Patient with Chronic Hypertension, the Latter from a Patient with Mitral Stenosis.



*P* may also be altered if the contraction wave spreads through the auricular muscle by some unusual route. Finally, *P* is frequently high and notched in patients with mitral stenosis, due to the changes in the left auricle that accompany this lesion.

**Abnormal Ventricular Complexes.**—Normal ventricular contractions are produced by stimuli that enter the ventricles through the His bundle and spread through the ramifications of its branches in a normal manner.

The form of the ventricular complex may be altered by various causes and in various ways. Among these are the following:

(1) *Changes in the position of the heart* alter its electrical axis and thus modify the records. Changes of this type are produced by respira-

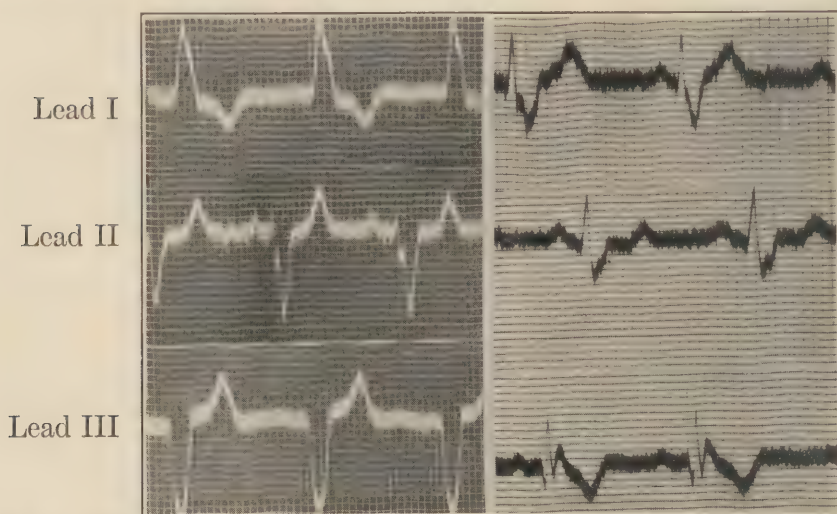


Fig. 22.—Effect of Conduction Changes in Branches of the His Bundle upon the Electrocardiogram. The Figure to the Left Is Characteristic of Injury to the Right Branch of the Bundle. QRS Is Prolonged and T Is Directed in an Opposite Direction. The Figure to the Right Suggests Damage to the Left Conduction System.

tion. During deep inspiration the heart assumes a more vertical position; *R* becomes lower in Lead I and higher in Lead III. During deep expiration, the heart assumes a more transverse position and changes of an opposite type occur. Analogous alterations in the records are probably produced by any other causes which affect the inclination of the heart within the thorax.

(2) The form of the ventricular complex is altered when there is an *increase in the muscle mass of one ventricle* relative to the muscle mass of the other. When the left ventricle is relatively hypertrophic, *R* is highest in Lead I, while *S* is marked in Lead III. When the right ventricle is relatively hypertrophic, *S* is marked in Lead I and *R* is highest in Lead

III. This sign of left ventricular preponderance is frequently encountered in chronic arterial hypertension and may be present in aortic valve disease. Right ventricular preponderance is normal in new-born infants. It is marked in the pulmonary stenosis of congenital heart disease and it is not infrequent in mitral stenosis.

(3) The form of the ventricular complex is altered whenever *the wave travels by some unusual path* through the ventricles. Experimental section of one branch of the His bundle alters the path by which the wave spreads and markedly changes the ventricular complex. Largely on the basis of such experiments, similar records obtained from patients have been attributed to conduction changes within one branch of the His bundle. In such conditions the electrocardiogram is usually characterized: (a) by a marked widening in the *Q R S* complex and (b) by a *T* wave that shows an inclination opposite to that of the main primary wave, thus giving the curve a diaphasic shape (Fig. 22). Most commonly *R* is high and *T* is negative in Lead I, while the opposite conditions prevail in Lead III. Such records are attributed to a lesion in the right branch of the His bundle. Records attributable to lesions in the left branch of the bundle are less common, possibly because the left branch divides early and lesions of its divisions do not produce characteristic changes. Minor alterations have been attributed by some to heart muscle lesions which interfered with a normal spread of the excitation wave over secondary branches of the His bundle (arborization block). By others they have been ascribed to delayed conduction in one of its primary divisions.

(4) When a *ventricular contraction is initiated within the ventricles*, at some point other than the stem of the His bundle, it spreads over the muscle by an unusual path and the resulting complex is aberrant. Such is the case in most ventricular extrasystoles. (Figs. 34–36.)

(5) *Various changes in T* have been described. Stimulation of the sympathetic nerves, for example, causes *T* to become larger. The heightened *T* after muscular exercise is presumably due to this cause. Therapeutic doses of digitalis frequently cause *T* to become flat or inverted, particularly in Leads II and III. Inversion of *T* in Lead III is not infrequent and apparently has no great clinical significance; but inversion of *T* in Lead I is said to indicate a serious cardiac lesion.

### ***Sinus Variations in Rate and Rhythm***

Moderately rapid and moderately slow heart rates without irregularity are usually due to changes in the rate of impulse formation in the sinus node. In such cases electrocardiograms and venous tracings show no departure from the normal, either in the site of the pacemaker or in the conduction of impulses over the heart.

### The Normal Heart Rate

The average heart rate in healthy adults is about 70 beats per minute for men and about 80 beats for women. The rate is much faster in the new-born infant (130 per minute). It diminishes considerably during early infancy, and to a lesser extent during childhood and adolescence. In old age the rate may again increase, but whether this is to be regarded as a strictly physiological phenomenon, or whether it is dependent on the cardiovascular changes so common at this time of life, is not certain.

**Variations in Rate.**—In a given individual the pulse rate varies considerably. It becomes more rapid when he passes from the lying to the standing position. It accelerates with excitement and with exercise. It is lowest in the morning before rising and before any activities of the waking day have tended to accelerate it.

Among adult individuals who are apparently normal there are considerable variations from the average pulse rate. In some the rates remain for years between 50 and 60, while in others rates of 90 or over may persist even when such accelerating influences as emotion and exercise are eliminated. As a rule, however, rates over 90 which persist when the patient is at rest in bed are pathological.

**Causes of Variations.**—Changes in the rate of impulse formation in normal hearts are due either to chemical or to nervous influences. There is a rough parallelism between the metabolic rate and the pulse rate. Both the vagus and the accelerator nerves influence the heart rate. Frequently they seem to act together, stimulation of the one being associated with inhibition of the other. In most instances the precise combination which causes a change in sinus rate has not been determined.

### Sinus Tachycardias

The rate of impulse formation in the sinus is normally subject to a continuous inhibition by way of the vagus nerves. If this tonic vagus inhibition be removed, either by cutting the vagi or by the administration of atropin or similar drugs, the sinus rhythm becomes more rapid. The subcutaneous injection of 1/60 grain of atropin in young individuals usually accelerates the pulse to over 100 a minute. When the same dose is administered to elderly persons, the acceleration is less marked and may be absent; apparently, because the tonic vagus inhibition of the sinus node is more pronounced in young individuals than in those who are older. A rapid heart rate due to the removal of vagus tone occurs clinically in the later stages of meningitis after the period of vagus stimulation has passed. It has also been described in patients with organic disease of the vagus nerves.



**Exercise and Pulse Rate.**—During exercise the pulse rate increases very promptly (Fig. 9). This primary rise of rate is due in part to a diminution of vagus tone, which continues throughout the exercise. The increased rate during exercise may also be due in part to an increased activity of the accelerator nerves, for the electrocardiogram during exercise shows changes similar to those produced by accelerator stimulation. Finally, the increased temperature of the body and the increased rate of metabolism may play some part in making the pulse more rapid. In certain pathological conditions exercise produces an excessive increase in the heart rate. This occurs particularly in those with irritable hearts, in those suffering from anemia and in those with cardiac insufficiency.

**Heart Rate and Low Blood Pressure.**—The increase of heart rate associated with low blood pressure seems to be due in part to a direct effect of the lowered pressure upon the medullary centers, for tachycardia may be produced experimentally by reducing the pressure in a completely isolated cerebral circulation.

**Cardiac Insufficiency and Myocardial Disease.**—In cardiac insufficiency and in myocardial disease the heart rate is frequently more rapid than normal. In some instances, this increase may be due to disease in the region of the sinus node. More commonly, there is no reason to assume disease in this region, and the cause of the increased rate is not clear.

**Fever.**—An increase in the heart rate usually accompanies fever. In a general way, each Fahrenheit degree of fever causes an increase of seven to nine beats per minute. The rapid pulse of fever depends in part upon the rise of body temperature, which directly influences the rate of impulse formation in the sinus node, for we know that the rhythm of the isolated heart can be slowed or accelerated by cooling or warming the sinus region. The low blood pressure present in some infections may also play a part in causing an acceleration of the pulse. It is evident, however, that these are not the only factors which produce the pulse changes in infectious diseases, for in certain infections the heart is relatively rapid, whereas in others it is relatively slow. Thus, both tuberculosis and typhoid fever tend to reduce the blood pressure, yet the former is usually associated with a rapid pulse relative to the temperature, whereas the latter, in its earlier stages, is usually associated with a slow pulse. Such variations of rate in different infections must depend in part upon specific differences in the character of the infection.

**Exophthalmic Goiter.**—The tachycardia of exophthalmic goiter is apparently due to the toxic action of substances derived from the hyperactive thyroid gland, for a similar acceleration of the pulse may be produced by the administration of thyroid substance. The increase in pulse rate roughly parallels the increase of metabolism. The mechanism that accelerates the heart in this disease is not definitely known, both stimulation of the accelerator nerve and a diminution in the tone of the vagus

nerves having been held responsible. That the heart muscle may also be affected seems probable from the fact that, in the later stages of exophthalmic goiter, the patients not infrequently develop myocardial insufficiency, cardiac dilatation and cardiac irregularities.

### **Sinus Bradycardias**

In a given individual the pulse rate is slower in the morning before rising than it is later in the day. Under these conditions, Addis found in young men an average rate of 63, whereas the day-time rate in the recumbent position averaged 80.

**Vagus Bradycardias.**—Vagus stimulation lessens the rate of impulse formation in the sinus node. Acute asphyxia and acute increases of intracranial pressure slow the heart by stimulation of the vagus center in the medulla. The slow heart rate, commonly observed during the earlier stages of meningitis, is also due to stimulation of the vagus center either by the increased intracranial pressure, or by a direct irritation of the center by the inflammatory process. Vagus slowing of the heart may also be due to reflexes that arise from the nose, the eyeballs, or the abdominal organs. Various drugs and toxic substances slow the heart by their action upon the vagus nerve. Thus digitalis in large doses slows the sinus rhythm but the usual therapeutic dose is rarely large enough to produce marked slowing.

**Jaundice.**—The slow pulse observed in certain cases of jaundice is also due to an increase of vague tone. This has usually been attributed to the action of bile salts retained in the body, but, according to King and Stewart, it is due to the action of the bile pigments.

**Acute Rises of Blood Pressure.**—Acute rises of blood pressure also tend to slow the heart through vagus stimulation. They act directly upon the medullary centers, and also through reflexes from the heart and the aorta. In chronic hypertension, however, the heart rate is not slowed. Furthermore, during muscular exercise, it is accelerated despite the increase of blood pressure.

**Convalescence from Febrile Diseases.**—Bradycardia is frequently observed during convalescence from febrile diseases, and particularly after typhoid fever, pneumonia, scarlet fever, etc. This bradycardia is frequently associated with a respiratory vagus irregularity, which favors the view that it is due to an increase in the vagus tone.

**Reduced Metabolic Rate.**—In a general way the pulse rate varies with the metabolic rate. When the latter is increased, as in fever and exophthalmic goiter, the pulse is more rapid. The slow rate before rising in the morning coincides with a slow metabolic rate. In myxedema both rates are reduced. Benedict and his associates found that dietary restriction caused a surprising reduction of pulse rate. In several of their subjects this rate when taken in the morning before rising was less than 40 per minute.

### Sinus Arrhythmias

**Respiration Arrhythmia.**—When a young individual breathes slowly and deeply, the pulse is more rapid during inspiration than during expiration, and this difference may be so marked that it constitutes a definite arrhythmia (Fig. 23). During inspiration the rate becomes in-

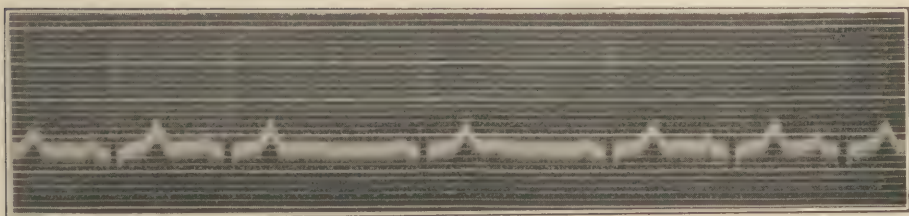


Fig. 23.—Respiratory Irregularity in a Young Adult. The Waves Are Normal.

creasingly more rapid, but shortly after the onset of expiration it slows down rather abruptly. Gradually the beats become more and more accelerated and thus the cycle is completed. Graphic records show that, during such an irregularity, the pacemaker remains in or near the sinus node and the contraction wave spreads over the heart in the normal manner. Such irregularities are, therefore, spoken of as sinus arrhythmias.

**PATHOGENESIS.**—Respiratory variations in the heart rate may be made to disappear if the vagi are cut or if sufficiently large doses of atropin are given. Hence they are caused by variations in the vagus control of the heart. They appear to be due in part to reflexes arising from the chest during respiration; but since they continue even though the thorax be widely opened, this cannot be their sole cause. Apparently there is, in addition, a radiation of stimuli from the respiratory to the vagus center in the medulla, which influences the vagus control of the heart rate.

**MIGRATION OF PACEMAKER.**—We have said that in this type of irregularity the pacemaker remains in or near the sinus node, and that the contraction wave spreads over the heart in the usual manner. Electrocardiographic records from man as well as from animals show, however, that in certain individuals the vagus slowing during deep breathing, as well as the vagus slowing from direct or reflex stimulation of the vagus nerve, may cause a flattening or even an inversion of *P* in the second, and particularly in the third leads (Fig. 24).

Eyster and Meek have shown that in the dog vagus stimulation may cause a migration of the pacemaker from the upper to the lower portion of the sinus node. Since such a migration would tend to reduce the size of *P*, particularly in the third lead, it seems not improbable that the changes in the form of *P* observed in man may be due to such a migration of the pacemaker in a downward direction.



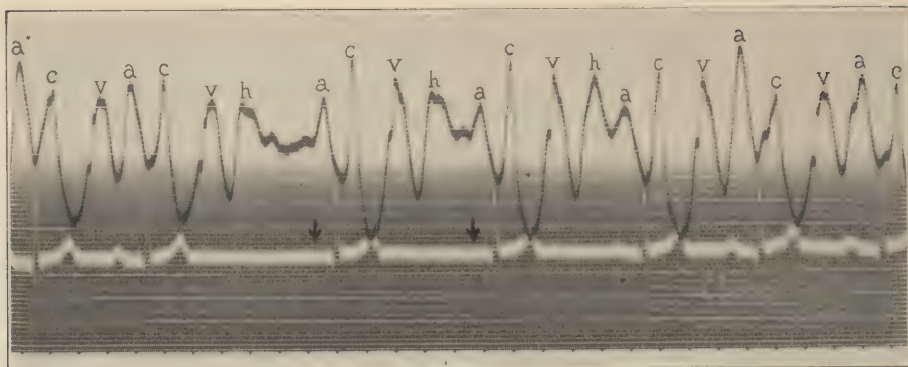


Fig. 24.—Respiratory Irregularity in a Young Adult. Lead III. During Expiration the Heart Rate Slows and the P Wave Almost Disappears (See Arrows). The Venous Pulse Indicates, However, that the Auricle Is Contracting Normally.

**Other Forms of Sinus Arrhythmia.**—The most common type of sinus irregularity is that associated with respiration. Other forms also occur. After swallowing, for example, there may be a vagus slowing of the heart. In certain individuals the heart is continuously undergoing more or less marked fluctuations in rate which are independent of respiration and which seem to depend upon an unusually labile control of the heart by the vagus nerve.

A more or less pronounced slowing of the heart accompanies the fainting spells which occur in certain young individuals from emotional causes. Records obtained toward the end of such faints indicate that the slowing involves both auricles and ventricles (Lewis and Cotton). Occasionally also cases have been reported when faints were caused by a transient cessation of all cardiac activity.

**Occurrence.**—Sinus arrhythmias are observed particularly in young individuals and they have, therefore, been called the *youthful irregularities*. As a person grows older, the heart becomes less and less subject to vagus control, and drugs that lessen the vagus control, such as atropin and amyl nitrite, produce less and less acceleration of the heart. At the same time vagus irregularities tend to disappear. Sinus irregularities occur not infrequently during the *convalescence from acute infections*, and they are often associated with the postfebrile type of bradycardia. Since they may be made to disappear by the injection of atropin, they are of nervous origin and have no unfavorable significance so far as the heart muscle is concerned. Occasionally sinus irregularities have been observed in connection with the slow pulse of meningitis or increased intracranial pressure. They may also appear during the administration of digitalis. Finally sinus irregularities are particularly common in *nervous* individuals, both in association with deep respirations and as apparently spon-

taneous fluctuations in the heart rate. They are closely related to other manifestations of nervous instability and irritability, such as an exaggeration of the tendon reflexes, excessive vascular reactions after irritation of the skin, hippus, etc.

### ***Disturbances of Conduction***

It will be recalled that the stimuli which cause the cardiac contractions travel from the sinus node through the auricular muscle to the upper end of the His bundle. This bundle after reaching the interventricular septum divides into two branches that supply the right and the left ventricles respectively. Disturbances of conduction may give rise: (1) to a *retardation* in the transmission of the stimulus; (2) to an occasional interruption to its transmission or *partial block*; and (3) to a complete interruption in its transmission or *complete block*. In general, it may be said that stimulation of the vagus nerve diminishes conductivity, whereas stimulation of the accelerator nerve improves it.

### **Sino-auricular Block**

Inasmuch as it is impossible to record the isolated activity of the sinus region in mammals either by mechanical or electrical methods, the evidence for a disturbance of conduction between the sinus node and the auricular muscle is of an inferential character. Erlanger has shown that by torsion of the sinus region it is possible to cause an occasional omission of auricular beats, presumably because the stimulus from the sinus was

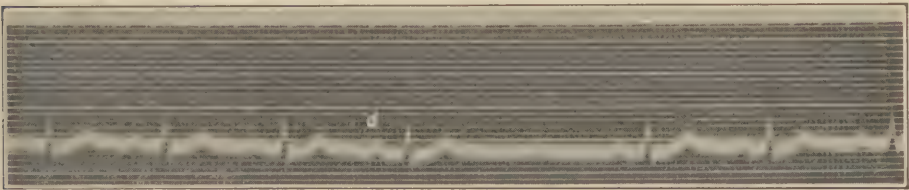
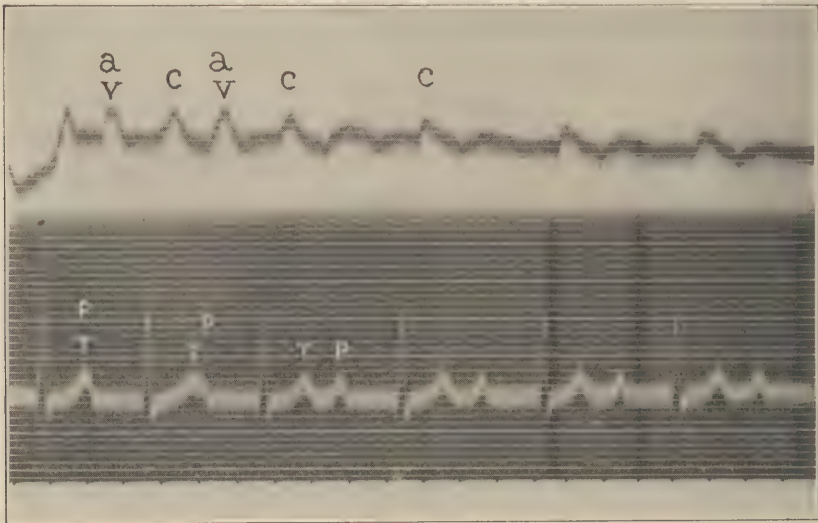


Fig. 25.—Sino-auricular Block. During the Intermission There Is No Contraction of the Auricle and the P Waves Are Separated by Twice the Normal Distance.

unable at times to cross the twisted tissues. Sinus blocks in man have also been occasionally observed, particularly in patients who have been receiving digitalis. In Figure 25, for example, it will be seen that there is a long pause between the *P* waves, and that the duration of this pause is approximately twice that which separates the normal auricular beats. Presumably in such cases there has been an occasional block of the impulse coming from the sinus node.

### Auriculoventricular Block *Lengthened As-Vs Interval*

As evidence of an imperfect conduction of stimuli from the auricles to the ventricles, we may find an unusually long interval between the contractions of the auricles and the contractions of the ventricles. This is evident on the venous pulse by a prolongation of the interval between the *a* and *c*



**Fig 26.**--Lengthened Vs-As Interval (About 0.37 Second). When the Heart Action Is Rapid *a* Falls on *v* and *P* on *T*. When the Action Is Slow *P* and *T* Are Separated and the *a* and *v* Waves Flatten Out.

waves, and on the electrocardiogram by an unusual interval between *P* and *R*. Normally these intervals do not exceed 0.2 second, but in pathologic cases they may be increased to 0.35 second or more (Fig. 26).

### *Partial Block*

When the conductivity is more definitely impaired, stimuli occasionally fail to pass from the auricles to the ventricles and the corresponding ventricular beats drop out. Such a partial block is often preceded by a gradual lengthening of the *a-c* or *P-R* intervals, indicating that impulses are passing over the His bundle more and more slowly. Finally, the impulse fails to pass over and a ventricular beat drops out. Following this block, the conduction time between auricles and ventricles is usually shortened (Fig. 27), presumably because the conducting system has rested during the block. In some cases, however, partial heart block is not associated with any demonstrable change in the length of the *As-Vs* interval.





idioventricular rate, for in the late stages of digitalis poisoning, there may be a complete dissociation between auricles and ventricles with such a rapid ventricular rhythm that it may even exceed the rhythm of the auricles. This rapid ventricular rhythm appears to be due to an action of digitalis upon the heart muscle. The administration of therapeutic doses of digitalis to patients with complete heart block causes no slowing of the ventricular rate. Only occasionally does it cause an acceleration, such as has been produced by the administration of toxic doses to animals.

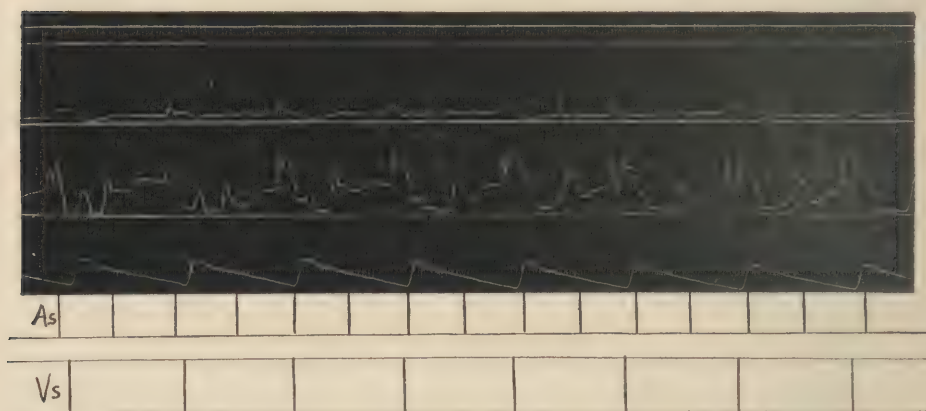


Fig. 28.—Complete Heart Block. Note that the Auricles and Ventricles Are Beating Independently. The Ventricular Rhythm Is Regular and about 40 per Minute.

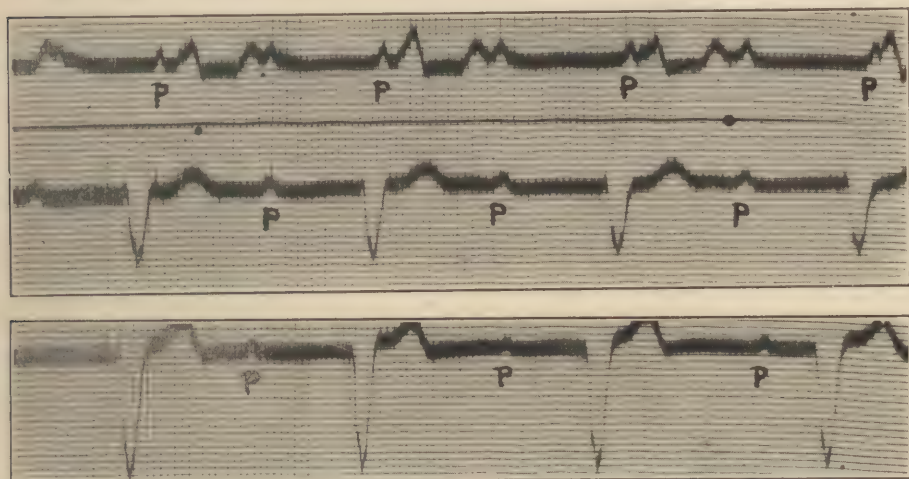
**Nervous Control of Idioventricular Rate.**—To what extent the idioventricular rate is under nervous control has been much discussed and is still unsettled. In patients with complete heart block the ventricular rate may usually be increased by vigorous muscular exercise or by fever, presumably from an action of the accelerator nerves or a direct effect upon the heart muscle. On the other hand, neither the injection of atropin nor stimulation of the vagus nerve ordinarily influences the ventricular rate in complete heart block, though in some cases apparently a slowing has been produced by vagus stimulation. Possibly vagus fibers running in or near the His bundle are frequently damaged by the lesion that produces the block, and this accounts for the varying observations. In any case, it is certain that the vagus exercises less influence upon the idioventricular rhythm than it does upon that which originates in the sinus.

### Causes of Auriculoventricular Block

#### (a) *Nervous and Toxic*

Stimulation of the vagus nerves frequently produces a partial heart block. As a rule, stimulation of the left vagus exerts a greater influence

upon the conductivity of the His bundle than does stimulation of the right vagus, whereas stimulation of the right vagus usually exerts a greater influence upon the rate of impulse formation in the sinus node.



Figs. 29 and 30.—Electrocardiogram from a Patient with Complete Heart Block. The Ventricular Complexes showed an Aberrant Form. Only every other P wave is clearly shown on these tracings.

In man, partial block has been produced repeatedly in susceptible individuals by pressure upon the vagus nerves in the neck, and particularly by pressure upon the left vagus. It has also been produced reflexly by pressure on the eyeballs. In susceptible individuals partial block has been observed during the increased vagus activity that follows swallowing, and during the slow heart action accompanying expiration.

The therapeutic administration of large doses of digitalis and of allied drugs also produces partial heart block in certain patients. That this block is sometimes due to an increased activity of the vagus nerve has been demonstrated by the fact that it may disappear after atropin injections. But digitalis also affects the heart muscle. Cohn has shown that therapeutic doses given to patients change the form of the *T* wave. The heart block that develops during late stages of experimental digitalis poisoning cannot be removed by atropin, and in some patients also atropin may not remove a digitalis block. It seems certain, therefore, that this block is due in part to vagus stimulation, and in part to the direct action of digitalis upon the conducting fibers in the heart.

Partial heart block has been produced in dogs by morphin injection and is here due to vagus stimulation.

In acute asphyxia partial heart block may also occur. Acute asphyxia stimulates the vagus center in the medulla, and a slowing of the sinus rhythm during asphyxia is due in part to this stimulation. Mathison has



shown, however, that the partial heart block of acute asphyxia is due, not to vagus stimulation alone, but to a direct toxic effect upon the heart muscle.

### *(b) Organic Causes*

Erlanger showed that by gradually compressing the His bundle varying degrees of block can be produced. As the pressure is increased there occurs first a lengthening of the *A-V* interval, then occasional or frequent interruptions of the stimuli passing to the ventricles (partial block), and finally a complete dissociation between auricles and ventricles. In a similar manner local organic lesions in the region of the His bundle may produce all degrees of block. These lesions may consist of fibrous tissue, localized myocarditis, an acute abscess, a gumma or a tumor. Complete heart block is, as a rule, due to an organic injury to the His bundle, although in some cases no organic lesion has been found. Partial block, on the other hand, may be due to organic lesions, or to toxic or nervous influences, or it may be due to any combinations of these.

### *Ectopic Beats, Extrasystoles*

Cardiac contractions that originate at some point other than the sinus node are spoken of as ectopic beats. These may occur singly or in rapid succession. They may originate in the auricles, the auriculoventricular tissues or the ventricles. Premature beats or extrasystoles are beats which interrupt an otherwise regular heart action by occurring prematurely. They usually arise at some point outside of the sinus node and are, therefore, ectopic beats as well.

### *Homogenetic Beats and Rhythms*

According to Lewis, two types of ectopic beats should be distinguished. When for any reason impulse formation in the sinus node is inhibited, or the impulses there formed are interrupted in their passage over the cardiac muscle, the function of pacemaker may be taken up by some other part of the heart. The new pacemaker under these circumstances is usually some part of the auriculoventricular node or of the His bundle. Ectopic beats or rhythms of this character are spoken of by Lewis as homogenetic in type, for they are due to a dormant normal rhythm that is ordinarily masked by the predominant sinus rhythm.

We have seen, for example, that, in complete heart block, an opportunity arises for the development of an ectopic ventricular rhythm, which takes its origin from the main stem of the His bundle. Similarly, a depression in the rate of impulse formation at the sinus node may permit the formation of spontaneous impulses of a regular type from the upper portion of the auriculoventricular conducting system. Rhythms of this

type have been produced experimentally by cooling the sinus tissues, and they occur occasionally during vagus stimulation, particularly when this is associated with a stimulation of the left accelerator nerve. Wilson has

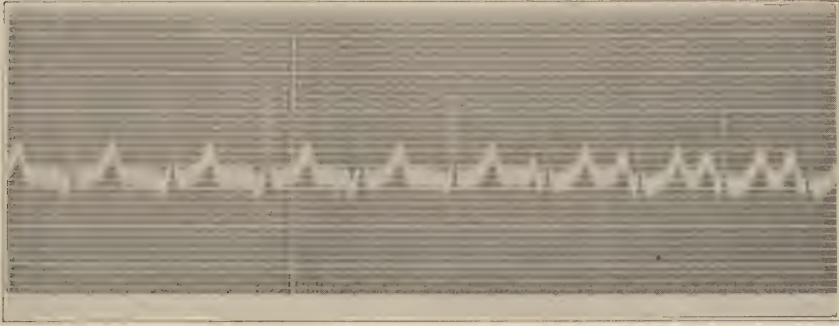


Fig. 31.—Rhythm Proceeding from the Upper Part of the A-V Node with Transition to Normal Rhythm. Atropin Effect. Note that during the Abnormal Rhythm P Is Inverted and the P-R Interval Is Shortened.

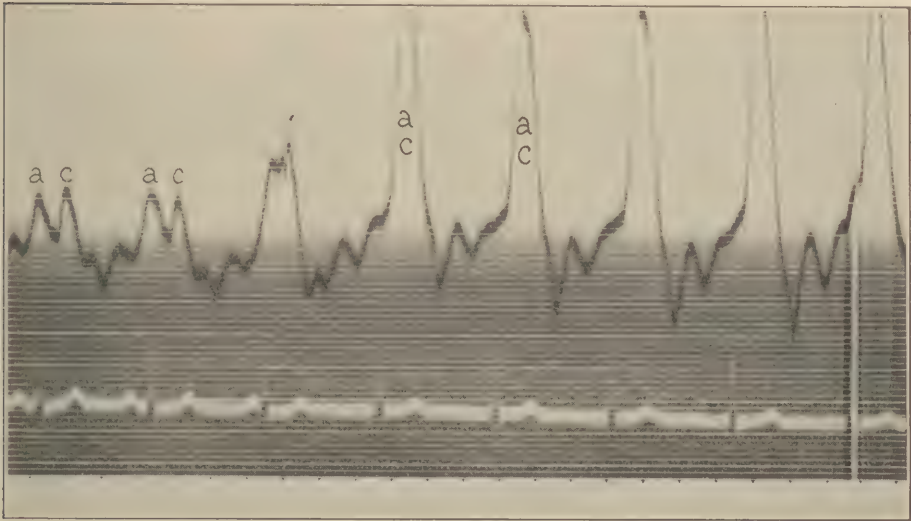


Fig. 32.—Rhythm Proceeding from the A-V Node with Transition from the Normal Rhythm. The Pacemaker in this Case Is Somewhat Lower than in Fig. 31. The Auricles and Ventricles Contract Simultaneously, Causing a High Wave, Owing to the Fact that the Auricles Are Unable to Empty into the Contracted Ventricles and Expel their Contents into the Veins. P Is Lost in the Ventricular Complex.

recently shown that in man the pacemaker occasionally shifts to the *a-v* node during the expiratory phase of forced respirations, and that this occurs in a considerable proportion of normal young individuals about ten minutes after the injection of 1/60 grain of atropin (Figs. 31 and 32).

### Heterogenetic Beats

The more common types of ectopic beats, called by Lewis heterogenetic, do not represent a dormant normal rhythm but are entirely abnormal. These may also arise from the specialized tissues joining the auricles and ventricle. More commonly they originate in other parts of the heart muscle. Heterogenetic beats possess certain characteristics that serve to distinguish them from homogenetic beats: (1) they usually occur singly; (2) they occur relatively early after the preceding systoles and are, therefore, premature beats or extrasystoles; and (3) such beats are usually not affected by measures which influence the rate of impulse formation in the sinus or *a-v* tissues. The essential difference between homogenetic and heterogenetic beats is illustrated by the action of potassium salts, which depress the normal rhythms but which may cause heterogenetic beats.

### Auricular Extrasystoles

Premature ectopic beats may arise from any portion of the auricular muscle. The auricular contraction thus initiated usually sends a stimulus

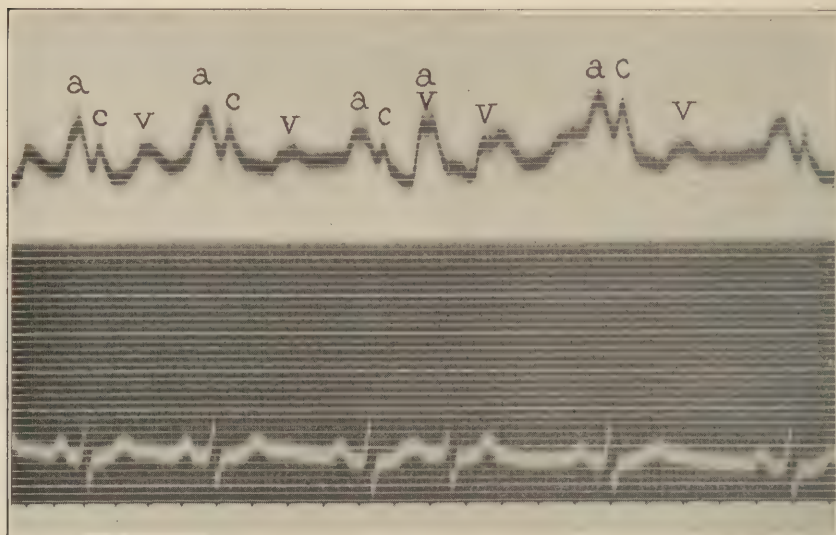


Fig. 33.—Auricular Extrasystole. The Premature Contraction of the Auricle Causes a Summation of *a* and *v* As Well As *P* and *T*. The Pause after the Extra Beat Is Only Slightly Longer than the Normal Interval Between Beats.

to the ventricles, so that these chambers also participate in the premature contraction (Fig. 33). When auricular extrasystoles follow normal beats by very short intervals, the transmission of the stimuli to the ven-



tricles is usually delayed, and occasionally the ventricles fail to follow the premature auricular contractions (blocked auricular extrasystoles).

Auricular extrasystoles usually take their origin from some point well outside of the sinus node, for the *P* wave in the electrocardiogram is usually abnormal in one or more leads. Auricular extrasystoles discharge the sinus region of the material which has been accumulating there for the production of the next normal systole. After its discharge this material begins to accumulate again, and the next normal auricular contraction usually follows the extrasystole by a slightly greater interval than that which intervenes between the normal beats.

### Auriculoventricular Extrasystoles

Premature beats, arising in the junctional tissues that connect the auricles and the ventricles, are infrequent. Such premature contractions are characterized: (1) by premature contractions of both auricles and ventricles; (2) by a shortened time interval between the contractions of auricles and ventricles; and (3) by an inversion of the *P* wave in the second and third leads of the electrocardiogram because the stimulus originates near the lower portion of the auricular muscle.

### Ventricular Extrasystoles

Extrasystoles arise most commonly from some part of the ventricular musculature. When the ventricles contract prematurely the auricular rhythm is usually not disturbed. The impulse from the succeeding normal auricular contraction usually reaches the ventricles during the refractory period that accompanies their extrasystole, and consequently it causes no ventricular contraction. Ventricular extrasystoles are, therefore, usually followed by a pause which lasts until the next stimulus arrives from the auricles. Since the auricular rhythm has not been disturbed, the time intervening between the normal ventricular systole immediately preceding and that immediately following the extrasystole is twice the interval between normal beats. There is, therefore, said to be a *full compensatory pause* after the extrasystole (Fig. 34). In this respect ventricular extrasystoles differ from those which arise in the auricles, for in the latter the compensatory pause is either absent or is shortened.

In the electrocardiogram ventricular extrasystoles are usually readily recognized by their aberrant form. This form varies greatly, but two main types have been distinguished. The first of these is similar to that which can be produced experimentally by stimulation of the basal portion of the right ventricle. The second type is similar to that produced experimentally by stimulation of the apex of the left ventricle. These are illustrated in Figure 34. These marked deviations from the normal type of

ventricular complex are due to the fact that the stimulus, instead of entering the ventricles through the His bundle and its branches, arises from

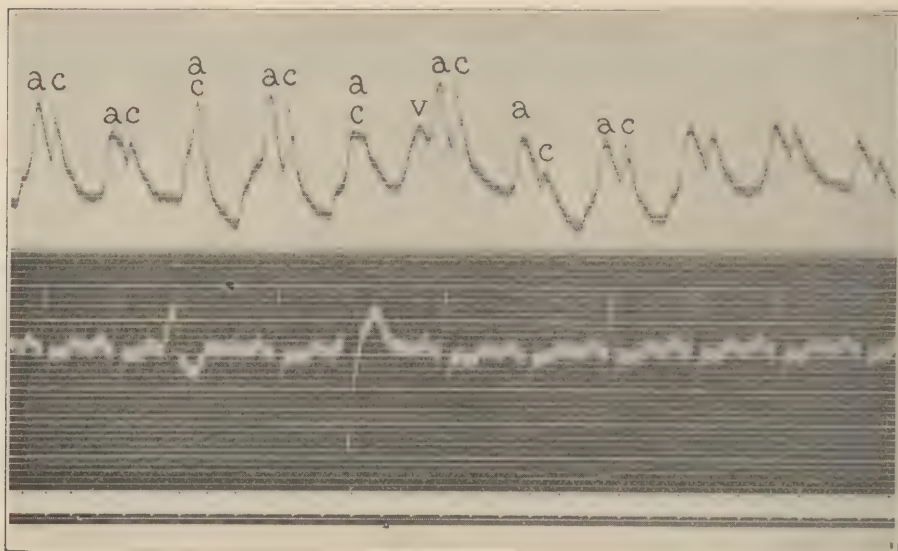


Fig. 34.—Ventricular Extrasystoles. Two Types Are Seen. Note their Diphasic Character. The Premature Ventricular Contraction Causes the *c* Wave to Fall upon the *a* Wave in the Venous Pulse. There Is a Full Compensatory Pause Because the Auricular Rhythm Is Not Disturbed.

some part of the ventricular muscle and spreads over these chambers in an abnormal manner.

### *Interpolated Ventricular Extrasystoles*

In some cases ventricular extrasystoles occur so long before the next normal stimulus arrives from the auricle that the latter reaches the ventricle after the extrasystolic refractory period has passed. In such cases, the ventricular extrasystole is interpolated between two ventricular beats that are separated by a normal interval (Fig. 35).

### *Retrograde Extrasystoles*

Ordinarily ventricular extrasystoles do not disturb the auricular rhythm. Occasionally, however, and particularly when a series of ventricular extrasystoles occur in rapid succession, the impulses may be transmitted in a retrograde direction over the His bundle, so that the auricles contract in response to stimuli coming from the ventricles. These are called retrograde extrasystoles (Fig. 36).

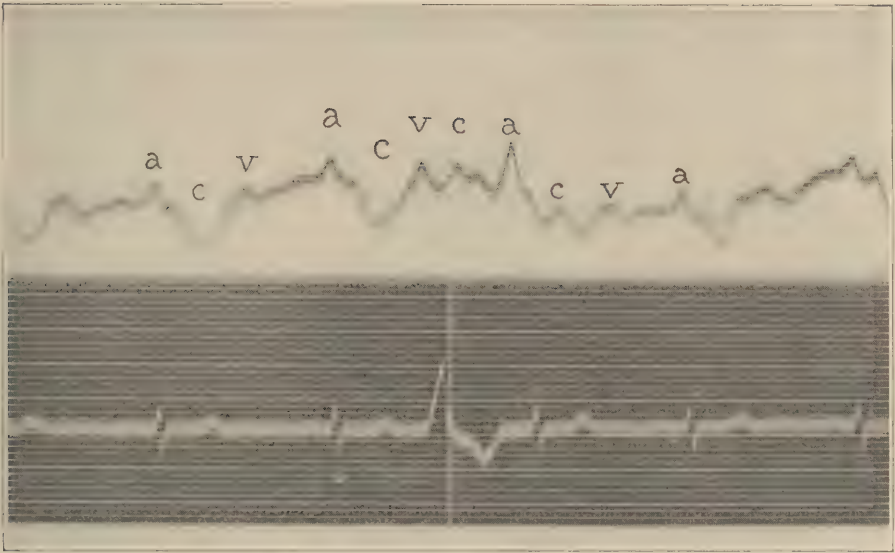


Fig. 35.—Interpolated Ventricular Extrasystole. Note that the Heart Rhythm Is Disturbed Only by the Addition of the Ventricular Beat and that the Next Auricular Contraction Causes the Usual Ventricular Systole.

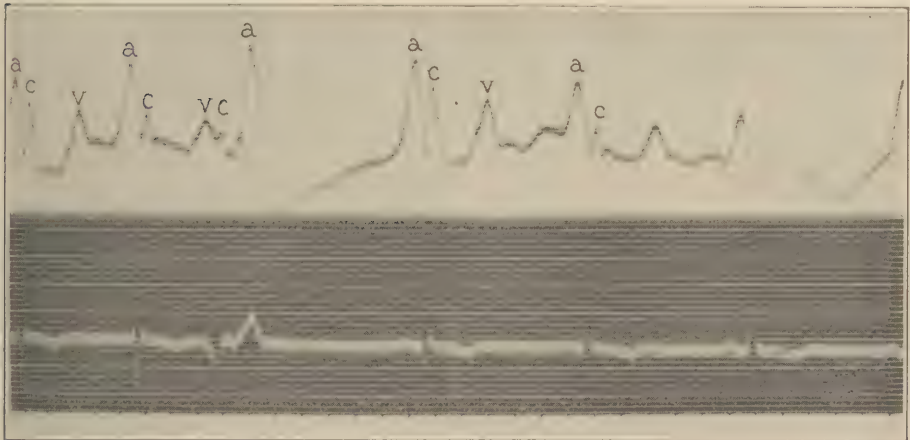


Fig. 36.—Retrograde Extrasystole. The Premature Ventricular Contraction Is Followed by a Premature Auricular Contraction, Owing to a Transmission of the Stimulus Backwards over the His Bundle.



### Recurrence of Extrasystoles

Extrasystoles are the most capricious of all cardiac irregularities. In a single patient they may be very numerous on one occasion, while, at another time, they may occur only occasionally or be absent altogether. Such changes may take place rapidly and frequently and often with no apparent cause. Extrasystoles, when present, may be scattered irregularly among the normal beats, or they may recur in a more or less regular manner, as, for example, after every fifth or seventh normal contraction. When extrasystoles alternate with normal contractions, there is a grouping

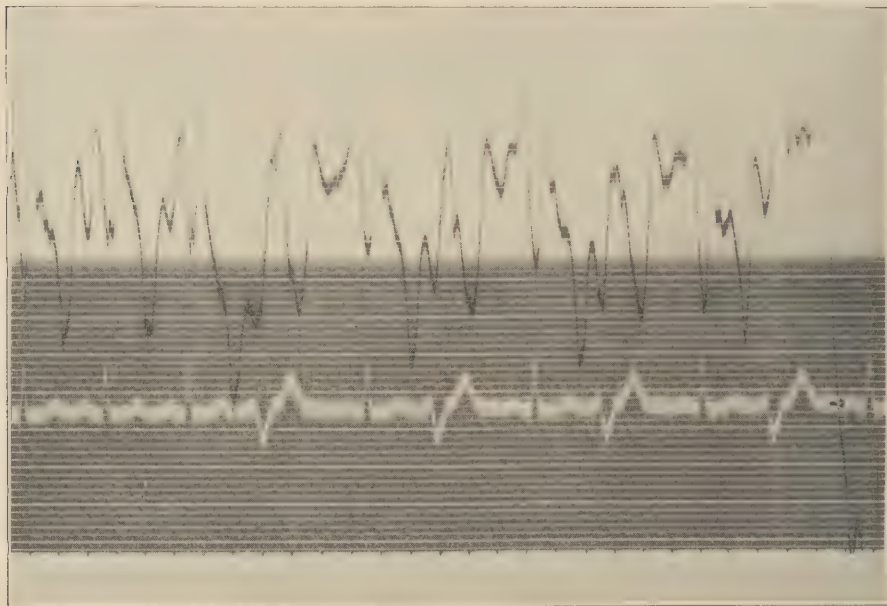


Fig. 37.—Transition from a Normal Rhythm to a Pulsus Bigeminus which Is Caused by the Regular Occurrence of a Ventricular Extrasystole after each Normal Beat.

of beats into twos, the so-called pulsus bigeminus (Fig. 37). When they follow every second normal contraction there is a grouping of beats into threes, the so-called pulsus trigeminus.

### Pathogenesis of Extrasystoles

Experimentally, extrasystoles have been produced by electrical, mechanical and chemical stimulation of the heart muscle. When the thoracic aorta is clamped, the ventricular extrasystoles, that usually occur, appear to result from the rapid mechanical distention of the left ventricle. Various toxic substances also produce extrasystoles when injected into animals. Among these are potassium and barium salts, digitalis, chloroform, etc. An interference with the blood supply to the

heart muscle, produced by ligation or embolism of the coronary artery, may also cause extrasystoles.

**Nervous Stimuli.**—It is doubtful if extrasystoles can be produced in normal hearts by stimulation of the cardiac nerves. Such stimulation, as we have seen, may cause the pacemaker of the heart to shift from the sinus region to the region of the auriculoventricular node; but this appears to be due to changes in the automatic physiological rhythms of these regions. The resulting ectopic beats have neither the capricious, nor the markedly premature character of typical extrasystoles. Lewis believes, therefore, that this change in the pacemaker is of a homogenetic rather than a heterogenetic character. In hearts already showing a tendency to extrasystoles, nervous stimuli may, however, play a part in exciting these irregularities.

**Anatomical Changes in Heart Muscle.**—In man, extrasystoles are relatively common in patients who may be suspected of having anatomical changes in the heart muscle. In coronary sclerosis, myocardial insufficiency, and in the acute myocarditides associated with infectious diseases, extrasystoles are relatively common. Ventricular extrasystoles are frequently encountered in patients with chronic hypertension. These may be due in part to the mechanical stimulus of the high pressure, and in part to changes in the nutrition of the heart muscle. Similarly, the auricular extrasystoles observed in mitral disease may be due in part to the high intra-auricular pressure, and in part to changes in the auricular muscle.

**Toxic Causes.**—Extrasystoles in man may also be due to toxic causes. In some cases, they seem to be associated with the abuse of tobacco or of coffee, or with the administration of digitalis. Occasionally, cases have been reported in which extrasystoles were associated with psychic or nervous disturbances. Such cases are rather uncommon, however, and it is difficult or impossible to exclude a coincident toxic or organic damage to the heart muscle. It seems not improbable, however, that in exceptional cases extrasystoles in man may be excited by nervous causes.

**Two Hypotheses.**—In exactly what manner toxic or nutritional disturbances give rise to extrasystoles is not known. Experimentally, they may result from the application of electrical or mechanical stimuli to the heart muscle, and it is usually assumed that in man also extrasystoles result from some *abnormal stimulation, or from some local increase in the irritability of the heart muscle*. It is difficult to understand, however, why such causes should produce occasional premature beats rather than a succession of such beats. Possibly some part of the heart muscle is not fully discharged with each systole, and the accumulation of unstable material at this point causes an occasional discharge. The disturbance in such a case would be due to a *change in the conductivity of a limited portion of the heart muscle* rather than to a change in its irritability.

In any event it is evident that extrasystoles may arise from a very

minute portion of the heart muscle. The irregularity, therefore, does not in itself indicate any widespread disease of the heart.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of extrasystoles is varied. When due to nervous influences, to toxic substances, or to acute myocardial changes, complete and permanent disappearances of the irregularity is possible. When due to chronic nutritional changes that result from coronary disease or chronic myocarditis, complete and permanent disappearance is less probable. In general, the first group of causes are more common in young individuals, while the second group are more common in elderly individuals. For this reason, young individuals are more apt to lose their extrasystoles than older persons. The effect of extrasystoles upon cardiac efficiency depends mainly upon the frequency with which they occur. As a rule, premature ventricular beats expel less blood into the arteries than do normal beats and, in some cases, they produce no arterial pulse whatever. When such a diminution or disappearance of the pulse occurs occasionally, it does not seriously impair the circulation. Where it recurs frequently, however, the extrasystoles may in themselves contribute to a cardiac insufficiency.

### *Paroxysmal Tachycardia*

In discussing the pacemaker of the heart we have seen that this may pass from the normal sinus region to an abnormal site: (1) because a slowing of the sinus rhythm, or an interference with its conduction to other parts of the heart, allows some other region to assert its normal inherent rhythm (homogenetic ectopic rhythms); or (2) because some other part of the heart develops a pathological rhythm, which is so rapid that it usurps the function of pacemaker (heterogenetic ectopic rhythms). Heterogenetic rhythms are in general characterized by their extreme rapidity. They are closely related to extrasystoles. The latter, as we have seen, usually occur singly, but they may occur in runs of two or more abnormal beats. From such short runs there are all degrees of transition to those cases in which a prolonged series of abnormal beats follow one another for hours or days. The latter condition is known clinically as paroxysmal tachycardia.

Paroxysmal tachycardia is therefore an abnormal heart rhythm caused by a rapid and regular succession of extrasystoles. The relation to single extrasystoles is particularly evident when either the first or the last beat of the rapid rhythm is studied: for the first beat is premature and the last beat is succeeded by a pause, both of which are characteristic of the extrasystole. The relation to extrasystoles is also indicated by the fact that isolated premature beats similar in all respects to the rapid beats of the tachycardia may precede or follow the paroxysm.

Paroxysmal tachycardia may arise in the auricles, in the junctional tissues between the auricles and ventricles, or in the ventricles.



**Auricular Paroxysms.**—The rapid succession of ectopic beats which give rise to paroxysmal tachycardia most frequently originate from some portion of the auricles. Abnormal *P* waves in one or more leads indicate an origin from a point outside the sinus node. As a rule, each auricular beat is followed by a ventricular contraction and the rate during the paroxysm lies between 140 and 220 a minute. Owing to the rapid succession of auricular beats, there may be some retardation in the conduction of impulses from the auricles to the ventricles. On account of this delay, as well as on account of the rapid heart rate, it not infrequently happens that the auricular contraction of one heart cycle coincides with the ventricular contraction of the preceding heart cycle. The contracting auricles, therefore, are unable to discharge their contents into the contracted ven-

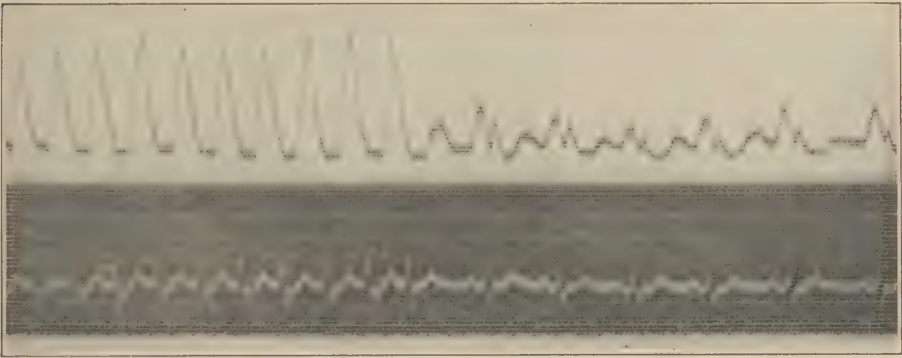


Fig. 38.—Paroxysmal Tachycardia with Transition to a Normal Rhythm. Note that during the Abnormal Rhythm the Inverted *P* Falls Directly after *R* of the Preceding Heart Cycle and that Since the Auricle Contracts during the Preceding Ventricular Systole, It Causes a Single Large Venous Wave. The Last *R* of the Tachycardia Is Not Followed by an Inverted *P*. The Next Auricular Contraction Originates in the Sinus Region (Upright *P*) and Thereafter the Rhythm Is Normal.

tricles but discharge the blood backward into the veins, thus producing the characteristic series of high waves in the venous pulse seen in Figure 38. This figure also shows that, during the paroxysm, an inverted *P* falls immediately after *R*. This *P* excites the next succeeding ventricular contraction, for it is absent after the last ventricular beat of the paroxysm. The first normal auricular beat succeeds the last abnormal one after a definite pause.

**Junctional Paroxysms.**—These are less common than paroxysms of auricular origin. Often the two can be definitely distinguished only by recording the beginning or end of the paroxysm. In Figure 38, for example, the beats during the paroxysm might have been interpreted as arising in the lower junctional tissues, so that in each cycle the ventricles contracted just before the auricles. Had this been the case the last beat of the paroxysm would have resembled its predecessors in having an inverted *P* after the *R*.

**Ventricular Paroxysms.**—These are uncommon, and long paroxysms of this type have not been recorded. In characteristic cases the ventricular complexes are distinctly aberrant and resemble the complexes of ventricular extrasystoles. Aberrant ventricular complexes, however, are not in themselves conclusive evidence of ventricular origin, for these may also occur when the wave of excitation comes from above, provided the conduction through one branch of the His bundle is disturbed.

**Symptoms.**—The most characteristic clinical feature of paroxysmal tachycardia is its abrupt onset and offset. The symptoms are due in part to the unusual heart rate. The patient is often conscious of his heart action, feels apprehensive and nervous, and is immediately relieved when the normal heart action is resumed. In prolonged paroxysms symptoms of cardiac insufficiency may develop, with breathlessness, diminution of urine and edema. The insufficient circulation of blood is due in part to the unfavorable effect of the extraordinarily rapid heart rate, and in part to the simultaneous contraction of auricles and ventricles, which leads to venous congestion and a poor blood supply to the ventricles.

**Pathogenesis.**—The pathogenesis of paroxysmal tachycardia is in a general way similar to the pathogenesis of extrasystoles. Experimentally, paroxysms have been produced by weak faradic stimulation of the auricles, by damage to the blood supply of the ventricles, etc. Paroxysms in man have been observed in nervous individuals as well as in those with evidence of organic heart disease, particularly coronary sclerosis. As with extrasystoles, the prognosis is, in general, more favorable in the young than in the old. The exciting cause of the paroxysms is frequently an unusual emotion, unusual exercise, a sudden change in posture, etc.

The attacks are often terminated by a change in posture, a deep respiration followed by straining, the sipping of cold liquids, the eructation of gas from the stomach, vomiting, pressure upon the vagus nerves in the neck, etc. These may be repeatedly effective in certain individuals, while in others they all fail. It is noteworthy that several of them involve vagus stimulation.

#### Auricular Flutter

In the condition known as auricular tachysystole or auricular flutter, the auricular rate is more rapid than in paroxysmal tachycardia, being, as a rule, between 200 and 350 per minute. The auricular contractions are regular and they produce definite waves on both the jugular pulse and the electrocardiogram. The *P* waves commonly have a wavy appearance, with no intervening pauses on the record. Owing to the very rapid auricular rate, a partial block occurs between the auricles and ventricles; so that, for every beat of the ventricles, there are two or more beats of the auricles (Figs. 39 and 39a). A two to one block is the most common in untreated cases. Thus the ventricular rate usually lies between 100 and 170 per minute and it is often perfectly regular. At times the

degree of block changes. Rarely, the ventricles assume, for a while, the full auricular rate of 240 or more (Fig 40); and distressing symptoms, especially syncope, may occur. Frequently the ventricular rate is reduced by an increased block. Again the degree of block fluctuates, so that an irregular ventricular rhythm is produced, even though the auricles are beating regularly. Patients with flutter are, as a rule, rather sensitive to vagus pressure, which causes an abrupt drop in the ventricular rate owing to decreased conductivity in the His bundle. Digitalis commonly increases the block in the His bundle, thus causing a marked reduction of the ventricular rate. In large doses, digitalis frequently converts an auricular flutter into auricular fibrillation. The latter may disappear later with a resumption of the normal heart rhythm.

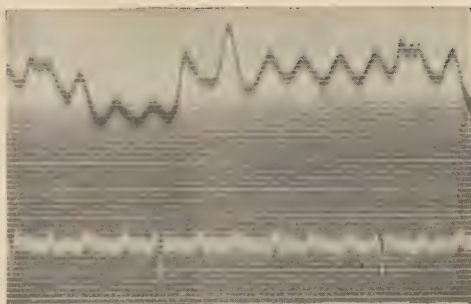


Fig. 39.—Auricular Flutter. Lead III. The Rapid Auricular Contractions Are Seen on the Venous Pulse and on the Electrocardiogram. The Ventricles Respond to the Fourth or Sixth Auricular Impulses.

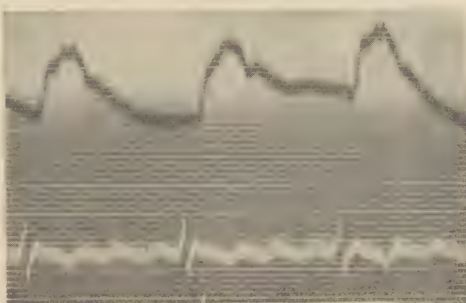


Fig. 39A.—Auricular Flutter. Lead II. From the Same Patient as Fig. 39. Shows the Abnormal Auricular Electric Complexes (Which Have a Constant Wavy Form). Also the Carotid Pulse.

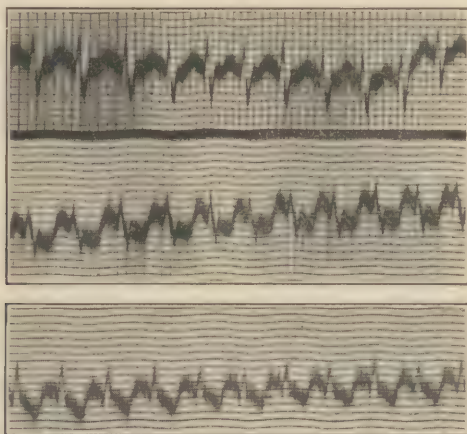


Fig. 40.—Auricular Flutter. The Ventricles Have Assumed the Full Auricular Flutter Rate of about 250 per Minute.

From the clinical standpoint flutter is a more serious condition than paroxysmal tachycardia. Not only are the paroxysms more prolonged,



but there is a much greater tendency to pass into auricular fibrillation. The underlying mechanism in flutter differs from that in paroxysmal tachycardia. While the latter is due to a rapid and regular succession of extrasystoles, the former is attributed to a wave of contraction which constantly progresses around a circular path in the auricular muscle (p. 86).

### ***Auricular Fibrillation***

Faradic stimulation of the auricles of the dog's heart usually causes a rapid and irregular series of incoördinated contractions of different parts of the muscle. In some cases coarse, wavelike motions are easily seen which involve a considerable part of the auricular muscle. This is the *coarse type of auricular fibrillation*. Under other conditions and particularly when the right vagus has been stimulated simultaneously, the auricles become dilated and their walls appear almost motionless. On close inspection, however, the smaller muscle bundles are seen to be executing very fine incoördinated movements. This is the *fine type of auricular fibrillation*. All transitions may occur between these two types.

**Ventricular Arrhythmia.**—When there is fibrillation of the auricles and impulses from these chambers still control the ventricular rhythm, the latter is always irregular. During fibrillation a large number of impulses are passing over the auricular muscle in various directions, and the upper end of the His bundle is bombarded by a very rapid and irregular succession of stimuli. The number of stimuli that succeed in reaching and stimulating the ventricles is governed mainly by the conductivity of the His bundle. When the conductivity is good, the ventricular rate reaches 100 per minute or more. When the conductivity of the bundle is diminished, as by vagus stimulation or after the administration of digitalis, the ventricular rate becomes slower. In either case, however, the stimuli come through irregularly and the ventricles show an absolute arrhythmia. No dominant regular rhythm, such as exists in partial heart block or extrasystoles, is discernible.

**Venous Pulse.**—The venous pulse of patients with auricular fibrillation usually shows no evidence of auricular activity. With each ventricular contraction there is a well marked *c* wave, which is followed by a more or less marked depression in the curve and this, in turn, by an unusually prominent *v* wave. The venous pulse is of a positive type, because the most marked upward movements occur during ventricular systole (Fig. 41). We have said that there is usually no evidence of auricular activity on the venous pulse. If the heart action is rapid, the waves of ventricular origin dominate the pulse, and finer waves which might possibly be produced by the auricles cannot be recognized. Only when the ventricular contractions are separated by long diastolic intervals is an opportunity given for small waves of auricular origin to become manifest. As a matter of fact, such waves are sometimes present on the jugular pulse (Fig. 42).

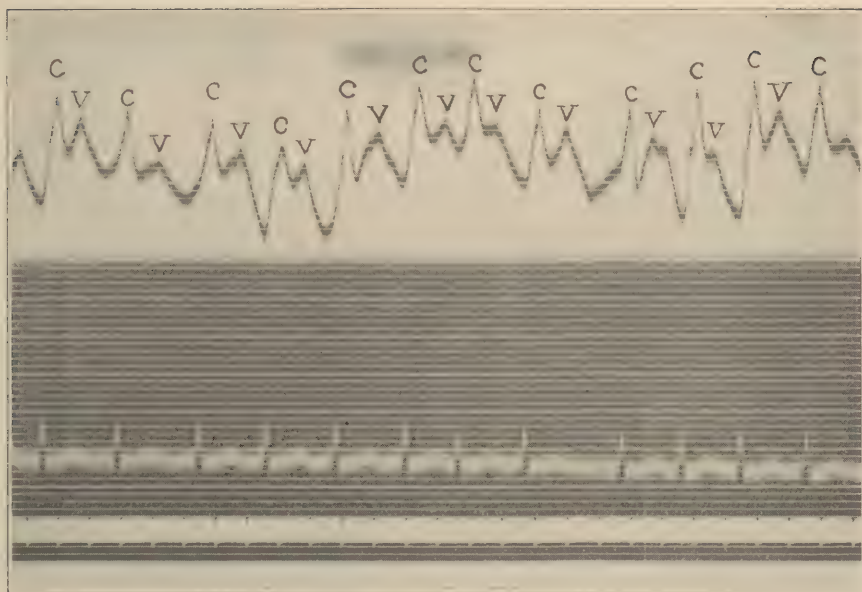


Fig. 41.—Auricular Fibrillation with Rapid Ventricular Action. Note the Positive Venous Pulse with Absence of *a* Waves. During the Longer Diastolic Pauses the Electric Effect of the Auricular Fibrillation Is Indicated by the Small Waves.

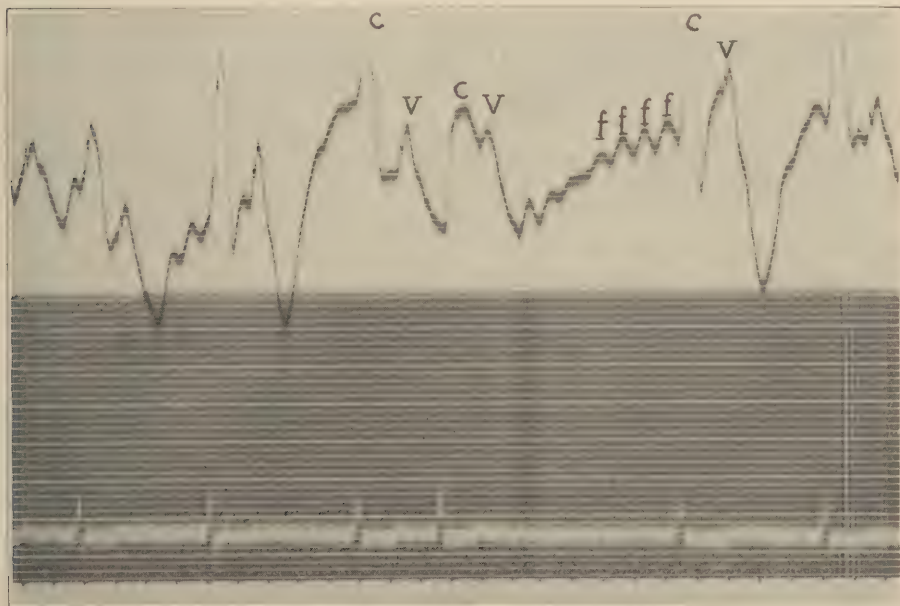


Fig. 42.—Auricular Fibrillation with Slow Ventricular Action. Small Venous Waves *f* Probably Due to the Auricular Fibrillation Are Seen during the Longest Diastolic Pause.

In most cases, however, they are not seen. Only very rarely, as in a case reported with Dr. Wilson, do these waves of auricular origin dominate the venous pulse. (Fig. 43.) These differences in the jugular pulse, in cases of auricular fibrillation, seem to be due to variations in the coarseness of the auricular movements. Auricular fibrillation in man is usually of a fine type, so that from the mechanical standpoint the auricles are practically paralyzed. Only occasionally are the fibrillations sufficiently coarse to cause definite venous waves.

**Electrocardiograms and Mechanical Records.**—Electrocardiograms taken from patients with auricular fibrillation show a succession of normal

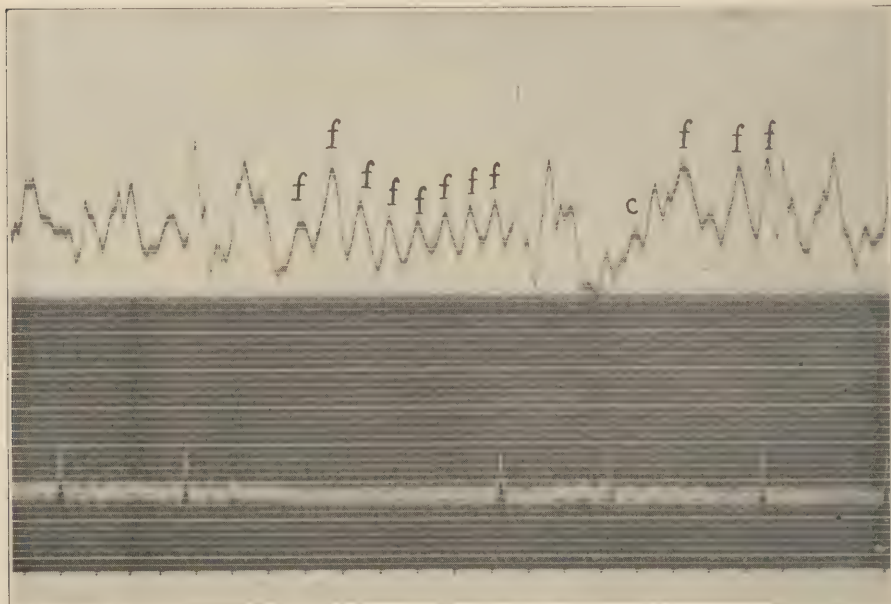


Fig. 43.—Coarse Auricular Fibrillation. Note the Large Venous Waves *f* Caused by the Auricular Activity. These Are Not Accompanied by the Definite Electrical Waves Seen in Auricular Flutter. They Are Irregular in Time. The Electrocardiogram Is Characteristic of Fibrillation.

ventricular complexes coming at irregular intervals. *P* waves are absent, but in their place there may frequently be observed small, rapid and irregular movements of the galvanometer string between the ventricular complexes. These are not present in all parts of the tracings, and they are coarser in some places than in others. The rate of these movements usually exceeds 380 per minute. These movements are due to the electric activity of the fibrillating auricles. When a comparison is made between these electric vibrations and the auricular venous waves occasionally recorded by mechanical means, it is found that, unlike the normal auricular systoles, there is no exact agreement between the two either in size or time (Fig. 43). The reason for this discrepancy lies in the fact that in auricular



fibrillation one is dealing with numerous interfering waves, and the summation of these may give mechanical effects which may differ from the electrical effects.

### **Pulse Deficit in Auricular Fibrillation**

During auricular fibrillation with rapid ventricular rate, there is frequently a marked discrepancy between the number of ventricular contractions and the number of pulse waves which are felt or recorded at the wrist. Many ventricular systoles, and particularly those occurring during the more rapid heart action, either fail to open the semilunar valves, or expel quantities of blood that are too small to cause palpable arterial pulse waves. Such ventricular systoles are practically valueless from the mechanical standpoint, for they pump little or no blood into the aorta. At the same time, they cause an expenditure of ventricular energy, for we know that the isometric contraction of a muscle, such as occurs during the first part of ventricular systole, liberates considerable energy (page 3). The discrepancy between the number of ventricular systoles and the number of pulse beats palpable at the wrist has been called the "pulse deficit" by James and Hart. It indicates the number of ineffective ventricular contractions during auricular fibrillation.

### **Digitalis and Auricular Fibrillation**

Of great practical importance is the fact that in auricular fibrillation, more than in any other condition, digitalis slows the heart rate. Therapeutic doses of this drug, when given to those with a normal sinus rhythm, rarely cause any appreciable reduction in the auricular rate, though occasionally, as we have seen, such doses may cause blocks between the auricles and ventricles. In auricular fibrillation, on the other hand, digitalis almost invariably slows the ventricular rate. This slowing is due to an increased block between the auricles and ventricles. We have seen that in auricular fibrillation the upper pole of the His bundle is constantly bombarded by numerous stimuli, and that the ventricular rhythm is determined by the number of these which succeed in reaching the ventricles. When the conductivity of the bundle is depressed by digitalis, the ventricles beat more slowly and often more regularly, even though the abnormal auricular activity continues. With a slower and more regular ventricular action, each ventricular contraction becomes mechanically effective and the pulse deficit tends to disappear. The great benefit which follows the use of digitalis in such cases is due in part to this cause, and in part to an improvement in the contractile power of the ventricles.

### **Permanent and Paroxysmal Fibrillation**

Auricular fibrillation is, in most instances, a peculiarly constant irregularity, so much so, that it has been called the permanent irregularity

(*P. irregularis perpetuus*). Most patients coming under observation with auricular fibrillation show this condition on all subsequent examinations. Occasionally, however, even when fibrillation has persisted for a long time, it suddenly disappears and the normal cardiac mechanism is restored. Occasionally, also, patients are observed who show transient paroxysms of auricular fibrillation. These begin and end suddenly. They may persist for minutes, hours or days. *Single paroxysms* of this type may accompany the acute infectious diseases, such as lobar pneumonia or rheumatic fever. They may also occur during the acute intoxication which sometimes follows an operation on the thyroid gland. *Recurrent paroxysms* of fibrillation are more common. They may be separated by weeks or years of normal heart rhythm. The exciting cause of a paroxysm may be an unusual emotion, a sudden movement, some exertion or an overloading of the stomach. Again, the paroxysm may follow no definite cause or it may be present when the patient awakens from sleep.

The cardiac mechanism in such paroxysms differs in no particular from that present in the permanent type of fibrillation. In questioning patients with a permanent irregularity, one obtains, not infrequently, a history which suggests that the irregularity was at first not permanent, but that it began with paroxysms of irregular heart action. Furthermore, patients who have paroxysmal fibrillation may ultimately develop a permanent irregularity, although sometimes this change does not occur for many years after the first paroxysm. It seems probable, therefore, that in many patients auricular fibrillation first appears in the form of paroxysms, and that these later become permanent.

### Relation of Fibrillation to Ectopic Auricular Beats

Auricular extrasystoles, auricular tachycardias and auricular fibrillation are intimately related both experimentally and clinically. A single electrical stimulus applied to the auricle causes a single premature auricular beat or, occasionally, a succession of such beats. If the auricle be stimulated by a weak faradic current, rapid regular contractions, mostly of a coördinate character, may be produced. If the strength of the current is increased, the irregular incoördinated contractions of fibrillation occur. These may be fine or coarse. Stimulation of the right vagus nerve may convert a combination of fine fibrillation and rapid regular contractions into fine fibrillation (Robinson); or it may convert a coarse into a fine fibrillation. Certain drugs, such as physostigmin, may produce occasional or repeated auricular extrasystoles in small doses, and auricular fibrillation in large doses.

Clinically also, numerous transitions have been observed between auricular extrasystoles, paroxysmal tachycardia, auricular flutter and auricular fibrillation. Patients who suffer from attacks of paroxysmal

tachycardia frequently show at other times auricular extrasystoles, and these are particularly numerous just before and just after the paroxysms. Auricular extrasystoles are also common after paroxysms of auricular fibrillation, and transitions between auricular flutter and auricular fibrillation are rather common. The administration of digitalis has frequently converted a flutter into a fibrillation. Finally, in a single patient, one may have, at one time, occasional auricular extrasystoles, at another time, a rapid succession of extrasystoles (auricular tachycardia), and, at still another time, paroxysmal auricular fibrillation.

### Pathogenesis of Auricular Fibrillation

Auricular fibrillation occurs most frequently in elderly patients in whom one may suspect poor nutrition of the heart muscle. It is also frequent in the later stages of mitral disease, where it is probably favored by the dilatation of the left auricle. It is fairly common in patients with chronic hypertension as well as in the later stages of thyroid disease, constituting a serious form of the "goiter heart."

From the intimate relationship that exists between auricular extrasystoles, auricular tachycardias and auricular fibrillation, it seems probable that all are produced by similar pathological changes. Experimentally, fibrillation may be produced by rapid electrical stimulation of the auricles and by drugs which seem to irritate the auricular muscle. Its occurrence is also favored by stimulation of the right vagus nerve.

**Two General Hypotheses.**—In order to explain the peculiar, incoordinated, wavy contractions that pass over the auricular muscle in all directions, two general hypotheses have been advanced. The first of these assumes that *abnormal stimuli are arising from numerous separate points within the auricular muscle*, and that the large number of contraction waves, thus initiated, interfere with each other in their passages over the muscle and produce fibrillation. It is well known, however, that fibrillation may result from the rapid stimulation of a single small area of the muscle, particularly when the right vagus nerve is stimulated simultaneously. There is here no reason to suppose that other regions of the auricle are initiating contractions. Furthermore, when fibrillation has once been started, the original point of stimulation may be removed and yet the fibrillation may persist for a time. It is evident, therefore, that fibrillation cannot be explained solely on the assumption of numerous stimuli to different parts of the muscle. An *impairment of conduction in the auricular muscle* plays a part in the pathogenesis of fibrillation. When a very rapid succession of contractions is initiated, the conductivity of the auricular muscle may become so depressed that the successive waves are not immediately carried to all parts of the auricles. In place of a rapid series of coördinated auricular contractions, there result wavelike con-



tractions which spread in various directions from the point of primary stimulation. It is the interference of these waves with one another, and the interference of individual waves with themselves, that produce the peculiar movements of fibrillation. Stimulation of the vagus nerve depresses conductivity in general. Such a depression in the auricular muscle would explain its effect in converting a coarse into a fine fibrillation. The observation that digitalis may convert an auricular flutter into auricular fibrillation is capable of a similar interpretation.

**Circus Movement.**—Mines showed that if a circular strip of auricular muscle be stimulated, the contraction waves usually started in both directions from the point stimulated, met on the opposite side of the ring, and died out. By applying several stimuli in succession, however, it was sometimes possible to start a wave which traveled in one direction only. Such a wave might circulate round and round the ring for many revolutions without the application of any new stimuli. Evidently the head of the wave always advanced into muscular tissue which had recovered its irritability; i. e., the length of the wave was less than the length of the muscular circle. Mines, as well as Garrey, advanced the hypothesis that such circus contractions in the auricles might be the cause of auricular fibrillation. Lewis and his collaborators have demonstrated that this is indeed the mechanism; not only in fibrillation but also in auricular flutter. In flutter the path taken by the circus waves is a regular one. In most instances the circuit passes around the mouths of both the superior and inferior vena cava, while other portions of the auricles, such as the appendages, are supplied by a spread of the contraction wave out from the main circle. In fibrillation there is also a circus movement in the auricles but in this case the path of the wave varies, for it is constantly being deflected by local obstructions or blocks in the auricular muscle.

According to this theory, the maintenance of fibrillation depends upon the ability of the head of the wave to find muscular tissues that have passed out of the refractory state. Should the conductivity of the auricular muscle be so increased that the wave advances more rapidly, or, should the refractory state be prolonged, then it might readily happen that the advancing wave would be stopped because it found no muscle ready to respond to the advancing stimulus. This would bring the fibrillation to a standstill and an opportunity would be afforded for the sinus node to recover control of the auricular rhythm. It has been shown that in certain patients auricular fibrillation can be terminated by the administration of quinidin sulphate. Lewis and his associates have shown that quinidin lengthens the refractory period of the auricular muscle and they attribute the cessation of fibrillation to this cause.

**Pathological Anatomy.**—Auricular fibrillation is accompanied by no characteristic alterations in the muscle. Changes in the region of the sino-auricular node have been described, but they appear to be neither constant

nor characteristic. Indeed, from physiological considerations, one would hardly expect to find constant anatomical changes; for any area of the auricular muscle may be the original site of the stimuli which presumably give rise to fibrillation. In discussing the pathogenesis of extrasystoles, it was pointed out that disease of any small section of muscle would be sufficient to initiate abnormal beats. The same is true of auricular fibrillation.

The prognosis in fibrillation is much more serious than in extrasystoles. This is so partly because fibrillation is usually due to a more serious muscle lesion and partly because fibrillation disturbs the ventricular rhythm and causes the numerous ineffective systoles which constitute the pulse deficit. The effect of this abnormal heart action upon the efficiency of the heart is particularly evident in patients with paroxysmal fibrillation. Such patients may show evidence of cardiac insufficiency during their attacks, whereas they are free of symptoms when the heart is regular.

At autopsy, the auricles which have been the seat of fibrillation are often markedly dilated. Possibly this dilatation is a factor in producing the fibrillation, as may well happen in mitral stenosis. On the other hand, fibrillation itself favors dilatation, as is evident from animal experiments. In some patients with the permanently irregular pulse, however, the auricles are not dilated at autopsy. This fact was used by Mackenzie as an argument against the older view that this irregularity was due to auricular paralysis.

### ***Ventricular Fibrillation***

Experiments on the heart are often terminated by the unwelcome onset of ventricular fibrillation. This condition is often preceded by ventricular extrasystoles, which occur at first occasionally, and then in more rapid succession. The extrasystoles are succeeded by coarse, wavelike contractions, which spread rather slowly over the ventricles. These coarse, fibrillatory movements gradually become finer and finer until ultimately the ventricles become almost motionless, though still the seat of innumerable incoördinated contractions of the smaller muscle bundles. The steps in the process indicate that, in the ventricles there is a gradual transition from extrasystoles to coarse, and then to fine fibrillations.

**Experimental Fibrillation.**—Ventricular fibrillation has been produced experimentally by the same groups of agents that cause auricular fibrillations; viz., electrical stimulation, deficient blood supply and injection of toxic substances. Of particular interest from the clinical standpoint is the fact that ventricular fibrillation has been produced experimentally in cats by proper doses of chloroform. It is probable that sudden death during the early stages of chloroform anesthesia in man is due to this cause.

**Cardiac Output.**—During coarse ventricular fibrillation a weak and

irregular pulse may perhaps be present, but in fine fibrillation no blood at all is expelled into the aorta. The latter is incompatible with life, and even the coarser type causes a most serious impairment in the circulation. Electrocardiograms taken during experimental ventricular fibrillation show a succession of irregular excursions, which closely follow one another and which vary in height and form. By the electrocardiograph, therefore, it is possible to recognize ventricular fibrillation.

**Connection with Sudden Cardiac Death.**—Nevertheless, we know little about the occurrence of ventricular fibrillation in man because the condition is rapidly fatal and opportunity is seldom afforded for taking records. As a terminal arrhythmia, it has been recorded by Halsey and by Robinson, while temporary recovery from a paroxysmal attack has been reported by Robinson and Bredeck.

Despite the few instances where ventricular fibrillation in man has been recorded, it seems probable that this is an important cause of sudden cardiac death. We have just mentioned that it is the probable cause for certain sudden deaths on the operating table, particularly during the early stage of chloroform anesthesia. It is one cause of death in electrocution. Experimental occlusion of the coronary arteries has frequently caused fibrillation of the ventricles in animals and it seems probable that the sudden deaths which occur during angina pectoris or in those suffering from coronary disease are due to this arrhythmia. Patients suffering from auricular fibrillation may also die suddenly and the view has been expressed that the fibrillation extends from the auricles to the ventricles. This seems improbable, however, for Lewis has shown that a narrow strip of conducting tissue suffices to prevent the spread of fibrillation from one portion of the auricular muscle to another. The sudden death in these patients is due rather to associated lesions in the ventricles.

### ***Pulsus alternans***

In the *pulsus alternans* the ventricles beat with perfect regularity but the pulse waves are alternately large and small. It frequently happens that, at the wrist, the smaller waves are retarded, being followed by a somewhat shorter interval than the larger waves. This is not due to any irregularity in the heart itself, but is caused by the fact that the smaller waves take a somewhat longer time to reach the wrist, partly because the opening of the semilunar valves may be a little delayed, and partly because the propagation of the small wave in the arteries may be a little slower. Records of the ventricular action taken either mechanically at the apex, or by the electrocardiograph, show that the ventricular rate is perfectly regular (Fig. 44). No abnormality other than the size of the pulse waves has been discovered.

**Varying Contractile Power of Left Ventricle.**—The *pulsus alternans* appears to be due to variations in the contractile power of the left ven-



tricle. After a relatively powerful systole, its power is not fully recovered by the time that the next stimulus reaches it and the succeeding contraction is weaker. After the weak systole, the ventricle accumulates greater contractile force and the next beat is more powerful, and so on. Whenever the heart rhythm is interrupted by an extrasystole the succeeding normal beat is unusually large. In patients who show a tendency to the occurrence of the pulsus alternans this large beat is commonly followed by a more

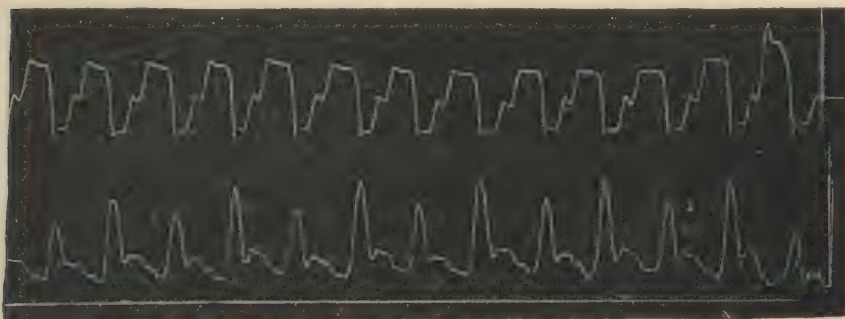


Fig. 44.—Pulsus alternans. Upper Tracing from the Apex. Lower from the Radial. Note the Alternation of Large and Small Beats. Venous Pulse Was Normal.

pronounced alternation of large with small beats. Other than this the alternating pulse is usually quite constant from day to day.

The alternating pulse is encountered particularly in patients with high blood pressure and in those with myocardial weakness. The variations in the size of the pulse waves may be recognized on palpation or they may be recorded with a sphygmograph. They are often particularly evident when the systolic blood pressure is being taken, for as the pressure in the cuff about the arm is raised, the smaller beats disappear before the larger beats. The difference in systolic pressure of the two may amount to 20 or 40 mm. Hg or more.

On the other hand an alternating pulse is occasionally encountered in patients with a normal or only slightly increased blood pressure. Should this situation be combined with continuity of the alternation it indicates a serious impairment of the contractile power of the ventricles and is a bad omen. When the pulsus alternans is barely recognizable, or when it occurs under the heavy load of a very high blood pressure, the prognosis is somewhat less serious.

Again, when it occurs only for a few beats and then only now and then after an extra systole, the case presents a more hopeful outlook, though it should still be considered serious.

## Heart Sounds and Heart Murmurs

Two principal heart sounds are heard with each cardiac revolution. The first occurs at the beginning of ventricular systole, and the second at the beginning of diastole (Fig. 45). The second sound, which is usually louder over the base of the heart, is produced by the vibrations which accompany and follow the closure of the aortic and pulmonary semilunar valves. The first sound, which is louder at the apex of the heart, is made up of two elements: first, the vibrations caused by the closure of the auriculoventricular valves; and, second, a muscle sound produced by the contraction of the ventricular wall.

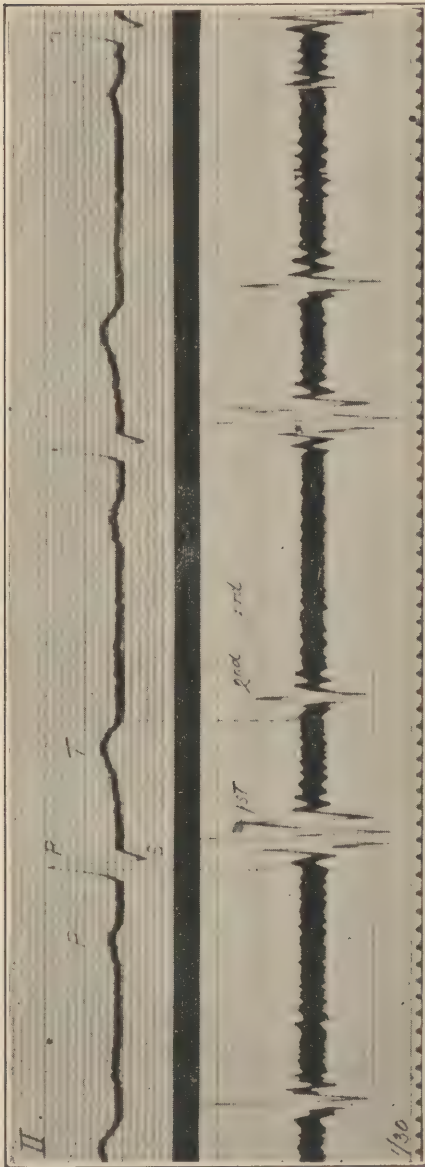


Fig. 45.—Electrical Records of Heart Sounds. The First and Second Sounds Are Well Marked, the Third Sound Indicated. (From Lewis, "Lectures on the Heart," published by Paul B. Hoeber.)

### *Changes in Loudness and Quality*

The second sound, produced by the closure of the aortic semilunar valves, is best heard to the right of the sternum in the second intercostal space. At this point, the ascending aortic arch approaches the anterior chest wall. The second sound, produced by the closure of the pulmonary valves, is best heard in the second or third intercostal space to the left of the sternum. In young individuals the second sound is usually louder in the latter position, while in older individuals the reverse is the case (Cabot). An increase in intensity (accentuation) of either second sound may be produced by an increased pres-

sure in the corresponding arterial system. In the pulmonary congestion that accompanies mitral stenosis, for example, the second pulmonic sound is usually accentuated; whereas in chronic arterial hypertension the aortic second sound is usually loud. Accentuation of the second sound, and particularly a ringing quality, may also be due to sclerotic changes in the valves or the neighboring aorta. Such changes influence the character of the sound vibrations. Finally, the second sound becomes louder whenever the conduction of sound from its point of origin to the chest wall is favored by changes in the intervening tissues. In pulmonary tuberculosis, for example, a consolidation or retraction of the anterior edge of the left lung may cause a marked increase in the loudness of the second pulmonic sound.

Variations in the loudness and character of the first heart sound also occur, but their significance is less perfectly understood. That the sounds heard at the apex are influenced by the overlying cushion of lung seems obvious, and in pulmonary emphysema, for example, the heart sounds at the apex are often unusually feeble. A sharp "valvular" quality of the first sound is frequently associated with conditions in which the ventricular filling seems to be incomplete. This may be the explanation for the alteration in the quality of the first sound during rapid heart action and in conditions of low blood pressure. The peculiar first sound heard during certain ventricular extrasystoles may be due to the simultaneous contraction of auricles and ventricles, for Lewis has recorded loud first sounds during complete heart block at such times. The loud and "snapping" quality of the first sound in mitral stenosis may be due, in part, to an imperfect filling of the left ventricle. It is probably due, in part also, to changes in the sounds produced by the diseased mitral valves. When, as in chronic arterial hypertension or aortic insufficiency, the ventricle is hypertrophied and is contracting powerfully, the first sound often seems more prolonged and assumes a booming quality.

### *Split Sounds*

Since each heart sound is composed of various elements, it is but natural to expect that, under pathological conditions, a lack of synchronism in these elements might lead to a splitting or reduplication of the heart sounds. Reduplication of the second sound occurs particularly when, as in mitral disease, the pressure in the pulmonary circuit is increased, and a prolongation of the systole of the right ventricle delays the closure of the pulmonary valves. Splitting of the first sound has also been described, but the mechanism of its production is less clear. The stimulus for ventricular contraction may certainly be interrupted in a primary branch of the His bundle, and it has been claimed that this may cause an audible interval between the first sounds produced on the two sides of the heart.



In other cases splitting of the first sound may be due to a dissociation between the valvular and muscular elements that produce it. The conditions here are by no means clear, and they require further study.

### ***Accessory Heart Sounds***

Even in normal individuals a third heart sound is not infrequently heard at the apex of the heart. This sound is faint and dull, and follows immediately after the second sound, so that it suggests an echo. Thayer observed such a third sound in over eighty per cent of individuals between the ages of 10 and 20 years. He found that it is less frequent in older individuals. This normal third sound is best heard when the individual is recumbent, and particularly when he is lying on the left side. It is louder just after the onset of expiration. This sound coincides in time with a wave which occurs on apex tracings shortly after the abrupt fall that marks the end of systole. A corresponding wave, the *h* wave, may occur on the jugular pulse (Figs. 19 and 24). The third sound, therefore, occurs during early diastole just after the first rush of blood into the ventricles, and it is associated with waves on the apex and venous tracing which indicate that the first rush has been completed. Hirschfelder suggests that, owing to an elastic recoil of the ventricular walls immediately after this primary filling, the auriculoventricular valves are snapped together with sufficient force to produce the third sound.

### **Gallop Rhythm**

In gallop rhythm, three sounds, instead of two, are heard with each heart cycle. If we omit from consideration the occurrence of split sounds, the extra sound heard in gallop rhythm usually occurs during diastole. It may precede the normal first sound (presystolic gallop rhythm) or it may follow the second sound (protodiastolic gallop rhythm). If diastole is short, the relation of the extra sound to the preceding and succeeding systoles is difficult to determine.

**Protodiastolic Gallop Rhythm.**—The protodiastolic type of gallop rhythm is probably due to an increase in the intensity of the normal third sound. Since this sound is associated with changes which occur just after the first rush of blood into the ventricle, one would expect it to be louder than usual, whenever the rush of blood is increased by a heightened venous pressure in the pulmonary or systemic circuit. The occurrence of this sound in mitral insufficiency and in cardiac insufficiency secondary to arterial hypertension may be readily explained in this manner. So, too, the gallop rhythm observed in patients with adherent pericardium may be due to a sudden ventricular diastole caused by the pull of surrounding adhesions. In mitral stenosis a protodiastolic gallop rhythm is not un-

common, but it evidently cannot be caused by a sudden ventricular filling. Its mode of causation is at present uncertain, though in some cases it may represent an aborted murmur in early diastole..

**Presystolic Gallop Rhythm.**—In the presystolic type of gallop rhythm, the accessory sound is attributed to an audible auricular contraction. That auricular contractions may produce audible sounds has been demonstrated conclusively in patients with complete heart block. In such patients a faint sound accompanying each auricular contraction may be heard and recorded (Fig. 46). Normally, the auricular sounds are either too faint or too fused with the first heart sound to be clearly distinguished. One

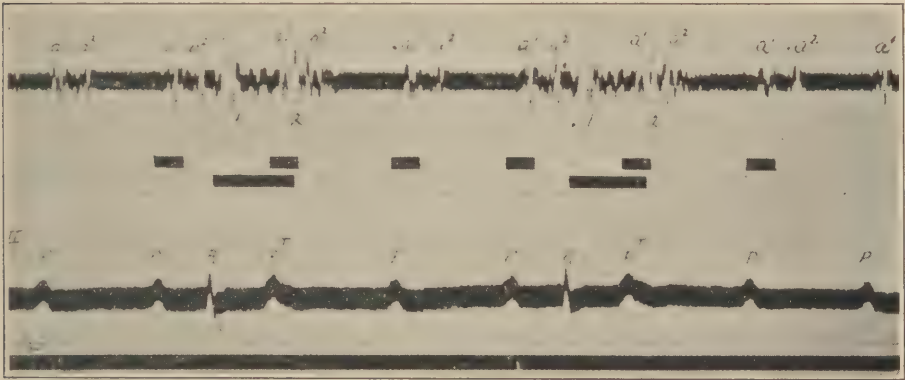


Fig. 46.—A Record of Auricular Sounds in a Case of Complete Heart Block. (From Lewis, "Lectures on the Heart," published by Paul B. Hoeber.)

would expect that under pathological conditions the auricular sounds might become audible, because the interval separating them from the first sound was increased. As a matter of fact, the interval between the auricular and the ventricular systoles is increased in some cases of presystolic gallop rhythm. This is not always the case, however, and where presystolic gallop rhythm occurs in patients with a normal *As-V's* interval, it appears to be due to an unusually loud auricular sound, which is probably caused by an increase in the force of the auricular contractions. As a matter of fact, presystolic gallop rhythm is often found when there is an hypertrophy of the auricles. Since the conditions which lead to hypertrophy of the auricles are, in many ways, identical with those which increase the rush of blood into the ventricles during early diastole, it is to be expected that presystolic and protodiastolic types of gallop rhythm would tend to occur in the same classes of disease. Such seem indeed to be the case. Furthermore, Müller, and also Potain, have described instances in which a gallop rhythm changed from one type to the other in the same individual.

### *Valvular Murmurs*

If water be allowed to flow through a rubber tube that has been attached to a faucet, a constriction of the tube will, under proper conditions, cause the tube to vibrate. These vibrations are more readily produced when the flow through the tube is rapid. If the constriction be gradually produced, no vibrations occur at the onset. As the constriction increases, the vibrations appear and increase in intensity up to a certain maximum, after which they diminish and finally disappear as the flow of water through the constriction is checked. The vibrations thus produced are most marked beyond the point of constriction; being, so to speak, transmitted in the direction of the current. In valvular heart disease, the blood also flows through narrow orifices, and it causes vibrations in the valves and adjacent structures similar to those produced in the rubber tube. When these vibrations are felt they are spoken of as thrills, when heard they are called murmurs. Rapid vibrations produce high-pitched murmurs, which are not readily felt. Slow vibrations produce low-pitched murmurs and palpable thrills.

Neither thrills nor murmurs accompany the normal heart action. When the valves close, the closure is so perfect that little if any blood escapes. When the valves open, the valvular orifices are not sufficiently narrow to give rise to vibrations. Murmurs may be produced either by a leak in a valve during its time of closure (insufficiency) or by an abnormal narrowing of an orifice which obstructs the onflowing current of blood (stenosis). The time in the heart cycle at which murmurs occur is therefore obvious. During ventricular systole the semilunar valves are open and the auriculoventricular valves are closed. Systolic valvular murmurs may, therefore, be produced either by a stenosis at a semilunar orifice, or by an insufficiency of the auriculoventricular valves. Similarly during diastole, the semilunar valves are closed and the auriculoventricular valves are open. A diastolic murmur may then be produced either by an insufficiency of the former or by a stenosis of the latter.

Cardiac murmurs, like the vibrations produced in a rubber tube, tend to be transmitted in the direction of the current that is producing the murmur. Thus the murmur of aortic stenosis is usually transmitted to the vessels of the neck, whereas the murmur of aortic insufficiency is transmitted in the opposite direction, and is usually best heard to the left of the sternum, along the left border of the precordium and at the apex.

The loudness of a valvular murmur is determined by various factors, chief among which are the size of the orifice, the rate at which the blood passed through it, and the condition of the surrounding structures. No definite relation exists between the loudness of a murmur and the seriousness of the lesion. In aortic stenosis, the murmur is usually a loud one, and will become louder, other things being equal, as the stenosis increases.



In insufficiencies, on the other hand, a very wide opening may ultimately lessen the murmur. Furthermore, the retarded circulation of cardiac insufficiency tends to reduce the loudness of all murmurs. It is, therefore, evident that, in the most serious lesions of all, the murmurs may not be loud and that they may become louder as compensation is established.

**In Mitral Stenosis.**—Of all valvular lesions mitral stenosis is the one which produces the most variable murmurs. This murmur not only varies in loudness from time to time, but it may occupy varying positions in diastole. The position in diastole depends largely upon the rate at which blood flows through the stenosed orifice. Normally, as we have seen, the blood enters the ventricle most rapidly in early diastole, and, if the heart rate be slow, the ventricular filling may be practically completed by the middle of diastole.

The auricular contraction sends but an insignificant amount of blood into the ventricle. In mitral stenosis, on the other hand, the left auricle may play an important compensatory part in forcing blood through the stenosed orifice, so that in this condition the rate of ventricular filling is most rapid at the beginning and at the end of diastole (Fig. 16). These are indeed the common

sites of the mitral stenosis murmur. When the auricle is active, the murmur is usually heard in presystole, i. e., at the time of the auricular contraction. It may begin sometime before this, or it may occupy the whole of diastole, but the presystolic portion of the murmur is practically always present. If the relation between auricular and ventricular contractions be disturbed, the murmur changes. Thus with a lengthened *As-Vs* interval the murmur accompanying auricular systole may cease before the onset of the first heart sound, and in heart block the isolated auricular contractions may produce isolated murmurs. Most important of all, however, is the change in the murmur of mitral stenosis which takes place when the auricles cease to contract during auricular fibrillation. If the diastolic pauses are short, the murmur may still fill diastole; but when the diastolic pauses are long, the murmur begins shortly after

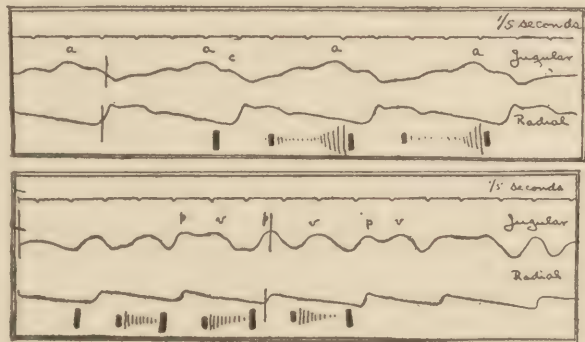


Fig. 47.—Change in the Murmur of Mitral Stenosis during Paroxysmal Auricular Fibrillation. During the Regular Heart Action (above) when the Auricles Were Beating Normally the Murmur Was Loudest just before the First Sound (Presystolic Murmur). When the Auricles Were Fibrillating the Murmur Was Loudest just after the Second Sound and the Presystolic Accentuation Was Lost. (From Hewlett, Jour. Am. Med. Assn.)

the second sound and ceases before the end of diastole. The presystolic accentuation disappears with the cessation of normal auricular contractions (Fig. 47).

### ***Accidental Murmurs***

Cardiac murmurs not infrequently occur when there is no anatomical disease of the heart valves. In *relative insufficiencies* of the valves, regurgitation occurs because the musculomembranous ring to which they are attached is abnormally wide. It is evident that, under such circumstances, the mechanism of murmur production and the effects produced on the circulation will differ in no essential way from the effects produced by insufficiencies that are caused by valvular disease. The murmur of a relative mitral insufficiency may disappear as compensation is reëstablished and the dilatation of the left ventricle lessens. The murmur of a valvular insufficiency, on the other hand, usually persists and may become louder when compensation is restored.

In the so-called *accidental murmurs* there is, so far as we know, no regurgitation and no evident stenosis. Murmurs of this type are relatively frequent in Graves's disease, in the anemias, and in infections; but they may also occur in other pathological conditions and even in normal individuals. Accidental murmurs are usually systolic in time, and they are usually louder over the pulmonary area than at the apex of the heart. They rarely cause a disappearance of the first heart sound, and they may be heard only during a limited portion of systole. A certain number of these murmurs doubtlessly arise not in the heart, but in the lungs, and are due to movements of the air caused by the cardiac contractions. Such *cardiorespiratory murmurs* often vary considerably with the different phases of respiration, and they may disappear at certain phases. It seems improbable, however, that cardiorespiratory murmurs make up the sum total of what are known as accidental murmurs; but the cause or causes for the remainder is still obscure. Changes in the speed of the blood current may play a part, particularly when, as in anemias, the rate of blood flow is believed to be increased. Lüthje has suggested that a functional stenosis of the pulmonary artery may be instrumental in their production.

## **Some Manifestations of Heart Disease**

### ***Cyanosis***

A cyanotic color may result from a conversion of hemoglobin into methemoglobin or into sulphhemoglobin through the action of poisons. As a rule, however, the term is used to designate changes in tint arising from improper aëration of the blood.

**Local Cyanosis.**—This is due primarily to a *slowing of the blood stream* through the affected part. As a result the blood gives up a greater propor-

tion of its oxygen to the tissues. The intensity of the cyanosis also depends upon the *degree of venous and capillary distention*. The latter factor is evident in the variations of skin color which follow exposure of the hands to cold. The difference depends on the degree to which the superficial capillaries and venules are distended with venous blood. When constricted, the hands are white; when distended, the hands are purple. Dilatation of the venules and capillaries does not necessarily increase the blood flow, for the latter is largely governed by the size of the arterioles and these may be constricted even when the venules are dilated.

Local cyanosis follows a mechanical venous obstruction, for this not only slows the blood current but it raises the venous pressure and thus tends to dilate the veins and capillaries. The cold and cyanotic hands, so common in neurasthenics, are attributable to local changes in the circulation similar to those normally produced by exposure to cold, but without adequate exposure. The local cyanosis of Raynaud's disease is likewise due to local spasm of the arterioles with dilatation of the superficial venules and capillaries.

**General Cyanosis.**—Here the principal cause is central, and changes of color are present in widely separate parts of the body, but most intense wherever there is an accumulation of the blood near the surface. Thus the lips, fingernails and cheeks commonly show the color changes most plainly. General cyanosis may be caused by lack of oxygen in the respired air, pulmonary disease, or heart disease.

*Cyanosis from lack of oxygen* in the respired air is encountered at high altitudes and is due to the low oxygen tension in the alveolar air. In consequence of this low tension the hemoglobin leaving the lungs is insufficiently saturated.

*Cyanosis from pulmonary disease* is usually due to the low oxygen tension in certain alveoli of the lungs. The blood passing through these alveoli does not receive its full quota of oxygen and the mixed blood coming from the lungs is insufficiently aerated (page 387).

*Cardiac cyanosis* depends upon, (1) a *reduced rate of blood flow*, which permits an unusual abstraction of oxygen from the blood during its passage through the capillaries, (2) *secondary pulmonary changes*, which interfere with a proper oxygenization of the blood, and (3) a *congestion of the systemic veins and capillaries* owing to a failure of the right heart. These three factors are responsible, in varying degrees, for the cyanosis seen in heart disease.

**Congenital Heart Disease.**—The remarkable cyanosis that occurs in congenital heart disease is often associated with relatively few other signs of cardiac insufficiency. In some cases, particularly in patients with pulmonary stenosis complicated by open foramen ovale or defective ventricular septum, venous blood passes directly from the right to the left side of the heart without traversing the lungs. Under such circum-



stances the mixture of venous blood with that coming from the lungs would tend to produce cyanosis. When the opening between the two sides of the heart is not accompanied by pulmonary stenosis, however, the blood probably flows back from the left to the right side owing to the higher pressure on the left. In such cases it seems improbable that a short circuiting of the lungs occurs. A second important factor is stasis in the systemic veins. This is thought by some to be due to congenital weakness of the capillaries but it doubtless depends in part upon a heightened pressure in the right auricle, owing to causes that have been previously discussed (page 40). It is noteworthy that in the later stages of pulmonary emphysema and of pulmonary fibrosis as well as in sclerosis of the pulmonary artery, a cyanosis may develop which is comparable in intensity with that seen in congenital heart disease. Here also stasis in the systemic veins is added to the pulmonary cause for the cyanosis.

### *Cardiac Edema*

The edema of heart disease depends mainly upon stasis of the blood in the systemic veins. The relation to stasis, however, is not a simple one, for some patients with marked cyanosis or with marked swelling of the liver show little or no edema, whereas others with edema show little other evidence of stasis.

**Local and General Circulatory Factors.**—Of local circulatory factors that lead to edema, slowing of the blood stream appears to be relatively unimportant, for we know that the obstruction of an artery may produce considerable slowing of the local blood flow without producing edema. Extensive obstruction of the veins, on the other hand, not infrequently leads to edema. This has been demonstrated experimentally, and it is also a familiar clinical observation. The increased venous and capillary pressure leads to an excessive transudate from the capillaries, and the slow blood stream interferes with that absorption of lymph which normally takes place by way of the blood vessels. Edema also depends upon the condition of the lymph circulation, for this normally removes a portion of the fluids that leave the blood vessels. Any compression or obstruction of the lymph vessels may, therefore, contribute to a stasis of fluids in the tissues. Finally, edema develops more readily in loose tissues where the tension in the tissues is low.

In heart disease, the venous congestion and the slow blood stream reproduce conditions which are similar to those present in local venous obstruction. Since the venous and capillary pressures are highest in the dependent parts of the body, the edema of cardiac disease ordinarily occurs in these dependent parts. When the patient is on his feet the ankles are first affected and this is followed later by edema of the legs, genitalia and abdomen. When the patient lies down, the edema tends to diminish in the legs and to increase in the dependent portions of the back.

The concentration of the blood in cardiac edema may remain within the normal limits. In some cases, however, the blood becomes dilute just as it is in true nephritic edema (page 584), while with the disappearance of the edema the blood concentration returns to the normal. This dilute condition of the blood probably depends upon changes in renal function caused by a chronic passive congestion of the kidneys. When present, it is a contributing factor in the production of cardiac edema.

### *Pulmonary Edema*

Pulmonary edema may be due to a variety of causes. In one group of cases, the edema is associated with infection of the lungs. Thus pneumonia may be ushered in with the symptoms of pulmonary edema. The importance of this infectious form of edema has been insisted on particularly by Sahli, and it is a not infrequent secondary or terminal event in chronic diseases. In another group of cases, abundant serous expectoration follows the withdrawal of fluid from the pleural cavity, and is due to the sudden circulatory changes in the lung that has suddenly expanded. In a third group, the edema is caused by drugs, such as pilocarpin.

**Mechanical Factors.**—It has long been known that edema of the lungs is frequent in those suffering from cardiac disease, and particularly in those with chronic arterial hypertension, nephritis, or coronary disease. In such patients, the edema may occur as a *terminal* event or it may recur in a *paroxysmal* form. The exact nature of the pulmonary edema which occurs in renal, cardiac, or vascular disease has been much debated, and it has been variously attributed to changes in the quality of the blood, damage to the pulmonary vessels and infection. While these factors undoubtedly may contribute to the etiology of pulmonary edema, the part played by mechanical changes in the pulmonary circulation is of particular interest, and they seem to play a predominant rôle in causing the paroxysmal type of the disease. According to the theory of Cohnheim and Welch, pulmonary edema results from a disproportion between the working power of the left and the right ventricles of such a character, that the left side of the heart is unable to expel the blood pumped by the right into the lungs. Some blood always collects in the lungs as a result of weakness of the left ventricle, but ordinarily this is not excessive, for the increased pressure in the pulmonary veins increases the filling of the left ventricle and improves its contractile powers, so that its output ultimately keeps pace with the output from the right side of the heart (page 8). In the condition which we are now describing, however, the weakness of the left ventricle causes such a marked rise in pulmonary pressure, that fluid escapes rapidly from the vessels into the air spaces. Mechanical edemas of this type have been produced experimentally by ligation of the upper thoracic aorta of rabbits, by obstructing the mitral orifice, and by ligating

the left coronary artery so as to cause a sudden weakness of the left ventricle. Clinically, paroxysmal edemas of the lungs are most frequently associated with conditions which throw an excessive strain on the left ventricle, such as aortic insufficiency, coronary sclerosis and chronic arterial hypertension. The view that a sudden and marked insufficiency of the left ventricle may produce one type of pulmonary edema is, therefore, in full accord with experimental and clinical observations.

## Cardiac Sensations

### *Palpitation*

A normal individual is rarely conscious of his heart's action. After exercise or during emotional disturbances he may feel a throbbing sense of palpitation, but, for the most part, the cardiac movements produce no afferent impulses which rise to the level of consciousness. Even the unusually large contractions of aortic insufficiency, or the extreme ventricular irregularity of auricular fibrillation, may cause no disturbing cardiac sensations.

Throbbing sensations produced by the heart action are experienced most frequently by patients who are in other ways nervous. While this heightened consciousness of impulses coming from the viscera is in general a factor in most cases of palpitation, nevertheless disturbing sensations arising from the heart are at times associated with more or less evident changes in the heart's action. For example, with extrasystoles the patient may complain that he feels the heart stop or that it thumps, either with the extrasystole or with the large ventricular contraction that immediately follows the intermission. During paroxysms of auricular fibrillation unpleasant sensations of cardiac throbbing and cardiac irregularity may be present. When the fibrillation becomes permanent these sensations tend to disappear, apparently because a continuation of the irregularity permits the patient to grow accustomed to the unusual nervous impulses coming from the heart. Wilson has recently observed a patient in whom palpitation recurred whenever there was a simultaneous contraction of ventricles and auricles, owing to a transference of the pacemaker to the nodal tissues (Fig. 32). Since simultaneous contractions occur not infrequently in paroxysmal tachycardia (Fig. 38), they probably play a part in causing the palpitation which is so common in this condition. In such cases, the unusual venous pulsations, caused by the fact that the auricles contract when the auriculoventricular valves are closed, appear to be the immediate cause of the abnormal sensations.

In a certain number of conditions, therefore, abnormal cardiac sensations are associated with demonstrable changes in the heart's activities. In many cases of palpitation, however, examination of the heart fails to



reveal any definite abnormality. One frequently gets the impression that the heart is "overacting," the apex beat being more sudden and violent, the rate somewhat rapid, and the first sound sharp in character. Conclusive objective evidence of such changes in the cardiac activities has not as yet been furnished; and, for the present, we must attribute many cases of palpitation to a heightened consciousness of the cardiac activity, rather than to any definite change in the cardiac movements.

### ***Cardiac Pain***

The heart, like many other viscera, is insensitive to tactile stimuli. Nevertheless, it is capable of giving rise to pain. Severe pain originating in the heart is always described as angina pectoris; but since all grades of transition occur between the severest paroxysms of angina and mild cardiac pains, the term angina pectoris may also denote any pain of cardiac origin. The character of such pain varies. There may be a feeling of great oppression hardly to be described as pain, or there may be a sensation of great weight upon the thoracic wall, or a feeling that the heart is being compressed in a vise, or, finally, the pain may be of a sharp, stabbing or tearing character. Cardiac pain is localized most commonly in the region of the heart itself, but it frequently extends to other parts of the thorax or to the inner side of the left arm. Less commonly, it radiates to the right arm, the neck, the back, the abdomen, or even the legs.

During or after an attack of cardiac pain, the patient may complain of numbness or tingling in the skin covering the precordium, the inner side of the left arm, or other regions affected by the pain. Objective sensory disturbances, and particularly a hypersensitiveness to painful stimuli, may also be demonstrated in these regions. Occasionally, also, the patient complains of muscular weakness or cramps in the affected arm or hand. Mackenzie attributes the sense of thoracic constriction to a spasm of the intercostal muscles, which is analogous to the spasm of abdominal muscles in diseases affecting the organs lying in that cavity.

**Referred Pain and Other Disturbances.**—The pain of angina pectoris is, therefore, felt not only in the region of the heart itself, but in distant parts of the body, and, furthermore, it may be associated with sensory as well as motor disturbances. An explanation for these phenomena, as well as for "referred" pains in general, is found in the work of Henry Head and James Mackenzie. These authors have pointed out that the regions of referred pain, cutaneous sense changes and muscle spasm or weakness are usually innervated from the same segments of the spinal cord, as is the organ which is the seat of disease. According to their hypothesis, the abnormal stimuli that come from a diseased viscus irritate the spinal cord, particularly at the level where they enter. This irritation of the cord leads, on the one hand, to conscious sensations, which are referred by the

brain to the exterior segments of the body innervated by the irritated portions of the cord. On the other hand, the irritation of the cord may lead to demonstrable sensory and motor changes in the skin and muscles innervated by the affected segments. The commonest site of cardiac pain corresponds to the peripheral distribution of the eighth cervical to the fourth



Fig. 48.—Usual Distribution of the Pain and Sensory Disturbances in Angina pectoris. Corresponds to about the Distribution of the Eighth Cervical to the Fourth Dorsal Spinal Segments. (Modified from Mackenzie, "Diseases of the Heart," published by Oxford University Press.)

dorsal spinal segments. These, as will be seen from Figure 48, innervate the skin of the precordium as well as a band that extends to the axilla, and from here down the inner aspect of the arm and forearm to the ulnar side of the hand. Afferent impulses from the heart are believed to enter this region of the cord and thus cause the characteristic distribution of pain. Unusual distributions of pain, as to the neck, the head or other parts of the body, may be explained partly as being due to a more extensive spread of the irritation within the spinal cord, and partly as being due to a stimulation of afferent cardiac fibers, which run in the vagus or depressor nerves to the region of the medulla oblongata.

**Pathogenesis.**—What causes the afferent impulses which lead to the pains of cardiac disease? Patients who die of angina pectoris most frequently show at autopsy a sclerosis or obstruction of the coronary arteries. Disease of the first part of the aorta with aortic insufficiency is also common. Severe attacks of cardiac pain may also be due to the toxic effects of nicotin, or caffein, or to an acute cardiac strain owing to violent muscular exertion.

The exact manner in which these causes produce the pain is still unsettled. Several hypotheses have been advanced. According to the one most commonly held the pain

is due to an *inadequate supply of blood* to the heart. It has been compared to the pains experienced by those who suffer from narrowing of the arteries in the lower extremities. Such patients may be comfortable so long as no exercise is taken, but shortly after they begin to walk they are seized with pains and weakness in the legs, which only disappear if the patient rests (intermittent claudication). The blood supply to the legs, which was sufficient for the resting needs of the

extremity, became insufficient during exercise, and the insufficient circulation caused the pain. The analogy to cardiac pain which is usually induced or made worse by extra work on the part of the heart is obvious. This inadequacy of the blood supply in the heart, as in the leg, may be due either to organic disease of the local arteries, or to their functional spasm.

Others have attributed the pains of cardiac diseases to an *acute dilatation of the heart muscle* and the efforts made by the heart to overcome the increasing dilatation. An analogy may here be drawn to the colicky pains excited when a hollow viscus, such as the stomach, the intestines, the bile passages or the ureter, is rapidly distended by material that collects behind an obstruction and contracts violently in the endeavor to overcome the obstruction.

**Blood Pressure and Angina pectoris.**—The relation of increased blood pressure to the pains of angina pectoris is interesting and important. In some, but not in all patients, attacks of angina are accompanied by a rise, and often a marked rise, in the systemic blood pressure. When the blood pressure is reduced by the administration of vasodilators the pains usually become much less severe. It is obvious that the rise of blood pressure tends to increase the strain on the heart; yet the exact relation between the acute hypertension and the pain is not definitely known. It is possible, for example, that the rise of blood pressure is caused by the pain. It is possible that a general vasoconstriction is associated with a constriction of the coronary arteries, and that the latter is the immediate cause of the anginal pains, owing to a reduction in the blood supply to the heart muscle. It is possible, finally, that a primary constriction of the peripheral arterioles causes the rise of blood pressure, and that the rise of pressure produces the paroxysm by increasing the dilatation of the heart muscle.

In certain patients no rise in the general blood pressure accompanies the attacks of angina pectoris. In such cases the use of vasodilators is less successful than when the attacks are associated with hypertension. Attacks of this type may be most serious in character.

## The Blood Vessels

### Physiological Considerations

The blood vessels of the systemic circulation form a continuous and closed set of tubes that lead from the aortic semilunar valves to the openings of the venae cavae into the right auricle. The vessels of the pulmonary circulation conduct the blood in a similar manner from the right ventricle to the left auricle. Into the aorta and pulmonary artery the



ventricles periodically discharge a portion of their contents, thus producing the intermittent changes in pressure and the intermittent movements of blood that constitute the arterial pulse. Blood does not flow freely through the fine capillaries and smaller arterioles. This peripheral resistance tends to hold back the blood to a greater or lesser extent in the larger arteries, and thus causes the high arterial pressure.

In the pulmonary circuit the vessels usually play but a passive rôle. Vasomotor nerves to these vessels have been demonstrated, but their action is insignificant when compared with the effects produced by changes in the output from the two sides of the heart. Only extensive disease of the lungs or of the pulmonary vessels influences the circulation as a whole. In the systemic circuit, on the other hand, changes in the caliber of the vessels play an important rôle in controlling the height of the blood pressure and in distributing blood to the various organs.

Owing to the resistance encountered in the blood vessels there is a progressive fall of pressure from the arterial to the venous side of each circuit. This fall is most marked where the resistance is greatest. According to Starling, the following indicate the usual mean pressures in different parts of the systemic circulation:

Large arteries (e. g., carotid).....	90 mm. mercury
Medium-sized arteries (e. g., radial)...	85 " "
Capillaries, about .....	15-40 " "
Small veins (of the hand).....	9 " "

It is evident that the main fall of pressure takes place between the medium-sized arteries and the veins. A part of this fall takes place in the capillaries, but the smaller arterioles also interpose a considerable amount of resistance to the flow of blood, and from the physiological standpoint they are of dominant importance owing to the fact that they, more than any other part of the arterial system, are subject to marked changes in caliber.

**Mean Arterial Pressure.**—The mean arterial pressure is determined by two factors: the rapidity with which the blood is expelled from the heart, and the ease with which it escapes from the arteries. The former is determined by the number of cardiac contractions in the unit of time and by the output at each contraction. The latter is determined by the viscosity of the blood and by the size of the arterioles and capillaries throughout the body. The blood pressure may remain constant despite marked variations in the cardiac output, for there may be equally marked changes in the peripheral resistance. Thus Tigerstedt records experiments in which, with a blood pressure of from 91 to 100 mm. of mercury, the output from the heart varied in maximo from 9 c.c. to 149 c.c. per minute per kilo of body weight. Conversely, the minute output may remain practically constant even though there are marked variations in the blood

pressure; and, again, Tigerstedt records an experiment in which the blood pressure varied from 58 to 112 mm. of mercury, while the minute volume remained practically constant (130 to 149 c.c.). It is obvious that no conclusion as to the cardiac output can be drawn from the height of the mean blood pressure.

**Arteriolar Contraction.**—Of no little interest is the question as to whether the blood pressure is more commonly influenced by the cardiac output or by the peripheral resistance in the arterioles. While this question cannot receive a general answer and must be studied in each case, nevertheless it is interesting to recall Tigerstedt's conclusion. "It seems, from all of the experiments bearing upon this question, that the blood pressure, although equally dependent upon the peripheral resistance and the minute volume from the heart, is nevertheless governed above all by the degree of contraction of the vessels at the moment. If the vessels are markedly dilated, then the heart ultimately cannot receive sufficient blood to sustain a high blood pressure. On the other hand, one may say that there is no limit for increases of resistance. During sufficiently strong stimulation of the vasomotor nerves the lumina of the vessels practically disappear, and with a marked resistance a very small output from the heart suffices to maintain a high blood pressure."

Not only do the arterioles play an important rôle in regulating the systemic blood pressure, but the degree of their contraction governs the local blood flow to particular vascular areas. When the arterioles to a given organ dilate, more blood flows through this organ. Only in the case of the brain does the normal blood supply appear to depend more on the height of the blood pressure than on the local vascular control. If the area affected be a small one, no great change in the general blood pressure is produced by a constriction or relaxation of its arterioles. If, however, the area be large, changes in its vascular resistance cause an appreciable alteration of the arterial pressure. This is particularly true of the great vessels of the splanchnic region, which exercise a preponderating influence upon the vascular control of arterial pressure.

An increased blood flow to one part of the body may be associated with a diminished flow to another part. Dilatation of the splanchnic vessels is usually accompanied by constriction of the surface vessels of the body, and vice versa (Dastre-Morat law). Whether the changes in distant parts of the body are due to nervous reflexes or whether they are more passive in character is not definitely settled.

Although the arterioles may regain a certain amount of tone after all nerves leading to the part have been divided, nevertheless their size in the intact animal is governed mainly by nervous impulses. These impulses are of two kinds: vasoconstrictor and vasodilator. The main vasoconstrictor center lies in the medulla oblongata in the neighborhood of the nucleus of the seventh cranial nerve. It may be stimulated by chemical

changes in the blood or by nervous impulses coming from various parts of the body. Such pressor influences act chiefly by causing a constriction of the splanchnic vessels. Depressor influences either of a chemical or nervous character may also act upon the vasomotor center. The most important of the nervous depressor reflexes arise from the first part of the aorta, and are carried to the medulla by the depressor nerve. Since this nerve is stimulated when the blood pressure is increased, the depressor reflex tends to prevent sudden changes of arterial pressure.

**Capillary Pressure.**—The walls of the capillaries are usually subjected to considerably less than the arterial pressure, because the main fall in pressure usually occurs in the finer terminations of the arteries. The thin capillary walls suffice to withstand this pressure owing to the small caliber of these vessels, for it is a physical law that, at a given internal pressure, the linear tension on the walls of a tube is proportional to its diameter. Any dilatation of the arterioles subjects the corresponding capillaries to a greater internal pressure and increases their size. To what extent and under exactly what conditions the capillaries also vary their size in response to physical, chemical or nervous influences has not been determined. It is certain, however, that they possess some independent contractile powers. According to Hooker and others the capillary bed is sensitive to both chemical and nervous influence. The response to these influences is manifested by changes in the size of the capillaries, which are produced not through alterations in the capillary pressure, but through alterations in the tone of their walls. That such capillary dilatations or constrictions may be of importance in governing the circulation is obvious; yet at the present time we know very little about them.

**Blood Flow in Veins.**—The flow of blood through the veins depends in part upon the fall of pressure from the small veins to the right auricle. In part it depends upon the fact that certain veins possess valves. The intermittent compression of such veins by movements and by muscular contractions forces blood toward the heart. This mechanism is particularly important in the legs, for the venous pressure in the feet is normally only a trifle higher than the venous pressure in the hands. When an individual walks, the venous flow from the legs to the abdominal cavity is maintained not so much by a continuous high pressure in the capillaries and venules of the legs as by the action of the muscular movements on the veins containing valves.

That the superficial veins of the arms possess contractile powers is evident from their large size when the individual is warm and their small size when the individual is chilly, these differences being maintained even though the venous pressure be raised by compressing the upper arm. The size of the portal vein is influenced by nervous impulses that travel in the splanchnic nerves. It is evident, therefore, that the veins are not mere



passive channels for the return of blood, but that they play a more or less active part in furthering and controlling the circulation. This control does not, however, extend to the point at which, by a dilatation of the splanchnic vessels, a person may be said to bleed into his own veins.

## Transient Arterial Hypertension

We have seen that an increase in the arterial blood pressure may be caused by an increased output from the heart, by a general constriction of the arterioles, or by a combination of the two. The transient hypertension associated with muscular exertion is due in the main to an increased output from the heart. The blood flow through the exercised muscles is very markedly accelerated, and the flow through distant portions of the body surface is also increased. We do not know whether the blood flow in the internal organs is increased or not.

**Increased Arterial Resistance.**—In most other forms of transient arterial hypertension the rise of blood pressure seems to be due primarily to an increase in the arterial resistance. In *acute asphyxia*, for example, the rise of blood pressure is due to stimulation of the vasomotor center by the venous character of the blood. Either an excess of carbon dioxid or a deficiency in oxygen will cause such a rise of pressure. The immediate stimulus for the vasomotor, as for the respiratory center (page 363), appears to be an increase in acidity, whether this be due to a collection of carbonic acid or of acid products that arise from an insufficient oxygen supply. Rises of blood pressure from acute asphyxia have been observed in man by Külbs. The normal or somewhat increased blood pressure frequently observed during cardiac decompensation (page 49) is due to vascular constriction, and is probably caused by asphyxial changes in the vasomotor center induced by the slow blood flow.

A marked rise of arterial blood pressure accompanies *acute cerebral compression*. The latter causes an anemia of the vasomotor center with a local lack of oxygen and a local accumulation of carbon dioxid and other acid products. If the anemia is prolonged, however, the lack of oxygen will reduce the irritability of the center, so that it no longer responds to normal or abnormal stimuli.

We have seen that in certain patients suffering from *angina pectoris* the attacks of pain are regularly associated with a rise of systemic blood pressure. That the pain of angina, in common with other nervous or psychic disturbances, may itself cause a rise of arterial pressure is certain, and this is doubtlessly one cause of the rise during the paroxysms. It is possible also that a general vasoconstriction merely accompanies a constriction of the coronary vessels, and that the latter is the real cause of the

paroxysm, while the former plays simply an accessory part. Finally, in certain forms of the disease, the rise of pressure produced by a general vascular spasm is believed to be the immediate cause of the attacks of pain. This is known as the vasomotor form of angina pectoris.

Acute rises of blood pressure may also occur in *paroxysmal dyspnea*, in *paroxysmal pulmonary edema*, in *lead colic* and in *tabetic crises*. Whether these rises are direct causes of the paroxysms or whether they result from the pain or from an imperfect aëration of the vasomotor center is, however, uncertain. Pal has brought together a great number of such conditions, and has given to them the common name of "vascular crises."

**In Acute Renal Disease.**—Special interest is attached to the rises of blood pressure which often accompany acute renal disease, uremia and eclampsia. A moderate hypertension is common in the acute nephritis that follows scarlet fever and in other forms of acute glomerular nephritis. It is rare in the acute nephritides that complicate typhoid fever and diphtheria. Involvement of the renal glomeruli appears to be particularly marked in the forms of acute nephritis that cause an elevation of blood pressure, while involvement of the tubules is more marked in the forms that cause no such elevation. In acute sublimate poisoning, the severe degeneration of the renal tubules is accompanied by a normal or elevated blood pressure.

Hypertension is almost constant in uremia and the blood pressure may rise during the attack and subside after recovery. In anuria also a moderate rise of blood pressure is the rule. In a case reported by Pässler, the blood pressure was 150 mm. Hg on the sixth day of the anuria, and it rose to 180 on the tenth and twelfth days shortly before death. Brach observed a remarkable case in which periods of anuria alternated with periods of free urination. During anuria the pressure rose to 180 or 195, while it fell during the periods of urination to 130 or 140 (Fig. 49). Two rises of this type were observed, but in the third and terminal period of anuria little rise of pressure occurred. Apparently, on this occasion, the body failed to react to the stimulus. In prolonged chronic uremia a similar fall of blood pressure may occur, but usually there is increased tension and especially is this true in patients who are robust and full blooded. In such patients bleeding is said to be beneficial.

Although there is usually a rise of blood pressure in eclampsia, this is not invariably encountered. When found it usually precedes and accompanies the attack, and in favorable cases, the pressure returns to the normal level after delivery. Regardless of whether the pressure is high or comparatively low, bleeding, as was the case in uremia above, has been shown to be of benefit. Indeed according to Williams, it is in cases where the pulse is thin and weak that the beneficent effects are most apparent.

The hypertension of acute nephritis, eclampsia and uremia is probably not due to anatomical changes in the heart or blood vessels. The rise in pressure may be quite rapid, and has been observed within forty-eight hours after the onset of an acute nephritis. This, together with the subsidence of the high pressure as the disease improves, indicates that the elevated pressure is due to changes in function rather than in structure.

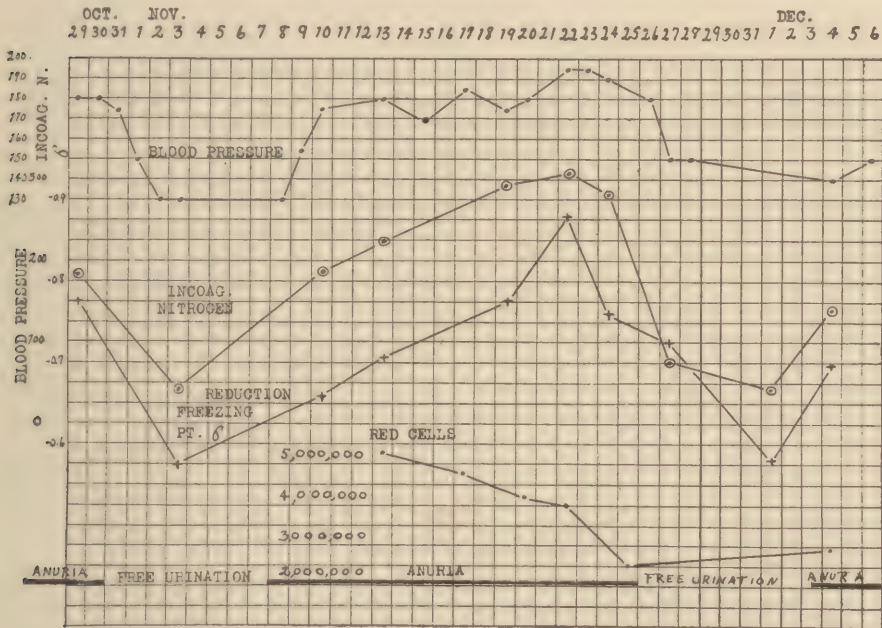


Fig. 49.—The Effect of Intermittent Anuria Due to Malignant Disease upon the Blood and Blood Pressure. Anuria Began about Oct. 22 and Lasted through Oct. 30. This was Followed by Free Urination and by Two Subsequent Periods of Anuria, in the Last of which the Patient Died. During the First and Second Periods of Anuria the Blood Pressure Rose as High as 180 to 195. During the Last Period It Did Not Rise. (Figure Has Been Constructed from a Case Report by Brasch, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*)

Although direct evidence is lacking, it seems probable that the acute hypertension in such cases is due to a general constriction of the systemic arterioles. Whether this constriction is caused by nervous reflexes from the diseased kidney, or whether, as seems more probable, it is due to toxic substances, is not known.

## Chronic Arterial Hypertension

Instrumental methods of determining the blood pressure in man have shown that one of the most important, as well as one of the most common,



pathological disturbances after the age of forty is a continued increase in the arterial blood pressure. The pathogenesis of chronic arterial hypertension is still obscure, as is also its precise relation to the associated renal and arterial diseases. Yet, from the functional standpoint, chronic arterial hypertension constitutes a fairly well defined entity.

### *Relation to Renal Disease*

Richard Bright noted that certain patients dying of kidney disease showed at autopsy an hypertrophy of the heart, and he pointed out that this might be due to the increased arterial tension observed in these patients. From that day to the present the relation between renal disease and arterial hypertension has been a subject of frequent discussion. We have seen that in certain types of acute nephritis an arterial hypertension may appear early, and that it may disappear when the nephritis subsides. Chronic disease of the kidney may or may not be accompanied by an increase in the arterial blood pressure. In amyloid disease of the kidney the blood pressure is rarely increased; in chronic glomerular nephritis it is increased in a moderate proportion of the cases, while in chronic interstitial nephritis hypertension is the rule.

On the other hand, chronic arterial hypertension may exist with no evidence of renal disease. Clinicians not infrequently encounter patients with chronic arterial hypertension who show no changes in the urine. For example, of the 458 patients with systolic pressure of 160 mm. Hg. or over observed by Janeway, 116 showed neither albumin nor casts when the urine was examined, and 91 others showed either albumin without casts or casts without albumin. Although repeated examinations of the urine would doubtlessly have diminished the number of negative urinary findings, nevertheless the fact remains that chronic arterial hypertension is accompanied not infrequently by a normal urine, and this is all the more striking when we remember that individuals over forty may show casts or traces of albumin even when they appear to be normal in other respects, and that the cardiac insufficiency frequently present in patients with hypertension may in itself lead to urinary changes.

To such statistics the objection has been raised that renal disease may be present even though the urine is normal. Pathological studies have likewise shown that certain patients with chronic arterial hypertension have either normal kidneys or kidneys that are not significantly diseased.

It has, therefore, been demonstrated that while renal disease and arterial hypertension are frequently associated, the kidney changes cannot be regarded as the sole direct cause of the heightened blood pressure.

### ***Immediate Cause of Chronic Hypertension***

Whatever may prove to be the ultimate cause of arterial hypertension, its immediate cause must be either an increased output from the heart or an increased resistance to the escape of blood from the larger arteries. The methods for determining the output from the heart in man are still of uncertain accuracy, but Plesch found no increased output in the cases of hypertension which he examined. Furthermore, the blood flow through the arm is not regularly or materially increased in patients with chronic arterial hypertension, indicating that in this vascular area, at least, the heightened blood pressure causes no increase in the flow of blood. If the heightened pressure were due to an increased output from the heart, both ventricles would do an increased amount of work, and one would, therefore, expect an hypertrophy of both. Pässler has found, however, that in the earlier stages of hypertension the left ventricle alone is hypertrophied, which indicates that the pressure was raised in the systemic but not in the pulmonary circuit. Only in the later stages of the disease, when there had developed a weakness of the left ventricle or an insufficiency of its valves, was the right ventricle affected. Electrocardiographic records also indicate that there is a predominant hypertrophy of the left ventricle in arterial hypertension. It seems fairly certain, therefore, that in the earlier stages of chronic arterial hypertension the left ventricle alone is hypertrophied. This indicates that the cause of the hypertension is neither an increased output from the heart nor an increased viscosity of the blood, for both of these possible causes would affect the left and the right ventricles equally. The immediate cause of the hypertension is, therefore, to be sought in an increased resistance to the escape of blood from the arterial tree of the systemic circuit.

### ***Arterial Changes***

Sclerosis of the larger arteries is not necessarily associated with an increased arterial pressure. Studies by different observers have shown that normal or subnormal blood pressures exist in at least 27 per cent of all patients with clinical arteriosclerosis, and pathologists have been equally unsuccessful in correlating cardiac hypertrophy and arteriosclerosis. Ophüls, for example, found that cardiac hypertrophy was absent in 35 per cent of all subjects with marked arteriosclerosis, and that in only about half of these could any general cause, such as malnutrition, be held accountable for the lack of hypertrophy. The earlier work of Hasenfeld and of Hirsch seemed to indicate that sclerosis of the larger arteries produces cardiac hypertrophy only when the splanchnic vessels or the aorta above these was diseased, but Longcope and McClintock demonstrated that obstruction of this important area does not necessarily lead to hyper-

tension or to cardiac hypertrophy. It seems certain, therefore, that sclerosis of the larger arteries is not an immediate cause of arterial hypertension. Nor should one expect it to be so, for we know that the main resistance to the onward flow of blood is encountered not in these vessels, but in the terminal arterioles and capillaries.

**Arteriolar Obstruction to Blood Flow.**—More and more the opinion has gained ground that chronic arterial hypertension is due to an obstruction to the flow of blood through the smaller arterioles throughout the body. Hypertension is frequently, though apparently not invariably, accompanied by a general sclerosis of the smaller arterioles, a view long since advocated by Gull and Sutton. It is not to be assumed, however, that such a sclerosis causes hypertension by a permanent and immobile reduction in the arteriolar lumina, for it is inconceivable that the vessels generally should become so immobile as to permit none of those extensive variations in local blood flow, which are necessary for the proper functioning of the different organs of the body. The reductions of pressure produced in some patients by the administration of the nitrites indicate that some of the vessels, at least, are capable of dilatation, while the transient rises of blood pressure, to which these patients are peculiarly liable, indicate that their vessels show an unusual tendency to vascular spasm. We believe, therefore, that chronic arterial hypertension is not due to an anatomical narrowing alone, but to a narrowing that is in part caused by an increased tone of the muscle fibers surrounding the arterioles.

In a small number of cases of chronic arterial hypertension, no definite anatomical changes have been found either in the kidneys or in the arterioles. The hypertension, in such cases, would seem to be due to an increase in the tone of the arterioles throughout the body which is purely functional in character. Indeed certain clinicians as well as certain pathologists have held that the functional changes in the arterioles may antedate the sclerotic changes, and that the increase in arteriolar tone either plays a primary rôle in producing vascular disease, or that both are due to a common cause.

It seems probable, therefore, that the immediate cause of chronic hypertension is always a narrowing of the arterioles. In some cases, and perhaps not infrequently in the earlier stages of the disease, hypertension is associated with no demonstrable anatomical disease. The sclerotic changes, often found at autopsy in the smaller arteries, tend to narrow these vessels mechanically, but in addition they may cause a tendency to increased arterial tone and spasm. That sclerosis of the larger arteries should frequently be associated with changes in the terminal arterioles is evident, but the relation is not an invariable one. Sclerosis of the larger vessels, therefore, does not necessarily cause a high blood pressure. The renal changes of chronic interstitial nephritis are now attributed by many pathologists to sclerosis of the smaller renal vessels. Such sclerosis is usu-



ally associated with sclerotic changes elsewhere, and the renal changes are, therefore, regarded as a local manifestation of a general arteriolar disease. It is certain, however, that disease of the kidney in itself is capable of increasing the blood pressure. The hypertension associated with transient anuria and acute nephritis, as well as that which follows an excision of the major portion of the renal substances, can be explained only in this way.

### *Secondary Lesions*

The symptoms and accidents associated with hypertension depend in part upon the hypertension itself, in part upon the associated sclerosis of the blood vessels in particular organs. Practically every patient suffering from chronic hypertension has an *hypertrophy of the heart*. In its earlier stages at least, this hypertrophy affects mainly or solely the left ventricle. If the left ventricle weakens, however, there develops a pulmonary stasis with hypertrophy and dilatation of the left auricle and hypertrophy of the right ventricle. Eventually the right ventricle may also weaken and become dilated. These changes in the heart are due, in part, to the extra work thrown upon the left ventricle by the increased pressure in the aorta. In part they are due to nutritional disturbances of the myocardium, owing to sclerosis of the coronary arteries.

*Cardiac irregularities* are rather common in patients suffering from chronic arterial hypertension. The most frequent of these are ventricular extrasystoles, which are caused partly by the increased pressure itself and partly by myocardial changes. A weakness of the left ventricle relative to the high pressure in the aorta occasionally causes a *pulsus alternans*. Finally, in the stage of decompensation auricular fibrillation is common.

*Anginal pains* occur with unusual frequency in patients with chronic arterial hypertension. These are due in part to the myocardial or coronary disease, and in part probably to a vascular spasm, either of the coronary vessels or of the arterioles throughout the body.

When sclerosis of the arterioles affects the vessels within the cranial cavity, the patients are apt to show mental deterioration, transient paralyses, losses of memory, or serious apoplectic *insults*. The more serious of these *cerebral changes* are due to hemorrhages or thromboses. In addition there may be an abnormal tendency to vascular spasm to which has been attributed some of the more transient of the cerebral seizures.

When disease of the arterioles affects particularly the renal vessels, the signs and symptoms of a *chronic interstitial nephritis* result. In a certain number of patients, renal insufficiency with a terminal uremia dominates the clinical picture.

Certain patients with chronic arterial hypertension show unusual fluctuations of blood pressure, which appear to be due to an abnormally

labile set of arterioles that contract excessively in response to various stimuli. Such sudden rises of blood pressure probably play a part in precipitating certain attacks of angina pectoris or in causing paroxysms of pulmonary edema. In addition to such *general vascular crises*, patients with chronic hypertension appear liable also to *local vascular spasms*. Such local spasms in the coronary arteries may be responsible for certain attacks of angina pectoris. Local spasms in the cerebral arteries may be responsible for certain of the transient cerebral attacks to which these patients are particularly subject. Local spasms in the arteries of the legs have been held responsible for certain types of intermittent claudication. Our exact knowledge concerning such local vascular spasms is, however, rather fragmentary.

## Hypotension

Hypotension may be due either to a diminished output from the heart or to an unusually rapid escape of blood through the arterioles, or to a combination of the two factors. The diminished output from the heart may be due to a primary cardiac weakness, although, as we have seen, the failing circulation in heart disease is often associated with a normal or even with an increased blood pressure, owing to a compensatory constriction of the peripheral arterioles. The diminished output from the heart may also result from a lessened supply of blood to the heart. This may be due to a diminished amount of blood in the vessels from hemorrhage, or it may be due to a collection of blood in the veins or capillaries owing to a loss of tone in these vessels. Here again, however, there seems to be a tendency on the part of the arterioles to compensate for a diminished cardiac output by increased constriction.

*Chronic hypotension* has been observed in various wasting and febrile diseases. Among the former, chronic diarrheas and among the latter, typhoid fever and active tuberculosis appear particularly liable to produce low blood pressures. In Addison's disease the blood pressure is frequently but not invariably lowered.

In addition there is a group of cases where the hypotension is the chief objective clinical finding. These patients often complain of lassitude, lack of endurance and exhaustion. This *essential chronic hypotension* is much less common than hypertension. It has been attributed to chronic infections or to endocrine disturbances, but its cause has not yet been satisfactorily determined.

## Syncope

Syncope is caused by a diminished supply of oxygen to the brain. This may be due, as in aviation, to a low pressure of oxygen in the respired air. Usually, however, it results from a sudden fall of arterial blood pressure.

This sudden fall may be due to hemorrhage or to changes in either the heart or the blood vessels.

**Cardiac Syncope.**—In cardiac syncope the cerebral anemia results from an insufficient expulsion of blood from the heart. For years it has been known that patients with a slow pulse rate occasionally suffer from syncope which may be associated with epileptiform attacks (Stokes-Adams syndrome). Recent studies have given a clearer understanding of the mechanism underlying these cardiac faints.

In a number of accurately recorded cases, it has been shown that the faint is accompanied by stoppage of the ventricles. Occasionally, as in the case reported by Laslett, this ventricular stoppage is due to a cessation of auricular activity. More commonly, however, only the ventricles stop, while the auricles continue to beat as before. Ventricular stoppage of this type may be produced experimentally by suddenly interrupting the passage of impulses over the auriculoventricular bundle of His. Under such circumstances the ventricles take up their independent spontaneous rhythm only after an appreciable pause. Clinical observations indicate that faints accompany an analogous ventricular stoppage in man. The heart may have been beating previously with a normal rhythm, or it may have been showing a partial block. With the onset of complete block there is a transient ventricular stoppage, which causes the syncopial attack. Transient ventricular stoppage, may also occur during the idioventricular rhythm of complete dissociation. Cases of this type have been recorded by Lewis and by Wilson and Robinson. In these cases the ventricular contractions which were being initiated from one point in the ventricles suddenly ceased and a pause ensued before a new center became active or the old center resumed its rhythm.

Lewis states that if the stillstand of the ventricle lasts but two or three seconds there is little disturbance; the patient may be just aware of the cardiac default. Stillstand for three to five seconds usually produces momentary loss of consciousness and stillstand for fifteen to twenty seconds causes twitchings or convulsive movements. If the ventricles do not contract for an interval of one and a half to two minutes recovery is rare.

Cardiac syncope may result from a succession of ineffective ventricular extrasystoles. Ventricular fibrillation is an important cause of fatal cardiac syncope.

Finally, an extremely rapid ventricular rate may so reduce the expulsion of blood as to cause fainting. In auricular flutter, for example, the ventricles may suddenly take up the full auricular rate of 250 beats per minute or more and this may be accompanied by syncope. Paroxysms of auricular fibrillation are said occasionally to cause a similar effect.

**Vascular Syncope.**—Anemia of the brain from lowered blood pressure may be due to changes in the blood vessels. On the one hand, a sudden relaxation of the arterioles may allow an escape of blood from the larger



arteries; on the other, a loss of tone in the veins and capillaries may suddenly reduce the supply of blood to the heart. Sudden changes in the abdominal vessels are particularly prone to affect the general blood pressure. For this reason fainting sometimes occurs if the patient stands after a large ascitic collection has been tapped. It may occur when a weakened patient who has been in bed for a long time first assumes the upright posture. Finally faints occur with noteworthy frequency in patients suffering from severe diarrhea. Apparently the loss of fluid per rectum and the intestinal engorgement predispose to this syncope.

**Nervous Syncope.**—The fainting attacks that are precipitated by an emotion such as that caused by the sight of blood, have been attributed by some to vasomotor influences and particularly to a relaxation of the terminal arterioles in the splanchnic area. Dr. Agnew, while a member of my staff, had the opportunity of listening to the heart action of two normal students who had fainted when undergoing a routine medical examination. In both cases the syncope was accompanied by a transient cessation of the heart action. Similarly, Lewis and Cotton, who observed a considerable number of young soldiers with "irritable hearts" during emotional faints, found that there was often a marked slowing of the heart during the attack, the rate falling as low as 30 to 50 per minute. In addition there appeared to be a lessened expulsion of blood with each ventricular systole. It seems probable, therefore, that the most important cause of emotional syncope is a slowing and weakening of the heart action owing to nervous inhibition.

### *Effects of Hemorrhage*

Any considerable loss of blood causes a lowering of the arterial pressure. This lowering, however, is not proportionate to the amount of blood lost. According to Downs the withdrawal of an amount of blood equivalent to 0.5 per cent of the weight of the animal (5 to 10 per cent of the total blood volume) causes only a very slight reduction of blood pressure. A repetition of this withdrawal produces a definite fall of pressure, averaging 6 mm. of mercury in rabbits and 10 mm. in cats. If similar amounts of blood continue to be withdrawn the blood pressure falls at a fairly uniform or somewhat increasing rate which in rabbits averages about 9 mm. and in cats about 11 mm. on each occasion.

Pilcher and Sollmann have shown that the vasomotor center is stimulated by small hemorrhages while it is depressed and eventually paralyzed by large hemorrhages. This early stimulation, together with an increased heart rate and augmented breathing, assists in maintaining the arterial pressure during the earlier stages of hemorrhage. Furthermore the fluid lost by hemorrhage is often replaced with extraordinary rapidity from the tissue fluids (page 609). By reason of these compensatory

changes, small or moderate hemorrhages may produce little or no fall in the arterial pressure. Large hemorrhages, on the other hand, cause a serious fall of pressure similar to that seen in shock.

**Blood Flow.**—Although small to moderate hemorrhages may produce little fall in the arterial pressure, it must not be assumed that they are without effect on the circulation. The vasoconstriction which serves to maintain the arterial pressure also cuts down the flow of blood through the organs. Gesell in studying the blood flow through the submaxillary gland found that hemorrhage always produced a marked reduction in blood

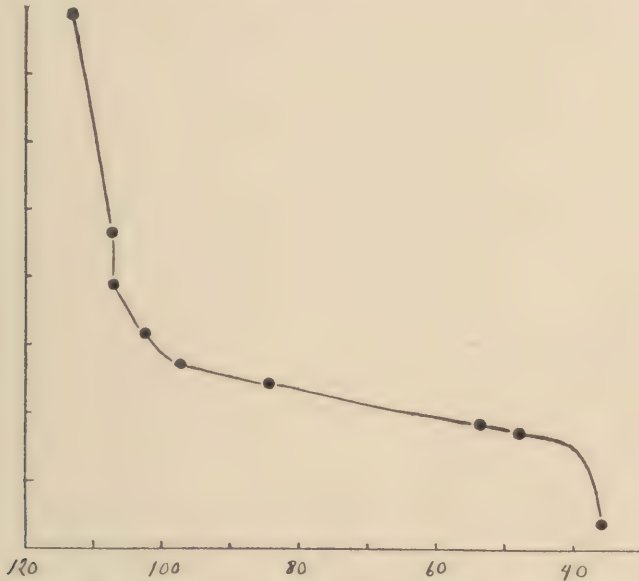


Fig. 50.—Curve of Blood Flow through the Submaxillary Gland, Obtained in a Hemorrhage Experiment. The Flow Is Plotted on the Ordinates Against the Blood Pressure on the Abscissas. Note that the First Effect of the Hemorrhage Was a Reduction of Blood Flow to about Half with No Significant Fall in Blood Pressure. (From Gesell, *Am. J. Physiol.*)

flow before the arterial pressure was definitely altered (Fig. 50). He states that a reduction of 85 per cent of the initial flow may occur with a constant head of pressure or with a small change in the head of pressure—a rise as well as a fall. To what extent similar changes occur in other parts of the body is not definitely known. It is noteworthy, however, that the brain, with vessels relatively independent of vasomotor control, receives an amount of blood approximately proportional to the head of arterial pressure. The cerebral circulation is well maintained during the early stages of hemorrhage.

### ***Surgical and Traumatic Shock***

It is well known that patients who have been badly injured may develop a syndrome known as *traumatic or wound shock*. According to Cannon, this is a "general bodily state occurring after severe injury and characterized by persistent low arterial pressure, rapid pulse, pallor or slight cyanosis, sweating, superficial rapid respiration and usually by a dulled mental condition." The circulatory manifestations of shock are a prominent feature of the condition and have been the subject of numerous investigations. Although it seems probable that the arterial pressure may be maintained at a normal or nearly normal level in the earlier stages or in the milder forms of shock, the pressure regularly falls in outspoken cases and in severe shock it reaches a very low level.

A symptom complex, analogous to the above, may occur during or after surgical operations. This has been called *surgical shock*.

*Deep anesthesia and severe hemorrhage* may also produce conditions similar to surgical and traumatic shock. They may contribute to its occurrence after injuries or operations but they are not its sole cause.

**Pathogenesis.**—The low blood pressure present in shock obviously results either from an unusual escape of blood through the arterioles or from a lessened output of blood from the heart or from a combination of both factors. A lessened output from the heart may be due in turn either to a primary cardiac weakness or to an insufficient supply of venous blood to the heart.

Early speculations concerning the nature of surgical and traumatic shock laid emphasis upon the theory that the fall of blood pressure resulted from a widespread *relaxation of the arterioles* which permitted a rapid escape of blood from the arterial system.

Crile believed that shock was caused by an exhaustion of the vasomotor center by excessive stimulation of nerve fibers in injured parts of the body. W. T. Porter and other investigators have demonstrated, however, that long continued stimulation of the nerve trunks in the extremities frequently fails to cause either the symptoms of shock or a marked and continued depression of the blood pressure, provided care has been taken to avoid hemorrhage and excessive etherization. Porter and his associates found, furthermore, that even where shock was present the rise of pressure produced by stimulating a peripheral nerve may be as great as that obtained in a normal animal. Depressor reflexes could also be elicited, thereby demonstrating that the vasomotor center was still exercising a tonic influence upon the arterial pressure. Others have shown that even in shock the section of nerves leading to an extremity increases the local flow of blood. Finally, Selling and Joseph cut the nerves that supply one ear of a white rabbit and thus caused a local loss of tone in the vessels of this ear. After intense shock had been produced, the abdominal aorta



was clamped just below the diaphragm, so as to raise the arterial pressure in the anterior part of the body. Under such conditions the ear operated upon became engorged with blood while the normal ear remained pale. From these and similar experiments it may be concluded that in shocked animals the vasomotor center is still active and that a local vasomotor relaxation still follows the section of nerve trunks. Henderson has observed, furthermore, that in the earlier stages of shock the amount of blood expelled from the heart is reduced, while the arterial pressure is maintained at a normal level. Only after the cardiac output has fallen markedly is there a reduction of arterial pressure. These observations demonstrate that the blood pressure in early shock may be maintained, despite a lessened cardiac output, owing to a compensatory constriction of the arterioles.

The principal cause of circulatory failure in severe shock is therefore *a lessened output of blood from the heart*. There is no reason for believing that this lessened output is mainly due to a cardiac weakness. The clinical picture differs from that of an acute cardiac insufficiency, the venous pressure falls instead of rising and various tests of the heart strength indicate no serious impairment.

The conclusion, early advocated by Henderson and now generally accepted, seems justified that the low blood pressure in severe shock is due in the main to *an insufficient supply of venous blood to the heart*. This inadequate supply is directly due to a fall of venous pressure. It may arise, on the one hand, from a reduction in the total blood volume owing to the passage of plasma into the tissues. It may also be due to a stagnation of blood in the smaller veins and capillaries. Estimates of blood volume during shock indicate that there is usually a reduction. In Erlanger and Gasser's experiments this averaged 20 per cent. The *reduced blood volume*, however, is not constant, nor does it appear sufficient to account for the blood lost in the tissues. Mann found, for example, that in a normal animal 76 per cent of the total blood could be obtained by bleeding from the femoral artery and venous trunks, whereas in shocked animals the amount of blood thus obtainable was reduced to 39 per cent. Evidently an excess was retained in the fine vessels of the tissues. This retention occurred more particularly in the abdominal viscera. In some experiments the capillaries of the intestinal villi were seen to be choked with solid masses of red cells.

The mechanical factors, therefore, which lead to the low arterial pressure of shock seem fairly clear. Although some reduction in arterial resistance and in cardiac efficiency may be present, *the chief cause of the hypotension is a withdrawal of blood from the circulation partly through the passage of plasma into the tissues but mainly through stasis of blood in the capillaries and small veins*.

The cause of this stasis is probably not a nervous one. While it cannot

be stated positively that these vessels are entirely beyond nerve control. efforts to produce conditions analogous to surgical and traumatic shock by nerve lesions have not proved successful. Among the more successful methods for producing shock in animals are (1) the exposure and manipulation of the abdominal organs, especially the intestines and (2) the occlusion of the vena cava so as to reduce the arterial pressure to 40 mm. of mercury for about 2 hours. Both of these maneuvers evidently cause *changes in the small veins and capillaries of the abdominal viscera*. The former reproduces experimentally the condition which frequently leads to shock in abdominal operations.

Shock may also be produced experimentally by crushing injuries of the thigh muscles or other tissues; and Cannon adduces evidence to prove that this form of shock is due to *the absorption of toxic material* from the damaged tissues. While a variety of vascular poisons may cause low blood pressure, it is particularly interesting in this connection that a condition resembling traumatic shock may be produced by the injection of histamin, a substance that may be derived from proteins. Dale and Laidlaw found that *histamin shock* was due to an accumulation of blood in the capillaries and venules. This was most easily seen in the abdominal viscera but was present also in other organs. Other chemical causes of shock have been suggested. Henderson, for example, believed that it resulted from a removal of carbon dioxide from the blood and tissues.

**Résumé.**—The marked hypotension of surgical and traumatic shock is not due in the main to a loss of arterial tone or to a failure on the part of the heart. It is due to a lessened flow of blood to the right auricle, caused mainly by an accumulation of blood in the smaller venules and capillaries. This accumulation may be due to a direct injury of the part or it may be caused by vascular poisons absorbed from the damaged tissues. There is no good evidence that nerve lesions play a dominant rôle in the pathogenesis of the more serious forms of surgical or traumatic shock.

### ***Circulatory Failure in the Infectious Diseases***

It is well known to clinicians that the circulation is altered during the infectious diseases and that patients not infrequently die with manifestations of circulatory failure. Even in the earlier stages of infection the pulse becomes more rapid and the pulse form changes. As failure approaches the pulse becomes smaller and may almost disappear, the skin becomes cool and either pale or cyanotic, the body temperature may fall, and the patient is greatly prostrated. Such are the symptoms of the circulatory collapse during infections. Clinicians have long recognized that these symptoms resemble those of surgical shock rather than those of cardiac insufficiency. There is, as a rule, no edema, no enlargement of the heart and no rise of venous pressure. Dyspnea is not an early symptom.

The arterial blood pressure may fall early or it may be maintained almost to the last. Only at the end is there a marked fall.

That the heart itself is often injured by infectious processes cannot be denied. In acute rheumatic fever definite changes in the myocardium have been demonstrated, diphtheria toxin injures the heart muscle, and changes in the heart muscle have been found in other infections. Yet cardiac insufficiency seems to play a minor part in most cases of circulatory failure during infections. This is evident not only from the absence of the usual clinical signs of cardiac insufficiency, but also from experimental studies, which have shown that at the time of circulatory failure the heart may still be able to cause a marked rise in the blood pressure when the abdominal aorta is clamped.

**Pathogenesis.**—According to the experimental work of Romberg, Pässler, Heineke, and their coworkers, the failure of the circulation during the infectious diseases is due, in the main, to a paralysis of the vasomotors in consequence of damage to the vasomotor center in the medulla oblongata. Porter and his associates, however, demonstrated that the vasomotor reflexes in experimental pneumonia and experimental diphtheria were normal, and Newburgh and Minot showed that the blood pressure is not unusually low in fatal cases of pneumonia. It would appear, therefore, that the vasomotor apparatus may maintain its integrity even in severe and fatal infections.

That the circulation is frequently altered in the infectious diseases, however, seems certain, for the form of the volume pulse in the arm usually changes in a characteristic manner, and, in the more severe types of infections, the size of the volume pulse in the arm lessens. Although the explanation of these changes in pulse form is still uncertain, it may be pointed out that they may be brought into accord with the hypothesis already advanced for surgical shock; viz., that there is a collection of blood in the systemic veins or capillaries, and that as a result of this collection there is an insufficient supply of blood to the heart. The resulting diminution in the cardiac output might cause the characteristic fever pulse even though the blood pressure were maintained. The loss of venous tone also explains the normal or reduced venous pressure observed by Tabora during infections. Finally, the abdominal organs are often found at autopsy to be filled with blood and in experimental infections the capillaries may show pathological changes. The unusually rapid onset of circulatory collapse in acute general peritonitis is due to the effect of the local inflammation upon the abdominal vessels. From analogy with surgical shock, as well as from various clinical and anatomical data, therefore, the hypothesis is advanced that the cause of the circulatory collapse in severe infections is a stagnation of blood in the systemic veins and capillaries. The vasomotor apparatus which governs the resistance in the peripheral arterioles may still be active, and, in spite of a reduction in the cardiac



output, the blood pressure may be maintained at a normal or nearly normal level until shortly before death.

## The Pulse Pressure

During each pulse beat there is a fluctuation of pressure within the arteries. The highest pressure attained is called the systolic or *maximum pressure*, the lowest is called the diastolic or *minimum pressure*, while the pressure recorded by an instrument that dampens the fluctuations is called the *mean pressure*. As a rule all these pressures vary in the same direction, but the variations in the maximum pressure are usually the greatest, while the variations in the minimum pressure are usually the smallest. In speaking of high or low pressure, therefore, we usually assume that all three pressures are raised or lowered, as the case may be.

**Increased and Diminished Pulse Pressure.**—The difference between the maximum and the minimum pressures, the so-called *pulse pressure*, represents the variation in pressure with each heart cycle. It is caused by the expulsion of blood from the left ventricle into the elastic arterial tree. The pulse pressure will be greater: (1) when the systolic output from the heart is increased or when it is expelled very suddenly; (2) when the main arteries have a small volume; and (3) when the main arteries are rigid. Conversely the pulse pressure will be diminished when the systolic output is small or the main arteries are elastic and of large size.

The part played by these various factors in an individual case are, however, difficult to determine. During exercise the pulse pressure is increased, and this is probably due mainly to an increased output. In chronic arterial hypertension, the pulse pressure is commonly increased, the elevation of the maximum pressure being greater than that of the minimum pressure. Since the systolic output in chronic hypertension is probably not increased (page 111), this rise in pulse pressure may be attributed mainly to a lessened elasticity of the larger arteries. In judging the degree of hypertension, special importance should be attached to the elevation of minimum pressure, for we know that the mean lies nearer to this than to the maximum.

**Effect of Aortic Insufficiency.**—One of the most characteristic effects of an aortic insufficiency is the increased pulse pressure. The escape of blood back into the ventricle during diastole causes a very unusual lowering of the diastolic pressure. The increased ventricular output at the next systole causes the marked fluctuation in pressure that characterizes this lesion. According to Wiggers, the large pulse pressure is due in part to the suddenness of the ventricular output.

## Local Vascular Changes

While the vascular resistance as a whole exercises a dominant influence on the systemic blood pressure, variations in local resistance determine to a large extent the circulation through each individual organ. Only in the case of the brain are such variations of minor importance. Elsewhere the local flow is governed mainly by the local arteries. Other things being equal, a relaxation of the local arterioles causes a more rapid flow of blood through the vascular area that they supply, a rise of pressure in the local capillaries and an increase in the capillary lumina. Such changes characterize an *active hyperemia*. If the venous outflow from an organ be obstructed, the pressure in and the size of the veins and capillaries are also increased. The local blood flow, however, tends to be diminished. This is called a *passive hyperemia*.

Conversely, *local anemia* of an organ may be due (1) to an increased venous outflow, as when the hand is held above the head; or (2) it may be due to a diminution of the arterial inflow, owing to an obstruction or a constriction of the arteries that lead to the part.

**Loss of Capillary Tone.**—In the conditions just described the mechanical relations are obvious. They are less evident, however, in those cases where a reduction of the arterial flow to an organ is followed by a dilatation of its capillaries. It is well known, for example, that the occlusion of an artery leading to the lungs or to the intestines does not usually cause an anemia of the part involved with the formation of an anemic infarct, but that, on the contrary, it leads to a marked collection of blood in the capillaries of the affected area, thus producing the so-called hemorrhagic infarct. This extra blood may enter the capillaries either from anastomosing arteries or capillaries or by a back flow from the veins. Since no obstruction exists to the escape of blood through the veins, the collection of blood in the infarcted area can only be due to a relaxed condition of the local capillary walls. This loss of capillary tone probably depends in part upon nutritional disturbances produced by the slow flow of blood through the region, in part it depends upon the loose structure of the tissues involved.

**Effect of Cold.**—The intense cyanotic color of the skin that often accompanies prolonged exposure to cold appears to depend upon similar vascular changes. Exposure of the hands to cold usually produces at first a pallor of the skin, which is evidently due to a constriction of the cutaneous arterioles. When the exposure is prolonged, however, the color is heightened, and it usually becomes more or less cyanotic. That the blood flow through the skin is diminished is evident both from the cyanosis and from determinations of the rates of flow. Almost universally, therefore, cold produces a constriction of the cutaneous arterioles and a slow flow of blood

through the skin. The variations in color are caused by the varying amounts of blood that collect in the skin capillaries. The dilatation of these capillaries when the arterioles are constricted is caused either by a lessened capillary tone, or possibly by a constriction of the corresponding veins which interferes with the escape of blood.

The arteries or veins to a part may be narrowed mechanically by emboli, thrombi, changes in their walls, or external pressure. When such mechanical obstructions exist the pathogenesis of the local circulatory changes is evident.

**Effect of Inflammation.**—During inflammation the local blood flow is, at first, increased and there is an active hyperemia. Later, however, certain capillaries may show a slow blood current under the microscope. This slowing may depend upon various factors, among which are a collection of cells along the walls of the capillaries and compression of the vessels by the products of inflammation. The total blood flow through an acutely inflamed area is, however, almost invariably increased. This is rendered probable by the fact that the skin overlying acute inflammatory processes near the surface of the body is always warmer to the touch than the surrounding surface. Furthermore, direct as well as indirect measurements of the rate of blood flow through an inflamed extremity have usually shown that this is greater than in the corresponding sound extremity.

**Other Vascular Changes.**—Pathological alterations in the blood flow through various regions of the body may be due to functional changes in the tone of the local arteries. For example, in some individuals an exposure to moderate cold is followed by an active hyperemia of the cutaneous vessels with increased blood flow. In other persons the cutaneous arterioles contract excessively on exposure to cold. Among other abnormal vascular reactions is the marked pallor, hyperemia or local edema that appears in certain (neurotic) persons on mechanical irritation of the skin (dermatographia). Such altered reactions may be purely functional in character and in no way due to organic disease. It is noteworthy, however, that the tendency to vascular spasm is frequently associated with anatomical disease of the blood vessels, and that, in some cases, it is not easy to differentiate the relative parts played by structural and by functional changes. Of the diseases usually attributed to vascular spasm, the most important is Raynaud's disease. In this disease, arterial anemia, arterial anemia with capillary congestion, or arterial anemia with necrosis may occur. In certain patients with intermittent claudication the change in the circulation of the legs is attributed to a spasm of the local vessels. Spasm of the central artery of the retina has been observed in patients with the transient blindness that occasionally accompanies renal disease. That local vascular spasms may also occur in internal organs seems probable both from analogy with observations on accessible arteries, and from the fact that transient rises in the blood pressure which are due to a gen-



eral vascular constriction are frequently associated with local symptoms. We have, however, no exact knowledge of such local vascular spasms in the internal organs of the body. Presumably, however, spasm of the cerebral arteries is responsible for certain of the transient cerebral attacks so common in patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis or chronic hypertension. Spasm of the coronary arteries may play a part in the etiology of angina pectoris. Spasm of the renal arteries causes the diminished secretion of urine in acute strychnin poisoning. Still other examples of local vascular spasm are described by Pal in his monograph.

## Form of the Arterial Pulse

The arterial pulse is produced by the intermittent expulsion of blood from the left ventricle into the aorta. This produces intermittent movements of the blood along the arteries (displacement pulse) with intermittent variations in the size of the blood vessels (volume pulse) and intermittent fluctuations in the pressure within the arteries (pressure pulse). These pulse changes spread in a wavelike manner over the entire arterial tree. The small size of the terminal arterioles and capillaries retards any sudden movements of the blood in these vessels, and thus tends to convert the intermittent flow that is present in the larger arteries into a continuous pulseless flow.

From the earliest times the pulse has been an object of interest and study. From it one may estimate the rate and rhythm of the heart, the condition of the arterial wall, and, to some extent, the systolic and diastolic blood pressures. The size of the pulse is governed partly by the output from the heart and partly by the size of the different arteries and the elasticity of their walls. When, as in palpating the radial pulse, the artery is compressed with sufficient force to empty it between beats, the size of the artery plays an important part in governing the amplitude of the palpable pulsations.

**Pulse Recorders.**—The form of the arterial pulse can be estimated only very imperfectly by palpation. For the accurate study of pulse form instrumental records are necessary. Unfortunately, nearly all of the earlier instruments used in the study of arterial pulse form were subject to grave defects. In order to record the rapid changes that occur during the various phases of the arterial pulse, an instrument must be highly efficient and, in particular, it must itself possess a rapid inherent rate of vibration, in order to follow faithfully the sudden changes in form which characterize the arterial pulse. To Otto Frank belongs the credit for having analyzed the theoretical requirements of pulse recorders, and for having developed a method by means of which such instruments can be made sufficiently rapid to follow accurately the contour of arterial pulse

curves. The most essential change introduced by Frank was the replacement of the usual writing lever of the recording tambour by an imponderable beam of light. This beam is reflected from a small mirror that is attached to a small-sized tambour and records are obtained by photographing the movements of this beam on a traveling strip of film or photographic paper.

The carotid pulse of the dog, as recorded in this manner, shows the following characteristics (Frank): (a) a slight undulation synchronous with the auricular systole; (b) a brief wave during the presphygmic period of ventricular systole; (c) a sharp rise of pressure with the first expulsion of the blood; (d) a rounded systolic apex which is interrupted by (e) a sharp incisure with after-vibrations due to the closure of the semilunar valves; and (f) a gradual fall of pressure during diastole (Fig. 50a). According to Frank, the pressure pulse in the peripheral arteries differs from the central pulse partly because the finer vibrations are lost, and partly because the dicrotic notch becomes more prominent (Fig. 51). Wiggers has shown, however, that under pathological conditions the carotid pulse may show a form in many ways similar to Frank's "peripheral pulse."

Direct pressure records from the arteries in man cannot be obtained by bloodless methods. Nevertheless the application of a receiving tambour over the course of an artery has shown that in man also the pressure pulse has many of the characteristics described by Frank, and that as one proceeds from the center to the periphery, there is a gradual loss of the finer arterial movements. According to Müller and Weiss, the central details are transmitted more perfectly to the periphery when the arterial walls are in a condition of high tone.

#### **Sustained and Collapsing**

**Pulse in Arm.**—The volume pulse in the arm of man may be recorded by connecting a suitable plethysmograph with a Frank recorder. Furthermore, if the veins leading from the arm are obstructed for a brief interval, the movements of blood in the arm

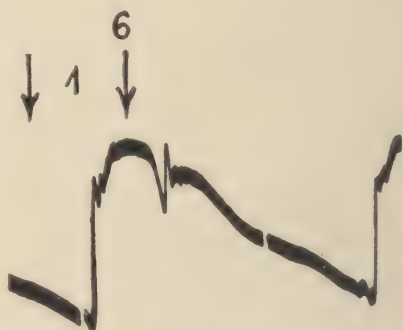


Fig. 50a.—The Central Carotid Pulse of the Dog. (After Frank, *Ztschr. f. Biol.*)



Fig. 51.—The Carotid (Upper) and the Peripheral Arterial Pulse (Lower). (After Frank, *Ztschr. f. Biol.*)

arteries may be accurately recorded. Records of the volume pulse in the arm of man allow us to distinguish two fundamental types of peripheral pulse in man. In the first of these, which we shall call the sustained pulse, the sudden entrance of blood into the arm during early systole is followed by a gradual decline in the tracing (Fig. 52). The uniformity

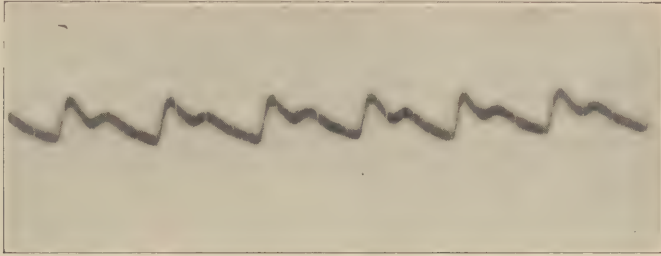


Fig. 52.—Sustained Volume Pulse in the Arm of Man.

of this decline is broken more or less by the dicrotic and smaller secondary waves. The second type of volume pulse, which may be called the poorly sustained, pointed, or collapsing pulse, is characterized by an abrupt diminution in the arm volume immediately after the entrance of the primary pulse wave (Fig. 53). In such a pulse the smaller secondary waves are usually absent, while the dicrotic wave may be exaggerated, nor-

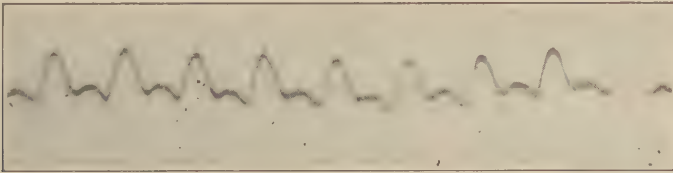


Fig. 53.—Pointed Volume Pulse in the Arm of Man during Fever. Note that the Fall After the Primary Pulse Wave Approaches the Base Line.

mal or absent. When it is unusually marked the pulse is dicrotic. Determinations of the movements of blood in the arm arteries have shown that the abrupt fall in volume, which characterizes the pointed pulse, is associated with a

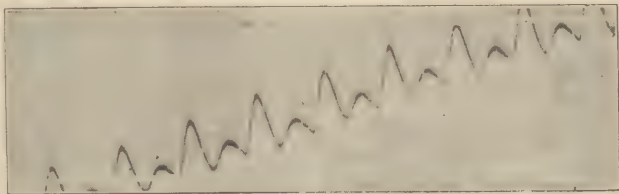


Fig. 54.—Dicrotic Pulse in Fever. The Veins in the Arm Have Been Momentarily Obstructed and a Downward Movement of the Tracing Indicates an Outflow through the Brachial Artery. Note that the Collapse After the Primary Wave Is Due to a Reflection of the Primary Wave Out of the Arm Arteries. (After Hewlett, Arch. Int. Med.)

backward movement in the column of blood in the brachial artery, owing



to a reflection of the pulse wave in the arm (Fig. 54). Transitions between the two types of peripheral pulse are common.

A pointed type of pulse may be produced quite regularly in young individuals by therapeutic doses of nitroglycerin, and it is usually present in the typical collapsing pulse of aortic insufficiency (Fig. 55). In such cases the pointed or collapsing pulse seems to be due to a relaxation of the larger arm arteries without a corresponding relaxation of the terminal arterioles in the arm. The large pulse wave, which enters the arm, is reflected back again by the resistance opposed to its further progress in the finer

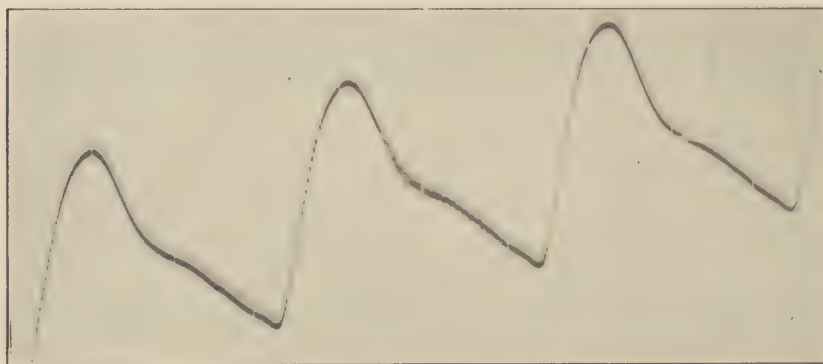


Fig. 55.—Markedly Collapsing Pulse of Aortic Insufficiency. Veins in the Arm Obstructed. Note that the Portion of the Collapse which Precedes the Dicrotic Notch Occurs during Systole and Is Due to the Same Reflection as Fig. 54. The Later Diastolic Fall in the Tracing Is Probably Due to the Leak into the Left Ventricle during Diastole. (After Hewlett and Van Zwaluwenburg, Arch. Int. Med.)

terminations of the arterial tree in the arm. The pointed type of pulse may also be produced by a small and sudden output from the heart. In auricular fibrillation, for example, the smaller pulse waves may be of a collapsing type, while the larger waves are sustained.

Particular interest is attached to the pointed pulse in the arm for the reason that this occurs with great frequency during the course of the infectious diseases and that it is marked during circulatory failure in these diseases. This change in pulse form may occur even though the blood pressure is normal or but slightly diminished.

We have pointed out that there is reason to believe that the cardiovascular collapse of the infectious diseases is caused by a loss of tone in the systemic veins and capillaries which allows blood to collect in these vessels and thus lessens the cardiac output. The collapsing type of pulse observed in febrile collapse is, therefore, probably due to the sudden output of a small amount of blood at each cardiac contraction. Possibly also the collapsing pulse observed in the earlier stages of infections is due to a similar cause, although on this point there are no definite data at the present time.

Wiggers found that in the earliest stages of experimental shock, before any definite reduction of arterial pressure had taken place, there was frequently a change in pulse form. This consisted in a more rapid fall of pressure during late systole, with a relatively lower pressure at its termination. In the later stages of shock he found a typical pointed or collapsing pulse form. The analogy between these experimental changes and the pulse changes occurring in the infectious fevers of man supports the view that the circulatory failures in these conditions are similar.

### References

#### *Dynamics of the Heart Muscle—Dilatation of the Heart*

- De la Camp (O.).** Experimentelle Studien über die akute Herzdilatation. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1904**, li, 1.
- Dietlen (H.).** Ueber Grösse und Lage des normalen Herzens und ihre Abhängigkeit von physiologischen Bedingungen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1906**, lxxviii, 55.  
Orthodiagraphische Beobachtungen über Veränderungen der Herzgrösse bei Infektionskrankheiten, bei exudativer Perikarditis und paroxysmaler Tachycardie. *München. med. Wchnschr.*, **1908**, lv, 2077.  
Ueber die klinische Bedeutung der Veränderungen am Zirkulationsapparate, insbesondere der wechselnden Herzgrösse bei verschiedener Körperstellung. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1909**, xcvi, 132.
- Frank (O.).** Zur Dynamik des Herzmuskels. *Ztschr. f. Biol.*, **1895**, xxxii, 370.  
Die Grundform des arteriellen Pulses. *Ztschr. f. Biol.*, **1899**, xxxvii, 483.
- De Heer (J. L.).** Die Dynamik des Säugetierherzens im Kreislauf in der Norm, bei Aortenstenose und nach Strophantin. *Arch. f. d. gesammte Physiol.*, **1912**, cxlviii, 1.
- Henderson (Y.).** The volume curve of the ventricles of the mammalian heart, etc. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1906**, xvi, 325.  
Acapnia and shock. A principle underlying the normal variations in the volume of the blood stream, and the deviation from this principle in shock. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1909**, xxiii, 345.
- Henderson (Y.) & Barringer (T. B.), Jr.** The relation of venous pressure to cardiac efficiency. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1913**, xxxi, 352.
- Hirschfelder (A. D.).** Recent studies on the circulation and their importance to the practice of medicine. *Jour. Am. Med. Assoc.*, **1908**, li, 473.
- Moritz (F.).** Die allgemeine Pathologie des Herzens und der Gefässe. In: Krehl & Marchand, *Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie*, Bd. vi, Abt. 2, 1, **1912**.
- Nicolai (G. F.) und Zuntz (N.).** Füllung und Entleerung des Herzens bei Ruhe und Arbeit. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1914**, li, 821.
- Patterson (S. W.), Piper (H.) & Starling (E. H.).** The regulation of the heart beat. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xlviii, 465.
- Patterson (S. W.) & Starling (E. H.).** On the mechanical factors which determine the output of the ventricles. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xlviii, 357.
- Scaffidi (V.).** Ueber die Funktion der normalen und der fettig entarteten Herzvorhöfe. *Arch. f. Anat. u. Physiol.*, **1908**, Suppl. Bd. 131; **1909**, 187.
- Straub (H.).** Dynamik des Säugetierherzens. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, cxv, 531; **1914**, cxvi, 409.
- Tigerstedt (R.).** Der arterielle Blutdruck. *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1907**, vi, 265.
- Wiggers, (C. J.).** The present status of cardiodynamic studies on normal and pathological hearts. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1921**, xxvii, 475.  
*Modern aspects of the circulation in health and disease.* New York, Lea & Febiger, **1915**.

**Williamson (C. S.).** *The effect of exercise on the normal and pathological heart.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1915**, cxlix, 492.

### Cardiac Hypertrophy—Effects of Exercise

- Bainbridge (F. A.).** *The physiology of muscular exercise.* New York, Longmans, Green & Co., **1919**.
- Barach (J. H.).** *Physiological and pathological effects of severe exertion (the Marathon race) on the circulatory and renal systems.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1910**, v, 382.
- Barringer (T. B., Jr.).** *The circulatory reaction to graduated work as a test of the heart's functional capacity.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, xvii, 363.
- Boothby (W. M.).** *A determination of the circulation rate in man at rest and at work.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxviii, 383.
- Bowen (W. P.).** *Changes in the heart rate, blood pressure and duration of systole resulting from bicycling.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1904**, xi, 59.
- De la Camp (O.).** *Experimentelle Studien über die akute Herzdilatation.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1903**, li, 1.
- Cabot (R. C.) & Richardson (O.).** *Cardiac hypertrophy in pernicious anemia.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1919**, lxxii, 991.
- Dietlen (H.).** *Ergebnisse des medizinischen Röntgenverfahrens für die Physiologie.* *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1910**, x, 598.
- Grober (J.).** *Herzmasse und Arbeit.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1909**, iii, 34.
- Hasenfeld (A.) & Romberg (E.).** *Ueber die Reservekraft des hypertrophischen Herzmuskels, etc.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmak.*, **1897**, xxix, 333.
- Henderson (Y.) & Barringer (T. B., Jr.).** *The conditions determining the volume of the arterial blood stream.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1913**, xxxi, 288.
- Hooker (D. R.).** *The effect of exercise upon the venous blood pressure.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1911**, xxviii, 235.
- Krogh (A.) & Lindhard (J.).** *Measurements of the blood flow through the lungs of man.* *Skandin. Arch. f. Physiol.*, **1912**, xxvii, 100.
- Külbs (F.).** *Experimentelles über Herzmuskel und Arbeit.* *Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmak.*, **1906**, lv, 288.
- Lowsley (O. S.).** *The effects of various forms of exercise on systolic, diastolic, and pulse pressures and pulse rate.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1911**, xxvii, 446.
- Müller (W.).** *Die Massenverhältnisse des menschlichen Herzens.* Hamburg u. Leipzig, **1883**.
- Patterson (S. W.) & Starling (E. H.).** *On the mechanical factors which determine the output of the ventricles.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xlviii, 357.
- Shumacker (L.) & Middleton (W. S.).** *The cardiac effects of immoderate college athletics.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxi, 1136.
- Williamson (C. S.).** *The effect of exercise on the normal and pathological heart.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1915**, cxlix, 492.
- Wolfer (P.).** *Experimentelle Studien zur Reservekraft des hypertrophischen Herzens.* *Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1912**, lxviii, 435.

### Valvular Disease

- Gerhardt (D.).** *Beitrag zur Lehre von der Mechanik der Klappenfehler.* *Verhandl. Kong. d. inn. Med.*, **1905**, xxii, 192.
- De Heer (J. L.).** *Die Dynamik des Säugetierherzens im Kreislauf in der Norm, bei Aortenstenose und nach Strophantin.* *Arch. f. Physiol.*, **1912**, cxlviii, 1.
- Hewlett (A. W.).** *The interpretation of the positive venous pulse.* *Jour. Med. Research*, **1907**, xvii, 119.



- Hirschfelder (A. D.).** *The volume curve of the ventricles in experimental mitral stenosis and its relation to physical signs.* Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull., **1908**, xix, 319.
- MacCallum (W. G.).** *The changes in the circulation in aortic insufficiency.* Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull., **1911**, xxii, 197.
- Levy (B.).** *Die Arbeit des gesunden und kranken Herzens.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1897**, xxxi, 321, 520.
- Stadler (E.).** *Experimentelle und histologische Beiträge zur Herzhypertrophie.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1907**, xci, 98.  
*Die Mechanik der Herzklappenfehler.* Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kindh., **1910**, v, 1.
- Stewart (H. A.).** *Experimental and clinical investigation of the pulse and blood pressure changes in aortic insufficiency.* Arch. Int. Med., **1908**, i, 102.
- Thacher (H. C.).** *Ueber den Einfluss cardialer Stauung auf die Blutverteilung in den Organen.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1909**, xcvi, 104.
- Wideroe (S.).** *Die Massenverhältnisse des Herzens unter pathologischen Zuständen.* Christiania, **1911**; ref. in: Zentralbl. f. Herz- u. Gefässkr., **1911**, iii, 121, 294.
- Wiggers (C. J.).** *The dynamics of aortic insufficiency.* Arch. Int. Med., **1915**, xvi, 132.

### Effect of Extracardiac Factors on Heart

- Beck (R.).** *Orthodiagraphische Untersuchungen über die Herzgrösse bei Tuberkulösen.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1910**, c, 429.
- Hirsch (C.).** *Ueber die Beziehungen zwischen der Herzmuskel und der Körpermuskulatur und über sein Verhalten bei Herzhypertrophie.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1899**, lxi, 597; **1910**, lxxiii, 55, 321.
- Moritz (F.).** *Anomalien im Lungenkreislauf.* Chapter in: Krehl & Marchand, *Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie*, Bd. ii, Abt. 2, **1913**.
- Müller (Fr.).** Quoted in: Krehl, *Pathologische Physiologie*, Leipzig, 7th ed., 42.
- Pal (J.).** *Gefässkrisen.* Leipzig, **1905**.
- Pässler (H.).** *Ursache der Hypertrophie des ganzen Herzens bei Nephritis.* Deutsch. med. Wchnschr., **1908**, xxxiv, 446.
- Plesch (J.).** *Haemodynamische Studien.* Ztschr. f. exp. Path. u. Therap., **1909**, vi, 380.  
*Die pathologische Physiologie des Lungenvolumens und seine Beziehung zum Kreislauf.* Ztschr. f. exp. Path. u. Therap., **1913**, xiii, 165.
- Wideroe (S.).** *Die Massenverhältnisse des Herzens unter pathologischen Zuständen.* Christiania, **1911**; ref. in: Zentralbl. f. Herz- u. Gefässkr., **1911**, iii, 121, 294.
- Wiggers (C. J.).** *The regulation of the pulmonary circulation.* Physiol. Rev., **1921**, i, 239.

### Compensation and Decompensation

- Krehl (L.).** *Pathologische Physiologie.* 7. Aufl., Leipzig, **1912**, 46, 53.
- Lang (G.) & Mansvetowa (S.).** *Zur Frage der Veränderung des arteriellen Blutdrucks bei Herzkranken während der Kompensationsstörung.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1908**, xciv, 455.

### Cardiac Irregularities

- Blackford (J. M.) & Willus (F. A.).** *Auricular flutter.* Arch. Int. Med., **1918**, xxi, 147.
- Carter (E. P.).** *Clinical observations on defective conduction in the branches of the auriculo-ventricular bundle.* Arch. Int. Med., **1914**, xiii, 803.

- Carter (E. P.) & Wedd (A. M.).** Observations on the occurrence of inverted and diphasic P-waves in Lead III of the human electrocardiogram. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1919**, *xviii*, 1.
- Cohn (A. E.), Fraser (P.) & Jamieson (R. A.).** The influence of digitalis on the T wave of the human electrocardiogram. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1915**, *xxi*, 592.
- Eppinger (H.) & Rothberger (J.).** Ueber die Folgen der Durchschneidung der Tawar-schen Schenkel des Reizleitungsystems. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, *lxx*, 1.
- Erlanger (J.).** On the physiology of heart block in mammals with especial reference to the causation of Adams-Stokes disease. Part II. On the physiology of heart block in the dog. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1906**, *viii*, 50-100.
- Erlanger (J.) & Backman (J.).** Further studies in the physiology of heart block in mammals. Chronic auriculo-ventricular heart block in the dog. *Heart*, **1909-10**, *i*, 177.
- Eyster (J. A. E.) & Meek (W. J.).** Cardiac irregularities in morphine poisoning in the dog. *Heart*, **1912-13**, *iv*, 59.
- Ganter (G.) & Zahn (A.).** Experimentelle Untersuchungen am Säugetierherzen über Reizbildung und Reizleitung in ihrer Beziehung zum spezifischen Muskelgewebe. *Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol.*, **1912**, *cxlv*, 335.
- Gasser (H. S.) & Meek (W. J.).** A study of the mechanisms by which muscular exercise produces acceleration of the heart. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, *xxiv*, 48.
- Gerhardt (D.).** Die Unregelmässigkeiten des Herzschlags. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med.*, **1908**, *ii*, 418.
- Halsey (R. H.).** A case of ventricular fibrillation. *Heart*, **1915**, *vi*, 67.
- Harris (I.).** Significance of an inverted T in the first lead of the cardiogram. *Lancet*, **1919**, *i*, 168.
- Hewlett (A. W.).** Auricular fibrillation associated with auricular extrasystoles. *Heart*, **1910-11**, *ii*, 107.
- Hewlett (A. W.) & Wilson (F. N.).** Coarse auricular fibrillation in man. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, *xv*, 786.
- James (W. B.) & Hart (T. S.).** Auricular fibrillation: clinical observations on pulse deficit, digitalis and blood pressure. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1914**, *cxlvii*, 63.
- Kahn (R. H.).** Das Elektrokardiogramm. *Ergebn. der Physiol.*, **1914**, *xiv*, 1.
- King (J.) & Stewart (H. A.).** The effect of the injection of bile on the circulation. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1909**, *xi*, 673.
- Krumbhaar (E. B.).** Transient auricular fibrillation. An electrocardiographic study. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, *xviii*, 263.
- Krumbhaar (E. B.) & Jenks (H. H.).** Electrocardiographic studies in normal infants and children. *Heart*, **1917**, *vi*, 189.
- Levine (S. A.).** The oculocardiac reflex. An electrocardiographic study with special reference to the difference between right and left vagal and ocular pressures in tabetics and non-tabetics. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, *xv*, 758.
- Levy (A. G.).** The genesis of ventricular extrasystoles under chloroform with special reference to consecutive ventricular fibrillation. *Heart*, **1914**, *v*, 299.  
The exciting causes of ventricular fibrillation in animals under chloroform anaesthesia. *Heart*, **1912-13**, *iv*, 319.
- Lewis (T.).** Paroxysmal tachycardia, the result of ectopic impulse formation. *Heart*, **1909-10**, *i*, 262.  
The experimental production of paroxysmal tachycardia and the effects of ligation of the coronary arteries. *Heart*, **1909-10**, *i*, 98.  
Observations upon a curious and not uncommon form of extreme acceleration of the auricle. "Auricular flutter." *Heart*, **1912-13**, *iv*, 171.  
Auricular fibrillation and its relationship to clinical irregularity of the heart. *Heart*, **1909-10**, *i*, 306.  
The mechanism and graphic registration of the heart beat. London, Shaw & Son, **1920**.  
Paroxysmal tachycardia. *Heart*, **1909-10**, *i*, 43.
- Lewis (T.) and his associates.** Observations upon flutter and fibrillation. *Heart*, **1920-21**, *viii*, 37, 83, 141, 171, 193.

- Lewis (T.), Meakins (J.) & White (P.).** *The excitatory process in the dog's heart.* Philos. Trans. Roy. Soc. of London. Series B, **1914**, ccv, 375.
- Lewis (T.), Oppenheimer (B. S.) & Oppenheimer (Adele).** *The site of origin of the mammalian heart beat; the pacemaker in the dog.* Heart, **1910-11**, ii, 147.
- Mackenzie (J.).** *The study of the pulse.* Edinburgh & London, **1902**.  
*Diseases of the heart.* New York, **1910**.
- Mathison (G. C.).** *The cause of the heart block occurring during asphyxia.* Heart, **1910-11**, ii, 54.
- Oppenheimer (B. S.) & Rothschild (M. A.).** *Electrocardiographic changes associated with myocardial involvement with special reference to prognosis.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1917**, lxix, 429.
- Ritchie (W. T.).** *Auricular flutter.* Edinburgh & London, **1914**.
- Robinson (G. C.).** *A study with the electrocardiograph of the mode of death of the human heart.* Jour. Exper. Med., **1912**, xvi, 291.  
*The influence of the vagus nerves on the faradized auricles in the dog's heart.* Jour. Exper. Med., **1913**, xvii, 429.
- Rothberger (C. J.) & Winterberg (H.).** *Ueber die Beziehungen der Herznerven zur Atrioventrikulären Automatie.* Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol., **1910**, cxxv, 559.
- Vaughan (W. T.).** *A study of paroxysmal tachycardia with especial reference to tachycardia of ventricular origin.* Arch. Int. Med., **1918**, xxi, 381.
- White (P. D.).** *Prognosis in heart disease in relation to auricular fibrillation and alternation of the pulse.* Am. Jour. Med. Sci., **1919**, clvii, 5.
- Wilson (F. N.).** *The production of atrioventricular rhythm in man after the administration of atropin.* Arch. Int. Med., **1915**, xvi, 989.
- Wilson (F. N.) & Herrmann (G. R.).** *Bundle branch block and arborization block.* Arch. Int. Med., **1920**, xxvi, 153.

### Heart Sounds and Heart Murmurs

- Bridgman (E. W.).** *Observations on the third heart sound.* Heart, **1915**, vi, 41.
- Cabot (R. C.).** *Physical diagnosis.*
- Einthoven (W.).** *Die Registrierung der menschlichen Herztöne mittels des Saitengalvanometers.* Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol., **1907**, cxvii, 461.
- Lewis (T.).** *The time relations of heart sounds and murmurs, with special reference to the acoustic signs in mitral stenosis.* Heart, **1912-13**, iv, 241.  
*The relation of auricular systole to heart sounds and murmurs.* Lectures on the heart. New York, **1915**.
- Lüthje (H.).** *Zur physikalischen Diagnostik des Herzens, speziell über systolische Geräusche u. s. w.* München. med. Wchnschr., **1907**, liv, 495.
- Müller (F.).** *Ueber Galopp-Rhythmus des Herzens.* München. med. Wchnschr., **1906**, liii, 785.
- Robinson (G. C.).** *Gallop rhythm of the heart.* Am. Jour. Med. Sci., **1908**, cxxv, 670.
- Thayer (W. S.).** *Further observations on the third heart sound.* Arch. Int. Med., **1909**, iv, 297.

### Pulmonary Edema

- Miller (J. L.) & Matthews (S. A.).** *A study of the mechanical factors in experimental pulmonary edema.* Arch. Int. Med., **1909**, lv, 356.
- Riesman (D.).** *Acute pulmonary edema with special reference to a recurrent form.* Tr. Assn. Am. Phy., **1906**, xxi, 155.
- Sahli (H.).** *Zur Pathologie und Therapie des Lungenödems.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Therap., **1885**, xix, 431.



- Stengel (A.).** *Paroxysmal pulmonary edema and its treatment.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1911**, cxli, 1.
- Welch (W. H.).** *Zur Pathologie des Lungenoedems.* *Virchow, Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1878**, lxxii, 375.

### *Transient Arterial Hypertension*

- Brasch (W.).** *Ueber die klinischen Erscheinungen bei langandauernder Anurie.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, ciii, 488.
- Cushing (H.).** *Physiologische und anatomische Beobachtungen über den Einfluss von Hirnkompression auf den intracraniellen Kreislauf, etc.* *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chir.*, **1902**, ix, 773.
- Geisböck (F.).** *Die Bedeutung der Blutdruckmessung für die Praxis.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1905**, lxxiii, 363.
- Külbs (F.).** *Beiträge zur Pathologie des Blutdrucks.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1907**, lxxix, 467.
- Lang (G.) & Manswetowa (S.).** *Zur Frage der Veränderungen des arteriellen Blutdrucks bei Herzkranken während der Kompensationsstörung.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciv, 455.
- Loevenhart (A. S.).** *Certain aspects of biological oxidation.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xv, 1059.
- Müller (Fr.).** *Morbus Brightii.* *Verhandl. d. deutsch. path. Gesellsch.*, **1905**, ix, 64.
- Pal (J.).** *Gefässkrisen.* *Leipzig*, **1905**.
- Püssler (H.).** *Beitrag zur Pathologie der Nierenkrankheiten, etc.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1906**, lxxvii, 569.

### *Chronic Arterial Hypertension*

- Bright (R.).** *Cases and observations illustrative of renal disease, etc.* *Guy's Hosp. Rep.*, **1836**, i, 338.
- Dunin (T.).** *Der Blutdruck im Verlauf der Arteriosklerose.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1904**, liv, 353.
- Hewlett (A. W.) & Van Zwaluwenburg (J. G.).** *The rate of blood flow in the arm.* *Heart*, **1909**, i, 87.
- Janeway (T. C.).** *A clinical study of hypertensive cardiovascular disease.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 755.
- Jores (L.).** *Ueber die Beziehungen der Schrumpfnieren zur Herzhypertrophie vom pathologisch-anatomischen Standpunkt.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciv, 1.
- Krehl (L.).** *Ueber die krankhafte Erhöhung des arteriellen Druckes.* *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1905**, xxi, 1872.
- Löhlein (M.).** *Ueber Nephritis nach dem heutigen Stande der pathologisch-anatomischen Forschung.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1910**, v, 411.
- Longcope (W.) & McClintock (A. T.).** *The effect of permanent constriction of the splanchnic arteries and the association of cardiac hypertrophy with arteriosclerosis.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1910**, vi, 439.
- Miller (J. L.).** *Hypertension and the value of the various methods for its reduction.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1910**, liv, 1666.
- Ophüls (W.).** *Subacute and chronic nephritis as found in one thousand unselected necropsies.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 156.
- Pal (J.).** *Ueber permanente Hypertonie.* *Med. Klin.*, **1909**, v, 1312.

- Pässler (H.).** Ursache der Hypertrophie des ganzen Herzens bei Nephritis. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1908**, xxiv, 446.
- Pässler (H.) & Heineke (A.).** Versuche zur Pathologie des Morbus Brightii. *Verhandl. d. deutsch. path. Gesellsch.*, **1905**, ix, 99.
- Plesch (J.).** Haemodynamische Studien. *Ztschr. f. exp. Path. u. Therap.*, **1909**, vi, 380.
- Rudolf (R. D.).** The blood pressure in arteriosclerosis. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1908**, cxxvi, 374.
- Tigerstedt (R.).** Der arterielle Blutdruck. *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1907**, vi, 265.

### Arterial Hypotension

- Cannon (W. B.).** A consideration of the nature of wound shock. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1918**, lxx, 611.
- Cannon (W. B.).** The course of events in secondary wound shock. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1919**, lxxiii, 174.
- Cotton (T. F.) & Lewis (T.).** Observations upon fainting attacks due to inhibitory cardiac impulses. *Heart*, **1918**, vii, 23.
- Crile (G. W.).** An experimental research into surgical shock. Philadelphia, **1899**. Blood pressure in surgery. Philadelphia, **1903**.
- Dale (H. H.) & Laidlaw (P. P.).** Histamine shock. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1919**, lii, 355.
- Downs (A. W.).** Blood pressure in haemorrhage and its restoration. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1916**, xl, 522.
- Erlanger (J.) & Gasser (H. S.).** Hypertonic gum acacia and glucose in the treatment of secondary traumatic shock. *Ann. Surg.*, **1919**, lxix, 389.
- Gesell (R.).** Studies on the submaxillary gland. III. Some factors controlling the volume-flow of blood. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1919**, xlvii, 438.
- Henderson (Y.).** Acapnia and shock. A principle underlying the normal variations in the volume of the blood stream and the deviation from the principle in shock. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1909**, xxiii, 345.
- Heineke (H.).** Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Todesursache bei Perforationsperitonitis. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1901**, lxxix, 429.
- Hooker (D. R.).** Evidence of functional activity on the part of the capillaries and venules. *Physiol. Reviews*, **1921**, i, 112.
- Janeway (H. H.) & Ewing (E. M.).** The nature of shock. *Ann. Surg.*, **1914**, lix, 158.
- Lewis (T.).** Observations upon cardiac syncope. *Lectures on the heart*. New York, **1915**.
- MacCallum (W. G.).** The mechanism of the circulatory failure in diphtheria. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1914**, clvii, 37.
- Mann (F. C.).** The peripheral origin of surgical shock. *Johns Hopkins Hosp. Bull.*, **1914**, xxv, 205.
- Mann (F. C.).** Shock and hemorrhage: an experimental study. *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.*, **1915**, xvi, 430.
- Meltzer (S. J.).** The nature of shock. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1908**, i, 571.
- Morison (R. A.) & Hooker (D. R.).** The vascular tone and the distribution of the blood in surgical shock. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxvii, 86.
- Muns (W. E.).** Changes in the peripheral circulation following intestinal trauma. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 87.
- Newburgh (L. H.).** The use of strychnin and caffein as cardiovascular stimulants in the acute infectious diseases. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xv, 458.
- Newburgh (L. H.) & Minot (G. R.).** The blood pressure in pneumonia. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 48.

- Pässler (H.).** *Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die allgemeine Therapie der Kreislaufstörungen bei akuten Infektionskrankheiten.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1899**, lxiv, 715.
- Pässler (H.) & Rolly (D.).** *Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Kreislaufstörungen bei akuten Infektionskrankheiten.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1903**, lxxvii, 96.
- Pilcher (J. D.) & Sollmann (T.).** *Studies on the vasomotor centre: the effects of hemorrhage and reinjection of blood and saline solution.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxxv, 59.
- Porter (W. T.).** *Vasomotor relations.* *Harvey lectures.* **1906-07**, 98.
- Porter (W. T.) & Newburgh (L. H.).** *The state of the vasomotor apparatus in pneumonia.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxxv, 1.
- Porter (W. T.) & Pratt (J. H.).** *The state of the vasomotor center in diphtheria intoxication.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxxviii, 431.
- Romberg (E.).** *Die Rolle der Gefäße bei inneren Krankheiten mit Ausschluss der eigentlichen Gefäßkrankheiten.* *Samml. klin. Vortr.*, **1909**, No. 552.
- Romberg (E.), Pässler (H.), Bruhns (C.) & Müller (W.).** *Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die allgemeine Pathologie der Kreislaufstörungen bei akuten Infektionskrankheiten.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1899**, lxiv, 652.
- Seelig (M. G.) & Lyon (E. P.).** *The condition of the peripheral blood vessels in shock.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1909**, lii, 45.
- Seelig (R. G.) & Joseph (D. R.).** *On the tonus of the vasomotor center in shock.* *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, **1914**, xii, 49.
- Tabora (D. v.).** *Das Verhalten des Venendruckes bei Kreislaufstörungen.* *Verhandl. d. deutsch. Kongr. f. inn. Med.*, **1910**, xxvii, 655.
- Wiggers (C. J.).** *The pathologic physiology of the circulation during hemorrhage.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 33.  
*The prognostic significance of pulse pressure changes during hemorrhage.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1910**, vi, 281.
- Wiggers (C. J.).** *Shock and circulatory failure following trauma.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1918**, xlv, 314.
- Wiggers (C. J.).** *The initial and progressive stages of circulatory failure in abdominal shock.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1918**, xlv, 485.
- Wilson (F. N.) & Robinson (G. C.).** *Heart block. II. Transient complete heart block with numerous Stokes-Adams attacks.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1918**, xxi, 181.

### Local Vascular Changes

- Hewlett (A. W.).** *Active hyperemia following local exposure to cold.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 507.
- Hewlett (A. W.), Van Zwaluwenburg (J. G.) & Marshall (M.).** *The effect of some hydrotherapeutic procedures on the blood flow in the arm.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1911**, viii, 591.
- Marchand (F.).** *Die Störungen der Blutverteilung.* In: *Krehl & Marchand, Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie*, Bd. ii, Abt. 1, 218.
- Pal (J.).** *Gefäßkrisen.* *Leipzig*, **1905**.
- Stewart (G. N.).** *Studies on the circulation in man.* *Harvey lectures*, **1912**, 87.



*Pulse Form*

- Frank (O.).** *Die Grundform des arteriellen Pulses.* Ztschr. f. Biol., **1899**, xxvii, 483.  
*Der Puls in den Arterien.* Ztschr. f. Biol., **1905**, xvi, 441.
- Friberger (R.) & Veiel (E.).** *Ueber die Pulsform in elastischen Arterien.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, cvii, 268.
- Hewlett (A. W.), Van Zualuwenburg (J. G.) & Agnew (J. H.).** *The pulse flow in the brachial artery.* Arch. Int. Med., **1913**, xii, 1; **1914**, xiv, 609.
- Müller (O.) & Weiss (E.).** *Ueber die Topographie, die Entstehung und die Bedeutung des menschlichen Sphygmogrammes.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, cv, 320.
- Veiel (E.).** *Ueber die Bedeutung der Pulsform.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, cv, 249.
- Wiggers (C. J.).** *The contour of the normal arterial pulse.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1915**, lxiv, 1380.  
*The dynamics of aortic insufficiency.* Arch. Int. Med., **1915**, xvi, 132.



## Chapter II

# Digestion and Absorption

### Disturbances in the Esophagus

#### *Physiological Considerations*

The pharynx and the esophagus serve to carry the masticated food through the thoracic cavity into the stomach. Their function is purely a mechanical one and they take no part in the chemistry of digestion. The act of deglutition may be divided into three parts: (1) the passage of food from the mouth into the esophagus; (2) its translation through the esophagus; and (3) its entrance into the stomach through the cardiac sphincter.

**First Part of Deglutition.**—During the first portion of deglutition the mass to be swallowed passes out of the oral cavity into the upper portion of the esophagus. The bolus is gathered on the top of the posterior portion of the tongue, the edges of the tongue are closely applied to the hard palate and the teeth, so as to prevent the escape of food into the mouth, and the food is suddenly forced back into the pharynx and upper esophagus by an upward and backward movement of the tongue. The nasopharynx is closed off by a contraction of the posterior constrictors of the pharynx and by an elevation of the soft palate. The opening into the larynx is closed so as to prevent the entrance of food into the respiratory tract. The exact mechanism of this closure is still somewhat uncertain, although the recent observations of Küpferle seem to confirm the older view that it is accomplished by having the epiglottis close like a lid over the top of the larynx.

Pathological disturbances in this first portion of the act of swallowing are usually due to some failure to close off the openings into the nasopharynx or larynx, so that some of the food escapes either into the nose or into the respiratory passages. Paralysis affecting the upper pharynx and soft palate, such as occur most frequently after diphtheria, permit food and particularly liquids to return through the nose. A failure to close the larynx is far more serious, for in this case the food or liquid enters the respiratory tract. From here it may be removed by the usual



protective mechanisms, particularly coughing. When, however, the sensations and reflexes of the respiratory tract are diminished, either on account of general unconsciousness from acute alcoholism, surgical anesthesia or apoplexy, or on account of a local anesthesia from organic nervous lesions, the dangers attending such a false passage of material into the larynx are materially increased and an aspiration pneumonia may result.

**Second Part of Deglutition.**—The physiological mechanism of the second portion of swallowing, i. e., the passage of food or liquids through the esophagus, has been the subject of considerable discussion. The older physiologists believed that the passage of food through the esophagus was effected solely by the peristaltic movements of its musculature. The experiments of Kronecker and Meltzer, however, emphasized the fact that liquids may be expelled from the mouth with great velocity and that they may be shot rapidly down the esophagus, reaching the cardiac opening into the stomach ahead of the peristaltic waves. The numerous subsequent studies, which have been made of this second portion of the act of deglutition, have shown that the rapidity with which swallowed material passes through the esophagus varies in different animals, and varies in a given animal with the character of the material swallowed. Solid food usually moves down the esophagus slowly and regularly, being propelled by peristaltic waves. Liquids, on the other hand, pass down much more rapidly. Semisolid materials occupy a position intermediary between the two.

**Third Part of Deglutition.**—When fluid or semifluid material arrives early at the cardia only a very small part enters the stomach immediately. The greater part is held in the esophagus by the tonic contraction of the cardiac sphincter and is forced into the stomach by peristaltic waves which follow down the esophagus. Successive swallows of fluid tend to lessen the tonus of the cardiac sphincter and, according to Kraus, they also increase the esophageal peristalsis. This may explain the fact that many patients, who experience difficulty in swallowing, attempt to facilitate the passage of food down the esophagus by sipping liquids slowly.

### ***Mechanical Obstruction of the Esophagus***

Interference with the passage of swallowed material through the esophagus is usually due to mechanical causes. The most important of these are malignant tumors originating in the esophagus and cicatricial stenoses following ulcerative disease or corrosive poisons. Less commonly the mechanical obstruction is due to compression of the esophagus by masses, such as neoplasms, goiters and aneurisms which lie outside of the tube itself.

**Symptoms.**—Mechanical obstruction of the esophagus may at first produce no interference with the act of deglutition. Symptoms are usually first noticed during the swallowing of coarse pieces of solid food. The patient may then experience a sensation as if the food stuck at a certain point beneath the sternum. Not infrequently he tries to assist its passage by sipping liquids or by repeated swallowing movements. These attempts, as we have seen, may be of service by increasing the number and force of the peristaltic waves. If the material cannot pass the obstruction, it is sooner or later returned to the mouth. The patient usually distinguishes this regurgitation from true vomiting on account of the absence of nausea and of violent abdominal movements. Regurgitation is not accomplished by antiperistaltic movements of the esophagus, but is effected by an increase of pressure below, combined with a relaxation of the esophagus above.

**Dilatation Above Obstruction.**—In the earlier stages of a mechanical stenosis the esophageal peristalsis above the obstruction is increased and the muscle layer becomes hypertrophied (Krehl). At first there is little or no dilatation. Gradually, however, the repeated or constant strain on the esophageal wall above the stenosis leads to a more or less marked dilatation of this region. This dilatation may be favored by a weakening of the wall owing to local disease. The dilatation above an obstruction varies greatly in extent and in degree in different patients. When remnants of food remain continuously in the dilated esophagus without being regurgitated back into the mouth, they tend to decompose, and may give a foul odor to the regurgitated material.

### *Spastic Obstructions*

According to Kraus, it is not very uncommon during x-ray examinations to observe transient spasms of the esophagus which cause a brief stoppage of semifluid material. These may cause some regurgitation into the mouth, or the food, after a brief delay, may pass on into the stomach. General esophageal spasms occur in hydrophobia, tetanus and hysterical conditions. They also result from the action of corrosive poisons. After a patient has swallowed carbolic acid, for example, it may be difficult or well nigh impossible to pass a stomach tube. The pain which is occasionally felt beneath the lower sternum, when a large gulp of liquid is hastily swallowed, seems to be due to a spasm of the esophagus or of its cardiac orifice.

### **Cardiospasm**

By far the most important type of functional obstruction of the esophagus is that which is caused by a spasm of the cardiac sphincter, which is located at the entrance of the esophagus into the stomach. This condition of cardiospasm, though relatively rare, is of great practical importance on

account of the excellent results which have followed its treatment by mechanical dilatation of the obstruction. The patient's history is usually a long one. At the onset the swallowing of food may cause sudden spasmodic choking sensations. These are rarely described as actual pain, and are usually referred to the region of the lower sternum. Later there is a regurgitation of the food that has just been swallowed, and still later the food may remain for some time above the cardia, so that regurgitation occurs only at irregular intervals.

In these later stages there is a diffuse dilatation of the esophagus. At autopsy, however, no obstructive cause for the dilatation is apparent. On this account the condition has frequently been described as an idiopathic dilatation of the esophagus. While it is possible that, in some instances, dilatation of the esophagus is a primary and essential lesion, it is certain that, in the great majority of patients, esophageal dilatations without organic obstruction are secondary to, or coördinate with, an excessive tone or spasm of the cardiac sphincter. This view is supported: (1) by the early history of choking sensations which usually precede the regurgitation of food and the esophageal dilatation; (2) by the fact that the peristaltic waves in the esophagus when observed by x-ray may be normal or increased; and (3) by the observation that at autopsy the circular fibers of the esophageal muscle are often found to be hypertrophied. The important rôle played by cardiospasm in such patients is finally established by the brilliant therapeutical results which have followed mechanical dilatation of the cardiac sphincter.

**Cause of Spasm.**—The cause of the increased tone or spasm of the cardiac sphincter in such patients is not always clear. In occasional cases with typical symptoms there is present some organic disease, such as a carcinoma of the cardiac portion of the stomach. In such cases the spastic cardiac contractions have apparently been produced by an irritation of the local nerves. In the majority of patients, however, no organic cause for the spasm is demonstrable, and signs of a general neurosis may also be absent. The cardiospasm in such cases is due either to some change in the sphincter itself or to some change in its innervation.

**Innervation of Esophageal Muscle.**—The esophageal muscle is innervated by the vagi nerves. A stimulation of these nerves produces a powerful and general contraction of the esophagus. At the same time the cardiac sphincter is relaxed, though possibly this relaxation is due to the presence of sympathetic fibers in the vagi. When the vagi are cut in animals there is at first a complete paralysis of the esophagus. Cannon has shown, however, that after a time the lower portion of the esophagus, that lined by smooth muscle, recovers its motility. Peristaltic movements in this portion are initiated whenever food enters, the effective stimulus being an increase in the local tension.

**Vagus Section and Cardiac Sphincter.**—Vagus section also usually



increases the tone of the cardiac sphincter. Even powerful peristaltic waves in the lower esophagus may fail to force food into the stomach, and there may be difficulty in passing a stomach tube through this portion of the esophagus. In Cannon's experience this increased tone of the cardiac sphincter after section of the cat's vagi is usually transient. After a time the obstruction lessens and food is forced through the orifice without great difficulty. In some animals, however, the recovery is less perfect. The passage of the stomach tube remains difficult and the esophagus becomes markedly dilated and more or less continually filled with food.

It is evident, therefore, that vagus section may produce changes in the function of the cardiac sphincter, which are in many ways analogous to those that occur in the cardiospasm observed in man. The antagonism which has been observed experimentally between the cardia and the remainder of the esophagus is also of clinical interest; for it has been noted in patients that the esophageal dilatation associated with cardiospasm is often more marked and more extensive than the dilatation which follows organic obstruction. It seems, indeed, not improbable that clinical cardiospasm may often be associated with some relaxation of the remainder of the esophagus. If this be true, it would support the hypothesis that cardiospasm in man is due to a paralytic condition of the vagus filaments which supply the esophagus. Kraus has described an anatomical lesion of the tenth nerve in one case of cardiospasm, but other similar cases do not seem to have been reported.

### *Atony of the Esophagus*

Although cardiospasm is doubtlessly responsible for the majority of the cases of so-called idiopathic dilatation of the esophagus, the question as to the occurrence of esophageal atony still remains open. Holzknecht and Olbert have described such a condition, which was characterized by a slow or incomplete emptying of the esophagus when mushy material was swallowed. If the amount swallowed was small it was carried slowly down the esophagus, while if large amounts were taken a portion was left along the esophageal wall. These authors interpret their findings as evidence of relaxation and incomplete contractions of the esophagus. Clinically the condition may or may not be accompanied by symptoms. When present, the latter consist of regurgitation, dysphagia, globus, etc., symptoms which suggest an obstruction to the passage of food through the esophagus. Holzknecht and Olbert believe that esophageal atony is frequently associated with atony of other portions of the digestive tract.

### *Insufficiency of the Cardiac Sphincter*

Food that has once entered the stomach is ordinarily prevented from returning into the esophagus by a contraction of the cardiac sphincter. Cannon has shown, however, that in the cat portions of the gastric material

may pass rhythmically from the stomach into the lower esophagus, from which region they are carried back into the stomach again by peristaltic waves. This regurgitation of gastric contents into the lower esophagus occurs most commonly when the stomach contains a considerable amount of fluid material. Furthermore, those rhythmic regurgitations into the lower esophagus are most marked during early gastric digestion. In the later stages they usually cease, because the heightened acidity of the gastric contents increases the tone of the cardiac sphincter.

**Regurgitation in Man.**—It seems probable that similar regurgitations may occur in man. So long, however, as the material regurgitated does not irritate the lower esophagus and does not reach the mouth, it causes no symptoms. Hertz has shown that the lower esophagus is far more sensitive to certain chemical irritants than is the stomach itself. When strong alcoholic solutions are introduced into the stomach they produce a not uncomfortable feeling of warmth, but when introduced into the lower esophagus they cause marked burning sensations. It seems probable that the sensations of pyrosis, or "heartburn," which are usually referred to the epigastrium or the lower sternum, and which are not infrequently associated with the return of irritating gastric contents into the mouth, are due, in part at least, to the action of gastric contents upon the lower esophagus. Hertz also found that the lower esophagus was normally insensitive to acid. Pyrosis would, therefore, seem to be due either to a change in sensibility of the lower esophagus toward acid or to the action of substances other than acid.

Regurgitation of material from the stomach into the mouth requires not only a passage of the cardiac sphincter, but also a return of the material up through the esophagus. So far as we know, the latter is never due to antiperistaltic waves.

**Eruetation.**—Eruetation of gases takes place with comparative ease. When much gas is present in the upper portion of the stomach it keeps the acid away from the cardiac region. This lessens the tonic contraction of the sphincter and so favors the escape of gas.

### *Aërophagia*

The stomach normally contains a certain amount of air which in the erect posture occupies its upper pole directly beneath the diaphragm. During swallowing, more air is carried with the food into the stomach. Even under normal circumstances, as we have seen, some of this may be expelled from the stomach by a relaxation of the cardiac sphincter and further passage up the esophagus. In this manner the stomach automatically relieves itself of an excess of air. This eruetation of gas frequently gives a sense of relief, especially if the abdomen is distended or the heart action is embarrassed.

**Pathogenesis.**—Under pathological conditions, and especially in patients suffering from general neuroses, dyspeptic symptoms or cardiac distress, the belching of gas may recur repeatedly and enormous quantities of gas may be raised within a brief period of time. This gas is atmospheric air. If such patients are carefully observed, it is usually evident that the eructations are preceded by swallowing movements. Further more, if the swallowing of gas be prevented by keeping the mouth open, either voluntarily or by a spool placed between the teeth, the eructations cease. It is obvious, therefore, that severe and prolonged attacks of gaseous eructations are associated with a swallowing of air, or *aërophagia*.

When patients suffering from cardiac or gastric disease experience relief after belching gas, they are tempted to repeat the process; but in order to do this more air must be swallowed. In this way a habit of *aërophagia* is developed. It is evident, therefore, that while attacks of *aërophagia* are in themselves of a functional character, some other cause than a pure neurosis may be present. Particularly is this true of organic disease of the stomach or heart, where symptoms may be relieved by the removal of gas from the stomach.

**Retention of Gas.**—Severe and continued attacks of gaseous eructation are usually due to *aërophagia*. In some patients, however, the gas swallowed is not entirely returned through the mouth. It may pass on into the intestines and cause marked abdominal distention. Possibly also, in some cases, the excess of gas may remain in the stomach and may play a part in causing acute or chronic gastric distention.

### *Esophageal Diverticula*

Two types of localized esophageal dilatation unattended by stenosis may be distinguished according to their modes of origin: (1) those arising from traction outside of the esophagus, traction diverticula; and (2) those arising from pressure within, pressure or pulsion diverticula.

**Traction Diverticula.**—The former are caused most frequently by the traction of scar tissue about old inflammatory processes. They usually occur in the neighborhood of the bifurcation of the trachea and are most commonly due to old tuberculous glands in this neighborhood. As a rule diverticula of this type are small and of a conical shape. They rarely cause disturbances in the mechanism of deglutition, and they derive their chief clinical significance from the fact that they may give rise to perforations of the esophagus.

**Pressure Diverticula.**—Pressure diverticula arise most frequently at the posterior junction of the pharynx and esophagus, which junction is at the level of the cricoid cartilage. At this point there seems to be a physiological weakness of the muscle wall, and the strain to which it is subjected during swallowing produces the diverticulum. The walls of such diver-



ticula usually contain very few muscle fibers, thus suggesting that a hernia of the mucosa and submucosa has taken place through the muscular layer. These diverticula frequently grow to a considerable size, and they may produce a marked interference with deglutition. When food enters the sac the adjacent esophagus is compressed and the opening into the esophagus at the mouth of the sac becomes closed. The food swallowed then passes almost entirely into the sac. From here it may be regurgitated or it may be expressed by pressure on the side of the neck. Since the closure of the esophagus is largely a matter of chance, the interference with swallowing usually varies greatly from time to time. At times even coarse food passes down the esophagus, while at other times even liquids are caught in the diverticulum and obstruct the esophageal canal.

## Disturbances of Gastric Secretion

### *Physiological Considerations*

After food has been swallowed, the greater portion remains in the stomach for a variable period of time, being held by the pyloric and cardiac sphincters. Semisolid material, after entering the fundus, remains there in a layered mass, the layers being arranged according to their order of entrance. The outer portion of this mass is exposed to the action of the gastric juice. The central portion, being alkaline, is subjected to salivary digestion until mixture with the acid gastric juice inhibits the salivary ferment. Towards the end of gastric digestion, some bile and pancreatic juice usually regurgitates back from the duodenum. This lessens the gastric acidity but rarely enough to permit digestion by ferments from the duodenum.

Functionally and anatomically, the stomach may be divided into two parts, the fundus and the antrum. The *fundus* is the secretory portion of the stomach where the acid and characteristic ferments of the gastric juice are secreted. The contraction waves in the fundus show a more rapid rhythm than the contraction waves in the antrum (Alvarez); but the amplitude of these waves is so small that they produce little mechanical effect on the gastric contents. In the *antrum* the secretion is mainly mucus, whereas the peristaltic movements are of large amplitude and serve to mix and comminute the gastric contents.

There is a continuous secretion of juice into the human stomach, even though the latter contain no food. This secretion may be accelerated either by nervous or by chemical influences.

### *(a) Nervous Secretion*

The brilliant work of Pawlow and his school emphasized the important part played by nervous influences in furnishing an initial stimulus to

gastric secretion. The mere act of chewing and swallowing appetizing food is shortly followed by a profuse flow of gastric juice; and this happens even though the food, instead of entering the stomach, leaves the body through an esophageal fistula. The nervous impulses that cause this initial secretion are carried to the stomach by the vagi, and if these nerves be cut no neurogenous secretion follows the eating of food. The vagus stimuli to gastric secretion take their origin mainly from reflexes which arise in the special sense organs of taste and smell. Chewing, smelling or even seeing appetizing food starts a neurogenous secretion of gastric juice. Probably also the secretion may be initiated by psychic processes, for Bogen taught a child to associate the taking of food with a certain sound, and he was able to produce a flow of juice by this sound. The presence of an appetizing meal, therefore, causes not only a flow of saliva, but also an analogous, though less marked, increase in the flow of gastric juice.

Thus we have a physiological basis for the belief that the flow of gastric juice is favored by appetizing and agreeable surroundings at the table. Anger and other unpleasant emotions certainly interfere with digestion. That they disturb the secretion of gastric juice was demonstrated by Bickel in a striking manner. This observer established a gastric fistula in a rather irritable dog, and he found that the neurogenous flow of juice could be suddenly stopped when anger was induced, by bringing a cat into its presence.

### *(b) Chemical Secretion*

The second stimulus to gastric secretion occurs after the food has entered the stomach. Mechanical irritation of the mucous membrane apparently plays little or no part in provoking this flow of juice. It is due to the chemical effect of certain foods or of their digestive products. Among these effective substances are water, the extractives from meat, alcoholic liquors, and the products of protein and starch digestion. In the case of some of these, at least, the stimulus to secretion is not a direct one, but is due to substances which pass into the blood stream and from there act on the secreting cells.

This chemical excitator of the gastric secretion has been called gastrin. Acid extracts of the gastric mucosa, and to some extent of other tissues, may produce a gastric secretion if injected into the blood stream. It has been noted that the administration of an enema may increase gastric secretion, owing either to reflex or chemical influences.

### **Properties of the Gastric Juice**

Among the more important constituents of the gastric juice are hydrochloric acid, the ferments and mucus. Hydrochloric acid plays an impor-

tant rôle in all the gastric activities. It excites reflexes which close the lower end of the esophagus against the regurgitation of gastric contents, and it plays an even more important part in controlling the activities of the pyloric sphincter. It converts the gastric proferments into the active enzymes. In the stomach hydrochloric acid renders powerful assistance in digesting proteins, and it is said by A. Schmidt to assist in the digestion of certain forms of cellulose. In the duodenum it is one of the factors that call forth the secretion of pancreatic juice and of bile. Finally, the acidity of the gastric contents inhibits bacterial growth, and thus protects the body and the intestines to some extent against the entrance of harmful bacteria.

**Pepsin.**—Pepsin is the gastric ferment which digests proteins. It is most active in an acid medium, being particularly effective in the presence of hydrochloric acid. It splits up the proteins by a process of hydrolysis into simpler nitrogenous compounds, the peptones and proteoses, which are characterized by the fact that they are less easily precipitated than the original proteins. Its action upon connective tissue is relatively important, because the latter, unlike most proteins, is not readily attacked by the pancreatic trypsin.

**Chymosin or Rennin.**—The gastric juice also contains a ferment which coagulates milk, and which is known as chymosin or rennin. The coagulation of milk delays its exit from the stomach, and so favors its gastric digestion.

**Lipase.**—A fat-splitting ferment, lipase, has been frequently demonstrated in the gastric contents. Lipase often enters the stomach owing to a regurgitation of the duodenal contents, but it seems probable that, in addition, the gastric mucosa secretes a lipase. Up to the present, however, but little is known of pathological variations in the amount of this ferment.

**Secretion of Mucus.**—The mucus of the gastric contents is derived in part from that swallowed with the food. In addition mucus is secreted by special cells of the gastric mucous membrane which are most numerous in its pyloric portion. The secretion of mucus is entirely independent of the secretion of hydrochloric acid and ferments. While the latter show similar variations under pathological conditions, the mucus is often increased when the acid and ferments are diminished or absent. The gastric mucus appears to act as a mechanical protection to the mucous membrane. It neutralizes to some extent the hydrochloric acid and it aids in forming a suspension of solid particles in the chyme.

### *Hyperacidity and Hypersecretion*

The acidity of the material removed from the stomach after a test breakfast is estimated by titrating with a decinormal alkaline solution. The results are expressed in figures which indicate the number of cubic centimeters of the alkaline solution that are required to neutralize 100 c.c. of gastric contents. After a test breakfast the acidity thus expressed usu-



ally does not exceed 60 (0.22 per cent HCl) for the total acidity and 45 (0.17 per cent HCl) for the free hydrochloric acid. Somewhat higher total acidities are obtained after a full meal. By hyperacidity in the clinical sense we mean that the titration figures are above the normal.

**Acidity of Pure Gastric Juice.**—A hyperacidity of the gastric contents is not necessarily due to a corresponding increase in the acidity of the secretion poured out by the mucous membrane. Pure gastric juice, obtained from a fistulous opening into a normal stomach and not mixed with food, always shows a much higher acidity than is normally found in gastric contents, the total acidity of pure juice ranging from 93 (0.35 per cent) to 150 (0.56 per cent). The cause of the difference between the acidity of pure juice and the acidity of gastric contents that are recovered after various test meals lies partly in the dilution of the gastric juice by the liquids of the food taken, and partly in the neutralization of the hydrochloric acid by the alkaline saliva, the alkaline gastric mucus, and above all, according to Boldyreff, by neutralization with the alkaline pancreatic juice that regurgitates through the pylorus into the stomach. In conditions of clinical hyperacidity we never meet with figures which exceed the limits of normal acidity for pure gastric juice.

It is evident, therefore, that while hyperacidity of the gastric contents may possibly be due to the secretion of a more acid gastric juice, it may also be caused by the secretion of unusual quantities of a normal gastric juice or by a failure on the part of some of the agencies that normally dilute or neutralize the gastric contents. The clinical differentiation of these various factors is not easily made; but animal experimentation as well as observations on men with gastric fistulae has shown that pure gastric juice possesses an acidity which is rarely approached and never exceeded by the gastric contents in conditions of hyperacidity. It seems probable, therefore, that the latter is due not to the secretion of an unusually acid juice, but to the secretion of a normal juice in excessive amounts or to an insufficiency in some of the neutralizing factors.

**Hypersecretion.**—In practice it is customary to define gastric hyperacidity as a condition in which the gastric contents, though approximately normal in quantity, show a high acid content. In what is called hypersecretion, on the other hand, the gastric contents are increased in amount without an evident pyloric obstruction.

### Relation of Hyperacidity to Gastric Motility

The mechanism which governs the rate at which the gastric contents are discharged into the duodenum will be discussed in later sections of this chapter. It may be mentioned here, however, that gastric hyperacidity is not infrequently associated with some delay in the emptying of the stomach. More fluid than usual is often obtained after a test meal, and the x-ray examination may also show that the final emptying of the stomach is

delayed. This delayed emptying apparently depends in part upon the secretion of large amounts of juice, and in part upon an increased activity of the pyloric sphincter, which delays the passage of gastric contents into the duodenum.

### **Effect of Hyperacidity on Gastric Digestion**

In hyperacidity the gastric contents become acid more promptly than usual. This shortens the period during which starch can be digested by the salivary ferment that enters the stomach. Since, however, the main digestion of starch normally takes place in the intestines, this can hardly lead to any serious impairment of starch digestion.

As a result of the stronger acidity, and possibly also owing to some delay in the emptying of the stomach, the digestion of proteins may be more complete than usual. This again appears to have but slight significance from the standpoint of general digestion, unless indeed the over-digestion plays some rôle in the pathogenesis of the constipation that is relatively common in patients with hyperacidity. Hyperacidity is of clinical interest partly because it is relatively frequent in certain organic diseases within the abdominal cavity, and partly because it is a direct or indirect cause of certain gastric symptoms.

### **Symptoms of Hyperacidity**

Hyperacidity may be present without clinical manifestations or it may be accompanied by a more or less characteristic group of symptoms. Among the latter are an ill-defined feeling of gastric distress, definite gastric pain, burning sensations beneath the sternum and eructations of acid fluids. These symptoms are most intense at the height of digestion; i. e., between one and three hours after a meal. They are usually relieved by alkalis, such as sodium bicarbonate and magnesia, which serve to neutralize the excess of acid in the stomach.

**Contributory Factors.**—A trustworthy diagnosis of hyperacidity cannot be made from the symptoms alone. At times a patient with complaints that suggest gastric hyperacidity shows subacidity or anacidity on gastric analysis. Furthermore, the gastric symptoms do not parallel the degree of acidity. Certain persons who have never had a gastric complaint show hyperacidity on analysis, while others with characteristic symptoms may show a normal or only slightly increased acidity. It seems necessary to assume that other factors than the percentage of hydrochloric acid influence the character and the severity of the symptoms that are usually attributed to hyperacidity. Among these assumed factors we may mention a general hypersensitiveness on the part of the patient or a hyperesthesia of the stomach itself. It is certain that the symptoms of hyperacidity often accompany general nervousness, yet it is possible that the

immediate cause of the symptoms is not a hypersensitiveness alone, but that there may be accompanying disturbances in the motor functions of the stomach. The pain, for example, may be due to pyloric spasm, while the acid burning and acid eructations may be due to an insufficiency of the cardiac sphincter which permits the gastric contents to enter the lower esophagus. If such motor disturbances play a rôle in producing symptoms, the absence of a definite parallelism between symptoms and the degree of acidity may be readily understood.

**Constipation.**—Constipation is relatively frequent in patients with gastric hyperacidity, but the relation between the two is by no means clear. On the one hand, as we have pointed out, the hyperacidity, by favoring an overdigestion of the food and a consequent reduction in the fecal residue, may predispose to constipation. On the other hand, the disturbed intestinal motility may possibly produce a reflex hyperacidity.

### Causes of Hyperacidity

Hyperacidity more than any other disturbance of gastric secretion is apt to be accompanied by no manifest lesions of the mucous membrane lining the stomach. Such a "functional" hyperacidity is particularly frequent in young individuals and in those of a nervous temperament. Certain persons suffer from the symptoms of hyperacidity whenever they are placed under an unusual nervous strain, and those who follow occupations that involve much care and worry are especially liable to symptoms of this type. There is, therefore, clinical evidence that hyperacidity symptoms may be caused by psychic influences.

**Nervous Reflexes.**—These symptoms may also be caused by nervous reflexes that originate in organic disease of the abdominal viscera. They are not uncommon, for example, during pregnancy and in those suffering from chronic appendicitis, gall-stones and chronic constipation. When the primary disease is cured, such patients may be entirely relieved of their gastric symptoms. Since the gastric secretion is stimulated in part by impulses that descend through the vagi nerves, it is obvious that under pathological conditions there may be an excessive nervous stimulation, which would account for the psychic and reflex types of hyperacidity.

**Altered Gastric Mucous Membrane.**—Other types of gastric hyperacidity are manifestly due to an irritation or disease of the mucous membrane of the stomach. The occasional or habitual use of highly seasoned food, the hasty swallowing of coarse food, smoking, alcoholic excesses—all these may irritate the gastric mucous membrane and produce a hyperacidity of the gastric contents. The hyperacid form of gastritis is closely related to such irritative factors. Finally, hyperacidity is relatively common in certain gross anatomical lesions of the stomach, especially chronic ulcer.



### Hypersecretion

Hypersecretion in the clinical sense is distinguished from hyperacidity by the fact that in absence of any evident obstruction at the pylorus unusual quantities of liquid material are obtained from the stomach. Two forms have been described. In the intermittent type the hypersecretion recurs at irregular intervals, and is associated with severe pain and vomiting. In the other type, called chronic gastrosuccorhea, or Reichmann's disease, the hypersecretion is continuous. Even though the stomach has been emptied the night before, large quantities of secretion unmixed with food may be obtained in the morning. The quantity that must be obtained in order to constitute hypersecretion is not definitely known. It is frequently stated that not more than 20 c.c. of fluid should be obtained from the fasting stomach, but Rehfuess and his associates found 100 c.c. or more in certain normal individuals. The fluid recovered from the stomach in cases of hypersecretion usually contains a large percentage of hydrochloric acid.

**Methods of Recognition Inadequate.**—While it seems probable that cases of marked hypersecretion actually exist, it must be admitted that our methods for recognizing the condition are rather inadequate. On the one hand, the normal fasting stomach may contain a considerable amount of liquid and acid secretion. On the other, a slight pyloric stenosis or a pyloric spasm may interfere with the normal emptying of a normal fasting secretion, and thus increase the residue obtained in the morning aspiration. It is certain that many cases of supposed hypersecretion are caused by organic disease of the stomach, and particularly by unrecognized gastric ulcers.

### *Achlorhydria and Related Conditions*

We have seen that an increased percentage of hydrochloric acid in the gastric contents is not necessarily due to a hyperacid secretion, but that it may be, and usually is, due to the secretion of excessive juice, lack of neutralization or alterations in gastric motility. A marked diminution in the percentage of hydrochloric acid, on the other hand, usually indicates a lessened secretion of acid. This diminution of acid is frequently associated with a diminution in pepsin and chymosin. As a general rule, the ferments are normal or diminished in conditions of subacidity, while they are diminished or absent in anacidity. To this rule, however, there are exceptions, and in some cases of subacidity the pepsin is diminished to a greater extent than is the acid. When hydrochloric acid is absent from the gastric contents the condition is called achlorhydria. When acid and ferments are both absent, it is called an achylia gastrica. In the latter condition, therefore, no active gastric juice is secreted. Yet the mucous membrane may still be able to secrete liquids and mucus, for no definite

relation exists between the secretion of acid or ferments and the secretion of mucus. In certain cases of achlorhydria, indeed, the mucous membrane produces excessive quantities of mucus; in others, the amount of mucus is normal or diminished.

### **Relation to Gastric Motility**

When the stomach of a patient with achlorhydria is aspirated after a standard test breakfast it is a common experience to find that little or no material can be recovered, and that the water used for lavage is returned clear. The main portion or perhaps the whole of the test breakfast has left the stomach at a time when the normal stomach should contain a residue of from 75 to 100 c.c. Furthermore, Cohnheim, who has studied the rate of gastric discharge in animals by means of a duodenal fistula, observed that in a dog which had a gastric catarrh with achlorhydria the meat eaten passed through the pylorus with unusual rapidity. Achlorhydria is, therefore, frequently associated with a rapid emptying of the stomach. The cause of this hypermotility will be discussed later, but it may be pointed out here that it seems to be due to an absence of the duodenal reflex which normally closes the pylorus when the acid contents of the stomach enter the duodenum.

### **Effect on Gastric and Intestinal Digestion**

Inspection of the residue recovered from the stomach of a patient with achlorhydria usually shows a noticeable lack of digestion. The food appears to have been simply chewed and mixed with mucus, and undigested solid particles adhere to one another, instead of being separated and more or less disintegrated as in the normal gastric contents.

Protein digestion is reduced or absent. The lack of gastric acidity increases the opportunities for the digestion of starch in the stomach by means of the salivary ferment that has been swallowed with the food; but when, as often happens, the food passes rapidly into the duodenum, little time is allowed for starch digestion in the stomach.

**Increased Work of Intestines.**—It is obvious, therefore, that achlorhydria markedly lessens the digestion of food in the stomach and throws an added amount of work upon the intestines. The powerful ferments encountered in the intestines are usually able to compensate for the lack of gastric digestion, and as a rule no excessive loss of nutrient material by way of the feces takes place. Only in the case of animal connective tissue does the gastric juice appear to possess peculiar digestive properties, and in patients with achlorhydria masses of tough meat may escape digestion and appear as such in the stools. Compensation by the intestines for an absent gastric digestion also takes place when the entire stomach is removed by a surgical operation. Although such a removal may be followed for a time

by disturbances of digestion and absorption, these processes later become quite normal despite the absence of a stomach.

The extra strain thrown upon the intestines by gastric achlorhydria may, in certain cases, lead to intestinal disturbances. Patients with achlorhydria not infrequently complain of constipation, intestinal gases, foul-smelling feces, and diarrhea. Particularly characteristic of achlorhydria is the tendency to diarrhea. This may be continuous, or it may occur in attacks that are separated by shorter or longer intervals. While diarrhea does not occur in a very high percentage of such patients, nevertheless it is an important symptom, for the reason that other forms of chronic diarrhea are rare in temperate climates. In achlorhydria imperfectly prepared food is being constantly emptied into the intestines. The coarse character of this food may cause some mechanical irritation. More important, however, is the fact that undesirable decompositions take place in the intestines, partly because of the unusual quantity of undigested material, and partly because the absence of gastric acidity permits the entrance of an unusual number and variety of microorganisms that have been swallowed with the food. The intestines become irritated by these decomposition products or by the abnormal bacterial flora.

### Symptoms of Achlorhydria

A considerable number of patients with gastric achlorhydria complain of no symptoms whatsoever and the condition is only discovered when the stomach is pumped. Others complain of indefinite gastric disturbances, such as loss of appetite, distress after meals and eructations. Still others complain of the intestinal disturbances that have just been enumerated. Finally, many suffer from various nervous complaints that are not directly attributable to the gastro-intestinal canal.

**Nervous Changes.**—The relation between achlorhydria and general nervousness is an interesting one. Some authors have attributed the achlorhydria to nervous influences (*achylia gastrica nervosa*). As we shall see, however, it is highly improbable that nervous changes should in themselves produce a permanent lack of gastric secretion, such as is frequently encountered in these patients. A general nervousness may cause a patient with achlorhydria to notice gastric or intestinal symptoms which might otherwise be disregarded. On the other hand, the nervous condition may be in some way a result, and not a cause, of the digestive disturbances. Little definite is known concerning the effects of abnormal intestinal decompositions upon the body, but it seems quite possible that such decompositions may affect the nervous health, and that this may cause certain general symptoms that occur in patients suffering from the intestinal complications of achlorhydria. In some cases the nervous symptoms disappear when the effects of the achlorhydria are corrected by a proper diet and the administration of hydrochloric acid. Rarely, however, does any method



of treatment cause a return of the normal gastric secretion in patients who have once shown achlorhydria on several examinations.

### **Causes of Achlorhydria**

Of fundamental importance in discussing the etiology of achlorhydria is the question as to its nervous origin. We have seen that Pawlow and later physiologists demonstrated that the secretion of gastric juice was markedly influenced by nervous impulses. The first portion of the gastric secretion is certainly due to such stimuli, and Bickel showed that this neurogenous secretion could be suddenly checked by angering his dog. It is tempting to assume that chronic achlorhydria is also due to such nervous influences. It should be remembered, however, that the gastric secretion may also be excited by chemical stimuli, and it is very doubtful if the chemical secretion can be checked by central nervous influences. Experience with patients has shown that while a certain amount of variation in the gastric analyses may be attributed to psychic or other nervous influences, and while these variations tend to be more marked in neurotic individuals, nevertheless complete absence of hydrochloric acid can rarely be attributed to transient nervous disturbances. For example, achlorhydria does not come and go with the relapses and remissions of manic-depressive insanity; nor, again, with the fluctuations of health that occur so frequently in patients suffering from functional neuroses. Furthermore, achlorhydria, once definitely established, usually persists even though the general nervous health of the patient improves.

**Changes in Gastric Mucous Membrane.**—It has long been known that certain cases of achlorhydria are due to demonstrable anatomical changes in the gastric mucous membrane. Faber and his associates have shown, further, that in the great majority of patients with achlorhydria anatomical changes may be demonstrated. They believe that these changes are of an inflammatory character, and they have, therefore, concluded that most cases of achlorhydria are due to chronic gastritis. Even when no anatomical changes are found, it is quite as probable that the disturbed secretion is due to chemical changes in the cells as that it is due to nervous influences. Faber also believes that many patients, in whom the hydrochloric acid is diminished but not absent, are suffering from a relatively mild form of chronic gastritis.

**Old Age.**—We have said that achlorhydria is usually a chronic disease from which recovery rarely takes place. Since it is not particularly dangerous, it is evident that it will be more common in elderly persons; for once having developed, it continues indefinitely. In this way the frequency of the condition among elderly persons is probably to be explained.

**Pernicious Anemia.**—Achlorhydria is common in association with certain diseases. In pernicious anemia, for example, it occurs almost invariably. The usual anatomical changes in the mucous membrane are also

found in this disease. It seems certain that the anemia itself does not cause the absence of gastric secretion, for the latter may be absent years before the anemia develops, and it remains absent even when the blood picture during a remission appears almost normal. Then, too, other equally profound anemias, clinical as well as experimental (Minami), may be associated with no diminution in the gastric secretion.

**Gastric Carcinoma.**—Achlorhydria is a common but not an invariable manifestation of gastric carcinoma. This type of achlorhydria appears to be due not alone to a diminished secretion, but also in part to an excessive neutralization of acid that has been secreted by the stomach. (See Gastric Carcinoma.)

**Infections.**—Meyer, Cohen, and Carlson found that experimental fever in dogs was accompanied by a transient but marked reduction of gastric secretion with a diminution or absence of free hydrochloric acid. A similar reduction of secretion appears to be common during infectious processes in man. As a rule the secretion returns after recovery from the infection but it is possible that this does not always occur.

**Idiopathic Type.**—In addition to these there are the so-called idiopathic achlorhydrias, in which no immediate cause for the condition is apparent. The chronic gastritis in such patients is commonly attributed to alcoholic drink, indigestible food, hasty eating or previous infections.

### *Excessive Secretion of Mucus*

It has been pointed out that gastric mucus is secreted by other cells than those which secrete the acid and ferments of the gastric juice, and that under pathological conditions no fixed relation exists between the two processes. An excessive secretion of mucus may occur with normal, diminished, or even, in some cases, with increased acidity. The occurrence of excessive quantities of mucus in the gastric secretion has been regarded as a pathognomonic sign of gastritis, and it certainly indicates a catarrhal condition of the mucus cells lining the stomach. The significance of such a gastric catarrh, however, is uncertain. On the other hand, chronic gastritis in the anatomical sense may be present even though there be no marked excess of mucus. This may happen, for example, in achlorhydria.

## **Disturbances of Gastric Motility**

### *Physiological Considerations*

**Cardiac Sac.**—The stomach normally has a steer-horn or fish-hook form and lies mostly to the left of the mid-line, with its lower border at or about the level of the umbilicus. From the physiological standpoint it may be

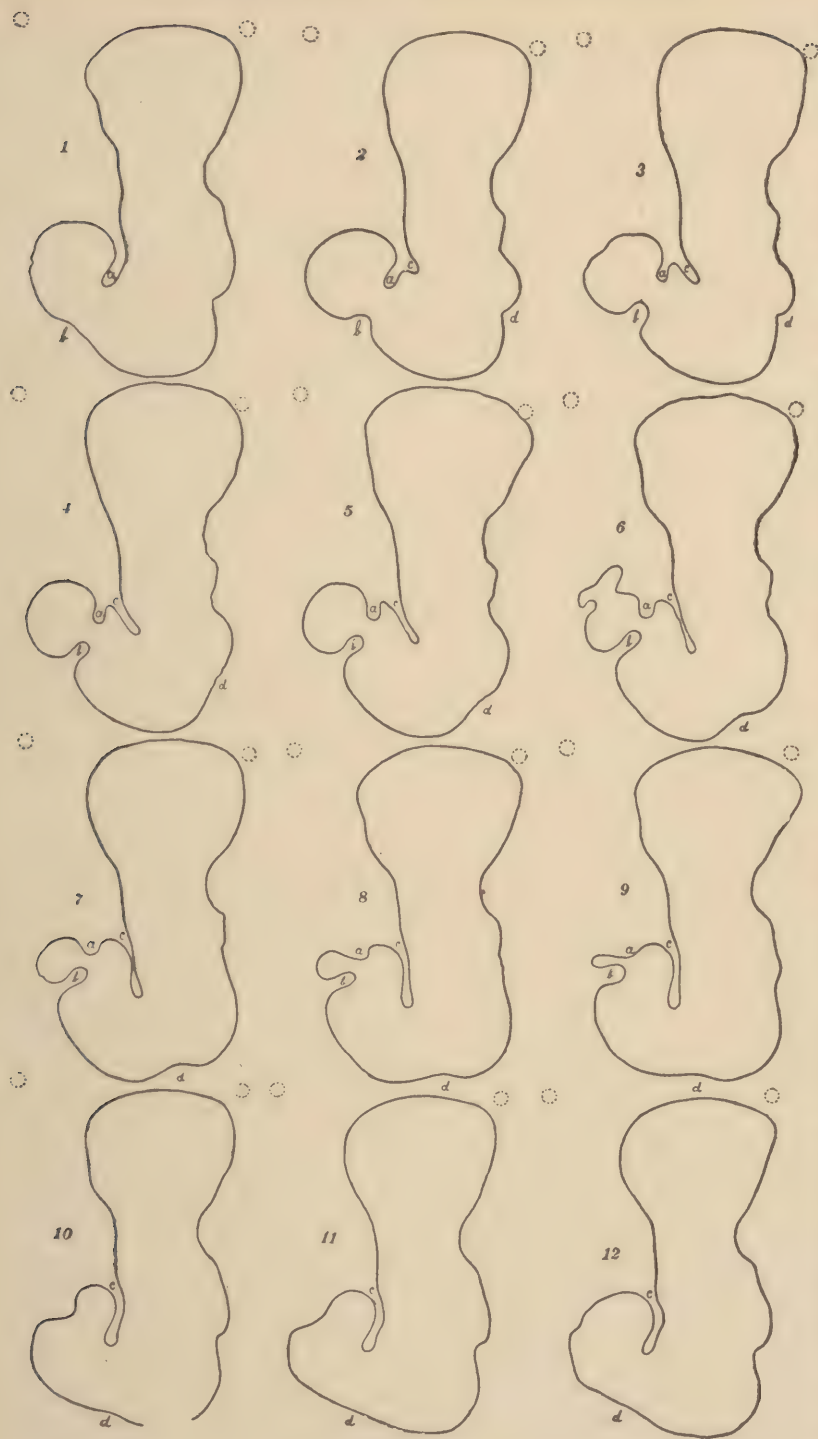


Fig. 56.—Kinematographic Records of the Gastric Outlines in Man Showing the Progress of the Peristaltic Waves *a*, *b* and *c*, *d*. (From Kaestle, Rieder and Rosenthal, Arch. Röntgen Ray.)



divided into two portions, which have been called by Cunningham the cardiac sac and the gastric tube. The *cardiac sac*, or upper half of the stomach, receives the food coming from the esophagus and contracts upon it with a fairly constant pressure, despite variations in the amount of its contents. The degree of contraction is spoken of as the gastric tone. When the tone is normal the gastric contents do not simply collect at the lowest portion of the stomach, but they are held up to a fairly constant level. When more food is taken, the level rises but slightly, and the stomach accommodates the increased quantity by increasing its diameter (Fig. 58). The cardiac sac acts mainly as a reservoir for holding the food, and fluoroscopic examination shows few if any peristaltic movements. If the food swallowed is solid or semisolid, it remains quiet so long as it is in the sac, and when various foods are fed in succession they tend to form layers in this portion of the stomach. The earlier layers lie toward the pylorus and along the greater curvature, while the later layers lie along the lesser curvature (Groedel).

**Gastric Tube.**—The second or pyloric half of the stomach is called by Cunningham the gastric tube and it is the seat of the most marked peristaltic activity. It may be free of peristalsis for considerable periods of time even when it contains food. When peristalsis occurs, the waves appear to originate on the greater curvature at, or somewhat above, the middle of the stomach, and from this point they pass slowly toward the pylorus. As the wave proceeds forward along the greater curvature it gradually becomes deeper and soon an indentation appears directly opposite on the lesser curvature. This double constriction moves up to the pylorus but it never passes beyond that point. In man peristaltic waves arise at the rate of about three (two to four) per minute and as they progress very slowly it frequently happens that two or more waves may be observed at the same time along the gastric tube (Fig. 56).

The lumen of the pyloric portion of the stomach is rarely, if ever, completely closed off by the waves that sweep over it. So long as the pylorus is closed, the peristaltic waves serve simply to mix and churn the gastric contents in this portion of the stomach. Cannon has watched small solid particles containing a bismuth salt move forward toward the pylorus as a peristaltic wave approached, and then back again as the wave passed by.

From time to time a portion of the gastric contents is allowed to escape through the pyloric sphincter. The loss of material from the gastric tube is made up from that which is stored in the cardiac sac. Thus the amount in the latter region is gradually reduced until, finally, the last of the gastric contents has been passed on into the duodenum (Fig. 57).

### The Control of the Pylorus

The pyloric sphincter controls the rapidity with which material is discharged from the stomach. Although peristaltic waves reach this

sphincter at the rate of from two to four a minute, the latter allows material to escape only at intervals which vary in length from  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a minute to several minutes. When material is allowed to escape through the pylorus,

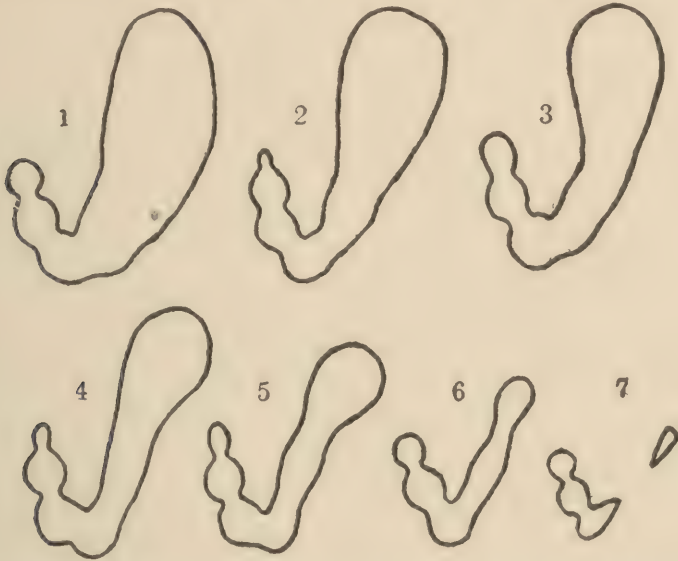


Fig. 57.—Tracings of the Shadow Cast by the Cat's Stomach at Hour Intervals After a Meal. Note that as the Stomach Empties the Cross Diameter of the Fundus Diminishes With (at First) But Little Change in Its Length. (From W. B. Cannon, "Mechanical Factors of Digestion," published by Longmans, Green & Co.)

it does so in little squirts which show that a considerable pressure is maintained in the pyloric tube.

**Control of Rate of Exit.**—Two main factors govern the rate at which the pyloric orifice normally permits food to leave the stomach. The first of these is the muscular activity of the stomach. Powerful rings of advancing constriction in the antrum, aided perhaps by a general increase in the tone of the stomach, tend to open the pylorus and force gastric contents into the duodenum.

On the other hand, much evidence has accumulated which indicates that there is a control of the pyloric sphincter by the acidity of the fluid on either side. According to Cannon, opening of the pylorus is favored when acid contents come in contact with the mucous membrane of the antrum. A second mechanism is excited when the acid gastric material comes in contact with the mucous membrane lining the duodenum. This causes a reflex closure of the pylorus behind the material that has passed into the duodenum. Only after the duodenal acidity has been neutralized by the bile and the pancreatic juice is the pylorus again free to respond to the opening stimulus.

**Three Main Motor Activities.**—It is evident that the digestive phase of gastric motility consists of three principal functions: (1) the constant

force with which the stomach contracts on its contents, i.e., its *tone*; (2) the frequency, depth and force of the *peristaltic movements* that pass over the distal half of the stomach; and (3) the *pyloric control* of the passage of gastric contents into the duodenum.

The term gastric motility has been used by clinicians to designate the rapidity with which the food leaves the stomach. Although this usage has the advantage that it indicates a definite and important function of the stomach, it should be remembered that gastric motility in the clinical sense has little to do with the force and frequency of gastric peristalsis. The peristaltic waves, for example, are often markedly increased in cases of pyloric obstruction when the exit of food from the stomach is delayed. On the other hand, in achlorhydria the peristaltic waves may be normal, even though the stomach empties itself with unusual rapidity.

### ***Gastric Motility in Secretory Disturbances***

We have already noted the fact that in the majority of patients with achlorhydria comparatively little material is recovered when the stomach is pumped at the usual time after a test breakfast. The cause of this rapid exit of gastric contents may now be discussed. According to Groedel, the tone of the stomach in such patients is, as a rule, not less than the normal. The first swallows of food do not fall rapidly to the bottom of the stomach and the stomach appears to contract firmly upon its contents. The frequency and depth of the peristaltic waves that pass over the stomach are also normal or are slightly lessened. The hypermotility depends, therefore, upon changes in the action of the pyloric sphincter. We have seen that the latter is largely controlled by the acidity of the material on either side of the pylorus. In achlorhydria, where this acidity is absent, one might suppose that on account of the lack of acid on the gastric side of the pylorus the sphincter would open late, and the exit of food would be slow. It appears, however, that the lack of acid on the duodenal side is a more important factor in this case. As a result of this lack of acid, the reflex closure of the pylorus, which normally takes place when the gastric contents reach the duodenum, is diminished or absent and material passes out of the stomach with unusual rapidity.

Gastric hyperacidity, as we have pointed out, is probably due to an increased secretion of normal juice rather than to the secretion of an abnormally acid juice. It is not surprising, therefore, that a somewhat increased amount of material can often be obtained on pumping the stomachs of such patients. Not only does the increased secretion of gastric juice tend to increase the residue but there is probably, in addition, some tendency on the part of the pyloric sphincter to hold material back in the stomach on account of an increase in the acid duodenal reflex. Cannon has shown experimentally, that while a certain amount of acid in the gastric contents favors the exit of food from the stomach, an excessive amount



delays its exit, probably on account of this action upon the duodenum. The relatively slight increase in the amount of material recovered from most cases of hyperacidity indicates that no very marked pyloric spasm is present in these patients.

### *Gastric Atony*

#### *Nature of Atony*

By gastric atony or lack of gastric tone is meant a condition in which the muscular wall of the stomach fails to contract with normal force upon its contents. The conception of atony is a definite one, but its clinical recognition and its effects upon gastric physiology have been subjects of much discussion. It has been claimed, for example, that in the absence of an organic pyloric obstruction a dilatation of the stomach or a delay in emptying its contents may reasonably be attributed to a weakness of the muscle walls. It now seems certain, however, that such changes are quite as often due to changes in the activity of the pyloric sphincter or to changes in the secretion of the gastric juice. The lax condition of the stomach wall in gastric atony has been said to favor the occurrence of splashing sounds when the abdominal walls are suddenly moved. Stillier and others have regarded such succussion sounds as important evidence of atony.

**X-ray Examination of Atonic Stomach.**—Since the advent of the x-ray, new data for the diagnosis of gastric atony have been obtained by observing the manner in which the stomach fills when the patient swallows a bismuth meal before the fluoroscopic screen. According to Groedel, the atonic stomach shows the following peculiarities when examined in this manner: (1) the first material swallowed drops promptly to the bottom of the stomach instead of being held for a short time in its upper portion; and (2) as food is taken it continues to collect at the bottom of the stomach, so that this organ, instead of having a roughly cylindrical form, becomes pear-shaped. Indeed, the stomach may even appear to have a constriction across its midportion which disappears on having the patient lie down (Fig. 58).

According to Holzknecht, even these x-ray signs of gastric atony



Fig. 58.—Diagrams Showing the Filling of the Normal, Orthotonic Stomach (Upper Line) and of the Atonic Stomach (Lower Line). Note that in the Latter the Material Tends to Sink to the Lower Part of the Stomach and Depresses Its Lower Border. (Redrawn from Hertz, Brit. Med. Jour.)

are not reliable, for they may be present when the abdominal wall is abnormally lax and they can be made to disappear when the wall is voluntarily contracted.

### **Effect on Gastric Position**

The relation of atony to the size and position of the stomach is also a complicated one. Since atony tends to be associated with a weak gastric muscle, it favors the occurrence of dilatation and particularly of a dilatation and sagging at the lower end of the stomach where the food collects. Yet neither dilatation nor a low position of the stomach is in itself characteristic of gastric atony. Some enlarged stomachs possess a normal or increased tone, and particularly is this the case in the earlier stages of pyloric obstruction when moderate dilatation may be associated with muscular hypertrophy. Nor is a low position of the stomach characteristic either of dilatation or atony, for in certain individuals the stomach is naturally low, and this gastropstosis may not cause any symptoms nor be associated with any signs of atony.

### **Effect on Gastric Motility**

The peristaltic movements of the atonic stomach may be normal or they may be diminished, thus giving a combination of atony and deficient peristalsis. In the milder types of atony the emptying of the stomach is normal. When, however, the atony is marked, there is a delay in the expulsion of food from the stomach. Rarely if ever, however, is this delay so marked that food remains in the stomach over night. The latter condition is almost invariably due to an organic obstruction at the pyloric orifice. It is obvious, however, that the milder grades of delayed emptying may be due either to organic or functional causes.

### **Etiology of Atony**

Atony may be caused by a primary weakness of the stomach wall or it may be a secondary effect of pyloric stenosis. Such stenosis causes at first an increased peristalsis with hypertrophy of the muscle wall of the stomach, but eventually it causes a weakness of the muscle with dilatation and atony.

A primary muscular weakness may be associated with other organic disease of the stomach, and chronic gastritis, for example, is sometimes accompanied by atony of the muscle. More often, however, the primary form of gastric atony appears as part of a general weakness, and especially in association with malnutrition, anemia, tuberculosis, fever, or general splanchnoptosis.

## ***Pyloric Obstruction***

### **Causes**

Pyloric obstructions may be divided into two general classes: those due to *anatomical* and those due to *functional* narrowing of the pylorus. To the former group belong the stenoses caused by carcinoma, by cicatricial ulcers and by perigastric adhesions that are secondary to gall-stones, ulcers, and appendicitis. The degree of constriction produced by such organic narrowings varies from those which hardly interfere with the passage of the gastric contents to those which cause an almost complete closure of the exit into the duodenum.

**Functional Stenosis.**—The second or functional type of stenosis is due to a spasm of the pylorus. This may be produced by reflexes that arise from gall-stones, from chronic appendicitis or from other abdominal disease. Organic disease at or near the pylorus is a frequent cause of spasm, and particularly is this true of pyloric and prepyloric ulcers. Pylorospasm may also be due to the action of a hyperacid gastric contents on a normal or hypersensitive mucous membrane in the stomach. Finally it may be due to certain drugs (morphine).

The spastic forms of pyloric obstruction do not usually cause a very serious delay in the emptying of the stomach, but they do cause some delay, and not infrequently they are responsible for severe cramplike pains in the epigastric region.

### **Effect on Motility**

In the earlier stages of a pyloric stenosis there may or may not be a definite delay in the emptying of the stomach. In consequence of the obstruction, the tone of the stomach and the peristaltic movements may be so increased that the stomach empties itself within the normal time limits despite the obstruction. As the obstruction progresses, however, it becomes more and more difficult for the stomach to empty itself with its usual speed. If it be examined one hour after a test breakfast it is found to contain more than the normal amount of material, and if it be examined seven hours after a full meal it may still show a residue from the meal taken, whereas a normal stomach should be approximately empty at this time. Similarly if a bismuth meal be taken, x-ray examinations show that the exit of bismuth from the stomach is delayed.

**Degree of Motor Insufficiency.**—It is customary to classify the degree of delay according to whether or not the stomach usually succeeds in emptying itself over night. If the gastric motility is distinctly diminished but the stomach discharges its contents during the night, it is called a motor insufficiency of the *first degree*. Such a condition may be due to atony, pylorospasm, or to a mild organic obstruction. If the stomach fails to



empty itself over night, the condition is called a motor insufficiency of the *second degree*. In such a case, the stomach is rarely if ever completely free of food residue, and the conditions are peculiarly favorable for the growth of microorganisms with decomposition of the gastric contents. This more serious type of motor insufficiency is rarely due to any cause other than a marked organic obstruction at the pylorus.

**Increased Peristalsis.**—We have seen that during the earlier stage of pyloric obstruction the delay in the emptying of the stomach is insignificant. At this stage, the tone of the gastric muscle is usually well-preserved and the peristaltic movements are increased. On inspecting the abdomen of such a patient the powerful contractions of the stomach can often be seen through the abdominal wall. After a variable period of relaxation there appears to be a general tonic spasm of the entire stomach, the so-called stomach stiffening, and this is usually succeeded by a succession of deep peristaltic waves that pass from left to right across the gastric shadow. Such an appearance occurs only in cases of organic obstruction at the pylorus. Fluoroscopic examination also shows well-marked peristaltic waves which may be two or three times as deep as normal. Antiperistaltic waves have been occasionally observed in such patients and, when present, they usually indicate an advanced organic obstruction.



Fig. 59. — Diagram Showing the Filling of a Dilated Atonic Stomach Caused by Pyloric Obstruction from Ulcer. (Redrawn from Hertz, Brit. Med. Jour.)

**Dilatation of Stomach.**—Sooner or later the stomach fails to empty its contents to such an extent that dilatation sets in. The stomach, dilated from pyloric obstruction, appears to be unusually broad on fluoroscopic examination (Fig. 59). The dilatation causes a loss of muscular tone and the retained liquids sink to the bottom of the stomach. When fresh bismuth-containing food is swallowed, it can be seen dropping like tar through the fluid already in the stomach. As a rule the peristaltic movements persist even when considerable dilatation is present. They may begin higher than usual and progress with deep furrows toward the pylorus. Sometimes, however, the peristaltic waves appear to be absent even when there is marked retention and a fair gastric tone (Barelay).

### **Acute Dilatation of the Stomach**

This rare and remarkable condition occurs most frequently after operations, especially laparotomies; less commonly during the course of infectious diseases, particularly pneumonia, as well as after injuries and in association with various wasting diseases and nervous lesions. It may even occur during perfect health. Clinically, it is characterized by the acute onset of vomiting, abdominal pain, distention and tenderness. There is great thirst and scanty urine, and in many instances the patient rapidly

passes into a condition of collapse which terminates fatally within a few days. The persistent and profuse vomiting is the most common and important symptom. The vomitus is usually thin and watery and is frequently bile stained, brownish or black. Only exceptionally is it feculent. Free hydrochloric acid may or may not be present in the vomitus.

At autopsy the most striking finding is an enormously dilated stomach which may occupy almost the entire abdomen. In a considerable proportion of the cases there is also a dilatation of a part or of the whole of the duodenum, and in some of the patients this dilatation stops abruptly at the point where the duodenum passes beneath the insertion of the mesentery, at which point there may be a definite obstruction of the duodenum by the tensely stretched mesentery. Below this obstruction the intestines are collapsed.

**Pathogenesis.**—Three chief explanations have been offered for the mechanism which leads to acute dilatation of the stomach. The first of these attributes the dilatation to a primary obstruction of the duodenum at the point where it passes beneath the insertion of the mesentery. At this point the duodenum passes between the spinal column and aorta behind, and the mesentery of the small intestines with the superior mesenteric artery in front. If the spinal column at this point is prominent and particularly if the mesentery with its contained artery is drawn taut, the mechanical conditions are favorable for such duodenal obstruction. Tension on the mesentery is increased if the small intestines are empty and are located in the pelvis, and if, at the same time, the mesentery is so short that the intestines in this position cannot be supported by the floor of the pelvis. If acute gastric dilatation were due solely to such an obstruction one would expect an early increase in the peristaltic movements of the stomach. Only in the late stages should peristalsis cease and marked dilatation occur. As a matter of fact only a very few of the reported cases of acute dilatation have shown increased gastric peristalsis at any time. In most patients visible peristalsis has been entirely absent throughout the disease. In such cases there must have been a marked loss of muscular activity from the time that the symptoms began.

**SECOND THEORY.**—The second explanation offered for acute gastric dilatation is, that it is due to an acute hypersecretion of gastric juice. Enormous quantities of liquid can usually be recovered from the stomach. It is improbable that all this fluid is due to gastric secretion, however, for the percentage of acid is usually low, and free hydrochloric acid is often absent. The presence of bile in the fluid suggests that fluid has regurgitated back from the duodenum.

**THIRD THEORY.**—The third explanation offered for acute dilatation is that it is due to an acute loss of tone in the gastric wall. The absence of visible peristaltic movements indicates that such a loss of tone is always present and their absence from the start in many cases suggests that this is

the primary cause of the dilatation. Experimentally, a diminution in the peristaltic movements of the stomach and intestines, and a delay in the emptying of the stomach may result from anesthesia, and from cooling or handling of the intestines. Resection of the vagus nerve also diminishes the movements of the stomach and may lead to gastric dilatation. Various acute toxic influences seem to have a similar effect.

**Lack of Gastric Tone.**—We see, therefore, that the lack of gastric tone is the most prominent feature of this type of dilatation. It is possible that it occurs secondarily to a duodenal obstruction and that it is caused by a reflex from the duodenum. It is also possible that it is primary and that the mechanical obstruction of the duodenum at the point where it passes beneath the mesenteric attachment results from a crowding of the intestines into the lower abdomen by the distended stomach. In any case, a vicious circle tends to become established; the dilatation of the stomach increases the duodenal obstruction, and the latter tends to increase the gastric dilatation. Favorable therapeutic results have sometimes been obtained when these mechanical factors were combated by repeatedly aspirating the contents of the stomach and by attempting to relieve the obstruction by having the patient lie on the abdomen or by assuming the knee-chest position.

## ***Vomiting***

### **Mechanism**

Vomiting is usually preceded by the sensations of nausea. The individual feels weak and prostrated, he becomes pale, a cold perspiration breaks out, and there is an increased flow of saliva and of the mucous secretions from the mouth and the bronchial mucous membranes. The pulse becomes weaker, and the respirations more rapid and irregular.

The gastric movements during vomiting have been carefully studied in intact animals by Cannon and others. Before emesis actually takes place, the pyloric region becomes tightly closed. In cats deep contractions proceed from the midportion of the stomach to the pyloric region and they completely close off the lumen of the stomach just before the pylorus is reached. In dogs, according to Hesse, the antral region of the stomach becomes tightly closed without the occurrence of marked peristaltic waves. At the same time, the tone of the remainder of the stomach lessens and the cardiac sphincter relaxes. During the deeper respirations that now occur, the gastric material, as shown in dogs by Hesse, enters the lower esophagus through the relaxed cardiac sphincter and this material may move up and down with each respiration.

Finally, by a contraction of the diaphragm and a simultaneous spasmodic contraction of the abdominal muscles, the intra-abdominal pressure is markedly raised and the contents of the stomach are thrown out through



the esophagus into the mouth. If the closure of the larynx and of the nasopharynx is imperfect, material may find an exit through the nose or it may enter the air passages and provoke a paroxysm of coughing. The stomach itself seems to play only a passive part in the actual ejection of the gastric contents. After a portion has been vomited the stomach contracts firmly on the contents that remain. Antiperistaltic movements are usually absent during vomiting. At the end of emesis, material may still remain in the stomach and the esophagus. The latter, however, is returned to the stomach by esophageal peristalsis. At the conclusion of the vomiting, a sense of relief is experienced, but the muscular weakness may continue for some little time.

### **Causes of Vomiting**

The act of vomiting is governed by a nervous center that lies in the medulla oblongata. During vomiting centrifugal nervous impulses pass from this center to the stomach by way of the vagus nerves, to the diaphragm by way of the phrenic nerves and to the voluntary muscles of the abdominal wall by way of the spinal cord and spinal nerves.

**Direct Excitation of Nervous Center.**—Vomiting may be excited by a direct excitation of this nervous center either by mechanical or by chemical stimuli. Increased intracranial pressure is an important cause of vomiting, acting through a mechanical stimulation of the center. Local disease of the medulla and pons are said to be particularly prone to cause vomiting. Various drugs act in whole or in part upon the vomiting center. Among these are apomorphin, the digitalis bodies, tartar emetic, etc. The vomiting of uremia and the pernicious vomiting of pregnancy are believed to be due in part to the action of poisonous substances upon the vomiting center. A certain type of periodic vomiting in childhood, that which is associated with an unusual formation of acetone bodies, also appears to be due to the action of toxic substances upon the center.

**Reflex Excitation.**—The center may also be acted upon by reflexes. Thus abnormal impulses from the internal ear may produce vomiting when there is disease in this region or when, as in seasickness, a series of nervous stimuli occur in the semilunar canals owing to the rapid changes in the position of the body. Reflex vomiting frequently takes its origin from the abdominal organs, as in gastritis, gastric stasis, inflammations of the appendix and peritoneum, during biliary and renal colic, etc. Irritation of the pharynx at about its juncture with the esophagus may also cause reflex vomiting.

**Changes in Higher Cerebral Centers.**—Finally, vomiting may be produced in susceptible individuals by changes in the higher cerebral centers. Thus some individuals become nauseated and may even vomit when unpleasant subjects are discussed. Unpleasant odors frequently have a

nauseating effect and may lead to vomiting. The vomiting of migraine also appears to arise from changes in the higher cerebral centers.

### **Continual Vomiting**

Vomiting that occurs occasionally is an unpleasant but not a very serious symptom. Continuous vomiting may be due to a persistence of the original cause; but, in addition, individuals of a nervous temperament tend to establish a vomiting habit owing to the development of an easy reflex path. Under such circumstances even slight external stimuli may start a paroxysm of vomiting.

Constant vomiting leads to malnutrition, partly through the actual loss of food material from the stomach, but mainly because the lack of appetite and the fear of vomiting curtail the intake of food. In some cases the vomiting is so constant that even liquids cannot be retained. When vomiting is severe and continuous, the vomitus eventually becomes bile stained owing to a regurgitation of the duodenal contents into the stomach. Finally, continued vomiting leads to constipation on account of the partial starvation.

### ***Gastric Motility after Gastro-enterostomy***

It has frequently been assumed that if an opening be made between the most dependent portion of the stomach and a loop of small intestines the gastric contents will drain out of the stomach through this new opening. Cannon has pointed out, however, that this simple conception of drainage of the stomach does not correspond with the actual conditions in the stomach and abdomen, at least when the pylorus remains patent. In the first place, the conditions in the abdominal cavity, so far as drainage of the stomach is concerned, should not be compared with a filled stomach, which is held in the air and from which fluid can escape through any opening in its dependent portion. The stomach is surrounded with intestines and other abdominal contents of about the specific gravity of water, and the conditions are more comparable with a stomach suspended in water than with one suspended in air. It is evident that, under these conditions, the contents will not drain from the most dependent portion but must be moved on by the contractions of the gastric muscle. The peristaltic waves which pass from the midportion of the stomach toward the pylorus tend, therefore, to move the gastric contents in the direction of the natural exit from the stomach rather than toward an artificial opening in its most dependent portion. Furthermore, digestion is most advanced in the distal portion of the stomach, and when solid food has been taken the gastric contents in this distal portion are more fluid and are, therefore, more readily carried forward.

**Intact Pyloric Opening.**—Observations both on animals and on men

have shown that, so long as the pyloric opening is intact, the products of gastric digestion are usually emptied through the pylorus as well as through the artificial opening in the lower part of the stomach. Kelling established a duodenal fistula in animals and observed that after gastro-enterostomy the material usually passed through the pylorus. Failures to close a duodenal fistula by simply performing a gastro-enterostomy have permitted Berg to make similar observations on man. X-ray examinations of animals after gastro-enterostomy by Cannon and Blake have also shown that if the pylorus be intact the food almost invariably escapes from the stomach through the normal exit, rather than through the new operative opening. Even when the pylorus has been artificially narrowed but not entirely occluded, food often continues to pass through the narrowed orifice.

**Obstructed Pylorus.**—The practical surgical importance of these experimental and clinical observations is at once apparent. Gastro-enterostomy cannot be relied upon as a drainage operation when the pylorus and the gastric musculature are normal. Only when there is a definite obstruction at the pylorus is there a reasonable prospect that the new opening will afford a physiological short circuit into the intestines. It is well known that the most brilliant therapeutical results of this operation have been obtained in just this class of patients. In conditions of marked atony, and particularly when there is a marked atonic dilatation, the mechanical conditions in the stomach may differ from the normal to such an extent that the new opening may at times functionate. At least gastro-enterostomy occasionally benefits such patients, although the benefit is neither so constant nor so striking as when the dilatation is due to a pyloric obstruction.

From the physiological standpoint, also, it is evident that when a gastro-enterostomy is performed it is advantageous to make the new opening as near the pylorus as possible, for in this region the gastric contents are more fluid, the peristaltic waves are more marked and the pressure is higher. A pyloroplasty is the ideal operation for a pyloric stenosis, although for practical purposes it may not be the operation chosen.

**Return of Intestinal Contents to Stomach.**—Not only may a gastro-enterostomy opening fail to act as a short circuit between the stomach and the intestines, but it may permit the return of intestinal contents into the stomach. The gastric contents which have passed the pylorus, the duodenum and proximal jejunum, may reënter the stomach when they reach the operative opening, or, again, material from the stomach may enter the proximal loop of intestines directly from the stomach and then be returned by the peristaltic movements of this portion of the intestines. The former condition is called a vicious circle. Apparently, it occurs not infrequently after gastro-enterostomy but it seems to be less serious than is usually supposed. At least in the experimental experience of Cannon and Blake, the serious symptoms following gastro-enterostomy were invariably due not to a vicious circle but to a kinking of the intestine below the anastomosis.



## Peptic Ulcer

Peptic ulcers occur only in those portions of the gastro-intestinal tract that are exposed to the action of the gastric juice. They occur most commonly in the stomach or duodenum but they may also occur in the jejunum near a gastro-enterostomy opening and in the lower end of the esophagus. In the stomach, peptic ulcers most frequently involve the posterior wall, the lesser curvature and the pyloric end of the stomach, though any portion of the stomach may be affected. In the duodenum they occur just distal to the pylorus and are very rare beyond the point where the alkaline bile and pancreatic juice enter.

Peptic ulcers may be acute, subacute or chronic. The most characteristic are the chronic ulcers. These usually show on examination a punched-out or funnel appearance, with the diameter of the deeper portion less than the diameter of the more superficial portion. Often the diminution in diameter is by a succession of terraces. Peptic ulcers may be irregular in shape or they may be round or oval. Frequently they are multiple. Microscopically there is, as a rule, little evidence of acute inflammation about the base, but the latter becomes markedly indurated in chronic ulcers and in healing much scar tissue may be formed which later contracts and leads to strictures and deformities.

### *Pathogenesis*

The distribution of peptic ulcers indicates that they are due to a digestion of the tissues by gastric juice. Before further discussion of their pathogenesis, therefore, it becomes necessary to inquire why the gastric juice normally fails to digest the wall of the stomach. Not only is such digestion very rare, but even when lesions of the mucous membrane have been produced by various means these usually heal with great rapidity, so that at the end of two or three weeks the normal conditions are reëstablished. Obviously some mechanism exists in the gastric mucous membrane which causes it to resist peptic digestion.

**Resistance of Living Tissue to Digestion.**—John Hunter believed that the resistance to digestion was a general property of all living tissue. Since his time this question has been frequently studied, and the results of these studies indicate that the degree of resistance to gastric digestion varies considerably in different tissues. For example, the leg of a living frog as well as the ear of a living rabbit may be digested by gastric juice. On the other hand, the living gastric wall even when denuded of its mucous membrane or when denuded of both mucous and muscular coats offers a considerable resistance to gastric digestion. The same is true of portions of the intestines as well as of the living spleen. In order that these struc-

tures should resist digestion, however, it is necessary that a good blood supply be maintained.

The mechanism of this resistance to digestion is not finally settled. So far as the gastric mucous membrane is concerned, all are agreed that a certain amount of protection is afforded by the presence of mucus on its surface, and it has been pointed out that in patients with gastric ulcers the amount of mucus recovered from the stomach may be less than normal. But it is also obvious that, while the presence of mucus may afford some protection, it cannot be the chief factor that confers immunity against peptic digestion upon other living tissues than the gastric mucous membrane.

**ACTION OF ANTIFERMENTS.**—Weinland showed that intestinal parasites resist digestion within the intestinal tract by virtue of the fact that they contain an anti ferment which neutralizes the ferments to which they are exposed. Similar anti peptic and antitryptic substances have been isolated from the mucous membrane of the stomach and upper intestines and from the mucus covering its surface, and it seems not improbable that the living tissue, and particularly these portions of the digestive tract, may owe a part of their immunity to the possession of these anti ferments. Katzenstein has, indeed, attempted to show that the development of peptic ulcers is due in part to a disturbance of the relation that should exist between the ferments and anti ferments of the stomach and duodenum.

**OXIDATION OF ACTIVE FERMENTS.**—More recently Bunge has observed that while pro ferments resist destruction by an electric current, active ferments are easily destroyed by this means, and he believes that the destruction is due to oxidation. On the basis of these observations, it has been suggested that the immunity of living tissue to digestion depends upon its ability to oxidize and thus destroy the active ferments. The inactive pro ferment in the gland resists such destruction, but once it has left the gland and has been converted into the active ferment it is readily oxidized when it comes in contact with living tissue. In this way living tissue may protect itself against digestion.

### *Relation to Gastric Secretion*

We have seen that the gastric juice plays an essential part in the production of peptic ulcers, and the question therefore arises, whether an increased acidity of the gastric juice is a common or an essential factor in the pathogenesis of ulcer. Statistics have shown that fifty per cent or more of patients suffering from ulcer have an increased amount of hydrochloric acid in the gastric contents, and this has led some to attribute the ulcer formation to an abnormal activity of the gastric juice. Yet hyperacidity may occur without ulcer, and it is by no means constant in those with ulcer. Not infrequently there is a normal acidity, while

in some patients there is a subacidity. Schryver and Singer believe that in duodenal and pyloric ulcers the hydrochloric acid and the peptic activity of the gastric juice are increased, whereas in ulcer of the body of the stomach the hydrochloric acid varies and the peptic activity of the juice is usually diminished.

**Hyperacidity.**—Even when unusual quantities of acid are found in the gastric contents of ulcer patients, it is by no means certain that this hyperacidity precedes the formation of the ulcer. Hyperacidity may be caused by reflexes from various organic diseases within the abdominal cavity, and among these by reflexes from gastric or duodenal ulcerations. Schryver and Singer suggest, also, that the excess of gastric secretion in duodenal and pyloric ulcers may be due to an excessive formation in these regions of those chemical substances which normally excite gastric secretion (page 139). It is quite possible, therefore, that the hyperacidity associated with ulcer is a secondary manifestation rather than a cause of the ulcer.

**Abnormal Susceptibility of Mucous Membrane.**—While the digestive activities of the gastric juice play an essential part in the pathogenesis of ulcer and while ulcers probably never develop if the gastric secretion is absent, nevertheless, there is no reason to believe that hyperacidity is an essential factor in ulcer formation. If other conditions are favorable the normal gastric juice can digest the wall of the stomach, and although an excess of acid or of pepsin may favor this digestion it is not necessary for ulcer formation. The essential change that leads to ulcer must lie in some condition which renders the mucous membrane abnormally susceptible to the action of the gastric juice. Some of these factors will now be considered.

### ***Vascular Disease***

Of the factors which create a loss of resistance to digestion, one of the most important is a disturbance in the blood supply to the stomach wall. Since the time of Virchow, attention has been directed repeatedly toward this possibility. Attempts to produce ulcers *experimentally* by ligating the arteries entering the stomach wall have usually met with failure, probably because there are numerous arterial anastomoses within the various layers of the stomach wall. More success, however, has attended efforts to block the finer gastric vessels by injecting small particles in suspension, or by injecting coagulating substances into the gastric arteries. In particular Payr has, in recent years, injected dilute formalin and other irritants into the gastric vessels and in this manner has produced experimental ulcers in the stomachs of rabbits, guinea-pigs and dogs, which resembled those occurring naturally in man.

**Vascular Changes in Man.**—The localized character and the funnel shape of gastric ulcers in man suggest a vascular origin, and Hauser,



Ophüls and others have called attention to disease of the arteries that lead to the ulcer. Frequently this disease has involved the artery at some distance from the ulcer itself, so that it seems improbable that the arterial disease was merely incidental to the ulcer. It may also be pointed out in this connection, that the prognosis of gastric ulcer varies considerably with the age of the patient. Acute ulcers are relatively common in young individuals, whereas chronic ulcers occur most commonly in individuals who are over thirty-five years of age. Vascular disease in the young is usually due to infection or embolism, conditions which might be expected to cause an acute gastric defect with healing. Vascular disease in later life, however, is usually due to arteriosclerosis with a tendency to progressive interference with the nutrition of the stomach wall.

### *Nervous Theories*

Although various authors had described acute ulceration of the stomach after experimental injuries to the nervous centers or to the gastric nerves, the relation between nervous lesions and chronic indurated ulcers was first brought into prominence by the experiments of Van Yzeren. This investigator demonstrated, that after bilateral resection of the vagi below the diaphragm rabbits frequently develop chronic ulcers in the pyloric region of the stomach, which closely resemble the chronic ulcers that occur in man. These results were confirmed in this country by Ophüls, who found typical chronic ulcers in six of thirty rabbits that had been subjected to a double vagotomy below the diaphragm. The mechanism which leads to the production of chronic ulcers in such cases is by no means certain. Possibly they may be due to an anemia of the mucous membrane that results from spasm of the smooth muscle of the stomach wall, or from a spastic contraction of the arterioles in the mucosa; possibly they may be due to some alteration in gastric motility which permits unusual traumata of the mucous membrane from the contained food.

**Spasms of Stomach and Ulceration.**—In other animals than the rabbit the experimental production of chronic ulcers by nerve lesions has not been very successful. To what extent these observations on the rabbit can be transferred to man is, therefore, uncertain. It is known that gastric ulcer is not infrequently associated with a spasm of neighboring parts of the stomach; and some authors, among them Bergmann and Barclay, conceive that the spasm may be a primary cause of the ulceration. Barclay and others have observed marked spasms of the stomach where no anatomical cause for the same was found in the stomach at operation. Such spasm might arise reflexly from appendicitis or other abdominal disease, or they might possibly be due to central nervous changes. It is conceivable that such spasms may predispose to ulcer by changing the blood supply to the mucous membrane.

### *Infectious and Toxic Causes*

Rosenow has shown that the intravenous injection of streptococci of proper virulence may be followed by ulcers of the stomach and duodenum, owing to a local infection of the lining membrane of the stomach and a secondary digestion of the infected area. The ulcers thus produced were usually single and deep, and showed a noteworthy tendency to hemorrhage and perforation. Clinically it has been noted from time to time, that ulcer of the stomach may occur in connection with various infectious processes, such as diseased tonsils, appendicitis and gall-stones. Acute gastric ulcers occasionally occur after abdominal operations. Such ulcers have been attributed not only to a local gastric inflammation but to vascular changes, such as emboli, local endarteritis and thrombosis. While such infections may certainly produce acute ulcers in man their relation to the chronic type of gastric ulcer is less certain.

Peptic ulcers have also been produced by various toxic substances. Thus they have been observed after the injection of diphtheria toxin, of "gastrotoxic sera," after extensive superficial burns and after injuring the gastric mucous membrane by a variety of chemical substances. To what extent such toxic substances are operative in the production of chronic ulcers in man we do not know.

### *Conclusion*

The immediate cause of peptic ulcers is a digestion of the mucous membrane or the deeper layers of the gastro-intestinal wall by the gastric juice. While it is probable that a hyperacid juice favors such digestion it is not necessary for ulcer production, and the hyperacidity frequently found on gastric analysis may be a result rather than a cause of the ulcer. The essential factor in the production of ulcer is a loss of the normal protection which the tissue possesses against digestion by the gastric juice. This special vulnerability of the wall may be produced by a variety of conditions, chief among which are local infections and local disturbances of the blood supply. Vascular disturbances due to arteriosclerosis seem to be particularly important in producing the chronic type of gastric ulcer that is so common in middle-aged individuals.

### *Motor Activities of the Stomach in Ulcer*

**Organic Changes.**—Peptic ulcers may influence the motor activities of the stomach either from organic changes in its walls or through reflex influences. Organic changes usually disturb the movements of the stomach by causing a more or less marked obstruction. Particularly in the region of the pylorus are cicatricial contractions of the tissues about the ulcer liable to cause obstruction. The effects produced by an organic

pyloric obstruction upon the movements of the stomach have already been described. At first the stomach maintains its tone and size, and the increased peristaltic movements succeed in emptying it at least once in twenty-four hours. The peristaltic movements become more marked, the forceful contractions may be seen and felt through the abdominal wall, and the stomach gradually dilates, eventually failing to empty itself overnight. Only very rarely, as a result of extreme dilatation, do the peristaltic movements become less than normal.

Failure to empty itself during the night affords opportunity for the continuous growth of microorganisms in its contents. Obstructions by ulcer are commonly accompanied by hyperacid gastric secretion and only those organisms are found in the gastric contents which are capable of growing in media of decided acidity. Sarcines are the chief organisms found. Their presence in the gastric contents usually indicates a benign obstruction at the pylorus, either from ulcer or from peritoneal adhesions.

Cicatricial contractions produced by ulcer may be located at the pylorus, in the duodenum or in the body of the stomach. The latter give rise to the so-called organic hour-glass form of stomach.

**Functional Changes.**—The ulcer tends to increase the muscular activities of the stomach. Peristaltic movements are more active and spastic contractions may occur at the pylorus or near the ulcer. The emptying of the stomach is commonly delayed, and it may be difficult to determine just how much of the observed delay is due to organic obstruction or how much to an associated pylorospasm.

**Functional Hour-glass Stomach.**—Peptic ulcers in the body of the stomach tend to cause a spasm of the corresponding ring of muscle. This leads to a functional hour-glass stomach. Differentiation of such a stomach from the organic type of constriction is not always simple. As a rule, the functional constriction has a smoother and simpler outline. Such localized spasms of the stomach do not necessarily indicate that an organic lesion exists opposite the point of spasm. At times the spasm is due to organic disease elsewhere in the abdomen, particularly to duodenal ulcer, chronic cholecystitis and chronic appendicitis. Or again it appears to result from nervous impulses of central origin, as in hysteria. According to Carman, all these functional hour-glass constrictions of extrinsic origin, with the exception of those due to duodenal ulcer, are characterized by their inconstancy. They may be made to disappear by massage or by full doses of belladonna. Furthermore they seldom produce serious changes in gastric motility, although they may be the cause of considerable pain.

**DUODENAL ULCERS.**—Duodenal ulcers, according to Carman, cause an increase in the gastric peristalsis even when there is no organic obstruction. The tone of the stomach is normal or increased. The food at first passes out of the stomach with unusual speed, but this early hypermotility may be followed by some delay in the final evacuation of the gastric contents.



## Carcinoma of the Stomach

### *Effect on Gastric Form and Motility*

Unlike gastric ulcers, carcinomata show no noteworthy tendency to cause spastic contractions of the pylorus or of other parts of the stomach. The effects which they produce on the form and the motor activities of the stomach are mostly of a mechanical character. Carcinomata at or near the pyloric orifice may, in their earlier stages, interfere with the normal closure of the pylorus and thus allow an early escape of material from the stomach. In their later stages, there is commonly a more or less pronounced obstruction with the usual motor changes that follow this condition.

Carcinomata of the body of the stomach rarely produce serious alterations in the gastric motility. Even after the tumor is easily palpable and is plainly visible on x-ray examination by the irregularity which it produces in the contour of the stomach, the gastric contents may pass through the stomach at a fairly normal rate. There may be an insignificant stasis in or about the tumor, but the contents as a whole pass through the stomach with normal or even with increased speed owing to the associated achlorhydria. Carcinomatous induration of the stomach wall prevents the region affected from taking part in the normal peristaltic movements. Occasionally a carcinoma produces a marked narrowing of the body of the stomach and thus causes an hour-glass constriction.

### *Effect on Gastric Digestion*

In approximately eighty per cent of all patients suffering from gastric carcinomata the stomach contents show no free hydrochloric acid. Where acid is found the cancer is often assumed to have developed on the site of an old ulcer, although Schryver and Singer believe that free acid occurs particularly when the cancer is located in the region of the pylorus. Not only is free hydrochloric acid often absent in the gastric contents obtained from patients with carcinoma of the stomach, but there may be in addition an "acid deficit," so that it is necessary to add an unusual quantity of acid to the contents in order to obtain a reaction for free acid. Various factors contribute to the production of the achlorhydria and of the acid deficit in these patients.

**Lack of Secretion.**—In the first place there is often a deficient or absent secretion of hydrochloric acid by the gastric mucous membrane. This lack of secretion is common in the later stages of carcinoma of the stomach, and it is said to be more common in cancer of the body than in cancer of the pylorus. It is often accompanied by the anatomical changes charac-

teristic of a chronic gastritis, such as Faber has described in other forms of achlorhydria.

It is evident, however, that an absence of gastric secretion is not the sole cause of the achlorhydria in cases of gastric carcinoma. In some cases considerable hydrochloric acid must be added before the contents give a reaction for free acid. Furthermore, the amount of combined chlorids and the amount of total acidity may indicate that considerable hydrochloric acid has been secreted by the stomach even when none is present as free acid. Evidently the gastric contents in such cases contain an unusual amount of substances which neutralize free acid. These substances are of a nitrogenous character and they may be derived from the tumor secretions, from the proteins of the food or from cleavage products of these proteins in the stomach.

**Excessive Cleavage of Proteins.**—It has been pointed out by Emerson and others that proteins may undergo an unusually complete cleavage in the stomachs of patients suffering from gastric carcinomata. The normal gastric juice splits proteins to proteoses and peptones but is unable to carry the disintegration to the final stage of amino acids. On the other hand, carcinomatous tissue, in common with extracts from various organs of the body, contains ferments which decompose peptones and polypeptids into amino acids. Within recent years many efforts have been made to utilize this fact in the diagnosis of gastric carcinoma. From the practical standpoint various difficulties are encountered in applying this test, such as the necessity for excluding a possible action of ferments swallowed in the saliva or of ferments that have been regurgitated from the duodenum. Despite these practical difficulties, however, such studies have strengthened the belief that in carcinoma of the stomach ferments are frequently present in the gastric contents which are able to disintegrate peptones and polypeptids. Cleavages of this type increase the acid binding properties of a given amount of protein, for with each cleavage more amino groups become available for acid combinations. The unusual binding properties of the gastric contents in certain cases of carcinoma of the stomach, therefore, depend in part upon the fact that there has been an excessive cleavage of proteins taken into the stomach.

**Lactic Acid.**—Lactic acid fermentation of the gastric contents is common in patients suffering from carcinoma of the stomach. It is most marked when a carcinoma at the pylorus produces a motor insufficiency of the second degree. Under such circumstances the stomach fails to empty itself over night and fermentative microorganisms are given an opportunity to grow continuously in the gastric contents. Long non-motile bacilli (Oppler-Boas bacilli) may be found in great number in the stagnating gastric contents. These bacteria produce lactic acid when grown outside of the body, and they are doubtlessly responsible for the lactic acid that is found in cases of obstructive carcinomata. Their con-

tinuous propagation is permitted by the fact that the stomach does not empty itself at least once in the twenty-four hours. A second factor requisite for their development is a lack of free hydrochloric acid. Stasis in the presence of free hydrochloric acid does not permit the growth of these bacilli. It is evident, therefore, that one would expect to find lactic acid fermentation and the Oppler-Boas bacilli in any condition in which a serious organic obstruction at the pylorus is associated with achlorhydria. This combination is, however, very rare except in the case of obstructing carcinomata. For this reason, the presence of lactic acid and Oppler-Boas bacilli are of considerable value in the diagnosis of carcinoma. They may also be present in carcinomatous stomachs which show no marked obstruction. In such cases it is not improbable that the bacilli are harbored in the crevasses of the tumor although it is also possible that lactic acid may be produced by some specific ferment of the tumor.

## Gastric Sensations

### *Appetite, Hunger and Repletion*

In a normal individual the only sensations ordinarily referable to the stomach are the sensations of hunger, of appetite, and of repletion during the course of a meal. These sensations normally guide the individual in the selection of the kind and quantity of food taken, and they are so delicately adjusted to the needs of the body that the body weight ordinarily varies but little under varying conditions of nutritive demands and nutritive supply. The regular intake of even a slight excess of nourishment, over and above the actual needs of the body, will in time produce a marked increase of weight. This rarely occurs in normal individuals, however, for the reason that a sudden gain in weight is normally succeeded by a diminished desire for food. Conversely a sudden loss in weight is normally succeeded by an increased desire for food. It seems probable, therefore, that the fundamental control of these sensations lies in the state of body nutrition.

Possibly the sense of repletion that develops during the course of a meal is due in part to an increase in the intra-abdominal or the intragastric pressure. Neisser and Brüning state that they have observed rapid emaciation follow tight lacing of the abdomen and rapid recovery follow a correction of this habit. The gains in weight that frequently succeed child bearing are possibly due to the relaxed condition of the abdominal muscles.

Loss of appetite and early repletion during a meal are common symptoms in certain nervous individuals. Less common is an excessive appetite or an absence of the sense of repletion. The cause of these deviations from the normal is not known.

**Appetite and Hunger Different Sensations.**—The sensations of appe-



tite and of hunger are so intimately associated with each other, that some observers have held that they are but quantitative differences of a single sensation, appetite being a mild form of hunger. It now seems certain, however, that the two sensations are essentially different. Hunger is a dull, gnawing or aching sensation that is intermittent and is referred to the epigastrium or lower sternum. It is often associated with lassitude, drowsiness, faintness, headache and inability to work. Appetite, on the other hand, is more intimately connected with the sense of pleasure in eating. It may be dissociated from hunger, as where one eats a delectable dessert with appetite, though not because one is still hungry, or where on account of great hunger one eats a food that it naturally distasteful or even nauseating.

**Hunger Contractions.**—The observations of Cannon, Carlson and their collaborators have demonstrated that intermittent hunger sensations are associated with intermittent contractions of the empty stomach. These contractions, which involve the whole organ, may begin toward the end of gastric digestion before the stomach has entirely emptied itself. They occur in groups lasting from thirty or forty-five minutes and separated by intervals of quiescence lasting from one-half to two and a half hours. The individual hunger contractions in the groups have a duration of twenty to thirty seconds. They follow each other at varying intervals, which in some cases are so brief that a tetanic contraction of the stomach results. Hunger contractions are marked in the new-born infant. In young infants they appear two to four hours after taking food.

Hunger contractions may be inhibited by a variety of conditions, such as chewing, stimulation of the nerves of taste, swallowing movements, the entrance of liquids into the stomach, violent exercise, smoking or tightening the belt.

**In General Diseases.**—*Infectious diseases* lessen the hunger contractions, a fact which accounts in part for the lessened desire for food in these patients. On the other hand, when a dog has been rendered *diabetic* by the removal of the pancreas, the hunger contractions are usually pronounced, despite the general prostration and muscular asthenia which accompany the advanced malnutrition of these animals.

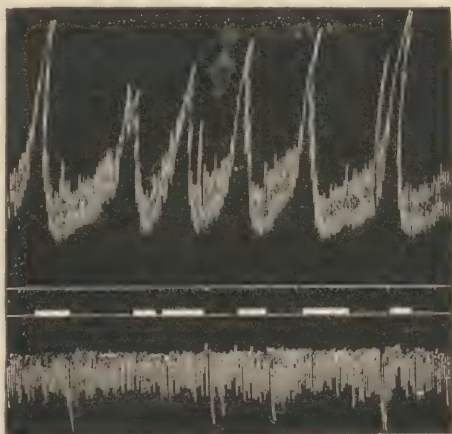


Fig. 60.—Record of Hunger Contractions of the Human Stomach. The Rises on the Upper Tracing Indicate the Contractions. The Signal Marks Below Record the Sensations of the Individual. (From W. B. Cannon, "Bodily Changes in Pain, Hunger, Fear and Rage.")

**Hunger Pains.**—Patients suffering from duodenal ulcer not infrequently experience a pathological type of hunger sensation. In addition to the epigastric gnawing with weakness and inability to work, these patients experience acute distress or actual pain some time after meals and this is relieved by the taking of food. Hunger pains may be associated with gastric hyperacidity, gastric ulcer, chronic appendicitis and chronic cholecystitis. These pains are frequently attributed to gastric hyperacidity but they may also occur in patients with normal or subacidity. Even in a given individual they do not necessarily vary with the amount of acid (Hardt).

In some patients, graphic records have shown a coincidence between the so-called hunger pains of duodenal ulcer and the contractions of the empty or partially filled stomach, and between the relief afforded by alkalies or food and cessation of contractions. Such coincidental contractions may or may not appear greater than normal. Increased sensitiveness of a diseased stomach may play a part in the production of ulcer pains. In other patients, no relation has been demonstrated between the ulcer pains and the recorded hunger contractions (Homans).

### ***Gastric Pain***

The mucous membrane of the stomach is insensitive to tactile stimuli, even though considerable mechanical injury be produced by cutting, pinching or pricking. It is relatively insensitive to thermic and to chemical stimuli. The introduction of 0.5 per cent hydrochloric acid into a normal stomach, or into a stomach that is the seat of an ulcer, causes no pain. Hertz also found that when a strong alcoholic solution enters the stomach it causes merely a feeling of warmth, whereas when it is allowed to act upon the lower end of the esophagus it produces burning sensations. It is evident, therefore, that the pains encountered frequently in gastric ulcer, and less frequently in conditions of simple hyperchlorhydria, must be due to some cause other than the action of a relatively high concentration of acid on the normal or eroded mucous membrane.

**Increased Tension of Muscle Wall.**—Provided there is no disease of the peritoneum, gastric pains appear to be caused mainly or solely by the muscular contractions of the walls of the stomach or by their mechanical distention. In other words, gastric pain is caused by an increased tension of the muscle wall. Thus Hertz produced pain by a rapid distention of the stomach. In gastric dilatation secondary to pyloric obstruction the pains present when the stomach is distended are often promptly relieved when the gastric contents are evacuated by vomiting or by a stomach tube. During the spasmodic "stomach stiffening" observed in such patients some pain may be felt. Finally, during fluoroscopic examinations various observers have noted that pain may be experienced when spasmodic contractions occur either near the pylorus or in the body of the stomach, even though the cause of the spasm is located at some distance.

Thus a peristaltic wave may pass over an ulcer in the body of the stomach without causing pain, whereas on reaching the pyloric region it may cause a pylorospasm and with this considerable pain. The most important cause of gastric pain appears to be an increased tension of some portion of the muscle in the stomach wall. Muscular spasms may be caused by reflexes from disease elsewhere in the abdomen, as in chronic appendicitis or cholecystitis; and gastric pains may disappear when these diseases are cured. The relief of the pains in peptic ulcer by the administration of alkalies is presumably due to some change in gastric motility.

**Involvement of Peritoneum.**—A second cause for gastric pain is an involvement of the peritoneum. The layer of peritoneum which covers the stomach, like that which covers the intestines, appears to be insensitive to tactile stimuli, whereas the parietal peritoneum is very sensitive. Peritoneal inflammation or peritoneal adhesions probably produce pain through an involvement of the parietal layer. Perigastric adhesions, for example, may produce pain by traction on the parietal peritoneum. This traction may occur immediately after the ingestion of food and be related to the quantity rather than to the quality of the food taken; or again the pains due to the adhesions may be associated with the various motor activities of the stomach. It is possible, furthermore, that the pain experienced during gastric distention or during spasm of the stomach wall may be due to traction on a normal parietal peritoneum by the mesenteric attachments of the stomach.

**Spinal and Other Causes.**—The pains that originate in the stomach,

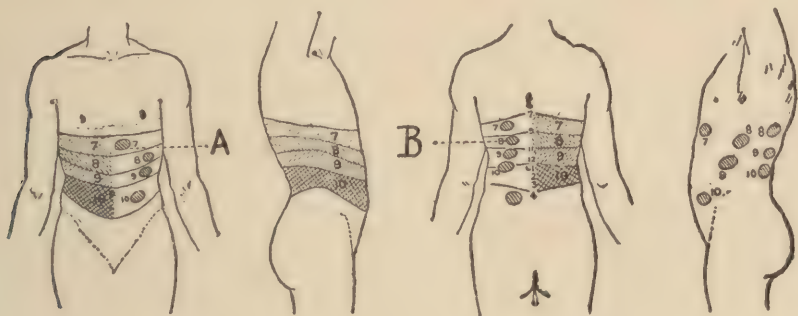


Fig. 61.—Areas of Referred Pain as Given by Head. A Represents One of the Commonest Sites in Front, B One of the Commonest Sites Behind.

like the pains that originate in other viscera, may be referred to the exterior of the body, the peripheral distribution corresponding to the spinal segments that supply sympathetic nerves to the diseased organ. The spinal segments usually affected in gastric disease are the seventh, eighth, ninth and tenth dorsal segments which supply the skin from about the ensiform to the umbilicus. It is obvious that pain in this region may also result from disease of the spinal cord or from pressure on or



disease of the corresponding root segments as a result of thoracic aneurism, spinal tumor or spinal inflammation.

## The Intestines

### *Functions of the Small Intestines*

When the gastric contents pass into the duodenum a flow of pancreatic juice and of bile is excited. The outpouring of these digestive juices depends upon some action of the hydrochloric acid and of the fat in the chyme upon the duodenal mucosa. Bayliss and Starling showed that if the mucous membranes of the upper intestines be treated with dilute acid or with soaps, an extract can be prepared which will excite a copious flow of pancreatic juice when it is injected into the circulation. The chemical substance that produces this flow is called *secretin*, and it is probably the chief normal excitant of pancreatic activity. The discharge of bile, which follows the entrance of chyme into the duodenum, is due in part to a contraction of the gall-bladder. In part it is due to an increased secretion of bile by the liver, and the latter, like the secretion of pancreatic juice, depends upon the action of secretin formed in the duodenum from the action of chyme upon the mucous membrane.

**Control of the Discharge of Chyme.**—The entrance of pancreatic juice and of bile into the duodenum influences the rate at which the gastric contents are discharged. We have seen that, when the acid contents of the stomach pass the pylorus and come in contact with the duodenal mucous membrane, they excite a reflex which closes the pyloric sphincter. The alkaline bile and pancreatic juice, on the other hand, neutralize the duodenal acidity and so allow a further discharge of material from the stomach. Through this constantly changing reaction of the duodenal contents there results an intermittent discharge of chyme from the stomach.

**Digestion in the Small Intestines.**—The main digestion of food takes place in the small intestines. The pancreatic juice furnishes powerful ferments which digest starch (amylase), fats (lipase) and proteins (trypsin). Trypsin is present in the pancreatic juice in an inactive form (trypsinogen). Upon entering the duodenum this zymogen is converted into active trypsin through the action of a substance in the succus entericus to which the name enterokinase has been given. Bile renders important assistance in the digestion of fats. It aids in their emulsification and in the solution of their digestive products. At the same time it markedly accelerates the rate at which the pancreatic lipase breaks up fats into fatty acids and glycerin.

**Succus entericus.**—The secretion of the mucous membrane of the intestines, the so-called succus entericus, also possesses important digestive

functions. In addition to enterokinase, it contains a number of ferments which attack starches, sugars, fats and the products of proteolytic cleavage. The latter are of particular importance. We have seen that in gastric digestion the proteins are not split beyond the peptone stage. Pancreatic trypsin while less active than pepsin with regard to a few proteins, and particularly the proteins of connective tissues, is in general a more powerful proteolytic enzyme, and it is also able to carry the digestion of proteins to a more advanced stage than can pepsin. Yet the final conversion of the simpler peptones and polypeptids into amino acids is affected mainly by a ferment of the succus entericus known as erepsin. It is this ferment which converts the products of proteolysis into the final products that are absorbed by the intestinal mucous membrane.

**Absorption in Small Intestines.**—Not only are the small intestines the principal site of digestion but they are also the principal site of absorption. During the passage of material through the small intestine most of the final products of protein, fat and starch digestion, are absorbed. The important digestive rôle of the small intestines is the more remarkable when one considers that the passage through this portion of the alimentary tract takes place normally in from three to six hours.

### *Functions of the Large Intestines*

The material which passes through the ileocecal valve is a thin liquid that has been deprived of most of its nutrient qualities during its stay in the small intestines. Progress through the large intestines is much slower than through the small and during this time water is absorbed from the fecal material, so that it eventually becomes converted into the solid or semisolid feces.

**Bacteria in Large Intestines.**—In the large intestines there is an enormous increase in the number of bacteria. We have seen that the gastric contents of normal individuals are relatively sterile owing in part to the antiseptic action of free hydrochloric acid, and in part to the regular and complete evacuation of the stomach. The duodenum, jejunum and upper ileum are also relatively free of bacteria. As one approaches the ileocecal valve, however, the number of bacteria in the intestinal contents rapidly increases, and in the large intestines bacteria may make up as much as fifty per cent of the total weight of the dry fecal material. It is fortunate that bacteria are few in the small intestines where food materials are most plentiful. In the large intestines where great numbers of bacteria thrive, digestion and absorption have already removed most of the nutritive material from the intestinal contents.

**BACTERIAL AID IN DIGESTION.**—The bacterial activities in the large intestines may play a part in digesting certain materials which are resistant to the action of the digestive juices poured into the upper small intestines. This is particularly true of cellulose which does not appear to

be attacked by any of the digestive ferments. Herbivora which do not chew their cud (horses, rabbits) decompose no small part of the cellulose taken with the food in the large intestines, and the same appears to be true, though to a less marked degree, in man. To what extent the soluble products of such bacterial activity in the large intestines are available for nutritive purposes is uncertain, though it seems probable that some, at least, are utilized by the organism.

### ***The Exclusion of Pancreatic Juice from the Intestines***

Exclusion of the pancreatic juice from the intestines may be due either to an obstruction of the ducts of Wirsung and of Santorini, or to a destruction of the secreting cells of the pancreas.

**Effect on Starches.**—The effects which follow the exclusion of pancreatic juice from the intestines depend upon the degree to which other digestive juices may carry on digestion. Here as elsewhere in the body there are numerous safety factors, and the loss of a single physiological element may be compensated, to a greater or less extent, by the activity of other elements. This fact is particularly evident with respect to the digestion and absorption of starches. Although the pancreatic juice contains a powerful amylase, the exclusion of this juice from the intestines usually interferes but little with the digestion and absorption of starches. Even when the pancreas is totally extirpated from dogs more than half of the starch in the food is usually absorbed, a fact which is all the more remarkable when we recall that in normal dogs diastatic ferments have not been demonstrated in the saliva, in the bile or in the succus entericus in quantities which are usually regarded as of practical importance.

**Effect of Pancreatic Excision on Proteins and Fats.**—On the other hand, the presence of pancreatic juice is relatively important for the proper digestion and absorption of proteins and of fats. Abelman and others have shown that when the pancreas is excised a very large part of the fat taken in the food leaves the body in the feces. Instead of the normal loss of about five per cent through the feces, the losses of fat by depancreatized animals may amount to 80 per cent or more. Only when fats are given in natural emulsions, such as that of milk, is there a relatively good absorption, fifty per cent or more being absorbed in some cases. Unusual quantities of nitrogenous material are also lost in the feces after complete extirpation of the pancreas. Fifty per cent or over may escape absorption in place of the small amount of nitrogenous material which is normally excreted through this channel.

**Exclusion of Pancreatic Juice in Dogs.**—When, in place of excising the pancreas, an attempt is made to exclude pancreatic juice from the intestines of dogs, conflicting results have been obtained. While some investigators, notably Lombroso, found that the digestion and absorption



of fats and proteins was but little affected when the pancreatic ducts were tied or the pancreatic secretions were diverted from the intestines, others found very marked losses of fats and proteins under these conditions. The recent determinations of Pratt, Lamson and Marks, for example, are shown in the following table:

Experiments	Absorption in per cent. of		Remarks
	N	Fat	
Dog 1: Experiment 1 .....	..	87.9	At autopsy a sinus was found which carried pancreatic juice into duodenum
Dog 2: Experiment 1 .....	22.2	11.3	Ducts occluded
Dog 3: Experiment 1 .....	88.5	92.2	Before operation
Experiment 2 .....	23.7	10.0	Ducts occluded
Dog 4: Experiment 1 .....	92.4	91.4	Before operation
Experiment 2 .....	31.7	44.6	Ducts occluded
Experiment 3 .....	47.8	63.4	Ducts occluded
Experiment 4 .....	31.4	76.6	Ducts occluded
Dog 5: Experiment 1 .....	32.1	31.0	Ducts occluded
Experiment 2 .....	61.7	4.8	Ducts occluded
Experiment 3 .....	42.4	20.1	Ducts occluded

The cause of the divergent results of different investigators who have attempted to exclude the pancreatic juice from the intestines of dogs is not clear. Pratt and his associates carefully interrupted all the ducts and maintained this interruption by placing a layer of living mesentery between the head of the pancreas and the duodenum. They are inclined to attribute the less striking results obtained by others to imperfect exclusion of the pancreatic secretion from the intestines. The view that the presence of pancreatic tissue in the body aids intestinal digestion even though no pancreatic juice enters the digestive tract has been definitely disproved by McClure, Vincent and Pratt. These investigators found that dogs with a subcutaneous transplant, secreting and discharging pancreatic juice externally, absorbed no more fat than dogs in which the pancreatic remnant was undergoing rapid atrophy and sclerosis.

**Effects of Pancreatic Disease.**—It is evident from these experiments, however, that marked losses of food material only occur when the exclusion of pancreatic juice from the intestines is complete or nearly complete. It is, therefore, not surprising that only a few patients with manifest pancreatic disease show large quantities of undigested food in the feces. Occlusion of the duct of Wirsung alone may be without effect, for in three-fourths or more of all individuals pancreatic juice still

reaches the intestines through the accessory pancreatic duct of Santorini. The patients in whom marked losses of fat and of nitrogenous material have been observed are usually those in whom there has been a widespread destruction of the pancreas from chronic inflammations, especially after calculus occlusion of the ducts, from cysts, or from new growths. Such patients may show marked losses of proteins and fats in the feces. The stools are bulky, soft and often fatty. Microscopically large quantities of undigested muscle fibers with well preserved striae may be found in the stools, and as much as thirty to seventy per cent of the nitrogenous material taken in the food may reappear in the feces. Unusual quantities of fat may also be found in the stools. The feces appear glistening or oily, owing to the presence of neutral fats, soaps and fatty acids, and oil droplets as well as fatty acid crystals may be found microscopically in great numbers. Analyses show that a large proportion, from forty to sixty per cent, of the fat taken in the diet may reappear in the stools. The amount is influenced by other factors, and in particular by the secretion of bile, as well as by the motor, secretory and absorptive functions of the small intestines.

**THE CLEAVAGE OF FATS.**—Since pancreatic lipase splits neutral fats into glycerin and the fatty acids, one might anticipate that as a result of exclusion of the pancreatic juice from the intestines, the stools would contain a relatively large proportion of undecomposed fats and a relatively small proportion of the products of decomposition, i. e., fatty acids and soaps. In a few cases such a change has been observed, but as a rule, the relative proportion of fats, soaps and fatty acids in the stools has not been markedly influenced by the exclusion of the pancreatic juice from the intestines. It would seem that the cleavage of fats may be fairly good in the intestinal tract even when the pancreatic juice is excluded. Apparently, however, the cleavage of fats is relatively slow so that it is not completed during the short time that they remain in the small intestines. Since fat absorption normally takes place in this part of the bowel the slow cleavage interferes with absorption. If the cleavage occurs after the intestinal contents have passed the ileocecal valve it may already be too late for proper absorption.

**Functional Tests of Pancreatic Secretion.**—It is obvious that the changes in the stools which are characteristic of pancreatic disease are found only when the disease is advanced, and that the character of the stool is also influenced by the condition of the intestines and by the presence or absence of bile. Attempts have been made to determine the presence of pancreatic juice in the intestines by the administration of material which is attacked by this juice and by this alone. The digestion of gelatin capsules hardened in formalin (Sahli's test), of muscle or thymus nuclei (Schmidt's test) and of lecithin (Deucher) have been recommended for this purpose. Their value as functional tests of pan-

creatic secretion have been variously estimated. Sahli's test is generally believed to be unreliable. The lecithin test has been used but seldom. Schmidt's test is regarded as the most trustworthy, but its value as a specific indicator of pancreatic deficiency is still uncertain.

### *Exclusion of Bile from the Intestines*

The exclusion of bile from the intestines is usually due to an obstruction of the common bile duct that may result from the impaction of a biliary calculus, from the pressure of a malignant growth or from cicatrices, kinks, etc. The jaundice produced by such obstructions will be considered elsewhere. As might be anticipated from our knowledge of the digestive functions of the bile, an exclusion of this secretion from the intestines has practically no effect upon the digestion and absorption of the carbohydrates and proteins taken in the food. The insignificant changes observed at times in the utilization of these substances may be accounted for by the poor absorption of fats. The exclusion of bile from the intestines affects chiefly the utilization of fats. Unusual quantities of neutral fats, of fatty acids, and of soaps appear in the stools. For example, Fr. Müller found that instead of from 7 to 10 per cent of the ingested fats appearing in the stools, the quantity may rise to 35 or even 75 per cent. Similarly, A. Schmidt found that instead of the normal loss of about 5 per cent on a standard diet, patients with occlusion of the common duct lost about 25 per cent of the ingested fat in the feces. The amounts which appear are influenced by the quantity and kind of fat taken in the diet. If fats are restricted and if those having a low melting point are chosen, the proportion absorbed may approach the normal. Normally, fat particles appear in the blood after giving 40–60 grams of butter. In biliary obstruction these particles do not appear (see Lipemia).

**Effect on Cleavage of Fats.**—The fats that are present in the feces of patients who have no bile in the intestine are fairly well split into fatty acids and soaps. The lack of bile diminishes the absorption rather than the digestion of fats. When, as sometimes happens, both bile and pancreatic juice are excluded from the intestines, the loss of fats in the feces is exceptionally large.

**Clay Color of Feces.**—The exclusion of bile from the intestines leads to the characteristic clay color of the feces. This is due in part to the lack of bile pigments, in part to the excess of fat. The increased amount of fats, fatty acids and soaps often gives in addition a glistening appearance to the feces. Microscopically numerous crystalline needles due to the presence of fatty acids and calcium soaps are seen.

**Odor of Feces.**—The feces during jaundice often have a peculiarly disagreeable odor. It has been supposed that bile acts as an intestinal antiseptic and that the absence of bile causes an increased bacterial



growth and bacterial decomposition in the intestines. Exact studies have shown, however, that the number of bacteria in acholic stools is diminished rather than increased, that the intestinal putrefaction as measured by the amount of conjoined sulphates in the urine is not regularly increased and that no unusual fermentation or putrefaction occurs when the feces are incubated. A. Schmidt suggests that the disagreeable odor of acholic feces is due to the presence of fatty acids, the stools being rancid rather than putrefying.

### ***Disturbances in the Functions of the Intestinal Mucosa***

Despite the important part played by the mucosa of the small intestines in the digestion and absorption of food, serious nutritive disturbances are rarely caused by disease of this part of the bowel. This is due mainly to the fact that a wide margin of safety exists in the functions of the small intestines. As much as fifty per cent of the total small bowel may be resected either from dogs or man without fatal results and resections of seventy-five per cent are not necessarily fatal. The animals from which such large amounts have been removed may suffer at first from diarrhea, ravenous thirst and appetite, and a loss of weight. Ultimately, however, they return to a fairly normal condition, the compensatory process being associated with an hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the small intestinal mucosa remaining in the body. On a carefully selected diet such animals usually show little if any loss of food material in the feces. An excess of fat in the diet, however, may cause moderate losses of nitrogen and of fat. It is not surprising, therefore, that localized lesions of the intestines such as occur, for example, in typhoid fever do not ordinarily diminish the utilization of food material.

**Effect of Increased Motility.**—Lesions of the intestinal mucous membrane are often accompanied by an increased motility of the affected bowel. This tends to increase food losses, for a more rapid passage of material through the small intestines allows less opportunity for the digestion and absorption that normally take place in this portion of the alimentary tract.

**Disturbed Absorption of Food Material.**—Organic diseases of the small intestines are at times associated with definite disturbances in the absorption of food material. This occurs, for example, in extensive amyloid disease, in which condition there is not infrequently a loss of considerable nitrogenous material and fat in the stools. In widespread tuberculous disease of the intestines and in tuberculosis of the mesenteric glands the absorption of fats may also be definitely diminished, apparently because the lymphatic capillaries are blocked by the tuberculous disease.

**Intestinal Fermentative Dyspepsia.**—Unusual losses of carbohydrates

in the feces characterize the intestinal fermentative dyspepsia described by Schmidt and Strasburger. In some of these cases the gastric and pancreatic secretions appear to be normal, and the insufficient digestion of carbohydrates is apparently due to an insufficiency of the amylase of the succus entericus. Not infrequently, as H. Meyer and others have shown, the carbohydrate losses are associated with a disturbance in the gastric secretion which may be either a hyperacidity or a hypoacidity, but it is not certain that these disturbances influence intestinal absorption to any noteworthy degree.

## Motor Disturbances of the Intestines

### *Physiological Considerations*

#### The Small Intestines

Movements of the intestines may be observed and recorded after the abdominal cavity has been opened, but it is difficult to be certain that these correspond to the movements present in the intact animal. Studies of the movements in intact animals were first made by Cannon, who examined the abdomen with the x-rays after feeding food which contained bismuth salts. Cannon's observations on animals have been confirmed in the main for man by Hertz, Kaestle and others.

**Rhythmic Segmentation.**—After entering the small intestines the chyme may remain for a time motionless. When movements occur they are normally of two types. The first of these, described by Cannon as rhythmic segmentation, consists in the sudden division of a given strand of intestinal contents into several short segments of nearly equal size. After a time, each of these segments is divided in the center by a new set of constrictions while the older constrictions disappear. Thus a new series of segments are formed, which overlap the position of the previous set in much the same way that one layer of bricks overlaps the layer next to it. Segmentation then takes place in the new segments and the original pattern is reestablished. These alternations from one pattern to the next occur quite suddenly. The intervals separating the alternations vary in different animals. In man the changes usually occur at intervals of from six to nine seconds, while the segmenting movements in a given loop of small intestines usually continue for a period of from twenty to sixty seconds (Kaestle).

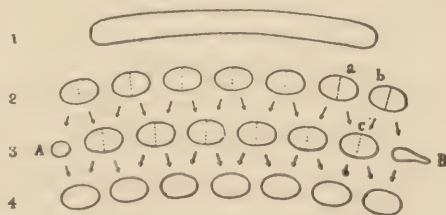


Fig. 61a.—Diagram Representing the Process of Rhythmic Segmentation. (After W. B. Cannon, "Mechanical Factors of Digestion," published by Longmans, Green & Co.)

During rhythmic segmentation the intestinal contents do not undergo any definite translation along the canal. These movements cause a thorough mixing of the food material and the digestive juices. At the same time successive portions of the chyme come in contact with the mucous membrane and absorption is thus favored. Rhythmic segmentation also aids in the propulsion of blood and lymph through the intestinal wall. Rhythmic segmentation is closely related to the movements that are frequently described as pendulum movements, in which the intestinal coils execute gentle swaying movements. These are usually accompanied by rhythmic contractions.

**Peristalsis.**—The second type of movement seen in the small intestines is that which has long been known as peristalsis. This is characterized by an advancing wave of constriction, preceded by a wave of relaxation. As a result of this combined movement the intestinal contents are swept along the tract in the direction of the anus. The peristaltic movements of the small intestines usually proceed at a slow rate, which Kaestle estimates in man to be something less than one centimeter a second. Furthermore they usually travel only a limited distance (about 12 centimeters). Meltzer and Auer have distinguished in animals another type of peristalsis which may sweep rapidly from one end of the small intestines to the other (peristaltic rush).

**Period of Passage in Man.**—In a series of plates from two normal individuals, Rieder found that the first portion of a bismuth meal reached the colon in  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 hours and that by eight or nine hours the small intestines were empty of bismuth. Taking into consideration the rate at which the stomach evacuates its contents, one may, therefore, roughly estimate the passages of the small intestines in man at from three to six hours. During this relatively brief period nearly all of the available food material is digested and absorbed. The contents that pass through the ileocecal valve are of a watery consistency and contain only a very small amount of nutrient material.

### The Large Intestines

In the large intestines the contents lose the greater part of their water, as well as a portion of the nutrient material which has escaped absorption in the small bowel. There is here a marked increase in the number of bacteria, and these, as we have seen, probably cause the considerable loss of cellulose which takes place in this portion of the digestive tract. In herbivora, especially, the cecum and ascending colon are the site of considerable changes, on account of the large amount of cellulose in the diet of such animals.

**Three Functional Divisions.**—From the functional standpoint the large intestines may be divided into three portions. The first of these



includes the cecum, the ascending colon and the first part of the transverse colon, the second includes the remainder of the transverse colon, the descending colon and upper sigmoid, while the third portion consists of the rectum and lower sigmoid.

**Action in First Division.**—In the first of these physiological divisions of the large intestines the contents are liquid, and they usually remain here for a relatively long time. Considerable material is usually seen in this portion of the intestines. In cats and other animals, Cannon, Elliott and others have observed antiperistaltic waves sweep from a ring of contraction at about the end of the first third of the transverse colon back toward the cecum. These waves recur at a rate of five or six a minute and they usually continue for a period of two to eight minutes. Such periods of activity are followed by pauses of fifteen minutes or more during which the colon appears motionless. Since the ileocecal valve does not ordinarily permit a regurgitation of the colonic contents into the ileum, the effect of such antiperistaltic movements in the proximal colon is to mix the semifluid contents thoroughly, and to permit a more complete digestion and absorption in this portion of the colon. Antiperistaltic movements of the ascending colon have also been observed in man, and a number of observations make it clear that in man the proximal portion of the colon is functionally distinct from that which follows. The intestinal contents remain in this portion for considerable periods of time. Roith has pointed out that when an anastomosis is established between the terminal portion of the ileum and the ascending colon, and when, furthermore, an external fistula is established at or near the cecum, there is a continuous escape of fluid contents and the fistula does not heal readily. If, however, the anastomosis is established at the midportion of the transverse colon, or somewhat beyond this, the external fistula heals readily, and intestinal material is carried toward the rectum.

In apes which possess a large intestine resembling that of man, Stierlin and Fritsche found that reversal of the distal portion of the colon produced definite stasis at the upper end of the reversed segment. Reversal of the proximal portion of the colon, on the other hand, produced no such marked stasis, and the shadows of the intestinal contents passed into the rectum with but little delay. From this observation they concluded that the proximal portion of the colon of apes normally propels the intestinal contents in an oral direction. In man also there is evidently a tendency to stasis in the proximal portion of the colon and antiperistaltic movements have been observed by Case and others.

**Progress from Proximal Colon to Rectum.**—The progress of fecal material from the proximal colon to the rectum has been much discussed. Slow peristaltic waves have been observed on animals, and Rieder by taking a series of x-ray plates at intervals of from one to five minutes was

able to show that slow progressive movements also occur in man. In addition to these slow movements, a number of observers have noted occasional rapid translations of the colonic contents in the direction of the rectum. Holzknacht, who first described these "large colonic movements" in man, believed that three or four such movements, each lasting a few seconds and recurring three or four times in a day, could carry the intestinal contents the length of the large intestines. Hertz and Newton, Case and others, have also observed these large colonic movements in man, particularly after a meal. It is admitted that such movements occur regularly in the descending colon and sigmoid in connection with the act of defecation, but whether they or the slow type of peristalsis are the usual mode of crossing the transverse colon is still uncertain. In this connection it is interesting to note that, while fistulae beyond the middle of the transverse colon discharge soft or solid feces at regular intervals of one to three times a day, fistulae of the proximal colon allow a more or less continuous escape of liquid material.

**Haustral Movement.**—In addition to antiperistalsis and the two forms of peristaltic movements, a third type of movement has been described in the large intestines. This may be roughly likened to the rhythmic segmentation observed in the small intestines. It is characterized by varying degrees of contraction of the local bands of circular muscle fibers. The haustral sacculations thus produced vary in shape and in depth or at times they disappear entirely.

**Defecation.**—When material has reached the rectum it may produce a desire to defecate. The intra-abdominal pressure is raised by the simultaneous contraction of the abdominal and diaphragmatic muscles. Large peristaltic movements of the descending colon and sigmoid empty their contents into the rectum and a relaxation of the anal sphincters allows the material to be evacuated.

### *Chronic Constipation*

Since the intestinal contents normally pass through the small intestines in from three to six hours and through the large intestines in twenty hours or thereabout, it is evident that appreciable delays in the total time of passage through the intestinal tract will be more readily produced by disturbances in the motility of the large intestine than by motility disturbances in the small bowel. Chronic constipation is the name given to the slow passage of material through the intestines and particularly through the large intestines. While an infrequent evacuation of feces is evidence of chronic constipation, the reverse is not the case. It is well known that certain patients may have a daily evacuation of feces and yet the colon may be filled with an accumulation of fecal material. Indeed, diarrhea may result from irritation of the colon by retained fecal material

or periods of constipation and diarrhea may alternate. In either case the primary disturbance may be a massing of fecal material in the large intestine.

### ***Pathogenesis of Constipation***

#### **Lack of Normal Stimuli**

The transportation of material through the intestinal canal is governed chiefly by the action of the intestinal contents upon the local nervous mechanism and muscle fibers of the surrounding intestinal wall. The stimuli which exert this action may be of a chemical or mechanical nature. Among the chemical substances that normally influence the movements are certain products of intestinal decomposition, such as carbon dioxid, marsh gas, skatol, etc. We know nothing of conditions in which a disturbed motility is due to a specific lack of any one of these chemical stimuli. On the other hand, we know that constipation is favored by any condition in which relatively small quantities of material pass into the large intestines. Where little is eaten on account of gastric or other disease, where there is an obstruction in the esophagus or at the pylorus, or where constant vomiting prevents the retention of what has been swallowed, constipation is common. During absolute starvation the bowels may not move for weeks. Highly digestible diets, containing little residue in the form of cellulose, etc., likewise tend to produce constipation. This occurs, for example, when patients are placed on the diets usually prescribed for ulcer of the stomach.

**Lack of Residue from Undue Digestion.**—Certain individuals may digest even the normal diet unusually well; and this, according to A. Schmidt, is a frequent cause of chronic constipation. The stools of such constipated individuals contain not only less water but less nitrogen, fat, carbohydrates, cellulose and bacteria (Strasburger) than do the stools of normal individuals. This abnormally good utilization of food is, according to Schmidt, a cause and not a result of the constipation, for when normal individuals have been made constipated by the use of opium, their absorption may be poorer than in the chronic constipation of this type. Constipation is frequently associated with gastric hyperacidity. It is well known that proteins are unusually well digested in the stomach of such patients, and that hyperacid gastric contents possibly cause an increased flow of bile and of pancreatic juice with a more perfect digestion and absorption in the intestines. It is evident, therefore, that under such conditions an unusually small residue may reach the large intestines and thus favor constipation.

Where constipation is due primarily to a lack of residue in the large intestines it may be relieved by taking food which contains increased quantities of non-digestible or non-absorbable material, such as agar, bran,



etc. These diets do in fact relieve certain cases of chronic constipation, mainly on account of their mechanical effect upon the large intestine.

### Mechanical Causes

Mechanical obstructions may interfere with the passage of fecal material through the large intestines. Among the mechanical causes of constipation are peritoneal bands and adhesions which result from acute or chronic peritonitis. A constipation of this type may complicate or follow appendicitis, sigmoiditis, cholecystitis, duodenal and gastric ulcers, tuberculous peritonitis and inflammations of the female generative organs. Constipation may also be caused mechanically by the pressure of a floating kidney, a retroverted uterus, a displaced spleen or a malignant tumor. The pains which not infrequently accompany this type of constipation are due in part to the increased peristalsis proximal to the obstruction. Pain as well as fever may also be caused by inflammatory adhesions. In some of the conditions just noted, and particularly in those associated with inflammation, the constipation may be due not only to the mechanical obstruction but also to disturbances of the motor function of the large bowel.

**Constipation in Enteroptosis.**—It is well known that constipation frequently complicates enteroptosis, and the question has been raised whether this type may not be due to the mechanical effect of a low transverse colon which tends to produce kinks at the splenic and hepatic flexures. Although such kinking may occur it is not common. The constipation of such patients is usually due to other causes, and especially to atony of the muscle of the large colon. This is similar in character to the gastric atony frequently observed in these patients.

### Functional Motor Disturbances

The motor disturbances of the large intestines in chronic constipation are usually due to alterations in function that do not depend upon any definite organic lesion. Following Fleiner, two main functional types of constipation have been distinguished. In the first, the so-called *atonic* type, the large intestines do not contract firmly upon their contents and there is presumably a diminished motility. In the second or *spastic* type, there is a spasm of certain portions of the large intestines which is believed to obstruct the forward movements of the intestinal contents. X-ray studies of patients suffering from chronic constipation have shown, however, that the actual conditions are usually more complex than such a classification would indicate. Atony or spasm, as judged from the size and configuration of the colon, is not necessarily accompanied by diminished motility, and spasm may affect one portion of the large intestine while other portions appear atonic.

**Signs of Lack of Tone.**—Diminution in tone is indicated by a large caliber and lack of haustral segmentation. This seems to be particularly common in the type of constipation which occurs as an hereditary affection, as well as in those forms which so frequently accompany senility, cachexia, fever, obesity and intestinal catarrh. It also occurs in certain nervous individuals and in mental diseases. Nervous reflexes may diminish the intestinal movements as has been shown by experiments on animals (compression of the testicles), and it seems probable that acute or chronic inflammations of the abdominal viscera may produce constipation through such reflexes.

**Spastic Constipation.**—Spastic constipation as described by the older writers occurs particularly in certain nervous individuals, in gynecological patients, in heavy smokers, etc. It is characterized by attacks of intestinal pain, tenesmus and tenderness on pressure over the colon. X-ray examinations have shown that spastic contractions of the large intestine are particularly common in the transverse and descending portions of the colon. The contents may be drawn out into narrow bands, the haustral segmentations may be unusually marked or the fecal material may be divided into numerous small balls. Evidences of spasm in the proximal colon are less frequent.

Neither the appearance of marked constrictions in the colon nor the appearance of lack of tone is necessarily accompanied by constipation. In fact, as we shall see, either one may accompany diarrhea. It seems certain, therefore, that the objective evidence of spasm or of atony cannot in itself be the sole cause of constipation.

**Classification by Site of Stasis.**—In view of the manifest difficulties in classifying constipation according to the degree of colonic contraction, it seems advantageous at the present time to adopt a classification based upon the main site of stasis. The commonest sites for such a stasis are the rectum and neighboring sigmoid, the ascending colon, and the lower ileum. Less commonly the transverse colon is the site of stasis.

#### (a) *Rectal Stasis*

The term dyschezia has been used by Hertz to designate those cases of constipation in which defecation itself is incomplete or delayed. The intestinal contents pass through the colon with normal, increased, or decreased rapidity; but, having reached the rectum or neighboring sigmoid, the fecal material remains here for an abnormally long time. In some cases it is only partly evacuated at defecation, so that the lower bowel, instead of being empty or nearly empty after defecation, constantly contains fecal material (cumulative constipation). Examination of the rectum usually discloses the nature of the condition. When, however, the stasis is confined to the sigmoid, diagnosis is more difficult. In these

cases the x-ray examination shows that fecal material remains in this portion of the intestine for an abnormally long time.

**Two Main Causes.**—According to Hertz there are two chief causes of dyschezia: (1) neglect to respond to the normal call to stool which leads to distention and atony of the lower bowel; and (2) a weakness of the voluntary muscles that assist defecation. Changes in the nervous mechanism of the lower bowel and mechanical obstructions in this region, either from without or from changes in the rectum itself, are also possible. In the treatment of dyschezia especial attention should be paid to the call for defecation, and enemata rather than cathartics are indicated.

### (b) *Ascending Stasis*

This type of constipation is characterized by an unusually long delay of intestinal material in the ascending portion of the large intestines. Here material may remain for 24 to 48 hours or even longer. Once past the ascending colon the material may proceed in the normal manner.

**Cause Uncertain.**—The cause of such an abnormally long delay in the proximal portion of the colon is uncertain. It may be due to atony or increased antiperistalsis in this region, it may be due to some difficulty in passing the portion of the intestine beyond, owing to organic obstruction or spastic contractions, or, finally, it may be due to an absence of the large colonic peristalses which are believed by some to constitute the normal mode of transporting material across the transverse colon. It is evident, however, that even normally the ascending colon is the site of some stasis, for the intestinal contents always remain in this region for some time. In the ascending type of constipation this stasis is increased.

**Increased Digestion and Absorption.**—Such stasis in the ascending portion of the colon tends to increase digestion and absorption in this part of the intestines. The increased destruction of cellulose and the increased absorption of water and nutritive material allow less material than usual to proceed into the distal colon, and as a result the distal colon receives less stimulation than normal. It would appear that in these cases particularly the feces contain less nutritive material than normal.

In some cases of ascending stasis local symptoms are entirely absent. In others feelings of pressure, distention and dyspepsia may accompany the constipation. At times the symptoms resemble those of mild or chronic appendicitis, the pains being due to distention, dragging, or spastic contractions of the cecum and neighboring colon.

### (c) *Transverse Stasis*

Less common than the ascending type of constipation is that in which the principal stasis occurs in the transverse colon. This seems to occur



particularly in patients with ptosis of the transverse colon. In some such cases the low position of the colon or its lack of tone seems responsible for the constipation; in others a kinking at the splenic flexure may be the cause of stasis.

#### (d) *Ileal Stasis*

In a certain number of patients with gastro-intestinal complaints, and particularly in those suffering from constipation, x-ray observations have shown that the terminal ileum does not empty its contents as promptly into the cecum as it should. The cause of this ileal stasis may be a mechanical obstruction in the terminal ileum produced by malignant disease, by adhesions, or by kinks. According to Case, ileal stasis is not ordinarily due to mechanical obstructions in the terminal ileum, but is usually due to functional changes in the activity of the ileocecal sphincter. Normally this sphincter prevents the regurgitation of the colonic contents into the terminal ileum. When enemata are given the material fills the colon but is prevented from entering the ileum. Functional changes in the activity of this sphincter may consist of spasm or incompetency. Apparently spasm of the sphincter causes ileal stasis in a certain number of cases and particularly when, as in appendicitis, there is a local inflammation in this region.

**Incompetency of Ileocecal Valve.**—According to Case, however, the most frequent cause of ileal stasis is an incompetency of the ileocecal valve. On giving enemata to patients suffering from various abdominal diseases, he noted that, in approximately one patient out of six, the material contained in the enema passed from the colon into the terminal ileum. In certain patients also the bismuth taken by mouth was observed to pass into the cecum and later to return into the ileum. Finally, an incompetency of the valve has been demonstrated in certain patients at operation. The great majority of patients who show objective evidence of ileocecal insufficiency suffer from chronic constipation and at times from other intestinal symptoms. The condition is frequently associated with disease of the proximal colon, and particularly with stasis in this region. That incompetency of the ileocecal valves should itself favor constipation is obvious, when we recall that this valve normally prevents the entrance of material into the ileum during the antiperistaltic movements that occur in the first part of the colon.

#### *Symptoms of Constipation*

Patients suffering from chronic constipation may complain of no symptoms, even though defecation occurs only at intervals of four days or more. Local pains may be due to intestinal spasm, distention, or irritation of the mucous membrane by the fecal material. The association of

chronic constipation with nervous symptoms is common but its exact cause is not clear. Such nervous manifestations are frequently attributed to the absorption of toxic material from the bowels. When we remember, however, that the feces in constipation usually show an usually good absorption of material, and that the number of bacteria present is usually less than normal, it would seem that in most cases there is even less than the usual opportunity for the formation of poisonous material in the intestines. Furthermore, patients with chronic constipation commonly experience an unusual sense of well-being immediately after a satisfactory evacuation of the bowels, at which time there can be no change in the amount of absorbed material in the body. From these facts, it would appear that the nervous symptoms so frequent in these patients are due in part to the mechanical effect of the retained material.

Nevertheless it must be admitted that the possibility of some toxic absorption in chronic constipation and in other intestinal disturbances is not easily disproved. The conditions for such absorptions are particularly favorable when, owing to ileocecal incompetency, colonic material is returned into the small intestine. This question will be discussed more fully in the paragraphs on intestinal auto-intoxication.

### *Diarrhea*

Diarrhea, like constipation, depends primarily upon disturbances in the motility of the large intestines. Motor changes in the small intestines may or may not be present. Increased motor activities in the small intestines, such as occur in "peristaltic unrest," with its splashing and gurgling sounds and violent peristalsis visible through the abdominal walls, are not necessarily accompanied by diarrhea.

### *Pathogenesis of Diarrhea*

#### **Excess of Stimuli**

Just as constipation may be due to a lack of normal stimuli owing to the small bulk or chemical nature of the contents of the large intestines, so diarrhea may be due to the excessive stimulating properties of the colonic contents. The diarrhea which follows certain indiscretions in diet (green fruit) is of this character, as is also the diarrhea provoked by most purges. In certain cases of pancreatic disease the reduced absorption leads to copious and more numerous bowel movements, which may take on a diarrheal character.

**Gastric Achlorhydria.**—Chronic or intermittent diarrheas may accompany gastric achlorhydria, particularly when this is associated with insufficient chewing of the food (bad teeth). Although diarrhea occurs in only a moderate proportion of patients showing achlorhydria, this is one of the

commoner types of chronic diarrhea in temperate climates. In such cases the diarrhea is due in part to the mechanical irritation of the undigested food that leaves the stomach. In part it is due to unusual bacterial activities in the intestines. Owing to the achlorhydria and to the hypermotility of the stomach so frequently present, bacteria taken in the food gain ready access to the intestines, while the increased residue of undigested food in the intestines furnishes an unusual opportunity for their development. Peristalsis is stimulated by the excessive or abnormal decomposition of the food in the intestines and by the action of the bacteria themselves. The use of finely divided food and the administration of hydrochloric acid after meals may check the diarrhea in such patients.

Unusual bacteria which have gained entrance to the intestine may also cause diarrhea, as happens, for example, in Asiatic cholera, bacillary dysentery, paratyphoid infections, etc. For the most part these diarrheas are associated with organic changes in the large intestines.

### **Increased Irritability of the Intestines**

No sharp line of demarcation exists between the diarrheas that are due to abnormal stimulation of the intestines and those that are due to changes in intestinal irritability; for infecting organisms and decomposing food not only stimulate the normal intestines, but also damage the intestinal wall, and thus render it abnormally irritable. Inflammation of the walls of the large intestine, with or without ulceration, is usually accompanied by diarrhea. In some cases, however, catarrhal changes in the large intestines are associated with constipation.

That nervous influences may play a part in the etiology of diarrhea is evident from the well-known fact that nervous strain may cause a desire to defecate; and it seems not unlikely that diarrheas of purely nervous origin do occasionally occur. On the other hand, it is certain that many diarrheas, ordinarily regarded as nervous, are due to organic changes in the large intestines, or to unusual stimuli which these receive by reason of the character of their contents. With more careful study many cases of supposed nervous diarrhea are found to belong more properly to the class of functional diarrheas due to gastric achlorhydria, intestinal fermentation, or intestinal putrefaction.

### **Motility Changes in Diarrhea**

Although relatively few studies have been made with the x-ray of the intestinal activities during diarrhea, it is evident from these, as well as from studies of the action of cathartics, that diarrhea may be associated with a great diversity of changes in the appearance of the bowels. The caliber of the large intestines, as well as the prominence and activity of their haustral sacculations, vary. Increased tone and increased haustral ac-



tivity are present after certain vegetable cathartics, particularly senna and aloes, and similar changes in certain patients with diarrhea, have led Stierlin to bring these latter together under the term "spastic diarrheas." These spastic diarrheas, which are characterized by the increased tone of the large intestines, seem to belong more particularly to the class of functional or nervous diarrheas. Other cathartics, notably castor oil, are associated with diminished prominence and diminished activity of the haustral segmentations. A similar lack of haustral segmentation is present in certain patients with chronic diarrhea, particularly when the latter is due to ulcerative colitis. In the region of the ulcerations, however, the motility is usually increased, so that in these regions no bismuth is ordinarily seen.

**Increased Peristaltic Movements.**—It is evident from these observations that the degree of tonus, as judged from the caliber of the large intestines and the prominence and activity of the haustral segmentations, bears no definite relation to the rapidity of passage through the large intestine. Spastic constipation and spastic diarrheas give similar pictures, while atony may be associated with either constipation or diarrhea. Diarrhea depends, therefore, not upon changes in the tone of the large intestines, but upon other disturbances of their motor activities. An increase in the peristaltic movements, and particularly in the large peristaltic movements described by Holzknacht, seems the most probable motor change in diarrhea.

### *Intestinal Obstruction*

The effects of intestinal obstruction vary greatly. In some cases the disease is rapidly fatal, while in others the obstructive symptoms may be present for weeks or months before the patient's condition becomes alarming. Naturally the severity of the symptoms is determined largely by the degree of obstruction. The more complete the obstruction the more rapid will be the course of the disease. A number of other factors, however, influence the clinical picture. Obstructions in the upper part of the small intestines generally pursue a more acute course than those in the lower intestines. Furthermore, obstructions which are associated with interferences in the blood supply to the affected bowel are relatively serious.

### **Motor Disturbances**

The immediate effect of an intestinal obstruction is a delay in the passage of intestinal contents past the point of obstruction. Material accumulates on its proximal side, and this accumulation incites the affected intestine to increased motor activity, partly by mechanical distention, and partly also by the chemical stimulus of the products of digestion or decomposition. Rhythmic segmentation may be increased. Particularly characteristic, however, are the unusual number of deep peristaltic waves which sweep over the distended intestine up to the point of obstruction. These

have been observed by the x-ray both in animals and man. Inspection of the external abdominal wall may also show distended loops of intestine firmly contracted on their contents (intestinal stiffening) with visible peristalsis in the distended loops. These contractions of the distended intestine give rise to cramplike pains. Such increased motor activity tends to force intestinal contents past the point of obstruction, and it may, therefore, be regarded as a compensatory phenomenon.

**Vomiting.**—Vomiting is an early and fairly constant symptom in intestinal obstruction. In the earlier stages the vomitus consists of gastric or duodenal contents, and it is comparable to the vomiting of any serious abdominal irritation. Later, however, the vomitus often contains fecal material derived from the intestines. This is due in part to the collection of large quantities of fluid in the intestinal coils above the obstruction, and is thus simply an overflow from the filled intestines. The material may also be carried back from the obstruction by antiperistaltic contractions. These have been observed in experimental obstructions in animals, and there is reason to believe that they also occur in man, being similar to the antiperistaltic movements seen in the stomach in cases of pyloric obstruction. They are particularly marked in obstructions localized in the colon.

**Distention and Diminished Movement.**—As a result of the increased pressure to which the coils of intestines lying proximal to the obstruction are subjected, they tend to become dilated, and eventually they may show a diminution of movements. Gas and also liquids are present in the dilated intestines, and a definite collection of gas may be observed in the most distended region. The movements of the intestines that lie distal to the obstruction are usually diminished, owing to lack of contents or to toxic or infectious causes. In some cases they become atonic and gas accumulates in them also, giving rise to general abdominal distention.

### General Symptoms

Sooner or later during the course of an intestinal obstruction the patient develops symptoms of a general toxic character. The pulse and respirations become rapid, the blood pressure falls, there is cyanosis with or without clammy skin, and great prostration appears. The mental condition varies from a noisy delirium to a more or less marked stupor which may terminate in unconsciousness. Albuminuria is common. These symptoms have been attributed to various causes. Systemic bacterial infection, general peritonitis, nervous shock, loss of liquids from constant vomiting, and intoxication produced by absorption of toxic material from the affected intestine have each been held responsible for the general symptoms of intestinal obstruction. Each may play a part in particular instances, but their relative importance has been variously estimated.

**High Intestinal Obstruction.**—Particular attention has been paid to

the rapidly fatal results which follow complete obstruction in the duodenum or upper portion of the jejunum. This type of obstruction has been studied experimentally in dogs by Draper, Hartwell, Whipple and their coworkers, and it has been shown that in these cases systemic infection can be excluded as a cause of the early death. Hartwell and his associates have emphasized the importance of losses of liquid in these high obstructions. Others have shown that this is not the only important factor. Whipple produced a closed loop in the duodenum just below the ampulla of Vater and then established an anastomosis between the stomach and the remaining intestines. This operation permitted food, as well as bile, pancreatic juice and gastric secretion to pass freely into the lower intestines. Dogs so treated died in from 36 to 72 hours, evidently because toxic material was absorbed from the closed loop. According to Whipple, this toxic material is derived from the intestinal mucosa itself and belongs to the class of proteoses. According to Dragstedt and his co-workers, the intoxication is due to an absorption of toxic substances that are produced within the loop of bowel by the action of bacteria on proteins or their split products. If the loop were washed with water and ether many animals survived, apparently because the absorption of toxic substances was prevented. On the other hand, anything that interferes with the local circulation, such as strangulation, increases the production and absorption of toxic substances.

These studies have shown that the intoxication of high intestinal obstruction is often independent of systemic bacterial infection and depends in part on water losses and in part on the absorption of toxic substances derived either from the damaged mucous membrane of the intestine or from the bacterial decomposition of protein material.

**Obstruction at Lower Levels.**—Obstruction at lower levels of the intestines is less rapidly fatal than that in or near the duodenum. This is due in part to the fact that the vomiting of liquid is less profuse in such cases. The large amount of fluid poured out by the stomach, pancreas and liver, instead of being lost to the body by vomiting, can be in part resorbed by the longer length of intestines that intervenes before the obstruction is reached. Furthermore, the lower intestines do not give rise to such virulent toxic material as does the duodenum and the adjacent jejunum. Closed loops of the large intestines produce such slight toxic effects that dogs with such loops may remain alive for months. In lower intestinal obstruction, therefore, circulatory changes in the intestinal walls, and general or localized invasions of bacteria, play a relatively important rôle in producing the symptoms of obstruction.

### *Intestinal Paresis*

But little is known concerning a diminution in the motor activities of the intestines other than that which leads to chronic constipation.



Yet it seems certain that intestinal paresis plays an important part in various pathological conditions.

**After Abdominal Operations.**—Paralysis of the intestines occasionally develops after operations, and particularly after abdominal operations, even though there is no general peritonitis. The various factors governing this type of intestinal paresis have been studied experimentally in the cat by Cannon and Murphy. These authors found that simple etherization was followed by a delayed passage of food from the stomach. Exposure or cooling of the intestines produced no further deleterious effect upon the intestinal activities. When, however, the intestines were roughly handled at the time of the operation, this was followed by a very definite delay in the emptying of the stomach and by a slow passage of material through the small intestines. Further experiments showed that these changes in the motor activities of the gastro-intestinal canal were not influenced by cutting the extrinsic nerves to the canal. They were, therefore, due to changes in the local motor mechanisms in the intestines themselves. The intestinal movements may also be inhibited reflexly by traumata to the testicles or by the operation of opening the abdominal wall, an inhibition which does not occur if the splanchnic nerves are cut.

**In Infectious Diseases.**—In various infections, such as pneumonia and typhoid fever, marked distention of the intestines not infrequently becomes a serious factor in the disease. This may be associated either with constipation or diarrhea. It seems probable that such conditions are comparable to the distention which occasionally appears after operation, a supposition which is supported by Cannon's observation that in the distemper of dogs the food may lie all day in the stomach or intestines without the slightest indication of being acted upon by peristalsis. In general peritonitis the serious paralysis of the intestines with lack of motion and gaseous distention is due in part to this action of infections in general, but the unusually serious character of the intestinal paresis in this condition indicates that it is due chiefly to the deleterious effect of the local changes.

### *Intestinal Pain*

The sensibility of the anal canal is very similar to that of the neighboring skin. Except for this region, however, the sensibility of the intestines is similar to that of the stomach. Hertz has shown that the mucous membrane of the colon is insensitive to tactile stimuli, and little if at all sensitive to thermal stimuli. On the other hand, it is sensitive to artificial distention. If this be done slowly and be not too excessive, the individual experiences a sensation of fullness similar to that felt when there is gas in the colon. If, however, the colon is rapidly and forcibly distended, a sensation of pain is produced owing to the tension on the muscular fibers.

**Abnormal Motor Activity.**—The intestinal pains that are observed clinically are probably always due either to abnormal motor activities

of the intestines or to peritoneal disease. Ulcerations such as those of typhoid fever ordinarily produce no pain. Nor are the usual forms of peristalsis painful. In intestinal obstruction the severe cramplike pains can sometimes be seen to coincide with firm tetanic contractions of the intestine that lies proximal to the stenosis. As the "intestinal stiffening" lessens, the pain subsides. The pain, in this instance, is evidently due to the unusually firm contraction of the intestine upon contents which are not permitted to pass the point of obstruction. Other forms of intestinal cramps and pains, such as those which occur in lead colic, are probably of similar origin, except that instead of an organic obstruction there is here a spasm which opposes the propulsion of material along the intestines by a peristaltic wave. The increased tension of the intestinal wall gives rise to intestinal pain, just as the increased tension of the stomach may give rise to gastric pain.

**Local Peritonitis and Adhesions.**—Pains may also be caused by local peritonitis and adhesions, and particularly when these involve the parietal peritoneum. According to Hertz, the pain that is produced in the movable portion of the intestines is usually referred by the patient to the region of the umbilicus, whereas the pain which is produced in the more fixed portions of the intestine is referred to the general region of the abdomen from which the pain comes. When pain is caused by a localized peritonitis, it is likewise usually referred to the region of the disease. Diseases of the intestines may also give rise to pain that is referred to the distribution of the cutaneous nerves which enter the same region of the cord as those coming from the intestines, being similar to the referred pains of angina pectoris. In appendicitis, for example, Hertz distinguishes the early pain that is localized in the umbilicus, the pain of an associated peritonitis that is localized in the region of the abdomen affected, and the referred nervous pain in the right iliac fossa. When the appendix occupies some unusual position in the peritoneal cavity the referred nervous pains may be in the right iliac fossa, while the pains due to local peritonitis may be near the seat of the disease.

### ***Intestinal Auto-intoxication***

No topic in medicine has been the subject of more speculation than intestinal auto-intoxication. According to some, the greatest variety of complaints and diseases originate from this cause; according to others, no positive evidence exists that intestinal auto-intoxication is a cause of disease.

**Conditions to be Excluded.**—In order to restrict the discussion, it becomes necessary, first of all, to exclude a number of conditions which are not usually classed among intestinal auto-intoxications in the narrower sense. Intestinal infections, for example, with penetration of microörganism into the mucous membrane, cannot properly be classed as intoxica-

tions. We now know that many epidemics of food poisoning are due, not to poisons preformed in the food, but to an infection with some micro-organism contained therein. Bacteria of the paratyphoid group are often responsible for such food infections. In the second place, one must exclude from auto-intoxication all those toxic conditions which are caused by the introduction of preformed poisonous substances into the alimentary canal. Poisonings with the ordinary mineral or alkaloidal poisons, with mushrooms, with ergot, and with preformed bacterial toxins that are taken as such into the alimentary tract (botulism) are to be excluded from intestinal auto-intoxications in the narrower sense. Finally, one may, for the sake of simplicity, exclude from consideration the diseases which are due to the absorption of unchanged proteins by individuals who are sensitive to these proteins. Idiosyncrasies to eggs, to shellfish, to buckwheat, and to other protein substances are now believed to be due to the passage of their proteins in an unchanged condition through the wall of the alimentary canal, and similar toxic symptoms can usually be produced when the same proteins are introduced directly into the bodies of susceptible individuals by other routes. The most common symptoms produced by this type of intoxication are urticarial or other rashes, asthmatic symptoms, etc., which will be discussed in the paragraphs on anaphylaxis. These conditions, though classed with the intoxications that enter the body through the intestinal wall, are not caused by toxic substances in the ordinary sense of the word, nor do they depend upon alterations of the intestinal contents. They are due rather to an abnormal sensitiveness on the part of the patient.

**Definition of Term.**—In the more restricted sense, we understand by intestinal auto-intoxication the pathological effects produced by some poison or poisons that have been formed in the intestines. Such poisons may arise from a decomposition of the food in the intestines; they may be products of bacterial growth in the intestines, or they may be produced in or by the mucous membrane itself.

**Evidence Largely Clinical.**—The evidence that intestinal auto-intoxications actually exist in man is based largely upon clinical rather than upon experimental evidence, and upon the knowledge that poisonous materials may be formed in the intestines rather than upon the demonstration that a particular substance has been the cause of symptoms in a particular case or group of cases. Among the minor symptoms commonly attributed to intestinal toxemia are headache, lassitude, loss of appetite, coated tongue, muscular and mental fatigue, irritability; in fact, a group of neurasthenic symptoms. A number of skin lesions, particularly those of an urticarial or erythematous character, may undoubtedly arise from the absorption of substances from the alimentary tract. It has just been pointed out, however, that these symptoms are often due to an individual hypersensitiveness to certain proteins rather than to the formation of peculiar toxic substances



in the intestines. Among the more serious conditions often attributed to intestinal auto-intoxication are pernicious anemia, arteriosclerosis, chronic nephritis, etc. The casual relation between these latter conditions, while suggestive in certain ways, still awaits demonstration.

**Neurasthenic Symptoms.**—In regard to the symptoms of a neurasthenic character, it is difficult to form a correct judgment. We have pointed out that the observation, so frequently made, that constipated patients often feel immensely relieved so soon as the bowels move, cannot be interpreted in favor of the view that their symptoms are due to the absorption of toxic material from the intestines. Such an immediate relief is due either to a psychic effect or to a lessening of the mechanical distention of the colon. Colonic distention produces a sense of fullness even in normal individuals. The general improvement in the health of constipated subjects, that often seems to follow regulation of the bowels by medical and surgical means, is difficult to interpret. In some patients constipation has become an obsession, and relief from this symptom is the best form of psychic therapy. Nevertheless, even though one take into consideration these various factors, one frequently gets the impression that a low grade poisoning occurs in certain patients with intestinal disturbances. How often this occurs and what is its immediate cause are problems for the future.

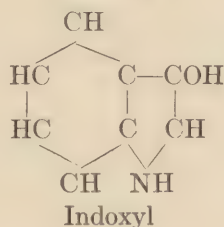
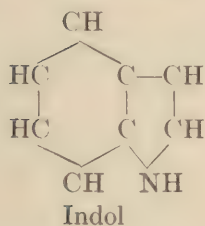
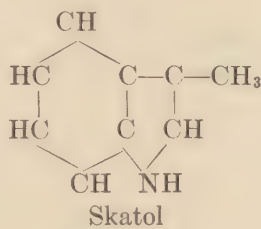
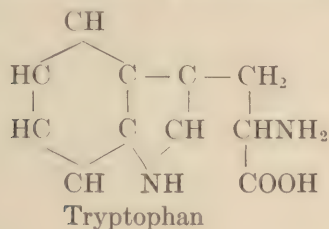
**Three Possible Sources of Auto-intoxication.**—There are three possible origins for toxic material in the intestines. The first is from the mucous membrane itself. In the case of experimental obstruction in the duodenum and upper jejunum the intoxication seems to arise mainly from this source (page 201). The lower small bowel may give rise to similar toxic substances, though in smaller amounts. Apparently none arise from the mucous membrane of the colon.

In the second place, intestinal auto-intoxication may be produced by the bacteria that inhabit the intestinal canal under normal or pathological conditions. So far as we know, however, soluble toxins are not produced by the normal bacterial flora residing in the intestines. That they may arise from this source is possible but it is not proved. Adami has held, however, that low grade infections from the intestinal tract are not infrequent, and that such subinfections may possibly be responsible for some of the symptoms ordinarily attributed to intestinal toxemias.

The third source of intestinal auto-intoxication are the decomposition products that arise from the food and other material in the intestines. During the cleavage of these substances by the digestive ferments, as well as by bacteria, it is conceivable that toxic products may be formed and later absorbed. Particularly in the case of the proteins are such formations possible. The attention of earlier investigators was directed particularly toward the formation of indol, skatol, phenol and cresol in the intestines.

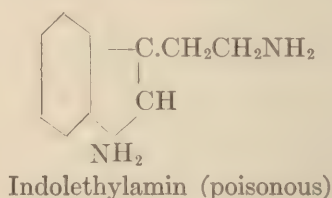
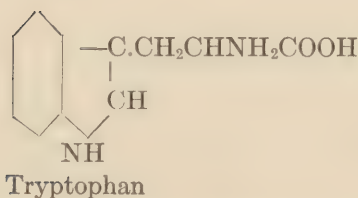
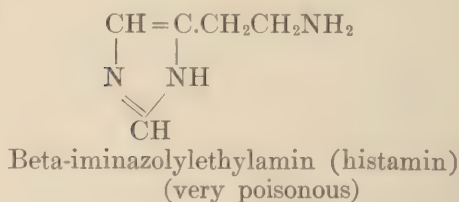
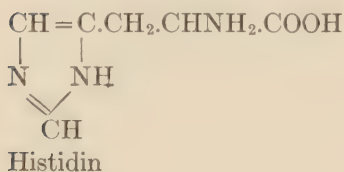
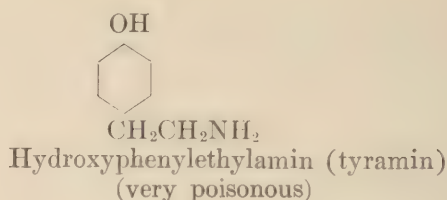
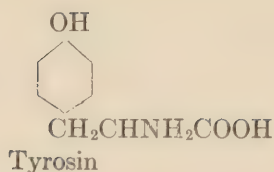
**Indol and Indoxyl.**—Indol and skatol are formed by the bacterial

decomposition of tryptophan, a protein-building stone. After absorption indol is oxidized to indoxyl, and this unites with sulphuric acid in the body and is excreted as an ethereal sulphate.



Indican or indoxyl sulphate may be estimated in the urine by its color reactions. The amount excreted in the urine depends not only on bacterial decomposition in the intestines, but also upon the available tryptophan and the amount of indol absorbed by the intestinal wall. When the small intestines are experimentally obstructed there is usually a marked increase of indican in the urine; after obstruction of the large intestines no such marked increase occurs. In chronic constipation the amount of indican in the urine may be normal, diminished, or increased. It is certain that a marked stasis of material in the large intestine may cause no unusual quantities of indican to appear in the urine. On the other hand, Kellogg has recently pointed out that patients with ileal stasis usually show unusual quantities of indican in the urine. Stasis in the small intestines is, therefore, one important cause of a pathological indicanuria. The absorption of indol from the intestines does not necessarily produce symptoms. By oxidizing indol to indoxyl, and by combining the latter with sulphuric acid, the body protects itself against any poisonous action. Few if any symptoms are produced by the administration of indol, and the symptoms of intestinal toxemia do not run parallel to the amount of indican found in the urine. At best, therefore, the appearance of unusual quantities of indican in the urine indicates some unusual bacterial decomposition in the intestines, and particularly in the small intestines.

**Toxic Amins.**—Renewed interest in the problem of intestinal toxemia has followed the demonstration that certain of the amino acids derived from the breaking down of proteins are able to furnish exceedingly toxic amins by the removal of one carbon dioxid complex. The reaction is shown in the following formulae:



These amines are powerful poisons. If they were formed in excessive quantity in the intestines and were not immediately broken down into simpler and less toxic substances, they might be absorbed and give rise to serious symptoms. Certain of them have been produced by the activity of bacteria derived from the feces, and some have been found under special conditions in the intestines. According to Harvey, also, the continued injection of these substances may produce serious chronic disease in animals. As yet, however, we know practically nothing of their relation to clinical conditions.

## References

### Esophagus

- Brailowskaja (C.).** Zur Kenntnis der idiopathischen Speiseröhrenerweiterungen. *Arch. f. Verdauungskr.*, **1911**, xvi, 102.
- Cannon (W. B.).** Oesophageal peristalsis after bilateral vagotomy. *Amer. Jour. Physiol.*, **1907**, xix, 436.
- Hertz (A. F.).** The sensibility of the alimentary canal in health and disease. *Lancet*, **1911**, i, 1051, 1119, 1187.
- Holzkecht (G.) & Olbert (D.).** Die Atonie der Speiseröhre. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, lxxi, 91.
- Kraus (F.).** Die Erkrankungen der Mundhöhle und der Speiseröhre. In: Nothnagel, *System*, **1902**, xvi.  
Die Bewegungen der Speiseröhre unter normalen und pathologischen Verhältnissen auf Grund röntgen-kinematographischer Untersuchungen. *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1911-12**, x, 3613.



- Kupferle (L.)** Zur Physiologie des Schluckmechanismus nach röntgen-kinematographischen Aufnahmen. *Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol.*, **1913**, clii, 579.
- von Mikulicz (J.)**. Beiträge zur Physiologie der Speiseröhre und der Cardia. *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chir.*, **1903**, xii, 569.
- Plummer (H. S.)**. Cardiospasm with a report of forty cases. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1908**, li, 549.
- Riebold (G.)**. Weitere Untersuchungen über die Pathogenese der Traktionsdivertikel des Oesophagus. *Virchow's Arch. f. path. Anat.*, cxcii, 126.
- Starck (H.)**. Zur Pathologie der Erweiterungen der Speiseröhre mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Röntgenverfahrens. *Verhand. d. Congr. f. inn. Med.*, **1912**, xxix, 122.

### *Disturbances of Gastric Secretion*

- Boldyreff (W.)**. The self regulation of the acidity of the gastric contents and the real acidity of the gastric juice. *Quart. Jour. Exper. Physiol.*, **1914**, viii, 1.
- Carlson (A. J.)**. The secretion of gastric juice in man. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxviii, 50.
- Carrel (A.), Meyer (E. M.) & Levene (T. A.)**. The influence of removal of fragments of the gastro-intestinal tract on the character of nitrogen metabolism. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1910**, xxvi, 369.
- Edkins (J. S.) & Tweedy (M.)**. The natural channels of absorption evoking the chemical mechanism of gastric secretion. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1909**, xxxviii, 263.
- Ewald (G.)**. Ueber die Bedeutung der freien H Cl für die Pepsinverdauung und über die psychische und chemische Beeinflussung der Magensekretion. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cvi, 498.
- Faber (K.)**. Die chronische Gastritis, speziell die zur Achylie führende. *Ergebn. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1910**, vi, 491.
- Fenwick (W. S.)**. The clinical significance of gastric hypersecretion and its connection with latent disease of the appendix. *Proc. Royal Soc. Med., Surg. sec.*, **1910**, lxxvii, 33.
- Grandauer (K.)**. Der hemmende Einfluss der Psyche auf die Sekretion des menschlichen Magens, etc. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, ci, 302.
- Herzberg (S.)**. Ueber Magenveränderungen bei perniziöser Anämie. *Virchow, Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1911**, cciv, 116.
- Ivy (A. C.)**. Studies on the secretion of the pyloric end of the stomach. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1919**, xlix, 142.
- Keeton (R. W.) & Koch (F. C.)**. The distribution of gastrin in the body. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxvii, 481.
- Kemp (S.)**. Beitrag zur Pathologie und Therapie des Magengeschwürs. *Arch. f. Verdauungskr.*, **1912**, xviii, 701.
- Lermann (W. W.), Rehfuss (M. E.) & Hawk (P. B.)**. Gastric analysis. III. The examination of the abnormal gastric residuum. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, lxxvi, 1340.
- Lichty (J. A.)**. The relation of disease of the gall bladder and biliary ducts to the gastric functions. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1911**, cxli, 72.
- Lüthje (H.)**. Einige Bemerkungen zum Krankheitsbild der Hyperacidität. *Therap. d. Gegenw.*, **1913**, liv, 3.
- Meyer (J.), Cohen (S. J.) & Carlson (A. J.)**. Contribution to the physiology of the stomach, xlv. Gastric secretion during fever. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1918**, xxi, 354.
- Minami (D.)**. Ueber die Sekretion und die Fermente des Magens bei Hunden nach Phosphorvergiftung und bei künstlich erzeugten Anämien. *Virchow's Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1912**, ccviii, 13.

- Mintz (S.).** Zur Frage des Chemismus des Magens. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, civ, 481.
- Rehfuss (M. E.).** An analysis of achylia gastrica. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1915**, cl, 72.
- Rehfuss (M. E.), Bergeim (O.) & Hawk (P. B.).** The question of the residuum found in the empty stomach. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxviii, 11.
- Rehfuss (M. E.) & Hawk (P. B.).** Direct evidence of the secretion of a gastric juice of constant acid concentration by the human subject. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxviii, 2088.
- Rehfuss (M. E.) & Hawk (P. B.).** Gastric analysis. I. Fundamental principles. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, lxxvi, 371.  
Gastric analysis. II. The interdigestive phase or the principles governing the phenomena of the resting stomach. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, lxxvi, 564.
- Rosemann (R.).** Die Magensaftsekretion bei Verminderung des Chlorvorrates des Körpers. *Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol.*, **1911**, cxlii, 208.

### Gastric Motility

- Faber (K.).** Atonia ventriculi. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, lxxvi, 1.
- Fujinami (K.).** Pylorusspasmus, Hypersekretion, Motilitätsstörung. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911-12**, cv, 449.
- Glaessner (K.) & Kreuzlich (S.).** Ueber die Pylorusspasmus. *München. med. Wchnschr.*, **1913**, lx., 582.
- Groedel (F. M.).** Die Magenbewegungen. *Fortsch. a. d. Geb. d. Roentg. Erg. Band xxvii.*
- Haudek (M.).** Ueber die diagnostische Verwertbarkeit der Antiperistaltik des Magens. *Wien. med. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, lxii, 1059.
- Hertz (A. F.).** The passage of food through the human alimentary canal. *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1908**, i, 130.  
Functional hour-glass stomach. *Proc. Royal Soc. Med., Med. sec.*, **1912**, v, 60.  
Investigations of the motor functions of the alimentary canal by means of the x-rays. *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1912**, i, 225.
- Holzknecht (G.).** Zur Röntgendiagnose der Magenatonie. *Wien. med. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, lxii, 1045.
- Holzknecht (G.) & Luger (A.).** Zur Pathologie und Diagnostik des Gastrosasmus. *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Ch.*, **1913**, xxvi, 669.
- Kaestle (C.), Rieder (H.) & Rosenthal (J.).** The Bioröntgenography of the internal organs. *Arch. Röntgen Ray*, **1910**, xv, 3.
- McClure (C. W.), Reynolds (L.) & Schwartz (C. O.).** On the behavior of the pyloric sphincter in normal man. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1920**, xxvi, 410.
- Schicker (A.).** Röntgenuntersuchungen über Form und Rhythmus der Magenperistaltik beim Menschen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, civ, 566.
- von Tabora (D.).** Ueber motorische Magenreflexe. *Verhandl. d. Cong. f. inn. Med.*, **1911**, xxviii, 378.

### Acute Dilatation of the Stomach

- Conner (L. A.).** Acute dilatation of the stomach, and its relation to mesenteric obstruction of the duodenum. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1907**, cxxviii, 345.
- Fussell (M. H.).** Acute dilatation of the stomach in pneumonia. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1911**, cxlii, 794.
- Laffer (W. B.).** Acute dilatation of the stomach and arterio mesenteric ileus. *Ann. Surg.*, **1908**, xlvii, 390, 532.
- Payer (H.).** Die postnarkotische Magenlähmung. *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chi.*, **1910**, xxii, 411. . •

## Vomiting

- Hesse (O.).** Zur Kenntniss des Brechaktes nach Röntgenversuchen an Hunden. *Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol.*, **1913**, clii, 1.
- Ingraham (C. B.).** Pernicious vomiting of pregnancy. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1912**, lviii, 25.
- Kuttner (L.).** Ueber nervöses Erbrechen. *Med. Klin.*, **1912**, viii, 809.
- Underhill (F. P.) & Rand (R. F.).** The peculiarities of nitrogenous metabolism in pernicious vomiting of pregnancy. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1910**, v, 61.

## Gastro-enterostomy

- Berg (A. A.).** Duodenal fistula; its treatment by gastrojejunostomy and pyloric occlusion. *Ann. Surg.*, **1907**, xlv, 721.
- Cannon (W. B.) & Blake (J. B.).** Gastro-enterostomy and pyloroplasty. *Ann. Surg.*, **1905**, xli, 686.
- Kelling (G.).** Studien zur Chirurgie des Magens. *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1900**, lxii, 289.

## Ulcer

- Aschoff (L.).** Ueber die mechanischen Momente in der Pathogenese des runden Magengeschwürs und über seine Beziehungen zum Krebs. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, xxxviii, 494.
- Barclay (A. E.).** The stomach and oesophagus. A radiographic study. London, 1913.
- Berger (D.) & Henius (M.).** Röntgenverfahren im Dienste der Erkennung und Behandlung der Magen- und Darmerkrankungen. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, xxxviii, 653.
- von Bergmann (G.).** Das spasmogene Ulcus pepticum. *München. med. Wchnschr.*, **1913**, lx, 169.
- Burge (W. E.) & (E. L.).** The rate of oxidation of enzymes and their corresponding pro-enzymes. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxvii, 462.
- Carman (R. D.).** Radiologic signs of duodenal ulcer. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxii, 980.
- Carman (R. D.).** Roentgenologic aspects of hour-glass stomach. *Surg., Gynec. & Obst.*, **1918**, xxvii, 426.
- Case (J. T.).** The Roentgen findings in gastric and duodenal ulcer. *Surgery, Gynecology and Obst.*, **1914**, xviii, 739.
- Dawson (B.) [et al.].** Pathogenesis, diagnosis and medical treatment of gastric ulcer. *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1912**, ii, 936.
- Friedenwald (J.) & Baetjer (F. H.).** The value of x-ray examinations in the diagnosis of ulcer of the stomach and duodenum. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1913**, cxlvi, 480.
- Gruber (G. B.).** Zur Frage über das Zustandekommen des peptischen Magen- und Duodenalgeschwürs. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, cx, 481.
- Katzenstein (M.).** Beitrag zur Entstehung des Magengeschwürs. *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1912-13**, c, 939; **1913**, ci, 1.
- Möller (S.).** Die Pathogenese des Ulcus ventriculi mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der neueren experimentellen Ergebnisse. *Ergeb. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1911**, vii, 520.
- Ophüls (W.).** The relation of gastric and duodenal ulcer to vascular lesions. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 469.
- Payr (E.).** Beiträge zur Pathogenese pathologischen Anatomie und radicalen operativen Therapie des runden Magengeschwürs. *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1910**, xciii, 436-496.



- Rosenow (E. C.).** *The production of ulcer of the stomach by injection of streptococci.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1913**, lxi, 1947.
- Schlesinger (E.).** *Die Ergebnisse der Röntgenuntersuchung beim Ulcus ventriculi.* Deutsch. med. Wchnschr., **1913**, xxix, 552.
- Schryver (S. B.) & Singer (C.).** *Investigations on the gastric juice in malignant and non-malignant diseases of the stomach and duodenum.* Quart. Jour. Med., **1912-13**, vi, 309.
- Susuki (T.).** *Ueber experimentelle Erzeugung der Magengeschwüre.* Arch. f. klin. Chir., **1912**, xcvi, 632.

### *Carcinoma of Stomach*

- Emerson (C. P.).** *Der Einfluss des Carcinoms auf die gastrischen Verdauungsvorgänge.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1902**, lxxii, 415.
- Fränkel (A.).** *Diagnostische und operationsprognostische Bedeutung der Röntgenkinographie beim Magenkarzinom.* Verhandl. d. Cong. f. inn. Med., **1912**, xxi, 153.
- Freidman (J. C.) & Hamburger (W. W.).** *The value of edestin and peptone in the diagnosis of cancer of the stomach.* Arch. Int. Med., **1913**, xii, 346.
- Neubauer (O.) & Fischer (H.).** *Ueber das Vorkommen eines peptidspaltenden Fermentes im carcinomatösen Mageninhalt und seine diagnostische Bedeutung.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1909**, xcvi, 499.

### *Gastric Sensations*

- Aaron (C. D.).** *Chronic appendicitis, pylorospasm and duodenal ulcer.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1915**, lxi, 1845.
- Cade (A.) & Leriche (R.).** *Klinische, pathogenetische und therapeutische Studie über die gastrischen Krisen bei Tabes dorsalis.* Deutsch. Ztschr. f. Chir., **1913**, cxi, 41.
- Carlson (A. J.).** *Contributions to the physiology of the stomach.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1912-13**, xxi, 151, 175, 212, 318; **1913**, xxii, 245, 369, 389; **1914**, xxiii, 95, 119, 126.
- Carlson (A. J.).** *The control of hunger in health and disease.* University of Chicago Press, **1916**.
- Hardt (L. L. J.).** *Pain in active pathologic processes in stomach or duodenum. Gastric and duodenal contractions as the direct cause.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1918**, lxx, 837.
- Hertz (A. F.).** *The sensibility of the alimentary canal in health and disease.* Lancet, London, **1911**, i, 1051, 1119, 1187.
- Homans (J.).** *The relation of pain in gastric and duodenal ulcer to muscular activity of the stomach.* Am. Jour. Med. Sci., **1919**, clvii, 74.
- Jones (A. A.).** *Hunger pain.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1912**, liz, 1154.
- Luckhardt (A. B.).** *The cause of the polyphagia in pancreatic diabetes.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1914**, xxiii, 313.
- Meyer (J.).** *Contribution to the physiology of the stomach, xlix. Hunger and appetite in pulmonary tuberculosis.* Arch. Int. Med., **1918**, xxi, 759.
- Meyer (J.) & Carlson (A. J.).** *Contributions to the physiology of the stomach, xliii. Hunger and appetite in fever.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1917**, xlv, 222.
- Neisser (E.) & Bräuning (H.).** *Ueber normale und über vorzeitige Sättigung.* München. med. Wchnschr., **1911**, lviii, 1955.

### *Exclusion of Pancreatic Juice and Bile from Intestines*

- Allen (F. M.).** *Studies concerning Glycosuria and Diabetes.* Boston, **1913**, 986.
- Bayliss (W. M.) & Starling (E. H.).** *The mechanism of pancreatic secretion.* Jour. Physiol., **1902**, xxviii, 325.

- Glaessner (K.).** *Allgemeine Diagnose der Pankreaserkrankungen.* *Ergeb. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1910**, vi, 29.
- Lombroso (U.).** *Kann das nicht in den Darm sezernierende Pankreas auf die Nahrstoff-resorption einwirken?* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1908**, lx, 99.
- McClure (C. W.), Vincent (B.) & Pratt (J. H.).** *The absorption of fat in partially and in completely depancreatized dogs.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1917**, xxv, 381.
- Pratt (J. H.).** *The functional diagnosis of pancreatic disease.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1912**, cxliii, 313.
- Pratt (J. H.), Lamson (P. D.) & Marks (H. K.).** *The effect of excluding pancreatic juice from the intestines.* *Trans. Assn. Am. Phys.*, **1909**, xxiv, 266.
- Schmidt (A.).** *Funktionelle Pankreasachylie.* *Deutsch. Arch. klin. Med.*, **1906**, lxxvii, 456.
- Tileston (W.).** *The diagnosis of complete absence of pancreatic secretion from the intestine, with the results of digestion and absorption experiments.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 525.

### *Intestinal Secretion and Absorption*

- Du Bois (E. F.).** *The absorption of food in typhoid fever.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, x, 177.
- Flint (J. M.).** *The effect of extensive resections of the small intestine.* *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1912**, xxi, 127.
- Meyer (H.).** *Ueber die intestinale Gärungsdyspepsie.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xcii, 452.
- Schmidt (A.) & Strasburger (J.).** *Ueber die intestinale Gärungsdyspepsie der Erwachsenen.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1901**, lxix, 570.
- Schultz (R.).** *Ueber chronische Magen-Darmdyspepsie und chronische dyspeptische Diarrhöen.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciv, 125.

### *Motor Disturbances of the Intestines*

- Barclay (A. E.).** *Note on the movements of the large intestine.* *Arch. of the Roentg. Ray*, **1912**, xvi, 422.
- Boehm (G.).** *Die spastische Obstipation und ihre Beziehung zur Antiperistaltik.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, cii, 431.
- Cannon (W. B.).** *Mechanical factors of digestion.* *London*, **1911**.
- Cannon (W. B.) & Murphy (F. T.).** *Physiologic observations on experimentally produced ileus.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1907**, xlix, 840.  
*The movements of the stomach and intestines in some surgical conditions.* *Ann. Surg.*, **1906**, xliii, 512.
- Case (J. T.).** *A critical study of intestinal stasis, including new observations and conclusions respecting the cause of ileal stasis.* *Surg. Gyn. Obstet.*, **1914**, xix, 592.
- Czyhalarz & Selka.** *Beitrag zur radiologischen Diagnostik der Dünn- und Dickdarmstenose.* *Wien. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, xxv, 340.
- Dragstedt (L. R.), Moorhead (J. J.) & Burcky (F. W.).** *Intestinal obstruction. An experimental study of the intoxication in closed intestinal loops.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1917**, xxv, 421.
- Dragstedt (L. R.), Dragstedt (C. A.), McClintock (J. T.) & Chase (C. S.).** *Intestinal obstruction. II. A study of the factors involved in the production and absorption of toxic materials from the intestine.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1919**, xxx, 109.
- Hartwell (J. A.), Hoguet (J. P.) & Beekman (F.).** *An experimental study of intestinal obstruction.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 701.

- Hertz (A. F.) & Newton (A.).** *The normal movements of the colon in man.* *Jour. of Physiol.*, **1913**, xlvii, 57.
- Kaestle (C.).** *Die Bewegungsvorgänge des menschlichen Dünn- und Dickdarmes während der Verdauung auf Grund Röntgenographischer und Röntgenkinematographischer Untersuchungen.* *München. med. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, lix, 446.
- Lang (S.).** *Die Beeinflussung der Darmmotilität durch Abführ- und Stopfmittel.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1914**, xviii, 250.
- Rieder (H.).** *Die physiologische Dickdarmbewegungen beim Menschen.* *Fortschr. a. d. Geb. d. Röntgenstrahlen*, **1911**, xviii, 85.
- Roith (O.).** *Ueber die Peristaltik und Antiperistaltik des menschlichen Dickdarmes.* *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. Med. u. Chir.*, **1913**, xxv, 203.
- Schmidt (A.).** *Funktionsprüfung des Darmes mittelst der Probekost.* *Wiesbaden*, **1908**.
- Stierlin (E.).** *Ueber chronische Funktionsstörungen des Dickdarms.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, x, 383.
- Stone (H. S.), Bernheim (B. M.) & Whipple (G. H.).** *The experimental study of intestinal obstruction.* *Ann. Surg.*, **1914**, lix, 714.
- Whipple (G. H.).** *Intestinal obstruction. A proteose intoxication.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1915**, lxxv, 476.
- Whipple (G. H.), Stone (H. B.) & Bernheim (B. M.).** *Intestinal obstruction.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xvii, 286, 307; **1914**, xix, 144, 166.

### Intestinal Sensations

- Hertz (A. F.).** *The sensibility of the alimentary canal in health and disease.* *Lancet, London*, **1911**, i, 1051, 1119, 1187.

### Intestinal Auto-intoxication

- Adami (J. G.).** *Chronic intestinal stasis, "auto-intoxication" and subinfection.* *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1914**, i, 177.
- Dale (H. H.) & Laidlow (P. P.).** *The physiological action of B-iminazolyethylamine.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1910**, xli, 318.  
*Further observations on the action of B-iminazolyethylamine.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1910**, xliii, 182.
- Dixon (W. E.).** *Discussion on alimentary toxemia.* *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **1913**, vi, General Rep., 129.
- Eppinger (H.) & Gutmann (J.).** *Zur Frage der vom darmausgehenden Intoxikationen.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxviii, 399.
- Harley (V.).** *The toxins of the alimentary canal.* *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **1913**, vi, General Rep., 21.
- Harvey (W. H.).** *Auto-intoxication and experimental nephritis in rabbits.* *Jour. Path. and Bacteriol.*, **1911**, xvi, 95.
- Mutch (N.).** *Bacterial activities of the alimentary tract.* *Brit. Jour. Surg.*, **1915**, ii, 608.



# Chapter III

## The Metabolism

### The Energy Metabolism

The products of digestion, absorbed from the gastro-intestinal canal, undergo various transformations in the body. Some are broken down almost immediately into simpler compounds which are then eliminated from the body by the excretory organs, some are stored either unchanged or after modification and are used later as needed, while still others serve to build up the complex living protoplasm of the tissues and are ultimately disintegrated into waste material. These chemical transformations within the body constitute its metabolism.

### Methods of Study

In studying metabolism, one may follow an individual food material from the time of its absorption until it is finally converted into waste products. In this way, one may speak of a protein metabolism, a fat metabolism, etc. Certain disturbances in these separate metabolisms will be considered partly in this and partly in the following chapters. On the other hand, metabolism may be considered collectively from the standpoint of energy transformations. The body is a combustion apparatus in which various materials derived from the food are hydrolyzed, oxidized, and otherwise altered by means of special ferments. Their potential energy is largely converted into kinetic energy. Of this, some energy may leave the body in the form of mechanical work performed; but practically all the remainder becomes converted into heat and leaves the body in this form. The total may be expressed in terms of heat units or calories.

**Direct Calorimetry.**—The total metabolism may be determined directly by placing the individual in a suitable calorimeter and measuring the heat given off from the body through conduction, radiation and evaporation; at the same time making allowances for any change in the temperature of the body itself. This is the method of direct calorimetry.

**Indirect Calorimetry.**—The total metabolism of the body may also be calculated if we know how many grams of fat, of carbohydrate, and of

protein are consumed in a given time, for each gram in burning liberates a definite and known amount of heat. When the ordinary foodstuffs are oxidized to the same end products as are formed in the body, each gram yields the following number of calories:

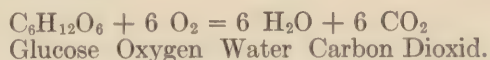
CALORIES	
Glucose .....	3.8
Cane Sugar .....	4.0
Starch .....	4.1
Fat .....	9.3
Protein .....	4.1

This method of determining the total metabolism is called indirect calorimetry.

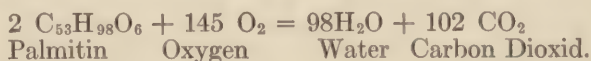
**Respiratory Quotient.**—In order to determine the total metabolism by this method, it is necessary to estimate the amount and kind of material consumed in the body. This is done by a study of the waste products eliminated. The nitrogenous waste in the urine furnishes an index of the rate of protein metabolism. The absorption of oxygen and the elimination of carbon dioxid through the lungs furnish a measure of the metabolism of carbohydrates, fats, and the non-nitrogenous portion of the proteins, for all these are burned to carbon dioxid and water, and the former leaves the body in the expired air. The separate amounts of fats and carbohydrates burned are estimated by determining the ratio between the volume of carbon dioxid given off from and the volume of oxygen absorbed by the lungs. This ratio is called the respiratory quotient.

$$\text{Respiratory quotient} = \frac{\text{Vol. CO}_2}{\text{Vol. O}_2}.$$

When carbohydrates alone are burned, the reaction may be represented by the following formula:



The respiratory quotient here is equal to 1.0. When fats alone are burned the completed reaction may be expressed by the formula:



The respiratory quotient here is equal to 102 divided by 145 or approximately 0.7. Knowing the respiratory quotient, therefore, it is possible, after allowing for the effects of protein metabolism, to estimate the relative amounts of fats and carbohydrates that have been burned in a given time. A quotient of 0.85, for example, if derived wholly from a

combustion of fats and carbohydrates, would represent a combustion of such quantities that equal amounts of carbon dioxid were derived from each.

The respiratory quotient is also influenced by the conversion of one substance into another within the body. A conversion of fat into carbohydrate requires an excess of oxygen and thus tends to lower the quotient; while a conversion of carbohydrate into fat has the opposite effect. As a rule these changes within the body are not of sufficient magnitude appreciably to alter the quotient, but in hibernating animals during the autumn months the rapid deposition of fat while eating large quantities of carbohydrates may cause the respiratory quotient to rise well above unity.

**Retention of Heat and Waste.**—Direct as well as indirect calorimetric determinations must take into account the fact that heat as well as waste products may be temporarily retained in the body. In direct calorimetry the temperature of the body must be controlled, for a rise of body temperature will indicate that the heat formed in the body has not all been given off to the calorimeter. Similarly, a retention of nitrogen or of carbon dioxid in the body will interfere with the indirect calculations. It is obvious that with a long period of observation the errors from these sources will lessen, for in the long run the amount of heat formed is equal to the amount eliminated, and the same is true of the waste products.

The results obtained by the methods of direct and indirect calorimetry agree very closely, thus proving that, when various food materials are burned in the body they liberate the same amounts of heat as when they are burned to the same waste products outside the body.

## The Rate of Metabolism

### *Physiological Variations in a Given Individual*

Determinations of the rate at which heat is formed in the body show that this is subject to very considerable variations even in a given individual. Of the factors that influence the rate of metabolism in a normal man the most important are muscular exercise and the ingestion of food.

#### (a) Muscular Exercises

Muscular exercise influences the rate of metabolism to a greater degree than any other individual factor. The following table, taken from the observations of Benedict and Carpenter, illustrates the effect of exercise:



EFFECT OF MUSCULAR ACTIVITY ON HEAT PRODUCTION

Kind of Activity	Heat Produced in One Hour in Calories
Man at rest, sleeping.....	71
Man at rest, awake and sitting .....	97
Man at rest, standing.....	114
Man at very severe exercise.....	654

It is evident, from the difference of about 17 per cent between the sitting and standing metabolism, that even slight muscular exercise increases the rate of metabolism to an appreciable extent. It is evident also, from the maximum figure given in this table, that very violent exercise may increase the rate of metabolism to eight or nine times its minimum rate. The maximum here recorded was observed in a trained athlete during bicycle riding and was probably about the greatest metabolism of which such a man is capable. Lesser grades of exercise are difficult to define in exact terms. The effect of walking was studied by Zuntz and his associates. They found that walking on the level at a moderate pace increased the rate of metabolism up to about three times the resting rate, walking rapidly on a level increased it to about five times the resting, while walking rapidly up a steep incline might increase it to almost nine times the resting value.

**Minor Muscular Activities.**—It is evident from these observations that even minor grades of muscular activity exercise a marked influence upon the rate of metabolism. In all metabolic studies, therefore, the amount of muscular movement must be controlled with the greatest care.

According to Benedict, there is also a distinct difference between the metabolism of an individual who is sleeping and the metabolism of this same individual when he is lying quietly in bed with no evident muscular tension and with no external movements, the difference being in the neighborhood of 13 per cent. Benedict has found, furthermore, that the metabolism in the afternoon is, as a rule, somewhat higher than it is in the morning. It seems probable, therefore, that the physiological activities of the waking day increase the body metabolism to some extent, even though they be associated with no demonstrable change in muscular activity.

**Chilliness and Muscular Tone.**—When a person or an animal is exposed to cold, the resulting chilliness may cause an evident increase in the muscular tone. If the chilliness is marked, it causes the involuntary muscular movements that we recognize as shivering. Such muscular activities and particularly shivering cause a definite increase in the rate of metabolism. In the dog, exposure to cold seems to increase the rate

of metabolism, quite apart from the occurrence of obvious muscular movements. In man, however, this does not occur and apparently no increase in metabolism follows exposure to cold, provided there is muscular relaxation and muscular quiet.

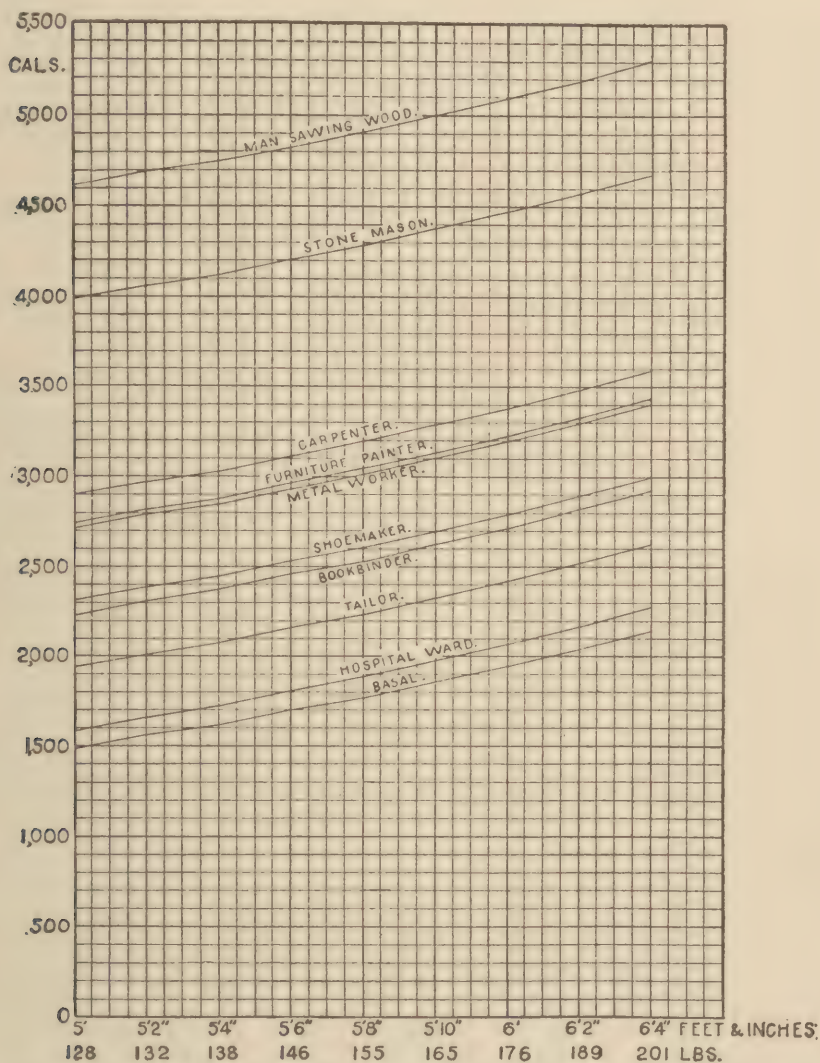


Fig. 62.—Metabolism in Calories Per Day Calculated for Men Engaged for 8 Hours in Various Industrial Pursuits. (From Lusk, Jour. Am. Med. Assn.)

**Occupation.**—Since exercise is a preëminent factor in modifying the rate of metabolism it follows that the rate will vary widely in different occupations. Becker and Hamalainen have determined the additional hourly metabolism in different occupations as follows:

*Extra Calories per Hour Attributable to Occupations of Men*

Tailor .....	44
Bookbinder .....	81
Shoemaker .....	90
Metal worker, filing and hammering.....	141
Painter of furniture.....	145
Carpenter making a table.....	164
Stonemason chiseling tombstone.....	300
Man sawing wood.....	378

On the basis of these figures it is possible to calculate, as Lusk has done, the total daily requirement for individuals following these occupations, on the assumption that for eight hours the individual was at rest, that for sixteen hours he was sitting or standing and that eight of these sixteen hours were spent at his trade. The results of such a calculation are shown in Figure 62.

**(b) The Effect of Food**

It is common knowledge that when a large meal is eaten during warm weather, the individual feels warmer and perspires more freely. During cold weather a large meal increases the resistance to cold. Metabolic studies have shown that there is a greater liberation of heat in the body after the ingestion of food and that this may last for twelve hours or more. The amount of heat set free varies with the kind of food taken, protein increasing the metabolism to a greater extent than either fat or carbohydrates. Indeed, a very large meal of meat given to a dog may double its fasting metabolism. According to Rubner, a dog kept in surroundings of 33° C. and given the quantity of food that will just supply its fasting energy requirements shows the following increases beyond the normal fasting metabolism with the different kinds of food taken:

Protein .....	30.9 per cent
Fat .....	12.7 " "
Cane sugar .....	5.8 " "

In man, according to Du Bois, the ingestion of 200 grams of dextrose, or the ingestion of an amount of casein equivalent to 10.5 grams of nitrogen, increases the fasting metabolism by about 12 per cent.

**Cause of Increased Metabolism After Food.**—The cause of this liberation of heat after eating has been a subject of much discussion. It now seems established that no appreciable part of the increase is due to an increase in the motor and secretory activities of the digestive organs. Neither



a saline cathartic nor a bulky and indigestible food, such as agar, causes a definite increase in metabolism. Furthermore, when the pancreatic juice is excluded from the intestines of dogs the increased amount of undigested food in the intestines causes no marked increase in metabolism. Finally, bouillon which stimulates the secretion of gastric juice is without effect upon the general metabolism. It is evident, therefore, that the increase in metabolism observed after eating must depend upon some effect produced by the products of digestion after they have been absorbed from the gastro-intestinal canal.

Rubner believed that the increased heat liberated after the ingestion of food was derived mainly from a series of transformations in the material absorbed, and that this had nothing to do with the fundamental activities of the living tissue. According to Lusk, however, the increased heat production is due, as Voit originally believed, to an increase in the metabolic activities of the cells. Lusk believes that an influx of fat or carbohydrates enables the cells to oxidize more rapidly, because of the increased mass of food material that surrounds them. The unusually marked effect of protein, however, is attributed by Lusk to the action of certain decomposition products of proteins, especially those derived from alanin and glycocoll. These directly stimulate the living protoplasm to increased activity, without themselves necessarily taking part in the increased oxidative processes. A somewhat similar action is attributed by Benedict and Joslin to the acids present in the body in diabetic acidosis.

### ***The Basal Metabolism***

It is obvious that since the rate of metabolism is subject to marked physiological fluctuations, any determination that will be useful for purposes of comparison must eliminate, so far as possible, the effects of exercise and of food. For this reason it has become customary to determine the energy metabolism: (1) when the individual is fasting in the morning, from fourteen to eighteen hours after the last meal; and (2) with the individual in as complete muscular repose as possible. The energy metabolism under these conditions is spoken of as the basal metabolism. This is not the lowest possible metabolism, for Benedict has shown that the metabolism sinks to a still lower level during sleep. It furnishes, however, a convenient basis of comparison for different individuals and for the same individual on different occasions.

### **The Normal Basal Metabolism**

When the basal metabolisms of different individuals are compared, it is found that these show considerable differences. In a general way, the basal metabolism increases with the weight of the subject, and for this

reason the rate of metabolism per unit of body weight has been used as a basis of comparison. According to Benedict's compilation, the average basal metabolism of normal adults is about 25 calories per kilo of body weight per day. There is, however, a considerable variation on either side of this average, the limits in Benedict's determinations being from 18.1 to 32.3 calories. Lighter individuals, though showing a smaller total metabolism than heavier ones, usually have a greater metabolism per unit of body weight. Similarly, tall individuals usually have a greater metabolism than short individuals of the same weight. For this reason it has been proposed to compare the rate of metabolism with the body surface area.

Gephart and Du Bois, who estimated the body surface from the weight and height of the individual, found that the basal metabolism per square

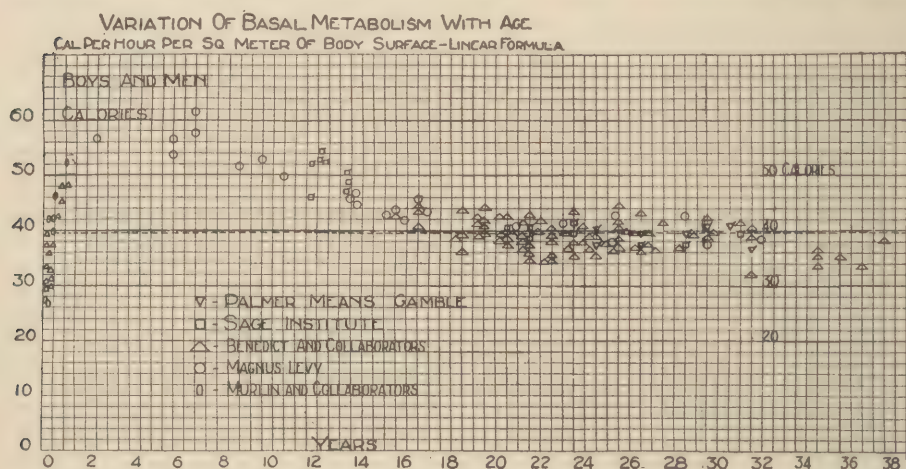


Fig. 62A.—Variations of Basal Metabolism with Age: Calories per Hour per Square Meter of Body Surface. Note the Increased Rate during Childhood. (From DuBois, Arch. Int. Med.)

meter of body surface per hour averaged about forty calories for normal young man and about thirty-seven calories for normal woman. As Benedict has pointed out, however, the rate of metabolism is not exactly proportional to the body surface. Thus, athletes possess a somewhat higher rate of metabolism than do less active men of the same height and weight, because they have a greater amount of active protoplasm, and men show a somewhat higher rate than women for the same reason. Furthermore, the metabolism varies according to age, being most rapid between two and six years and decreasing gradually after thirty-five years. (Fig. 62A.) It would seem then that the rate of metabolism is determined: (1) by the amount of living protoplasmic tissue, and (2) by the activity of this tissue. The latter may be stimulated by chemical substances within the body.

**Standards of Comparison.**—Comparisons between normal and pathological individuals require the adoption of some more tangible standard than the mass of active protoplasmic tissue. The most satisfactory comparison is made by comparing the metabolism of a given pathological individual with the average of a group of normal individuals of the same age, weight, height and sex. For practical purposes it is customary to compare the observed basal metabolism with a standard based on height and weight, making allowance for the influence of sex and age. According to Harris and Benedict, the prediction of the most probable basal metabolism of any given normal individual can be made by using the following formulae:

$$\text{For men } h = 66.4730 + 13.7516w + 5.0033s - 6.7550a$$

$$\text{For women } h = 655.0955 + 9.5634w + 1.8496s - 4.6756a$$

where  $h$  equals the total heat production per twenty-four hours,  $w$  equals the weight in kilograms,  $s$  equals the stature in centimeters and  $a$  equals the age in years. More commonly the heat production is compared with the body surface as estimated from the height and weight according to the method of Du Bois. Deviations of fifteen per cent over and ten per cent under the body surface standard are usually pathological.

### Pathological Variations in Basal Metabolism

A pathological increase in the basal metabolism is caused by thyroid hyperfunction, and is one of our most reliable measures of the severity of exophthalmic goiter. Very severe cases show a basal metabolism that is 75 per cent or more above the normal, moderately severe 50 to 75 per cent, milder cases less than 50 per cent. When thyroid substance has been administered to normal individuals, the effect upon the metabolism seems to have differed in different experiments, possibly on account of the varying activity of the different preparations. The intravenous injection of the active principle—Kendall's thyroxin—into normal or myxedematous persons is, however, regularly followed by an increase of metabolism. The effect of thyroid medication on the gaseous metabolism of a cretin is shown in Figure 62B.

In fever the basal metabolism is usually increased by from 20 to 50 per cent. In leukemia, according to Grafe, it is increased from 25 to 100 per cent apparently on account of the excessive metabolism of the blood cells. Increases have been also described in diabetic acidosis, in phosphorus poisoning, in phlorhizin poisoning, in severe anemias, and at high altitudes.

**Reduced Basal Metabolism.**—The basal metabolism is markedly reduced in conditions of diminished thyroid activity (myxedema, cretinism), being in some cases from 48 to 60 per cent of the normal. The administration of thyroid substance to such patients increases their metabolism to or above the normal. Grafe has also described a reduction of metab-



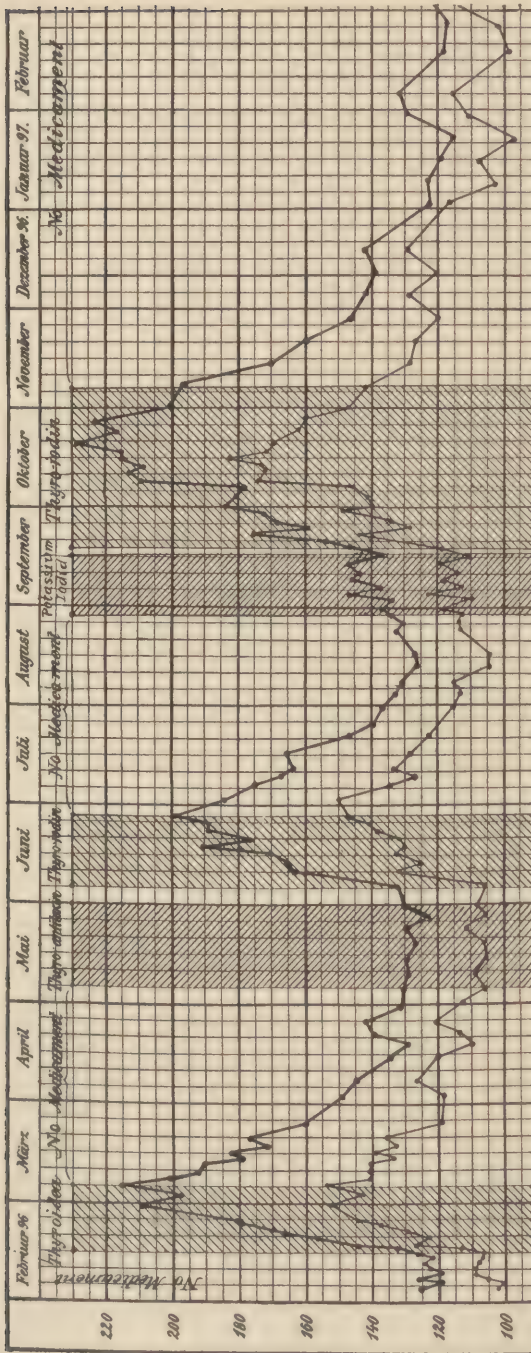


Fig. 62B.—The Effect of Thyroid Medication on the Gaseous Metabolism of a Sporadic Cretin. Upper Curve Oxygen Consumption and Lower Curve Carbon Dioxide Elimination in c.c. per Minute. Note that Thyro-antioxin Produced No Effect and Potassium Iodid But Slight Effect. Thyroid Preparations, on the Other Hand, Produced a Marked Acceleration of Metabolism. (After Magnus-Levy, Ztschr. f. klin. Med.)

olism in psychopathic patients suffering from stupor. Prolonged starvation, either partial or complete, diminishes the rate of metabolism.

### ***Obesity***

Whenever the amount of potential energy in the food is greater than the amount of energy leaving the body, a deposition of energy-containing material in the body takes place. The ability of the body to store proteins and carbohydrates is, however, limited, so that any considerable and long-continued excess of food leads to an accumulation of fat. Conversely, obesity is always due to the fact that the intake of energy in the food has exceeded the body expenditures.

It is common knowledge that excessive eating and lack of exercise tend to produce obesity. The change from an active muscular life to one of muscular inactivity, or the change from a plain fare to a rich and tempting diet, is a well-known cause of increase in weight. The reason for the increase under such conditions is obvious, for the changes described tend to cause a disproportion between the intake and the consumption of energy.

On the other hand, certain individuals grow fat despite the fact that they appear to eat moderately and appear to take an ordinary amount of exercise. The cause for the gain in such individuals requires further consideration.

**Increased Caloric Intake.**—In certain instances, such persons really eat more than would appear on superficial observation. The value of food as an energy-carrier depends not upon its bulk alone but upon its composition as well. When a gram of fat is burned in the body it yields approximately 9.3 calories, and when a gram of protein or starch is burned it yields approximately 4.1 calories, whereas cellulose and water furnish no available energy to the body. Foods containing much water or much cellulose, therefore, contain relatively little energy, whereas fats, oils, sugars, and starchy foods are heavy carriers of energy. The person who grows fat, despite the small bulk of food eaten, is often one who chooses the energy-containing foods out of a varied menu, and prefers sweets, pastries, bread and butter to salads, fruits and green vegetables. Despite the fact that he appears to eat moderately, he may yet be taking a rich diet when measured in calories.

**Diminished Exercise.**—The energy consumed in exercise may be also misjudged. The energy requirements of a man of moderate weight (70 kilos) are estimated by Magnus-Levy about as follows:

Basal metabolism .....	1,600	calories	per	day
At rest in room .....	2,200	"	"	"
Light work .....	2,600	"	"	"
Moderate work .....	3,100	"	"	"
Heavy work .....	3,500	"	"	"

It is certain, however, that the energy consumption cannot be measured by the amount of external work performed, for certain individuals, especially those trained, are able to accomplish a given task with a minimum number of movements. Furthermore, while the nervous, restless individual is constantly making useless movements and does not relax his muscular tension even on sitting down, the phlegmatic person may seize every opportunity to relax, to rest and to sleep. It is apparent, therefore, that in estimating the consumption of energy one must take into account the total number of movements and the muscular tension, and not rely solely upon the work accomplished.

**Constitutional Obesity.**—Yet even when the amount of food is estimated from its caloric content and this is compared with the total muscular activity, there may still be individuals who grow or remain unaccountably fat. Von Noorden, particularly, has cited cases of obesity, where, despite a considerable restriction in the total calories taken per day and despite the fact that the individual was taking a prescribed amount of exercise, no loss of weight occurred over a considerable period of observation. Such cases, though admittedly rare, have raised the question whether obesity may be due, in certain instances, *not to a fault in eating or in exercise, but to some more fundamental disturbance in metabolism*, which enables obese persons to get along and to accomplish tasks with a smaller expenditure of energy than is normal. In other words, may not obesity be due to an unusually low basal metabolism, to a relatively small expenditure of energy for a given amount of muscular exercise, or finally to an unusually low production of heat after the ingestion of a given amount of food?

Up to the present time no definite proof has been furnished that such a fundamental alteration in metabolism is an important cause of obesity. The increased production of heat normally observed after eating food is also present in obese persons, although it is said by some to be less in quantity. The amount of heat liberated by a given muscular exercise is difficult to standardize, but there appears to be no reason for assuming that work is accomplished more economically by fat than by lean individuals, except in the sense that the former tend to avoid unnecessary effort and movements. Indeed, on account of their heavier weight, it seems probable that fat persons expend more energy in executing a given movement than do those who are thinner.

**Basal Metabolism in Obesity.**—The basal metabolism of obese individuals has been determined repeatedly in order to see if this differed from the normal. We have already pointed out the difficulties encountered in making comparisons of the basal metabolisms of different normal individuals. These difficulties are further increased when one attempts to compare the obese with the normal, for the reason that the former has a large amount of inactive fat tissue in his body. If the metabolism



per unit of weight be used as a standard of comparison, the fat person has a low metabolism. If the metabolism be compared with the body height, the fat person has a basal metabolism which is in excess of the normal. Finally, if the metabolism per unit of surface area be used as a basis of comparison, many fat individuals show basal metabolisms which coincide with the normal. In some cases of obesity the basal metabolism is less than the lower normal limit; yet the difference is rarely a striking one and it seems improbable that the low basal metabolism even in such individuals can be the sole cause for the increase in body weight.

**Obesity and Endocrine Disease.**—Obesity frequently accompanies certain endocrine disorders. Eunuchs tend to become fat. Women frequently become heavier after a natural or artificial menopause. Diseases of the anterior pituitary lobe may cause the adiposogenital dystrophy described by Fröhlich. Finally, hypothyroidism is commonly believed to predispose to obesity. Animals as well as men frequently gain weight after castration. According to Loewy and Richter, the basal metabolism of the castrated dog is lowered. Others, however, have found that such a lowering is not constant and the tendency to obesity does not necessarily parallel the changes observed in the basal metabolism.

Excision of the pituitary gland in young dogs tends to cause obesity and a definite lowering of metabolism. Means found that some but not all obese persons who showed signs of pituitary disease had a moderate reduction of basal metabolism. Talbot found a reduction in an excessively fat infant with pituitary disease.

**The Regulation of Body Weight.**—Even a slight discrepancy between the intake and the output of energy would in the long run lead to a considerable change in the body weight. Thus von Noorden has estimated that an intake of 200 calories daily, such as is contained in two glasses of milk, over and above what is required to supply the needs of the body, would at the end of a year cause an increase of about twenty-four pounds. Experience teaches, however, that most people cannot make themselves fat simply by drinking two glasses of milk each evening. Nor does a reduction in the daily metabolism necessarily cause a progressive gain in weight. If an individual, doing heavy work with a daily expenditure of 3,500 calories, changes to light work with a daily expenditure of 2,600 calories, his weight may at first increase, but after a while it becomes stationary at the new level. Evidently some mechanism within the body tends to maintain a more or less fixed body weight for any given individual at any given time. Unless this mechanism is disturbed, the simple addition of a few articles to the diet or a moderate reduction in the rate of metabolism, though it may cause some gain in weight, does not lead to obesity.

In the normal individual two factors tend to prevent excessive gains of weight when food is taken in excess of the body needs. These are (1)

an alteration of the appetite and other sensations which govern the food intake and (2) a change in the metabolic rate. A series of unusually large meals often causes an increase of weight amounting to two or more pounds. Yet as a rule this gain lasts only a few days, because, owing to a lessened appetite, less food is taken on succeeding days so long as the weight remains above the usual level. So too, if two glasses of milk are taken in the evening in addition to the regular diet, this commonly causes no great gain in weight, because the individual eats less during his regular meals.

The second factor is a change in the metabolic rate. We know that during partial starvation the body metabolism is less than the normal, even when it is compared with the reduced weight; and probably opposite conditions prevail when an excess of food is taken by a normal individual. At any rate more food in proportion to their weight is required to maintain cattle in a fat condition (Armsby and Fries).

**Obesity a Result of Disturbed Regulation.**—A deposit of fat in the body always means that more energy has been taken in than has left the body.

We have endeavored to make clear (1) that even a slight discrepancy, if long continued, will eventually lead to a considerable deposit of fat and (2) that the normal individual tends to adjust his intake to his body needs so that his weight remains more or less constant.

The cause of obesity lies in a failure of the individual to maintain the balance adjustment. Probably in most cases the disturbance affects the senses which control the intake of food, i.e., hunger, appetite and the sense of repletion. Owing to this disturbance, food is habitually taken in excess of the body needs and energy containing material accumulates in the body. The reduction of appetite which normally occurs as a person gains weight is absent or at any rate fails to occur until the weight has become excessive. Since we have no definite knowledge as to the manner in which our sensations normally regulate the intake of food, it is difficult to discuss the pathological changes in these sensations which may lead to obesity. The fundamental control of food intake probably depends upon some chemical changes within the body. Such control might readily be disturbed both in metabolic diseases and in diseases of the endocrine glands. The association of obesity with gout and diabetes, with disorders of the pituitary, the thyroid and the sex glands, may be explained in this manner.

To what extent a reduced metabolic rate contributes to the production of obesity is less clear. Some fat persons certainly appear to maintain their weight despite a low caloric intake; and in some instances, the basal metabolism is less than the normal standard, when compared with the surface area. Possibly this metabolic rate would be still lower if it were compared with that of normal individuals who by voluntarily eating an excess of food had forced themselves to gain considerable weight.

### Effect on Body Functions

Obesity affects the body in various ways. The thick layer of subcutaneous fat lessens the capacity for heat dissipation through radiation and conduction. So long as the fat person is inactive and the surrounding temperature is cool, the dissipation of heat through the skin does not differ materially from the normal. If, however, the heat that is produced within the body be increased by muscular exercise, and particularly if heat losses are made difficult by exposure to a warm and moist atmosphere, then differences from the normal heat elimination become apparent. Where the lean individual is still able to maintain his normal temperature mainly by an increased radiation and conduction, the fat person cannot lose sufficient heat from the body by these means alone. Consequently he perspires. This excessive sweating of fat individuals aids them in maintaining a normal body temperature under adverse circumstances. At the same time it indicates that the limits of their regulatory power against overheating are more restricted than the normal. When the conditions for heat dissipation are still more unfavorable, the fat person may show an abnormal rise of body temperature while the lean individual is still able to withstand the severe test. Obesity, therefore becomes a predisposing factor in heat stroke.

**Restriction of Liquids.**—Fat individuals usually drink considerable quantities of water. Possibly they feel an instinctive need of liquids, in order that unusual quantities of water should be available for the regulation of the body temperature by sweating. Restriction of liquids may cause an immediate and considerable loss of weight. This early loss, however, appears to be due to a drying out of the body and not to a combustion of fat. At present there is no positive evidence that drink restriction influences the metabolism of fat persons in any fundamental way. Its practical value in the treatment of obesity is still uncertain, but it would seem that any value that drink restriction may possibly possess is attributable not to a change in the fundamental metabolism, but to an effect upon the appetite or upon the capacity for muscular exercise. It should be remembered, however, that drink restriction lessens the amount of water that is available in the body for the purpose of temperature regulation and that, furthermore, a marked restriction in the intake of fluid may affect the functions of the kidney unfavorably. For these reasons rigid drink restriction requires caution.

**Indisposition to Exercise.**—Fat persons tend to restrict the amount of exercise taken. As we have seen, this lack of exercise is a factor in the pathogenesis of obesity. Obesity, however, also diminishes the inclination to exercise. As a person puts on weight he grows less restless and energetic, a fact that is utilized in the fattening treatment of nervous individuals. The disinclination to exercise is favored also by excessive



perspiration, and fat persons avoid exercise partly because the free perspiration is disagreeable. Since the fat person usually takes but little exercise, his voluntary muscles become small and weak. The heart is similarly affected. Its strength is diminished both by the lack of exercise and by fatty deposits in and about the myocardium. Thus the fat person eventually becomes incapacitated for violent exercise, partly because his voluntary muscles are untrained and his heart muscle weakened, and partly because he must move an unusually heavy body. The milder types of dyspnea that follow the exertions of fat persons are due to these causes. In other and more serious cases, however, there may be additional reasons for cardiac insufficiency, such as coronary sclerosis, chronic hypertension, or myocardial disease. The nutritional disturbances in obesity apparently predispose to changes in the structure and function of the blood vessels.

### *Starvation*

Complete starvation is rarely seen. It may be due to an inability to obtain food as when an individual is lost in a barren region. It may result from voluntary fasting for religious, fanatical, therapeutical, or scientific purposes, or in certain psychoses. Finally, complete starvation may be the result of disease, such as complete obstruction of the esophagus, constant vomiting, etc. The metabolic changes during complete starvation have been studied with great care by a number of scientific investigators. These studies are of considerable interest to clinicians, not only because complete starvation is occasionally encountered in the clinic, but because partial starvation is relatively frequent, and studies of complete inanition serve to throw light upon the more common condition of partial inanition.

**Prolonged Fasts.**—The effects of starvation are greatly influenced by the amount of water that is allowed. Without water, life is much shortened and the suffering from thirst is intense. On the other hand, if water be supplied to the body, complete starvation is not particularly distressing. Complete fasts of thirty and thirty-one days have been made under conditions which guaranteed the absolute character of the fast; and longer fasts of forty days or more have apparently been accomplished under less rigid control. Indeed, dogs have been deprived of all food for over one hundred days and yet have recovered from the prolonged starvation.

The most celebrated of the professional fasters was Succi. He subjected himself to ten or more separate periods of starvation, some of these being under strict scientific control. On one occasion he is said to have starved for 45 days, but in this case accurate control was absent. Probably the most careful study of a prolonged fast is that made by F. G. Benedict at the Nutrition Laboratory of the Carnegie Institution.

in Boston. The following data are derived mainly from this (Fig. 63) and from a previous study of starvation by Benedict and Carpenter.

**Reduced Rate of Total Metabolism.**—The rate of total metabolism during fasting is reduced. This reduction is due in part to the languor associated with starvation, which causes the individual to restrict his exercise so that the heat derived from this source is diminished. In addition, there is a moderate reduction in the basal metabolism. Benedict found

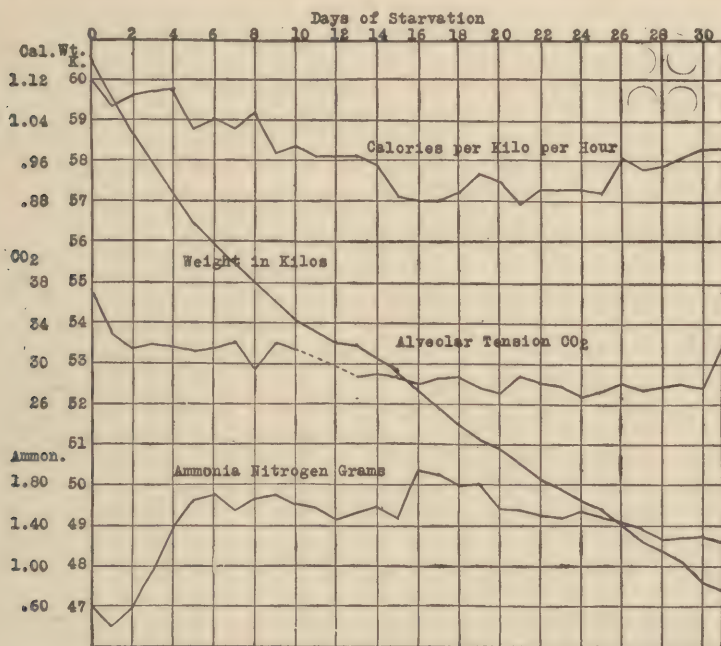


Fig. 63.—Effect of Complete Starvation upon the Body Weight, the Rate of Metabolism, the Tension of Carbon Dioxid in the Alveolar Air, and the Excretion of Ammonia in the Urine. Note that the Weight Falls Rapidly at First, that the Metabolism per Unit of Body Weight Falls to a Minimum about the Sixteenth Day, and that the Acidosis Is Shown Both by the Diminished Tension of Carbon Dioxid in the Alveolar Air and by the Increased Excretion of Ammonia in the Urine. (Redrawn and simplified from Benedict, Science.)

that the heat produced at night fell from about 26.9 per kilo per 24 hours to a minimum of about 21.1 calories, the latter being observed on the sixteenth day of the fast. Such a reduction does not approach that observed in hibernating animals where the metabolism may be reduced to one-fifth or even one-twentieth of the normal. In this latter condition, the extraordinary reduction is almost certainly due to the fall of body temperature and is due only in small part to the associated starvation. The moderate reduction of metabolism observed in starving men has, indeed, been attributed by some solely to the loss of weight and the diminution of body surface, but Benedict found that the fall is greater than could be accounted

for in this manner. Furthermore, after the seventeenth day of starving his subject showed a slight increase in the rate of metabolism per unit of body weight, and this continued for the remainder of the fast. This relative increase in metabolism during the later days of starvation, like the relative diminution during the earlier days, apparently depends upon some change in the internal metabolic stimuli, being similar, therefore, to the increased rate of metabolism observed after the taking of protein food.

**Combustion of Body Constituents.**—The rate at which the different constituents of the body are burned during complete starvation has been computed by various investigators. During the first day of starvation approximately 100 grams of glycogen are consumed, the amount depending upon the nutritive state of the individual when the fast began. The amount of glycogen burned falls rapidly during the early days of fasting, owing to the depletion of the glycogen reservoirs. In Benedict's subject, L., the glycogen consumption had reached a very low level on the fourth day, and after the thirteenth day no further glycogen consumption appeared to take place. The starving body is, therefore, soon thrown on a fat-protein metabolism. This is evident from the change in the respiratory quotient which falls from over 0.8 on a mixed diet to approximately 0.7, the respiratory quotient of fat combustion. The protein disintegration varies in different individuals and in the same individual at different periods of the fast. Between 40 and 75 grams of protein are consumed daily. As the glycogen reservoirs are depleted the consumption of protein increases, but in the later periods of starvation it falls again.

**Loss of Body Weight.**—Fasting produces a gradual and continuous loss of body weight. The loss at first is relatively rapid, being in the neighborhood of two pounds per day. The rate of loss soon lessens, however, and eventually less than one pound is lost daily. This loss of body weight depends not only upon a combustion of glycogen, fats and proteins, but also upon variations in the water content of the body. The muscles and parenchymatous organs contain 70 per cent or more of water and the adipose tissues from 15 to 30 per cent. As these tissues disintegrate it is to be expected that the water which they contain will be lost from the body. The rapid loss of weight at the onset of starvation is, however, so great that it cannot be due to a disintegration of tissues alone. Excess water to the amount of four pounds may be lost during the first five days of starvation. This rapid loss of excess water during the earlier days of complete inanition is associated with an equally striking loss of chlorids from the body. It is not improbable that the two go together; for, as we shall see (page 446), a restriction in the chlorid intake without any other change in the diet may in certain normal individuals cause reductions of weight from water losses. Later in the fast the



water losses, according to Benedict, fail to keep pace with the tissue disintegration, so that the proportionate amount of water in the body becomes increased. Analyses of the bodies of animals that have died of starvation also show a watery condition of the tissues.

**Acidosis.**—Finally, complete starvation is accompanied by a more or less marked acidosis, which develops as the glycogen reservoirs become exhausted and the body is thrown on a fat-protein metabolism. Acetone bodies appear in the urine and acetone is eliminated in the expired air. Other evidences of acidosis such as an increase of ammonia in the urine and a reduced tension of carbon dioxid in the pulmonary alveoli are present. A discussion of the general nature of acidosis and of the conditions which lead to the formation of acetone bodies must be deferred for later consideration.

### Partial Inanition

Partial inanition occurs when the supply of available energy in the food is insufficient to meet the caloric needs of the body. In some cases the primary difficulty lies in a lessened supply of food, in other cases the needs of the body are excessive, while in a third group of cases, both conditions are present. Disturbances of nutrition that depend upon a deficiency in specific food constituents will be discussed later.

**Lessened Supply of Food.**—A lessened intake of food may result from poverty, poor appetite, or the fear of pain or other discomforts after meals. A lessened supply of food to the tissues may also be due to some gross fault in the digestive apparatus, as when there is an obstruction in the esophagus, pylorus or intestines, or when the intestinal absorption is seriously impaired owing to advanced intestinal or pancreatic disease. In the severer forms of diabetes mellitus the starches, though digested and absorbed, cannot be utilized. Even when the patient eats and absorbs unusual quantities of food, the tissues may yet be starving.

**Increased Metabolism; Disturbances of Appetite.**—An excessive metabolism may result from violent muscular exercise. In normal individuals this is usually accompanied by an increased appetite, so that no serious loss of weight follows. If, however, as in delirium tremens, the appetite is also disturbed, then the excessive muscular activity causes a very rapid loss of weight. In exophthalmic goiter the metabolism is also increased, not only because of the high basal metabolism, but because the restless activities of the patient heighten the metabolism by muscular movements. Fevers increase the basal metabolism. The total energy consumption during fever, however, is usually no greater than in a normal individual who is doing light work or moderate work. If we assume, for example, that the resting metabolism for a given individual is 2,200 calories per day and that this is increased forty per cent owing to an infectious fever, then his metab-

olism would become about 3,000 calories daily. This is not greater than the metabolism of the same individual during moderate work. The partial starvation and the resulting loss of weight that so often accompany febrile infections cannot, therefore, be attributed to any remarkable increase in the rate of metabolism, but are due in the main to the fact that such patients do not cover their energy requirements by a sufficient intake of food. The absence of appetite plays an important part in causing the loss of weight during infections.

**Effects on Metabolism.**—Loss of weight is an early and evident effect of food restriction. This loss of weight is accompanied by a lessened basal metabolism. The reduction in basal metabolism is proportionately greater than the reduction in weight. In performing a given amount of work less energy is expended when the individual is living on a moderately restricted than when he is living on a full diet (Benedict). In consequence of the reduced metabolism a person is able to maintain weight at a lower metabolic level on a permanently restricted diet. During partial inanition the lessened metabolism is accompanied by a slower pulse rate and a lower blood pressure.

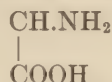
**Secondary Effects of Chronic Malnutrition.**—Well nourished individuals may sustain very considerable losses of weight without impairing their health. Indeed some feel more vigorous than before and Strauss states that in Germany the milder types of diabetes and gout were favorably influenced during the earlier years of the war by the forced restriction of food. As malnutrition becomes more pronounced, however, various unfavorable effects appear. There is a steady loss of nitrogenous materials from the body. The individual feels weak, he fatigues more readily after physical or mental work and he shows a disposition to avoid effort. Increased nervous irritability is common. The susceptibility to acute infections is increased and recovery from them is more prolonged. The incidence of tuberculosis rises and the mortality from this disease increases. Edema may also occur.

## The Protein Metabolism

The proteins taken in the food are broken down in the gastro-intestinal tract by a series of cleavages into simpler nitrogenous bodies. In the stomach peptones and proteoses are formed, and in the intestines these are further decomposed by the pancreatic trypsin and the intestinal erypsin into the amino acid building stones of which proteins are composed. The amino acids are absorbed by the intestinal mucosa and after absorption they are carried in the portal blood to the liver. Here they may be immediately decomposed into urea or perhaps built up into reserve protein. Some pass the liver and are absorbed by other tissues.

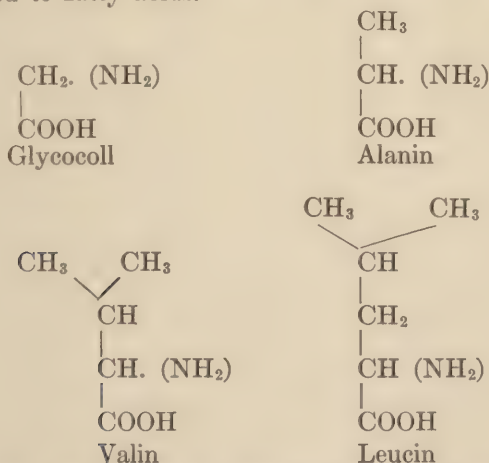
*The Protein Building Stones*

When proteins are completely hydrolyzed, whether by acids, by alkalis, by ferments or by steam, a series of compounds known as amino acids are obtained. These are the building stones of the protein molecules. Amino acids are characterized by possessing the acid radical  $\text{—COOH}$  and the amino radical  $\text{—NH}_2$ . In the amino acids obtained from proteins the amino group is attached to the carbon atom contiguous to the acid radical. It occupies the so-called *alpha* position in the carbon chain. The characteristic group in these amino acids is, therefore, as follows:

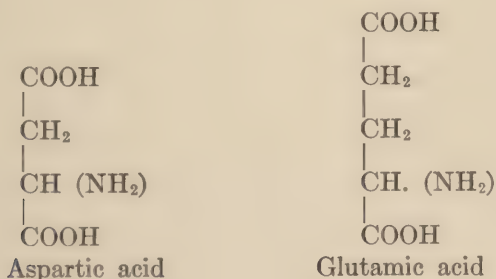


By virtue of its  $\text{—COOH}$  radical the amino acids may combine with bases, thus acting as an acid. By virtue of its  $\text{—NH}_2$  group it may combine with acids, thus acting as a base.

**Important Amino Acids.**—Of the eighteen or more amino acids that have been isolated from proteins the more important will now be enumerated. The simplest of these are those in which the amino radical has been added to fatty acids.

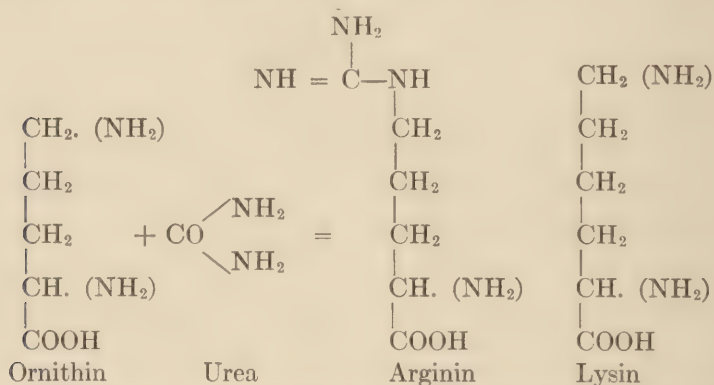


As examples of dicarboxylic amino acids with pronounced acid qualities we have:

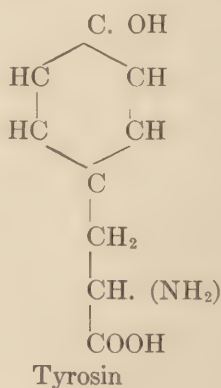
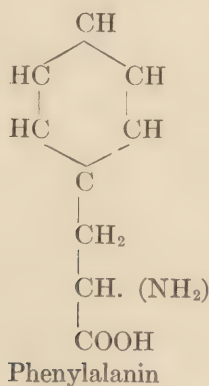




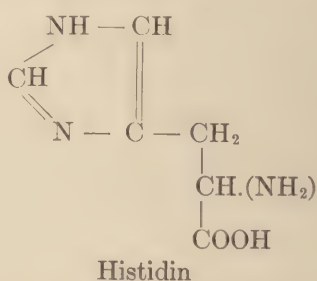
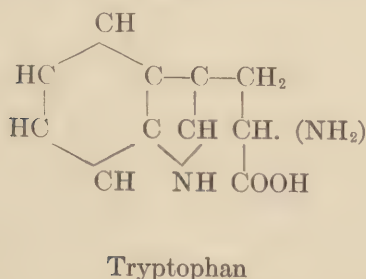
As examples of diamino acids we have ornithin and lysin, the former of which combines with urea to form arginin:



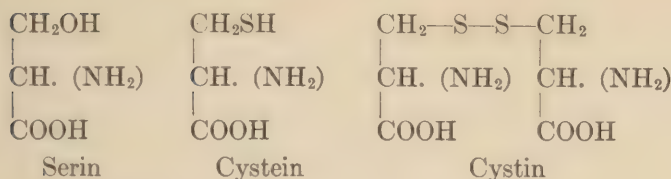
Combinations with the benzene ring are represented in phenylalanin and tyrosin:



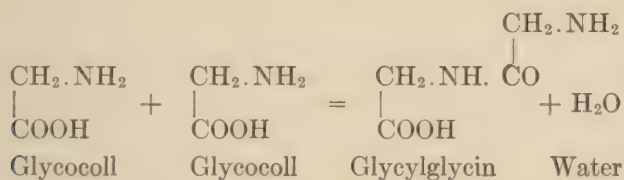
Combinations with other complex rings are represented in tryptophan and histidin, the former of which is an indol derivative:



Finally sulphur is contained in proteins in the form of cystin, which is related to the amino acid serin:



**Methods of Combination.**—The manner in which these building stones are linked together to form the highly complex protein molecules is in part understood. Two types of combination have just been noted: (1) the formation of arginin by the union of urea and ornithin; and (2) the linking of two cystein molecules to form cystin. More important and of more general application are the complexes formed by the union of the alkaline amino group of one acid with the acid group of another. For example, two molecules of glycocoll may unite in this manner to form glycylglycin:



By this type of reaction any two amino acids may unite, thus forming a dipeptid. Since the latter contains a COOH group at one extremity and an NH<sub>2</sub> group at the other, it may unite with further amino acids to form tripeptids, tetrapeptids, etc. A large number of polypeptids have been formed synthetically by this manner of linking. When the amino acid contains two NH<sub>2</sub> groups (lysin) it may combine with the COOH groups of two other amino acids. When it contains two COOH groups (glutamic acid) it may combine with the NH<sub>2</sub> groups of two other amino acids. In this way branched chains may be formed. Various other types of combination are theoretically possible.

**Great Variety of Combinations.**—Chemical analyses have shown that the different proteins contain different amounts of the various amino acids, and that certain proteins may even lack certain of the building stones that are ordinarily present in the proteins of the animal body. Even where no difference in the kind and amount of amino acids can be determined by analysis, proteins may still differ from one another by reason of the fact that the amino acids are arranged in different manners within the complex protein molecule. Indeed, an almost limitless number of such arrangements are theoretically possible. Proof of the existence of countless numbers of different proteins has been furnished in recent years by biological methods of study. These have shown not only that the proteins of an animal differ from the proteins taken in its

food, but that each species of animals has its own characteristic proteins which may be differentiated from those of every other animal species.

### *Amino Acid Requirements of the Body*

The importance of the constituent building stones of the protein molecules, rather than of proteins as such, for the maintenance and growth of the body has been demonstrated by two types of experiment. In the first place, the nitrogenous requirements of the body may be satisfied by feeding mixtures composed of amino acids and simple combinations of the same that have been prepared outside of the body by a prolonged digestion of proteins. Such mixtures may be so far digested that they no longer give the biuret test for peptones. It is evident from these experiments that the body can synthesize its proteins from mixtures containing the constituent building stones or very simple combinations of the same.

**Certain Amino Acids Necessary.**—In the second type of experiment, it has been demonstrated that a protein which is deficient in certain of the usual building stones may fail to cover the bodily requirements.

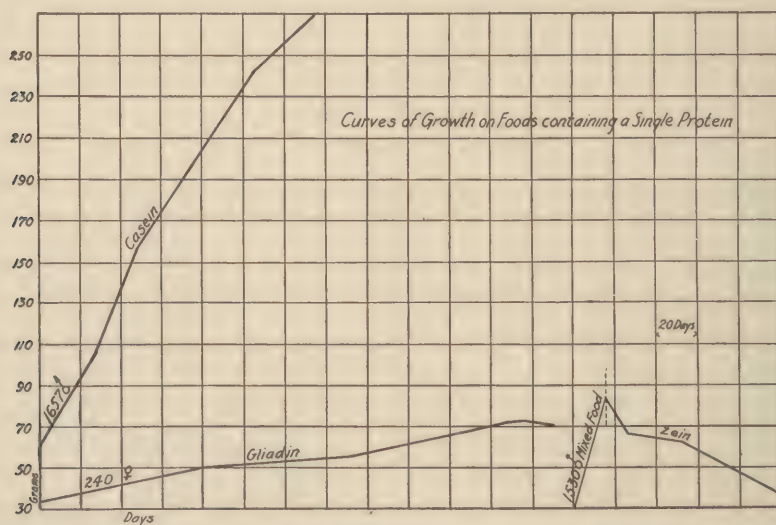


Fig. 64.—Typical Curves of Growth of Rats Maintained on Diets Containing a Single Protein. On the Casein (Devoid of Glycocoll) Satisfactory Growth Is Obtained; on the Gliadin (Devoid of Lysin) the Body Weight Increases But Little; on Zein (Devoid of Glycocoll, Lysin and Tryptophan) Weight Is Lost. (From Mendel, Jour. Am. Med. Assn.)

Osborne and Mendel have shown that it is possible to maintain rats in perfect health over long periods of time by feeding them certain isolated proteins in addition to the fats, carbohydrates and inorganic salts as they are present in the protein free fractions of milk. The casein of milk, the edestin of hemp seed, or the albumen of egg white, are each able



to furnish all that is necessary to the body in the way of nitrogenous material. If, however, the protein gliadin that has been prepared from wheat is the sole protein used, adult animals may be maintained but young animals cease to gain in weight (Fig. 64). Gliadin is deficient in the amino acid lysin. When this is added to the above diet the growth of the young animals is promptly resumed. Similarly, if zein, the chief protein of corn, be the sole protein in an otherwise normal diet, young rats lose weight and adults fail in health. Zein is deficient in a number of amino acids and particularly in lysin, tryptophan, and glycocoll. If tryptophan be added to the zein diet, the body weight of adults is maintained but young animals still cease to grow. If tryptophan and lysin are both added, growth and maintenance become normal (Fig. 65). Finally, casein is deficient in glycocoll, yet the body require-

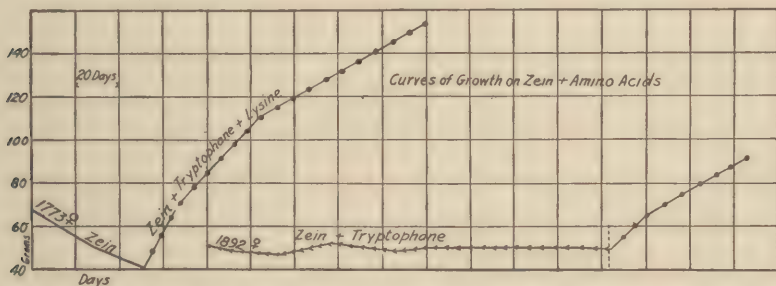


Fig. 65.—Shows the Effect of Adding Tryptophan Alone and the Combination of Tryptophan and Lysin to Diets Containing Zein as the Sole Protein. (From Mendel, Jour. Am. Med. Assn.)

ments may be met by a diet in which casein is the sole protein constituent. It is evident from these experiments that an absence of certain amino acids in the proteins fed to rats may produce: (a) failure of growth in young animals and failure in the maintenance of adults (lack of tryptophan); (b) failure of growth only (lack of lysin); or (c) no effect (lack of glycocoll). The well-known observation that gelatin in itself cannot supply the protein needs of the body is due to the fact that this substance is deficient in tyrosin, tryptophan and cystin.

**Body Cannot Synthesize Most Amino Acids.**—Since normal growth is impossible when certain of the amino acids are absent from the diet it is evident that the body is unable to supply this deficiency by constructing these protein building stones. In the case of lysin, tryptophan and cystin, this inability has been proven and the same is probably true of many others. Taylor states that we may, for the present, assume that, except glycocoll, all the amino acids must exist preformed in the proteins of the diet in amounts sufficient to offer the units needed for tissue building and repair.

Fortunately, the majority of proteins in common use, and particularly

those of animal origin, contain all of the requisite building stones; and when an individual is on an abundant diet of mixed proteins he is amply protected against any deficit in amino acids. If, however, the diet is very one-sided and if, in addition, the protein intake be not very abundant, a deficit of amino acids may lead to nutritive disturbances.

### ***Nitrogenous Equilibrium***

We have seen that the total energy metabolism is governed in large part by factors that are independent of the food intake. Any excess of food above the immediate requirements of the body leads to an accumulation of energy-containing material in the tissues, and, conversely, any deficit in the total food is made good by a consumption of material from these accumulations. The rate of nitrogenous metabolism, on the other hand, is governed primarily by the amount of protein in the food. When this is increased the excretion of nitrogenous waste becomes greater, and when it is diminished the excretion of nitrogenous waste lessens. Thus an equilibrium tends to become established between the intake and the output of nitrogenous substances, and the body maintains its content of nitrogen-containing material at a fairly constant level.

**Retention of Nitrogen.**—Nevertheless, some change in the amount of nitrogen in the body may be induced by changes in the diet. An abrupt change in the nitrogenous intake is followed by a less abrupt change in the output and some retention of nitrogen always accompanies the change from a poor to a rich protein diet, and, conversely, some loss occurs when the change is in the opposite direction. Indeed, some investigators (Lüthje) have induced a considerable increase of nitrogenous material in the body by giving large amounts of proteins and by protecting the proteins by large quantities of other foods, especially carbohydrates. The form in which this excess of nitrogen is retained in the body is not known, and it is not certain that the amount of living protoplasm can be increased by this method.

Nitrogenous retention also occurs, when, for any reason, there is an inherent need on the part of the body tissues and cells for proteins. In the growing child, during the muscular hypertrophy that accompanies training, and during convalescence from infectious and other wasting diseases, a retention of nitrogenous materials in the body usually occurs. This arises from an obvious need on the part of the tissues and in these cases the retained nitrogen is doubtlessly utilized in the construction of additional living protoplasm.

### ***Protein Requirements of the Body***

We have just seen that nitrogenous equilibrium may be established at different levels. The upper limit at which it may be established is

apparently governed solely by the ability of an individual to eat large quantities of protein food. On the other hand, if the protein in the diet be reduced below a certain point, the excretion of nitrogenous waste will exceed the intake, and there will result a negative balance and a continuous loss of proteins from the body.

**Minimum Protein Metabolism.**—During complete starvation from forty to seventy grams of protein are consumed by the body each day. This does not, however, represent the minimum protein metabolism; for if an individual eat abundantly of carbohydrates or of carbohydrates and fats, and at the same time abstain from all nitrogenous food, the nitrogen losses are much less than those which occur during complete starvation. Under these conditions of a "specific protein starvation," Landergren found that the nitrogen in the urine fell to about four grams per day, an amount which corresponds to a consumption of approximately 25 grams of protein daily. The ingestion of fat alone does not reduce the nitrogen losses to as low a level as does the ingestion of carbohydrates. In other words, fats do not "spare" proteins to the same degree as do carbohydrates.

**Low Protein Intake and Nitrogenous Equilibrium.**—A reduction of protein food has frequently been recommended as a general hygienic measure, and it is often used in the treatment of renal disease, diabetes mellitus, etc. Of immediate interest to clinicians, therefore, is the question as to what constitutes the minimum amount of protein that will suffice to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium and will prevent a loss of proteins from the body. Siven succeeded in maintaining nitrogenous equilibrium on a diet that contained approximately 37 grams of protein daily, of which about 28 grams were apparently absorbed. This appears to be an unusually low level, and it is doubtful if all persons can be maintained in nitrogenous equilibrium on such a ration. In Chittenden's extensive experiments, nitrogenous equilibrium was maintained on diets which contained approximately 50 grams of protein daily. This is less than one-half of the 118 grams of protein which are contained in Voit's standard diet and it is about one-third that eaten by the majority of well-to-do individuals.

Whether such a reduced protein intake, even with the maintenance of nitrogen equilibrium, is advantageous as a general hygienic measure has been much discussed and is still unsettled. Many persons may certainly remain strong and in good health on such a diet and some believe that their efficiency is increased. On the other hand, any close approach to a physiological limit carries with it a certain amount of danger, for unusual conditions may at any time arise, in which it would be advantageous for the body to have at its disposal a larger quantity of protein. The intake of a quantity of protein that exceeds the minimum limit provides a factor of safety for such emergencies, and it may possibly be advantageous in other ways.



### Protein Starvation

Protein starvation may result from a voluntary or involuntary restriction of the intake of protein food. Occasionally, one sees individuals who have been recommended to restrict their protein intake and have done so with such enthusiasm that they are evidently near or below the level at which a nitrogenous equilibrium can be maintained. Such patients complain of lassitude, weakness and early fatigue during work, and these symptoms rapidly disappear if the protein intake be increased. A restriction of the protein intake may also accompany general inanition. In such patients, however, the symptoms of the protein starvation are disguised by those of partial starvation.

We have already pointed out that the body is unable to synthesize most of the amino acids that make up the protein molecule. If certain of these be entirely absent from the diet the animal does not thrive. It is evident also that in conditions of low protein intake the effect will depend not alone upon the total quantity of protein consumed, but also upon its richness in each of the necessary amino acids. When the protein intake is low and when it does not contain a proper balance of the necessary amino acids, nitrogenous equilibrium can only be maintained when sufficient quantities of proteins are taken to cover the need of the body for each of these necessary building stones. Thus Thomas showed that when starch and sugar were taken in abundance, the following amounts of various protein mixtures in the natural foods were required to protect the body from protein losses:

Meat protein .....	30	grams	per	day
Milk protein .....	31	"	"	"
Rice protein .....	34	"	"	"
Potato protein .....	34	"	"	"
Bean protein .....	38	"	"	"
Bread protein .....	76	"	"	"
Indian corn protein .....	102	"	"	"

It is evident that the proteins of animal origin as well as those contained in rice and potatoes suffice to maintain the individual when taken in small quantities, whereas the proteins of bread and of Indian corn can supply the body needs only when they are taken in relatively large quantities. These differences are presumably due to the differences in composition of the proteins that occur in these natural foodstuffs.

### Excessive Protein Destruction

It is obvious that when there is a gross disintegration of cells in the body the proteins in these cells will be broken down, and the protein

metabolism of the body will be increased by this added fraction. In the resolution of a pneumonic exudate, in the liquefaction of a purulent collection, in the disintegration of malignant tumors and in the serious damage of organs by disease (phosphorus poisoning, acute yellow atrophy of the liver), the total protein metabolism of the body will be increased by this excessive protein destruction.

**Loss of Nitrogen in Fever, etc.**—In addition, it has been shown that in fever, whether infectious or noninfectious, in experimental intestinal obstruction, and in certain cases of exophthalmic goiter or malignant disease, the excretion of nitrogen in the urine tends to exceed the intake of nitrogen in the food. When efforts are made to maintain an equilibrium by feeding increased amounts of protein, the excretion of waste products also increases, and to such an extent that nitrogenous losses continue even when the intake of proteins is high. The doctrine that in such patients there is a pathological destruction of the body proteins will be considered more fully in the chapter on fever. It may be pointed out in this place, however, that the difficulty in maintaining nitrogenous equilibrium is due in part to an insufficient general nourishment of such patients. The increased total metabolism in fever and in exophthalmic goiter, combined as it often is with a poor appetite, leads to a chronic inanition, and when the body must subsist in part upon its own tissues, it is always more difficult to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium. An abundant diet, containing large quantities of carbohydrates, may cause nitrogenous equilibrium, or even nitrogenous retention, in patients who would otherwise suffer from nitrogen losses.

Nevertheless, it seems probable that, in fever at least, an abnormal disintegration of proteins may take place in the body. The anatomical degenerations of the cells, observed in fever, support this view. Furthermore, R. A. Kocher has shown that when a febrile patient is given sufficient nourishment to cover his caloric needs, and at the same time is very much restricted in his nitrogenous intake, his nitrogenous metabolism is not reduced to the same low level as is that of a normal individual. In the latter, such a specific protein starvation may reduce the excretion of nitrogen in the urine to 4.0 or even to 2.5 grams per day; whereas, under similar conditions, the excretion of nitrogen in the urine of febrile patients may be as much as 15 to 25 grams daily. It is evident, therefore, that an abnormal destruction of body proteins may take place without a gross death of the cells. That the protein losses may be overcome more or less completely by a suitable diet is a triumph of the therapeutical art. It does not alter the fact, however, that in certain patients with fever there is an abnormal disintegration of the body proteins.

### ***Autolysis***

If an organ removed from the body is kept at a temperature of 37° C. under conditions which preclude bacterial growth, a self-digestion of its

tissues takes place, owing to the action of the intracellular ferments which it contains. Glycogen is converted into sugar and the latter may undergo further changes. Fats and lecithin may also be decomposed. Of particular interest, in the present discussion, is the fact that the proteins are broken down into simpler nitrogenous compounds. The quantity of coagulable protein diminishes while the products of proteolysis, peptone, proteoses and amino acids appear in increased amounts. The sum of these processes whereby the organ digests itself is spoken of as autolysis.

When masses of cells die within the living body, their disintegration and removal are accomplished in part by the action of leukocytes and other wandering cells, and in part by an autodigestion similar to that which takes place when an organ removed from the body autolyzes. The disappearance of a pneumonic exudate during resolution, the liquefaction of a purulent collection, the absorption of hemorrhages and the involution of the uterus after pregnancy are all due in large part to autolysis. Very severe hepatic degenerations, such as occur in acute yellow atrophy, phosphorus poisoning and related conditions, are associated with a marked self-digestion of the liver. It seems probable that serious damage to the hepatic cells has opened the way for self-digestion and that the latter may serve the useful purpose of removing dead material.

**Autolytic Ferments in Living Tissues.**—The intracellular ferments that are active in autolysis are probably also active, though to a lesser extent, in the living tissues, and they probably play an important rôle in the normal life processes of the cells. Their increased activity in dead or badly damaged tissues has been variously attributed to a change from the normal alkaline to a somewhat more acid reaction, to an absence of protective antiferments, to nutritional disturbances in the cells, etc. Autolysis may be accelerated *in vitro* by a variety of conditions. It is favored by a slightly acid reaction, and by the addition of earthy metals, manganoous chlorid, colloidal metals, and other substances. Whether living and normal tissues may be subjected to excessive autolysis in the body is still uncertain; but such a primary increase in autolysis may possibly play an important rôle in certain pathological conditions. The severe hepatic degenerations have indeed been attributed to such a primary increase in the autolytic process, but it is equally probable that they are due to a primary damage to the cells with secondary digestion. According to Bronfenbrenner and to Jobling, however, the phenomena of acute anaphylaxis depend upon a rapid autolysis of the proteins normally present in the serum, owing to a removal of inhibitory substances.

When autolysis is rapid the blood and urine often contain the products of protein disintegration in increased amounts. In acute yellow atrophy of the liver, for example, peptones, proteoses, and various amino acids have been found in the urine, while leucin, tyrosin and lysin have been detected in the blood. In some cases, indeed, the quantitatives of these substances

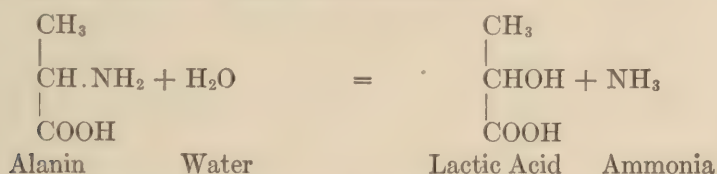


found during life and at autopsy have been so great that they must have been derived in part from other tissues than the liver. Similarly in phosphorus poisoning, leucin, tyrosin, phenylalanin, alanin and arginin have been detected in the urine, and often in considerable quantity. Probably, as we shall see, the remarkable amounts of amino acids which appear in these conditions are due not to the pathological autolysis alone, but to a simultaneous disturbance in the normal conversion of amino acids into urea.

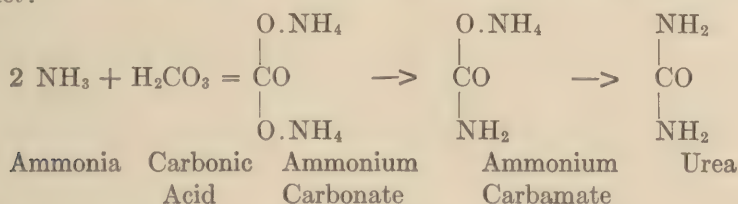
### *Imperfect Decomposition of Amino Acids*

#### **Hepatic Disease, Etc.**

Under normal conditions the formation of urea from the amino acids probably takes place in two stages. In the *first stage*, there is a deamination of the acid with a liberation of ammonia.



The ammonia immediately combines with the carbonic acid always present in the body fluids. In the *second stage*, the ammonium carbonate thus formed is converted into urea, ammonium carbamate being an intermediary product:



This conversion of the amino groups of the amino acids into urea may certainly take place in the liver. To what extent other tissues of the body perform a similar function is not known, but it seems probable that the liver is not the only organ in the body in which such changes may occur.

**Excess of Amino Acids in Urine.**—We have just seen that in the severe hepatic degenerations, of which acute yellow atrophy may be taken as a type, the urine contains large quantities of amino acids and particularly of leucin, tyrosin, etc. These substances are formed from the increased autolysis of the liver and probably from other organs of the body. The total nitrogenous metabolism in these diseases is usually increased over that of a normal individual taking the same food. On the other hand, when large quantities of proteins are eaten by a normal individual, his nitrogenous metabolism certainly exceeds that ordinarily present in these diseases, and yet no excessive amounts of amino acids appear in his urine. It is

obvious, therefore, that in severe liver degenerations there is a qualitative as well as a quantitative deviation from the normal protein metabolism. The deaminization of the amino acids is disturbed.

Amino acids also appear in the urine in somewhat increased quantities in certain fevers, and particularly in typhoid, scarlet fever, pneumonia and variola. They also appear in hepatic cirrhosis. In these conditions also there appears to be some failure on the part of the body to deaminize the amino acids derived from protein hydrolysis. Whether this is due solely to hepatic changes or whether it represents a general disturbance in the tissue functions throughout the body is still uncertain.

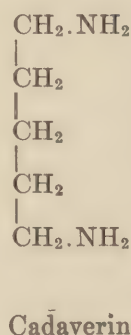
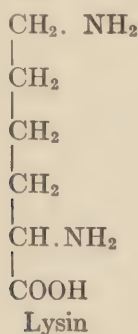
### Cystinuria

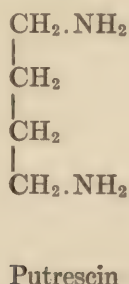
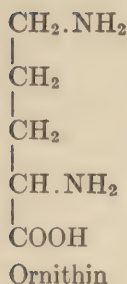
The inability to decompose amino acids may be restricted to certain of these acids only. The appearance of considerable cystin in the urine, for example, is due to a specific failure to decompose this product of protein disintegration. In the normal individual cystin is converted: (1) into the taurin of the bile; (2) into sulphates which are eliminated by the kidneys; and (3) into the neutral sulphur of the urine, a trace of which may be in the form of cystin or cystein. In patients with cystinuria, however, a considerable proportion of the cystin derived from the cleavage of proteins is excreted as such. This may produce no symptoms, or again it may give rise to a urinary sediment and to urinary stones composed of cystin. If the urine be kept alkaline, the cystin is no longer precipitated, and in this manner the patient may be relieved of his symptoms.

The amount of cystin excreted by such patients can be reduced by restricting the intake of protein food, but even during protein starvation the urinary excretion of cystin usually continues. In this case it is derived from the disintegration of the body proteins.

### Diaminuria

In some, but not in all, patients with cystinuria there is an associated defect in the metabolism of other amino acids. Lysin is eliminated as the diamin, cadaverin, and ornithin derived from arginin is eliminated as the diamin, putrescin:

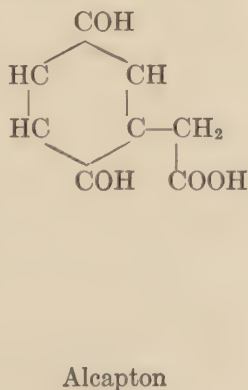
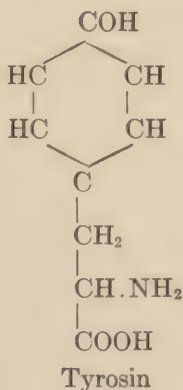
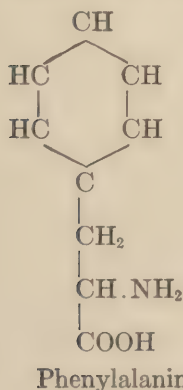




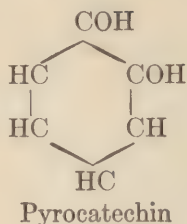
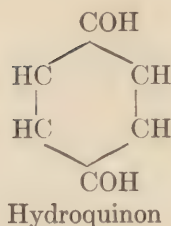
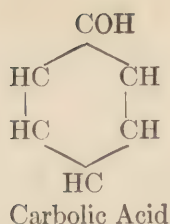
In addition to their occurrence in the urine as a result of metabolic disorders these diamines may also occur as a result of bacterial activity in the intestines, and they have been found in dysentery, cholera and other severe forms of enteritis. Although these particular amines are practically innocuous, it should be recalled that other amines, which may possibly be formed by analogous reactions in the intestines as a result of bacterial activity, are highly poisonous. These latter have been discussed more fully in the paragraphs on intestinal auto-intoxication.

### Alcaptonuria

Alcaptonuria has long been recognized as a relatively rare and harmless metabolic disturbance which is characterized by a urine that darkens under the combined influence of alkalis and oxygen and that reduces copper solutions in the same manner as glucose-containing urine. The substance which gives to the urine these properties is called alcapton or homogentisic acid. It is derived from the protein-building stones, tyrosin and phenylalanin, and it is related to hydroquinon and pyrocatechin, which substances are responsible for the darkening that occurs when the urine of patients poisoned with carbolic acid is exposed to the air. The relation between these substances is shown in the following chemical formulae:







The amount of homogentisic acid excreted by patients with alcaptonuria is increased by a diet rich in proteins, is diminished by a protein-poor diet, but continues even during starvation. Under the last circumstances it is derived from the metabolism of the body proteins. The amount of alcapton in the urine can also be increased by feeding phenylalanin or tyrosin. Possibly, it is formed normally in the body as an intermediary product of the catabolism of these substances. If this be so, the cause of alcaptonuria would appear to be the lack of that ferment which normally decomposes the benzene ring present in homogentisic acid. In consequence the latter is eliminated in the urine.

### Ochronosis

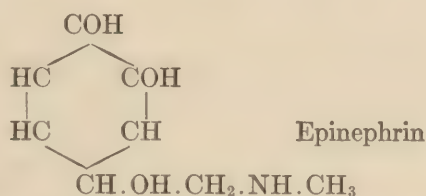
The property possessed by alcapton and by related substances of changing readily into a dark pigment is of considerable interest in connection with the production of certain pathological pigmentations in the body. In the rare condition known as ochronosis, the cartilages of the body become dark owing to the formation of a dark pigment. In certain cases, not only the cartilages, but also the fibrous and bony tissues, the blood vessels, the skin, the sclera and the nails become darker and melanotic pigment is excreted in the urine. Beddard and Plumtree collected thirty cases of ochronosis from the literature. In fourteen of these the condition was associated with alcaptonuria, while in nine others it was associated with a long-continued absorption of carbolic acid, as, for example, when dressings containing this antiseptic had been used on open ulcers for a long time.

### Melanin

The relation of black pigment formation to aromatic and other derivatives of protein catabolism is, however, of far more general application than in the pigmentations of ochronosis. The French chemist, Bertrand, showed that the reddening and subsequent blackening of certain mushrooms are due to an oxidizing ferment which acts particularly on tyrosin, and to which the name of tyrosinase has been given. A similar reaction is responsible for the blackening of various fungi and plants, for pigment deposits in certain of the lower animals and for the formation of the inky

fluid that is thrown out by cuttlefish. Gessard found that the melanotic tumors of the horse contained a tyrosinase which acted upon a chromogen of this type. Alsberg obtained an oxidizing ferment from a melanotic sarcoma of man which darkened solutions of pyrocatechin. Indeed, it seems not improbable that various black pigments normally present in the body, such as those in the skin of the negro, the choroid, etc., are due to the local action of a ferment of this type upon tyrosin or other protein-building stones (tryptophan), that either arise in, or are carried to the pigment cells.

**Epinephrin.**—Of particular interest is the fact that epinephrin, an active principle derived from the adrenal gland, is chemically related to tyrosin, and that it may yield dark pigments when acted upon by ferments of this class:



**Addison's Disease.**—The pigmentation of the skin and other tissues which occurs in Addison's disease is doubtlessly due to a reaction similar to that described above. Whether this abnormal formation depends upon an excess of tyrosinlike substances in the body fluids or whether, as Bittorf believes, it is due to a local increase of the specific ferment in certain cells of the body, requires further study.

## Diseases Due to Deficient Diets

We have seen that the total energy taken in the food is so guided by the appetite and related sensations that it approximately covers the body needs; whereas the intake of protein is usually in excess of these needs, the excess of nitrogenous material being for the most part decomposed and eliminated. This excess provides an element of safety in the diet. If the amount or character of the protein intake be insufficient, disturbances of growth and maintenance result. Not only proteins but a variety of other substances are habitually taken in the food in excess of the minimum body requirements. These excesses may cause a limited storage in the body, but beyond this limited storage the excess is excreted either unchanged or after having furnished energy to the body. If, for any reason, the intake of these substances falls below a certain minimum, nutritive disturbances may result.

Such nutritive disturbances do not appear immediately, for a certain amount of the substance that is cut out from the diet is usually already

present in the tissues, and the body clings tenaciously to such stores when the further supply is limited. Nutritive disturbances due to such specific deficiencies in the food are most apt to occur, when, as among the poorer classes, in institutions, and on expeditions, the diet is restricted and one-sided. Since the growing organism must provide for maintenance and for the construction of new tissues, it is more sensitive to deficiencies in the diet than is the adult. To the farmer and stockraiser the problem of dietetic deficiencies assumes considerable practical importance, for a maximum growth of animals cannot be obtained if the food is deficient in certain of its constituents.

### *Inorganic Salts*

The tissues and body fluids contain a mixture of mineral substances. Although these furnish no energy to the body, they are essential for the performance of the normal body functions. McCollum and Davis found that growing rats were exceedingly sensitive to alterations in the composition of the salt mixtures taken in the food. Properly balanced mixtures containing sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, iron, chlorids, and phosphates were found to supply the salt requirements.

**Sodium Chlorid.**—Sodium chlorid is usually taken by man in considerable quantities, 10 grams or more being the ordinary daily portion. It is certain, however, that this amount is far greater than what is absolutely required, for during starvation the daily salt output sinks below 0.5 gram, and patients have been maintained for long periods of time on 2 to 4 grams daily with no apparent deleterious effect. For limited periods the amount taken may be reduced below this, but the exact minimum requirements for indefinite periods are not known.

**Calcium and Phosphorus Compounds.**—The mineral substance of bone contains about 85 per cent of calcium phosphate and lesser amounts of calcium carbonate and magnesium phosphate. The need for these salts is greatest in the growing animal and in the pregnant or lactating woman. The adult man is said to require daily about 0.9 gram of phosphorus and about 0.5 gram of calcium (Sherman). Although we know little about conditions caused by a lack of these salts, it seems quite possible that some diets contain insufficient amounts, especially of calcium. On this account it has been suggested that calcium salts be added to the food along with sodium chloride. When the amount of calcium and phosphorus compounds in the diet is markedly deficient for same time, nutritive changes occur in the bones.

The disturbances in bone metabolism that are found in rickets and in osteomalacia are apparently not due to any lack of calcium or phosphorus compounds in the diet. In these diseases the essential disturbance lies within the body. In rickets, Howland and his associates found that, while the calcium content of the serum was approximately normal, the inor-



ganic phosphate content was reduced; often to a striking degree. The administration of cod-liver oil caused a deposition of lime salts in the bones, and at the same time it increased the amount of inorganic phosphate in the serum. Lack of sun light is an important factor in the production of rickets. The disease is most common in winter and early spring and it is benefited or cured by exposure to sun light or to certain artificial lights.

**Iron Requirements of the Body.**—Iron forms an essential constituent of hemoglobin. The normal body husband its supply of iron with considerable care. Large amounts of hemoglobin, containing 100 to 200 mg. of iron, are destroyed daily, yet the elimination of iron in the urine and feces during iron starvation is only about 6 mg., and the average daily diet supplies only about 8 to 10 mg. The iron compounds liberated in the body appear to be used over and over again in the construction of new blood pigment. A prolonged restriction of iron in the diet may, however, impair the formation of hemoglobin and thus lead to anemia. Additional iron is particularly required when anemia has resulted from hemorrhage. A number of investigators have maintained that when anemia is produced in animals by bleeding, recovery is more rapid and more perfect if iron be given than if iron be withheld. If, however, anemia results from a toxic destruction of the red cells, the iron in the body is not necessarily depleted, and, in such cases, the addition of iron to the diet is usually without effect.

### ***Vitamins***

Animals that have been fed a diet containing the requisite amounts of *purified* fats, carbohydrates and proteins, together with a proper mixture of mineral salts, sooner or later develop disturbances of nutrition. In order to maintain growth and nutrition, every diet must contain small amounts of a number of unidentified organic compounds. To these necessary but unidentified substances the name of vitamins has been given. At least three vitamins are now recognized. They are called Vitamin A, Vitamin B, and Vitamin C, respectively. Several diseases which are presumably caused by deficient diets do not appear to result from a lack of any one of these three known vitamins. It is possible, therefore, that further study of these diseases will identify other vitamins.

### ***Vitamin A***

McCollum and Davis fed growing rats on balanced salt mixtures, casein, lard and carbohydrates. For 70 to 120 days these animals grew in a fairly normal manner. Beyond this time, however, growth ceased, although the animals might remain in apparent health for some time longer and females bore offspring while on this diet (Fig. 66). None

of the mothers, however, were able to produce enough milk to nourish their young.

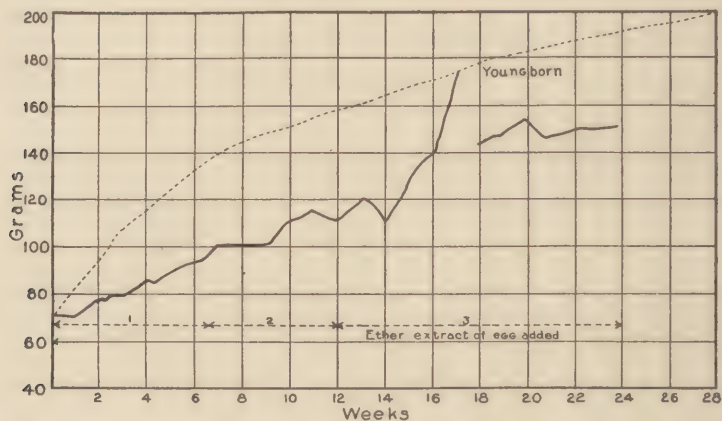


Fig. 66.—The Necessity of Certain Lipins for Normal Growth. The Dotted Line Represents the Normal Growth Line for the Rat. The Lower Line Represents the Growth of a Rat Maintained on Salt Mixtures and Purified Foods. When the Ethereal Extract from Egg Was Added to the Diet Normal Growth Was Resumed and the Animal Bore Young. (From McCollum and Davis, Jour. Biol. Chem.)

**Certain Lipoids Essential to Growth.**—If rats that had ceased to grow on the above diet were given the ether extract of egg or of butter, growth was resumed in a normal manner. Evidently some substance is present in these ethereal extracts which is essential for growth. That it is not a fat or an oil, in the ordinary sense, is indicated by the fact that lard, olive oil and almond oil proved ineffective; whereas butter fat, cod liver oil, and the ethereal extract of egg yolk furnished the requisite element that led to a continuance of growth. The nature of this essential lipid is not known. It has been called fat-soluble A or Vitamin A. It is abundant, not only in milk, butter and egg yolk, but in the green vegetables.

McCollum and his co-workers have shown that the absence of this fat-soluble vitamin from the diet of animals causes a peculiar eye affection which is characterized by swelling of the tissues about the orbit and by changes in the cornea which soon leads to blindness. The disease has been called xerophthalmia or keratomalacia. This eye affection, when once started, can be rapidly cured if the essential fat-soluble substance be added to the diet. A similar disease has been observed in human beings who have been living on very restricted diets and it also has been cured when food that contained the fat-soluble essential was taken.

### ***Beriberi and Vitamin B***

The importance of minute quantities of an unknown substance for the proper nutrition of the body has also become evident from studies of the

etiology of certain nutritional diseases, among which beriberi and scurvy are the most important. In 1897 Eykman called attention to the fact that beriberi was prevalent among those rice-eating nations which partook of rice prepared in a certain way. When the rice was eaten with its husk attached beriberi did not develop, whereas when white rice from which the husk had been completely removed by the process of polishing was the exclusive article of diet beriberi invariably developed. Eykman found, furthermore, that when chickens or pigeons were fed solely on such white rice they developed a disease characterized by polyn neuritis with paralysis of the legs, which is comparable to the neuritic form of beriberi in man. The addition of rice polishings to the diet of animals or of man prevented beriberi. Little has observed the occurrence of beriberi among the inhabitants of Newfoundland and Labrador, who subsist, during certain portions of the year, on a diet of white bread, molasses and tea. The substitution of whole wheat flour for white flour prevented the disease. Experimental polyn neuritis may be induced in fowls by an exclusive white bread diet, whereas it does not occur if whole wheat bread be fed (Ohler). The conditions here are evidently analogous to those that pertain to rice. The outer portion of the wheat grain, like the outer portion of rice, contains a substance which has the property of preventing the development of a polyn neuritis in man and animals.

The exact nature of this substance is not known. It is soluble in water and alcohol and is dialyzable. Apparently it is free of phosphorus and of sulphur and consists of complex nitrogen containing substances related to the pyrimidin bases (Funk). Heating to 120° F. destroys it.

### *Scurvy and Vitamin C*

Scurvy has long been attributed to an improper diet and particularly to the prolonged and exclusive consumption of preserved foods and cereals. The addition to such a diet of lemon or tomato juice, of certain fresh vegetables or of certain fruits prevents and cures the disease. The experience of Arctic explorers has emphasized the fact that an abundance of fresh meat may also act as an effective antiscorbutic. The development of infantile scurvy is favored by a diet of boiled milk, particularly when this is combined with cereals. Like the scurvy of adults it is prevented and cured by the administration of orange juice and other antiscorbutics. Holst and Fröhlich showed that scurvy could be produced experimentally by feeding guinea-pigs exclusively on oats, barley, bread and rice and that it could be prevented by the addition to such diets of the usual antiscorbutics.

While it is agreed that scurvy is due to an improper diet, the exact nature of the deficiency has been much discussed. McCollum's contention that the disease depends upon a constipating effect of the diet has not been



accepted by other investigators. It seems more probable that scurvy is due to the absence of some necessary specific in the diet. This antiscorbutic substance differs both from the water-soluble substance that prevents beriberi and from the fat-soluble substance that is necessary for normal development and maintenance. Cohen and Mendel were able to produce scurvy in guinea-pigs by diets that contained both these elements; while Hess and Fish found that cod-liver oil, which contains the fat-soluble substance, did not protect infants against the development of scurvy. The antiscorbutic substance is destroyed by heat and by chemical manipulations more readily than is the substance which protects against beriberi. It is present in lemon juice even after free citric acid and other acids have been removed. In the present state of our knowledge it seems probable that scurvy is due to an absence from the diet of an unidentified water-soluble organic substance.

### *Rickets*

Rickets is generally attributed to improper feeding. The exact fault in the diet is still a matter of much uncertainty. Prominent among hypotheses concerning the pathogenesis of rickets is that which attributes it to a deficient amount of fat in the diet. The administration of cod-liver oil, which has long been a favorite remedy in the treatment of this disease, leads to a deposition of calcium salts in the bones and an increase of inorganic phosphorus in the blood serum. Many other fats and especially those of vegetable origin are ineffective in this respect. Mellanby believes that rickets is caused by a partial deficiency of the fat-soluble Vitamin A but others hold that rickets is due to some other cause than this deficiency.

### *Pellagra*

Pellagra has been most commonly observed among those peoples whose diet consisted mainly of maize; yet the variability of the disease among such people and its occurrence in those who were on other types of restricted diet indicate that maize itself is not the cause of pellagra. Goldberger and his associates have shown that the disease can be caused by a one-sided diet and that it can be prevented or cured by a liberal diet. The precise nature of the dietary deficiency is not known and some have attributed the disease to an infection which attacks those predisposed by a restricted diet.

## **Some Disturbances in the Lipoids**

### *Lipemia*

Chemical analyses of the blood have shown that fats and fat-like substances are present in both the plasma and the corpuscles. Three principal classes of lipoids are distinguished: (1) ordinary fats, which are com-

binations of glycerin and a fatty acid (about 50 per cent), (2) phospholipins, of which lecithin is the best known example (about 20 per cent), (3) cholesterol, either free or combined (about 30 per cent). When the lipoids in the blood are increased, the condition may be called a *lipemia*. This term has also been used to designate a milky appearance of the plasma caused by numerous fine fat particles in suspension. The latter condition we shall call *lactescence*. The fat particles which cause lactescence are visible under the microscope, being seen most easily when the dark field illumination is used. They appear to be identical with the particles known as hemokonia. In normal blood the number of hemokonia is not sufficiently great to produce lactescence.

**Alimentary Lipemia.**—After a fatty meal the amount of lipoids in the blood is increased. Hemokonia, which are almost absent after fasting twelve to eighteen hours, soon appear and in from two to six hours after the fatty meal the spaces between the red corpuscles may be swarming with fine fat particles. Chemical analyses have shown that the quantity of fatty acids rises in both the plasma and corpuscles. The lecithin in the corpuscles also increases. According to Bloor, the blood cells take fat from the plasma and from it form lecithin. If bile is excluded from the intestines, fat particles do not appear in the peripheral blood after a fatty meal. This absence of an alimentary lactescence in obstructive jaundice is attributed to a lack in the intestines of bile salts rather than of bile pigments.

The cholesterol in the blood is not altered after feeding the ordinary fats. If food rich in cholesterol, such as egg-yolk, be fed, the concentration of this substance in the blood rises.

**Pathological Lipemias.**—Alterations in the amount of lipoids in the blood may occur in a variety of pathological conditions. It has long been known that in *severe diabetes* with acidosis there may be a milky plasma, and that, on ophthalmoscopic examination, the retinal blood vessels may present a milky appearance. Chemical analyses have shown that the sera in some of these cases contain extraordinary amounts of fatty material, amounting to twelve or even twenty-six per cent of the blood. Even though lactescence is absent, the blood in severe diabetes frequently shows an increased content of lipoids, which may exceed the normal by one hundred per cent or more. In mild cases the lipoids are frequently only slightly increased and they may even be diminished. So long as lactescence is absent the increase of lipoids involves the ordinary fats, the lecithin and the cholesterol to about the same extent. Lactescence appears to be rare in diabetes when the fat in the diet is restricted (Bloor) and, if present, it can sometimes be made to disappear by fat restriction. When lactescence is present, the fats and the cholesterol are markedly increased but there is little or no increase in the lecithin (Bloor). The cells are apparently unable to handle the excessive quantity of fat taken in the food, for

as we have seen, the blood cells normally appear to convert some of the fat into lecithin.

In *severe nephritis* there is frequently some increase in the lipoids of the blood. A similar increase has been occasionally described in other conditions, such as *pneumonia*, *pregnancy* and the *experimental anemias* of animals.

In *obstructive jaundice* the cholesterol in the blood is usually increased. Since cholesterol is excreted in the bile it would appear that its increase in the blood during biliary obstruction is the result of a retention. Widal, Wiel and Laudet found that in this type of cholesterolemia the blood contains an unusual proportion of free cholesterol such as occurs in bile.

In *severe anemias* the fat in the plasma may be increased, while the cholesterol and the lecithin are diminished. Since cholesterol possesses antihemolytic properties, some have thought that its reduction in the plasma may bear a casual relation to the hemolysis of red blood cells that occurs in pernicious anemia.

### ***Fatty Degeneration***

Fat occurs not only in the typical fat cells of the body, but also in the parenchymatous cells of the liver, spleen, kidneys, heart and other organs. Under various pathological conditions the amount of visible fat in these organs is increased. In some cases the cell contains a few relatively large droplets, and its structure and function appear to be but little disturbed. Such a condition, evidently one of fat storage, is usually designated as *fatty infiltration*. On the other hand, fat may be present in parenchymatous cells as very numerous and minute particles, and this change may be associated with a certain amount of cellular disintegration and with functional changes. In phosphorus poisoning, for example, the fatty degeneration of the liver is accompanied by increased autolysis, and the fatty degeneration of the heart muscle is accompanied by a tendency to cardiac dilatation (page 16). This type of fatty change has been called *fatty degeneration*.

**Cell Proteins Not Main Source.**—Virchow held that fatty degeneration arose from a transformation of the cell proteins into fat. We know that proteins may be the source of carbohydrates in the body, and that carbohydrates in turn may be converted into fat, so that the possibility of a conversion of protein into fat must be admitted. Nevertheless, it is certain that the fat seen in fatty degeneration is derived for the most part from other sources than the disintegration of cell proteins.

**1. Invisible Converted into Visible Fat.**—Two sources for the visible fat particles in fatty degeneration have been established. In the first place, it is known that fatty substances may be present and demonstrable by chemical methods, even though fat droplets are not visible under the microscope. If for any reason these fatty substances become visible then



the cells will contain microscopic fat. Such a change has been observed when organs have been removed from the body and have been allowed to digest themselves. At a certain stage of autolysis there may develop the appearance of fatty degeneration. In such cases there is no possibility that the visible fat is derived from other parts of the body. It must, therefore, have arisen either from invisible fat previously present in the tissue or from the cell proteins or other constituents. Exact chemical studies have demonstrated that the amount of fatty substances in the cells is not increased during this type of fatty degeneration. Evidently, therefore, the appearance of fatty degeneration in such cases is due to the conversion of invisible into visible fat. Such a change implies that the conditions for fat solution have changed or that organic fatty combinations have been disrupted. In either case a change in the finer chemistry of the cell has taken place.

**2. Fat from Other Parts.**—The fatty degeneration that occurs in the intact animal may or may not be accompanied by an increased amount of fat in the cells. Thus fatty degeneration of the kidneys, the spleen, and the muscles is usually accompanied by no increase in the amount of fat as determined by chemical methods. On the other hand, the fatty liver and the fatty heart muscle may show an excessive quantity of fat. Rosenfeld has shown that the extra fat in the liver is derived from a transportation of fat from other parts of the body to the diseased organ. If animals are fed on a fat that does not normally occur in their bodies, a part of this fat is deposited without change in the fat depots, and the altered character of these deposits may be demonstrated. When such animals are later poisoned with phosphorus, the fat collections in the liver show a composition similar to that present elsewhere in the body. Evidently the foreign fat present in the adipose tissues has been carried to the liver. Had fat arisen in the liver itself it would not have been influenced by the composition of the storage deposit elsewhere. Furthermore, Rosenfeld has shown that if an animal has been rendered very poor in body fat, the administration of phosphorus does not produce a typical fatty liver. It follows, therefore, that fatty degeneration may be due: first, to changes which render visible the fats already in the cells; and, second, to a transportation of fats from the storage depots to the diseased organ.

**Change in Finer Chemistry of Cells.**—The significance of fatty degeneration can no longer be settled by the assumption that it is due to a disintegration of the cell proteins, and hence means serious cellular disease. According to Rosenfeld, indeed, fatty degeneration may be regarded as a compensatory process, whereby cells with an increased metabolism endeavor to meet their needs by accumulating fat. He believes that the cells disintegrate only when this source of energy fails to supply their needs. We know, at least, that fatty degeneration indicates some disturbance in the finer chemistry of the cells. The fatty degeneration of the liver seen

in phosphorus poisoning is accompanied by a disappearance of the liver glycogen, by an increased protein metabolism and by decreased oxidation. The feeding of sugar to phosphorus-poisoned animals conserves and replenishes the hepatic glycogen and markedly diminishes the toxic effect of the phosphorus.

How seriously a fatty degeneration affects the functions of the cells can only be learned by physiological methods of study. In phosphorus poisoning the fatty liver shows numerous other abnormalities and the fatty heart is associated with an unusual tendency to dilatation. To what extent the less marked types of fatty degeneration, such as occur not infrequently at autopsies, indicate impairment of the functional activities of the cells is not known.

### Local Cholesterol Deposits

A local increase in the amount of cholesterol occurs in sclerotic blood vessels, in the white plaques of nephritic retinitis, in the arcus senilis, in xanthomata, in old infarcts, in the caseous material of tuberculous lesions and in the cholesteatomatous tumors of the ear and cranial cavity. The majority of gall-stones consists largely of cholesterol and certain stones are composed almost entirely of this substance.

In many of these cases the local deposits depend doubtlessly upon local changes in the tissues, which in some manner favor a deposit of cholesterol. In tuberculosis, for example, the amount of cholesterol in the blood is usually normal or diminished, and its deposition in caseous material must be due to local changes. On the other hand, certain cholesterol deposits are frequently associated with an increased percentage in the blood, and it is possible that the deposit depends in part upon this increase. Multiple tuberous xanthomata, for example, which are composed largely of cholesterol deposits, are usually associated with hypercholesterolemia. They occur most frequently in jaundice and diabetes, conditions in which the cholesterol of the blood is usually increased. The relation between pregnancy and gall-stones may depend in part upon the fact that hypercholesterolemia is almost regularly observed during the later months of pregnancy. To what extent the cholesterol deposits in atheromatous arteries, in nephritic retinitis and in the arcus senilis depend upon the increased amount of this substance, that is present at times in the blood of these patients, is not known. The possible relation is emphasized by the experiments of Anitschkou, who found that when cholesterol was fed to rabbits arterial changes developed.

## Acidosis

### *Formation of Acids in the Body*

During metabolism acids are constantly being formed. The carbon present in proteins, fats and carbohydrates is mostly burned to carbonic acid; the sulphur contained in proteins is in part converted into sulphuric acid, while the phosphorus derived from nucleoproteins and from lecithin is converted into phosphoric acid. In addition, various organic acids arise during the intermediary metabolism. Thus fatty acids are set free from fat, and the deaminization of amino acids leaves behind an organic acid from which the alkaline amino radicle has been removed. Glucose may, under certain circumstances, give rise to lactic acid. If these organic acids that are formed during the intermediary metabolism fail to burn to their normal end products—i. e., to water and carbon dioxid—they increase the amount of acid that must leave the body by way of the kidneys.

The formation of aceto-acetic and beta-oxybutyric acids will be discussed in the chapter on Diabetes under the section devoted to the acetone bodies.

### **Lactic Acid**

Particular interest is attached to the occurrence of lactic acid in the body. It is well known that when an isolated voluntary muscle is made to contract it becomes more acid, and that this is due mainly to the formation of a dextrorotatory lactic acid (sarcolactic acid). When muscles or other tissues die they become acid for a similar reason.

Embden and his associates sought to determine the derivation of lactic acid by perfusing fluids through the liver. In this way they showed that lactic acid could be formed from glycogen stored in the liver or from glucose or alanin added to the perfusion fluid. It is probable, therefore, that lactic acid may arise in the intermediary metabolism either from carbohydrates or from certain of the protein-building stones. Apparently it may also originate from other less understood substances. Among the conditions which favor the formation of lactic acid is a lack of oxygen. Indeed, Woodyatt believes that the combustion of glucose does not normally pass through a lactic acid stage, but that this acid arises only when there is diminished oxidation.

**Urine.**—Small amounts of lactic acid have been isolated from the body fluids and from various organs. When the amount present in the blood is increased, lactic acid passes into the urine. Thus, after violent muscular exercise, it has been found both in the urine and in increased amounts in the blood. During very violent muscular exercise the supply of oxygen to the muscles may become insufficient for their increased needs,



despite the marked increase in the respiratory exchange. The elimination of lactic acid after convulsive seizures of various kinds is probably to be attributed to the violent muscular contractions. During severe asphyxia the amount of lactic acid in the blood may also be increased owing to the lack of oxygen. In carbon monoxid poisoning, with a marked reduction in the oxygen-carrying capacity of the hemoglobin, the same is true. The lactic acid which appears in the urine in association with severe hepatic degenerations, such as occur in phosphorus poisoning, appears to be due to some inability on the part of the cells to utilize the oxygen supplied to them.

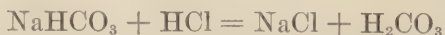
### ***The Neutrality of the Blood***

Despite the constant formation of acid substances in the body, and despite numerous variations in the amount of acid- or alkali-forming substances taken in the food, the reaction of the blood remains practically constant under normal as well as under pathological conditions. This reaction is so slightly alkaline that it may be regarded as almost neutral. The mechanism whereby this neutrality is maintained despite variations in acid or alkali intake, and despite the normal and pathological formation of acids within the body, depends upon at least three factors: (1) the buffer properties of the blood; (2) the elimination of acids through the lungs and kidneys; and (3) the neutralization of acids by an increase in ammonia.

#### **(1) Buffer Property of the Body Fluids**

The reaction of the blood changes but slightly when acids or alkalies are added to it. This "buffer property" of the blood is due mainly to its content of free and combined carbonic acid. Practically all natural solutions, both organic and inorganic, contain such a mixture of carbonic acid and its salts; and, on this account, practically all solutions occurring in nature are approximately neutral.

When a strong acid is added to such a solution, it decomposes some of the bicarbonate, and changes the relative amounts of carbonic acid and carbonates, as in the following reaction:



The immediate effect of adding a strong acid is to diminish the amount of sodium bicarbonate and to increase the amount of carbonic acid. Since the carbonic acid in such a solution dissociates only to a slight extent, its formation causes only a slight increase of acidity. Furthermore, such solutions in nature are commonly exposed to the air and the amount of carbonic acid they contain eventually comes into equilibrium with the

carbon dioxid of the air. Thus, any excess of  $\text{CO}_2$  resulting from the addition of an acid, would eventually pass into the air.

L. J. Henderson has pointed out that the reaction of a solution containing both carbonic acid and carbonates is determined by the proportion between these two. In the blood this proportion  $\frac{\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3}{\text{NaHCO}_3}$  is equal to about 1/20. If abnormal acids accumulate in the body, they tend to disturb this ratio both by increasing the carbonic acid and by diminishing the sodium bicarbonate. Such a change causes a lessened alkalinity by reason of the increased value of the ratio  $\frac{\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3}{\text{NaHCO}_3}$ . Any such change in the ratio stimulates respiration. More  $\text{CO}_2$  escapes from the lungs and the level of carbonic acid in the blood falls until the carbonic acid in the blood has been reduced to a point where the ratio  $\frac{\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3}{\text{NaHCO}_3}$  is again approximately equal to 1/20. Thus the reaction of the blood approaches normal, despite the addition of acid. At the same time both the bicarbonates and the carbonic acid in the blood are lessened.

Other buffer substances besides the carbonates occur in the body. Among these are the salts of phosphoric acid which are present in the blood cells and tissues and which act in a manner comparable to the carbonates. Proteins as well as other substances in the blood may also produce buffer effects.

## (2) Elimination of Acids

The neutrality of the blood is also maintained by the elimination of acid substances from the body. In addition to the carbon dioxide given off from the lungs, an acid urine is secreted by the kidneys. Both serve to regulate the chemical reaction of the body. When acid-forming substances are taken by mouth, the urine, within limits, becomes more acid; whereas when alkalies are taken the urine becomes more alkaline. The content of carbonic acid in the blood is influenced by the amount of other acids present. The respiratory center is exceedingly sensitive to changes in the acidity of the blood that comes to it. When for any reason this acidity is even slightly increased, the center is stimulated, the respirations are increased, the tension of carbon dioxid in the pulmonary alveoli is diminished and more carbon dioxid is given off from the blood. This reduction of carbonic acid in the blood continues until the reaction of this fluid approximates the normal. In this way the diminution of carbonates caused by any excess of acid is compensated by a reduction of carbonic acid in the blood (see Respiration).

### (3) Increased Ammonia Formation

We have seen that excess acids in the body tend to decompose the carbonates by combining with the bases present as salts of carbonic acid. It is obvious, however, that when the fixed bases (sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, etc.) are utilized by the body for the neutralization of excess acid, a continuous loss of such bases through the kidney might ultimately cause an impoverishment of the body in these bases; unless, indeed, the supply in the food were correspondingly increased. Of great importance, therefore, is the fact that the body has at its disposal a variable quantity of alkali in the form of ammonia. Ordinarily the ammonia that is split off from the amino acids is for the most part converted into urea and is eliminated in that form. When there is an excessive amount of acid in the body, however, a part of the ammonia, instead of being converted into urea, unites with the acid and is excreted in the urine as ammonium salts.

The quantity of ammonia which is available for this purpose depends largely upon the amount of protein catabolism. In general, carnivora withstand the administration of acid by mouth better than herbivora, because a larger amount of nitrogenous waste is available for ammonia formation. If carnivora be given a diet low in proteins, or if proteins be added to the diet of herbivora, the difference in resistance to acid administration disappears.

**Protection of Fixed Alkalis.**—This neutralization of excessive acid by ammonia tends to protect the body against a loss of its fixed alkalis. The protection is not a perfect one, however. In the earlier stages of acid administration the more available fixed alkalis are swept out of the system, and if the formation of ammonia becomes insufficient further losses occur. Under any circumstances it is probable that some loss of fixed bases always occurs, and that in the long run this may mean a serious depletion of the body.

### *Definition of Acidosis*

It is evident from what has been said that in acidosis no marked change in the chemical reaction of the blood ordinarily occurs. It is possible that after severe damage a local production of acid may cause an acid reaction limited to a small region, but this never extends to the entire body. Indeed, an acid reaction of the blood appears to be incompatible with life, and it has only been observed occasionally as an agonal condition. By acidosis, therefore, we do not mean that the reaction of the blood has changed to any appreciable extent, but that excessive amounts of non-volatile acids have called into play those compensatory factors which serve to maintain neutrality. Chief among these are the respiratory changes, the diminished amount of carbonic acid and carbonates in the



blood, and, in some cases, the increased elimination of ammonium salts in the urine.

In one respect, at least, this definition of acidosis is not sufficiently comprehensive, for it fails to include the so-called carbonic acid acidosis. In this condition carbonic acid accumulates in the blood because its escape in the respired air is hindered by cardiorespiratory disease. Such a condition causes increased stimulation of the respiratory center with hyperpnea, so that the alveolar tension of carbon dioxid is lessened. But the blood does not show a corresponding change in its carbonic acid content, and the alkali reserve of the plasma is not reduced. This form of acidosis differs, therefore, in many particulars, from that due to the accumulation of non-volatile acids.

### *Evidences of Acidosis*

Some of the changes produced by acidosis have been described. Are these changes characteristic of acidosis, or may they be due to other causes? Also, do certain changes occur in some but not in all forms of acidosis?

**Carbonic Acid and the Carbonates.**—In acidosis the blood carbonates are decomposed and lessened. At the same time, any marked change in the reaction of the blood is corrected by an increased activity of the respiratory center, which lessens the tension of carbonic acid in the alveoli and in the blood. A reduction of carbonates and of carbonic acid in the blood and a lessened tension of carbon dioxid in the alveoli certainly occur in acidosis. Yet it is evident, on consideration, that these changes may also result from other causes. If, for example, the respiratory center were stimulated by some cause other than acidosis, the increased pulmonary ventilation would lessen the alveolar tension of carbon dioxid, and this would in turn reduce the tension of this gas in the blood. Thus a condition of alkalosis would tend to become established, owing to excessive pulmonary ventilation. Under such circumstances the kidneys excrete a more alkaline urine and reduce the fixed alkali in the body with a reduction in the amount of carbonates in the blood. Thus a reduction of carbonates and carbonic acid in the blood and a lessened tension of carbon dioxid in the alveoli might well result from any cause which stimulated the respiratory center. This sequence of events apparently occurs when an individual moves from sea level to a high altitude (see *Respiration at High Altitudes*). The changes in acid-base equilibrium observed after such a change are no longer attributed to acidosis but to a compensated alkalosis caused in some way by the lack of oxygen. A reduction of carbon dioxid in the alveoli and in the blood, together with a lessening of the blood carbonates, such as occur in acidosis, can, therefore, no longer be regarded as characteristic signs of this condition. They may also result from any cause which increases alveolar ventilation.

**Ammonia Excretion.**—The severity of certain forms of acidosis may be estimated from the quantity of ammonia in the urine, for the excess of acid is in part neutralized by ammonia that would otherwise be excreted as urea. As a rule an increased excretion of ammonia in the urine is indicative of acidosis. The theoretic possibility that such an increase may be due to a primary failure to convert ammonium salts into urea has not been satisfactorily demonstrated. On the other hand, it should be remembered that when fixed alkalis, such as sodium bicarbonate, are taken by mouth, these may neutralize excesses of acid, and may cause the ammonia in the urine to be lessened or almost to disappear.

In severe renal disease, acidosis may be present and yet the quantity of ammonia in the urine may be normal or diminished. Marriott and Howland have shown that in this type of acidosis there is an increase in the phosphate of the blood serum. Since the kidneys assist in preserving the normal reaction of the body by excreting an acid urine, and since the acidity of the urine is due largely to the excretion of acid phosphate, it would appear that in the acidosis of nephritis the ability of the kidneys to excrete acids in the form of acid phosphate is diminished and that this leads to a retention of phosphate in the blood. This type of acidosis is not accompanied by an increased excretion of ammonia. Experiments on normal individuals have shown that acid phosphate administration, unlike the administration of hydrochloric acid, causes no increase in the urinary ammonia. Indeed the presence of excess phosphates in the body fluids actually inhibits the formation of ammonia. In nephritis, therefore, the acidosis may be due to phosphate retention, and when this is the case the excretion of ammonia is not increased. In certain forms of infantile diarrhea, an acidosis occurs, which is similar to that seen in severe renal disease, being associated with phosphate retention.

**Alkali Tolerance.**—The excretion of an acid urine from an alkaline blood is a normal method of eliminating acid from the body. If incombustible acids be taken by mouth, the acidity of the urine is, within limits, increased, and if fixed alkalis (sodium bicarbonate) be taken, the acidity of the urine diminishes, and it eventually becomes alkaline. When four to five grams of sodium bicarbonate are taken by mouth by a normal individual the urine usually becomes alkaline for several hours. In certain pathological conditions, little or no reduction in the acidity of the urine follows the administration of this amount of sodium bicarbonate; while in conditions of pronounced acidosis extraordinary quantities of alkali must be given before the urine becomes alkaline. The failure to produce an alkaline urine by the administration of four grams of sodium bicarbonate indicates a need on the part of the body for alkali. The amount of alkali that must be administered in order to cause an alkaline urine is a reliable measure of the degree of this acidosis.

### *Symptoms of Acidosis*

The occurrence of acidosis and its relation to clinical pictures will be discussed in some detail in the chapters on Diabetes, Respiration, and Renal Disease. It may be pointed out here, however, that an increase in the total pulmonary ventilation necessarily results from the effort on the part of the body to keep down the level of carbon dioxide in the blood. This is the direct cause of the "air-hunger" characteristic of diabetic coma. It also plays a part in the pathogenesis of certain forms of renal dyspnea.

### *References*

#### *The Basal Metabolism*

- Benedict (F. G.).** Factors affecting basal metabolism. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1915**, *xx*, 263.
- Benedict (F. G.).** The measurement and standards of basal metabolism. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, *lxxvii*, 247.
- Benedict (F. G.) & Carpenter (T. M.).** The metabolism and energy transformations of healthy man during rest. Publ. by the Carnegie Inst. of Washington. **1910**.
- Benedict (F. G.) & Joslin (E. P.).** A study of metabolism in severe diabetes. Publ. by the Carnegie Inst. of Washington, **1912**. Pub. No. 176.
- Benedict (F. G.) & Pratt (J. H.).** The metabolism after meat feeding of dogs in which pancreatic external secretion was absent. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1913**, *xv*, 1.
- Benedict (F. G.), Roth (P.) & Smith (H. M.).** The basal gaseous metabolism of normal men and women. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1914**, *xviii*, 139.
- Coleman (W.) & Du Bois (E. F.).** Calorimetric observations on the metabolism of typhoid patients with and without food. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, *xv*, 887.
- Du Bois (E. F.).** The total energy requirement on disease. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, *lxviii*, 827.
- Du Bois (E. F.).** Clinical Calorimetry. Fourteenth paper. Metabolism in exophthalmic goiter. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, *xvii*, 915.
- Gephart (F. C.) & Du Bois (E. F.).** The determination of the basal metabolism of normal men and the effect of food. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, *xv*, 835.
- Grafe (E.).** Untersuchungen über den Stoff- und Kraftwechsel im Fieber. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1910-11**, *ci*, 209.  
*Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Stoffwechselerlangsamung (Untersuchungen bei stuporösen Zuständen).* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, *cii*, 15.  
*Die Steigerung des Stoffwechsels bei chronischer Leukämie und ihre Ursachen.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, *cii*, 406.
- Lusk (G.).** The specific dynamic action of the foodstuffs. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, *lxviii*, 824.  
*The fundamental requirements of energy for proper nutrition.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1918**, *lxx*, 821.  
*Fundamental ideas regarding basal metabolism.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, *lxxvii*, 250.
- Magnus-Levy (A.).** Ueber Myxödem. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1904**, *lii*, 201.  
*Untersuchungen zur Schilddrüsenfrage.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1897**, *xxviii*, 269.
- Williams (H. B.), Riche (J. A.) & Lusk (G.).** Metabolism of the dog following the ingestion of meat in large quantity. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1912**, *xii*, 349.
- Zuntz, Lowey, Müller & Caspari.** Höhenklima und Bergwanderung. Berlin, **1906**.



## Obesity

- Armsby (H. P.) & Fries (J. A.).** The influence of the degree of fatness of cattle upon their utilization of feed. *Jour. Agric. Res.*, **1917**, xi, 451.
- Benedict (F. G.) & Homans (J.).** The metabolism of the hypophysectomized dog. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1911-12**, xxv, 409.
- von Bergmann (G.).** Die Fettsucht. In: Oppenheimer, *Handbuch der Biochemie des Menschen und der Tiere*, **1910**, Bd. iv, 2. Teil, ii, 208.
- Grafe (E. v.).** Zur Pathologie und Therapie der sog. "konstitutionellen" Fettsucht. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1920**, cxxiii, 41.
- Means (J. H.).** The basal metabolism in obesity. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, xvii, 704.
- von Noorden (C.).** Ueber die verschiedenen Formen der Fettsucht. *Med. Klinik*, **1909**, v, 1.
- Talbot (F. B.).** Studies in metabolism. II. Metabolism of very obese children with a small sella turcica (typus frölich?). *Am. Jour. Dis. Child.*, **1920**, xx, 331.

## Inanition

- Benedict (F. G.).** A study of prolonged fasting. *Carnegie Institution of Washington, D. C.*, **1915**, publication 203.
- Benedict (F. G.), Miles (W. R.), Roth (P.) & Smith (H. M.).** Human vitality and efficiency under prolonged restricted diet. *Carnegie Institution of Washington, D. C.*, **1919**, publication 280.
- Loewy (A. v.) & Strauss (H.).** Ergebnisse der Kriegserfahrungen für die Physiologie der Ernährung und für die Diätetik. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1919**, xlv, 369, 397.
- Lusk (G.).** The physiological effect of undernutrition. *Physiol. Rev.*, **1921**, i, 523.

## Protein Requirements

- Abderhalden (E.).** Fütterungsversuche mit vollständig abgebauten Nahrungsstoffen. *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1912**, lxxvii, 22.
- Caspari (W.).** Der Eiweissstoffwechsel. In: Oppenheimer, *Handbuch der Biochemie*, **1910**, Bd. iv, 1. Teil, i, 722.
- Chittenden (R. H.).** *Physiological economy in nutrition*. New York, **1904**.
- Cooke (J. V.) & Whipple (G. H.).** Proteose intoxications and injury of body protein. IV. The metabolism of dogs with sterile abscess, pancreatitis and pleuritis. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1918**, xxviii, 223.
- Folin (O.).** Intermediary protein metabolism. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxiii, 823.
- Mendel (L. B.).** Newer points of view regarding the part played by different food substances in nutrition. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxiii, 819.
- Osborne (T. B.) & Mendel (L. B.).** Amino acids in nutrition and growth. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1914**, xvi, 325.
- Siven (V. O.).** Zur Kenntniss des Stoffwechsels beim erwachsenen Menschen, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Eiweissbedarfs. *Skand. Arch. f. Physiol.*, **1901**, xi, 308.
- Thomas.** Quoted by Graham Lusk in: *The fundamental basis of nutrition*. New Haven, **1914**.
- Whipple (G. H.), Cooke (J. V.) & Stearns (T.).** Proteose intoxication and injury of body protein. II. The metabolism of dogs with duodenal obstruction and isolated loops in the intestine. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1917**, xxv, 479.
- Van Slyke (D. D.).** The present significance of the amino-acids in physiology and pathology. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1917**, xix, 56.

## Autolysis

- Abderhalden (E.) & Bergell (P.).** Ueber das Auftreten von Monoaminosäuren im Harn von Kaninchen nach Phosphorvergiftung. *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1903**, xxxix, 464.
- Jacoby (M.).** Ueber die Beziehung der Leber und Blutveränderungen bei Phosphorvergiftung zur Autolyse. *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1900**, xxx, 174.
- Müller (F.).** Ueber die Bedeutung der Selbstverdauung bei einigen krankhaften Zuständen. *Verhandl. Kongr. f. inn. Med.*, **1902**, xx, 192.
- Neuberg (C.) & Richter (P. F.).** Ueber das Vorkommen von freien Aminosäuren im Blut bei akuter Leberatrophie. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1904**, xxx, 499.
- Simonds (J. P.).** The mechanism of the protective action of carbohydrate diet in phosphorus and chloroform poisoning. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1919**, xxiii, 362.
- Taylor (A. E.).** A chemical study of the liver from a case of acute yellow atrophy of the liver. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1902**, viii, 424.
- Wells (H. G.).** The chemistry of the liver in acute yellow atrophy. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1907**, ix, 627.  
The chemistry of the liver in chloroform necrosis. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1909**, v, 129.
- Wohlgemuth (J.).** In: *Oppenheimer, Handbuch der Biochemie*, **1910**, Bd. iii; 1. Teil, 180.

## Cystinuria, Alcaptonuria, etc.

- Allard (E.) & Gross (O.).** Alkaptonurie und Ochronose. *Mitteil. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chir.*, **1908**, xix, 24.
- Alsberg (C. L.).** On the occurrence of oxidative ferments in a melanosarcoma of the liver. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1907**, xvi, 117.
- Alsberg (C. L.) & Folin (O.).** Protein Metabolism in Cystinuria. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1905**, xiv, 54.
- Beddard (A. P.).** Ochronosis associated with carboluria. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1909-10**, iii, 329.
- Beddard (A. P.) & Plumtre (C. M.).** A further note on ochronosis associated with carboluria. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1911-12**, v, 505.
- Bittorf (A.).** Zur Frage der Pigmentbildung bei der Addisonschen Krankheit. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmak.*, **1914**, lxxv, 143.
- von Fürth (O.).** Melanine. In: *Probleme der physiologischen und pathologischen Chemie*, **1912**, i, 522.
- Kastle (J. H.).** The oxidases. *Hygienic Lab. Bull.*, **1910**, lix, 67.
- Neuberg (C.).** Anomalien des Eiweissabbaues. In: *Oppenheimer, Handbuch der Biochemie*, **1910**, Bd. iv; 2. Teil, ii, 334.
- Poulsen (V.).** Ueber Ochronose bei Menschen und Tieren. *Beitr. z. path. Anat.*, **1910**, xlviii, 437.
- Smillie (W. G.).** Treatment of cystinuria. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 503.
- Williams (H. B.) & Wolf (C. G.).** Protein metabolism in cystinuria. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1909**, vi, 337.

## Diseases Due to Deficient Diets

- Cohen (B.) & Mendel (L. B.).** Experimental scurvy of the guinea pig in relation to the diet. *J. Biol. Chem.*, **1918**, xxxv, 425.
- Eykman (C.).** Beriberi ähnliche Krankheit der Hühner. *Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1897**, cxliii, 523.  
Ein Versuch zur Bekämpfung der Beriberi. *Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1897**, cxlix, 187.

- Funk (C.).** Ueber die physiologische Bedeutung gewisser bisher unbekannter Nahrungsbestandteile der Vitamine. *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1913**, xiii, 125.  
*Studies on Beriberi. Jour. Physiol.*, **1913**, xvi, 173.
- Hess (A. F.) & Fish (M.).** Infantile scurvy; the blood, the blood-vessels and the diet. *Am. Jour. Dis. Child.*, **1914**, viii, 385.
- Hess (A. F.) & Unger (L. J.).** Scurvy. VIII. Factors affecting the antiscorbutic value of foods. *Am. Jour. Dis. Child.*, **1919**, xvii, 221.  
New observations of Lipoids. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1919**, lxxiii, 988.
- Howland (J.) & Kramer (B.).** Calcium and phosphorus in the serum in relation to rickets. *Am. Jour. Dis. Child.*, **1921**, xxii, 105.
- Little (J. M.).** Beriberi caused by fine white flour. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1912**, lviii, 2029.
- McCollum (E. V.).** The newer knowledge of nutrition; the use of food for the preservation of vitality and health. New York, The Macmillan Company, **1919**.
- McCollum (E. V.) & Davis (M.).** The necessity of certain lipins in the diet during growth. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1913**, xv, 167.
- Mellanby (E.).** An experimental investigation on rickets. *Lancet*, **1919**, i, 407.
- Mendel (L. B.).** Nutrition and growth. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1915**, lxiv, 1539.
- Ohler (W. R.).** Experimental polyneuritis. Effect of an exclusive diet of wheat flour in the form of ordinary bread on fowls. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1914**, xxxi, 239.
- Sherman (H. C.).** The vitamins. *Physiol. Rev.*, **1921**, i, 598.
- Sherman (H. C.).** Calcium requirement of maintenance in man. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1920**, xlii, 21.

### Some Disturbances in Lipoids

- Bloor (W. R.).** Fat assimilation. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1916**, xxiv, 447.
- Bloor (W. R.).** The lipoids ("Fat") of the blood in diabetes. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1916**, xxvi, 417.
- Bloor (W. R.).** The blood lipoids in nephritis. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1917**, xxvi, 575.
- Bloor (W. R.) & MacPherson (D. J.).** The blood lipoids in anemia. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1917**, xxxi, 79.
- von Fürth (O.).** Probleme der physiologischen und pathologischen Chemie. Leipzig, **1913**, ii, 394.
- De Langen (C. D.).** Cholesterine-metabolism and pathology of races. Mededeel. v. d. burgerl. geneesk. dienst. in Nederl-Indie. Batavia, **1918**, Pt. i, 1.
- Lemierre (A.), Brulé (M.), Weill (A.) & Laudat (M.).** L'examen chimique et ultra-microscopique du sang dans l'étude de l'absorption intestinale des graisses. *Bull. Soc. Méd. des Hôp.*, **1913**, xxxvi, 72.
- McNee (J. W.).** Cholesterin; an account of its relations to pathology and physiology, *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1914**, vii, 221.
- Rosenfeld (G.).** Fettbildung. *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1903**, ii (I), 50.  
Eiweisskörper und Leberverfettung. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1910**, xlvii, 1268.
- Widal (F.), Weill (A.) & Laudat (M.).** Étude comparative du taux de la cholestérine libre et de ses éthers dans le sérum sanguin. *Comp. rend. Soc. de Biol.*, **1913**, lxxiv, 882.

### Acidosis

- Barcroft (J.) & Orbeli (L.).** The influence of lactic acid upon the dissociation curve of blood. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1910-11**, xli, 355.
- Embden (G.) & Associates.** A series of articles on lactic acid formation. *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1912**, xlv, 1-206.



- Henderson (L. J.).** Das Gleichgewicht zwischen Basen und Säuren im tierischen Organismus. *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1909**, viii, 254.  
*The regulation of neutrality in the animal body.* *Science*, **1913**, xxxvii, 389.
- Henderson (L. J.) & Palmer (W. W.).** On the extremes of variation of the concentration of ionized hydrogen in human urine. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1913**, xiv, 81.
- Marriott (W. McK.) & Howland (J.).** Phosphate retention as a factor in the production of acidosis in nephritis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, xviii, 708.  
*The influence of acid phosphate on the elimination of ammonia in the urine.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1918**, xxii, 477.
- Palmer (W. W.) & Henderson (L. J.).** Clinical studies on acid base equilibrium and the nature of acidosis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 153.
- Peabody (F. W.).** Studies of acidosis and dyspnea in renal and cardiac disease. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 236.
- Ryffel (J. H.).** Lactic acid in metabolism. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1909-10**, iii, 221, 413.
- Sellards (A. W.).** The determination of the equilibrium in the human body between acids and bases, with especial reference to acidosis and nephropathies. *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.*, **1912**, xxviii, 289.  
*A clinical method for studying titratable alkalinity of the blood and its application to acidosis.* *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.*, **1914**, xxv, 101.  
*The principles of acidosis and clinical methods for its study.* Cambridge, Harvard University Press, **1917**.
- Sörensen (S. P. L.).** Ueber die Messung und Bedeutung der Wasserstoffionenkonzentration bei biologischen Prozessen. *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1912**, xii, 393.

## Chapter IV

# Disturbances in the Carbohydrate Metabolism

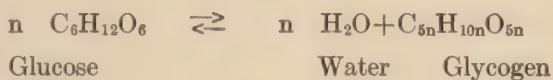
### Diabetes

#### General Considerations

The maintenance of a nearly uniform concentration of sugar in the circulating blood is a fundamental adjustment of the human body. In spite of variations in the amount of carbohydrates supplied to and consumed by the body, the percentage of sugar in the blood changes but slightly. In man, this percentage, as determined by reduction tests, normally varies from 0.07 to 0.14 per cent with an average of approximately 0.10 per cent. The major portion of this reduction is due to the presence of grape sugar or glucose. In addition to this relatively free or "immediate" sugar, Lépine also speaks of the "virtual" blood sugar which becomes free under special circumstances, as by exposing blood to the action of ferments or by boiling it with mineral acids, particularly hydrofluoric acid. The significance of this "virtual" blood sugar is not certain and in most studies its presence is disregarded.

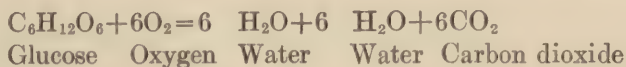
**Normal Carbohydrate Metabolism.**—In the normal course of carbohydrate digestion, glucose and other monosaccharids are formed in the alimentary tract. These are absorbed mainly by the intestinal radicles of the portal vein and are carried by the blood stream to the liver. Excessive amounts of glucose in the portal blood are converted in part into liver glycogen, in part they are removed from the circulating blood by other less understood agencies. Other monosaccharids, and particularly levulose and galactose, are removed from the blood to a relatively large extent by the liver. These mechanisms for the removal of sugar from the circulating blood are so perfect, that even after a meal rich in carbohydrates the total blood sugar is increased by small amounts only. Thus Tachau found in nineteen individuals that the average percentage of 0.078 during fasting was increased to an average of 0.086 per cent after the adminis-

tration of 100 grams of glucose; Leire found that after giving oatmeal gruel and milk to three individuals the average percentage of blood sugar rose from 0.09 to 0.11, and Strouse found rises from an average of 0.066 before to 0.10 after ordinary meals. The glycogen which is stored in the liver is in turn gradually transformed into blood glucose to meet the body needs. These transformations of simple sugars into glycogen and of glycogen into glucose are performed by special hepatic ferments. The chemical reactions are, broadly speaking, those of dehydration and polymerization or the reverse and they may be represented by the following formula:



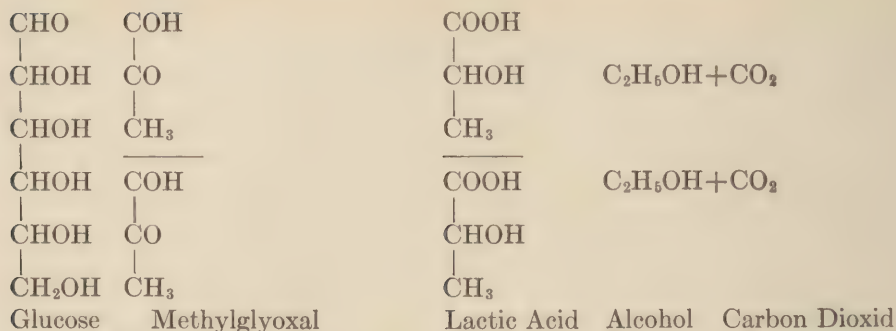
The liver acts as the chief primary storage reservoir for carbohydrates coming from the digestive tract, and it is one of the most important organs serving to prevent rapid fluctuations in the blood sugar. In this regulation of the percentage of sugar in the circulating blood it is assisted by other agencies, among which are the deposition of glycogen in other tissues, especially the muscles, and the formation of fat from glucose. These deposits of glycogen in other tissues and of fat represent a secondary system of storage for excess energy-containing material, and they assist the liver in removing excesses of sugar from the circulating blood. The importance of other organs in this action is suggested: (1) by the experiments of Bang who found relatively small increases in the liver glycogen of rabbits after the administration of glucose; (2) by the relatively slight increase in the blood sugar after feeding glucose to dogs with the Eck fistula (Michaud); and (3) by the failure to find alimentary glycosuria after feeding glucose to patients with liver disease.

COMBUSTION OF GLUCOSE.—The combustion of glucose occurs mainly in the muscles and the completed reaction is represented by the formula:



In the burning of a single molecule of glucose six molecules of oxygen are used and six molecules of carbon dioxide are formed. The ratio of the former to the latter is 1.0, and if glucose were the only substance burned in the body the ratio of the amount of oxygen absorbed and of carbon dioxide given off by the lungs, i. e., the respiratory quotient, would be 1.0. Little is known about the intermediary steps through which the sugar passes during the process of combustion, but lactic acid is generally regarded as an intermediary product. A. E. Taylor has suggested the following as a possible series of transformations:





### *Hypoglycemia*

In certain conditions the blood sugar may be less than the average normal. During violent muscular exercise, for example, the concentration of sugar may fall and during the convulsions of tetanus this fall is marked. The fall in these cases is presumably due to the rapid combustion of sugar in the muscles. A hypoglycemia may be produced by various poisons; such as diphtheria toxin, phosphorus and hydrazin. The blood sugar has been found low in certain endocrine disturbances, notably after thyroidec-tomy and adrenalectomy, in Addison's disease and in myxedema. Of special interest is the observation by McCrudden, by Janney and others, that the blood sugar is low in patients suffering from muscular dystrophy. McCrudden believes that this hypoglycemia contributes to the muscular weakness of these patients.

Hypoglycemia may be attributed either to an unusually rapid combustion of sugar (muscular exertion) or to an insufficient supply of sugar to the blood from the glycogen reservoirs. The latter apparently causes the hypoglycemia in many of the above conditions. Why there should be a failure to maintain the normal concentration of sugar in the blood in such conditions is not clear.

### Renal Glycosurias

Only very minute quantities of sugar normally pass through the kidneys into the urine. Normal kidneys do not actively excrete sugar when its concentration in the blood is normal.

**Cause of Renal Threshold for Sugar.**—The cause of this phenomenon has not been definitely established. On the one hand, it has been held that the hemic glucose is in a free chemical state, and that the renal cells are not excited to secretory activity by such amounts as occur normally in the blood. This view finds an analogy in the fact that the secretion of sodium chlorid by the kidneys seems to depend not upon the total amount of this salt in the blood, but upon the degree to which the amount in the blood

exceeds a definite limit. When the sodium chlorid content of the blood falls and this limit is approached, the elimination of sodium chlorid through the kidneys sinks to a minimum.

On the other hand, it has been suggested that the renal impermeability to the glucose is due to the latter being present in normal blood in some hypothetical colloidal combination which, like albumin, cannot readily pass the renal filter. The possible occurrence of such glucose combinations in the blood cannot be denied, though chemical proof of their existence in such quantity as would bear out this hypothesis has not been brought. Nevertheless, various authors have inclined toward the view that glucose normally circulates in some loose chemical combination which prevents its excretion by the kidney.

**Classification based on Renal Threshold.**—Whatever may be the ultimate explanation for the normal impermeability of the kidneys to the blood sugar, the current division of glycosurias is based upon this conception of a certain threshold limit of renal impermeability. On the one hand, we have those forms of glycosuria in which the renal threshold is lowered. Glycosuria occurs in spite of a normal amount of sugar in the blood. These are the so-called renal glycosurias. On the other hand, we have the commoner forms of glycosuria which are associated with a definite hyperglucemia and where the kidneys remove a portion of the excess sugar from the circulating blood. In the former case, the explanation for the glycosuria is to be sought either in changes of the renal activity or in changes in the hypothetical glucose combination of normal blood. In the latter case, the glycosuria is due to the hyperglucemia, and attention should be directed to the causes which have increased the sugar content of the blood rather than to its renal excretion.

The relation of the kidneys to blood sugar has frequently been likened to that of a dam which impounds a lake of water. So long as the water level remains below that of the dam, none flows over. An overflow may be produced on the one hand by a lowering of the dam (renal glycosuria) and on the other hand by a rise in the level of the water (hyperglucemia). This analogy cannot be pushed too far, however, for undoubtedly the conditions in the animal body are far more complex than in the mechanical restraint exercised by a dam upon a lake of water. The renal threshold appears to be a variable quantity even in a given individual. As a rule, sugar appears in the urine when its concentration in the blood reaches 0.16 per cent, but the threshold limit may vary from 0.12 to 0.18 without being distinctly pathological.

### *Phlorhizin Glycosuria*

In 1886 von Mering showed that the administration of the glucosid phlorhizin, to animals was followed by the appearance of dextrose in the

urine. The amount of urinary sugar excreted may be far in excess of that contained in the glucosid itself and, furthermore, a large part of the phlorhizin injected may subsequently be recovered from the urine. It is evident that most, if not all, of the sugar in the urine is derived from the poisoned animal and not from the drug. The glycosuria which follows the administration of phlorhizin is not associated with hyperglucemia. Indeed the concentration of glucose in the blood is often lowered. Thus, repeated injections given by Frank and Isaac to fasting dogs reduced the blood sugar to 0.05, 0.03 and even to 0.012 per cent. Phlorhizin glycosuria, therefore, belongs to the class of so-called renal glycosurias.

**Phlorhizin Acts on Renal Tubules.**—All our evidence indicates that the renal tubules constitute the portion of the kidneys acted upon by phlorhizin. In the frog, the glomeruli receive a different blood supply from the tubules, and Mosberg has shown that when the glomerular vessels of these animals are ligated, injections of phlorhizin still produces glycosuria, while injections of glucose now fail to do so. In these animals, the urinary glucose following an excess of blood sugar is excreted through the glomeruli, while the urinary glucose after phlorhizin injection passes through the tubules. By histochemical studies Seelig has shown that after giving phlorhizin to rabbits sugar can be demonstrated in and between the tubules, while it is present only in very small amounts in the glomeruli. Chemical analyses by Nishi have shown that in contrast to the normal kidney and to other forms of glycosuria, the kidney of phlorhizin poisoning shows a relatively large amount of sugar in the medulla. Various anatomical studies on phlorhizin kidneys have also shown that the principal anatomical lesions are located in the tubules. Finally injections of certain dyes, such as carmin and methylene blue, which are excreted through the tubules, may inhibit the action of subsequent phlorhizin injections.

**Effects of Phlorhizin Poisoning.**—The essential disturbances of carbohydrate metabolism produced by the administration of phlorhizin appears to be a drainage of blood glucose out through the kidneys. The other effects, largely secondary, are interesting and instructive, and as they have served to throw much light upon the problems of diabetes, they will be referred to frequently in the discussion of that disease. The drainage of glucose from the blood is followed by a reduction in the amount of glycogen stored in the liver, and to a lesser extent by a reduction in the amount of muscle glycogen. Yet the glycogen does not entirely disappear from the liver even though the animal is fasting, and it rapidly reaccumulates when the administration of phlorhizin is discontinued. Lusk showed that when an animal is given sufficiently large doses of phlorhizin at sufficiently frequent intervals, all of the sugar derived from the diet and all that is formed within the body may be completely elim-



inated by the kidneys. The inability of the completely phlorhizinized animal to burn dextrose is apparently due to a low concentration of sugar in the body, for if large quantities of carbohydrates are given, so as to maintain a higher concentration of sugar in the body, considerable amounts may be utilized. If large amounts of carbohydrates are not furnished, the caloric requirements of the animal are met by an increased metabolism of body proteins, and in dogs the urinary nitrogen may equal five times that of the control fasting animals (Reilly, Nolan and Lusk). Finally acetone bodies may appear in the urine and the animal may pass into a condition resembling diabetic coma. In phlorhizin poisoning, therefore, we have a very severe disturbance in the carbohydrate metabolism of the body, due primarily to an increased permeability of the renal filter to the blood glucose and to a consequent drainage of glucose from the body. Whether this drainage through the kidney is due primarily to changes in the renal filter itself, or to changes in some hypothetical combination of the blood sugar which allows it to pass a normal kidney, has not been definitely established. The present tendency, however, is to locate the essential changes in the kidney rather than in the blood (Lusk, Frank).

### ***Other Renal Glycosurias***

Much attention has been devoted to the possible existence of other glycosurias analogous to that produced by phlorhizin; where, in spite of a normal glucemia, there is a passage of glucose into the urine. Such conditions are spoken of as renal glycosurias or, where they are chronic, as renal diabetes. While such conditions have been proved to exist both experimentally and clinically, we know of none that are comparable in severity with that produced by phlorhizin poisoning. Indeed the latter represents the most severe type of glycosuria that can be produced experimentally, even exceeding in severity the glycosuria which follows total removal of the pancreas. As compared with the latter, the amount of sugar excreted during starvation is greater, the proportion of sugar derived from proteins is greater, the protein destruction is greater, and acidosis can be more regularly produced.

Experimentally it has been found that certain kidney poisons, and in particular corrosive sublimate, uranium salts, and the chromates, will induce mild degrees of glycosuria without appreciable increases in blood sugar (Frank). These salts produce specific changes in the renal tubules and the glycosuria is evidently renal in character. Certain organ extracts and certain sera have a similar action. The mechanism of salt glycosuria is less certain, but here also there seems to be some reduction in the renal permeability to glucose.

### *Renal Glycosurias in Man*

The question as to the occurrence of renal glycosurias in man was opened by Lépine and by Klemperer. The case described by the latter, however, has not withstood later criticism, and the same might be said of several cases subsequently reported. In 1913 Frank was able to collect from the literature only six cases which he regarded as renal glycosurias, and to these he added two new observations. Subsequently it was shown by Mann, as well as by Novak, Porges and Strisower, that the glycosuria of pregnancy, which is by no means infrequent and which has long been known for its benign character, is unassociated with any increase in the glucose of the blood. It therefore conforms to the principal criteria of a renal glycosuria, and up to the present time it is the commonest type of this affection known to occur in man. Quite recently, a number of cases of renal glycosuria have been described.

**Clinical Manifestations.**—The cases of renal glycosuria thus far described in man have been of a very mild character. The amount of sugar in the urine has varied from mere traces to 1.5 per cent or slightly more. A surprising lack of relationship between the amount of sugar in the urine and the character of the diet is characteristic of this affection. While there is a tendency to an increased excretion of sugar by the kidneys with any increased intake of carbohydrates and vice versa, the relation to diet is never so striking as it is in correspondingly mild cases of true diabetes mellitus. The excretion of sugar may even continue after all carbohydrates have been eliminated from the diet. Renal glycosuria may, therefore, be suspected when a mild glycosuria does not disappear promptly after the patient is placed on a carbohydrate free diet or when unaccountable variations occur in the excretion of sugar. To demonstrate a renal glycosuria, however, it is necessary to find a normal quantity of glucose in the blood at a time when sugar is appearing in the urine. Other evidences of kidney disease may be present or absent. In practice, the recognition of the occasional occurrence of a renal glycosuria is important, because of the relatively favorable prognosis of this condition, and because in such patients there is not the same necessity for dieting as in the milder types of true diabetes mellitus.

## **Alimentary Glycosuria and Related Conditions**

### *Alimentary Glycosuria*

The glucose taken in the diet, together with that formed during the digestion of other carbohydrates, is for the most part carried to the liver in the portal blood. Here a part of the excess of glucose is converted into

glycogen. Apparently another part is rapidly removed from the blood in other tissues, for Michaud has shown that when the blood is shunted from the vena porta to the inferior vena cava by an Eck fistula the giving of 100 grams of glucose to a dog does not raise the blood sugar excessively, and Bang failed to find sufficient amounts of glycogen in the liver or of glucose in the blood to account for the amounts absorbed after giving glucose to fasting rabbits (also after intravenous injections). By these means, any marked rise in the concentration of sugar in the general circulation after meals is prevented. As sugar ceases to come from the alimentary tract and as that in the blood is consumed, a part of the hepatic glycogen is reconverted into glucose and again enters the blood stream. Since the human liver has a storage capacity of 150 to 200 grams of glycogen, it is evident that it is able to arrest and fix any ordinary amount of glucose coming from the intestinal tract, provided it is permitted to discharge some of its contents between meals, and provided that the sugar from the digestive tract is not absorbed too rapidly.

**Overrapid Absorption of Glucose.**—Under special circumstances, however, the glucose absorbed from the alimentary tract is not removed from the circulating blood with sufficient speed to prevent a general hyperglucemia which is sufficient to cause an elimination of glucose through the kidneys. Normal individuals may usually ingest large quantities of starchy foods with their meals without causing glycosuria. Owing to the time consumed in digestion and absorption, the liver and other organs are given time to remove most of the excess of glucose from the circulating blood and so prevent a marked hyperglucemia. Under certain conditions, however, the absorption of glucose is so rapid that the mechanism for its removal from the circulating blood is insufficient to prevent a rise in the level of blood sugar sufficient to cause glycosuria. This type of glycosuria is spoken of as an alimentary glycosuria. It was formerly believed that while normal individuals might show alimentary glycosuria after taking excessive quantities of sugar, they could take unlimited quantities of starch by mouth without the appearance of sugar in the urine. Occasionally, however, a rapid digestion of large quantities of starch may lead to alimentary glycosuria.

**Alimentary Tolerance.**—The maximum amount of sugar that may be taken by mouth without the appearance of glycosuria is usually spoken of as the alimentary tolerance or assimilative capacity for glucose. This tolerance varies with different individuals and with the same individual under different conditions. In normal individuals 100 grams of glucose may usually be taken by mouth in one dose without the appearance of a glycosuria (Strauss, Oordt, etc.), and larger amounts up to and above 300 grams have been tolerated (Hofmeister and Bezzler). The tolerance varies with the age of the individual. Elderly persons are believed to have a somewhat lower glucose tolerance than those in youth or middle



life (von Adlor, Ehrenberg and Yitemann). According to Greenfield, the tolerance in infants and children up to the age of 10 years is also reduced. His results are shown in the following chart:

TOLERANCE	
Average Age	Dextrose per Kilo
2½ years.....	0.4
3¼ years.....	1.0
4⅓ years.....	0.7
5¼ years.....	1.4
8 years.....	2.1
9 years.....	2.8

**Blood Sugar after Glucose Ingestion.**—Alimentary glycosuria depends upon a number of separate variables which render its interpretation difficult. These are : (1) the rapidity of absorption from the intestinal tract, (2) the ability of the body to remove an excess of glucose from the circulating blood, and (3) the threshold at which the kidney begins to excrete glucose into the urine. Of these the first and third obviously have no bearing on the ability of the body to burn or to store glucose.

The question of renal permeability may be eliminated by studying the effect of glucose ingestion upon the concentration of blood sugar. The glucose solution is usually taken while fasting to avoid unusual delay in its passage through the stomach. After an adult has taken approximately 100 grams of glucose the concentration in the blood rises rapidly and reaches its maximum of about 0.14 per cent at or before the end of the first hour. Then it declines and in two hours it usually approximates the original level. Should sugar appear in the urine despite a normal blood curve, the renal threshold to glucose is lowered (renal glycosuria).

**Glycosuria after Injections of Sugar.**—By injecting glucose solutions intravenously, the question of the rate of absorption from the alimentary canal is eliminated. Woodyatt, Wilder and Sansum injected glucose solutions into the veins at different rates and determined how rapidly it could be injected without provoking a glycosuria. The tolerance of normal individuals was about 0.85 gram of glucose per kilo of body weight per hour. Patients with mild diabetes and with hyperthyroidism showed a diminished tolerance.

**FROM ALCOHOLISM AND ACUTE INFECTIONS.**—Alcoholism frequently reduces the alimentary tolerance for glucose. This reduction is more apt to occur after drinking beer than after drinking distilled liquors. Arndt, Strauss and others found that acute alcoholic intoxication and alcoholic delirium markedly reduce the tolerance for glucose but that in most cases abstinence from alcohol is followed by a rapid rise in the tolerance. Lievin found an alimentary glycosuria in 80 per cent of chronic alcoholics as compared with its occurrence in 25 per cent of

normal individuals under similar test conditions. Traumata in general increase the tendency to alimentary glycosuria, but as a rule this passes off in four to ten days. Acute infections, and particularly lobar pneumonia, reduce the alimentary tolerance for glucose. Thus Poll obtained alimentary glycosuria in eleven of thirteen cases of lobar pneumonia, J. Strauss in all of eight cases, and Bleiweiss in three of seven cases. Tuberculosis does not seem to predispose to this condition. Pemberton and Foster found a lowered tolerance for sugar in patients with arthritis, which improved with improvement in the arthritis.

**NO DEFINITE RELATION TO ANATOMICAL DISEASE OF LIVER.**—No definite relation has been established between anatomical disease of the liver and diminished tolerance to glucose. This is remarkable on account of the important rôle played by the liver in normal carbohydrate metabolism. Either the liver does not lose this function readily, or, as seems equally probable, other organs play an important part in the immediate removal of excess glucose from the circulating blood.

**Endocrine Disease.**—In exophthalmic goiter alimentary glycosuria is common. Kraus and Ludwig found it even when the pulse rate was not increased, Chvostek found it in 69 per cent, Goldsmith in 19 per cent and Strauss in 16 per cent of the cases investigated. It seems to be more common in the acute cases and relatively uncommon in the chronic cases. Wilder and Sansum found a distinctly diminished tolerance to intravenous injections in the cases which they investigated. After taking glucose by mouth the blood sugar rise in hyperthyroidism is unusually high and persistent. Delayed rises have been reported in cretinism, myxedema, acromegaly and hypopituitarism. In pregnancy, alimentary glycosuria is common. It is also relatively frequent in obese individuals.

**Alimentary Glycosuria and Incipient Diabetes Mellitus.**—Much interest attaches itself to the relationship between alimentary glycosuria, on the one hand, and incipient diabetes mellitus, on the other. If glycosuria follows the administration of 100 grams of glucose by mouth, does it indicate that the individual has or is likely to develop diabetes mellitus? In general it may be said that the likelihood is not great, for experience has shown that alimentary glycosuria is not regularly followed by the development of diabetes mellitus. Nevertheless, a small number of patients showing alimentary glycosuria subsequently develop diabetes. One should, therefore, be suspicious of such cases, and especially so: (1) if considerable amounts of glucose, 2 per cent or over, are eliminated during the test; (2) if it is positive in conditions other than those commonly associated with alimentary glycosuria (alcoholism, hyperthyroidism, pregnancy, etc.); and (3) if it is positive in tests repeated at intervals of some months.

When the administration of 100 grams of glucose is not followed by glycosuria, can one exclude incipient diabetes mellitus? While it may

be said in a general way that those who have incipient diabetes mellitus will react positively to the alimentary test, this does not seem to be an invariable rule. Mild diabetics, after having been upon a strict diet for some time, may not only have a sugar free urine, but they may be able to take considerable amounts of glucose at a single dose without the appearance of sugar in the urine. The alimentary tolerance for glucose, while of value both in the recognition and in the exclusion of incipient cases of diabetes mellitus, cannot be relied upon absolutely in either the positive or negative sense.

**Blood Sugar Curves in Incipient Diabetes Mellitus.**—In outspoken cases of diabetes mellitus 100 grams of glucose causes a marked rise in the blood sugar curve with the elimination of considerable sugar in the urine. In mild cases, however, and in those who have been treated, the change in the blood sugar may differ little from normal and cannot be distinguished from the curves in other pathological conditions, such as hyperthyroidism or severe arthritis. Attempts to diagnose doubtful cases of glycosuria by alimentary tests of various kinds have not met with success.

### *Alimentary Levulosuria*

When levulose is absorbed from the alimentary tract it is carried to the liver and is there converted into glycogen. This has been shown by the accumulation of glycogen in the liver after feeding levulose to fasting and to depancreatized animals, as well as by perfusion experiments. The liver appears to be more essential to levulose assimilation in the body than it is to glucose assimilation, for de Filippi and Jacobson have demonstrated that dogs in which an Eck fistula has been established show a reduced tolerance to levulose, whereas the tolerance to glucose is little if at all affected. The same is true after the removal of the liver of frogs (Sachs).

**Tolerance Limit to Levulose in Man.**—According to von Noorden, the usual limit of alimentary tolerance of man to levulose may be set at 120–150 grams of levulose. Recently collected statistics show that when 100 grams of levulose are administered by mouth to normal men, from ten to twenty per cent of the subjects may be expected to show levulose in the urine.

**Levulosuria Test of Hepatic Function.**—In certain pathological conditions of the liver, an alimentary levulosuria is relatively frequent and this test, recommended particularly by Strauss, has been extensively used as a test for hepatic function. The clinical data as to the results of the alimentary test for hepatic function are voluminous and are summarized, so far as liver disease is concerned, in the following table, which has been amplified from that given by Hohlweg, by adding the cases of Hohlweg, Goodman, Foster, von Frey, and Falk and Saxl:



## ALIMENTARY LEVULOSURIA IN HEPATIC DISEASE

Disease	Positive	Negative	Per cent Positive
Cirrhosis of liver.....	118	19	86
Jaundice, catarrhal, cholelithiasis, etc.....	33	4	91
Lues of liver.....	11	7	61
Tumor of liver.....	11	19	37
Chronic passive congestion.....	6	32	16

When these figures are compared with the incidence of alimentary levulosuria after giving 100 grams of levulose to individuals with apparently normal livers, it is evident that in hepatic cirrhosis and in jaundice from various causes there is, as a rule, a diminished tolerance toward the alimentary ingestion of levulose. In lues and in tumors of the liver the inability to handle levulose is less pronounced, while in chronic passive congestion no marked tendency to alimentary levulosuria is present.

*Alimentary Galactosuria*

In 1906 Bauer introduced galactose as a functional liver test. Fischer found that dogs with an Eck fistula might excrete in the urine as much as 80 per cent of the galactose administered. Roubitschek found that alimentary galactosuria was readily produced by poisoning rabbits with phosphorus, and Bierry that it occurs in dogs poisoned with chloroform. According to von Noorden the assimilative capacity of man for the alimentary administration of galactose is 20 grams. When, however, the amount administered is in excess of this normal limit, considerable quantities of galactose pass into the urine. Bauer gave 40 grams of galactose in 400-500 c.c. of tea in the morning on an empty stomach and determined the amount of galactose eliminated during the following four or five hours. Normally not more than two grams should be eliminated under these circumstances. The following chart compiled from recent papers by Bauer, by Reiss and Jehn and by Wagner summarizes the results of this test in clinical conditions:

## ALIMENTARY GALACTOSURIA

Diseases	Wagner		Reiss and Jehn		Bauer		Per cent Positive
	Cases	Positive	Cases	Positive	Cases	Positive	
Catarrhal jaundice.....	24	24	17	16	33	33	99
Cirrhosis of liver.....	10	7	15	3	32	30	70
Passive congestion.....	12	0	8	1	38	8	15
Cholelithiasis, etc.....	38	8	8	2	48	5	17
Jaundice from magignant obstruction.....	..	..	5	0	..	..	13
Tumors of liver.....	18	6	..	..	..	..	
Metastatic carcinoma.....	..	..	..	..	41	0	
Primary carcinoma.....	..	..	..	..	2	2	
Phosphorus poisoning.....	..	..	..	..	2	1	
Acute yellow atrophy.....	..	..	..	..	1	1	..
Echinococcus liver.....	..	..	..	..	2	0	..
Liver abscess.....	..	..	..	..	3	0	..
Hemolytic jaundice.....	6	0	..	..	..	..	..
Pernicious anemia.....	3	0	..	..	..	..	..
Hyperthyroidism.....	14	8	..	..	..	..	..
Neuroses.....	10	4	..	..	..	..	..

It is seen that the tolerance after the alimentary administration of galactose is particularly lowered in catarrhal jaundice and to a lesser extent in hepatic cirrhosis. Obstructive jaundice, tumors of the liver and chronic passive congestion have but little effect upon the tolerance.

## Glycosurias from Discharge of the Glycogen Reservoirs

### *Nervous Glycosurias*

The study of glycosuria by experimental methods dates from Claude Bernard's famous puncture of the fourth ventricle. Bernard found that puncture of the space lying between the origins of the pneumogastric and auditory nerves produced both an increase in the quantity of urine and an elimination of sugar in the urine. After a successful puncture, glycosuria and polyuria generally come on within an hour and persist for several hours or occasionally for over a day. In richly nourished animals the glycosuria is more marked. Ordinarily the urine contains two or three per cent of sugar but it may contain as high as eight per cent. The presence of glycogen in the liver is a necessary prerequisite for a successful puncture, and if the liver glycogen be reduced by fasting or other methods, negative results are usually obtained. Puncture of the fourth ventricle leads to a rapid discharge of liver glycogen which produces a hyperglycemia and consequent glycosuria. In some cases, the amount of sugar excreted after the puncture has apparently been greater than the amount of glycogen stored in the liver at the time. The weight of evidence, however, supports the view that puncture of the fourth ventricle acts primarily, if not solely, upon the liver glycogen.

**Increased Blood Flow Through Liver.**—Following the puncture there is an increased rate of blood flow through the liver, and Bernard held that this accounted for the rapid conversion of the glycogen into blood sugar. The importance of this rapid circulation is generally recognized. Whether, in addition, changes occur in the hepatic ferments is less certain. Bang, Ljungdahl and Bohm determined the rate at which the excised rabbit's liver converted glycogen into dextrose, and they found that after puncture this rate may be twice the normal. MacLeod and Pearce, on the other hand, were unable to demonstrate that puncture increased the ferment which converts glycogen into dextrose.

**Nervous Paths to the Liver.**—Bernard and those following him have devoted much attention to the nervous mechanism through which the floor of the fourth ventricle acts upon the liver. Bernard found that section of the vagus nerves did not influence the glycosuria following puncture, while Eckhard showed that section of the splanchnic nerves prevented its occurrence. These facts have been confirmed by later investigators, and there is little doubt but that the effects of the punc-

ture are carried to the abdomen by way of the splanchnic nerves. Stimulation of the great splanchnic nerve causes a rise of sugar in the blood (MacLeod). The question whether puncture and splanchnic stimulation act directly upon the liver, or indirectly through a discharge of adrenal secretion, will be discussed later.

Injuries to portions of the brain other than the floor of the fourth ventricle may also be followed by glycosuria, but the effect is by no means constant or certain, except in the case of injuries in the neighborhood of the hypophysis. Stimulation of the central stump of various nerves, e. g., the vagus, has also frequently been followed by glycosuria, but MacLeod attributes this effect to the accompanying asphyxia rather than to a nervous reflex.

### **Glycosuria from Cerebral Disease**

Clinical literature abounds with instances in which glycosuria has been associated with gross cerebral lesions (see Naunyn). These glycosurias have occurred most frequently after injuries to the head, and after cerebral hemorrhages; to a lesser extent in association with tumors, softening, systemic diseases, etc. Many of these glycosurias are transitory in character and show no tendency to pass into true diabetes mellitus. They resemble the glycosurias produced by puncture of the fourth ventricle. The anatomical lesions present have involved various portions of the brain, and the mode of action upon the medullary centers has often been obscure.

### **Emotional Glycosuria**

Clinicians have long maintained that a relation exists between diabetes and nervous strain. Recent observations by Cannon, Folin and their coworkers have demonstrated that even in normal individuals glycosuria may be induced by violent emotions. Thus sugar has been found in the urine of students after a difficult examination and in members of a foot-ball squad which watched but did not participate in an important struggle. Possibly the high incidence of glycosuria among those admitted to hospitals for the insane is due in part to the emotions from which they suffer. Shaffer and others have pointed out that the level of blood sugar in animals is much lower when the blood is obtained by direct puncture of a vein than when the animal is subjected to pain, excitement or anesthesia, a fact which vitiates many older observations on animals.

The cause of emotional hyperglycemia and glycosuria is doubtlessly a discharge of liver glycogen induced by sympathetic nerve stimulation. It is accompanied by a simultaneous discharge of epinephrin from the adrenal gland and the latter contributes to the disturbance in carbohydrate mobilization.



### **Glycosuria from Disease of the Hypophysis**

Particular interest attaches itself to the glycosurias which have frequently been observed in connection with injuries to or diseases in or near the hypophysis. Borchardt called attention to the frequency of glycosuria in these conditions. Rosenberger has recently analyzed the histories of 196 reported cases of acromegaly. Of these 72 patients showed a glycosuria. In seven of this group the glycosuria was transitory. In 11 others the administration of 100 grams of glucose was followed by an alimentary glycosuria. Altogether, therefore, 83, or 43 per cent, of the total showed spontaneous or alimentary glycosuria. Other patients with disease of the hypophysis tolerate unusual quantities of sugar without the occurrence of a glycosuria, and Cushing has proposed this as a functional test for the activity of the posterior lobe.

Is this tendency to glycosuria in diseases of the hypophysis due to a perversion of its internal secretion or is it to be interpreted as a manifestation of a disturbance of nervous centers in or near the gland? On this point the experimental evidence is conflicting. The injection of pituitary extracts into rabbits frequently produces glycosuria (Borchardt, Goetsch, Cushing and Jacobson), but injections into dogs do not usually produce this effect. Operations on, and injuries to, the hypophysis are frequently but not always followed by glycosuria. According to Weed, Cushing and Jacobson, stimulation of the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and direct stimulation of the hypophysis cause a glycosuria in rabbits even after the nervous connections to the abdomen are severed, and they believe that a chemical substance is liberated from the hypophysis which discharges glycogen, independently of any nerve impulse reaching the abdominal organs. According to their view, the secretion of the hypophysis is comparable to that of the adrenal glands.

### ***Epinephrin Glycosuria***

In 1901 Blum discovered that the intravenous or subcutaneous injection of adrenal extract in various animals was followed by glycosuria, and in 1902 Hexter and Richards showed that epinephrin was responsible for this action. Epinephrin glycosuria is usually associated with a hyperglycemia. After repeated injections and at times after a single intravenous injection, glycosuria fails to appear even though the blood sugar is increased to 0.25 per cent or more. Apparently the kidneys have become less permeable to blood sugar than they are normally. The permeability seems to lessen with repeated injections. If one provide for an abundant diuresis by the simultaneous injection of salt solution, the glycosuria from intravenous injections is more regularly obtained (Ritzmann).

**Hyperglycemia after Epinephrin Injection.**—The hyperglycemia following epinephrin injections is due to a rapid conversion of the glycogen of the body into blood sugar. In animals with rich glycogen stores a sufficiently large dose of epinephrin causes a marked diminution of the glycogen in the liver and muscles. According to Agadschanianz, the action of adrenalin upon the muscles is even more marked than upon the liver. This is noteworthy in view of the fact that puncture of the fourth ventricle acts primarily upon the liver glycogen. Glycogen appears to be the sole source of the sugar eliminated after epinephrin injections, for Ringer found that, when animals are rendered glycogen free by fasting, exposure to cold and repeated injections of phlorhizin, no increase in glycosuria results from intraperitoneal injections of epinephrin.

**Relations between Epinephrin and Nervous Glycosurias.**—Interesting and important relations exist between the glycosuria produced by injections of epinephrin and that following puncture of the fourth ventricle or stimulation of the splanchnic nerves. Both are temporary and both are associated with hyperglycemia due to a discharge of glycogen stored in the body. That epinephrin does not produce its effect through an action upon the nervous centers is evident from the fact that it causes glycosuria even when all nervous paths from the medulla to the abdominal cavity are severed.

On the other hand, the question has been raised whether stimulation of the medullary centers may cause glycosuria, not by a direct action upon the liver, but indirectly by increasing the secretion of epinephrin. Double epinephrectomy ordinarily prevents glycosurias after medullary puncture or stimulation of the splanchnic nerves, puncture of the fourth ventricle produces anatomical changes in the adrenal glands (Meyer, Borberg, Kahn), and the epinephrin content of the blood leaving the adrenal glands may be increased by nervous causes, and particularly by splanchnic stimulation. It is, therefore, evident that nervous influences may increase the secretion of epinephrin.

Is this secretion the cause of the hyperglycemia and glycosuria that follows stimulation of the medullary centers or of the splanchnic nerves? MacLeod has shown that if the hepatic plexus of nerves be severed, stimulation of the splanchnic nerves no longer causes the usual hyperglycemia, but that this may be produced by stimulating the plexus beyond the point of section. The presence of adrenal glands in the body favors the production of a glycosuria after nerve stimulation; but the immediate cause of this glycosuria is the stimulation of the nerves leading to the liver and not the stimulation of the nerves leading to the adrenals. The adrenals appear to furnish to the blood a substance (epinephrin) which makes possible the production of a nervous glycosuria.

Epinephrin acts particularly upon the sympathetic nerve terminations.

Even though it play no direct part in producing the glycosurias that follow nerve stimulation, nevertheless, it may favor such glycosurias by rendering the sympathetic nerve terminations in the liver more sensitive to nervous influences.

**Blood Sugar in Addison's Disease.**—A regulating influence of the adrenal secretion upon the amount of blood sugar is suggested by Porges' observation that in three cases of Addison's disease the blood sugar was remarkably low. The experimental evidence bearing on this point is, however, conflicting, for while Porges as well as Bierry and Malloizel found hypoglycemia in dogs after extirpation of the adrenals, Frank and Isaac obtained negative results in rabbits until shortly before death.

### Toxic Glycosurias

A large number of poisons have been found to produce glycosuria in animals. Some of these have already been mentioned. The mechanism through which many drugs act is not definitely known. Rosenberger suggests the following classification of toxic glycosurias:

- I. Kidney poisons: Phlorhizin, uranium salts, chromium salts, cantharides.
- II. Asphyxial agents: Curare, methyldephinin, acetone, hydrocyanic acid, carbon monoxid.
- III. Nerve poisons: Salts, diuretics, hypnotics and narcotics (chloral, chloroform, ether, morphin, etc.). Convulsive agents.
- IV. Liver poisons: Phosphorus, alcohol.
- V. Unknown mode of action: Atropin, amyl nitrite, acids, etc.

Some of these agents have been found to produce glycosuria in man, but for the majority this action has been observed only in animals. The chief interest in these glycosurias lies in the demonstration of the exact mechanism of their action, or in showing that they are apt to occur in man.

### Diabetes mellitus—Pancreatic Diabetes

The glycosurias thus far considered have been, for the most part, of short duration, and have been characterized either by an abnormal permeability of the kidney or by a temporary increase in the blood sugar. This increase came either from the alimentary tract or from a discharge of stored glycogen. The mild or transient character of these glycosurias leads to few serious changes in other functions of the body. Only after repeated phlorhizin injections is the glycosuria of a serious character and associated with a diminished combustion of sugar. This is apparently due to a lowered concentration of sugar in the blood and tissues.



In the more severe types of experimental pancreatic diabetes and of human diabetes, on the other hand, the glycosuria is marked and continuous; while other disturbances in the carbohydrate and fat metabolism may be present, and various nutritional disturbances in the tissues may occur. It seems probable that the body has lost to a greater or lesser extent the power to burn glucose, even when the latter is present in the blood in excessive concentration. If this be so, it represents a fundamental distinction from all other forms of glycosuria. At the present time, however, the conception of diabetes as a condition in which the ability to burn sugar is impaired has not received universal acceptance, and it seems desirable, therefore, to define human diabetes as a syndrome rather than as a specific disturbance in sugar combustion. The disease is characterized: (1) by the presence of glucose in the urine under ordinary conditions of diet; (2) by its chronic character; and (3) by the fact that the glycosuria is due to an increased concentration of glucose in the blood, a hyperglycemia.

### ***Experimental Pancreatic Diabetes***

In 1889, von Mering and Minkowski demonstrated that a total excision of the pancreas in dogs leads to a severe and fatal form of glycosuria, comparable in many ways with the human disease. Glycosuria usually develops in from two to seven hours after the operation and continues up to the death of the animal. This usually occurs in one to three weeks. The blood sugar rises from the normal for dogs of 0.08 to 0.22 per cent to an average of 0.50 per cent. When a portion, but not the whole, of the pancreas is excised, various lesser grades of disturbance in the carbohydrate metabolism may be produced. According to Allen's experience, when all but 1/10 of the gland is removed, a severe type of diabetes invariably results and sugar continues to be excreted in the urine even when the dog has been placed on a strictly meat diet. When 1/9 of the gland is left in place, severe diabetes usually results, and when 1/8 is left, severe diabetes sometimes results. In the latter case, however, there is usually either a temporary severe diabetes, or a permanent mild diabetes in which glycosuria is absent on a meat diet but present when starches are fed. A residue of 1/6 of the gland usually gives a transient mild diabetes. If 1/4 of the gland is left, no spontaneous glycosuria results but even here a diminished tolerance to subcutaneous injections of glucose can be demonstrated. Allen's experience thus indicates that a very definite relation exists between the severity of the glycosuria and the amount of pancreatic tissue left in the body.

In some experimental excisions of portions of the pancreas, the diabetes is at first mild or absent but becomes more severe as time goes on, owing to an atrophy of the residue of pancreatic tissue. This late, or Landmeyer, type of experimental diabetes is particularly apt to occur

when the blood supply to or the ducts from the glandular fragment are interfered with.

**Pancreatic Influence a Chemical One.**—The glycosuria resulting from pancreatectomy is not due to injury or irritation of the local nerves, but is due to a lack of some effect which the pancreas normally exerts upon the chemical processes in the body. Minkowski and others have shown that when a portion of the pancreas is transplanted beneath the skin and the remainder of the pancreas removed, no diabetes results even though the pedicle to the graft be subsequently cut. When this graft is removed the usual pancreatic diabetes follows. Pratt describes a successful transplantation of a pancreas graft in the spleen with absence of glycosuria over a period of 187 days. Evidence in favor of the chemical control exerted upon carbohydrate metabolism by the pancreas is also furnished by the results of parabiosis experiments. For example, Froschbach united pairs of young dogs in parabiosis and after firm union was established the pancreas of one was excised. Typical severe diabetes did not develop in this animal until after it had been severed from its companion. Somewhat similarly, Carlson and Drennan found that in the latter stages of pregnancy, diabetes did not follow excision of the pancreas from the mother dog but did appear shortly after removal of the puppies from the uterus. Finally, a beating heart utilizes the sugar of a solution that has previously been perfused through the pancreas better than it utilizes the sugar of a solution that has not been acted upon by the pancreas (A. H. Clark).

Many efforts to obtain pancreatic preparations that would influence diabetes have proved futile. Recently, however, Best, Banting and their associates found that such a preparation could be prepared if autodigestion by the proteolytic pancreatic ferment were avoided. The injection of this preparation, *insulin*, caused reduction of blood sugar and of glycosuria, better utilization of carbohydrates and lessened acidosis.

### ***The Pancreas in Human Diabetes***

Earlier writers, notably Borchardt, Lancereaux, Windle and Frerichs, noted the occurrence of pancreatic disease in certain patients dying of diabetes. General interest in the relationship, however, was first awakened by the observation of Mering and Minkowski, that the operative removal of the gland from dogs was followed by fatal diabetes. Subsequently, numerous human cases with lesion in the pancreas were reported. At the same time it was noted that quite extensive disease of the pancreas may occur without diabetes, and that in a considerable proportion of diabetic patients no definite pancreatic lesions can be found. The problem assumed a new aspect in 1900, when Opie, as also Ssobolew, showed that in certain cases of human diabetes the pathological changes in the

pancreas were practically limited to the islands of Langerhans. These structures with special staining properties and rich blood supply are located toward the centers of the pancreatic lobules. In the embryo they develop by proliferation and differentiation of the pancreatic tubules, but in later life they are more or less distinct from the tubules proper. Whether, under pathological conditions, transitions from the one to the other can occur has not been definitely established.

**Three Theories as to Character of Lesions.**—Pathological studies of the pancreas in diabetic patients have led to three more or less divergent views as to the character of the lesions present in this disease. The earlier view of Hanseman that there is a *specific atrophy* of the glandular parenchyma combined with an inflammatory process in the gland is held by few pathologists at the present day. The *insular theory* which locates the distinctive lesion of diabetes in the islands of Langerhans is the dominant view at the present time, and is supported by those who have studied the largest number of cases; i. e., by Weichselbaum, who has investigated 185 cases of diabetes, Cecil 90 cases, and Heiberg 30 cases. The changes in the islands may be of a qualitative or of a quantitative character. Qualitative changes consist in hydropic degeneration, sclerosis, atrophy, and hyalin changes. Quantitative changes consist in a reduction of the number of the islands. According to the third and most recent theory, *all the epithelial tissues of the pancreas*, secreting tubules as well as islands, are implicated in the changes which lead to diabetes. Transitions between the two are assumed to occur, at least under pathological conditions.

**Experimental Study of Insular Theory.**—Attempts to solve the relationship of the different portions of the pancreas to diabetes by experimental methods have not been conclusive. Thus MacCallum caused an atrophy of the gland by obstructing the pancreatic duct and later excised the small remnant of atrophic tissue. Diabetes followed the second operation and in the tissue excised groups of cells were found which were interpreted as being residues of the islands of Langerhans. Milne and Peters, as well as others, however, believe that the great majority of the structures which persist after ligature are really remnants of the atrophied tubules, so that the interpretation of this experiment is uncertain. Homans has excised a large part of the cat's pancreas, leaving only a small fragment about the main duct. Most of his animals developed no diabetes and the island cells appeared to be overactive. In the few that developed diabetes the island cells appeared to be degenerated.

**Diabetes Without Demonstrable Pancreatic Disease.**—In any case the assumption of a specific involvement of the pancreas in all cases of diabetes meets with two objections. In the first place, extensive disease of this organ may be unassociated with diabetes and, in the second, diabetes may exist without demonstrable disease of the pancreas. In answer to



the first, it may be said that it is known that a relatively small portion (about one-sixth to one-eighth) of the gland is sufficient to protect dogs from developing glycosuria and that, furthermore, if one adopts the insular theory, extensive disease of the pancreas may occur with relatively little destruction of the islands. In answer to the second, it may be said that the number of severe cases of diabetes without pancreatic changes of any kind have become relatively few in the statistics of those who have sought for changes in recent years. Yet the undoubted occurrence of diabetes without demonstrable pancreatic disease necessitates further hypotheses. Either the carbohydrate function of the pancreas may be markedly diminished without demonstrable anatomical changes, or, in some cases at least, the essential lesion is localized elsewhere in the body.

**The Effect of Overfeeding.**—Clinical experience and experiments on animals indicate that disregard of dietary restriction tends to make diabetes more severe. Overfeeding, however, did not produce diabetes in dogs whose sugar tolerance was reduced by partial pancreatectomy but who were not actually diabetic.

(Diabetes occurs with unusual frequency in middle aged persons who are fat. Joslin has laid particular emphasis upon overeating as a cause of diabetes; and Magnus-Levy, in discussing the reduction of diabetes in Germany during the Great War, has expressed the opinion that this reduction, as a result of food restriction, indicated that the previous increase of diabetes in Germany was probably due to excessive consumption of food rather than to increased nervous strain.)

### *Hyperglycemia in Diabetes*

Hyperglycemia, an increased concentration of blood sugar, is now recognized as a fundamental disturbance in diabetes. In place of the normal concentration of 0.07 to 0.11 per cent, the concentration in diabetes ranges from 0.12 to 0.40 per cent or over. High concentrations of blood sugar are usually associated with marked glycosuria, but no exact parallelism exists between the two. The blood concentration which must be reached before the kidney begins to excrete sugar into the urine, and the quantity excreted after this threshold has been passed, are both subject to rather wide variations not only in different diabetic patients, but also in the same patient at different times. In diabetic coma especially, the discrepancy is apt to be very marked, with high glycemia and relatively low glycosuria. For example, Liefmann and Stern have reported a remarkable case of coma with 1.01 per cent of sugar in the blood and with but traces in the urine, and similar though less marked discrepancies have been reported by others. The kidneys, which commonly show other evidences of damage in coma, seem to acquire a considerable impermeability to the excess of blood sugar.

**Renal Threshold in Chronic Diabetes.**—In the normal individual the threshold above which the kidneys usually begin to excrete sugar is commonly placed at 0.16 to 0.18 per cent of glycemia, but this level is not a fixed quantity. In diabetic patients the variations in this threshold are also marked. With hyperglycemias ranging from 0.16 to 0.20, the excretion of sugar may vary from considerable quantities to zero. Von Noorden believes that when the disease has been present for a long time the urine is more apt to be sugar free at higher levels of glycemia. His figures are shown in the following table:

Duration of the Disease	Blood Sugar with Absence of Glycosuria
10-15 years.....	0.189%
4-5 years.....	0.175
1-3 years.....	0.143
Less than one year.....	0.109

There seems to be a tendency for the kidneys of diabetic patients to become more impermeable to moderate rises of the blood sugar. A complicating nephritis may so change the renal threshold that glycemias of 0.30 per cent or over are accompanied by no glycosuria. In birds (geese) this relative impermeability of the kidneys to blood sugar is normal, for in these animals excision of the pancreas is not ordinarily followed by glycosuria even though the blood sugar rises from the normal of about 0.15 per cent to 0.50 per cent.

It is obvious, therefore, that the disappearance of a diabetic glycosuria gives no assurance that the blood sugar has returned to the normal level. In some patients this does indeed occur; in others the hyperglycemia may disappear only after prolonged adherence to the strict diet.

### ***Classification of Diabetes***

It is customary to classify the severity of human and of experimental pancreatic diabetes according to the ease with which the sugar can be made to disappear from the urine as a result of dieting.

**Severe Form.**—In some patients the glycosuria persists after the elimination of all carbohydrates from the food. These patients are said to have a severe form of the disease. In most of these severe cases a further restriction of the protein intake eliminates the last traces of sugar from the urine. Less commonly, the glycosuria persists despite exclusion of carbohydrates and a marked restriction of the proteins. Complete starvation, however, nearly always causes the urine to become sugar free. Estimates of differences in the more severe cases have also been made by determining the relation which exists between the amount of protein metabolism and the amount of sugar elimination (D:N ratio, page 295).

**Mild and Moderately Severe Forms.**—After the sugar has disappeared from the urine of a fasting diabetic, bread or some other carbohydrate food is given in ascending quantities and the point is noted at which glycosuria reappears. If the patient's urine is free of sugar on a carbohydrate free diet and if glycosuria appears when less than 60 gms. of starch are added to the diet, the condition is classified as one of moderate severity. If the patient will tolerate 60 gms. of starch or more without the appearance of sugar in the urine, the patient is said to have a mild form of the disease. In very mild cases 200 grams of bread or over may be taken without having sugar appear in the urine. So long, however, as glycosuria occurs when the individual takes large quantities of starchy food with his meals, the patient cannot be regarded as normal, for the normal individual apparently tolerates unlimited quantities of starch when taken with other foods.

**Incipient Form.**—When glycosuria occurs only after the ingestion of large quantities of sugar, this may or may not indicate an incipient form of true diabetes. A negative test after feeding 100 grams of glucose is presumptive evidence of an absence of true diabetes, but as we have seen, the test does not absolutely rule out the disease (page 280).

**Variations in Carbohydrate Tolerance.**—Two factors which may modify the carbohydrate tolerance of diabetic patients are known. The first of these is diet, the second, infection. Both in experimental and in human diabetes, the tolerance is depressed by a diet which contains an excess of starch and protein, thus causing a constant glycosuria. As time goes on, this glycosuria becomes more marked and more difficult to control. On the other hand, adherence to a strict dietetic régime tends to improve the tolerance. Even the most severe cases usually become sugar free after successive reductions of food followed by several days of complete fast. By giving green vegetables, limited quantities of proteins and carbohydrates, and finally fats, it is frequently possible to keep the urine free of sugar, even when moderate amounts of carbohydrates are being given. In this manner, some patients, who at first would be classed as severe according to the above standards, ultimately become mild or moderately severe.

During acute infections there is frequently a striking reduction of tolerance which again rises with recovery from the infection. Return to the previous level is more probable if the diet is so restricted during the period of lowered tolerance as to keep the urine free of sugar (Allen).

### ***The Derivation of Sugar in Diabetes***

The source of the sugar which appears in the urine of diabetic patients is of great practical and theoretical interest. Our knowledge is derived in large part from studies of the effects produced when different foods are administered to diabetic patients, to depancreatized dogs and to phlorhizinized animals. If the glycosuria is increased by giving a certain food, it is usually assumed that this food is itself the source of



extra sugar in the body; yet it must be borne in mind that a substance may stimulate the production or liberation of sugar in the body without being its immediate source. Adrenalin, for example, exerts such an action, and in recent years a comprehensive application of this view to certain foodstuffs has been proposed by von Noorden and his school. We shall see later (page 302) that this theory as applied to foodstuffs has not met with great favor and for the present we may assume, that when a food produces or increases glycosuria it does so by being itself the source of extra glucose in the body.

### Carbohydrates

As might be expected, foods which yield glucose during the process of digestion tend, in general, to increase a preëxisting glycosuria and to produce glycosuria in normal, and especially in mildly diabetic individuals. The degree of glycosuria which follows the feeding of various carbohydrates does not run exactly parallel to the amounts of glucose which may be derived from them. Sugars in general, and especially glucose and maltose, which latter yields two molecules of glucose, are particularly apt to increase a glycosuria.

**Oatmeal Treatment.**—Among starches, oatmeal seems to be relatively well borne by certain diabetics, and the oatmeal treatment has been extensively used by von Noorden and others. The relatively good tolerance of oatmeal by certain diabetic patients is particularly evident when other starches are withheld, and when the proteins of the diet and especially the meats are restricted.

**Cause of Differences in Carbohydrates.**—The cause for the varying degrees of glycosuria which follow the administration of equivalent amounts of different carbohydrates is not well understood. Beyond doubt, they depend in part upon the rate of absorption from the intestines. Anything that will delay this absorption permits the body to take care of a greater amount of glucose, whereas a rapid absorption quickly raises the level of glucose in the blood and tends to cause or to increase a preëxisting glycosuria. Among factors which influence the rate of absorption are: (1) the speed with which the stomach empties its contents into the intestines; (2) the stimulus to pancreatic secretion; and (3) the digestibility of the starches taken. Jacobson has shown that the simple addition of a large quantity of butter to bread will delay the time and diminish the amount of the subsequent hyperglycemia, owing to the delay in digestion caused by the addition of fat. Possibly the favorable effect of opium upon the glycosuria of diabetic patients is due in part to the action of this drug in delaying the exit of food from the stomach. Cohnheim and Klee have shown that oatmeal calls forth relatively little pancreatic secretion. Not only is its digestion thereby delayed, but the pancreas by reason of the smaller external secretion furnished may be

the better able to perform its internal function of carbohydrate assimilation. Whether certain starchy foods, and particularly oatmeal, contain additional substances which assist in the assimilation of glucose, or whether some peculiar configuration of certain starch molecules plays a part in their value as diabetic foods, are at the present time open questions.

### Proteins

That sugar may be formed in the body from sources other than the carbohydrates taken in the food has been abundantly proven. Studies conducted upon patients with diabetes, and upon animals that have been depancreatized or phlorhizinized, have shown repeatedly that the amount of sugar excreted in the urine during prolonged carbohydrate starvation may be far in excess of the amount that could possibly have been derived from carbohydrates stored in the body at the beginning of the experiment. Thus Lüthje describes an experiment in which, after pancreatectomy, a dog placed on a diet free of carbohydrates excreted a total of 1,175 grams of sugar over a period of about four weeks. The preformed glycogen was calculated to be not more than 232 grams, which amount corresponds to 257 grams of sugar. The sugar derived from other sources, therefore, was not less than 919 grams.

**Source of This Sugar.**—As possible sources for this sugar, proteins and fats must be considered. The view that sugar may be derived from protein is made probable by various types of experiment. Pflüger long maintained that the derivation of sugar from proteins had not been proved; but in 1910 he with Junkersdorf showed that the liver glycogen is markedly increased after feeding veal, a meat which contains a very small per cent of glycogen. Their experiments are summarized in the following table:

	Average Per Cent of Glycogen	
	Liver	Muscles
Dogs killed on the 11th day of fasting.....	0.59	0.21
Dogs (10) fasted 10 days, given phlorhizin on the 8th, 9th and 10th days, and killed 7 hours after.....	0.05	0.198
Dogs (38) fasted and phlorhizinized as before, but killed 24 hours after last dose.....	1.1	0.37
Dogs (27) fasted and phlorhizinized as before. Twenty-four hours later given 400 grams veal and killed 8 hours later.....	2.25 to 2.44	0.22 to 0.31
Dogs treated as before, but given still larger amounts of veal.....	6.46	1.0

In similar experiments they found that the ingestion of fats did not increase the glycogen content of the liver.

### *The D:N Ratio*

Experiments on patients with severe diabetes, on depancreatized animals and upon phlorhizinized animals, have all shown that following the ingestion of meats there is a marked increase in the excretion of sugar in the urine. Indeed the relationship between the urinary dextrose and nitrogen, the so-called D:N ratio, is frequently so constant as to suggest the possibility that by this method one might measure the amount of sugar which is derived from proteins in the animal body. Were all of the carbon present in the protein molecule, after subtraction of urea (or ammonia), converted into dextrose, relatively large amounts of glucose could be formed from proteins; and if all of this sugar appeared in the urine, the D:N ratio would approach 8. As a matter of fact, lower ratios have in general been found. In his studies on depancreatized dogs, Minkowski showed that when these animals were fasting, or when they were placed on an exclusive meat diet, the D:N ratio was about 2.8.

**In Phlorhizinized Animals.**—Similarly Lusk and his coworkers found that when animals are given sufficient doses of phlorhizin at frequent and regular intervals the D:N ratio becomes fairly constant after the first day of the experiment. For rabbits, cats and goats this constant ratio was about 2.8, but for dogs it was approximately 3.6. The following table illustrates how constant the ratio may remain when gelatin is fed to a phlorhizinized dog:

	URINARY			
	D	N	D:N	N Loss
Hunger.....	21.2	5.76	3.67	5.76
60 g. gelatin.....	35.8	9.70	3.69	1.18
Hunger.....	17.3	4.80	3.59	4.82

Similar results have been obtained with other proteins, such as meat and casein. In all such experiments fluctuations in the D:N ratio are apt to occur. These may be due to a formation of extra sugar from glycogen still present in the body or they may be due to some retention of carbohydrates or of nitrogenous products that are derived from the protein metabolism. These discrepancies tend to disappear during longer periods of observation under constant conditions. The relatively high D:N ratio of phlorhizinized dogs, i. e., 3.6, sometimes falls to the lower level of 2.8. The exact cause of this change is not known, but it is interesting to note that Jackson as well as Loewi has produced such depressions by administering camphor.



It is remarkable that two distinct levels for the D:N ratio should exist in different classes of animals or even under special circumstances in dogs alone. Since dextrose is probably synthesized from certain of the amino acids derived from the disintegration of proteins in the body, Lusk has suggested that the different levels of the D:N ratio may depend upon the ability of the body to convert certain of these amino acids into dextrose.

**Ratio in Human Diabetes.**—In very severe types of human diabetes the D:N ratio has generally shown considerable variations, not only in different patients but in the same patient from day to day. The variations between different patients doubtlessly depend in part upon variations in the severity of the disease, and the determination of the D:N ratio during a prolonged carbohydrate free diet has been recommended as a measure of the severity in serious cases. The fluctuations from day to day probably depend in large measure upon varying retentions of sugar or of nitrogenous products in the body. Such retentions seem more prone to occur in the human disease than in experimental studies, due perhaps to the more complex nature of the disease. In the majority of human cases the D:N ratios have been found to be less than 3.85, and Mendel and Lusk regarded this ratio as a "total" diabetes, in which no sugar is burned in the body. Should high D:N ratios of this type persist, the prognosis is usually unfavorable. At times, however, the extreme intolerance is only transitory, being due to an acute infection or other passing cause. Under skillful management the tolerance may improve to such an extent that the case ultimately becomes of a mild character.

Falta and others have reported D:N ratios of 5.0 and over, which have persisted for some time. Such high ratios suggest either that an unusual quantity of sugar has been formed from proteins or that a conversion of fats into sugar has taken place in the diabetic organism. The small number of such observations and their absence in recent reports suggest the possibility that they may have been due to faulty technic or to the surreptitious ingestion of carbohydrates by the patients.

**Formation of Sugars from Proteins.**—By what chemical transformations are sugars formed from proteins in the animal body? The view that the urinary sugar is derived solely from some preformed carbohydrate radicle such as can be split off from certain proteins by acids, has been definitely abandoned, because the amount of sugar eliminated bears no constant relation to such preformed carbohydrates. Casein which yields no sugar by such treatment, gives rise to large increases of sugar when fed to depancreatized or phlorhizinized animals. It is now known that the protein molecule is made up of a large number of simpler compounds, chiefly amino acids. During the process of protein disintegration in the body, these simpler compounds are set free and it is from these building stones that the animal body forms glucose by a

process of deaminization and synthesis. Ringer and Lusk have shown that certain of these building stones, viz., glycocoll, alanin, aspartic acid and glutamic acid, are converted more or less completely into sugar in phlorhizinized dogs.

### **Fats**

Fats are composed of glycerin united with fatty acids, and the separate effect of these components upon sugar production in the body must be considered. Lüthje showed that the feeding of glycerin to depancreatized dogs was followed by an increase in the excretion of sugar, and Cremer found the same to be true when it was fed to phlorhizinized animals. Yet glycerin forms but an insignificant proportion of the weight of fats (less than 10 per cent), so that the derivation of sugar from this portion of the fat molecule would be without great practical significance.

**Glycosuria Not Increased by Fats or Fatty Acids.**—In contrast to glycerin, to carbohydrates and to proteins, the feeding of fats or fatty acids does not increase the glycosuria either in diabetic patients or in depancreatized or phlorhizinized animals. Indeed the glycosuria may diminish owing to a reduction in protein metabolism. It is indeed possible that fats may still give rise to sugar, for the ingestion of fats, unlike that of proteins, causes no very marked increase in fat metabolism; but, up to the present, no conclusive evidence that sugar may be derived from fatty acids has been furnished. The very high D:N ratios observed occasionally in human diabetes may, as we have just seen, be explained upon other grounds.

### ***The Energy Requirements in Diabetes***

Inasmuch as a regulation of the diet is essential in the treatment of diabetes, it is important to know how much energy diabetic patients require and in what form this energy can best be furnished. The metabolism of depancreatized dogs, studied by Falta and his coworkers, by Ringer and by others, shows a number of departures from the normal. There is an increase in the total metabolism, in the protein decomposition and in the excretion of salts. But in human diabetes it has been uncertain whether the total metabolism was normal, increased, or diminished. The recent work of Benedict and Joslin has demonstrated that in the severer forms of the disease there is a slight but distinct increase in the energy requirements. Nineteen patients with severe types of diabetes were studied, and their rates of metabolism were compared with the rates of normal individuals of corresponding weight and height. The patients with severe diabetes showed quite regularly a somewhat higher rate of metabolism than the normal controls. The average values of these determinations are shown in the following table.

	CO <sub>2</sub> per Kilo per Minute	O per Kilo per Minute	Heat Eliminated per Kilo in 24 Hours	
			Sitting	Lying
Normal subjects.....	c.c. 3.13	c.c. 3.72	cal. 29.0	cal. 24.2
Severe diabetes.....	3.31	4.49	33.6	27.6
Percentage increase in severe diabetes.....	6.	20.	15.7	13.9

**Increased Basal Metabolism.**—Since the consumption of oxygen is a better indicator of the heat produced in metabolism than is the elimination of carbon dioxid, it seems proven that in severe diabetes the basal metabolism is from 14 to 20 per cent greater than it is in normal individuals under comparable circumstances. In the milder cases of diabetes studied by these authors, some increase in the rate of metabolism appeared to be present, but this was less certain and less marked than in the more severe forms of the disease.

**Effect of Restricted Diet.**—The energy requirement in diabetics may be lessened by reducing the total energy intake, just as it is in normal individuals. The modern treatment of diabetes is based on this principle. A restriction of carbohydrate food lessens the hyperglycemia and controls the glycosuria, while a restriction of the total caloric intake reduces the weight and lessens the metabolism as a whole. Fat diabetics who have been made thin may enjoy good general health and be kept free of glycosuria. On the other hand, excessive and prolonged undernutrition may cause weakness, lack of endurance and eventually edema (see Partial Inanition).

### ***The Energy Supply in Diabetes***

In diabetes a part of the energy supplied by the food is lost as dextrose in the urine. In the milder forms of the disease these losses are not in themselves of serious moment. A proper restriction of the carbohydrate intake eliminates the sugar losses in the urine, and even though no dietary restrictions are practiced the urinary losses may often be covered by a more abundant diet. Thus many patients with the milder types of diabetes show no loss of weight or strength over long periods of time, and gains in weight are not infrequent. The increased appetite compensates or overcompensates for the energy losses in the urine. In such patients the dangers of the disease consist not so much in loss of food material by way of the urine as in a liability to the various complications, such as infections, gangrene, nervous and ocular changes. A dis-



regard of dietary regulations also favors the progress of the disease, in accordance with the general principle that when a weakened function is overburdened it tends to become still further weakened.

**Maintenance of Body Weight.**—In severe types of diabetes, on the other hand, where the power to utilize carbohydrates is more seriously impaired, the maintenance of body weight becomes a far more difficult problem. Not only do such patients require from fourteen to twenty per cent more energy than do corresponding normal individuals, but the losses of energy through the urine are more difficult to regulate. If large quantities of carbohydrates are given in the diet they cause a large sugar elimination which may equal the amount taken. As a source of bodily energy, therefore, they have a very restricted value, and the amount that can be taken advantageously is always limited. Furthermore, in severe cases proteins also increase the sugar output in the urine. In extreme cases where the ratio between urinary sugar and protein intake is high, as shown by a D:N ratio of 2.8 to 3.6, from 40 to 60 per cent of the energy contained in the proteins burned is lost as sugar in the urine. Finally, in conditions of marked acidosis, the loss of energy in the form of beta-oxybutyric acid and related bodies may be considerable.

It is, therefore, evident that a maintenance of the energy requirements in the most severe types of diabetes becomes a matter of great difficulty. The greater part of the carbohydrates taken is lost in the urine, as is also a considerable proportion of the energy contained in the proteins or even the fats. It is in such cases that much dietetic and therapeutical skill is required in order to supply the patient with sufficient nourishment. Obviously fat must play a predominating part in the diet and, in addition, the tolerance of the patient to proteins and starches must be carefully studied. It is particularly in this group of patients that prolonged undernutrition is liable to occur, with loss of weight, weakness and eventually edema.

### *The Glycogen in Diabetes*

After complete extirpation of the pancreas, the amount of glycogen in the liver rapidly diminishes. In a few days only traces remain but these persist and do not entirely disappear. The muscle glycogen is also reduced in amount but less markedly so than the liver glycogen. On the other hand, there is an increase in the glycogen content of the leukocytes and of the kidneys, due apparently to the increased concentration of glucose in the blood. Minkowski has shown that when glucose is fed it does not increase the glycogen in the liver of depancreatized dogs, whereas the feeding of levulose produces such an increase. Since the glycogen in the latter case apparently differs in no way from that found normally, it would seem that the pancreas exerts a specific influence upon the formation of glycogen from dextrose and that this pancreatic influ-

ence is not equally essential in the case of levulose. In depancreatized animals, therefore, the ability to store glucose as glycogen is markedly reduced. When sugar is introduced into the circulation of normal animals it rapidly disappears from the blood, whereas in depancreatized animals the glucose content of the blood is not promptly reduced after the introduction of sugar (Kleiner and Meltzer). That this inability to remove glucose from the blood favors glycosuria cannot be doubted; but it is insufficient in itself to explain the severe and persistent glycosuria which follows experimental removal of the pancreas.

**Glycogen in Human Diabetes.**—It is difficult to ascertain the exact amount of glycogen stored in the liver and muscles of diabetic patients, partly because glycogen is rapidly converted into glucose after death, and partly because the period of undernutrition which usually precedes death would in itself tend to reduce the glycogen. It seems probable, however, that in diabetic patients as in the depancreatized dog there is a reduction of the amount of glycogen stored in the liver and muscles. That the ability to store glycogen is not entirely lost is attested by the fact that, even in severe diabetes, the administration of carbohydrates may increase the glycosuria for several days thereafter.

### *The Respiratory Quotient in Diabetes*

We have already seen that, in the combustion of food materials, the relation between the volume of carbon dioxid given off and the volume of oxygen consumed varies according to the type of food burned. This ratio, which is known as the respiratory quotient, is for carbohydrates 1.0, for fats about 0.7 and for proteins about 0.8. With certain reservations, discussed elsewhere (page 216), an examination of the gaseous interchange by way of the lungs furnishes data concerning the nature of the body metabolism. A high respiratory quotient indicates a predominance of carbohydrate metabolism, while a ratio lying between 0.7 and 0.8 indicates the predominance of a fat-protein combustion. In complete starvation, for example, after the main portion of the glycogen reservoirs of the body has been exhausted, the ratio falls to 0.74 or less, owing to the combustion of the fats and proteins of the body.

**Reduction in Diabetes.**—In diabetes the respiratory quotient tends to be reduced, and in Benedict and Joslin's series of nineteen cases of severe diabetes the average respiratory quotient, without taking food on the day of the experiment, was 0.74, while their normal controls showed an average of 0.84 under similar experimental conditions. The higher ratio in the latter individuals was evidently due to a consumption of glycogen previously stored in the body.

In normal men and animals the consumption of a large carbohydrate meal causes the respiratory ratio to rise markedly, so that it approaches

or equals 1.0. In severe cases of diabetes, on the other hand, no such marked rise occurs after the feeding of carbohydrates, and in the most severe cases the respiratory quotient is almost unaffected by the ingestion of carbohydrates.

In severe cases of diabetes mellitus, therefore, the respiratory quotient is such as one finds when an individual is living on a protein-fat diet. Furthermore, this quotient is raised little, if at all, by the feeding of carbohydrates.

### *Effects of Exercise*

After incomplete extirpation of the pancreas, muscular exercise tends to diminish the sugar excretion in the urine, apparently because the muscles consume an increased amount of sugar from the body fluids. After complete extirpation, on the other hand, Seo found that exercise did not affect the total amount of sugar excreted during the course of the twenty-four hours. Similar observations have been made upon diabetic patients. In the milder types of the disease exercise tends to diminish the glycosuria. In the severer types, on the other hand, the effect is less marked, and von Noorden describes six severe cases in which the glycosuria was somewhat increased by exercise. Respiratory experiments on his patients by Salomon showed that during exercise the respiratory quotient did not show the rise which occurs in normal individuals, thus indicating that the energy consumed during the exercise did not come from a combustion of carbohydrates.

### *Theories of Diabetes*

We have seen that the immediate cause of the glycosuria in diabetes mellitus is an increased concentration of sugar in the blood. This diabetic hyperglycemia occupies a central position in any discussion concerning the nature of diabetes mellitus. We have seen, furthermore, that in experimental pancreatic diabetes, and probably in human diabetes as well, the glycogen storage in the liver and muscles is subnormal, although the ability to store carbohydrates is not entirely lost. Since transitory glycosurias of various types may occur from a discharge of the glycogen reservoirs, the question arises whether a deficient storage capacity for glycogen could account for the glycosuria of diabetes. It is certain that a deficient storage of glycogen plays a part in the hyperglycemia that follows the ingestion of food. This defect in itself, however, could hardly produce more than a transitory or intermittent glycosuria. In more severe types of diabetes, sugar is excreted in such large amounts and for such long periods of time, that it could not possibly have come from a defective carbohydrate storage in the body.

**Diminished Combustion of Glucose.**—The more continuous forms of diabetic glycosuria can be explained on either of two hypotheses: first,



a diminished consumption of sugar; and, second, an increased production of sugar in the body. The theory of a primary reduction in the capacity of the diabetic body to burn sugar is, at the present time, the more generally accepted view, and it affords a simple explanation for most of the well-established observations on the disease. The low respiratory quotient observed in severe cases, and the failure of this quotient to rise either during muscular exercise or after the ingestion of carbohydrate food, accord well with this hypothesis. The immediate increase in glycosuria after taking carbohydrates, and the fairly constant D:N ratio observed after pancreatectomy, are readily explained on the assumption of a reduced combustion of sugar. Finally, as we shall see, the acidosis so common in severe diabetes is best explained on the assumption of a diminished sugar combustion. The assumption of a primary inability to burn sugar on the part of the diabetic body does not exclude the possibility that an increased production of sugar may occur as a secondary phenomenon. The tissue cells, unable to burn sugar, may excite an overproduction.

**Increased Production of Glucose.**—The hypothesis of a primary overproduction of sugar in the body has been recently revived and defended by von Noorden and others. According to this hypothesis, there is normally a constant formation of sugar chiefly in the liver, one of its important sources being fat. In depancreatized animals and in human diabetes it is assumed that this production is excessive, and that it is stimulated by the ingestion of carbohydrates and proteins, as well as by nervous and glandular influences. The body burns sugar normally; but, owing to the overproduction, hyperglycemia and glycosuria are produced. In support of this hypothesis, special importance has been attached to the experiments of Porges and Salomon, who found that when the circulation was cut off from the abdomen of depancreatized dogs the respiratory quotient rose to 1.0. This was taken to indicate that the tissues of depancreatized animals possessed a normal ability to burn carbohydrates. Manifestly, however, much uncertainty is attached to conclusions drawn from studies on animals subjected to this serious operation. Rolly, who has repeated these experiments, was unable to obtain constant results, and he has suggested other explanations for the high respiratory quotient. It has also been claimed that epinephrin stimulates the liver to an overproduction of sugar, and that the glycosuria of diabetes may be compared to that produced by epinephrin. Yet Ringer found no increased production of sugar when epinephrin was given to glycogen free, phlorhizinized animals, so that it is doubtful if epinephrin has this action. Finally, the very high D:N ratio occasionally encountered in human diabetes is said to indicate an excessive formation of sugar from fat. Here again, however, other explanations are possible (page 296). Altogether, the arguments adduced in favor of the hypothesis that the primary disturbance

in diabetes is an overproduction of sugar rest on an insecure basis, and, for the present at least, it seems more probable that the essential disturbance consists in an inability to burn sugar. An insufficiency of the glycogen reservoirs and a secondary increase in sugar formation may play secondary rôles in the pathogenesis of the disease.

### *Symptoms and Complications of Diabetes*

#### **Emaciation and Polyphagia**

Satisfactory explanations can be given for certain complications of diabetes mellitus only. The frequent emaciation and excessive appetite are due to an insufficient nutrition of the tissues. It has been pointed out that in severe forms of the disease the energy requirements of the body may be increased by from fourteen to twenty per cent, and that it may be difficult to cover these requirements, because a considerable proportion of the energy contained in the food is lost to the body in the form of urinary sugar. The tissues starve, in spite of the fact that they are surrounded by a fluid abnormally rich in glucose. In the milder types of diabetes the sugar losses that result from improper dieting may be covered, or more than covered, by eating excessive quantities of food. It therefore happens not infrequently that patients with the milder forms of the disease maintain a normal weight, or even gain in weight, owing to a good appetite. In such cases a restriction in the carbohydrate food, sufficient to eliminate sugar from the urine, often makes it possible for the patient to maintain his normal weight without the ingestion of unusual quantities of food. It has been shown by Luckhardt that depancreatized dogs show increased hunger contractions of the stomach.

#### **Polyuria and Thirst**

Polyuria and thirst, which are among the commoner symptoms of diabetes mellitus, are intimately associated with each other. The polyuria is primary, and the thirst is caused by the losses of water through the kidneys. Apparently these losses affect the water contents of the tissues rather than the blood, for in diabetes the percentage of water in the blood is usually about normal. Von Noorden gives the following table to show the approximate relation which he has observed between the quantity of urine and the degree of glycosuria:

Amount of Urine	Specific Gravity	Percentage of Sugar
1,500- 2,500.....	1.025-1.030	2-3
2,500- 4,000.....	1.030-1.036	3-5
4,000- 6,000.....	1.032-1.040	4-7
6,000-12,000.....	1.036-1.046	6-9

It is obvious that the polyuria varies with the amount of sugar excreted through the kidneys. Considerable variations exist in each of the above classes, and it is not uncommon to find three per cent, or more, of sugar without a definite increase in the urine. When the glycosuria is caused to disappear by a suitable diet, the polyuria and thirst usually disappear at the same time.

**Diuretic Action of Sugar in Diabetes.**—In diabetes as in normal individuals an excess of sugar in the blood acts as a diuretic, causing an increase in the elimination of water. Its action is analogous to the effect of certain salts which are excreted through the kidneys. Allen believes that this diuretic action of sugar is a specific characteristic of diabetes. According to this author, sugar acts as a diuretic in normal animals only when it is introduced directly into the blood stream. When it is absorbed from the intestines, the subcutaneous tissues, or the peritoneal cavity, it tends to diminish rather than to increase diuresis. In depancreatized animals, Allen found that sugar acts as a diuretic, however it be introduced, and he concludes that in these latter the sugar of the blood exists in the free state, while under normal conditions it is present in a colloidal combination that is formed during its absorption.

### **Diminished Resistance to Infection**

Diabetic patients are peculiarly liable to various infections, particularly boils, tuberculosis, and postoperative infections. This increased susceptibility has frequently been attributed to the increased percentage of sugar in the body fluids which are said to furnish a better culture medium for invading microorganisms. The validity of this explanation may, however, be questioned. The addition of such small amounts of sugar to the blood as occur naturally in diabetes mellitus does not, as a rule, improve its cultural properties. The poor resistance to infection seems to depend rather upon a diminution in some of the protective mechanisms of the body. Da Costa and Beardsley found that in diabetes mellitus the opsonic index was diminished, and that it was particularly low in the more severe cases studied. This reduction in protective properties does not seem to be a direct result of an increased amount of blood sugar, for Handmann found that the addition of sugar to blood in vitro did not diminish its bactericidal or opsonic properties, and Sweet found that while the bactericidal properties of blood are not changed by the hyperglycemia induced by epinephrin injections, they are definitely diminished after excision of the pancreas. It seems probable, therefore, that the lack of resistance to infection so frequently exhibited by diabetic patients depends not directly upon the hyperglycemia, but upon some effect exerted by the disease upon the formation of protective substances, bactericidal or opsonic, in the body.



### Nutritional Changes

Diabetes is frequently complicated by conditions which seem to depend upon nutritional disturbances or upon some obscure toxic effect. That arteriosclerosis is relatively frequent in long-continued cases of mild diabetes has been abundantly proven by clinical experience, and it is well known that vascular changes are mainly responsible for diabetic gangrene of the feet. The experimental production of cataract by injections of sugar solutions into frogs was first accomplished by Weir Mitchell in 1860. It has been produced in other animals by Heubel, who also showed that such cataracts were due to osmotic changes and could be produced by other substances. Opacities of the lens produced in this manner are, however, probably not related to the cataracts which occur naturally in diabetic patients. These latter seem to depend upon some obscure changes in metabolism. The not infrequent complication of diabetes with obesity or with gout also indicates that this disease is apt to be associated with other metabolic disorders.

**Lipemia.**—Interesting and important changes frequently occur in the fat metabolism of diabetic patients. The insufficient burning of fats which gives rise to the acetone group of substances and to diabetic coma will be considered in the next section. In addition, there is not infrequently an increase in the fatty substances of the blood, and a visible milkiess of the blood serum, lipemia, may result. The cholesterol of the blood serum is increased, particularly in the more severe cases. Deposits of cholesterol in the skin may give rise to xanthomata.

## The Acetone Bodies

### *Diabetic Coma*

Various types of coma may complicate diabetes mellitus; but the most common, the most characteristic, as well as the most feared type is that which has been designated specifically as diabetic coma. This is a well-defined clinical entity, characterized by unusually deep respirations (the air hunger of Kussmaul), by a mortality approaching 100 per cent, and by the presence of the so-called acetone bodies in the tissues, blood, urine, and expired air. Acetone was discovered in the urine of patients suffering from diabetic coma by Petters in 1857. In 1865 C. Gerhardt described the ferric chlorid reaction of the urine, and the substance giving rise to this reaction was identified as aceto-acetic acid by Tollens in 1881. Finally, in 1883, Stadelmann demonstrated that large quantities of organic acids were present in the urines of patients suffering from diabetic coma, and, in the same year, beta-oxybutyric acid was shown to be the principal of these by E. Kulz and by Minkowski. These three sub-

stances, acetone, aceto-acetic acid, and beta-oxybutyric acid, are closely related chemically, and they frequently occur together in the animal body. They are often spoken of collectively as the acetone bodies, and when they occur in the urine the condition is often designated as ketonuria. Little doubt now exists but that they are responsible for true diabetic coma. The sources from which they are derived, the factors favoring or retarding their formation, and the exact manner in which they produce coma, have been important subjects of modern investigation.

### Conditions in which the Acetone Bodies Occur

Small quantities of acetone are frequently found in the urines of normal individuals and are without pathological significance. In certain conditions, however, physiological as well as pathological, the amounts are markedly increased, and it is necessary to review these before we consider the origin and significance of the acetone bodies in diabetic coma.

**Ketonuria from Carbohydrate Starvation.**—The best studied type of ketonuria is that induced by carbohydrate starvation. In absolute starvation, acetone appears in the breath and urine a few days after food is withdrawn (depletion of body glycogen), and it is shortly followed by the appearance of aceto-acetic and beta-oxybutyric acids. This ketonuria of starvation may be prevented by the administration of various carbohydrates in quantities approaching 100 grams a day. Such quantities are not in themselves sufficient to maintain the body nutrition, yet they prevent the appearance of the acetone bodies in the urine. This shows that the ketonuria of starvation depends, not upon insufficient nutrition in general, but upon an insufficient supply of carbohydrate food. Conversely, if carbohydrates be excluded from the diet but the caloric requirements of the body be covered by ample amounts of proteins and fats, then the acetone bodies usually appear in the urine just as they do in complete starvation. In such a diet, a relatively large quantity of meat tends to diminish the ketonuria, apparently because proteins give rise to glucose or other bodies which have this inhibitory action. The ketonuria which follows the withdrawal of carbohydrates from the diet of a normal individual is more marked if this withdrawal be done suddenly, and if the individual has previously been on a diet rich in carbohydrates. Furthermore, if carbohydrates continue to be excluded from the diet, the acetone bodies in the urine tend to diminish as time goes on and may ultimately disappear. In many instances at least, the human body seems able to accustom itself to a properly adjusted fat-protein diet; which is indeed the normal diet of the Esquimaux as well as of carnivorous animals.

Considerable differences exist among various normal individuals in regard to the degree of ketonuria which follows the complete withdrawal of carbohydrates from the diet. In some the ketonuria is slight. In

others, as Forssner and Landergren have shown, carbohydrate starvation increases the excretion of acetone bodies to over forty grams a day (calculated as beta-oxybutyric acid) and produces distinct toxic symptoms. Such quantities are of the same magnitude as those that are excreted by many diabetic patients previous to the onset of coma.

The ketonuria of severe diabetes is usually increased by an abrupt change to a fat-protein diet that contains no carbohydrates. In patients already showing a considerable ketonuria, the danger of inducing diabetic coma by making such an abrupt change is generally recognized. On the other hand, abrupt starvation will in some, but not in all, cases of diabetes, lessen a preëxisting acidosis. In cases of long standing, in fat diabetics and in those already showing considerable ketonuria, it is safer to withdraw the food gradually, eliminating first the fats and later the proteins and carbohydrates. By maintaining a low caloric intake and by keeping the urine free of sugar, both the incidence and the severity of acidosis are materially diminished. On such a diet the ability of the body to burn sugar is improved, the total metabolism is lessened, and the combustion of fat is more perfect.

Pathological ketonurias, more or less marked in degree, have been observed with greater or less frequency in a great variety of conditions. Among these may be named fevers, malignant tumors, gastro-intestinal disorders, eclampsia, phosphorus poisoning, after narcosis, etc. In many of these conditions the ketonuria is caused, or at least favored, by a concomitant partial starvation. This is true, for example, after anesthesia, during many fevers, and in many gastro-intestinal disturbances, especially when there is persistent vomiting. In diabetes also the ketonuria is undoubtedly dependent in large part upon carbohydrate starvation; for even though the body fluids contain an excess of glucose, the cells seem unable to utilize it and, therefore, starve in the midst of plenty. As a rule, ketonuria is most marked in the severe cases, where the ability to burn sugar is most reduced.

**Ketonuria from Other Causes.**—Many writers have maintained that carbohydrate starvation is the sole cause of ketonuria and that in the last analysis all cases will be shown to be due to this cause. Certain forms, however, are difficult to explain on this hypothesis. This is particularly true of the ketonuria associated with periodic vomiting. This condition, which usually occurs in children, is characterized by recurring attacks of severe vomiting. As prodromal symptoms the child often becomes nervous and irritable, he sleeps poorly, the appetite is lost and the bowels become constipated. During the attack the vomiting is frequent and persistent, the liver is often enlarged, and the urine contains all of the acetone bodies. Edsall, Hecker and others have shown that in these children the ketonuria may precede the attack of vomiting.



These patients may also eat carbohydrates well up to the onset of the attack. It would appear, therefore, that, in the periodic vomiting of infancy and childhood, there is no reason to assume that the ketonuria depends primarily upon carbohydrate starvation. Mild degrees of ketonuria are not uncommon after the administration of narcotics. Occasionally, however, a very severe and characteristic set of symptoms associated with marked ketonuria follows the administration of an anesthetic and especially of chloroform. The patient becomes jaundiced, may have convulsions, passes into coma, and frequently dies. At autopsy an extensive degeneration of the liver is found. This type of ketonuria, as well as that seen in the somewhat similar complex produced by phosphorus poisoning, is apparently not influenced by the administration of carbohydrates.

These conditions, the periodic vomiting in childhood and the severe hepatic degeneration of chloroform and of phosphorus poisoning, furnish the best examples of high degrees of ketonuria without evident dependence upon carbohydrate starvation. In them, the ketonuria is not relieved by the administration of carbohydrates. It is true that a temporary failure to burn sugar may possibly occur within the bodies of these patients, but until such an assumption has been demonstrated by respiration experiments, they will remain examples of ketonurias which apparently do not depend upon carbohydrate starvation.

**KETONURIA AND CARBOHYDRATE STARVATION IN DIABETES.**—In diabetes also there exists no exact relationship between the degrees of ketonuria and of carbohydrate starvation in different patients. Many exceptions exist to the general rule that the less sugar a diabetic can burn the more marked is his ketonuria. Certain patients with an extremely low tolerance for carbohydrates may show only small amounts of the acetone bodies in the urine, while other patients with a much better tolerance for carbohydrates may show pronounced ketonuria. It would appear, therefore, that while carbohydrate starvation is the most important of the known causes for ketonuria it cannot be regarded as the sole cause, and even where it is the principal or sole cause the degree of ketonuria does not run exactly parallel to the degree of carbohydrate starvation.

### Interrelationship of the Acetone Bodies

The intimate chemical relationship which exists between these bodies is readily seen from their structural formulae:

Beta-oxybutyric Acid	Aceto-acetic Acid	Acetone
$\text{CH}_3$	$\text{CH}_3$	$\text{CH}_3$
$\text{CHOH}$	$\text{CO}$	$\text{CO}$
$\text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_3$
$\text{COOH}$	$\text{COOH}$	

Their intimate physiological relationship is indicated by the fact that they commonly occur together, not only in diabetic coma but in the other metabolic disturbances already enumerated. When only very small amounts are present in the urine, reactions for acetone are most apt to be found; but, as the amounts increase, the ferric chlorid reaction for aceto-acetic acid appears and, finally, evidence of the presence of beta-oxybutyric acid is obtained. The presence of acetone in the urine is, therefore, of less significance than that of aceto-acetic acid, and this in turn is of less significance than the presence of beta-oxybutyric acid. If large amounts of these bodies are present, the quantity of beta-oxybutyric acid usually exceeds that of the other substances. Recent studies by Neubauer, Landergren, and others have shown that in such cases from 60 to 85 per cent of the acetone bodies in the urine are present as beta-oxybutyric acid. Indeed it has been suggested by Gigon, that the amount of beta-oxybutyric acid in the urine of severe cases may be roughly estimated by determining the quantities of acetone and aceto-acetic acid present and multiplying by a factor (4 to 6).

**Acetone of Indirect Importance in Diabetic Coma.**—We have said that reactions for acetone are relatively common in the urine and it is well known that considerable quantities of acetone may be eliminated in the expired air of patients. It is questionable, however, whether acetone, as such, occurs to any considerable extent in the body. In the urine, aceto-acetic acid readily decomposes into acetone, and Folin, Embden and others have shown that, if care be taken to prevent this decomposition, only very small amounts of acetone are found in the urine. Furthermore, if acetone be given by mouth little is excreted through the kidneys, even though it may be present in the blood in demonstrable quantities. Nearly the whole amount given can be recovered in the expired air. It, therefore, appears that acetone is not readily metabolized even by the normal body, and that it is not readily excreted through the kidneys. The acetone which is present in the expired air of patients suffering from ketonuria may have been derived from the aceto-acetic acid in the blood through chemical changes in the lungs. In view of these facts and of the well-established relatively non-toxic character of acetone, it is certain that no direct importance can be attached to this compound in the production of diabetic coma. Its importance from the clinical standpoint resides in the fact that its recognition suggests the presence of the more important aceto-acetic and beta-oxybutyric acids.

### *Derivation of the Acetone Bodies*

Theoretically it is possible to derive the acetone bodies from carbohydrates, from proteins, or from fats. Physiological studies must be

relied upon, however, for determining which of these possible sources is chiefly responsible for the acetone bodies which occur under physiological or pathological conditions. Acetone, for example, may be prepared *in vitro* by the fermentation of carbohydrates, but the older view that carbohydrates may be a source of the acetone bodies in the animal body has been definitely abandoned, for the reason that the appearance of these bodies is favored by carbohydrate starvation and may be prevented in certain cases by carbohydrate administration.

**Derivation from Proteins.**—The accumulated evidence indicates that in the animal body the acetone bodies are derived either from fats alone or from proteins and fats. This evidence is based upon two types of experiments. In the first place, Embden and his coworkers have shown that if the dog's liver be perfused with blood, acetone (or aceto-acetic acid) is formed in fairly constant amounts. When certain substances are added to the perfused blood, the amounts found are increased, apparently because the substances added are converted into acetone (or aceto-acetic acid) in the liver. In the second type of experiment, various substances, fed to men or animals already showing acetone bodies in the urine, have increased the amounts of these bodies. By these methods it has been shown that certain building stones of the protein molecule, and in particular leucin, tyrosin, and phenylalanin, cause an increased formation and elimination of the acetone bodies. While the derivation of acetone bodies from proteins cannot be denied, it is certain that this is not their sole source in diabetes. In certain cases, the amount of acetone bodies is so large that it could not possibly have been derived entirely from the protein metabolized. In a patient described by Magnus-Levy, for example, 342 grams of beta-oxybutyric and aceto-acetic acids were eliminated during three days in addition to what was lost in the expired air; yet the total protein metabolized during this time was but 271 grams. Since considerable sugar (not less than 120 grams) must have been derived from the protein, it was impossible that the proteins burned could have given rise to the large quantity of the acetone bodies found. Obviously they must have been derived mainly from the catabolism of fats. We have seen that in carbohydrate starvation a higher level of protein metabolism tends in general to decrease the elimination of the acetone bodies in the urine, because other products of protein metabolism, and especially glucose, may by their combustion inhibit the formation of these bodies. In very severe diabetes, however, where the sugar derived from proteins is not well burned, a higher level of protein metabolism may be followed by an increased elimination of acetone bodies in the urine. This is shown in the following table taken from von Noorden:



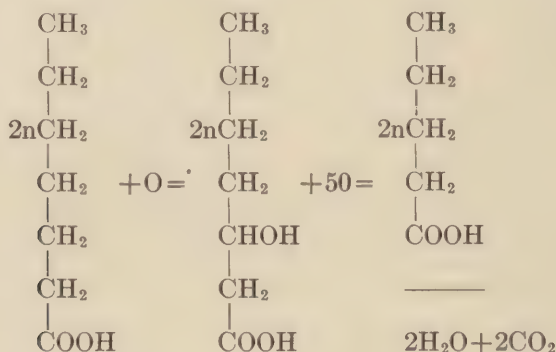
	N in Urine	Sugar	Acetone	Ammonia	Remarks
Wa.....	6.10	7.3	0.58	1.7	Each patient on a carbohydrate free diet Figures represent averages of three days
	15.32	82.7	2.14	3.0	
Mi.....	9.53	19.1	1.18	2.3	
	16.62	54.7	2.90	3.4	
Ab.....	6.30	5.2	0.42	1.7	
	17.25	60.4	1.76	3.8	

From this table it is evident that where a patient has lost in a large measure the ability to burn the sugar derived from proteins, a higher level of protein metabolism may increase the elimination of the acetone bodies in the urine. It seems probable, therefore, that proteins are a source of limited amounts of the acetone bodies in severe cases of diabetes.

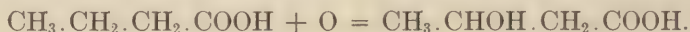
**Main Derivation from Fats.**—Numerous facts support the view that the acetone bodies are derived in large part from an incomplete combustion of fats. In the first place, quantitative calculations, such as those of Magnus-Levy, indicate that, when very large amounts are excreted, no other source for the total quantities eliminated is possible. In the second place, when a ketonuria is produced in normal individuals by carbohydrate starvation, the ingestion of large quantities of proteins with increased protein catabolism tends to diminish rather than to increase the amount of acetone bodies eliminated. This indicates that, in normal individuals at least, a higher level of nitrogenous catabolism gives rise to more substances which depress, than substances which increase the formation of the acetone bodies. Finally, Forssner has shown that, under proper experimental conditions (carbohydrate starvation, restriction of proteins), the administration of fat may increase the elimination of acetone bodies. In diabetes also the sudden administration of large quantities of fats may increase a preëxisting ketonuria and clinicians are becoming more cautious in prescribing such diets.

**Chemistry of Derivation from Fats.**—The chemical changes which lead to the formation of acetone bodies from the products of fat combustion in the animal body have been studied by various methods during the past decade. Embden and his coworkers determined the effect of adding various substances to the fluid perfused through the liver, Baer and Blum studied the effect of feeding various chemical substances to diabetic patients and depancreatized dogs, and Ringer made similar observations upon phlorhizinized dogs. By these methods it has been demonstrated that normal fatty acids with four, six, eight, and ten carbon atoms lead to a production of the acetone bodies, whereas normal fatty acids with an uneven number of carbon atoms do not cause such an increase. Since the principal normal fatty acids in the food and in the body (palmitic and stearic acids) possess an even number of carbon atoms, it has been

assumed that, in the normal metabolism of the body, the fatty acids are broken down by the successive splitting off two carbon groups at a time, owing to successive oxidations of the carbon group which occupies the so-called beta position. This conception may be represented by the following general chemical equations:



In the degradation of the fatty acids, therefore, a succession of simpler acids is formed by oxidation in the beta position and by splitting off two carbon atoms at a time. Eventually butyric acid is reached. This is oxidized in the usual beta position forming beta-oxybutyric acid:



The disturbances which lead to the production of the acetone bodies begin at this point. Either there is a failure to burn beta-oxybutyric acid in the normal manner and this results in an abnormal formation of aceto-acetic acid (and acetone) or else aceto-acetic acid is a step in the normal combustion, but the process is halted at this point.

**Relation between Fat and Carbohydrate Combustion.**—We have seen that this inability to complete the combustion of fats is the most important cause of ketonuria, and that ketonuria is most frequently encountered in deficient carbohydrate metabolism. From these facts the conclusion has been drawn that the final combustion of fats is assisted in some way by the simultaneous combustion of carbohydrates, some even maintaining that there is a mathematical relation between the amount of fat burned and the amount of carbohydrate which must be simultaneously metabolized in order to prevent ketonuria. Fats are said to burn properly only in the flame of carbohydrate combustion.

It must be recognized, however, that other explanations for the observed facts are possible. The relation between carbohydrate starvation and ketonuria is by no means a rigid one, and some types of ketonuria probably do not depend upon a failure to burn carbohydrates. It would seem as though the final combustion of fats may depend only indirectly.

upon carbohydrate metabolism. When the body does not have at hand the full supply of carbohydrates or having it cannot metabolize it, there is necessarily an increase in the combustion of fats and it may well be that the extra strain thrown upon this mechanism by the increased load may lead to disturbance. Or, again, it is possible that the disturbance in carbohydrate metabolism in diabetes is followed by some coincident weakening in the normal capabilities of the body to handle fats and that this contributes to the ketonuria.

### *The Cause of Diabetic Coma*

We have seen that in diabetic coma there is always a marked increase in the acetone bodies excreted in the urine and in the expired air. The amount in the blood is also increased, rising according to Marriott from the normal level of less than 5.5 mg. per 100 cm. of blood to 70 mg. or more. Furthermore, the symptoms of diabetic coma indicate a severe and specific intoxication. The relation of the acetone bodies to this intoxication remains to be discussed. That acetone itself is in no way responsible for the toxic state is certain. It is relatively non-toxic, possessing properties that lie between those of alcohol and chloroform. Possibly it does not occur at all in the body, and certainly the quantities present can produce no serious intoxication.

**Acid Intoxication.**—The toxic symptoms of diabetic coma are, without doubt, attributable to the occurrence of aceto-acetic and beta-oxybutyric acids in the body. These acids may produce the intoxication either by virtue of their acid qualities, a so-called acid-intoxication, or by virtue of some specific toxic effect produced by their neutral salts. The general features of acid intoxication have already been considered (page 259), and there can be no doubt but that a patient in diabetic coma shows all the classical features of an acid intoxication. The ammonia in the urine is increased, the titratable alkalinity of the blood is diminished, the carbon-dioxid content of the blood is diminished, the tension of  $\text{CO}_2$  in the alveolar air is low, the characteristic breathing is that seen in acid intoxication, and the amount of sodium bicarbonate which must be administered in order to make the urine alkaline is far beyond the normal. The acid intoxication theory receives further support from the results of alkaline treatment. Patients who have passed into diabetic coma have frequently been brought out of the coma for varying periods of time by intravenous injections of sodium carbonate solutions. Usually they have lapsed again into unconsciousness, but in some cases the recovery has continued for months and more. Furthermore, if the urine can be kept neutral or alkaline by the administration of sodium bicarbonate, the danger of coma is greatly, if not altogether, averted.

**Intoxication by Salts of Ketonic Acids.**—On the other hand, there



is clinical as well as experimental evidence that diabetic coma is not entirely an acid intoxication. Patients are said to have passed into coma even during the administration of sufficient quantities of alkalis to keep the urine alkaline. The intravenous injection of alkalis which has frequently brought a comatose patient to consciousness has usually failed to prevent a relapse within hours or days. Direct experimental evidence that the neutralized salts of beta-oxybutyric acid are toxic has been advanced by Wilbur, Ehrmann and others. Indeed the symptom complex produced by the administration of sodium beta-oxybutyrate has many points in common with that of diabetic coma in man. With the present evidences, therefore, it seems probable that while diabetic coma results mainly from an acid intoxication, specific toxic properties of the salts of the ketonic acids may play a part in its pathogenesis.

## Pentosuria

The pentoses are carbohydrates which contain five carbon atoms ( $C_5H_{10}O_5$ ). In plants they occur in a combined state in the nucleic acids of nucleoproteins as well as in a state of polymerization, analogous to the ordinary starches.

Traces of pentose may appear in the urines of normal individuals, especially after eating cherries, apples and other vegetable substances.

In chronic pentosuria there is a continual excretion of pentose in the urine which is independent of the character of the diet. The condition frequently occurs in several members of the same family. Some thirty cases have been reported. The origin of this pentose is quite unknown. It has been suggested that it may arise either from the nucleoprotein metabolism or from certain sugars (galactose), but in neither case has the origin been definitely established. Chronic pentosuria produces no symptoms and it is of clinical interest mainly because the urine has mild reducing properties which may lead to a mistaken diagnosis of diabetes.

## References

### *Disturbances in the Carbohydrate Metabolism*

#### *General References*

- Allen (F. M.).** *Studies concerning glycosuria and diabetes.* Boston, 1913.
- Falta (W.).** *The therapy of diabetes mellitus.* Arch. Int. Med., 1909, iii, 159.
- Gigon (A.).** *Neuere Diabetesforschungen.* Ergbn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk., 1912, ix, 206.
- Lusk (G.).** *Metabolism in diabetes.* Arch. Int. Med., 1909, iii, 1.
- MacLeod (J. J. R.).** *Diabetes: its pathological physiology.* London & New York, 1913.
- Magnus-Levy (A.).** *Glycogen and diabetes.* In: Oppenheim, Handbuch d. Biochemie, iv, 1, 357-358.

**Rosenberger (F.).** *Die Ursachen der Glykuriën: ihre Verhütung und Behandlung.* München, 1911.

### *The Blood Sugar*

**Bang (I.).** *Der Blutzucker.* Wiesbaden, 1913.

**von Hess (C. L.) & McGuigan (H.).** *The condition of the sugar in the blood.* Jour. Pharm. and Exp. Therap., 1914, vi, 45.

**Strouse (S.).** *The accurate clinical study of blood sugar.* Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., 1915, xxvi, 211.

### *Hypoglycemia*

**Janney (N. W.), Goodhart (S. P.) & Isaacson (V. I.).** *The endocrine origin of muscular dystrophy.* Arch. Int. Med., 1918, xxi, 188.

**McCrudden (F. H.) & Sargent (C. S.).** *Chemical changes in the blood and urine in progressive muscular dystrophy, progressive muscular atrophy and myasthenia gravis.* Arch. Int. Med., 1918, xxi, 252.

**McCrudden (F. H.).** *The nature of the pathologic process in progressive muscular dystrophy.* Arch. Int. Med., 1918, xxi, 256.

*Progressive muscular dystrophy.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., 1918, lxx, 1216

### *Phlorhizin Glycosuria*

**Lusk (G.).** *Phlorhizinglukosurie.* Ergbn. d. Physiol., 1912, xii, 315.

**Mosburg (B.).** *Ueber die Ausscheidung des Phlorhizins und des Zuckers in der Niere.* Dissertation. Würzburg, 1898.

**Nishi (M.).** *Ueber die Rückresorption des Zuckers in der Niere.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmakol., 1909-10, lxii, 329.

**Reilly (F. H.), Nolan (F. W.) & Lusk (G.).** *Phlorhizin diabetes in dogs.* Am. Jour. Physiol., 1898, i, 395.

**Seelig (A.).** *Eine Methode zum Nachweis localer Zuckerausscheidung in den Organen, speciell in den Nieren.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmakol., 1896, xxxvii, 156.

**Stiles (P. G.) & Lusk (G.).** *On the action of phlorhizin.* Amer. Jour. Physiol., 1903, x, 67.

### *Renal Glycosuria*

**Bailey (C. V.).** *Renal diabetes.* Am. J. M. Sc., 1919, clvii, 221.

**Beard (A. H.) & Grave (F.).** *Renal glycosuria.* Arch. Int. Med., 1918, xxi, 705.

**Frank (E.).** *Ueber harmlose Formen der Zuckerkrankheit bei jüngeren Menschen.* Therap. d. Gegenw., 1914, lv, 439.

**Frank (E.) & Isaac (S.).** *Beiträge zur Theorie der experimentellen Diabetesformen.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmakol., 1910, lxiv, 293.

**Mann.** *Die Schwangerschafts-Glykosurie eine Form des renalen Diabetes.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., 1913, lxxviii, 488.

**Novak (J.), Porges (O.) & Strisower (R.).** *Ueber eine besondere Form von Glykosurie in der Gravidität und ihre Beziehungen zum echten Diabetes.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., 1913, lxxviii, 413.

*Alimentary Glycosuria**Levulosuria and Galactosuria*

- Bailey (C. V.).** *Studies on alimentary hyperglycemia and glycosuria.* Arch. Int. Med., **1919**, *xxiii*, 455.
- Bauer (R.).** Ueber die Assimilation von Galaktose und Milchzucker beim Gesunden und Kranken. Wien. med. Wchnschr., **1906**, *lvi*, 20.  
Die Prüfung der Leberfunktion mittels der Probe auf alimentäre Galaktosurie. Wien. klin. Wchnschr., **1912**, *xxv*, 939.  
Ueber alimentäre Galaktosurie. Deutsch. med. Wchnschr., **1908**, *xxxiv*, 1505.
- Chesney (A. M.), Marshall (E. K.) & Rountree (L. G.).** *Studies in liver function.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1914**, *lxiii*, 1533.
- De Filippi (F.).** Der Kohlehydratstoffwechsel bei Hunden die mit Ecks Fistel nach der Pawlowschen Methode operiert wurden. Ztschr. f. Biol., **1907**, *lxix*, 511, 1, 38.
- Draudt (L.).** Ueber die Verwertung von Laktose und Galaktose nach partieller Leberausschaltung (Ecksche Fistel). Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmacol., **1913**, *lxxii*, 457.
- Falk (F.) & Saxl (P.).** Zur funktionellen Leberdiagnostik. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1911**, *lxviii*, 325.
- Foster (N. B.).** Functional tests for hepatic cirrhosis. Am. Jour. Med. Sci., **1912**, *cxliii*, 830.
- Frey (W.).** Zur Diagnostik der Leberkrankheiten. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1911**, *lxvii*, 383.
- Hamman (L.) & Hirschman (I. I.).** *Studies on blood sugar. I. Alimentary hyperglycemia and glycosuria as a test of sugar tolerance.* Arch. Int. Med., **1917**, *xx*, 761.
- Hirose (M.).** Ueber die alimentäre Galaktosurie bei Leberkrankheiten und Neurosen. Deutsch. med. Wchnschr., **1912**, *xxxviii*, 1414.
- Hohlweg (H.).** Zur funktionellen Leberdiagnostik. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1909**, *xcvii*, 443.
- Jacobson (C.).** A study of the carbohydrate tolerance in Eck fistula and hypophysectomized animals (posterior lobe removal). Am. J. Physiol., **1920**, *lii*, 233.
- Janney (N. W.) & Isaacson (V. I.).** A blood sugar tolerance test. Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1918**, *lxx*, 1131.
- Michaud (L.).** Ueber den Kohlenhydratstoffwechsel bei Hunden mit Ecksche Fistel. Verhandl. d. Cong. f. inn. Med., **1911**, *xxviii*, 561.
- Pemberton (R.) & Foster (G. L.).** *Studies of arthritis in the army based on four hundred cases. III. Studies on the nitrogen, urea, carbon dioxid combining power, calcium, total fat and cholesterol of the fasting blood, renal function, blood sugar and sugar tolerance.* A ch. Int. Med., **1920**, *xxv*, 243.
- Reitz (E.) & Jehn (W.).** Alimentäre Galaktosurie bei Leberkrankheiten. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, *cxviii*, 187.
- Roubitschek (R.).** Alimentäre Galaktosurie bei experimenteller Phosphorvergiftung. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, *cxviii*, 225.
- Sachs (H.).** Ueber die Bedeutung der Leber für die Verwertung der verschiedenen Zuckerarten im Organismus. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1899**, *xxviii*, 87.
- Sisson (W. R.).** A clinical study of two hepatic functional tests (galactose and phenoltetrachlorophthalein). Arch. Int. Med., **1914**, *xiv*, 804.
- Wagner (F.).** Klinische Untersuchungen über die Bedeutung der verschiedenen Zuckerproben für die Beurteilung der Leberfunktion. Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1914**, *lxxx*, 174.
- Wilder (R. M.) & Sansum (W. D.).** d-glucose tolerance in health and disease. Arch. Int. Med., **1917**, *xix*, 311.



*Glycosuria of Nervous Origin, etc.*

- Bang (I.), Ljungdahl (M.) & Bohm (V.).** Untersuchungen über den Glycogenumsatz in der Kaninchenleber. *Hoffmeister, Beitr.*, **1906-07**, ix, 408; **1907**, x, 1.
- Borchardt (L.).** Die Hypophysenglycosurie und ihre Beziehung zum Diabetes bei der Akromegalie. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, lvi, 332.  
Experimentelles über den Diabetes bei der Akromegalie. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1908**, xxxiv, 946.
- Cannon (W. B.).** Bodily changes in pain, hunger, fear and rage, etc. New York, **1915**.
- Cushing (H.).** The pituitary body and its disorders. Philadelphia, **1912**.
- Folin (O.), Denis (W.) & Smillie (W. G.).** Some observations on "emotional glycosuria" in man. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1914**, xvii, 519.
- Goetsch (E.), Cushing (H.) & Jacobson (C.).** Carbohydrate tolerance and the posterior lobe of the hypophysis cerebri. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1911**, xvi, 165.
- MacLeod (J. J. R.) & Pearce (R. G.).** Studies in experimental glycosuria. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1909-10**, xxv, 255; **1911**, xxviii, 403; **1911-12**, xxix, 419.
- Shaffer (P. A.).** On the normal level of blood-sugar of the dog. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1914**, xix, 297.

*Epinephrin Glycosuria*

- Agadschanianz.** Ueber den Einfluss des Adrenalins auf das in der Leber und Muskeln enthaltene Glykogen. *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1907**, ii, 148.
- Ringer (A. J.).** The influence of adrenalin in phlorhizin diabetes. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1910**, xii, 105.
- Ritzmann (H.).** Ueber den Mechanismus der Adrenalinglykosurie. *Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1909**, lxi, 231.
- Stewart (G. N.) & Rogoff (J. M.).** The relation of the adrenals to pigüre hyperglycemia and to the glycogen content of the liver. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1918**, xvi, 90.
- Underhill (F. P.) & Clossen (O. E.).** Adrenalin glycosuria and the influence of adrenalin upon nitrogenous metabolism. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1906-07**, xvii, 42.

*Etiology of Diabetes*

- Banting (F. G.) & Best (C. H.).** The internal secretion of the pancreas. *Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med.*, **1922**, vii, 1.
- Carlson (A. J.) & Ginsberg (H.).** The influence of blood transfusion on the hyperglycemia and glycosuria of pancreatic diabetes in the dog. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxvi, 280.  
The influence of pregnancy on the hyperglycemia of pancreatic diabetes. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxvi, 217.
- Cecil (R. L.).** A study of the pathological anatomy of the pancreas in ninety cases of diabetes mellitus. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1909**, xi, 266.
- Clark (A. H.).** The interrelation of the surviving heart and pancreas of the dog in sugar metabolism. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1916**, xxiv, 621.
- Heiberg (K. A.).** Die Entstehungsweise der Inselveränderungen und ihr Verhalten bei Diabetes mellitus. *Beitr. z. path. Anat. u. z. allg. Path.*, **1911**, li, 178.
- Hirschfeld (F.).** Beiträge zur Lehre von der Entstehung des Diabetes. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1911**, xxxvii, 1193.
- Homans (J.).** Degeneration of the islands of Langerhans associated with experimental diabetes in the cat. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1914**, xxx, 49.
- Jensen (V. W.) & Carlson (A. J.).** The apparent influence of a diet of carbohydrates on the pancreas remnant of partially pancreatectomized dogs. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1920**, li, 423.

- Joslin (E. P.).** *The prevention of diabetes mellitus.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1921**, lxxvi, 79.
- Kirkbride (M. B.).** *The islands of Langerhans after ligation of the pancreatic ducts.* Jour. Exp. Med., **1912**, xv, 101.
- Kramer (B.) & Murlin (J. R.).** *The influence of pancreatic and duodenal extracts on the glycosuria and the respiratory metabolism of depancreatized dogs.* Jour. Biol. Chem., **1913**, xv, 365.
- MacCallum (W. G.).** *On the relation of the islands of Langerhans to glycosuria.* Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., **1909**, xx, 265.
- Magnus-Levy (von A.).** *Ueber den Diabetes im Kriege.* Deutsch. med. Wchnschr. **1919**, xlv, 1379.
- von Mering & Minkowski (O.).** *Diabetes mellitus nach Pancreasextirpation.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmacol., **1889-90**, xxvi, 371.
- Milne (L. S.) & Peters (H. L.).** *Atrophy of the pancreas after occlusion of the pancreatic duct.* Jour. Med. Research, **1912**, xxvi, 405.
- Opie (E. L.).** *Pathological changes affecting the islands of Langerhans of the pancreas,* Jour. Boston Soc. Med. Sci., **1899-1900**, iv, 251.  
*On the relation of chronic interstitial pancreatitis to the islands of Langerhans and to diabetes mellitus.* Jour. Exp. Med., **1901**, v, 397, 527.
- Pratt (J. H.) & Murphy (F. T.).** *Pancreatic transplantations in the spleen.* Jour. Exp. Med., **1913**, xvii, 252.
- Ssobolew (L. W.).** *Ueber die Structur der Bauchspeicheldrüse unter gewissen pathologischen Bedingungen.* Centrallbl. f. allg. Path. u. path. Anat., **1900**, xi, 202.
- Weichselbaum (A.).** *Ueber die Veränderungen der Pankreas bei Diabetes mellitus.* Wien. klin. Wchnschr., **1911**, xxiv, 153.  
*Sitzungsber. d. Wien., Akad., 1910*, cxix, iii, 73.

### Derivation of Sugar in Diabetes

- Cohnheim (O.) & Klee (P.).** *Zur Physiologie des Pankreas.* Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem., **1912**, lxxviii, 464.
- Falta (W.).** *Ueber die Gesetze der Zuckerausscheidung beim Diabetes mellitus.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1908**, lxxv, 300, 463; lxxvi, 401.
- Falta (W.) & Gigon (A.).** *Ueber die Gesetze der Zuckerausscheidung bei Diabetes mellitus.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1907**, lxi, 297.
- Geyelin (H. R.) & Du Bois (E. F.).** *A case of diabetes of maximum severity with marked improvement.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1916**, lxxvi, 1532.
- Grafe (E.) & Wolf (J. L.).** *Beiträge zur Pathologie und Therapie der schwersten Diabetesfälle.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, cxvii, 201.
- Jackson (H. C.).** *On the influence of camphor ingestion upon the excretion of dextrose in phlorhizin diabetes.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1913**, xxvii, 8.
- Klotz (M.).** *Untersuchungen über den Kohlenhydratstoffwechsel.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmacol., **1912**, lxxvii, 451.
- Lusk (G.).** *The production of sugar from glutamic acid ingested in phlorhizin glycosuria.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1908**, xxii, 174.
- Magnus-Levy (A.).** *Ueber die Haferkur bei Diabetes.* Kongr. f. inn. Med., **1911**, xxviii, 246.
- Mandel (A. R.) & Lusk (G.).** *Stoffwechselbeobachtungen an einem Falle von Diabetes mellitus.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1904**, lxxxi, 472.
- Minkowski (O.).** *Untersuchungen über den Diabetes mellitus nach Extirpation des Pankreas.* Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmacol., **1893**, xxxi, 85.
- Pflüger (E.) & Junkersdorf (P.).** *Ueber die Muttersubstanzen des Glykogens.* Pflüg. Arch. f. ges. Physiol., **1910**, cxxxi, 201.
- Reilly (F. H.), Nolan (F. W.) & Lusk (G.).** *Phlorhizin diabetes in dogs.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1898**, i, 395.

- Ringer (A. I.) & Lusk (G.).** Ueber die Entstehung von Dextrose aus Aminosäuren bei Phlorhizinglukosurie. *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1910**, lxi, 106.
- Stiles (P. G.) & Lusk (G.).** On the action of phlorhizin. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1903**, x, 67.  
On the formation of dextrose in metabolism from the end products of a pancreatic digest of meat. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1903**, ix, 380.
- Whitney (J. L.).** Ueber die Gesetze der Zuckerausscheidung beim Diabetes mellitus. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, lxx, 476.

### Energy Consumption in Diabetes

- Benedict (F. G.) & Joslin (E. P.).** A study of metabolism in severe diabetes. *Carnegie Institute of Washington*, **1912**, clxxvi.  
Metabolism in diabetes. *Carnegie Institute of Washington*, **1910**, cxxxvi.
- Falta (W.), Grote (F.) & Staehelin (R.).** Versuche über Stoffwechsel und Energieverbrauch an pankreaslosen Hunden. *Beitr. z. chem. Phys. u. Path.*, **1907**, x, 199.
- Falta (W.) & Whitney (J. L.).** Zur Kenntnis des Eiweiss- und Mineralstoffwechsels pankreasdiabetischer Hunde. *Beitr. z. chem. Phys. u. Path.*, **1908**, xi, 224.

### Glycogen in Diabetes

- De Meyer (J.).** Nouvelle méthode de circulation artificielle à travers le foie appliquée à l'étude de la glycogénie hépatique. *Arch. Internat. de Physiol.*, **1909**, ix, 101.  
Sur les relations entre la sécrétion interne du pancréas et la fonction glycogénique du foie. *Arch. Internat. de Physiol.*, **1910**, ix, 1.
- Nishi (M.).** Ueber Glykogenbildung in der Leber pankreasdiabetischer Schildkröten. *Arch. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1910**, lxii, 170.

### Theory of Diabetes

- Knowlton (F. P.) & Starling (E. H.).** Experiments on the consumption of sugar in the normal and diabetic heart. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xlv, 146.
- Magnus-Levy (A.).** Respirationsversuche an diabetischen Menschen. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1905**, lvi, 83.
- Mohr (L.).** Untersuchungen über den Diabetes mellitus. *Ztschr. f. exp. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1907**, iv, 910.
- Murlin (J. R.), Edelmann (L.) & Hramer (B.).** The carbon dioxid and oxygen content of the blood after clamping the abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava below the diaphragm. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1913-14**, xvi, 79.
- Nehring (O.) & Schmoll (E.).** Ueber den Einfluss der Kohlenhydrate auf den Gaswechsel des Diabetikers. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1897**, xxxi, 59.
- von Noorden (C.).** The theory and treatment of diabetes. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1913**, clv, 1.
- Porges (O.) & Salomon (H.).** Ueber den respiratorischen Quotienten pankreasdiabetischer Hunde nach Ausschaltung der Abdominalorgane. *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1910**, xxvii, 131, 143.
- Rolly (F.).** Zur Theorie und Therapie des Diabetes mellitus. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cv, 494.
- Rolly (F.) & David (H.).** Handelt es sich bei dem Diabetes mellitus des Menschen um eine primäre Ueberproduktion von Zucker? *Münch. med. Wchnschr.*, Jan. 27, **1914**, 167.
- Seo (Y.).** Ueber den Einfluss der Muskelarbeit auf die Zuckerausscheidung beim Pankreasdiabetes. *Arch. f. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1908**, lix, 341.



*Complications of Diabetes*

- Da Costa (J. C.) & Beardsley (E. J. G.).** The resistance of diabetics to bacterial infection. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1908**, cxxvi, 361.
- Handmann (E.).** Ueber die Ursache der verminderten Resistenz des Diabetikers gegen Infektionen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, cii, 1.
- Luckhardt (A. B.).** The cause of polyphagia in pancreatic diabetes. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxiii, 315.
- Mitchell (S. Weir).** On the production of cataract in frogs by the administration of sugar. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1860**, xxxix, 106.
- Sweet (J. E.).** The reactions of the blood in experimental diabetes mellitus. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1903**, x, 255.

*Diabetic Coma*

- Blum (L.).** Symptomatologie und Therapie des Koma diabeticum. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, xi, 442.
- Edsall (D.).** A preliminary communication concerning the nature and treatment of recurrent vomiting. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1903**, cxxv, 629.
- Ehrmann (R.).** Ueber experimentelles Koma. Verhalten von buttersauren zu isobuttersauren Natrium. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, lxxii, 500.
- Ehrmann (R.), Esser (P.) & Loewy (O.).** Ueber experimentelles Koma Symptomatologie, Azetonkörperausscheidung, Dosis bei Abnahme des Körpergewichts. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, lxxii, 496.
- Folin (O.).** On the separate determination of acetone and diacetic acid. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1907**, iii, 177.
- Gigon (A.).** Neuere Diabetesforschungen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1912**, ix, 206.
- Hecker (R.).** Periodisches Erbrechen mit Acetonämie. *Ergbn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1911**, vii, 242.
- Joslin (E. P.).** The influence of various fats on the formation and excretion of acetone. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1904**, xii, 433.
- Landergren (E.).** Beiträge zur Diabetislehre. *Nord. med. Ark.*, **1910**, Abl. ii, x (referred to by Gigon).
- Marriott (W. McK.).** The blood in acidosis from the quantitative point of view. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxviii, 397.
- Merx (A.).** Ueber die Wirkung des buttersauren Natriums auf den Organismus junger hungernder Hunde. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, lxxi, 165.
- Neubauer (O.).** Ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis der diabetischen Acidosis. *Verh. d. Cong. inn. Med.*, **1910**, xxvii, 566.
- Röver.** Über Atmung des gesunden und säurevergifteten Menschen. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxvii, 228.

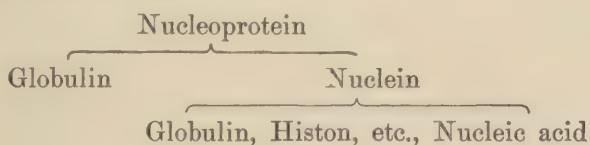
# Chapter V

## The Purin Metabolism—Gout

Gout is characterized by the deposition of sodium monourate in certain tissues of the body. Before discussing the functional disturbances in gout it will, therefore, be necessary to present the current views regarding the normal course of uric acid metabolism in the human being.

### Normal Purin Metabolism

**Catabolism of Nucleoproteins.**—In the normal metabolism of man uric acid and related substances are derived in the main, if not entirely, from the decomposition of nucleoproteins. These latter are found chiefly in the nuclear material of cells, and the uric acid formed in the body, therefore, bears an intimate relationship to the chemical changes which take place in the living cellular substance. The degradation of nucleoproteins takes place in the following manner:



According to Jones, there are but two nucleic acids in nature, one obtainable from the nuclei of animal cells and the other from the nuclei of plant cells. In each case the decomposition of the acid yields (1) phosphoric acid; (2) two purin bases, guanin and adenin; (3) pyrimidin derivatives, and (4) a carbohydrate group. While both animal and vegetable nucleic acids contain in common the phosphoric acid, the two purin bases and the pyrimidin derivative cystosin, they differ in that the former yields the pyrimidin derivative thymine while the latter yields uracil, and in that furthermore the former probably contains a hexose carbohydrate group while the latter contains a pentose group. Of interest in the present discussion is the fact that the guanin and adenin present in nucleic acids belong to the group of so-called *purin bodies*, which numbers among its

members the other purin bases, xanthin and hypoxanthin, as well as uric acid.

**Sources of the Purin Bodies.**—(a) **EXOGENOUS PURINS.**—The purin bodies present in the human organism are derived from two chief sources. The first of these is the food, and purin bodies derived from this source are spoken of as the exogenous purins. The nucleoproteins in the food may be split to the nucleic acid stage during gastric and pancreatic digestion. The nucleic acid itself resists these digestive juices, but a further degradation occurs in the intestines, owing in part to the action of the succus entericus and in part to the action of bacteria. In the intestinal mucosa still further splitting probably takes place with the liberation of purin bases. During the processes of digestion and absorption, therefore, the nucleoproteins taken in the food are decomposed and the purin bodies thus liberated are in part taken up by the body to form the exogenous purins. In part they are decomposed and lost in the intestines.

(b) **ENDOGENOUS PURINS.** The second source of purin bodies in the animal organism is the decomposition of the nucleoproteins of the tissues. For each individual there seems to be a fairly fixed rate of nucleoprotein catabolism, which varies to some extent, however, with the vital activities of the cells.

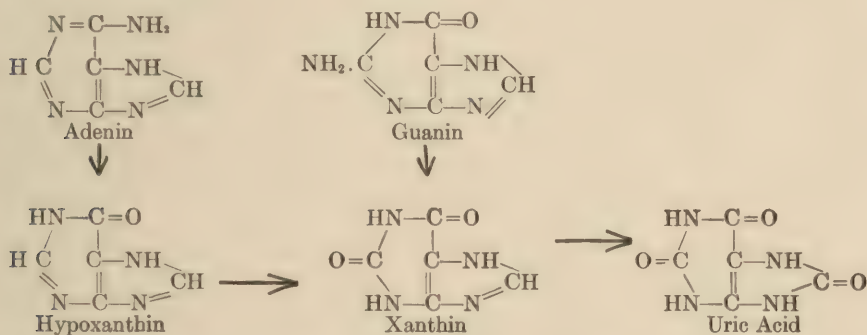
There is no doubt but that the animal organism can synthesize nucleoproteins and that it can do this even though it has at hand neither preformed pentose nor preformed purin bodies. In the eggs of birds and insects, for example, nucleoproteins are practically absent; yet during the development of the chick and of insect larvae, these are formed in considerable quantities. The migrating salmon does not take food, yet it forms enormous quantities of nucleoproteins. Finally, milk or other diets which are practically free of purins constitute an adequate food supply over long periods of time. Under such circumstances the body maintains its store of tissue nucleoproteins by synthesizing the necessary carbohydrate and purin bodies and by building these up into the complex nucleoproteins.

**UREA.**—It is well known that in birds and reptiles uric acid constitutes the chief nitrogenous constituent of the urine and it has been shown that birds synthesize uric acid from urea, ammonium salts or amino acids. Uric acid has also been derived from urea in the laboratory. It was formerly held that such a synthesis occurs in the human body; but it is becoming more and more probable that in man uric acid never represents a further elaboration of the urea waste of the body. It is a specific end-product of the nucleoprotein catabolism.

**Conversion of the Purin Bodies.**—We have seen that the purin bodies arise mainly from a breaking down of nucleic acid, which is in turn derived from the nucleoproteins of the body or food. The chief purin bases which are formed in this manner are adenin and guanin. The chemical



structure of these bases and the changes which take place when they are converted into other bases and into uric acid are evident from inspection of the following structural formulae.



Two types of chemical processes take place in the conversion of the purin bases into uric acid. The first of these is a deamination whereby the amino group is removed. This occurs when hypoxanthin is formed from adenin and when xanthin is formed from guanin. The second process is an oxidation. This takes place when hypoxanthin is converted into xanthin and when the latter is converted into uric acid. These chemical conversions are performed by special ferments which are found in certain tissues of the body.

It has been assumed thus far that the decomposition of the nucleic acids with formation of purin bodies is always completed previous to the deaminizations and oxidations which convert the purin bases into uric acid. It is probable, however, that this order is not strictly followed in the body. There is evidence that specialized ferments may cause deamination while the purin bodies are still combined with the carbohydrate radicle. For example, Jones has shown that watery extracts of all human tissues are unable to deaminate adenin itself although they exert this action upon the adenin held in combination.

In the human body uric acid is the chief end-product of the nucleoprotein metabolism and in human urine it forms by far the largest part of the purin bodies present. In most other mammals, except the anthropoid apes, uric acid does not appear to be the chief end-product of nucleoprotein metabolism. Most of the purin nitrogen in the urine is present in the form of allantoin, a substance which appears in the human urine only in traces. If uric acid be fed to these animals it is eliminated almost entirely as allantoin. It was formerly believed that considerable amounts of uric acid are normally destroyed in the human body by being converted into urea. At the present time, however, there is much doubt and discussion concerning this supposed destruction. Unlike the tissues from many animals, those from man and the anthropoid apes are unable to

decompose uric acid in vitro. Furthermore, when uric acid is fed to man quantities up to one-half or more of that fed can subsequently be recovered from the urine in excess of the normal excretion. Probably some is lost in the intestines, for when uric acid is injected subcutaneously sixty to ninety per cent may be recovered. It is certain that the amount of uric acid which is destroyed in the human body is much less than was formerly supposed and many believe with Wiechowski that practically none is thus lost. According to this view, the purin bodies of the urine are not only derived solely from the nucleoproteins but the amount excreted in the urine indicates the amount of nucleoprotein metabolism taking place in the body.

**Normal Excretion of Uric Acid.**—Any determination of the amount of purin bodies excreted in the urine must take into account the two chief sources of these bodies; those which arise from the food, and those which arise during the course of the body metabolism. The latter or endogenous purin bodies are determined by placing the individual upon a purin free diet. When placed upon such a diet, the purin excretion of a given individual is as a rule remarkably constant not only from day to day but even over long periods of time. The endogenous excretion for different individuals, however, varies considerably, the figures ranging from about 0.2 to 0.6 gram daily. Apparently, therefore, different individuals live at different levels of nucleoprotein metabolism, but each maintains his own level with remarkable constancy. Approximately ten per cent of the total amount of purin bodies in the urine consists of the purin bases, the remainder being uric acid.

The amount of exogenous uric acid excreted in the urine is determined by placing the individual upon a purin free diet for several days and in this way estimating his level of endogenous excretion. Having found this level, food containing the precursors of uric acid are fed, and the excess of uric acid appearing in the urine is then determined. By this method it has been shown that when purin-containing foods are given there is a very prompt rise in the excretion of uric acid. This usually lasts not more than one or two days after discontinuing the feeding of purin-containing food. When nucleoproteins are taken by mouth, approximately fifty per cent of the uric acid which could be derived from the food may be recovered from the urine. Larger proportions are recovered if uric acid has been injected subcutaneously. Two explanations have been offered for the portions not recovered: either it has been destroyed in the body or it has been lost in some not yet determined manner.

Nucleoproteins are particularly abundant in those foods which contain a large number of nuclei; especially in sweetbreads (thymus, thyroid), kidney, liver and brain. Compared with these, muscle is relatively poor in purin bodies, but since it is ordinarily consumed in relatively large quantities it is the most important carrier of purins in an ordinary diet.

There is no difference in this particular between the red and white meats. Most vegetables are poor in nucleoproteins and this is especially true of those which grow under ground. The leguminous vegetables, peas and beans, are, however, relatively rich in these substances. In choosing a low purin diet, therefore, the chief reliance must be placed upon such foods as milk, bread, eggs, starches, cream and butter.

Tea, coffee and cocoa contain caffein and similar substances which are methyl substitution products of the purin ring. The ingestion of caffein increases the uric acid output in the urine by amounts which correspond to the conversion of from 10 to 15 per cent of the caffein into uric acid (Mendel and Wardell).

## Increase Purin Metabolism

The endogenous purin metabolism is increased in all conditions where there is destruction of cells in the body. In leukemia, in resolving pneumonia, in septic processes and in acute degenerations of the liver there is an excessive destruction of cells with liberation of nucleoproteins and excretion of unusually large quantities of endogenous uric acid. The amount of uric acid in the blood in these conditions and particularly in leukemia is often remarkably high. In the latter disease the uric acid excretion may be increased by exposure to the x-rays, owing to the destructive effect of these rays upon the abnormal cells in the blood and tissues. For a few days after birth the concentration of uric acid in the blood is high and its excretion by the kidneys is increased.

## The Purin Metabolism in Gout

**Etiology of Gout.**—The cause of gout is not well understood. There is an *hereditary tendency* to the disease which is transmitted in certain families. Among the acquired factors which predispose to gout are an habitual *overconsumption of food* and especially of meats. The continual ingestion of considerable quantities of purin-containing foods burdens the normal body mechanism for handling the uric acid derived from this source and favors the development of gout in those in whom this mechanism is already weak. A *sedentary life* also favors the development of gout. For these reasons gout is particularly apt to occur in those belonging to the leisure classes, who live well and take but little exercise.

Certain chronic intoxications also diminish the ability of the body to handle the purin metabolism in the normal manner. *Alcoholism* in particular and especially the long-continued use of malt liquors distinctly favors the gouty tendency. Chronic alcoholism is the most important



cause of gout in the lower social classes. *Chronic lead poisoning* is also an important predisposing cause of gout.

Gout shows many interesting relationships to metabolic and other diseases. Not infrequently the gouty patient himself suffers from these other diseases. Again in gouty families there may be an unusual tendency not only toward the development of gout but toward the development of these closely related conditions. This general tendency is often spoken of as a *gouty diathesis*. The most important of the diseases which tend to be associated with gout are diabetes, obesity, cardiac and cerebral arteriosclerosis, chronic hypertension, chronic interstitial nephritis, certain skin diseases, digestive disturbances, etc. The relationship of these various conditions to true gout is at the present time obscure. Some are unusual manifestations of gout itself, so-called irregular gout. Others, especially the kidney lesions, may be factors in the causation of gout. In still other cases, as in obesity and diabetes, the disturbance in purin metabolism tends to be associated with other metabolic disorders.

**Uric Acid Excretion in Gout.**—(a) ENDOGENOUS URIC ACID.—We have seen that when normal individuals are placed upon a purin free diet the uric acid excretion is relatively constant for a given individual,

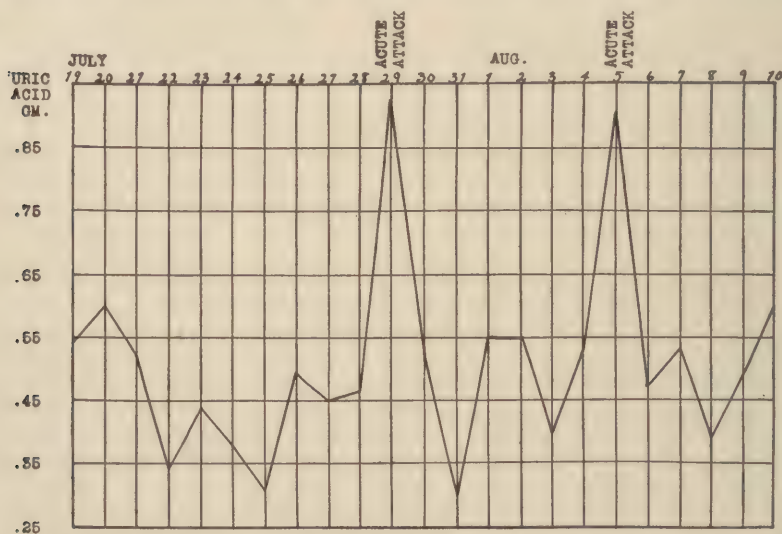


Fig. 67.—Daily Output of Endogenous Uric Acid in a Gouty Patient Showing a Marked Increase During the Acute Paroxysms. Such Marked Changes Are Not the Rule and Some Have Found No Change Whatever. (Constructed from determinations of R. Köster, Inaug. Diss., Kiel.)

although considerable variations occur between different individuals. During chronic gout or in the intervals between the attacks of acute gout the endogenous uric acid excretion shows no constant variation from these normal limits. In most gouty patients the endogenous uric acid excretion

approaches the lower level of the normal limits and in some it may be distinctly below the normal minimum. On the other hand, certain cases which ought perhaps to be grouped separately show an unusually high uric acid output.

The acute paroxysms of gout are at times associated with changes in the endogenous uric acid excretion. There may be a fall just before the onset of the attack; but during and just after the attack there may be a distinct increase in the uric acid output which may in turn be followed by a slight drop beneath the normal. Such variations are shown in the accompanying figure, which has been constructed from the determinations of R. Köster. In other cases of gout no change of uric acid excretion has been observed during the acute paroxysms. Even when present the changes may possibly be due to concomitant factors, such as fever.

(b) **EXOGENOUS URIC ACID.**—When uric acid or its precursors are administered to gouty patients the resulting excretion of exogenous uric acid usually but not invariably shows deviations from the normal. As compared with normal individuals, gouty patients may excrete the excess of uric acid formed from articles in the diet more slowly; but this difference is not constant. Of greater importance is the fact that the total amount of uric acid excreted by gouty patients after ingesting a purin-rich meal is usually less than the amount excreted by normal individuals. When uric acid has been injected intravenously, only twenty per cent or less of the injected material has been recovered from the urine of some gouty patients, whereas in the normal individual from 60 to 90 per cent are recovered. It has been proposed to utilize these variations from the normal for diagnostic purposes, but up to the present they have found no wide practical application. Not only do they require a careful metabolic technic but the changes here described do not seem to be pathognomonic. Occasionally normal individuals show a prolonged excretion of exogenous uric acid while certain gouty patients show normal powers of excretion.

**Uric Acid in the Blood.**—Numerous recent studies of the uric acid content of the blood in normal and in pathological conditions have confirmed the old view of Garrod that there is a definite increase in the blood of most gouty patients. This increase has been particularly constant in chronic cases of long duration. It persists even when the patient is placed on a purin free diet. It may be present between the paroxysms of acute gout but here the increase is less constant, especially in early cases. According to various authors the uric acid content of the blood of normal individuals on mixed diets rarely exceeds 3 mg. per hundred c.c. of blood. Definite increases have been found not only in chronic gout, but also in chronic lead poisoning, nephritis, arterial hypertension, certain cases of non-gouty arthritis, leukemia, malignancy, and acute infections, especially lobar pneumonia.

## URIC ACID IN HUMAN BLOOD

(Expressed in mg. uric acid to 100 gms. blood)

	<i>Non-protein Nitrogen Average</i>	<i>Urea Nitrogen Average</i>	<i>Uric Acid</i>	
			<i>Average</i>	<i>Extremes</i>
21 unselected individuals on mixed diets *	36	20	1.8	0.8-3.0
15 normals on purin free diet°.....	..	..	1.4	0.5-2.9
11 observations on nephritic blood % ...	50	26	2.2	1.0-3.9
12 patients with gout % .....	33	..	4.3	3.1-5.4
2 patients with leukemia % .....	..	..	3.6	3.1-4.1
2 cases of lead poisoning % .....	51	31	4.7	4.7-4.8
4 cases of "uremia" % .....	231	..	8.4	6.6-10.0

\* From Folin and Denis.

° From McLester.

It may be seen from this table that the amount of uric acid in the blood bears no definite relation to the amount of total non-protein nitrogen. In gout the increase in uric acid is, as a rule, unassociated with any marked increase in the non-protein nitrogen. Meyers and Fine have described a similar picture in the early stages of chronic interstitial nephritis. It is therefore improbable that an increase of uric acid alone in the blood is diagnostic of gout. When during the late stages of nephritis the accumulation of non-protein nitrogen becomes extreme, there is, as a rule, a very marked increase in the concentration of uric acid in the blood. This may be greater than that found in gout.

The uric acid of the blood is probably present almost entirely in the form of monosodium urate. The hypothetical quadriurate of Roberts has received no confirmation. Minkowski has suggested that uric acid may exist in the blood not as the free monosodium salt but in combination with other organic substances and Frank has advanced the hypothesis that nucleic acid or some of its immediate derivatives may be carriers of the uric acid group in the blood. Proof of such an hypothesis has not been furnished but like the similar hypothesis relating to blood sugar it is difficult to disprove. The weight of evidence at present favors the view that the uric acid in the blood is present almost entirely in the form of the free monosodium salt.

Inasmuch as deposits of monosodium urate in the tissues constitute one of the most characteristic features of gout great importance is attached to the question of the solubility of monosodium urate in the blood. The



older view of Klemperer that the blood serum of gouty patients was far from being saturated with uric acid has been called more and more into question within recent years. In the first place we are dealing in the animal body not with uric acid but with its monosodium salt and it has been shown that the latter is less soluble in blood serum than is the former. Gudzent believes that this urate occurs in two isomeric forms which he has identified with the so-called laktam and laktim forms of Emil Fischer. It is believed that the more soluble laktam salt is formed first in the body and that this is changed gradually into the more stable and relatively insoluble laktim salt. Gudzent tested the solubility of the latter salt in a solution which corresponded in its salt content to the blood and found it soluble up to a concentration of 8.3 mg. in 100 c.c. Beechhold and Ziegler believe that the serum-albumin of the blood depresses the solubility of the urates still further and place the solubility of monosodium urate at 2.5 mg. per 100 c.c. A comparison of these recent determinations of the solubility of sodium urate with the amounts actually found in human blood indicates that in gout as well as in certain other conditions the concentration of urates in the blood has reached or has passed the saturation point. It is evident, therefore, that we have here a possible explanation for the deposition of uric acid salts in the tissues of gouty individuals.

The uric acid concentration in the blood is also increased in other diseases than gout. In some of these conditions and in particular in chronic lead poisoning, chronic arterial hypertension and chronic nephritis it is quite possible that we are at times dealing with patients who have irregular gout with urate deposits. In many of these patients, however, as well as in conditions of increased purin metabolism, especially leukemia, it is difficult to explain why the prolonged increase in the concentration of uric acid in the blood does not lead to a deposition of urates in the tissues. Possibly in these cases the uric acid is present in some soluble form such as the laktam salt whereas in gout it is present as the relatively insoluble laktim salt.

**Local Deposits of Urates.**—It is well known that deposits of monosodium urate occur particularly in certain tissues, such as the cartilages, joint capsules, tendons, muscles and skin. Cartilage appears to have a peculiar affinity for sodium urate. When thin pieces of cartilage are suspended in dilute urate solutions the cartilage absorbs urate in considerable quantity and crystallized deposits may occur in the tissue. After injections of large quantities of uric acid into the peritoneal cavity of rabbits it has been found that this can be demonstrated in the cartilages but not in the other tissues. The older view of Ebstein that the deposition of urates occurred only in necrotic tissue has thus been definitely disproved. Indeed the histological picture of a gouty tophus can be reproduced by the injection of monosodium urate beneath the skin.

**Cause of the Acute Attack.**—The deposition of urates in the cartilages

or other tissues of the body cause a certain amount of reactive inflammation similar to that which surrounds foreign bodies in general. In many cases the urate deposits produce no symptoms, in other cases they may produce slight pain and more or less marked deformity. The relation of the urate deposits to the typical attacks of acute gout is by no means well understood. It is true that many facts indicate that acute attacks of gout are associated with sudden disturbances in the uric acid metabolism in the body. There is at times a depression in the excretion of endogenous uric acid preceding the attack and an increase in its excretion with or shortly after the acute symptoms. Acute attacks have followed the ingestion of unusual quantities of purin-containing food, and the intravenous injection of uric acid. They have occurred when the endogenous uric acid has been increased suddenly as by exposure to the x-ray or during the resolution of a pneumonia. Finally, attacks of gout have been cut short by the use of cinchophen which, as we shall see, causes a marked fall in the level of uric acid in the blood.

It seems evident from these facts that the acute gouty paroxysm is intimately related with sudden disturbances in the uric acid metabolism and particularly with conditions which increase uric acid in the body. The exact cause of the paroxysm, however, is not understood. Whether a rapid deposit of uric acid in the joints sets up an acute inflammatory reaction, whether a sudden solution of previously deposited inert urates produces the acute changes, or whether other factors more or less remotely connected with the urate deposits cause the local inflammation and mobilization of urates are questions which have not been settled.

**The Effect of Cinchophen.**—Cinchophen is the trade name given to the chemical phenyl-quinolin-carboxylic acid. This drug exerts a remarkable influence upon the purin metabolism. Following its administration in therapeutic doses there is a striking increase in the elimination of endogenous uric acid, and this is true in gouty as well as in normal individuals. If the administration is continued the increased elimination which is most marked on the first day rapidly diminishes and in normal individuals subsides within a day or two to nearly the normal. In gouty patients, however, the increased elimination of endogenous uric acid may continue much longer and Weintraud and others have observed a diminution in the size of visible tophi during the long-continued use of cinchophen. When uric acid is injected intravenously either into normal or gouty subjects it is eliminated more promptly and more completely when cinchophen is given simultaneously. Given during an acute attack of gout, it frequently relieves the pain and the acute symptoms very promptly. Folin and Lyman, as well as McLester, have shown that the administration of cinchophen causes a marked diminution in the concentration of uric acid in the blood at the same time that it causes an increase of uric acid in the urine. (See Fig. 68.) It is evident from these observations that the

increased output of uric acid produced by this drug is due, not to an increased formation or liberation of uric acid in the body, but to a more complete and perfect elimination through the kidneys of the acid present in the blood. This reduction of the concentration in the blood probably accounts for the reported reductions in the size of tophi in certain patients, for a lower concentration in the blood would favor the solution of deposits. This action of cinchophen is relatively specific and it is not necessarily asso-

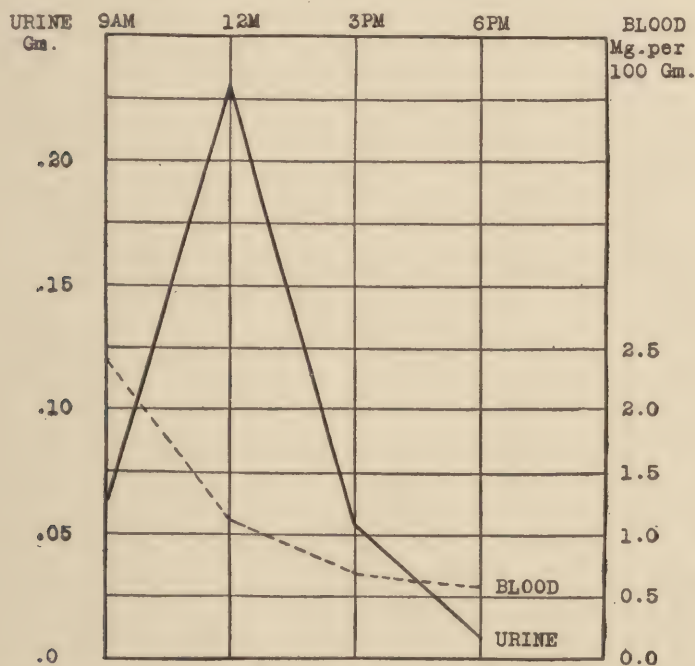


Fig. 68.—Effect of Administration of 3 gm. Cinchophen at 9 A.M. on the Uric Acid in the Urine and Blood. Note that the Increased Excretion Was Associated with a Diminution in the Blood But that Later the Excretion Fell Below Normal. (From McLester, Arch. Int. Med.)

ciated with any correspondingly great increase in the elimination of other urinary constituents.

**Theory of Gout.**—In seeking for an explanation of the urate deposits which characterize gout, the most important point which has come into view from modern studies is the fact that in nearly all cases of gout there is an increase in the concentration of uric acid in the blood. We have seen that this increase may in all probability pass the saturation point of the lactim salt in blood serum and that this furnishes a possible explanation for the deposition of urates in the tissues. The cause of this increased concentration of uric acid in the blood may be, on the one hand, an overproduction of uric acid in the body or, on the other,



an insufficient destruction or removal of the uric acid present. We have no reason to believe that an overproduction of uric acid plays any considerable part in the majority of cases of gout. Apparently the body has no source for its uric acid other than the food and the catabolism of its nucleoproteins, and there is no evidence of an increased nucleoprotein metabolism in gouty patients. Their elimination of endogenous uric acid in the urine is as a rule normal or subnormal. Only in occasional cases does the elimination of endogenous uric acid in the urine approach or exceed the upper limit of normal. In such cases Brugsch believes that the gout may be of a peculiar type and in part dependent upon the increased purin metabolism. In the great majority of gouty patients the increase of uric acid in the blood must be attributed to a diminished destruction or elimination rather than to an overproduction of the purin bodies. It is probable that the human body is normally incapable of destroying much uric acid. If one accepts the views of Wicchowski that practically none is destroyed normally, then a failure to destroy could play no part in the etiology of gout. If, on the other hand, one assumes that the normal individual ordinarily destroys a certain proportion of the uric acid formed in his body then a failure to effect this destruction might be one cause of the disturbance of metabolism present in gouty patients. It is difficult to disprove this hypothesis.

On the other hand, more and more evidence is accumulating in favor of the view that gouty patients show a specific limitation in their ability to excrete uric acid. This is plainly indicated by the fact that in gout the level of uric acid in the blood is distinctly higher than normal and yet the excretion into the urine is normal or subnormal. The cause of this specific inability may lie either in the kidneys or in the blood itself. Some years ago Minkowski advanced the view that uric acid might be present in the blood of gouty patients in combination with other substances and that these combinations might be such that they could not be excreted by the kidney. Up to the present, however, definite proof of such a combination has not been brought and it seems on the whole more probable that the difficulty in excretion lies in the kidneys themselves. Just what is the nature of the difficulty is difficult to say. It is certainly not necessary to assume that a definite threshold must be reached before the kidneys begin to excrete uric acid, and that when this threshold is reached excretion takes place normally. The condition may be comparable to the nitrogenous retention present in certain cases of chronic nephritis where an increased concentration of urea in the blood seems necessary in order that the kidney may excrete the usual amount of urea. We know from the study of nephritis that the excretory functions of the kidney are highly specialized. Certain patients may show nitrogenous retention while excreting chlorids and water with ease while others excrete nitrogenous waste readily but show a marked insufficiency toward the excretion of salt and

water. It is not improbable that in still other patients there may be a specific inability on the part of the kidneys to excrete uric acid and that this may constitute one essential disturbance in gout. That it is not the sole disturbance, however, is indicated, first by the fact that the level of uric acid in the blood may be high in leukemia and in nephritis without the occurrence of gouty manifestations and, second, that attacks of acute gout may occasionally occur when the level in the blood is low. Variations in the solubility of the acid in the blood or changes in the tissues may account for these discrepancies but of these we know almost nothing and the final cause of gout therefore still awaits solution.

## References

### General

- Frank (E.).** *Die neueren Wendungen in der Pathologie und Therapie der Gicht.* Med. Klin., **1912**, viii, Beiheft 10.
- von Fürth (O.).** *Probleme der physiologischen und pathologischen Chemie.* Leipzig, **1912**, ii.
- Jones (W.).** *Nucleic acids. Their chemical properties and physiological conduct.* (Literature.) London, **1914**.
- McClure (C. W.).** *Gout.* Med. Clin. N. Am., **1919-20**, iii, 957.
- Minkowski (M.).** *Die Gicht in Nothnagel's Handbuch der Pathologie und Therapie,* Bd. vii, **1903**.
- Myers (V. C.).** *Chemical changes in the blood in disease. II. Uric acid.* Jour. Lab. & Clin. M., **1920**, v, 490.
- von Noorden (C.).** *Handbuch der Pathologie des Stoffwechsels.* Ber'lin, **1907**, ii, 138.

### Physiology of Purin Metabolism

- Burian (R.) & Schur (H.).** *Das quantitative Verhalten der menschlichen Harnpurinausscheidung.* Arch. f. d. ges. Physiol., **1903**, xciv, 273.
- Hunter (A.) & Givens (M. H.).** *The metabolism of endogenous and exogenous purines in the monkey.* Jour. Biol. Chem., **1912**, xiii, 371.
- McCollum (E. V.).** *Nuclein synthesis in the animal body.* Am. Jour. Physiol., **1909-10**, xxv, 120.
- Mendel (L. B.) & Wardell (E. L.).** *Effect of ingestion of coffee, tea and caffeine on the excretion of uric acid in man.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1917**, lxviii, 1805.
- Sedgwick (J. P.) & Kingsbury (F. B.).** *The uric acid content of the blood in the newborn.* Am. Jour. Dis. Child., **1917**, xiv, 98.
- Taylor (A. E.) & Rose (W. C.).** *Studies in purine metabolism: on uricolysis in human subjects.* Jour. Biol. Chem., **1913**, xiv, 418.
- Wells (H. G.) & Caldwell (G. T.).** *The purine enzymes of the orang-utan and chimpanzee.* Jour. Biol. Chem., **1914**, xviii, 157.
- Wells (H. G.) & Corper (H. J.).** *Observations on uricolysis, with particular reference to the pathogenesis of "uric acid infarcts" in the kidney of the newborn.* Jour. Biol. Chem., **1909**, vi, 321.
- Wiechowski (W.).** *Ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis des Purinstoffwechsels der Affen.* Prag. med. Wchnschr., **1912**, xxxvii, 275.

**Wiechowski (W.).** Das Schicksal der intermediären Harnsäure beim Menschen und der Allantoingehalt des menschlichen Harns; nebst Bemerkungen über Nachweis und Zersetzlichkeit des Allantoins. *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1910**, xxv, 432.

### *Pathology Physiology of Gout*

**Almagia (M.).** Ueber das Absorptionsvermögen der Knorpelsubstanz für Harnsäure. *Beitr. z. chem. Phys. u. Path.*, **1905-6**, vii, 466.

**Bechhold (H.) & Ziegler (J.).** Vorstudien über Gicht. *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1909**, xx, 189.

**Brugsch (T.).** Diagnose, Wesen und Behandlung der Gicht. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, xlix, 1597.

**Dohrn (M.).** Über die Wirkung des Atophan, mit einem Beitrag zur Theorie der Gicht. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, lxxiv, 445.

**Folin (O.) & Denis (W.).** On uric acid, urea and total non-protein nitrogen in human blood. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1913**, xiv, 29.

A new (calorimetric) method for the determination of uric acid in blood. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1912-13**, xviii, 469.

The diagnostic value of uric acid determinations in the blood. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 33.

**Folin (O.) & Lyman (H.).** On the influence of phenylquinolin carbonic acid (atophan) on the uric acid elimination. *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, **1912-13**, iv, 539.

**Gudzent (F.).** Physikalisch-chemische Untersuchungen über das Verhalten der harnsäuren Salze in Lösungen. *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1909**, lx, 38.

Physikalisch-chemisches Verhalten der Harnsäure und ihrer Salze im Blut. *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1909**, lxviii, 455.

**His (W.).** Die Behandlung von Gicht und Rheumatismus mit Radium. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1911**, xlviii, 232.

Die Ausscheidung von Harnsäure im Urin der Gichtkranken, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Anfallszeiten und bestimmter Behandlungsmethoden. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1899-1900**, lxx, 156.

**Köster (R.).** Ein Beitrag zur Lehre von der Gicht. *Inaug. Dis.* Kiel, **1913**.

**McLester (J. S.).** Studies on uric acid of blood and urine, with special reference to the influence of atophan. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 739.

**Pratt (J. H.).** A study of the uric acid in the blood in gout by the method of Folin and Denis. *Tr. Ass. Am. Phys.*, **1913**, xxviii, 387.

**Weintraud (W.).** Die Behandlung der Gicht mit Phenylchinolincarbonensäure (Atophan) nebst Bemerkungen über die diätetische Therapie der Krankheit. *Therap. d. Genew.*, **1911**, lii, 97.



## Chapter VI

# Diseases of the Liver and Pancreas

### Functions of the Liver

No organ in the body possesses such a variety of functions as the liver. Its portal circulation brings it into intimate relationship with the gastrointestinal canal and spleen, and any blood changes occurring in these organs must act with particular intensity upon the liver. Especially important is the fact that all the material which enters the blood from the stomach, the small intestines and the proximal portion of the large intestines must pass through the liver before it is permitted to reach the general circulation.

This passage through the liver helps to protect the body from various toxic substances which may be absorbed from the alimentary canal. Some are converted directly into non-toxic compounds, as when ammonium salts are converted into urea. Some are combined with glycocholic acid, sulphuric acid, or glucuronic acid and are, thereby, deprived of their poisonous properties, as happens in the case of phenol and similar compounds. Lastly, alkaloidal and mineral poisons are, to a certain extent, removed from the blood during their passage through the liver.

The liver also plays an important part in carbohydrate metabolism. It is the most important of the organs which remove an excess of sugar from the blood, store it in the form of glycogen and give it back to the body when it is needed. The liver is one site of important changes in the intermediary nitrogenous metabolism. It contributes fibrinogen to the blood. It plays an important rôle in anaphylactic shock. Finally, it secretes bile, which, as we have seen, assists the intestinal digestion and absorption of fats.

Many disturbances of these liver functions are discussed elsewhere under the appropriate headings. We shall consider here, first, disturbances in the secretion of bile, and later, certain other functional disturbances which have been used as tests of hepatic disease.

## Disturbances in the Secretion of Bile

### *Important Constituents of the Bile*

The bile contains three important and characteristic groups of compounds: the bile pigments, the bile salts, and fatty materials, particularly cholesterol.

### **Bile Pigments**

The bile pigments are products of hemoglobin catabolism. When hemoglobin is decomposed, there are formed a protein, called globin, and a relatively simple iron-containing compound, called hematin. Although the protein makes up about 94 per cent of the hemoglobin molecule, it is the hematin complex which gives to hemoglobin its peculiar properties of color and of being an oxygen-carrier. The carrying of oxygen is intimately associated with the iron content of the hemoglobin. The property of color, on the other hand, is independent of the iron content, for a series of colored compounds may be formed from hematin after the iron has been removed. Among these are the bile pigments. That these pigments are formed in the body from hemoglobin metabolism has been repeatedly demonstrated. The amounts formed are increased when pure hemoglobin is injected into the blood stream, or when an excessive amount of hemoglobin is liberated by an abnormal destruction of the red blood corpuscles in the body.

**Extrahepatic Formation of Bile Pigments.**—The conversion of hemoglobin into bile pigment takes place chiefly in the liver, and when the erythrocytic destruction is excessive, there is not only an increased formation of bile pigments but iron-containing compounds are deposited in the liver. That the conversion of hemoglobin into bile pigment may also occur outside of the liver is evident from the fact that old extravasations of blood frequently contain pigments which are identical with bilirubin. Whether the conversion of hemoglobin into bile pigments ever occurs outside of the liver in sufficient quantity and with sufficient speed to give rise to a general icteric staining of the body has been much discussed, but it now seems to have been answered in the positive sense. Whipple and Hooper have shown that when hemoglobin is injected into the circulating blood of dogs it is rapidly converted into bile pigments, even though the liver has been eliminated from the circulation.

**Conversion of Bile Pigments into Urobilin.**—The fate of the bile pigments which pass from the liver into the intestines is in part known. The larger portion is reduced to urobilinogen or urobilin. Some of the latter is lost in the stools, while some is taken up by the intestinal mucosa and is carried in the portal circulation back to the liver, where it may be reëxcreted in the bile either as such or possibly after reconversion into the

ordinary bile pigments. Under certain conditions a considerable amount of urobilinogen that has been resorbed from the intestines passes through the liver into the general circulation and is excreted by the kidneys.

**Variations in Quantity.**—Variations in the quantity of bile pigments secreted by the liver depend in part upon variations in the rate at which red corpuscles are destroyed. The intravenous injection of hemoglobin or its liberation from the animal's own corpuscles usually increases the output of bile pigments. In bile-fistula dogs Whipple and Hooper found that neither the feeding of hemoglobin nor of bile caused any increase of pigments in the bile. On the other hand, they found that in dogs the transition to a carbohydrate diet caused an increased elimination of bile pigments. The explanation of these observations is not apparent at the present time.

### Bile Salts

The bile salts are salts of glycocholic and taurocholic acids. These acids are composed of a common element, cholic acid, which is combined with glycocoll and taurin respectively. Glycocoll and taurin are derivatives of protein metabolism. Glycocoll is an amino acid which is a common protein-building stone, and taurin is probably derived from cystin, which is a sulphur-containing product of protein decomposition. Concerning the origin of the characteristic component of the bile salts, viz., cholic acid, we know practically nothing.

**Circulation of Bile Salts.**—The bile salts which have reached the intestines and have there played their part in the digestion and absorption of fats, are taken up by the mucous membrane, carried back to the liver in the portal blood stream and again excreted in the bile. Comparatively small amounts are lost in the stools. There is thus a continual circulation of the bile salts between the liver and the intestines.

### Cholesterol

Cholesterol—another important constituent of the bile, has a wide distribution in the animal body. Aside from the cholesterol taken in the food, but little is known of its origin. Its presence in gall-stones makes it a compound of particular interest in discussing the functions of the liver and of its excretory ducts.

### Jaundice

By jaundice is meant a yellow or greenish yellow staining of the body with bile pigments. On physical examination, this change in color is visible in the conjunctivae, and is particularly evident in the covered parts of the skin which normally show little color from skin pigments or hyper-



emia of the cutaneous vessels. During jaundice the bile pigments are usually excreted in the urine, so that the latter assumes a deep red color, stains the garments, and gives the usual tests for bile pigment. In certain types of jaundice, however, particularly chronic hemolytic jaundice and the physiological jaundice of the new born, bile pigments may not be found in the urine. The bile pigments may also be excreted in the sweat. As a rule they do not appear in the tears, saliva or sputum, unless these contain inflammatory products. A retention of the other characteristic biliary constituents, i. e., bile salts and cholesterin, may or may not be demonstrable in jaundice.

### Obstructive Jaundice

The best understood type of jaundice is that which is caused by a gross mechanical obstruction of the common bile duct or of the hepatic duct. Such an obstruction may be caused by malignant new growths, by impacted gall-stones, by cicatricial stricture of the ducts, or by pressure or kinking from inflammatory adhesions. Gross mechanical obstructions of the bile ducts may also occur within the liver. As a result of such obstructions the bile ducts become dilated with fluid. They are filled at first with colored bile, which may later give place to colorless fluid that is probably secreted by the bile passages. The bile capillaries in the liver are dilated and may rupture. The components of the bile are absorbed in the liver and pass into the body fluids. Whether this absorption takes place mainly through the lymphatics or through the blood capillaries does not seem to have been definitely settled.

The length of time which must elapse before a complete obstruction of the common bile duct in man gives rise to the clinical signs of jaundice has been estimated by Eppinger at about forty-eight hours. Obstructive jaundice is associated with a demonstrable accumulation of bile pigments and of cholesterol in the blood, and with an excretion of bile pigments and salts in the urine.

**Extensive Hepatic Necrosis Rare in Man.**—In guinea-pigs obstructive jaundice commonly leads to death within a short time. Other animals such as the dog and man, are but little inconvenienced by obstructive jaundice. They may be said to die from the cause of the jaundice rather than from the jaundice itself. The reason for this difference in the behavior of different animals seems to lie in the fact that in those animals which die early the jaundice is associated with necrosis of the parenchyma of the liver. Only rarely does an extensive necrosis occur in man as the result of obstructive jaundice, and in such cases it may also be associated with the serious symptoms, which will be discussed later (cholemia).

**Clay-colored Stools.**—It has commonly been held that the characteristic clay-colored stools seen in certain forms of jaundice are conclusive evidence of total exclusion of bile from the intestines. There are reasons,

however, for believing that this is not the only cause of such a decolorization, and that the latter may be brought about by decolorization of bile pigment that has entered the intestines.

**Excretion of Urobilin and Urobilinogen.**—When the bile pigments are completely shut off from the intestines, urobilin and urobilinogen do not ordinarily appear in the urine; a fact that indicates that these substances are not formed in any quantity unless the bile pigments have access to the intestines. As an obstructive jaundice is clearing up, however, large quantities of these substances may appear in the urine, on account of the excessive quantity of pigments which are then excreted into the intestines from the bile laden body.

### Hemolytic Jaundice

We have seen that the bile pigments are derived from the disintegration of hemoglobin and that in conditions of increased hemoglobin catabolism there is an increased formation of these pigments. This has been repeatedly demonstrated by injecting hemoglobin into the circulation of animals. Following a large injection there is a hemoglobinemia, a hemoglobinuria, and an increased secretion of pigments in the bile. An increase of bile pigments in the blood serum and urine is also demonstrable, though this may not be sufficient to produce jaundice in the clinical sense (Yorke and Nauss).

**"Hematogenous" and "Hepatogenous" Jaundice.**—In the earlier literature the occurrence of "hematogenous," as contrasted with "hepatogenous" jaundice, was frequently attributed to a conversion of disintegrating hemoglobin into bile pigments outside of the liver. The classical experiments of Minkowski and Naumyn showed, however, that in a certain type of jaundice usually regarded as hematogenous, viz., that produced in geese and ducks by arseniureted hydrogen, the liver was an essential factor in the production of the bile pigments; for when this organ was removed no jaundice followed the poisoning. These experiments, coupled with the fact that in cases of supposed hematogenous jaundice in man, bile salts as well as pigments were at times found in the urine, led to the belief that the liver is always an essential factor in the production of jaundice during increased blood destruction. Whipple and Hooper have recently shown, however, that bile pigments may be formed rapidly and in considerable amounts outside of the liver, so that it is possible that a true hematogenous jaundice in the older sense may occur. However this may be, the jaundice following hemoglobin injections is caused by the fact that bile pigments are formed so rapidly, either in the liver or elsewhere, that their immediate excretion by the hepatic cells is not possible.

**In Acute Hemolysis.**—Jaundice frequently accompanies or follows conditions of acute hemolysis, such as occur, for example, in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, blackwater fever, poisoning with hemolytic substances,

etc. (See Hemolysis.) One important factor in its production is the sudden formation of unusual quantities of bile pigments from the liberated hemoglobin, which throws an unusual strain upon the liver and its excretory ducts. The relation between the degree of hemolysis and the depth of the resulting jaundice is not, however, a simple one. For a given destruction of blood, the jaundice in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria is far less than it is in black water fever. Again, the injection of hemoglobin into the circulation of animals produces less jaundice than when certain hemolytic agents, such as arseniureted hydrogen or tolulendiamin, are used. These differences are attributable to changes in the function of the liver or of its ducts; for the hemolytic agents which produce relatively marked degrees of jaundice usually cause also demonstrable changes in the structure of the liver. Changes in the liver cells may also contribute to the production of hemolytic jaundice. Whipple and Hooper showed that modifications in diet cause marked alterations in the amount of bile pigment eliminated by animals, owing apparently to changes in the hepatic function. The same might readily happen as a result of liver poisons. The catarrhal and infectious forms of jaundice probably depend in part upon analogous functional changes in the hepatic cells.

**In Anemia. Chronic Hemolytic Jaundice.**—In certain forms of chronic anemia there is an increased rate of hemolysis, and this doubtlessly plays a part in the pathogenesis of the slight jaundice that is not uncommon in chronic hemolytic anemias, of which pernicious anemia may be taken as the type. Here again, however, changes in the liver doubtlessly play a part in producing the jaundice. The most remarkable type of chronic excessive hemolysis is that seen in the rare condition known as chronic hemolytic jaundice, which may occur as a congenital or acquired affection. The erythrocytes of such patients show evidence of rapid regeneration, while examination of the stools and urine shows that the urobilin output may be increased to as much as twenty times the normal. Although the blood serum contains bilirubin, the urine ordinarily contains no bile pigments but only excessive amounts of their derivatives, urobilin and urobilinogen. At autopsy the liver and bile passages show no evidence of diseases other than what is caused by the increased hemolysis. In this type of jaundice there is no retention of bile salts or of cholesterol in the body. The jaundice appears to be due solely to the increased rate of red cell destruction.

### **Catarrhal Jaundice—Infectious Jaundice**

Not infrequently jaundice complicates some well defined infectious disease such as pneumonia or sepsis. In addition, there are a number of diseases, some of them certainly infectious, which are chiefly characterized by the occurrence of jaundice. These commonly begin with the usual phenomena of an infectious fever. After a few days jaundice appears, the



liver often becomes swollen, and not infrequently some evidence of nephritis is added to the clinical picture. Hemorrhages may occur. When mild, the infectious symptoms disappear after a few days and the jaundice after a week or two. The more severe cases are serious and may end fatally. In epidemics of infectious jaundice the milder cases are often diagnosed "catarrhal jaundice" and it appears not improbable, as the French school of medicine maintains, that all cases of so-called catarrhal jaundice belong to this group.

Infectious jaundice may be caused by various organisms. Yellow fever, infectious jaundice due to *spirocheta icterohemorrhagica* and infectious jaundice due to organisms of the typhoid-colon group are examples of specific forms of infectious jaundice. In many cases the cause is not known.

**Obstruction of Common Bile Duct.**—In infectious jaundice the stools may be of a normal color or they may be decolorized. The clay color so commonly seen in cases of "catarrhal jaundice" has been held to support the view of Virchow that in these cases the jaundice is caused by an obstruction of the terminal portion of the common duct owing to a swelling of its mucous membranes or to an accumulation of mucus. In some cases of infectious jaundice, the duodenum has been found inflamed and there has been a swelling of the mucous membrane of the common duct at the point where it narrows down in the papilla of Vater (see for example Dawson and Hume). In other cases, no mechanical obstructions in the larger ducts have been found at autopsy; and even where changes have been found in the terminal common duct and the duodenum, it is by no means certain that they are the chief cause of the icterus. An infectious agent located in the liver may have caused an inflammation of its excretory duct.

**Obstruction of Bile Capillaries.**—When, as frequently happens, no obstruction in the larger bile passages can be demonstrated, the cause of infectious jaundice must be sought in the liver itself. Two explanations have been offered to account for this form of jaundice. According to the one, there is a widespread obstruction of the finer bile capillaries in the liver. According to the other, there is a diseased condition of the hepatic cells themselves. Anatomical evidences in favor of the first view have been brought forward, particularly by Eppinger, who found that in infectious, as well as in related types of jaundice due to certain poisons, the finer bile capillaries are often blocked by small casts or thrombi, and that behind the tiny obstructions there are dilatations of the bile capillaries.

**Damage to the Hepatic Cells.**—On the other hand, there is considerable evidence of a physiological character in favor of the view that the liver cells themselves are damaged in the infectious type of jaundice. The casts described by Eppinger seem to depend upon changes in the character of the bile, and these changes may in turn depend upon an

abnormal secretory activity of the liver cells. In the second place, Lermierre, Brulé and their coworkers have demonstrated that, at certain stages of infectious jaundice, there may be a retention of bile pigments (jaundice) with excretion of bile salts into the intestines, as shown by a normal alimentary lipemia. (See Lipemia.) At other stages a retention of bile salts, as shown by the absence of alimentary lipemia, may be associated with a passage of bile pigments into the intestines. Such a dissociation of the hepatic functions is analogous with the conditions in nephritis, where the excretion of sodium chlorid and of nitrogenous wastes may be separately affected. Finally, as evidence of damage to the liver cells in cases of "catarrhal" jaundice, we have numerous observations that functional tests with levulose and galactose indicate a changed function of the hepatic cells. (See Alimentary Levulosuria, Alimentary Galactosuria.) Inasmuch as these tests usually show no deviation from the normal during typical obstructive jaundice, it would seem that in "catarrhal" jaundice the hepatic cells themselves are damaged. It matters little whether this damage to the hepatic cells is the immediate cause of the jaundice, or whether the latter depends mainly upon an obstruction of the finer capillaries. In either case, infectious jaundice is associated with changes in the parenchyma of the liver.

### Jaundice in Organic Liver Diseases

Jaundice may accompany various organic diseases of the liver. In some cases, as where the liver is the seat of malignant tumors or cysts, the jaundice is obstructive in type and is due to compression of the bile ducts within the liver. In other cases, such as acute yellow atrophy, phosphorus poisoning, and hepatic cirrhosis, the microscopic examination may show that the finer bile capillaries are blocked from without by compression or from within by thrombi. The liver cells may also be damaged, and the damage is evident not only on microscopic examination, but by physiological tests. Patients with hepatic cirrhosis frequently show urobilinuria, alimentary levulosuria and alimentary galactosuria. Other functional disturbances of the liver cells are present in phosphorus poisoning and related conditions (page 245). What has been said in regard to the relation between the hepatic cells and jaundice of the infectious type might be repeated here. Changes in the parenchyma cells of the liver may contribute to the jaundice either directly, owing to a perverted secretion, or indirectly through blocking of the bile capillaries by pressure or by the character of the bile secreted.

### Icterus Neonatorum

Jaundice is so common during the first few days of life that it may be regarded as a physiological phenomenon. If very slight grades of

jaundice be taken into consideration, icterus neonatorum occurs in about 80 per cent of all infants. This jaundice usually appears on the second or third day after birth, reaches its maximum on or about the fourth day, and gradually disappears after a week or more. Icterus neonatorum is peculiar in that bile pigments, though demonstrable in the blood, are not usually secreted into the urine.

**Relation to Bile Secretion.**—That icterus neonatorum is not due to a gross obstruction of the common bile duct has been definitely proved by Hess' examinations of the duodenal contents. This investigator found that the duodenal contents of newborn infants practically never contain bile during the first twelve hours of life. During the subsequent twenty-four hours the secretion of bile is variable, but infants who later develop marked jaundice usually show a marked and early discharge of bile into the duodenum. The secretion of bile normally becomes established during the first week or ten days of life, but in general it is more marked in those infants who show decided jaundice. Icterus neonatorum seems, therefore, to be definitely associated with an early and abundant formation of the bile pigments.

**Etiology.**—Of the explanations which have been offered for the jaundice of the new-born, two deserve special consideration. (1) It is associated with the changes in circulation that occur shortly after birth. For some days the ductus venosus permits blood to pass into the inferior vena cava without traversing the liver, and since the meconium in the intestines contains much bile, a pigmentation of the body might result (Naunyn). (2) It is associated with the physiological destruction of red corpuscles shortly after birth. If this be excessive, jaundice might result (Heimann).

### Symptoms of Jaundice

Of the varied symptoms which may occur in jaundiced patients, many are doubtlessly due, not to the retention of bile constituents in the body, but to the primary causes of the jaundice itself or to a coincident injury of the hepatic cells. Malignant tumors, increased hemolysis, and inflammatory processes in the bile ducts frequently complicate the clinical picture. In addition, there are the cases in which serious toxic symptoms arise and which have often been spoken of as cholemia. These "cholemic" symptoms are apparently not due to the retention of bile constituents but to functional changes in the hepatic cells.

**Effects Produced by Bile Constituents.**—Indeed, surprisingly few manifestations can be directly attributed to the retention of bile constituents within the body. Slowing of the pulse is observed at times and it is believed by many, and particularly by the French school, to be caused by some action of the retained bile salts. The experiments of Stewart and King, however, indicate that the slowing of the pulse is due to the bile



pigments which act by increasing the tone of the vagus nerve. The marked itching which annoys certain patients with jaundice is attributed to the action of the bile salts. The occurrence of xanthomata in chronic jaundice has become of increased interest, since it has been shown that these yellow skin tumors contain cholesterolin deposits, and that the blood of patients with obstructive jaundice commonly contains excessive quantities of cholesterolin, evidently because this bile constituent is retained in the body.

## Functional Disturbances of the Hepatic Cells

We have seen that certain forms of jaundice are associated with functional changes in hepatic cells. The liver performs a variety of important functions in the body in addition to the secretion of bile, and we wish now to consider how these other functions are disturbed in hepatic diseases, and to what extent these disturbances may be made evident when the patient is subjected to the so-called functional hepatic tests.

**Factors of Safety.**—In considering such functional tests, it should be remembered that the liver functions, like most functions in the body, are protected by various factors of safety. Many chemical transformations performed by the liver are not restricted to this organ, and when the liver is damaged or removed these transformations may be performed by other tissues in the body. Furthermore, the liver is a large organ, and, even when a considerable portion is excised or thrown out of function, the remainder may be able to carry on the usual work in a normal manner. It is not to be expected, therefore, that localized diseases of the liver, such as tumors, abscesses, or cysts, evident though they be on physical or anatomical examination, will necessarily cause manifest changes in the hepatic functions. Impairments of liver function are rather to be expected when there is a widespread damage of the hepatic cells, such as occurs in certain toxic or infectious conditions, or in diffuse cirrhosis.

**REGENERATIVE POWER OF LIVER.**—The liver also possesses remarkable regenerative powers, so that recovery may take place even after extensive excision or death of its cells. This also must be considered in studies of hepatic function. In certain diseases such as "catarrhal jaundice," infections, and intoxications, the disturbances of liver function are of a transient character. After the etiological factor disappears the cells recover their normal activities. The exact relationship of functional to anatomical changes is often difficult to estimate, especially when, as in catarrhal jaundice, anatomical studies of the liver are so few.

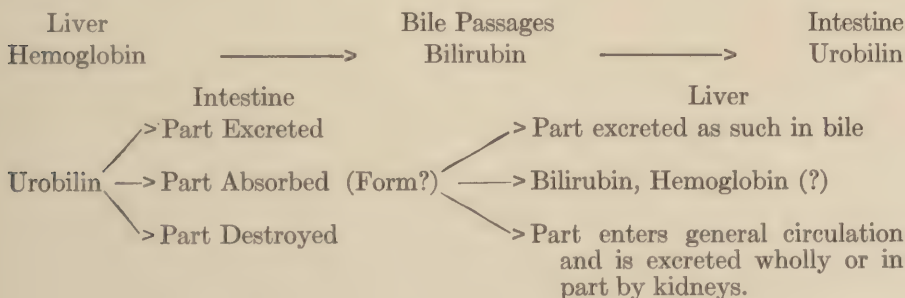
**DISSOCIATION OF HEPATIC FUNCTIONS.**—Finally, it should be remembered that the different hepatic functions are in all probability more or less dissociated from one another, and that an impairment in one does not necessarily mean an impairment in the others. Such a dissociation of

functions certainly occurs in diseases of the kidneys, for retentions of nitrogenous waste bear no definite relation to the albuminuria nor to the retention of water or sodium chlorid. The French school, headed by Vidal, holds that in jaundice isolated retentions either of the bile pigments or of the bile salts may occur without retention of the other bile constituents. One need not be surprised, therefore, if certain diseases of the liver cells lead to the impairment of one or more hepatic functions, while other functions are left more or less intact. Variations in the results obtained by different hepatic tests do not necessarily cast discredit upon these tests, but may possibly be due to disturbances in specific hepatic functions.

**Protection from Chloroform Poisoning.**—It is well known that phosphorus, chloroform and certain other poisons may cause an acute degeneration of the liver simulating acute yellow atrophy. So far as chloroform is concerned, it has been abundantly demonstrated that the liver of starving animals is much more susceptible to injury by the drug than is the liver of animals that have been fed abundantly on carbohydrates. The cause for this difference has been attributed by some to the influence of an abundant glycogen deposit. Ewarts believes that the injury is caused by the liberation of hydrochloric acid from chloroform in the liver and that it can be lessened by giving alkalis.

### *Urobilin in Hepatic Disease*

The pigments normally present in the bile are changed in the intestines, and particularly by bacterial action in the colon, into urobilinogen and related compounds. This group of derivatives will be spoken of collectively as urobilin. The urobilin formed in the intestines is in part excreted in the stools, in part destroyed, and in part resorbed by the portal blood stream and carried back to the liver. Normally, the liver removes this urobilin from the blood to such an extent that urobilin does not appear in the urine in readily demonstrable quantities. The following is a schematic representation of the usual sequence as given by Wilbur and Addis:



**Urobilinuria in Excessive Hemolysis.**—It is evident from this scheme that in conditions of excessive hemolysis there will be an increased excretion of bile pigments by the liver and an increase in the urobilin formed in the intestines. Much of this excessive urobilin leaves the body in the stools, but since an excessive amount is also absorbed by the portal capillaries an unusual strain is thrown upon the hepatic mechanism which serves to remove this from the blood. Not infrequently, therefore, considerable urobilin escapes into the general circulation and is excreted by the kidneys. Urobilinuria may, therefore, occur in conditions of increased hemolysis. To what extent the liver changes that are so frequent in such conditions plays a part in causing the urobilinuria is uncertain. In any case, it is not uncommon to find urobilin (or urobilinogen) in the urine of patients suffering from diseases that are associated with increased blood destruction, such as pernicious anemia, hemolytic jaundice, malaria, paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, and hemorrhages within the body.

**After Removal of Obstruction in Common Bile Duct.**—The urobilinuria which often occurs when an obstruction in the common bile duct disappears is of similar origin. The excessive amounts of bile pigment that have accumulated in the body are excreted into the intestines, excessive amounts of urobilin are formed and when resorbed some of this may pass the liver and be excreted by the kidneys.

**As a Sign of Disturbed Hepatic Functions.**—In other diseases, associated with urobilin in the urine, there is no evident increase in the rate of red cell destruction in the body. In such cases, particularly, a urobilinuria suggests that some damage to the liver has interfered with its normal function of removing urobilin from the portal blood. This failure on the part of the liver has permitted the urobilin normally coming from the intestines to enter the circulation in sufficient amounts to be excreted by the kidneys. There is also evidence that some urobilin may be formed, at least under pathological conditions, in the liver itself or in the bile passages, but, as a rule, urobilinuria is absent or insignificant when there is a complete obstruction of the common bile duct, because bile does not enter the chief site of urobilin formation, i. e., the intestines. In the absence of increased blood destruction, therefore, the presence of urobilin or of urobilinogen in the urine may be taken to indicate some disturbance of hepatic function. Unless bile pigments are reaching the intestines, however, no urobilinuria ordinarily occurs.

Clinically these pigments are often present in considerable quantities in the urines of patients suffering from hepatic cirrhosis. Urobilinuria is evidence of functional changes in the enlarged livers of alcoholic persons. It occurs in acute yellow atrophy, and in phosphorus and chloroform intoxications, all of which damage the hepatic cells. In the chronic passive congestion of cardiac insufficiency urobilinuria is not common, but when present it indicates advanced injury to the hepatic parenchyma.



In infectious diseases, such as typhoid, pneumonia, measles, scarlet fever, sepsis, etc., urobilinuria is not uncommon, and probably indicates hepatic changes. In some cases, as in the absorption of pneumonic exudates, it may be due in part to the absorption of destroyed red cells. Finally, in incomplete jaundice where bile enters the intestines, urobilinuria may indicate an associated damage to the hepatic cells.

### ***Carbohydrate Metabolism in Hepatic Disease***

In view of the fact that the liver plays such an important part in carbohydrate metabolism, it is somewhat surprising that patients with liver disease rarely show glycosuria. Even after the administration of 100 grams of glucose this does not ordinarily develop (see Alimentary Glycosuria). The processes of absorbing, storing, and burning glucose are carried on efficiently, even when the liver is markedly diseased. Probably other tissues than the liver can perform these functions sufficiently well to prevent a demonstrable disturbance in glucose metabolism.

**Alimentary Levulosuria and Galactosuria.**—In the utilization of certain sugars other than glucose, the liver appears to be more essential; for when these are given in large quantity, they escape into the urine more frequently in the case of patients with diffuse organic liver disease than in the case of normal individuals. Alimentary levulosuria (*q. v.*) is relatively common in certain liver diseases, particularly hepatic cirrhosis and the infectious and catarrhal forms of jaundice. Alimentary galactosuria (*q. v.*) is also common in such patients. When, in accordance with the recommendations of Bauer, an individual is given 40 grams of galactose in 400 to 500 c.c. of tea on an empty stomach, not more than two grams of this sugar should appear in the urine. In catarrhal jaundice, however, this limit of excretion is almost invariably exceeded, a fact which has already been brought forward as evidence of damage to the hepatic parenchyma in this condition. In hepatic cirrhosis the test is also positive in a considerable proportion of cases. In obstructive jaundice from tumors or gall-stones, on the other hand, the galactose test is not infrequently negative and positive tests seem to indicate that there is an associated cholangitis. In chronic hemolytic anemias, in passive congestion of the liver and in febrile conditions the test is usually negative.

### ***Nitrogenous Metabolism in Hepatic Disease***

In certain diseases involving the parenchyma of the liver there are found in the urine unusual quantities of ammonium salts, of amino acids, and of other complex nitrogenous compounds. The exact relation of these to hepatic disease is by no means clear.

**Disintegration of Hepatic Cells.**—One source of these is disintegration

of the hepatic cells themselves. In such conditions as acute yellow atrophy, phosphorus poisoning and chloroform poisoning, the liver is the seat of extensive and widespread cellular destruction. Its proteins are disintegrated, and when such livers are removed and kept aseptically at body temperature, they undergo unusually rapid and marked self-digestion (autolysis). It seems certain, therefore, that in such instances of acute hepatic destruction, there are formed unusual quantities of protein decomposition products from the liver substance itself. These products are in part directly responsible for the unusual amounts of amino acids, such as leucin and tyrosin, and for other substances that appear in the urine during these diseases.

**Disturbances in the Formation of Urea.**—The second possible source of the abnormal nitrogenous material in the urine is an alteration in the rôle which the liver normally plays in protein catabolism. We have seen (page 245) that proteins are broken down by a series of hydrolytic cleavages into simpler nitrogenous compounds which eventually liberate the various amino acids of which they are composed. Following this the nitrogenous complex is separated from the remainder of the amino acid. In some cases (arginin), urea is formed directly. More commonly, however, ammonia is split off from the amino acids. This ammonia unites with carbon dioxid or other acids in the blood and these ammonium salts are later converted into urea.

**EXCRETION OF AMMONIA IN HEPATIC DISEASE.**—That the liver normally plays an important part in this final conversion of ammonium salts into urea is certain. Urea is formed when certain ammonium salts are perfused through an isolated liver, whereas the perfusion of other organs yields little, if any, urea. This does not prove that urea cannot be formed elsewhere in the body from ammonium salts; but it indicates that the transformation occurs with particular ease in the liver. In the acute degenerations of the hepatic parenchyma mentioned above and in cirrhosis of the liver, the ammonium salts of the urine have frequently been found to be increased, either absolutely or in proportion to the total nitrogenous excretion. One is tempted to explain such an increase as the result of some disturbance in the urea-forming function of the liver. Yet such does not seem to be the case. In most, if not in all, cases the excess of ammonia in the urine serves to neutralize abnormal acids in the body, and is, therefore, an evidence of acidosis, rather than of damage to the urea-forming function of the liver. The ability to form urea from ammonium salts is probably a widespread function of the body cells, or, if limited to the liver, it is one that is not readily disturbed in hepatic disease. So far as we know, therefore, the presence of an excess of ammonia in the urine in hepatic disease in man is indicative of acidosis.

**"ALKALOSIS."**—It may be mentioned in this connection that Fischler

found evidence of an excess of alkali in the body of Eck fistula dogs when he fed them on meat. He believes that the toxic symptoms which these dogs show when fed meat are due to this "alkalosis."

**Increase of Amino Acids.**—We have stated that in acute hepatic degeneration, amino acids and particularly leucin and tyrosin, may appear in the urine. This seems to occur, however, only in severe disease of the parenchyma of the liver. In phosphorus poisoning and in acute yellow atrophy, the amino acid content of the blood may also be increased. The liver is an important factor in the deamination of amino acids, but it is apparently not the only site of this transformation or, at any rate, the liver does not lose this power readily; for, even in the most intense liver degenerations, urea is still formed in considerable quantity.

The view that the liver is the chief site of deamination has led to numerous studies on the amino-acid content of the blood and urine in various hepatic diseases. Increases have been reported in hepatic cirrhosis, in the toxemia of pregnancy and in other conditions; but Van Slyke and his associates were unable to confirm these reports.

### *Other Functional Disturbances in Hepatic Disease*

#### **1. Fibrinogen**

The experiments of Doyon, Nolf and their associates indicated that the liver is a normal site of fibrinogen formation. When in animals the liver is seriously damaged by phosphorus or chloroform poisoning, the fibrinogen content of the blood is markedly reduced, and this may be associated with a tendency to spontaneous hemorrhage from the gums or with severe hemorrhage from small skin pricks or cuts (see Hemorrhagic Disease from Diminished Fibrinogen). Whipple has demonstrated a marked reduction in the fibrinogen content of the blood in a fatal case of hepatic cirrhosis with hemorrhages. To what extent such a reduction occurs in less advanced hepatic disease is not known.

**Increased Fibrinogen Content of Blood.**—Whipple and his coworkers also found that while a drop in blood fibrinogen followed experimental injury to the liver, there was a subsequent rise in the fibrinogen curve above the normal line during the processes of repair. Increases as well as decreases in the fibrinogen content of the blood may, therefore, be associated with changes in the liver functions, and it has been suggested that the increased amounts of fibrinogen observed in infectious diseases, such as pneumonia and septic processes, may be due to an irritative lesion of the hepatic parenchyma.

#### **2. The Blood Lipase**

Whipple has called attention to variations in the amounts of lipase in the blood in hepatic diseases. In experimental injuries with chloro-



form there is a sharp rise in the amount of blood lipase which subsides after a few days. With his coworkers he has also found an increased amount of lipase in the blood of certain eclampsia patients as well as in patients with various types of liver necroses.

### 3. The Elimination of Phenoltetrachlorphthalein

Abel and Rowntree showed that this colored compound is eliminated through the liver and the latter proposed that the quantity which appears in the stool after an intravenous injection be used as a functional hepatic test. Rosenthal measured the rate at which this dye disappeared from the blood after its intravenous injection. He found a marked delay in patients with hepatic disease; particularly acute hepatitis, small cirrhotic liver and advanced hepatic carcinoma.

## Cholemia

Patients with acute hepatic degenerations, as well as patients in the terminal stages of hepatic cirrhosis, not infrequently present a clinical picture which suggests a severe intoxication. Particularly prominent in this picture are the nervous symptoms, such as twitchings, ataxia, somnolence, and coma. To this group of toxic symptoms, insofar as they depend upon liver changes, the name cholemia has been given. That these symptoms are not due, as was once supposed, to the action of retained bile constituents now seems definitely established. Although serious toxic effects can be produced experimentally by the injection of bile and particularly of bile salts, it is improbable that the concentration of these in the blood of jaundiced patients is ever sufficiently high to give rise to serious nervous symptoms. Complete obstruction of the common bile duct may persist in man for months without the intervention of serious symptoms, and animals which, like the guinea-pig, die as a result of mechanical obstruction of the common duct show at autopsy extensive necroses of the hepatic parenchyma. These liver changes rather than the jaundice itself appear to be the cause of the fatal result.

In many cases and particularly in severe infectious jaundice, the toxic symptoms are due in large part to the infection.

**Toxic Symptoms in Eek Fistula Animals.**—In other cases, however, the symptoms seem to depend upon changes in the parenchyma of the liver. The toxemia in such patients is probably due either to poisonous substances derived from the disintegrating liver cells or to some change in the intermediary nitrogenous metabolism. Dogs with a fistula between the vena porta and the inferior vena cava (Eek fistula) frequently die of an intoxication characterized by pronounced nervous symptoms. It was noted by Pawlow, Nencki and their coworkers that the feeding of

meat to such animals often induced the toxic symptoms. According to Fischler, two types of intoxication occur in Eck fistula dogs. The first, which is due to degenerative necrotic lesions of the liver, regularly causes death with symptoms of manic excitement ending in convulsions or coma.

The second type of intoxication is that produced by feeding meat. This is not necessarily associated with degenerative or necrotic changes in the liver and it is not necessarily fatal. It is characterized clinically by blindness, ataxia, stupor and at times slight muscular twitchings and excitement. The latter type of intoxication is due, according to Fischler, to an abnormal alkalinity of the body. It seems probable that the severe intoxications observed in certain patients with hepatic diseases are due to changes in the hepatic cells. The exact cause of their symptoms is still, however, unknown.

## Gall-stones

### *Frequency*

The frequency with which gall-stones occur has been variously estimated. According to Miyake's statistics, gall-stones are found in about seven per cent of all individuals coming to autopsy in Germany, whereas in Japan they are found in only about three per cent. Among the natives of Java they are almost unknown. Women, and particularly those who have borne children, show gall-stones more frequently than men, the ratio between the two being variously estimated from as high as 6 to 1 to as low as 3 to 2. This greater susceptibility of women has been attributed in part to the use of corsets, in part to mechanical or chemical changes associated with pregnancy. Cholelithiasis is a disease of adult life, the onset of symptoms usually occurring between the ages of 20 and 60.

### *Composition and Structure*

The chief constituents of gall-stones are cholesterol, calcium salts of bilirubin, and inorganic calcium salts. Small amounts of fats, soaps, lecithin, etc., are also found. In the great majority of stones the principal constituent is cholesterol, which usually makes up from 70 to as high as 98 per cent of the dried substance of the stone. In addition to the above constituents, the stone contains an organic protein framework, which becomes evident when the other constituents are dissolved.

**Arrangement of Components.**—In the center of nearly every gall-stone there is found a brown nucleus containing coagulated colloid material, calcium salts of bilirubin, and relatively small quantities of cholesterol. About this nucleus, the other constituents may be arranged either in concentric layers or in divergent rays that spread out from the center. This radial structure is characteristic of the so-called *pure cholesterol*

*stones.* The latter are large solitary stones found in gall-bladders which at the time of examination at least are usually free of infection. (*Combination stones* show a central radial portion, composed principally of cholesterol, and a peripheral portion made up of concentric layers of calcium-containing material. According to Aschoff, pure cholesterol stones occur in about six per cent of all cases, while combination stones occur in about twenty per cent. The commonest gall-stones, which are found in sixty per cent or more of all cases, are the multiple, small to medium-sized stones which show a *concentric laminated structure*. The successive layers contain varying amounts of cholesterol, calcium salts, and bile pigments. On splitting such a stone through its center, the layers are easily distinguished on account of variations in their color and structure. Stones composed mainly of the *calcium salts of bilirubin* are also found, but these are rare.

At times a single large stone is associated with numerous smaller stones, or there may be several generations of stones. The structure is relatively constant for all individuals of a given generation, indicating that some common cause has given rise to the various layers of all members.

### ***Pathogenesis of Gall-stones***

Certain constituents of the bile, such as cholesterol and bilirubin, are almost insoluble in water. These are held in solution in the bile by other constituents, important among which are the bile salts, fatty substances, etc. Bile may be concentrated without precipitating its solids and even the addition of considerable lime water does not necessarily throw down the bilirubin. It is evident, therefore, that a simple increase in the amount of cholesterol, of bile pigments, or of calcium salts in the bile cannot be the sole cause of a precipitation of these substances. On the other hand an increased concentration of these substances may well be a contributing factor in the pathogenesis of cholelithiasis and for this reason the causes of such increases will first be considered.

**Factors Influencing Concentration.**—Rous and McMasters have shown that bile rapidly becomes concentrated in the gall bladder, whereas in the ducts it tends to become diluted. The conditions for the formation of gall stones are therefore relatively favorable in the gall-bladder. Particularly is this true when the bile does not readily escape from the bladder.

**INCREASED CHOLESTEROL CONCENTRATION.**—The cholesterol of the bile is excreted in part by the hepatic cells, in part it is derived from the mucous membrane lining the gall-bladder and the biliary passages (Naunyn). Recent studies have shown that the concentration of cholesterol in the blood is increased in certain pathological conditions, among which are severe types of diabetes, obstructive jaundice, during the later months of pregnancy, during convalescence from typhoid fever, and in



some patients with arteriosclerosis and nephritis. According to McNee, hypercholesterolemia may lead to an increase in the amount of cholesterol in the bile. The view that such a "cholesterol diathesis" may play a part in the pathogenesis of cholelithiasis is suggested by the frequent association of some of the above conditions (pregnancy, typhoid fever) with gall-stones, as well as by the observations of Chauffard's school and of Henes, who found that in certain patients with cholelithiasis the amount of cholesterol in the blood is increased. Among the natives of Java cholesterol gall-stones are extremely rare. The cholesterol content of their blood is exceptionally low (de Langen).

**INCREASED CONCENTRATION OF BILE PIGMENTS AND OF CALCIUM.**—The excretion of bile pigments is increased whenever there is an increased destruction of the red blood corpuscles. Congenital hemolytic jaundice, in which an excessive destruction of red cells occurs, is at times associated with attacks of biliary colic. In a large proportion of the cases which have come to autopsy or operation, pigment stones composed chiefly of the calcium salt of bilirubin have been found. To what extent variations in the calcium content of the bile predispose to the formation of gall-stones is not known.

**Factors Influencing the Solvent Properties of Bile.**—There is, therefore, reason to believe that an increase in the concentration of the specific stone formers may play a part in the pathogenesis of gall-stones. Yet the principal cause seems to lie in changes in those factors which normally keep the bile constituents in solution.

**INFECTION.**—Such changes may be brought about by infection of the bile. Thus Cramer showed that when typhoid or colon bacilli are grown in bile a precipitate is formed containing calcium salts, bile pigments and a few cholesterin crystals.

Typhoid fever is frequently complicated by an infection of the gall-bladder and it is frequently followed by cholelithiasis. Attacks of cholecystitis may accompany or precede the formation of stones. At autopsy or operation the gall-bladders of patients suffering from cholelithiasis are frequently found to be infected, and bacilli have been isolated from the centers of gall-stones. The primary relation of infection to cholelithiasis is also evident in the experimental production of gall-stones in animals by partially obstructing a duct and introducing an organism of low virulence. It is generally admitted that in most gall-stones infection has played an important primary etiological rôle. Particularly is this true of the stones that are made up of concentric layers. The various layers, the striking similarity in structure of all stones in a given generation, and the occurrence of successive generations, may all be explained on the assumption that changes in the degree of infection have caused variations in the material deposited.

**CHOLELITHIASIS WITHOUT INFECTION.**—While it is generally admitted

that infection of the gall-bladder is the main cause of multiple concentric stones, wide differences of opinion exist as to the pathogenesis of those stones, usually solitary, in which the cholesterol is arranged radially. Aschoff and Bacmeister believe that this type of stone develops in the absence of infection, while others hold that it represents a rearrangement or even a replacement of the elements which had previously been deposited in concentric layers. There is reason to believe that precipitates may form in sterile bile. Thus Bacmeister has shown that the presence of cells may cause a precipitation of cholesterol from sterile bile. Furthermore, a sterile thread inserted into the gall-bladder may become encrusted with the calcium salts of bilirubin even though the gall-bladder remains free of infection. While, therefore, the great importance of infection in the pathogenesis of gall-stones cannot be denied, nevertheless this does not appear to be the sole disturbance which may lead to the precipitation of the bile constituents. Just how these various agents act is not certain. Infection may possibly destroy certain elements in the bile which normally hold the cholesterol and the bile pigments in solution. Physico-chemical changes in the bile have also been held responsible for the precipitation of its constituents.

### ***Secondary Infections in Cholelithiasis***

We have pointed out that infection plays an important part in the pathogenesis of gall-stones and particularly of multiple stones that show a concentric structure. Calculi in the bile passages also favor secondary infections. The sterility of any hollow viscus or duct is maintained in large part by its free evacuation. Any stasis produces conditions which are favorable for the growth of organisms that may chance to lodge behind the obstruction. It seems certain that bacteria are not infrequently excreted by the liver into the bile and the presence of a calculus in the gall-bladder or bile ducts favors a retention and multiplication of these micro-organisms. That such secondary infections may in themselves lead to new gall-stones or to new layers on old stones is generally admitted. Many of the more serious consequences of cholelithiasis are due to such infections rather than to the mechanical effects of the gall-stones.

### **Biliary Colic**

Typical attacks of biliary colic are characterized by violent pains beneath the right costal margin which radiate to the right back and shoulder blade. The paroxysms usually begin and terminate abruptly but leave behind some soreness in the region of the gall-bladder. Aside from the fact that biliary colic is usually due to an obstruction of the cystic or

common duct by stones or by the products of inflammation, little is known concerning its immediate cause. If one may draw an analogy between biliary and renal or intestinal colic, it would seem probable that the pains are due, not so much to a lesion of the mucous membrane, as to an acute distention of the bile passages with tension and spasms of the muscle fibers about the gall-bladder and ducts. Chronic obstructions do not necessarily produce colic, for it is well known that malignant obstructions may cause an enlargement of the gall-bladder without pain. The gradual distention in such cases causes no pain.

## Diseases of the Pancreas

Diseases of the pancreas may produce a variety of disturbances. We have already considered the relation between pancreatic disease and diabetes mellitus as well as the disturbances of intestinal digestion and absorption which follows exclusion of pancreatic juice from the duodenum. Aside from these there remain for consideration the relation of pancreatic disease to fat necroses, and the physiological aspects of acute hemorrhagic necrosis of this organ.

### Fat Necrosis

A careful examination of the immediate neighborhood of the pancreas at autopsy not infrequently discloses a number of small, opaque, white or yellowish-white areas which on microscopic examination are found to be composed mainly of necrotic fat cells. Occasionally such areas are numerous and distributed through the abdominal cavity, though still most numerous in the region of the pancreas; while still more rarely they occur in distant parts of the body. The majority of patients showing *extensive fat necroses* have been found to have some disease of the pancreas. Experimentally, these lesions have been produced by ligation of the pancreatic duct, by injury to the pancreatic parenchyma and by the injection of commercial pancreatin into the peritoneal cavity. The intimate relation between fat necroses and pancreatic disease is, therefore, well established. Only very exceptionally have extensive fat necroses been observed without demonstrable pancreatic lesions.

**Chemistry of Fat Necroses.**—Microchemical studies of fat necroses indicate that there has been a cleavage of the fat into its constituents, fatty acid and glycerin. The latter being soluble is washed away, while the former combines with calcium and deposits of insoluble calcium soaps are thus formed.

**Action of Pancreatic Ferments.**—The intimate relationship between fat necroses and natural or experimental disease of the pancreas, as well as the experimental production of these lesions by allowing pancreatic juice or pancreatin to act on fatty tissue, indicates that fat necroses are due



to proteolytic and lipolytic pancreatic ferments which have entered the blood or lymph streams and have acted at a distance.

## Acute Hemorrhagic Necrosis of the Pancreas

This remarkable condition is characterized clinically by pain in the upper abdomen, vomiting and rapid collapse; pathologically, by extensive necrosis of the pancreatic gland associated with local hemorrhages and very numerous fat necroses throughout the abdominal cavity, particularly in the neighborhood of the pancreas.

**Experimental Production.**—Acute hemorrhagic necrosis of the pancreas has been produced experimentally by a variety of means. Among these are: (1) ligation of the gland in mass with interference to its blood supply; and (2) the injection into the pancreatic duct of various irritating or destructive substances such as gastric juice, hydrochloric acid, formalin, fats and bile. Positive results have also been obtained in some instances by the injection of various bacteria. On the other hand, simple ligation or occlusion of the pancreatic ducts does not ordinarily lead to hemorrhagic necrosis; nor does the injection of preparations of enterokinase, the activator of pancreatic trypsin (page 182), lead to hemorrhagic necrosis even when combined with ligation of the duct. It seems evident from these experiments that acute hemorrhagic pancreatic necrosis results from damage to the pancreatic cells, either by a serious interference with their blood supply, or by the chemical action of certain substances which have been introduced into the ducts of the gland.

**Pathogenesis in Man.**—These experiments indicate that acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis in man may be due to various causes. Since the injection of fat or gastric juice into the pancreatic duct may produce the disease, it has been suggested that under exceptional circumstances these may enter from the duodenum and so give rise to the disease. It is doubtful, however, if such substances ever enter the duct in sufficient quantity to cause hemorrhagic necrosis. Ascending infections through the ducts may account for a certain number of the clinical cases, particularly when combined with some other injury to the gland. Opie has pointed out that the entrance of bile into the pancreas is by no means difficult. The main pancreatic duct and the common bile duct usually unite within the ampulla of Vater and have a common exit into the duodenum. If this exit be blocked by a stone that is not large enough to fill the ampulla, bile may readily be forced from the common bile duct into the pancreatic duct. (See Fig. 69.) Opie and others have described occasional cases of hemorrhagic necrosis in which small gall-stones were lodged at the exit of the combined ducts in such a manner that bile could easily be forced into the pancreas.

The occurrence of a stone in this situation is admittedly rare in cases of acute pancreatic necrosis. According to Archibald, however, a spasm of the sphincter of Oddi at the termination of the common duct may produce a considerable functional obstruction to the escape of bile into the duodenum. Spasm of the sphincter and a high pressure in the bile passages would cause the bile to enter the pancreas. Its destructive action appears to be enhanced by infection and by a reduction of its mucus. To a combination of such circumstances may be attributed the relative frequency of acute pancreatic necrosis in patients who are suffering from gall stones or from infections of the bile passages.

**Cause of Fatal Symptoms.**—The cause of the very severe and often

rapidly fatal symptoms that characterize acute hemorrhagic necrosis of the pancreas remains to be considered. These are not necessarily due to infection, for the experimental disease may pursue a rapidly fatal course in the absence of all infection. The pancreas itself may give rise to highly toxic substances, for the injection of pancreatic tissue into the peritoneal cavities of animals often leads to fatal results. The exact nature of these toxic substances is not known. It seems improbable that they are identical with the pancreatic ferments, for the injection of pancreatic material which has been heated so as to destroy its ferments is also fatal, and examinations of the blood of animals with acute hemorrhagic necrosis have thus far failed to show an increase in the content of trypsin.

**Peritoneal Exudate Non-toxic.**—The peritoneal exudate which is so common in acute hemorrhagic necroses of the pancreas is non-toxic for other animals, a fact which may be important from the practical standpoint, for drainage of such exudates does not remove toxic material.

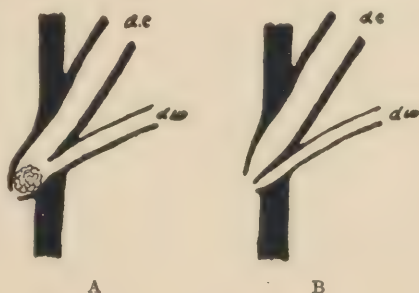


Fig. 69.—Diagram Showing (A) Diverticulum of Vater Containing a Calculus and (B) Separate Entrance of Common Bile Duct (*dc*) and of Duct of Wirsung (*dw*) into the Duodenum. Note that in the Former Bile May Readily be Forced into the Pancreatic Duct. (From Opie, "Diseases of the Pancreas," published by J. B. Lippincott Co.)

## References

### *Jaundice*

Abrami (P.). *Les ictères infectieux*. Paris, 1910.

Barratt (J. O. W.) & Yorke (W.). The relation of bile pigments to hemoglobin. *Ann. Trop. Med. and Parasit.*, 1914, viii, 509.

von der Bergn (S. A. H.) & Snapper (J.). Untersuchungen über den Icterus. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, 1914, li, 1109, 1182.

- Brulé (M.).** *Recherches Récentes sur les Ictères. Les Retentions Biliaires par Insuffisance Hépatique.* Masson et Cie., Éditeurs, Paris, **1919**.
- Dawson (L. B.) & Hume (W. E.).** Jaundice of infective origin. *Quart. J. Med.*, **1916-17**, x, 90.
- Eppinger (H.).** Icterus. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1908**, i, 107.
- Eppinger (H.) & Charnas (D.).** Was lehren uns quantitative Urobilinbestimmungen im Stuhl? *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxviii, 387.
- Heimann (E.).** Zur Lehre des Icterus neonatorum. *Ztschr. f. Geburtsh. u. Gynäk.*, **1911**, lxiix, 165.
- Hess (A. F.).** A study of icterus neonatorum by means of the duodenal catheter. *Amer. Jour. Child. Dis.*, **1912**, iii, 304.
- King (J. H.) & Stewart (H. A.).** Effect of the injection of bile on the circulation. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1909**, xi, 673.
- Lemierre, Brulé, Weill & Lordat.** L'examen chimique et ultramicroscopique du sang dans l'étude de l'absorption intestinale des graisses. *Bull. Soc. Méd. des Hôp.*, **1913**, 72.
- Thayer (W. S.) & Morris (R.).** Two cases of congenital hemolytic jaundice with splenomegaly. Observations on hemolytic jaundice. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1911**, xxi, 85.
- Tileston (W.) & Griffin (W. A.).** Chronic family jaundice. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1910**, cxxix, 847.
- Whipple (G. H.) & Hooper (C. W.).** Icterus. A rapid change of hemoglobin to bile pigment in the circulation outside the liver. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xvii, 612. Hematogenous and obstructive icterus. Experimental studies by means of the Eck fistula. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xvii, 593.
- Yorke (W.) & Nauss (R. W.).** The mechanism of the production of suppression of urine in blackwater fever. *Annals of Trop. Med. & Parasit.*, **1911**, v, 287.

### Liver

- Chesney (A. M.), Marshall (E. K.) & Rowntree (L. G.).** Studies in liver function. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxxiii, 1533.
- Graham (E. A.).** Sodium carbonate in chloroform poisoning. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1920**, xxv, 575.
- Rowntree (L. G.), Hurwitz (S. H.) & Bloomfield (A. L.).** An experimental and clinical study of the value of phenoltetrachlorphthalein as a test for hepatic function. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1913**, xxiv, 327.
- Rosenthal (S. M.).** A new method of testing liver function with phenoltetrachlorphthalein. III Clinical Report, *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1922**, lxxix, 2151.
- Stadie (W. C.) & Van Slyke (D. D.).** The effect of acute yellow atrophy on metabolism and on the composition of the liver. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1920**, xxv, 693.
- Whipple (G. H.).** Hemorrhagic disease—Septicemia, Melena neonatorum and hepatic cirrhosis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 365.  
A test for hepatic injury. Blood lipase. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1913**, xxiv, 357.  
Fibrinogen. An investigation concerning its origin and destruction in the body. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxxiii, 50.
- Wilbur (R. L.) & Addis (T.).** Urobilin. Its clinical significance. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 235.

### Gall-stones

- Bacmeister (A.).** Die Entstehung des Gallensteinleidens. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, xi, 1.



- Bacmeister (A.) & Havers (E.).** Zur Physiologie und Pathologie des Cholesterinstoffwechsels. *Deutsche med. Wchnschr.*, **1914**, xl, 335.
- Chauffard (A.).** Pathogénie de la lithiase biliaire. Rôle de l'hypercholestérolémie. *Presse méd.*, **1913**, xxi, 929.  
Cholelithiase pigmentaire dans un cas d'ictère congénital hémolytique. *Bull. Soc. Méd. des Hôp.*, **1912**, 80.
- Hansemann (D.).** Die Lösungsmöglichkeit der Gallensteine. *Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1913**, xii, 139.
- Henes (E.).** The value of the determination of the cholesterin content of the blood in the diagnosis of cholelithiasis. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxxiii, 146.
- Kehr (H.).** Ueber einige zurzeit besonders "aktuelle" Streitfragen aus dem Gebiete der Cholelithiasis. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1914**, xviii, 198.
- Lichtwitz (L.).** Ueber die Bildung der Harn- und Gallensteine. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1914**, xviii, 1.
- Kramer (S. P.).** The pathogenesis of gall-stones. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1907**, ix, 319.
- Mikaye (H.).** Statistische klinische und chemische Studien zur Aetiologie der Gallensteine. *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1913**, ci, 54.
- M'Nee (J. W.).** Cholesterin: an account of its relations to pathology and physiology. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1914**, vii, 221.
- Rous (P.) & McMasters (P. D.).** The concentrating activity of the gall bladder. *J. Exper. M.*, **1921**, xxxiv, 47.
- Schmidt (H. B.).** The clinical study of hypercholesterinemia. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 121.

### *Diseases of the Pancreas*

- Archibald (E.).** The experimental production of pancreatitis in animals as the result of the resistance of the common duct sphincter. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.*, **1919**, xxviii, 529.
- Glaessner (K.).** Allgemeine Diagnose der Pankreaserkrankungen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1910**, vi, 29.
- Körte (W.).** Surgical treatment of acute pancreatitis. *Ann. Surg.*, **1912**, lv, 23.
- Nordmann (O.).** Experimentelle und klinische Betrachtungen über den Zusammenhang zwischen acuter Pankreatitis und Erkrankungen der Gallenblase. *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1913**, cii, 66.
- Opie (E.).** *Diseases of the pancreas.* 2d ed. Philadelphia, **1910**.
- Schmidt (A.).** Fortschritte in der Pathologie und Therapie der Pankreaserkrankungen. *Münch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1914**, lxi, 1739.
- Whipple (G. H.) & Goodpasture (E. W.).** Acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis. *Surg. Gyn. and Obs.*, **1913**, xvii, 541.

# Chapter VII

## Disturbances of Respiration

### Respiration Proper

Respiration includes all those processes whereby oxygen is delivered to the tissues and carbon dioxid is taken from them and removed from the body. It is evident that these processes fall into two general groups. To the first, the so-called *external respiration*, belong the interchange of gases between the blood and the external air. To the second, the so-called *internal respiration*, belong the transportation of gases in the blood and the interchanges between the blood and the tissues. From the physiological standpoint these two varieties of respiration are intimately associated with each other, for external respiration is controlled mainly by the internal respiration of certain parts of the brain. The two must, therefore, be discussed together.

### The Dead Space

**Alveolar Ventilation.**—Pulmonary ventilation is effected by increasing and diminishing the size of the thoracic cavity. The elastic lungs follow these changes in size and air flows in and out of them through the air passages. During each respiratory movement a certain amount of the air breathed does not reach the alveoli proper, but remains in the trachea, bronchi and other air passages. This air is not available for purposes of respiration, and the space which it occupies is spoken of as the dead space. During shallow breathing the dead space takes up a relatively large proportion of the respired air, while during deep breathing it takes up a relatively small proportion. Edsall has shown that when a normal individual with as little effort as possible breathes first normally, then superficially, and finally deeply, the total external ventilation is greatest in the superficial breathing, and least in the deep breathing. If, however, due allowance be made for the dead space, which must be subtracted from each respiration in order to give the effective ventilation of the pulmonary

alveoli, it is found that the alveolar ventilation is not materially altered by these voluntary modifications of breathing. This may be seen from the following chart:

Breathing	Number of Respirations in 15 Minutes	Total Ventilation in 15 Minutes, Liters	Total Alveolar Ventilation in 15 Minutes Assuming a Dead Space of 140 c.c.
Normal.....	174	93.25	68.89
Deep.....	41	71.51	65.63
Superficial.....	465	130.60	65.50

Considered *anatomically*, the dead space is the volume of the respiratory passages through which air must pass before it can be mixed with the alveolar air, and so be brought into contact with the blood in the pulmonary circuit. It is evident, however, that no sharp line of demarcation exists between the air in the alveoli and that in the infundibula and terminal bronchioles, nor is there an abrupt change in structure between the functioning alveolar epithelium and the mucous membrane lining the bronchi. The *functional* dead space is usually estimated by determining what part of the expired air is derived from the alveoli and what part is derived from the air of the previous inspiration. The greater the amount of inspired air that is returned on the succeeding expiration, the greater is the dead space. It is frequently assumed that all the air in the alveoli and infundibula has a constant composition (alveolar air), but such an assumption can hardly be strictly correct and Hoover, for example, believes that changes in the size of the infundibula play an important rôle in certain pathological conditions.

**Size of Dead Space.**—According to Loewy's calculations, the size of the dead space is usually about 140 c.c. It varies, however, in different individuals, and in a single individual at different times. Siebeck found that in a normal individual the dead space was smaller when the lungs were relatively collapsed, in a position of expiration, and that it was larger when the lungs were expanded, in the inspiratory position. According to Douglas and Haldane, the physiological dead space becomes larger during dyspnea. Thus they estimated that the dead space in a certain individual during rest was 160 c.c. On exercise the dead space increased until, according to their calculations, it reached a maximum of 622 c.c. when the individual was walking at the rate of five miles an hour. These authors assumed that this considerable change was due to a dilatation of the bronchi and bronchioles. Others find no marked change in the dead space during exercise (Krogh and Lindhard, Pearce).



At the present time we know little concerning pathological variations in the size of the dead space. Siebeck found that the functional dead space is increased in emphysema and in heart disease. According to his determinations the dead space normally varied from 90 to 160 c.c., whereas in emphysema it varied from 190 to 250 c.c. Similar changes appear to occur during cardiac dyspnea. Hoover has also found that the dead space was increased in cases of pulmonary emphysema. An increase in the dead space will necessitate the respiration of larger quantities of air, in order to attain an equal ventilation of the pulmonary alveoli.

## Changes in Lung Volume

The total quantity of air which can be made to leave the lungs when a maximum inspiration is followed by a maximum expiration is spoken of as the *vital capacity*. Even at maximum expiration, however, a certain amount of air is left in the lungs. This is spoken of as the *residual air*. This, together with the vital capacity, makes up the *total pulmonary capacity*, the largest amount of air that the lungs can contain. During quiet respiration a certain amount of air is breathed in and out. This is spoken of as the *tidal air*, and the pulmonary capacity at the middle of such a quiet respiration is spoken of as the *midcapacity*.

**Physiological Increases.**—All of these quantities vary considerably, both in a single individual at different times and among different individuals. Of particular interest are changes in the midvolume of the lungs. An increase in this midvolume occurs physiologically when an individual passes from the lying to the upright position, when he suffers pain, when he is exposed to cold, when he lives at high altitudes and, as a rule, when he is dyspneic from any cause. The increased volume of the lungs after exercise usually passes off promptly, although after prolonged exertion it may possibly persist for a day or two. The pulmonary volume has also been found to be increased in glass blowers and in those who play musical wind instruments.

**Pathological Increases.**—Among the pathological conditions which produce pulmonary distention are stenoses of the upper air passages. This has been demonstrated experimentally by breathing through a constricted tube. Distention may occur as a local phenomenon when individual bronchi are narrowed. Acute attacks of asthma cause an enormous pulmonary distention which may disappear in a day or two, or may persist for a much longer time. In emphysema, pulmonary distention is also common and may be very marked. In this condition there is not only an increase in the midcapacity of the lungs, but even more characteristic is the fact that the patient cannot empty his lungs as completely as does the

normal individual. He has an increase in the residual air. Patients with heart disease frequently show some increase in the size of the thorax. Estimates of the amount of air contained in the lungs, however, have shown that as a rule there is no constant or definite increase in the total or mid-capacities of the lungs of such patients. According to Plesch, anemia causes an increase in the midcapacity of the lungs.

## The Regulation of Pulmonary Ventilation

### *Afferent Nervous Stimuli*

The respiratory movements are controlled by a nervous center lying in the floor of the fourth ventricle. When this portion of the medulla is excited respiration stops. This respiratory center is influenced both by *afferent nervous impulses*, which have traveled mainly over the vagus nerves and by the *composition of the blood* supplied to it. Afferent nervous impulses are not essential for respiration. They serve primarily as a guide to the respiratory movements, in much the same way as the sensory impulses from joints and muscles aid in the control of voluntary movements of the extremities.

### *Hydrogen Ion Regulation*

Of fundamental importance in the normal regulation of pulmonary ventilation is the hydrogen ion concentration, i. e., the chemical reaction, of the blood which circulates through the respiratory center. Any increase in the acidity of the blood promptly stimulates this center.

**Carbon Dioxid Tension.**—This conclusion was first suggested by studies of the carbon dioxid tension in the air that fills the pulmonary alveoli. The composition of alveolar air is determined by analyzing samples taken from the last portion of a sharp, forced expiration. By such analyses, Haldane and his coworkers have shown that for each individual the tension of carbon dioxid in the alveolar air is remarkably constant. The normal tension varies in different persons from 39 to 44 mm. Hg., though it may vary from 34 to 48 mm. Hg. (4.5 per cent to 6.4 per cent of an atmosphere). Should the percentage of carbon dioxid in the inspired air be increased, even by a fraction of one per cent, a change takes place in the respirations of the individual. He breathes more deeply and, by so doing, increases his pulmonary ventilation to such an extent that the percentage of carbon dioxid in his alveolar air remains constant.

If, on the other hand, the tension of carbon dioxid in his lungs as well as in his blood is diminished by forced respiration, he becomes apneic and does not breathe again until the tension of carbon dioxid in the blood

has risen to about its normal level. That the apnea following forced respirations is due neither to nervous influences, nor to the increased supply of oxygen, has been demonstrated by showing that it may usually be prevented, if the normal tension of carbon dioxid in the alveoli be artificially maintained by adding this gas in adequate amounts to the respired air during the forced breathing.

**Effect of Other Acids.**—The action of carbonic acid upon the respiratory center is shared by other acids. Respiration is controlled largely by the hydrogen ion concentration (chemical reaction) of the blood that passes through the respiratory center. Any increase in the non-volatile acids of the blood tends to lessen the blood carbonates and in this way to increase the hydrogen ion concentration by increasing the ratio of carbonic acid to carbonates. As a result of this stimulation of the respiratory center, the pulmonary ventilation is increased, the tension of carbon dioxid in the alveolar air is maintained at a relatively low level and the amount of carbonic acid in the blood is correspondingly reduced. Any acid will increase respiration; but it is held by some that carbonic acid is more effective than other acids in this respect. In other words, it is maintained that carbonic acid has not only the usual action of an acid, but that it exerts, in addition, a specific stimulating effect upon the respiratory center.

### *Other Changes in the Respiratory Center*

Changes in respiration may be due, not only to varying stimulation of the respiratory center by the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood, but also to changes in the irritability of the center itself. The activity of the center appears to be depressed by morphin (Hasselbalch) and during sleep. Its excitability appears to be increased by caffein (Edsall and Means), and by ultraviolet light (Hasselbalch). A deficient supply of oxygen likewise increases respiration. By some this has been attributed to the secondary formation of organic acids, especially lactic acid; by others it has been attributed directly to the lack of oxygen.

An increased excitability of the respiratory center like an increased acidity of the blood stimulates respiration and reduces the carbon dioxid tension in the alveoli and in the blood. In the former the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood tends to become lower whereas in the latter it tends to become higher. The respiratory center is exceedingly sensitive to slight changes in reaction and it has been difficult to distinguish these two conditions by blood examinations alone. The relative importance of changes in the excitability of the center and changes in the reaction of the blood may not be easy to determine.



## The Transportation of Gases in the Blood

Internal respiration depends not only upon the pulmonary ventilation, but also upon the transportation of oxygen and carbon dioxid between the tissues and the lungs. This transportation is governed by two main factors: first, the capacity of the blood for carrying these gases, and, second, the rate of blood flow. It is evident that, other things being equal, the amount of gas that can be carried between the lungs and the tissues varies directly with the amount of blood which passes through the vessels in a given unit of time.

**Chemical Compounds.**—Both oxygen and carbon dioxid are carried in the blood partly in simple solution but mainly in the form of easily

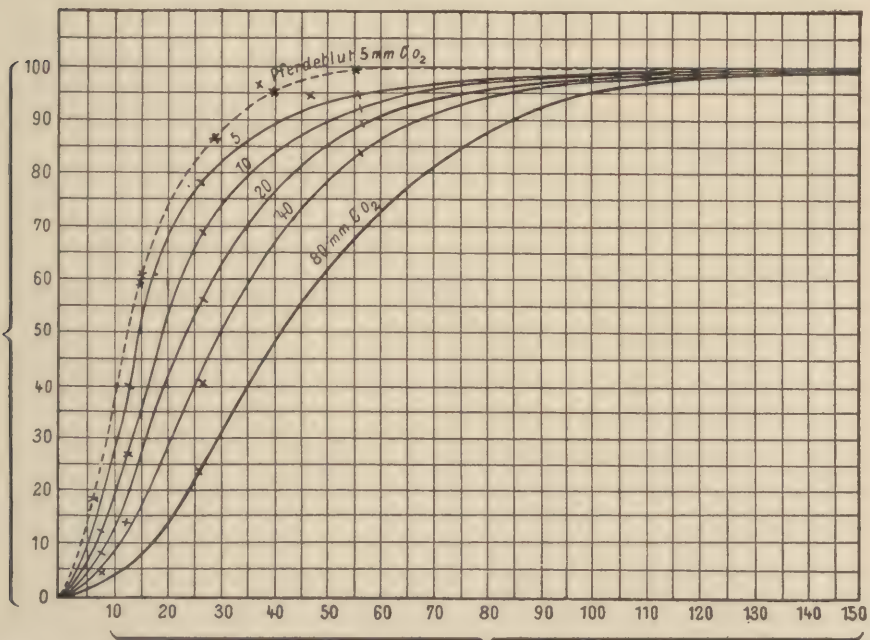


Fig. 70.—Curves Showing the Saturation of Hemoglobin with Oxygen at Different Oxygen and Carbon Dioxid Pressures. The Figures Below Indicate the Oxygen Tension. At Sea Level the Tension in Arterial Blood Is Approximately 100 mm. Note that with Diminishing Tensions the Saturation of Hemoglobin at First Remains Good, But that When the Tension Is Reduced to about 50 mm. with the Usual  $\text{CO}_2$  Tension of 40 mm., there Begins an Abrupt Drop in the Saturation of the Hemoglobin. An Increase of Carbon Dioxid in the Tissues Favors the Liberation of Oxygen, As May Be Seen From the Lower Curve. (From A. Loewy, Korányi and Richter's "Physikalische Chemie u. Medizin," published by G. Thieme, Leipzig.)

dissociated chemical compounds. It is well known that the chief oxygen-carrying compound is the hemoglobin of the red blood corpuscles. The amount of oxygen which combines with hemoglobin varies with the tension of the gas, more entering into combination at high than at low pressures.

A definite but complex relationship exists between the tension or partial pressure of oxygen, and the amount taken up by hemoglobin. Ordinary atmospheric air contains about 20 per cent oxygen, and the oxygen tension or partial pressure, therefore, is one-fifth of an atmosphere or 152 mm. of mercury. When blood is exposed to this oxygen tension the hemoglobin becomes nearly saturated with the gas. As may be seen from the accompanying figure, a reduction of the partial pressure of oxygen does not produce a uniform fall in the amount of oxygen that is held in combination by hemoglobin. At first, there is but little change. When, however, with a carbon dioxid pressure of about 40 mm. the partial pressure of oxygen falls to about one-tenth of an atmosphere (76 mm. of mercury), there begins a rather abrupt fall in the oxygen-carrying capacity of the hemoglobin. As may be seen from the figure, this begins earlier and is more marked when large amounts of carbonic (or other) acid are also present. In consequence of these properties of hemoglobin, oxygen is readily taken up by the blood in the lungs, so long as its tension in the alveolar air exceeds about one-tenth of an atmosphere. It is rapidly given off to the tissues when the tension of oxygen in the latter falls much below this point. The distribution to the tissues is facilitated by the presence in them of increased amounts of carbon dioxid, and by any local rise of temperature, for both of these factors increase the dissociation of oxyhemoglobin. In functioning active tissues, therefore, with local heat and carbon dioxid formation, the conditions are peculiarly favorable for disrupting oxygen from the hemoglobin of the blood.

Carbon dioxid is far more soluble in water than is oxygen, but in the blood it is present mostly in loose chemical combinations. In arterial blood, for example, about 2.6 volumes per cent of carbon dioxid are in simple solution out of a total of 40 volumes per cent. The nature of these loose chemical combinations is not well understood. It seems certain, however, that inorganic salts do not contain all of the combined carbonic acid of the blood, and that a considerable proportion is combined with proteins and other organic substances.

**Secretion of Gases.**—We have assumed that the interchange of gases between the blood and the lungs and between the blood and the tissues always follows the physical laws governing the diffusion of gases. As a matter of fact, most physiological observations accord with this view. Apparent exceptions to the rule have been recorded by Bohr, by Douglas and Haldane, and by others. These authors have therefore assumed that, in exceptional cases and in particular at high altitudes, in carbon monoxid poisoning and during muscular work, the interchange of gases, and especially the absorption of oxygen in the lungs, is assisted by secretory activities of the intervening membranes in the lungs. Krogh, Barcroft and others believe, however, that the interchange of gases in the lungs always follows the physical laws governing the diffusion of gases.

## Periodic Breathing

In normal individuals the respirations are, as a rule, fairly regular. Changes in rate or depth occur gradually, and once having occurred the new type of respiration continues or again changes slowly. Under certain circumstances, however, the respirations are irregular. It is well known that the respiratory movements are, to a certain extent, under voluntary control and, consequently, irregular breathing may be due to the influence of the higher brain centers. The deep, gasping breaths occasionally seen in hysterical patients and the changes of respiration caused by emotions and by interest are of this type.

**Cheyne-Stokes Respiration.**—Of more importance, however, are those irregularities of respiration which are seemingly independent of the higher cerebral centers. The most common of these is known as Cheyne-Stokes respiration. In this condition we have a regular alternation of periods of apnea with those of hyperpnea. This alternation may be of varying degrees. In the milder cases, there is simply a periodic increase and diminution in the size of the respirations. In the more marked cases, periods of complete apnea alternate with periods of extreme dyspnea. Various other manifestations accompany the alternation in respiration. In the severe types, the apnea is associated with drowsiness, the eyes close, and the head drops forward. The pupils may contract, and muscular twitchings may occur. The cyanosis often increases perceptibly. During the period of dyspnea, on the other hand, the patient wakes from his drowsy stupor, the head is thrown back, the pupils are dilated and the respiratory muscles may be strained during the gasping dyspnea. The blood pressure varies during Cheyne-Stokes respiration, but the direction of these variations does not seem to be the same in all patients. In some the blood pressure increases during the dyspnea, while in others it falls.

Periodic breathing of the general type of Cheyne-Stokes respiration is to a certain extent a physiological phenomenon. It is most apt to occur during sleep and it is particularly common in infants. Hypnotics, especially morphin and chloral, favor its occurrence in susceptible individuals. It has been observed in hibernating animals. It is relatively common at high altitudes, particularly those above 9,000 feet. At such elevations the periodic breathing may be so marked when the individual attempts to sleep that it causes serious insomnia. At high altitudes also an unusually deep respiration, or a short period of holding the breath, may initiate prolonged periodic breathing. It will be seen, therefore, that the physiological type of periodic breathing is favored by conditions of unconsciousness, and by diminished atmospheric pressure. In the latter, as we shall see, it is the lack of oxygen which is responsible for the irregular breathing.

Cheyne-Stokes respiration is observed clinically in diseases of the





Fig. 71.—Tracing Showing Typical Cheyne-Stokes Respiration. (From Pembrey, Jour. Path. and Bacteriol.)

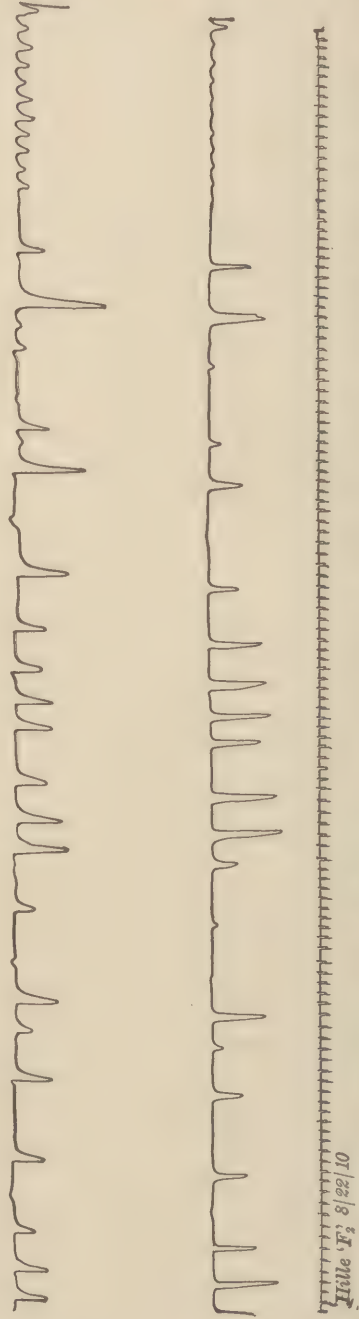


Fig. 72.—Biot's Breathing. Upper Tracing From the Thorax; Lower Tracing From the Abdomen. Downstrokes Indicate Inspiration. (From Conner, Am. Jour. Med. Sci.)

heart, brain and kidney. It is most frequently encountered in cases of arteriosclerosis and chronic hypertension. It also occurs in various diseases of the central nervous system and, among others, in acute increases of intracranial pressure.

**Biot's Breathing.**—In typical cases of Cheyne-Stokes respiration the periodic changes in breathing occur with a certain regularity. Occasionally, however, irregular breathing does not follow the rhythmic alternation of dyspnea and apnea characteristic of the Cheyne-Stokes type. The irregular respiration known as Biot's breathing, for example, is characterized by great variations in the intervals which separate the respirations, and by irregularity in the size of the individual respirations. This type of breathing occurs particularly in meningitis and is presumably due to a direct involvement of the respiratory center. It should probably be separated from the more rhythmic Cheyne-Stokes type.

**Even Character of Normal Respiration.**—Many explanations have been offered for the periodic character of Cheyne-Stokes respiration. Before we review these, however, the cause of the regular character of normal respirations may be considered. We have seen that the normal control of respiration depends upon the tension of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood which circulates through the respiratory center in the medulla. One might reason that any sudden increase in this tension would stimulate the respiratory center, increase the pulmonary ventilation, and, as a result, reduce the tension of carbon dioxide in the lungs and in the blood. This, in turn, would lessen the respirations and, through the subsequent accumulation of carbon dioxide in the body, it might be followed by increased respirations. Thus periodic breathing might be established. As a matter of fact, however, sudden changes in the tension of carbon dioxide in the air do not produce periodic breathing. The respiratory mechanism normally acts like an engine with a heavy fly-wheel which prevents sudden fluctuations and oscillations in speed. The explanation for this seems to lie in the fact that the body fluids and tissues have a very large capacity for holding carbon dioxide, and that, on this account, very sudden changes in their content do not occur. The respiratory center is, therefore, affected only gradually by even sudden changes in the alveolar tension of carbon dioxide in the lungs.

While the respiratory center is normally controlled by carbon dioxide tension, it is also extremely sensitive to any marked lack of oxygen. Ordinarily this supply is more than adequate. If it be shut off, however, oxygen want comes on promptly, for, unlike carbon dioxide, there is no great storage of oxygen either in the blood or in the tissues. On account of this small oxygen capacity, it follows that where the oxygen supply is low a further sudden diminution, sufficient to irritate the center, may initiate irregular breathing. This is, indeed, the cause of the forms of Cheyne-Stokes respiration, which will now be considered.

**Periodic Respiration from Oxygen Want.**—It is well known that prolonged forced breathing is followed by a period of apnea. Not infrequently,

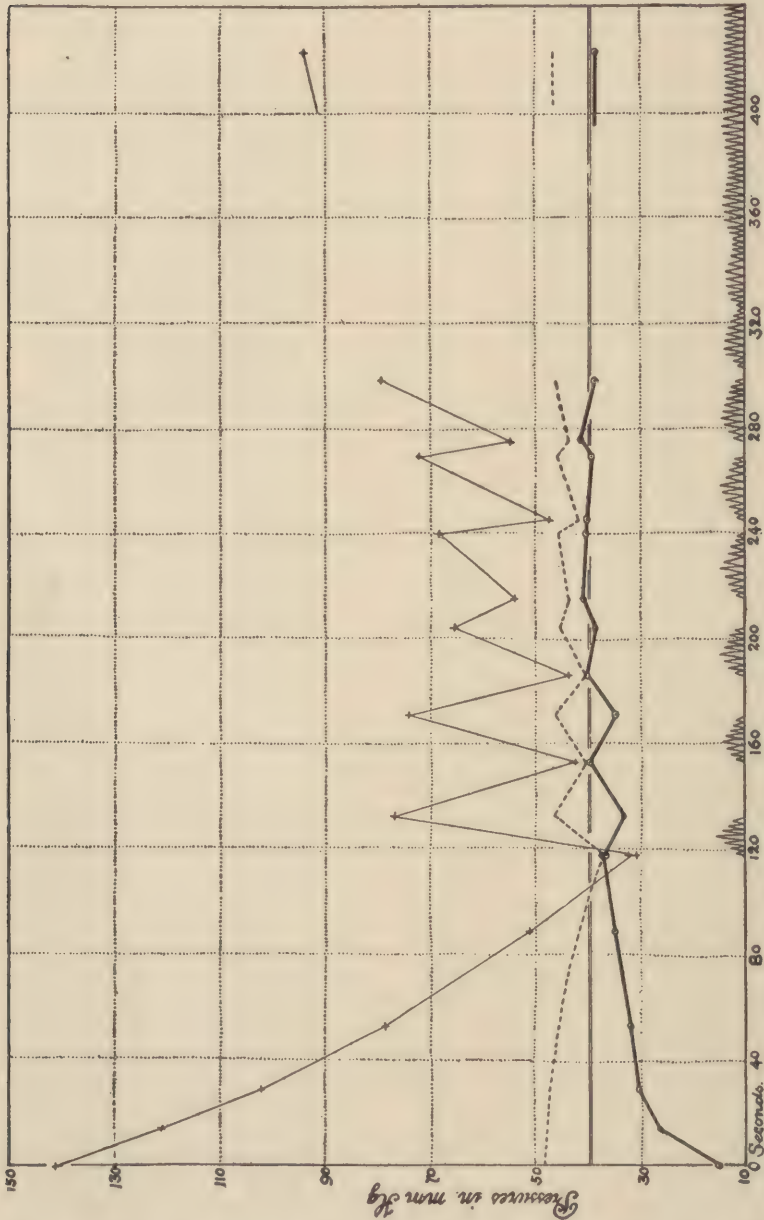


Fig. 73.—The Alveolar Tension of Oxygen (Light Line) and of Carbon Dioxide (Heavy Line) in the Pulmonary Alveoli During the Periodic Breathing that Followed a Series of Forced Respirations. The Irregular Respirations Are Shown at the Bottom of the Figure. Note that the Oxygen Want Played a More Important Role than an Excess of Carbon Dioxide, for in Some Cases Respiration Occurred before the Alveolar Tension of  $O_2$  had Risen to Normal. The Dotted Line Indicates the Irritability of the Respiratory Center, a Fall in this Line Indicating Increased Irritability. (From Douglas and Haldane, Jour. Physiol.)

the respirations which immediately follow this apnea are not regular but are of the Cheyne-Stokes type and this gradually merges into regular breathing. Douglas and Haldane have studied carefully the alveolar gases



during this form of periodic breathing. Their results are charted in Figure 73. This figure begins at the end of the period of forced respiration with a high pressure of oxygen and a low pressure of carbon dioxide in the alveoli. During the first half minute the tension of carbon dioxide rises rapidly, and after this slowly. The oxygen tension, on the other hand, falls rapidly and at a uniform rate until it reaches a level (30 mm. Hg.) at which, as may be seen from Figure 70, the hemoglobin can take up only about one-half the usual amount of oxygen. On account of this lack of oxygen the respiratory center is rendered overresponsive, and is stimulated by a tension of carbon dioxide which has not yet reached the normal stimulating point. Respirations then begin and cause a rise of oxygen tension and a fall of carbon dioxide tension in the alveoli. The respiratory center, being no longer overirritable from lack of oxygen, ceases to act and the patient passes into apnea. These events are repeated several times, but gradually the tension of oxygen rises until finally it keeps the blood sufficiently saturated, and the normal control through carbon dioxide alone is reestablished. Douglas and Haldane showed that lack of oxygen is essential in this experiment, for periodic breathing does not occur if pure oxygen be inhaled with the last few breaths of the forced breathing. The promptness with which lack of oxygen affects the breathing in this experiment may be explained by the fact that, when the oxygen tension in the lungs is sufficiently reduced, the oxygen want is felt almost immediately by the respiratory center. There is no such "buffer" interposed as is the case when carbon dioxide controls respiration.

Cheyne-Stokes breathing can also be produced artificially by having an individual breathe through a large tube, with a capacity of from 400 to 800 c.c., in which a small vessel containing soda-lime has been placed for the absorption of carbon dioxide. Under these conditions there is no accumulation of carbon dioxide in the lungs, but there is a progressive fall in the alveolar oxygen owing to the unusually large dead space. This lack of oxygen finally affects the respiratory center, and when the individual then overcomes the artificial dead space by deeper respirations, periodic breathing from lack of oxygen occurs. Here, as after prolonged deep breathing, the reduced oxygen supply exerts a periodic effect upon the respiratory center.

It is probable that the type of periodic breathing which occurs at high altitudes is in every way analogous to that produced experimentally by a lack of oxygen. Douglas found that as he ascended to higher altitudes the periodic breathing, which follows the apnea after forced breathing, is more easily produced and lasts for a longer time. At still higher levels it becomes practically continuous.

**Lessened Irritability of Respiratory Center.**—We have mentioned that there is a tendency to periodic respiration during sleep, during hiberna-

tion and during the action of hypnotic drugs, such as morphin and chloral. It seems probable that in these conditions there is a lessened irritability of the respiratory center and that in some way this interferes with the normal maintenance of regular respiration. The center, being depressed, does not appear to respond so promptly as it should to slight alterations in the composition of the blood and in this way it permits irregular accumulations of acid products in the blood. Whatever be the explanation of this type of Cheyne-Stokes respiration, it should be noted that during various conditions, which themselves predispose to irregular breathing, such as high altitudes and cardiorenal disease, the irregular breathing is frequently accentuated during sleep. At this time the lessened irritability of the center adds another causative factor to those already present.

**Clinical Types.**—The most common clinical examples of Cheyne-Stokes respiration are those which occur in association with diseases of the heart, the kidneys and the blood vessels. As yet, few analyses of the alveolar air have been made in these patients. In the case recently reported by White, Ryffel, Poulton, Johnson and Chisholm, the total pulmonary ventilation was increased. The tension of carbon dioxid in the lungs was always low, and examination of the blood showed a reduced alkali reserve. The alveolar tension of oxygen was, on the whole, high. Even at the end of the period of apnea, there was no marked reduction of oxygen tension below the normal.

ALVEOLAR AIR IN CHEYNE-STOKES RESPIRATION  
(FROM WHITE, RYFFEL, POULTON, JOHNSON AND CHISHOLM)

Date	Pulmonary Ventilation Liters per minute (Measured wet at 37° C. and at prevailing atmospheric pressure)	Respirations	Composition of Alveolar Air			
			CO <sub>2</sub>		O	
			%	Mm. Hg.	%	Mm. Hg.
April 11th....	15.6	(beginning of dyspnea)	4.2	30	11.7	83
		(end of dyspnea).....	2.3	16	18.4	131
April 16th....						
April 28th....	11.1	(beginning of dyspnea)	4.3	31	15.0	106
		(end of dyspnea).....	3.1	22	18.0	127
May 2nd.....	11.9					
Normal man.			5.6	40	14.1 (Ap prox.)	100
Limits of variations in normal subjects...	10.8		5.0	36		
	5.6		6.0	43		

**CARDIOVASCULAR CHANGES.**—If these observations are confirmed for other patients, then the Cheyne-Stokes breathing of cardiovascular disease cannot be due to insufficient pulmonary ventilation. It is possibly due to circulatory changes, whereby the oxygen supply to the respiratory center is rendered inadequate. The fact that oxygen inhalations frequently relieve Cheyne-Stokes breathing of this type favors the view of a deficient oxygen supply. These circulatory changes may be caused either by a slowing of the general blood stream, or by constriction of the vessels leading to the center. Disturbances in the blood vessels are suggested by the fact that Cheyne-Stokes breathing is frequently associated with general or cerebral arteriosclerosis.

Possibly, as Barbour suggests, the alternations in circulatory velocity depend upon the condition of the heart muscle. During the apnea an

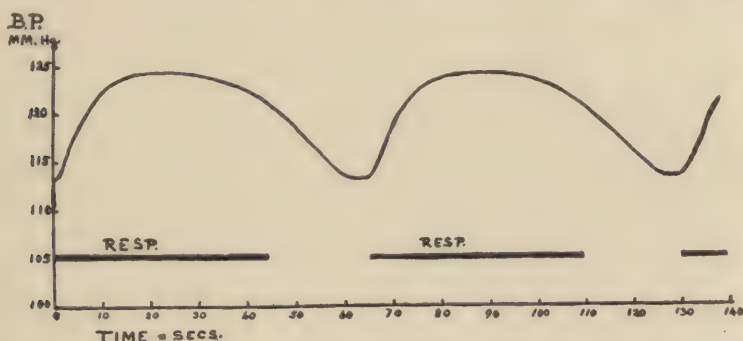


Fig. 74.—Variations in Systolic Blood Pressure During Cheyne-Stokes Respiration. (From Clark and Hamill, *Jour. Pharmacol. and Exp. Therap.*)

asphyxia of the heart may cause weakness of this organ, a fall of blood pressure, and a reduction in the circulation through the brain. This stimulates respiration and the improved aëration of the blood strengthens the heart and improves the cerebral circulation. Blood pressure changes have been frequently observed during the course of Cheyne-Stokes respiration. In the type commonly seen in cardiorenal patients the pressure falls during the apneic period (Fig. 74).

**Cerebral Compression.**—We have said that periodic breathing may be produced experimentally by acute cerebral compression. An example of this is seen in Figure 75. This type of periodic breathing occurs when the intracranial pressure has been raised to a high point, approaching or exceeding the normal arterial blood pressure. Under such conditions, the arterial pressure must be elevated above the level of intracranial pressure in order to supply the brain with blood. The pressure rises, yet frequently it does not remain constantly above the level of intracranial pressure, but fluctuates above and below it. When it is above and the brain receives blood the animal breathes; when it is below and the brain is anemic respi-



ration ceases. Manifestly the mechanism here is different from that which occurs in the Cheyne-Stokes breathing of high altitudes. In cerebral compression, the periods of respiration correspond with an increased supply of



Fig. 75.—Irregular Breathing During an Acute Increase of Intracranial Pressure Induced Experimentally. Upper Tracing Indicates the Respirations, the Downstroke Being Inspiration. The More Constant of the Lower Tracings Indicates the Intracranial Pressure, the More Variable Indicates the Blood Pressure. The Latter Has Risen and Now Fluctuates Above and Below the Intracranial Pressure. Respirations Occur When the Blood Pressure Is Sufficiently High to Supply Blood to the Brain. (From Eyster, Jour. Exp. Med.)

oxygen to the centers; in other types of Cheyne-Stokes breathing, the dyspnea occurs when the supply of oxygen falls. As Eyster has pointed out, a slight or temporary diminution of the oxygen supply to the center may stimulate it, while a marked deprivation of oxygen over a longer period of time may reduce its irritability. It is doubtful if the type of irregular respiration produced experimentally by high intracranial pressure is comparable to any seen clinically except that due to an acute cerebral compression. The respiratory curves obtained during such experiments are often extremely irregular and resemble those of Biot's breathing. There is also a difference in the relation between the respirations and the blood pressure changes, for while a heightened blood pressure causes the periods of respiration in acute cerebral compression, there is a fall of pressure before the dyspneic periods in the type of Cheyne-Stokes breathing which complicate cardiovascular or renal disease.

## Respiration and Acid Intoxication

In his experiments on acid intoxications, Walter noted that after rabbits had been given hydrochloric acid, their respirations increased. This hyperpnea, which is a constant manifestation of acid intoxication, becomes extreme in the "air hunger" of diabetic coma. Its cause has been discussed in the section dealing with acidosis. Briefly stated, the excess of acid in the body decomposes some of the blood carbonate. This loss of alkali tends to increase the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood, and thus stimulates the respiratory center. As a result, the amount of air respired is increased and the tension of carbon dioxid in the alveolar air and in the blood is reduced to such a point that the chemical reaction of the blood, which depends in the main upon the ratio of carbon dioxid to carbonates, approaches the normal.

Incidentally, these changes alter the dissociation curve of hemoglobin in such a manner that its capacity for carrying oxygen is somewhat reduced. This alteration may be produced by adding either carbon dioxid (Fig. 70) or lactic acid (Fig. 76) to the blood.

Although the respiratory changes just mentioned—hyperpnea, lessened blood carbonates, and reduced tension of carbon dioxid in the alveoli and the blood—are present in most forms of acidosis, it should not be inferred that they are necessarily due to this cause. Any stimulus applied to the respiratory center may lead to similar changes. This apparently occurs in oxygen want and perhaps in other conditions. The manner in which oxygen want is believed to lead to respiratory changes similar to those observed in acidosis will be discussed in the succeeding section.

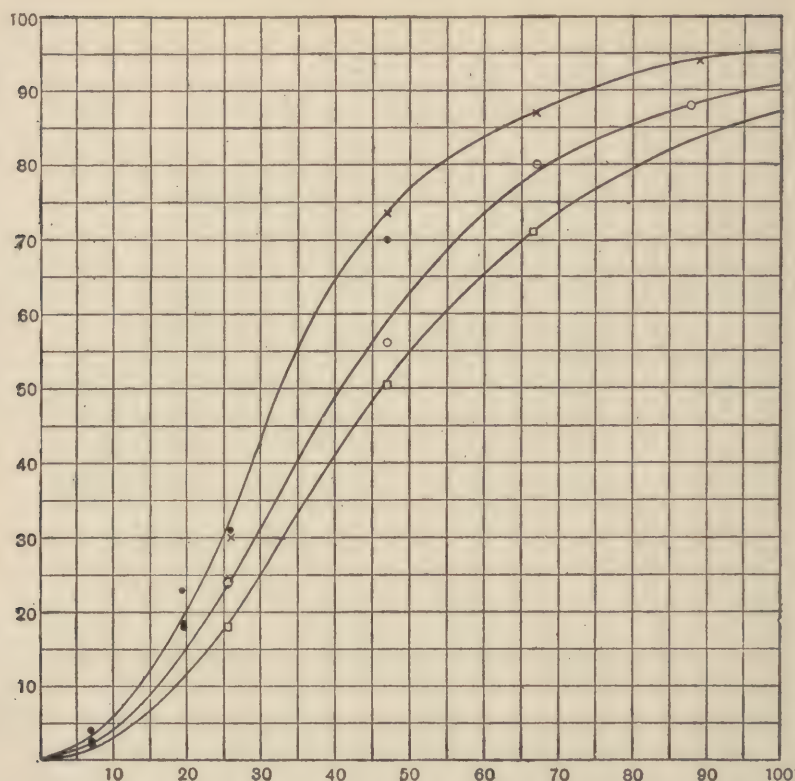


Fig. 76.—Curves of Hemoglobin Dissociation When Lactic Acid Is Added to Sheep's Blood. Percentages of Saturation of Hemoglobin with Oxygen Are Indicated on the Left. The Oxygen Pressure Is Shown Below. The Upper Curve Represents Normal Blood, the Middle Curve Blood Which Contains 0.04 Per Cent Added Lactic Acid, and the Lower Curve Blood Which Contains 0.08 Per Cent Added Lactic Acid. (From Barcroft, *Jour. Physiol.*)

## Respiration at High Altitudes

### *Mountain Sickness*

It is well known that at the great elevations which are attained on high mountains and during balloon ascensions men are subject to a series of disturbances caused by the diminished atmospheric pressure. To these the name of mountain sickness has been given. These symptoms usually begin at heights of about 10,000 feet with an atmospheric pressure of approximately 530 mm. of mercury. Among the symptoms of mountain sickness are fatigue, prostration, headache, loss of appetite, nausea, palpitation and dyspnea. All these, and especially the dyspnea, are markedly increased on exertion. The breath can be held only a short time. Periodic breathing of the Cheyne-Stokes type is apt to occur,



and at night this may seriously disturb the sleep. The lips and skin are bluish. These symptoms and signs are most marked during the first two or three days after reaching high elevations. Later they begin to diminish in intensity and, after one or two weeks, a certain amount of acclimatization to the high altitude has taken place.

**Lack of Oxygen.**—The chief cause of mountain sickness is lack of oxygen. This is shown especially by the immediate relief afforded when pure oxygen is breathed. Here, as in all respiratory conditions, it is the partial pressure of the oxygen rather than the atmospheric pressure which is of the greatest significance. By using oxygen inhalations, balloonists have attained great heights. It is evident, however, that eventually a height will be reached where the pressure of even pure oxygen will not be sufficient to maintain life. Loewy places this limit at about 12,000 meters (about 40,000

feet) and states that in order to attain greater heights it would be necessary for the balloonist to live in a closed compartment in which an increased atmospheric pressure could be maintained artificially.

**Increased Ventilation.**—When a person is exposed to reduced oxygen pressures, certain compensatory mechanisms are brought into play. Boycott and Haldane studied the effect of a few hours' stay in a steel chamber under varying degrees of diminished pressure, and they found that the alveolar tension of carbon dioxide remained constant until a barometric pressure of about 550 mm. of mercury had been reached. Further reductions of pressure caused hyperpnea, as was shown by the rapid fall of the alveolar tension of carbon dioxide. This fall at low barometric pressure was caused by the low oxygen tension, for it did not occur if the individual were exposed to equally low barometric pressures when the air in the chamber contained a large percentage of oxygen (Fig. 77).

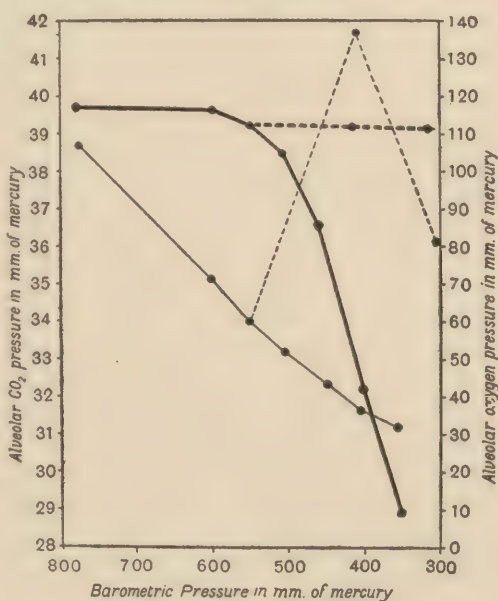


Fig. 77.—The Effect of Reduced Atmospheric Pressures Upon the Tension of Alveolar Gases. Note that As the Tension of Oxygen (Fine Line) Falls, There Is at First No Change in the Tension of Carbon Dioxid (Heavy Line), But that at a Certain Point the Latter Begins to Fall Rapidly on Account of the Increased Pulmonary Ventilation. The Dotted Lines Indicate the Effect of Adding Oxygen to the Air Breathed Without Changing Its Barometric Pressure. (From Boycott and Haldane, *Jour. Physiol.*)

It is well known that, in addition to this mechanism for an immediate increase of the pulmonary ventilation at low oxygen tensions, there are other protective factors which are brought into play during the acclimatization which occurs when individuals live at high altitudes for some

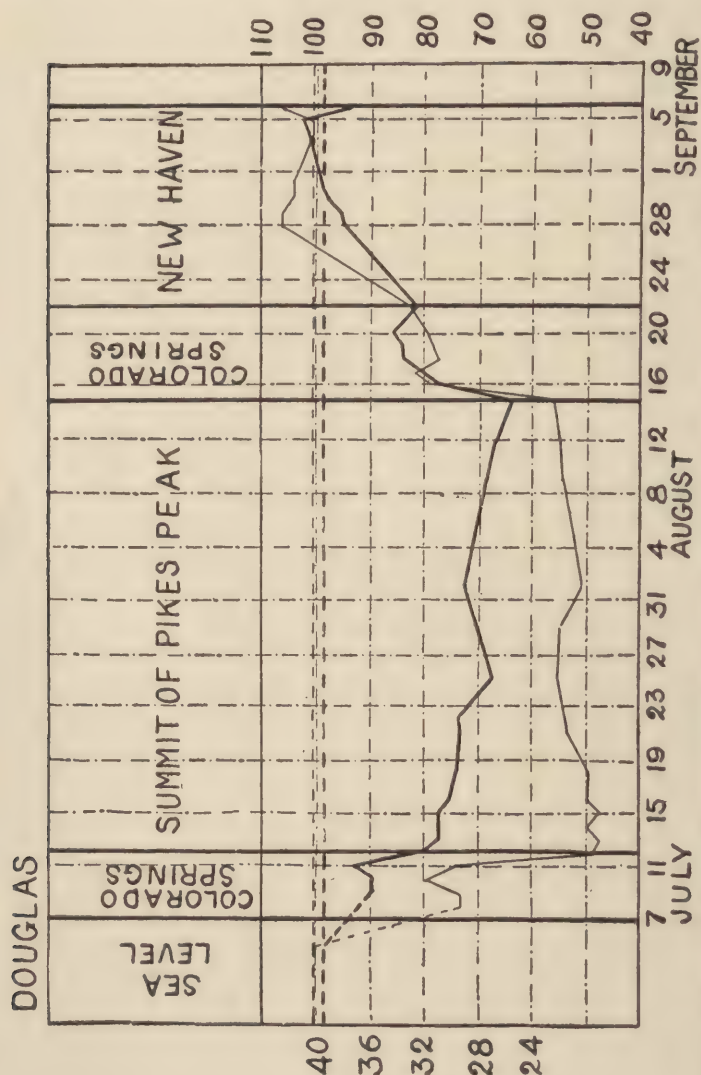


Fig. 77A.—The Effect of Residence in a High Altitude upon the Alveolar Tension of CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub>. Note that the CO<sub>2</sub> Tension (heavy line) in the Lungs fell gradually for many days after reaching the summit of Pike's Peak and that after the return to Sea Level it required over a week before the Alveolar Tension of Carbon Dioxide returned to normal. (From McLeod's Phys. and Biochem. in Med. Med.)

time. Under such conditions the increased pulmonary ventilation is greater for a given reduction in oxygen pressure than that which occurs in the acute experiment. According to Zuntz, Loewy, Müller and Caspari, the following increases in pulmonary ventilation occur at different altitudes:

at 1,600 meters about	15 per cent increase
at 2,900 meters about	45 per cent increase
at 3,600 meters about	58 per cent increase

and at 4,560 meters about 114 per cent increase (Loewy).

This increased pulmonary ventilation, which develops gradually, does not immediately disappear on a return to sea level. If, after some weeks' residence at a high altitude, the individual returns to a low altitude, the normal carbon dioxid tension in his alveoli may not be reëstablished for ten days or more (Fig. 77a).

**Causes of Acclimatization.**—The increased pulmonary ventilation that develops during acclimatization to high altitudes is associated with changes in the acid-base equilibrium of the body. Barcroft found that at high altitudes the dissociation curve of hemoglobin, when the blood was exposed to a certain tension of carbon dioxid, correspond to that observed when small amounts of lactic acid had been added. When a return was made to sea level after prolonged residence at a high latitude, changes of an opposite type gradually took place (Fig. 76).

Various interpretations have been given for these changes in acid-base equilibrium which take place during acclimatization. At one time it was thought that the lack of oxygen led to an abnormal formation of organic acids in the body and that this acidosis was responsible for the increased pulmonary ventilation in acclimatized persons. No abnormal acid, however, has been demonstrated. Furthermore, the urine becomes more alkaline during the process of acclimatization (Sundstroem). Evidently, therefore, the changes observed are due to an alteration of the acid-base equilibrium of the body which depends in part upon elimination of alkali by the kidneys. The most probable explanation for these changes appears to be the following (Henderson, Haldane). The reduced oxygen in the blood stimulates the respiratory center and causes hyperpnea. This lessens the alveolar tension of carbon dioxid in the lungs and leads to a corresponding reduction of the carbonic acid in the blood. The immediate effect of this reduction of carbonic acid is an alkalosis, for the reaction of the body fluids depends upon the ratio that exists between their content of carbonic acid and of carbonates. The alkalosis tends to lessen the primary excitation of the respiratory center resulting from oxygen want. It also interferes with the passage of oxygen into the tissues, for the dissociation of hemoglobin is lessened by alkalosis. Gradually, however, the body adjusts itself to the new conditions. Alkali is excreted in the urine and this continues until the fixed alkalies are reduced to such a point that the reaction of the body fluids becomes approximately normal. The early alkalosis lessens and the rate of pulmonary ventilation is sustained at a high level by the continued lack of oxygen. Naturally the elimination of alkalies by the kidneys takes time and this accounts for the period of acclimatization.



**Further Compensatory Factors.**—A second compensatory mechanism for aiding the body to withstand the low oxygen pressure of high altitudes is an increase in the hemoglobin and in the number of red corpuscles. This is discussed more fully elsewhere (p. 625), but it may be said, in passing, that this increase in hemoglobin is not due solely to an increase in blood concentration by reason of a reduced volume of blood in the body. After prolonged residence at high altitudes, there is usually either a normal or an increased blood volume. It serves the useful purpose of increasing the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood. Theoretically the transportation of oxygen to the tissues could also be assisted by a more rapid circulation of blood. At the present time, however, there is no evidence that this plays any important part in assisting respiration at high altitudes.

## Increased Atmospheric Pressures

### *Caisson Disease*

Pathological disturbances from being subjected to increased atmospheric pressure are rarely encountered except when work must be done below the surface of water or of very yielding earth. Under such conditions the workman, enclosed in a diving suit or working in a so-called caisson, is surrounded by air under sufficiently high pressure to withstand the pressure of the water. Very few physiological effects result directly from such increased barometric pressures. The voice may become hoarse, and sudden changes of pressure on the tympanic membranes may cause disturbances of hearing. The feelings of oppression and of lassitude from which divers sometimes suffer are due, not to the increased pressure but to insufficient ventilation, particularly an excess of carbon dioxide, as well as to an overheating of the body. Animals can withstand enormous increases in atmospheric pressure and only very high pressures are distinctly harmful. Air at 15 atmospheres of pressure or oxygen at 3 atmospheres may cause convulsions. Of more practical importance, perhaps, is the observation of L. Smith, that pneumonia may result from prolonged exposure to less marked increases of oxygen pressures.

**Symptoms from Decompression.**—Serious symptoms, therefore, are not produced directly by increased atmospheric pressures. They only develop during or after the release from the high pressure and they are most apt to occur when there has been a rapid decompression. As the French express it, a man pays when he comes out of the caisson. These symptoms of overrapid decompression consist most commonly of severe pains in the extremities, the "bends." In more serious cases, however, stupor, pains and paralyses, referable to the central nervous system, and particularly to the spinal cord, are prominent.

**Pathogenesis.**—The cause of caisson disease, first definitely established by P. Bert, is the liberation of free nitrogen gas in the blood vessels and in the tissues. In accordance with well-known physical laws, liquids dissolve larger amounts of gas at higher pressures. At one atmosphere of pressure, for example, the blood dissolves approximately one volume per cent of nitrogen, and at two atmospheres it dissolves two volumes per cent. When a person is exposed to an increased barometric pressure, the amount of nitrogen gas dissolved in his blood is increased. The blood rapidly absorbs this extra nitrogen in the lungs and carries it to the various parts of the body. Here the tension of nitrogen also becomes increased. Since, as Vernon has shown, fats dissolve five or six times as much nitrogen as blood, it takes some time (over two hours) before the tissues are saturated with nitrogen.

During decompression the reverse changes take place. The extra nitrogen of the blood is given off in the lungs and the reduction in tension allows the blood to take up the extra nitrogen that has been absorbed by the tissues. This is then conveyed to the lungs and eliminated. If sufficient time is not allowed for this transportation and elimination of the nitrogen dissolved in the tissues, a reduction of pressure will set free bubbles of nitrogen gas either within the tissues or within the blood vessels. The latter may act as emboli. The effect which these bubbles produce depends upon their location. The most common of the most serious effects, viz., damage to the spinal cord, is due to a localization of the nitrogen bubbles in this region.

**Treatment.**—From its pathogenesis it is evident, that caisson disease may be avoided by lengthening the period of decompression, so that there will be an opportunity for the extra nitrogen to escape from the body without forming bubbles within the tissues or blood vessels, and practical experience confirms this view. The occurrence of caisson disease is influenced by various accessory factors. Fat persons are more liable to the disease, probably because their fatty tissues have a greater capacity for storing nitrogen. The time of decompression may be shortened by having the subject exercise, because exercise increases the general rate of circulation very markedly, and so shortens the time for eliminating the nitrogen. Inhalations of oxygen are also of service. By their use the partial pressure of nitrogen in the alveolar air is reduced, and the interchange between the venous blood and the air is more complete. Finally, the symptoms of caisson disease are always improved and often cured if the subject be recompressed as soon as symptoms appear. By this means the bubbles already formed are made smaller, no new gas escapes from the body fluids, and that which has already escaped is more rapidly absorbed.

## Diminished Oxygen-carrying Capacity of the Blood

When the hemoglobin of the blood is diminished, or when a part of it is converted into compounds which cannot act as oxygen-carriers, the respiration of the tissues is made more difficult on account of the restricted oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood. Normal blood with 100 per cent hemoglobin has an oxygen-carrying capacity of about 18 volumes of oxygen gas per 100 c.c. of blood. Loewy has calculated that with a normal circulation and during rest the blood loses on the average 6.5 volumes per 100 c.c. during its passage through the capillaries. If the hemoglobin in the blood be diminished, the amount of oxygen that can be carried will be proportionately reduced. It is evident, therefore, that, if the hemoglobin were diminished to about one-third of the normal, it would no longer be possible, with the usual rate of circulation, to supply the tissues with the customary amount of oxygen, even though the hemoglobin gave up all of its oxygen. Before this point is reached some compensatory mechanism becomes necessary, if the tissues are to receive their usual supply of this gas.

### *Carbon Monoxid Poisoning*

An acute oxygen deficiency may result from poisoning with carbon monoxid. This gas has an affinity for hemoglobin which is from 150 to 200 times greater than the affinity possessed by oxygen. When blood is exposed to a mixture of these two gases, they are absorbed by the hemoglobin in accordance with this ratio and with the law of mass action, i. e., the relative amounts absorbed are in the proportion of the partial pressure of oxygen to the partial pressure of carbon monoxid multiplied by about 175. For example, exposure to air containing 0.15 per cent of carbon monoxid (equivalent in hemoglobin affinity to 26 per cent oxygen) will cause over half of the hemoglobin to combine with carbon monoxid, and will leave less than half to be combined with oxygen.

Poisoning by carbon monoxid is caused most frequently by exposures to escaped illuminating gases or to the products of incomplete combustion of coal or coke. The poisonous effects result from oxygen-starvation of the tissues, owing to a loss of functioning hemoglobin. Haldane has shown that carbon monoxid is not toxic except in this way. Animals may be kept alive, even while practically all of the hemoglobin is saturated with carbon monoxid, if they be placed under an oxygen pressure of two atmospheres. At this pressure enough oxygen may be carried in the blood plasma in simple solution to supply the needs of the tissues, and the animal then remains alive.

When a person is exposed to carbon monoxid gas in small quantities it is absorbed gradually by the blood, and symptoms do not usually develop until the latter is about 25 per cent saturated. At this time the patient



notices that any unusual exertion causes dyspnea, dizziness and palpitation. With further absorption, throbbing and dizziness become more continuous, and with a saturation between 50 and 60 per cent, mental disturbances begin. Coma develops, and death finally occurs when from 60 to 85 per cent of the hemoglobin of the blood is saturated with carbon monoxid.

In the treatment of carbon monoxid poisoning, the most essential measure is an abundance of fresh air, supplemented by oxygen inhalations. By its mass action the oxygen of the air gradually replaces the carbon monoxid attached to the hemoglobin, and after about three hours the majority of the poisonous gas is eliminated from the body. If pure oxygen gas be administered, the greater partial pressure of the oxygen causes a more rapid disintegration of the carbon monoxid hemoglobin. A larger amount of oxygen is also carried in the plasma in simple solution.

### ***Methemoglobinemia***

Hemoglobin may also be rendered inefficient as a carrier of oxygen by being converted into methemoglobin. This conversion is caused by various drugs and infections. Among the former are potassium chlorate, the nitrites, acetanilid, and other coal tar products. The effect of methemoglobinemia upon respiration is similar to the effect produced by carbon monoxid. The patient's appearance, however, is quite different. In carbon monoxid poisoning the skin and mucous membranes have a pink tint, owing to the color of carbon monoxid hemoglobin, whereas in methemoglobinemia the appearance suggests cyanosis on account of the dark color of methemoglobin.

### ***Anemia***

A diminished oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood is also caused by anemia. With an acute hemorrhage, the symptoms of oxygen deprivation usually develop when about 50 per cent of the total blood is lost. These symptoms are due in part to the diminished blood volume, and are in part relieved when the loss is replaced by an absorption of fluid from the tissues or the alimentary tract. In the more chronic forms of anemia, patients may live with from 10 to 20 per cent of the normal amount of hemoglobin to the unit of blood volume. With from 30 to 50 per cent of hemoglobin, they are usually fairly comfortable and may be able to do light work. Dyspnea appears only on exertion. It is apparent that, in severe chronic anemias, far greater reductions of hemoglobin are tolerated than is the case in carbon monoxid poisoning. Some compensatory mechanism must operate to prevent the dyspnea and other symptoms of lack of oxygen, which we should expect theoretically (page 382) and which we do find in fact in carbon monoxid poisoning.

**Respiratory Compensation.**—By what mechanism is the anemic pa-

tient enabled to accommodate himself to such low percentages of hemoglobin? His total metabolism is not less than normal, and it is often somewhat greater. Only on exertion does the anemic individual show a restriction of his metabolic processes as compared with the normal. The tension of oxygen in his alveolar air is normal, or nearly normal. Indeed, since this tension is normally sufficient to saturate about 96 per cent of the hemoglobin in the blood, little would be gained by increased pulmonary ventilation. The respiratory compensation in chronic anemia must, therefore, lie either in the blood itself, or in the rapidity of its circulation. It was at one time thought that the hemoglobin of anemic blood might differ from that of normal blood in its power to carry oxygen. We now know, however, that this is not the case. The oxygen-carrying capacity of anemic blood is directly proportional to the amount of hemoglobin which it contains.

Two methods remain, which may play parts in making it possible for the anemic patient to carry on his gaseous metabolism in spite of a marked reduction in his hemoglobin. Either the rate of circulation is increased, so that the reduced amounts of hemoglobin are used more frequently for transporting oxygen, or else the oxyhemoglobin which reaches the tissues gives up unusually large amounts of oxygen, and returns to the lungs in an unusually reduced state. It is impossible, at the present time, to determine positively which of these two methods is the more important in the chronic anemias of man. By an indirect method of determining the total blood flow in man, Plesch found that this was always increased in anemias, and that this increase was approximately proportional to the severity of the anemia. According to his view, the anemic patient compensates for his lack of hemoglobin almost entirely by maintaining a more rapid circulation. The hemic murmurs, so frequently encountered in such patients, could then be attributed to the unusually rapid rate of blood flow. It must be admitted, however, that it is uncommon to encounter marked hypertrophy of the heart even after long-continued, severe anemias. We should expect these if, as calculated by Plesch, the heart continually did three or more times its usual amount of work. Wiezacker in experimental anemias did not find any such marked increases in the circulation. Concerning the degree to which the hemoglobin gives up oxygen to the tissues of anemic patients, there is, likewise, considerable difference of opinion. Plesch found no marked variations from the normal in his gas analyses from the lungs of man. On the other hand, Mohr found a marked reduction in the oxygen content of venous blood taken from animals that had been rendered anemic by hemorrhage. This indicates that the hemoglobin had given up an unusually large proportion of its oxygen during its passage through the tissues. So far as the circulation in the arm of man is concerned, there is usually found in anemia a normal, or even a reduced, blood flow. Consequently the anemic blood in passing through the arm, gives

up an unusual proportion of its oxygen (Morawitz and Röhmer, Lunds-gaard). One cannot infer, however, that analogous changes take place in other organs of the body.

To what extent the respiratory compensation in anemia is due to an increased blood flow and to what extent it is due to an increased reduction of hemoglobin in the tissues we do not know. In extreme cases of anemia, however, the latter would not in itself be sufficient to meet the respiratory requirements of the tissues. The oxygen-carrying capacity of blood containing 100 per cent hemoglobin is approximately 18 cubic centimeters of oxygen per 100 c.c.; and normally about 6 volume per cent are lost during the passage of blood through the tissues. With 30 per cent hemoglobin the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood would be reduced to approximately 5.5 volume per cent. In this case the entire amount of oxygen would have to be taken from the blood during its passage through the tissues to meet the tissue requirements, if there were no increase in the rate of circulation. An anemia of less than 30 per cent hemoglobin would therefore necessitate an increased rate of circulation to supply the oxygen needs of the tissues, even though the hemoglobin were completely reduced in the capillaries.

### *Cardiorespiratory Disease*

In diseases of the cardiovascular system and in diseases of the lungs, respiratory changes are common. Ventilation of the lungs provides for an interchange of gases between the external air and the blood. The circulation maintains the interchange between the pulmonary alveoli and the tissues. If either is deficient, the interchange in the tissues is lessened. Separate as these functions at first appear, they are intimately connected in the living organism by both physiological and pathological relationships. Changes in the lungs may affect the pulmonary capillaries, the heart, and the circulation in general. Changes in the circulation may cause anatomical alterations in the lungs and even without these may alter the external respiration. For these reasons and because many of the respiratory alterations in diseases of the heart or of the lungs are not fully understood, the cardiovascular system and the lungs with their air passages may be considered, from the respiratory standpoint, as a single complex unit.

**Effect of Exercise.**—We have seen that exercise markedly increases the rate of metabolism. Walking at a moderate pace triples the basal metabolic rate, while violent exercise may increase it nine times or more. The increased interchange of gases in the tissues is accomplished partly by an increased flow of blood and partly by an increase in pulmonary ventilation. With moderate exercise, the pulmonary ventilation increases proportionately but with more violent exercise the pulmonary ventilation increases to an excessive degree; because, according to Pearce, the circulation fails to keep pace with the increasing demands of the organism. In any event,



it is evident that exercise places an unusual strain not only on the heart but also on the functions of the lungs. If either fails to respond to the increasing demands of exercise, some compensation by the other may possibly occur; but as a rule the exchange of gases in the tissues becomes deficient. Symptoms due to oxygen-want or to an accumulation of carbonic acid then result. For this reason many respiratory symptoms are common to both cardiac and pulmonary disease and these symptoms usually become more accentuated when the individual exercises.

### *Short-circuiting the Pulmonary Circulation*

In either cardiac or pulmonary disease some of the blood may pass from the right to the left side of the heart without being properly ventilated in the lungs. This occurs in certain cases of congenital heart disease where there is an opening between the two sides of the heart and is seen particularly when an open septum ventriculorum is associated with pulmonary stenosis. It occurs in pulmonary disease wherever some of the blood passes through portions of the lungs that are not properly ventilated.

Under such circumstances, blood, that retains more or less completely its venous character, is mixed in the left heart with the aerated blood coming from the ventilated portions of the lung. The tension of *oxygen* in the mixed arterial blood will then be lower than normal, for hemoglobin is practically saturated in its passage through normal alveoli and no increase in pulmonary ventilation can compensate for the lack of oxygen in the venous blood that short-circuits the lungs. Loewy has calculated that, with the usual rate of circulation, a passage of one-half of the blood through portions of the lungs where it cannot be aerated will reduce the oxygen content of the mixed arterial blood from about 18 volumes per cent to about 11.5 volumes per cent. Such a reduction in the oxygen content of the arterial blood tends to produce cyanosis; for cyanosis is due to the presence of unusual quantities of reduced hemoglobin in the peripheral capillaries. Many cases of general cyanosis are indeed due to short-circuits in the pulmonary circulation.

With respect to *carbonic acid*, conditions differ essentially from those relating to oxygen. A short-circuit of the lungs tends to increase the carbonic acid content of the arterial blood. This stimulates the respiratory center and causes a better ventilation of the unaffected portion of the lung. The blood, which passes through this, may lose so much carbonic acid that the amount in the mixed arterial blood is not far above normal. Under such circumstances the alveolar air would show a lessened content of carbon dioxide while arterial blood would show a normal or increased amount.

**Pulmonary Causes.**—Many pulmonary lesions may permit an insufficient aëration of air passing through limited parts of the lungs. Any obstruction to the entrance of air into a certain area will tend to have this

effect; provided there is not at the same time a local reduction in the rate of circulation. In broncho-pneumonia, where many of the small bronchi are filled with exudate, the cyanosis so frequently observed is attributable to this cause (Fig. 78). In lobar pneumonia the circulation through the diseased lung is often partly interrupted so that little short-circuiting may occur and no cyanosis may be present. When a portion of lung is collapsed as in pneumothorax or pleural effusion, a certain amount of short-circuiting occurs in the collapsed lung. A very rapid rate of respiration may

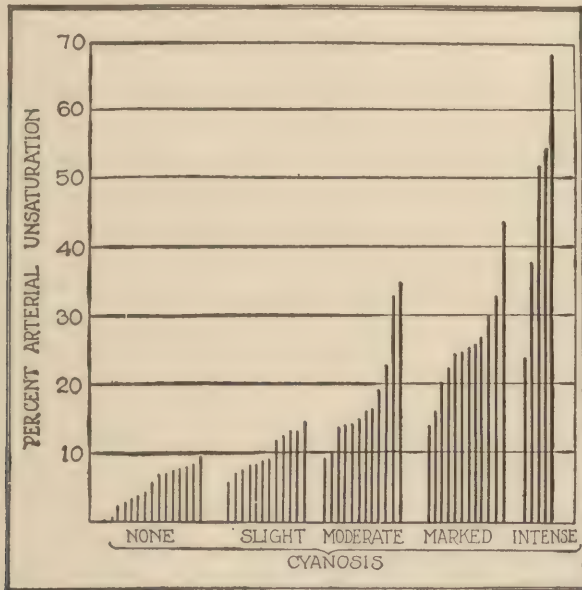


Fig. 78.—Comparison of the Degree of Cyanosis and the Percentage of Hemoglobin Unsaturation in Arterial Blood. Most of the Patients had Bronchopneumonia. (From Stadie, Jour. Exp. Med.)

fail to ventilate the entire lung and in this way it may lead to anoxemia and cyanosis (Meakins).

**Bubbles in the Air Passages.**—Bubbles in the air passages tend, of course, to interrupt the free exchange of gases in the corresponding portions of the lungs. In this way they may cause a short-circuit in portions of the lungs in the manner just described. In addition, however, such bubbles exert a selective action on the passage of gases through them. Carbon dioxide, being very soluble, passes through thin layers of fluid more readily than oxygen does. The presence of moisture in the air passages may therefore cause anoxemia and cyanosis even though there is no great accumulation of carbonic acid in the blood.

## Stenosis of the Upper Air Passages

Stenosis of the upper air passages, though rather infrequent, may be produced by a great variety of causes. Among these are inflammations, edemas and tumors of the larynx, compression of the trachea by tumors, goiters, and aneurisms, the lodgment of foreign bodies in the upper air passages, and spasm of the glottis.

**Characteristic Breathing.**—In stenosis of the upper air passages the respirations become less frequent but more deep. The respiratory muscles commonly used work more forcefully, and the accessory respiratory muscles are brought into play. Since the inspiratory enlargement of the thorax is not followed by a free entrance of air, there results an unusual negative pressure within the thoracic cavity during inspiration, which leads to retraction of certain portions of the chest wall, particularly the lower lateral portions, the intercostal spaces, and the supraclavicular and the supra-sternal fossae. During inspiration the diaphragm may ascend (paradoxical movements). As a rule, inspiration is lengthened more than expiration. The midcapacity of the lungs is increased.

The slow and deep breathing which occurs in stenosis of the upper air passages is distinctly advantageous to the patient, for the same minute volume of respired air gives a greater pulmonary ventilation on account of the dead space factor.

**Pathogenesis.**—The cause of the characteristic breathing which develops in stenosis of the upper air passages is not well understood. Morawitz and Siebeck have shown that the dyspnea develops immediately after an artificial stenosis is produced, and before there is time for any change in the composition of the alveolar air. They have shown, furthermore, that in the milder types of stenosis no change in the composition of the alveolar air may be present, and that the total amount of air breathed may even be increased by 50 per cent. It would appear, therefore, that the change in breathing, induced by the milder forms of stenosis of the upper air passages, depends not upon chemical but upon mechanical changes. According to the theory of Hering and Breuer, nervous reflexes play a part in controlling respiration. They believed that each inspiratory distention of the lungs led to expiration through a stimulation of centripetal vagus fibers, and that the expiratory contraction of the lungs in turn caused reflex cessation of expiration, and the subsequent inspiration. The slower respiratory movements during stenosis of the upper air passages can be explained, in part at least, in accordance with this theory, for the above reflexes would not occur so promptly, when expansion or contraction of the lungs was interfered with by an obstruction to the entrance and exit of air. As the stenosis becomes more severe, the ventilation of the alveoli becomes more and more impaired, and there is added the chemical stimulus exerted



upon the respiratory center, first, by the increased tension of carbon dioxide and, later, by the lack of oxygen.

## Bronchial Asthma

Bronchial asthma is characterized clinically by paroxysms of severe dyspnea, which usually begin at night and usually subside after a few hours, leaving the patient relatively comfortable. In many cases, such attacks recur on successive nights, and there may be more or less shortness of breath between the attacks. The dyspnea of bronchial asthma affects the expiration particularly. This becomes two or three times as long as normal and is associated with activity of the expiratory muscles. The respirations are accom-

panied by wheezing sounds, and on auscultation numerous small musical râles can be heard over the lungs. These indicate an obstruction to the passage of air through the finer bronchi. Partly because this obstruction is more marked on expiration than on inspiration, the midcapacity of the lungs rapidly increases. In severe attacks there develops an enormous pulmonary distention, with an elevated horizontal position of the ribs, a widening of the intercostal spaces, a low position of the diaphragm

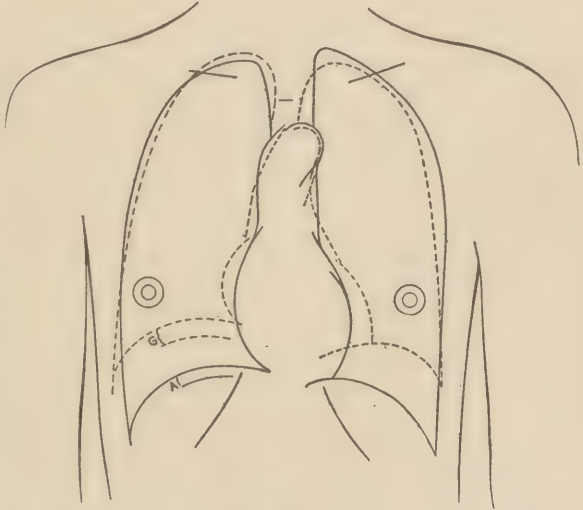


Fig. 79.—Pulmonary Distention During Asthma (Continuous Line) As Compared with Condition Some Weeks Later (Dotted Line). Note the Low Position of the Diaphragm, the Vertical Position of the Heart and the Small Excursion of the Diaphragm (A). (From Warren, *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*)

and a heart that is low, vertical, and in the median line. Ordinarily the pulmonary distention rapidly passes off at the end of the asthmatic attack, but in prolonged and continued attacks, and especially where there has been damage to the pulmonary tissues, restoration to the normal lung volume may take place very slowly. During the attack, the movements of the diaphragm are usually diminished in extent, but otherwise normal. Spasmodic contractions of the diaphragm have been described, but they are not necessarily present and cannot, as some have believed, be the sole cause of the asthmatic paroxysm.

**Narrowed Bronchioles.**—At the present time, all evidence favors the view that during the attack of asthma there is a marked narrowing of the lumina of the smaller bronchi. This narrowing is produced in part by a spasm of the bronchial muscles, and in part by a swelling of the mucous membrane and an exudate on its surface. The importance of the exudate is evident from the relief which frequently follows the expectoration of characteristic sputum, containing the spirals of Curschmann, Charcot-Leyden crystals and numerous eosinophilic cells. The sudden onset of the attack and its sudden disappearance suggest that spasm of the bronchial muscles plays an important part. It has been shown that a spasm of the bronchial muscles may be produced in animals by stimulation of the vagus nerve and by certain drugs. The drugs which relieve asthmatic attacks in man, particularly epinephrin and members of the atropin family, also relieve spasms of the bronchial muscles experimentally induced in animals. It is possible that the spasm of the bronchiole muscles and the exudates on the mucous membranes are both caused by nervous stimuli, which come over the vagus nerve and which stimulate both the secreting cells and the muscle fibers.

Extreme pulmonary distention is common during attacks of asthma. In this, as in other conditions which narrow the bronchioles, there is a tendency to trap air in the alveoli. The bronchioles are fine collapsible tubes suspended by a network of connecting fibers. During inspiration the pressure in the thoracic cavity lessens. This permits the incoming air to widen both the alveoli and the bronchioles, and it facilitates the entrance of air through the narrowed passages. During expiration, on the other hand, the pressure in the thoracic cavity rises and during forced expiration it becomes positive. This tends to lessen the diameters of the bronchioles; and where they are already narrow they may collapse during expiration. In this manner the narrowed bronchioles exercise a valve-like action. They obstruct the exit of air more than its entrance and so cause a marked distention of the alveoli.

The increased respiratory effort during the attack of asthma is evidently due to stimulation of the respiratory center. Just how this is stimulated is not certain. According to Stachelin and Schütze, the amount of air respired may be greater during the attack than in the interval. This does not necessarily mean a better ventilation of the alveoli; for the functional dead space may be increased and air may not penetrate freely to all of the alveoli. In severe attacks of asthma the marked cyanosis indicates a lack of oxygen in the blood. In part this results from imperfect ventilation of some alveoli, thus permitting venous blood to pass unaltered through certain portions of the lungs. Friedman and Jackson believe that the marked fluctuations in intrathoracic pressure influence the circulation unfavorably and that this is an important factor in producing the dyspnea of asthma.

**Etiology.**—The tendency to bronchial asthma is often inherited. The attacks themselves frequently appear and disappear in the most capricious manner. A change of residence or of climate may arrest the attacks and yet one may be unable to assign the exact cause for the improvement. On account of this capricious behavior, stress has frequently been laid on the neurotic element in bronchial asthma. We know that a spasm of the smooth muscles lining the bronchi may be produced by vagus stimulation and in certain cases of asthma the attacks seem to be influenced by reflexes, particularly from the nose. It may be, as H. Meyer suggests, that some cases of asthma depend upon an abnormal irritation of the nerve center which governs the bronchial muscles.

More recently attention has been focused upon protein sensitiveness as a cause of asthma. Anaphylactic shock in the guinea pig is due to a closure of the fine bronchi, owing to a spasm of the smooth muscle in their walls. Susceptible individuals suffer asthmatic attacks whenever they are exposed to certain proteins. In hay-asthma, for example, the attacks are induced in susceptible individuals by the pollen of certain plants. In horse-asthma, the patient develops symptoms when brought in contact with the dandruff of horses. Others have asthma when sleeping on feather pillows or after eating certain food. The relief which frequently follows the removal of nasal infections may be attributed to the removal of bacterial proteins to which the individual is sensitive. Protein sensitiveness appears to be the cause of most cases of asthma that develop in early life. The tendency thus to become sensitive is frequently inherited. Finally, a given individual may be sensitive to a variety of proteins, although not all of these cause clinical symptoms.

Asthmatic attacks which develop in later life are usually not due to protein sensitiveness. Frequently they accompany chronic disease of the lungs, particularly chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis and pulmonary emphysema.

## Pulmonary Emphysema

Chronic pulmonary emphysema is a disease of the lungs characterized by overdistention of the alveoli with thinning and disappearance of the interalveolar septa. The *senile type* of emphysema which may be regarded as an atrophic process of old age, and the *compensatory form* of emphysema, which occurs about atelectatic lung areas, pleural adhesions, etc., need not be discussed. The usual type of chronic pulmonary emphysema is the so-called *large-lunged variety*. Clinically, this is characterized by the signs of pulmonary distention and by the frequency with which it is associated with chronic bronchitis, and in the later stages with cardiac weakness. The physical manifestations of pulmonary distention are an increase



of the anteroposterior diameter of the chest, a relatively horizontal position of the ribs, an extension of the pulmonary resonance upward, downward and over the heart, and a flattening of the dome of the diaphragm. It should be remembered, however, that not all chronic increases in the size of the chest are associated with the pathological changes usually found in emphysematous lungs, and that they may not be accompanied by the symptoms and sequels commonly associated with this latter disease. For this reason, it is necessary to distinguish an increase in pulmonary volume from an increase which is accompanied by the pathological changes and clinical complications of pulmonary emphysema.

**Etiology.**—The cause of pulmonary emphysema is still obscure. The view of W. A. Freund, that the distention of the lungs follows a primary enlargement of the bony thorax with fixation in the enlarged position, has not found general acceptance. Freund himself did not find the characteristic bony and cartilaginous changes in all cases of emphysema, and others have expressed the belief that, even when present, they may be secondary to, or coördinate with, the changes in the lungs. Nevertheless, the favorable results which have followed an operative mobilization of the bony thorax in some patients indicates that the bony fixation may play a part in producing the symptoms of emphysema.

The more common view concerning the nature of emphysema is, that it is due to changes in the lung itself, and especially to changes in pulmonary elasticity. The microscopic examination of the elastic fibers in emphysematous lungs has led to varying opinions, some believing that these are reduced or degenerated, others that they show no essential changes. However this may be, the lungs of emphysematous patients do not collapse as completely as the normal when they are taken out of the body, and Bittorf and Forschbach have shown that, when emphysematous patients increase their pulmonary capacity as a result of work or stenosis of the upper air passages, the return to the normal does not occur as promptly as in the healthy individual.

**TWO FACTORS.**—Two factors, probably, unite to produce pulmonary emphysema. The first of these is a local disease of the lungs which affects the pulmonary elasticity. The second is an unusual distention of the lungs. Thus Hertz reported the case of a cornet player who developed emphysema, when he resumed his occupation after an attack of pneumonia. Subjection of the normal lungs to a distending force, as in a case of glass blowers and the players of musical wind instruments, does not necessarily, nor indeed usually, lead to emphysema. An increase in the midcapacity of the lungs has been demonstrated in glass blowers, without the usual clinical manifestations of pulmonary emphysema.

**BRONCHIAL DISEASE.**—Pulmonary emphysema is not infrequently associated with chronic bronchitis and chronic asthma. While emphysema predisposes to these conditions, it is also quite certain that the reverse

relationship is common. We have seen that an acute attack of asthma may produce an enormous pulmonary distention. Usually, this disappears promptly after the cessation of the attack. It may, however, disappear slowly, and with repeated attacks it tends to persist. Chronic bronchitis favors the development of emphysema in two ways: first, by

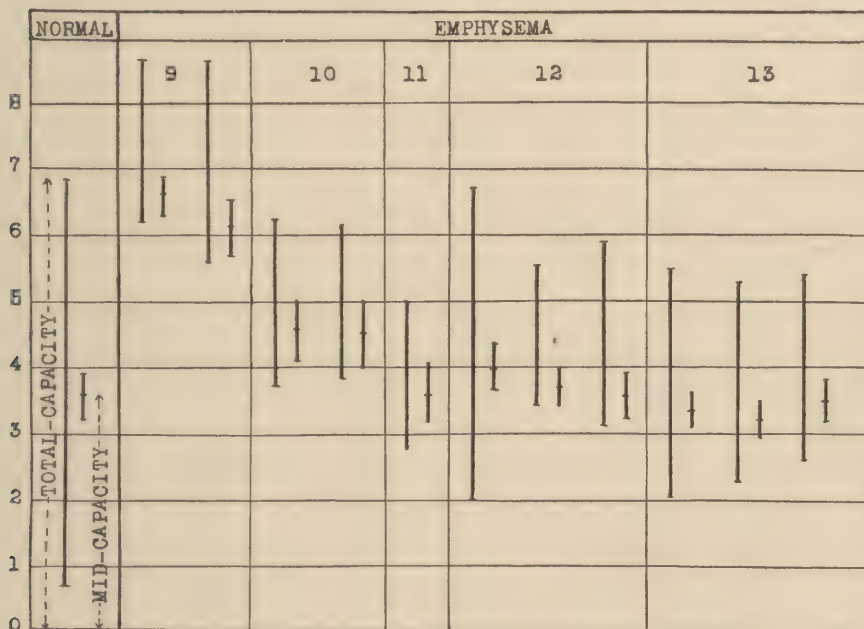


Fig 80.—The Pulmonary Volume of Emphysematous Patients As Compared with a Normal Individual. Note that the Midcapacity Is Usually, But Not Invariably Increased, and that the Vital Capacity As Indicated by the Longer of the Two Lines Is Diminished. The Most Characteristic Feature of the Change, However, Is the Fact that the Residual Air Is Increased. (Redrawn from Siebeck, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*)

damaging the pulmonary tissue and presumably lessening its elastic properties, and, second, by obstructing the fine bronchioles. As in asthma, this obstruction allows air to enter the alveoli more readily than it allows it to escape. The result is a distention of the alveoli.

**Residual Air.**—The lungs of patients with pulmonary emphysema usually show an increase in the residual air (Fig. 80). Such patients are unable to empty their lungs as completely as the normal. The midcapacity of the lungs is usually but not invariably increased, and the vital capacity is usually diminished. We have also seen that the functional dead space is increased in pulmonary emphysema, i.e., a relatively large proportion of the inspired air fails to reach the alveoli, but is breathed out of the lungs with the succeeding expiration. As a matter of fact there is usually some increase in the minute volume of respired air, at the same time that the alveolar air contains excessive quantities of carbon dioxid.

Compared to the normal, therefore, the patient with pulmonary emphysema gets a poorer ventilation of his alveoli for the same external respiration.

Together with the increased amount of carbon dioxide in the alveolar air, there is an increased tension of this gas in the blood. This is tolerated in a surprising manner. The patient may be comfortable and show no

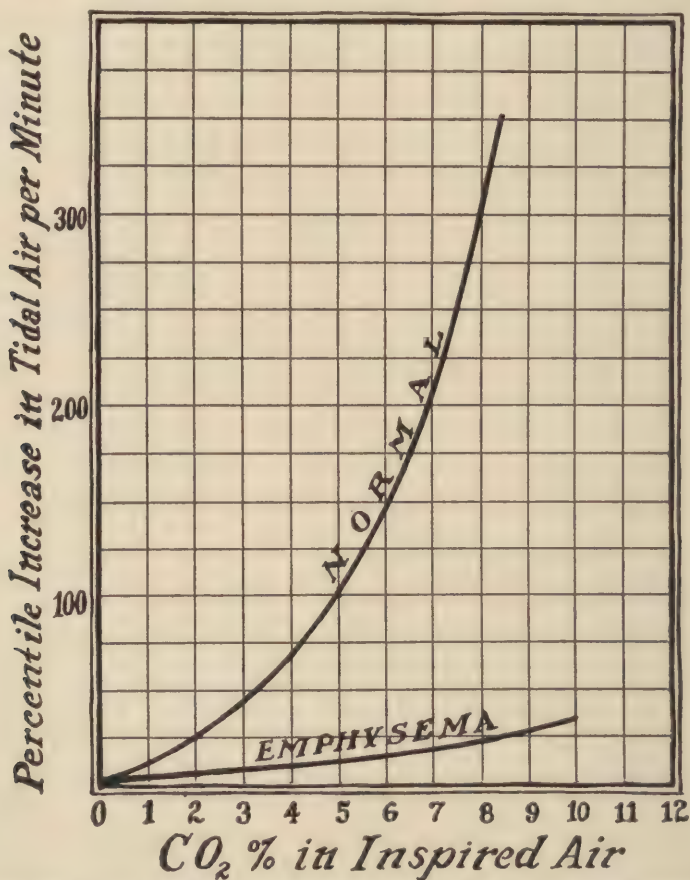


Fig. 80A.—Chart Showing the Percentile Increase in Tidal Air per Minute when the Percentage of Inspired Carbon Dioxide is Raised. Note that the Emphysematous Patient Tolerates an Increase of Carbon Dioxide in the Inspired Air with a Smaller Change in Pulmonary Metabolism than does the Normal. (From Scott, Arch. Int. Med.)

marked hyperpnea when the percentage of carbon dioxide in his alveolar air and venous blood is so high that it would cause profound hyperpnea in a normal individual. Furthermore, Scott has shown that when carbon dioxide is added to the inspired air, the minute volume of air breathed shows a much smaller increase in emphysematous than in normal individuals. Evidently the patient with emphysema shows an unusual tolerance, not only for the high carbon dioxide content usually present in his



blood and alveoli, but also for added carbon dioxid. Scott found that the carbonates of the blood were increased. These serve to neutralize the excessive carbonic acid. In consequence, the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood, which is determined by the ratio of carbonic acid to carbonates, remains normal when both are increased proportionately. In addition, the respiratory response to a further increase of carbonic acid is less than normal, for the increased carbonates act as an extra buffer that prevents even the usual rise of hydrogen ion concentration when acid is added to the blood.

Despite his remarkable tolerance for carbon dioxid the patient with advanced pulmonary emphysema readily shows signs of respiratory distress on exercise. Possibly this is due to oxygen want, for it seems evident that the defective alveolar ventilation will not only lead to an accumulation of carbon dioxid, but will reduce the oxygen tension in the alveoli to a point where anoxemia might readily follow any additional respiratory demands. Added to this is the fact that the circulation is often impaired in advanced cases of emphysema. The cyanosis so common in advanced emphysema is attributed to these two causes—anoxemia resulting from defective alveolar ventilation and venous congestion and reduced blood flow resulting from cardiac insufficiency.

**Respiratory Movements.**—The respiratory movements in emphysema are characterized by the prolongation of expiration. Inspiration is usually performed without great difficulty, whereas expiration necessitates the use of the accessory muscles. The diaphragm is relatively flattened and for this reason its descent in inspiration is less marked than in the normal individual. Its contractions draw in the lower thorax, and tend to diminish the costal angle during inspiration, whereas, normally, this angle widens at this phase of respiration.

## Respiration in Cardiac Disease

It is well known that one of the most important symptoms of heart disease is dyspnea. Cardiac dyspnea usually bears a very distinct relationship to exertion. In the milder cases, it may appear only on considerable exertion, while in the more severe cases, it is constantly present but is increased by exercise. The dyspnea of cardiac patients is also frequently affected by posture, and patients often breathe better when they are sitting than when they are lying down. Finally, in some patients with evidences of cardiac insufficiency, and particularly in those who have renal or vascular disease, the dyspnea appears as paroxysmal attacks at night, the so-called cardiac asthma. We shall consider first the commoner type of dyspnea, that which is made worse on exertion.

### *Cardiac Dyspnea*

In a general way, the dyspnea of cardiac patients is more prominent in those types of the disease which are associated with pulmonary congestion. For example, dyspnea is an early manifestation of mitral disease and of insufficiency of the left ventricle, while it is a late manifestation of aortic disease. Conversely, dyspnea is a more serious symptom in aortic than in mitral lesions, for it indicates that the early compensation effected by the left ventricle is beginning to fail.

The degree of cardiac dyspnea bears no constant relationship to the degree of cyanosis. In congenital heart lesions, for example, the cyanosis may be very marked and the dyspnea slight. In patients with arteriosclerosis or renal diseases, on the other hand, dyspnea is often a prominent manifestation of cardiac insufficiency when cyanosis is practically absent.

**Etiologic Factors.**—The causes of cardiac dyspnea are not well understood. Among the possible factors which must be considered are: (1) an insufficient ventilation of the pulmonary alveoli; (2) an insufficient interchange of gases between the blood and the air in the alveoli; (3) a retardation in the flow of blood through the tissues and particularly through the respiratory center, and (4) increased demands on the respiratory functions. Each of these factors has been held to play a part, more or less important, in the etiology of cardiac dyspnea.

**Pulmonary Ventilation.**—We have just stated that, from the clinical standpoint, dyspnea is particularly frequent in those cardiac patients who show evidence of pulmonary congestion. In chronic passive congestion of the lungs, the pulmonary capillaries are distended and tortuous, and there is often an exudate of cells and of fluid into the alveolar spaces. There may be, in addition, a complicating bronchitis or bronchopneumonia, particularly in the dependent portions of the lungs. The available lung space within the thorax is frequently reduced by an hypertrophied heart, or by exudates in the pericardial or pleural cavities. Finally, the movements of the diaphragm may be interfered with by an enlarged, tender and congested liver. It is evident, from all these facts, that the dyspnea of many patients with heart disease must depend, in part at least, upon an imperfect pulmonary ventilation.

The effect produced by passive congestion of the pulmonary capillaries upon external respiration has played an important part in past theories of cardiac dyspnea. Von Basch and his school laid great stress upon increased pulmonary volume and decreased pulmonary elasticity, as causes of shortness of breath in cardiac patients. Physical examination of the thorax frequently indicates some enlargement. On the other hand, modern studies have shown that the residual air in cardiac patients is usually normal or only moderately increased, and that the midvolume of the lungs is usually less than the normal. There seems, therefore, to be

no increase in the volume of air contained in the lungs. It has been proved, however, that the lungs in cardiac insufficiency are less elastic

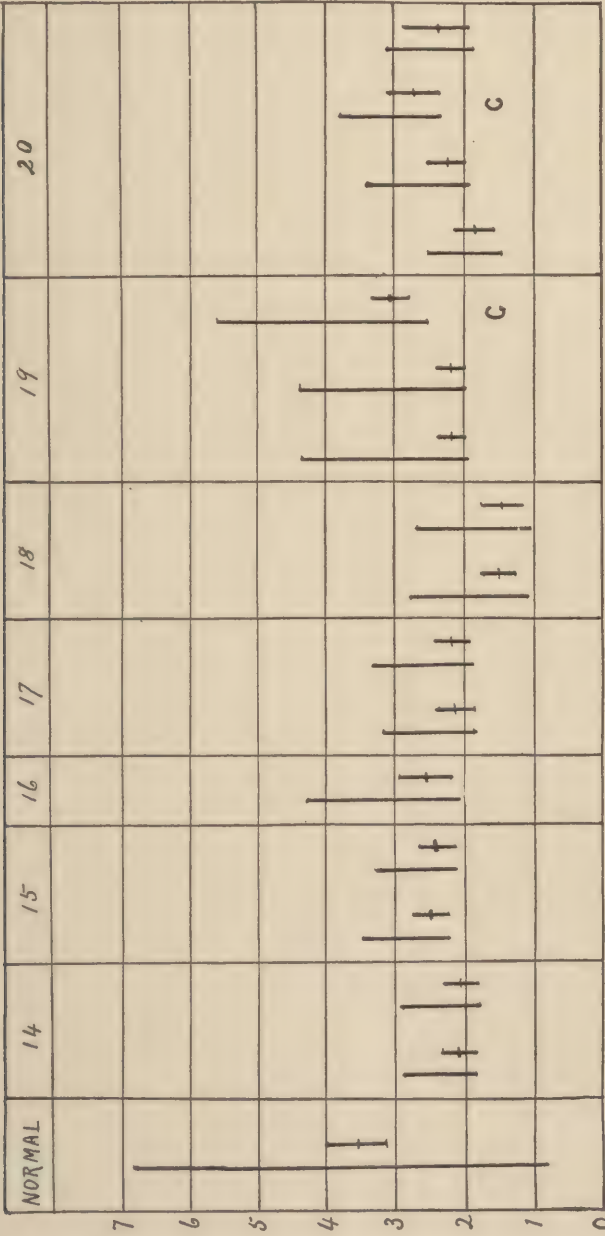


Fig. 80B.—Pulmonary Volumes in Cardiac Disease. The Longer Lines Indicate the Vital Capacity and the Distance from the Base Line the Residual Air. The Shorter Lines Indicate the Tidal Air and Their Midpoint the Midcapacity of the Lungs. Note Particularly that in These Patients the Vital Capacity Is Markedly Diminished As Compared with the (Rather Usually Good) Normal. "C" Indicates Determinations Made During Periods of Compensation. (Redrawn from Siebeck, Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.)

than normal. Their vital capacity is diminished in nearly all cases, and it may be reduced to 20 or 25 per cent of the normal. From this it is



evident that the cardiac patient possesses a smaller reserve than normal in his pulmonary capacity, and that wide fluctuations in the amount of air breathed are not attained as easily as in health. Furthermore, as Siebeck has shown, ventilation of the alveoli in cardiac dyspnea is made more difficult by the fact that an unusually large proportion of the inspired air is breathed out with the next expiration. With respirations of equal size, therefore, the alveolar ventilation in cardiac dyspnea is less perfect than in health. The functional dead space of the lungs (page 361) is increased.

In spite of the unfavorable conditions attending pulmonary ventilation in cardiac disease, this ventilation is as a rule fairly good, owing to the increased respiratory frequency and the normal or increased volume of each respiration. Satisfactory samples of the alveolar air are more difficult to obtain in cardiac patients than in normal individuals, but these have shown in the majority of cases a normal or low tension of carbon dioxide which indicates good ventilation. By Haldane's method of analyzing alveolar air the alveolar pressure of carbon dioxide normally ranges between 35 and 40 mm. of mercury. Of the cases of cardiac and renal dyspnea studied by Lewis, Barcroft, and their associates, the majority showed alveolar tension between 26 and 36 mm., and only two of fourteen patients showed a carbon dioxide tension above the normal.

#### ALVEOLAR CO<sub>2</sub> TENSION AND ACIDITY OF BLOOD IN CASES OF CARDIAC DYSPNEA

(The latter is calculated from the O saturation of Hemoglobin at 17 mm. pressure in the absence of CO<sub>2</sub>.)

(From *Heart*, 1913, V. 57.)

	Case	Alveolar CO <sub>2</sub>	Percentage of Oxygen Saturation	Equivalent of Lactic Acid Necessary to Produce the Same Change in Saturation
Normal	H. H.	39	72	0
	R. G.	36	80	0
	W. S.	40	75	0
Dyspnea with Low Alveolar CO <sub>2</sub>	J. P.	26	14	.15
	H. L.	31	44	.05
	D.	29	43	.05
	.....	28.5	55	.03
	G. S.	13	14	.15
	F. C.	28	69	.007
	A. S.	27	60	.02
	F. S.	33	48	.04
	.....	36	66	.015
	J. S.	..	51	.035
	M. P.	34	61	.02
	H. P.	27	62.5	.017
	C. S.	..	46	.045
Dyspnea with High Alveolar CO <sub>2</sub>	T. C.	47	85	0
	E. M.	41	71	0

The general conclusion that the alveolar carbon dioxid, as determined by Haldane's method, is usually low in cardiac dyspnea has been confirmed by many observers.

The cause of this low tension is not finally determined. Possibly it is due to an acidosis from retention of carbon dioxid (Peters). In any case, the patient with cardiac dyspnea must increase his pulmonary ventilation in order to maintain the low alveolar carbon dioxid tension that he seems to require; and this he must do despite the changes which make pulmonary ventilation more difficult.

**Pulmonary Interchange.**—The interchange of gases between the pulmonary alveoli and the pulmonary capillaries is deficient in at least some patients who are suffering from cardiac dyspnea. By comparing the composition of alveolar air with the tension of oxygen and carbon dioxid in the arterial blood, some measure of pulmonary interchange is obtained. In three normal individuals, Peters and his associates found an alveolar tension of carbon dioxid which varied from 35.9 to 38.7 mm., while the arterial tension (corrected) of this gas varied from 34.5 to 49 mm. In five patients with cardiac insufficiency the corresponding variations were 22.0 to 33.0 for the alveolar air and 38.0 to 52.2 mm. for the arterial blood (corrected). Evidently in these patients the exchange of carbon dioxid between the blood and the alveoli was defective. In some, but not in all, cases of cardiac decompensation, there is also a reduction in the amount of oxygen in the arterial blood (Hürter, Harrup)—due presumably to a defective pulmonary interchange.

**Blood Flow.**—That the flow of blood is deficient in cases of cardiac dyspnea seems probable; but the methods used for demonstrating such a deficiency are as yet not sufficiently trustworthy to permit a final conclusion on the relation of blood flow to dyspnea.

**Conclusion.**—We know that a defective interchange between the air and the blood is in part responsible for the condition. The patient with cardiac dyspnea often maintains a low carbon dioxid tension in his alveoli. Some also show an increase in the basal metabolism. Both these factors require increased pulmonary ventilation. This requirement must be met with a respiratory apparatus that is imperfect; as is shown by the reduced vital capacity. When as a result of muscular exercise the respiratory requirements are increased, three or more times, then the patient with heart disease, already working near the limits of his respiratory capacity, can no longer meet the respiratory needs of the body and the dyspnea increases to a point that restricts his exertion.

### *Cardiac Asthma*

The cardiac dyspnea, which we have considered thus far, is induced or is increased by muscular exercise. In addition to this type of dyspnea, patients with heart disease not infrequently suffer from a severe paroxys-

mal form of difficult breathing. In its most typical form this dyspnea occurs at night and it is then spoken of as cardiac asthma. The patient is awakened with great respiratory distress and he must sit up in order to breathe. Occasionally, such paroxysms are the chief manifestation of the disease; more commonly, they complicate the usual signs of cardiac insufficiency. Not infrequently cardiac asthma is associated with or complicated by attacks of angina pectoris.

**Pathogenesis.**—Nocturnal dyspnea is not infrequently associated with Cheyne-Stokes respiration. We have already pointed out (page 371) that this type of respiration is frequently accentuated during sleep, probably because of a lessened excitability of the respiratory center at this time.

Finally, paroxysms of dyspnea in heart disease may be accompanied by an increased number of râles in the lungs and by the expectoration of blood-tinged sputum. This type of paroxysmal dyspnea occurs particularly in patients who are suffering from chronic myocardial insufficiency, associated with arteriosclerosis, nephritis and high blood pressure. The immediate cause of the attack seems to be an acute congestion of the pulmonary circulation, induced by a relative weakness of the left ventricle. This was discussed more fully under diseases of the heart (page 99).

### **Orthopnea**

The dyspnea which necessitates an upright posture is spoken of as orthopnea. The exact cause of orthopnea is not definitely understood. According to the views of earlier authors, the sitting posture allows better *fixation of the shoulders*, and this favors the use of the accessory muscles of inspiration; but Hofbauer showed that these patients experienced their chief difficulty in expiration rather than inspiration. The upright posture is a more favorable one for expiration, because the *anterior abdominal wall is pushed out* by the lower position of the abdominal viscera, and when it contracts during forced expiration it works at a better mechanical advantage. In the sitting posture, also, the diaphragm takes a lower position. As a result of this, the thoracic cavity is enlarged and the *size of the lungs is increased*. It seems probable that this pulmonary distention assists the pulmonary circulation by increasing the caliber of the pulmonary capillaries. Finally, a high position of the diaphragm may lessen the *aperture traversed by the inferior vena cava*, and it may thus obstruct the return flow of blood from the lower parts of the body.

## **Diseases of the Pleura**

### **Pleural Pain**

Among the commoner manifestations of pleural disease is pain. This is characterized by its sharp, stabbing character, and by the fact that it is made worse whenever coughing, deep respirations or other movements cause the opposed pleural surfaces to move on each other. As a result of



this pain and of fear that pain will occur, the respirations in painful pleural affections become short, rapid and superficial.

Capps has shown that in man mechanical irritation of that portion of the pleura which covers the lungs does not cause pain. The parietal pleura, on the other hand, is very sensitive to mechanical irritation, and pain is experienced directly over the spot which is irritated. When the diaphragmatic pleura is touched, the localization of the pain varies according to the portion of the diaphragm irritated. If the outer peripheral portion is irritated, the patient experiences pain over the lower thorax, the lumbar region or the abdomen, localities which correspond to the distribution of the lower six intercostal nerves. When the central portion of the

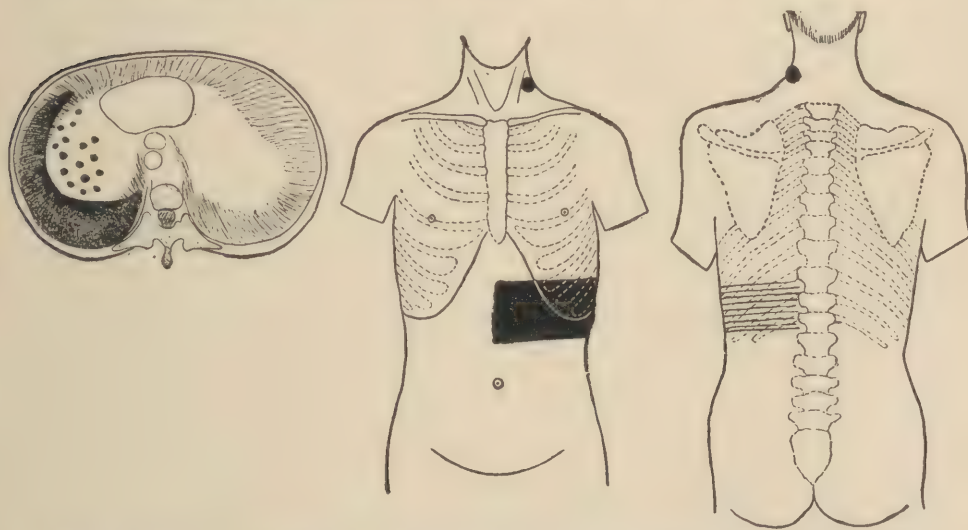


Fig. 81.—Distribution of Pain Elicited on Touching the Diaphragmatic Pleura. Dot in the Trapezius Region indicates the Pain Caused by Touching the Central Tendon of the Diaphragm. Solid Area the Distribution of the Pain Caused by Touching the Peripheral Portion of the Diaphragm. (From Capps, Arch. Int. Med.)

diaphragm is irritated, on the other hand, pain is experienced in the neck above the clavicles, a region which corresponds to the distribution of the nerves coming from the third and fourth cervical segments of the cord. Irritation of the pleura which lines the outer pericardium may also cause pain in this region. We see, therefore, that, while irritation of the pleura lining the thoracic wall causes pain in the immediate neighborhood of the stimulus, irritation of the diaphragmatic pleura causes pain at some distance, either below the thorax or in the neck. Pain is also felt in these regions in diaphragmatic pleurisy. This abdominal pain has at times given rise to a mistaken diagnosis of abdominal disease. Such pains are evidently similar to that which radiates down the left arm in angina pectoris. Their peculiar localization seems to indicate that the pleural surface of the

outer rim of the diaphragm is supplied by the lower six thoracic nerves, while the central portion of the diaphragm receives afferent fibers from the phrenic nerve, which arises from the cervical cord. Irritation of the central diaphragm causes an irritation of the third and fourth segments of the cervical cord, and this causes in turn the pain in the neck observed in disease of the diaphragmatic pleura.

## Pleuritic Effusions

When fluid collects in the pleural cavity the lung retracts. Its lower portion, being pressed on by the weight of the fluid, may become collapsed and in time atelectatic. Since the retracted lung tends to preserve its form, the pleural effusion occupies an irregular space bounded on the one side by the inner chest wall, and on the other by the partially or totally collapsed lung.

**Intrapleural Pressure.**—The pressure within the pleural cavity, when the latter contains an effusion, has been the subject of numerous studies. If fluid be injected into the pleural cavity of a dog in ascending amounts, considerable quantities will be taken without any marked increase in the mean negative pressure, provided this pressure be taken at the upper level of the fluid. The more fluid that is put in, the more the thorax of the animal seems to enlarge, and the positive pressure that is present shortly after a fresh injection soon becomes negative again. Medium-sized dogs will tolerate quantities of liquid in the pleural cavity which approach one liter without any marked rise in the average pleural pressure (Fig. 82). When, finally, the mean pleural pressure becomes definitely positive and continues so, the animal is in a serious condition. It soon becomes cyanotic, the venous pressure rises, and the animal dies if the fluid is not removed. In experimental effusions, therefore, the thoracic cavity seems to increase in size, so as to accommodate the extra liquid, without causing a positive pressure above the level of the fluid.

Direct readings of the pressure in the pleural effusions of man are frequently positive. Gerhardt has shown, however, that, if the pressure obtained be compared with the hydrostatic pressure of the column of liquid within the chest, there is no evidence of a positive intrathoracic pressure at the upper level of the pleuritic effusion. At this point and above there is usually a negative pressure which is equal to, or which may even exceed, the normal negative pressure within the thorax. On the other hand, the lung which dips into the fluid is subjected to a hydrostatic pressure proportional to its depth of immersion. The same is true of the lower mediastinal structures which are displaced toward the opposite side of the chest, and of the diaphragm which is pushed down on the side of the effusion.

The cause of death in massive pleural effusions seems to be an inter-

ference with the circulation. The positive pressure in the lower thorax, which results from the weight of liquid in the chest, compresses the inferior vena cava and interferes with the return of blood from the abdomen. The auricles may also be compressed. Possibly, also, a contributing

VOLUME PRESSURE  
LIQUID MM. HG.

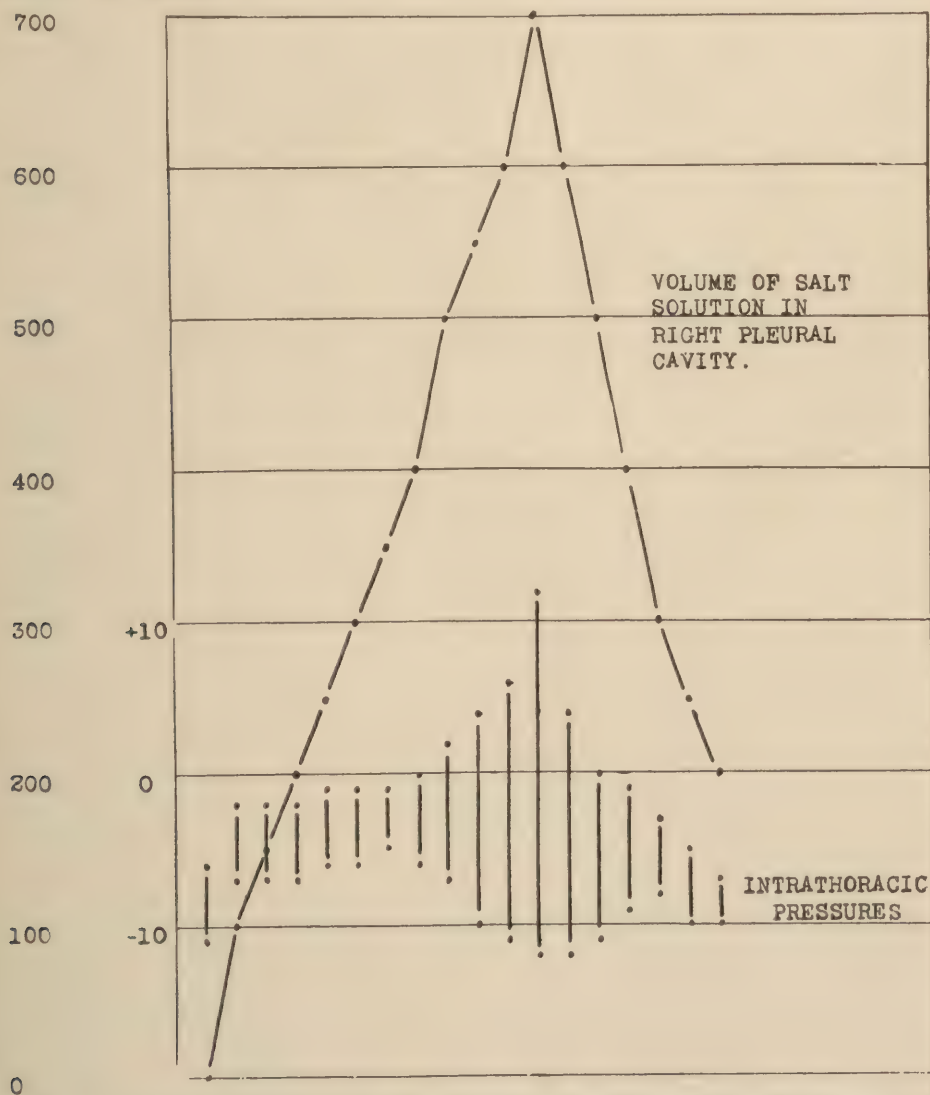


Fig. 82.—Intrapleural Pressures in a Medium-sized Dog When Varying Amounts of Physiological Salt Solution Were Injected Into the Right Pleural Cavity. Note That the Mean Pressure Remains Negative Even Though Dyspnea, As Indicated by the Excursion of Pressure, Is Present. (Constructed from Experiment No. 2, Emerson, J. H. H. Reports.)



factor is an obstruction of the inferior vena cava which is caused by displacement of the diaphragm.

**Circulatory Collapse.**—At times a remarkable type of circulatory collapse occurs during or shortly after the aspiration of fluid from the chest, or in connection with irrigations of the pleural cavity. This collapse is characterized by a slow pulse and a fall of blood pressure. Sometimes it proves fatal. The experimental studies of Capps and Lewis have shown that this circulatory collapse may be produced in animals by irritation of an inflamed visceral pleura. It is due to reflexes which cause, on the one hand, an inhibition of the heart and, on the other, a vasodilation in the abdominal viscera.

## Pneumothorax

In pneumothorax there is a collection of gas in one or both pleural cavities. Occasionally, this gas is derived from the decomposition of a pleural exudate. In most instances, however, it is due to an escape of air into the pleural cavity, either from the lungs or through the chest wall, on account of a perforating injury or gross disease of the lung surface. In such cases, there may be a coincident infection of the pleura, which causes an effusion of fluid. More rarely, the pneumothorax is unaccompanied by any exudate. This happens, particularly, in those forms which develop during apparent health, the so-called spontaneous pneumothorax. As a result of the collection of gas in the pleural cavity, the lung on the affected side retracts, the mediastinum moves toward the sound side, the diaphragm on the side affected becomes low, and the bony thorax on this side becomes larger and less mobile.

### *Open Pneumothorax*

The mechanics of pneumothorax vary according to the type of opening which exists between the affected pleural cavity and the external air. In the so-called open pneumothorax there is a free communication between the pleural cavity and the exterior. This is usually due to an extensive opening through the chest wall. It is rare in diseases of the lung, because, in these cases, the opening usually becomes more or less closed as the lung collapses, and free circulation of air between the pleura and the trachea is prevented. In open pneumothorax, the mean pressure within the affected pleural cavity is the atmospheric pressure. The variations which occur during respiration depend largely upon the size of the opening. If this be large, so that air enters and leaves freely, the respiratory variations in pressure are slight. If, on the other hand, the external opening is smaller, then with each respiration more or less marked variations in intrapleural pressure occur, the pressure falling with inspiration and rising with expiration.

When a pneumothorax communicates with the exterior through a wide opening, slight if any respiratory variations in the intrapleural pressure occur on the affected side, and there is, therefore, little or no respiratory movement of the affected lung. The loss of the respiratory function of a single lung is not in itself very serious, provided the respiratory function of the other lung is not interfered with. Unfortunately, in pneumothorax there is always a displacement of mediastinal structures toward the normal side, which tends to reduce the capacity of that side of the chest. More serious than this, however, is the fact that the mediastinal structures thus displaced are movable. In open pneumothorax, they move toward the healthy side with each inspiration and from the healthy side with each expiration. Such mediastinal movements necessarily lessen the respiratory excursions of the healthy lung and seriously interfere with its ventilation. The more lax and movable the mediastinal structures, the more serious will be the respiratory difficulties in an open pneumothorax. If, on the other hand, the mediastinal structures are relatively rigid, either naturally, or from disease, or through mechanical support from the surgeon, the restriction of their movements greatly improves the respiratory mechanics of the healthy lung, and respiration as a whole may no longer be seriously impaired.

### ***Closed Pneumothorax***

In the so-called closed pneumothorax no opening exists between the pleural cavity and the exterior. In such a case the intrapleural pressure usually becomes negative, and the mechanical conditions are very similar to those present in pleural effusions. Gases are absorbed from the pleural cavity without great difficulty, oxygen being absorbed more rapidly than nitrogen. An uncomplicated closed pneumothorax usually heals without difficulty.

### ***Valvular Pneumothorax***

By far the most important form of pneumothorax from the medical standpoint is that which is known as a valvular pneumothorax. In this type air passes from the lungs, rarely from the exterior, into the pleural cavity with relative ease, but owing to the valvelike action of the collapsed lung, an equally free passage of the pleural air back into the bronchial tree is not possible. In such cases there is a rise of pressure in the affected pleural cavity, and positive pressures of three to ten mm. of mercury have been observed. During inspiration air passes more or less freely from the bronchial tree into the diseased pleural cavity, and at the end of inspiration the enlarged pleural cavity is filled with air at a pressure equal to, or a little less, than the atmospheric pressure. When, on expiration, the pleural cavity becomes smaller, this air cannot escape, and its compression causes the rise in intrapleural pressure. Very deep inspirations tend to

increase the air in the pneumothorax cavity, while forced expirations increase the intrapleural pressure. The dyspnea associated with this type of pneumothorax tends, therefore, to increase both the amount of air in the pleural cavity and the average intrapleural pressure.

In consequence of the positive pressure usually found in valvular pneumothorax the affected lung is compressed and atelectatic, the affected side of the thorax is enlarged, the diaphragm is depressed and the mediastinum is displaced toward the healthy side. The rigidity of the mediastinal structures protects the normal lung from being submitted to the positive pressure present in the pneumothoracic cavity itself.

As a rule, the enlargement of the diseased side of the thorax during inspiration is not followed by any marked expansion of the collapsed lung on this side. During inspiration, therefore, the pressure

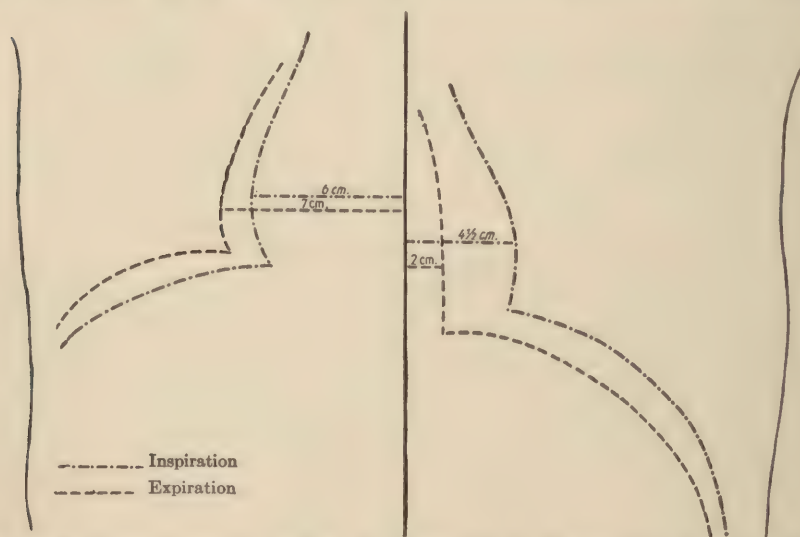


Fig. 83.—Closed Pneumothorax, Showing the Movements of the Mediastinum and Diaphragm During Respiration. Note that During Inspiration the Heart Moves Toward the Diseased Side and that the Diaphragm on this Side Ascends, Whereas on the Normal Side It Descends. The Diminished Heart Shadow During Expiration Is Probably Due to a Rotation of the Heart. (From Wellmann, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, published by F. C. W. Vogel, Leipzig.)

within the affected pleural cavity tends to fall. The mediastinum is thus drawn toward the affected side during inspiration, and it moves toward the healthy side during expiration. This assists in ventilating the normal lung. The diaphragm on the affected side is low, and its periphery is no longer closely applied to the chest wall. It may execute movements in reverse of the normal, ascending during inspiration and descending during expiration. These paradoxical movements of the diaphragm are due in part to the unusual variations of pressure, which occur during each respiration in a closed pneumothorax, by reason of the lack of expansion



of the atelectatic lung. They are also due to the unusual mediastinal movements. During inspiration, the central portion of the diaphragm moves toward the diseased side and this relaxes this side of the diaphragm and thus permits an elevation of its lateral portion.

**Effect on Respiration.**—In pneumothorax the respirations are usually increased in frequency, although a normal or slow respiratory rate may also occur. In animal experiments the amount of air respired is usually much below normal if the pneumothorax is an open one, but it may be normal, or above normal, if the opening be closed. In the valvular pneumothorax of man, the amounts of air breathed are usually somewhat less than normal. The cause of the dyspnea in pneumothorax is the change in the aëration of the blood. In experimental pneumothorax of rabbits with a wide external opening, Bruns, as well as Lippert, found that the oxygen content of the arterial blood fell markedly, in some cases to half the normal, while the carbon dioxid content was correspondingly increased. When the pneumothorax was closed, the oxygen content became almost normal, and the carbon dioxid was markedly diminished as compared with the open pneumothorax. At the same time, the deep and strained breathing disappeared.

ANALYSES OF THE ARTERIAL BLOOD IN EXPERIMENTAL PNEUMOTHORAX

	Normal Breathing Arterial		Open Pneumothorax Arterial		Closed Pneumothorax Arterial	
	O <sub>2</sub>	CO <sub>2</sub>	O <sub>2</sub>	CO <sub>2</sub>	O <sub>2</sub>	CO <sub>2</sub>
1.....	13.8	46.4	8.4	50.1	13.3	45.0
2.....	13.75	32.6	11.2	43.2	13.5	33.0
3.....	15.83	37.2	10.13	57.7	14.8	41.9
4.....	15.85	41.6	8.74	54.8	15.8	44.8
5.....	15.65	36.2	8.7	40.7	15.1	39.5
6.....	16.5	38.9	12.4	40.35	16.4	40.6
7.....	9.7	51.4	7.5	51.5	9.7	49.1
8.....	18.9	....	11.9	....	20.1	....
9.....	....	31.6	....	43.0	....	31.5
10.....	15.0	47.4	7.3	58.0	14.3	40.3

From this experiment the conclusion is drawn, that in these animals the imperfect aëration of the blood in open pneumothorax is due, not to the short circuiting of a large quantity of blood through the collapsed lung (see page 386), but to an imperfect alveolar ventilation in the sound lung caused by the mediastinal movements. As we have seen, these movements are disadvantageous in open pneumothorax, for the mediastinum moves toward the healthy lung on inspiration and away from it on expiration, thus lessening the amount of air breathed. In closed pneumothorax, on the other hand, the mediastinum makes respiratory movements in the opposite

direction. Experience in surgical operations has also shown, that the respiratory distress following an opening into the pleural cavity is often immediately relieved if the external opening be covered.

## Protective Respiratory Mechanisms

The lower respiratory passages are normally free, or nearly free, of microorganisms. In addition to the usual methods of combating entering bacteria, the respiratory passages possess a number of special mechanisms for protecting the lungs against the entrance of microorganisms and of other foreign substances.

### *Mechanical*

Ordinarily, the inspired air first enters the nose. During its course through the irregular passages of the nose and of the nasopharynx, it not only receives warmth and moisture, but many of the small foreign bodies, which it contains, are caught in the mucus, which covers the lining membranes of the respiratory passages. The mucus prevents their immediate penetration into the mucous membranes. It has not been definitely established that this mucus possesses bactericidal properties, though it seems probable that, in some cases of inflammation at least, the cells in the exudate possess such properties.

### *Cilia*

In the bronchi and trachea the mucus, together with any foreign bodies arrested in it, moves more or less continuously in the direction of the mouth, being propelled by the cilia which line this portion of the respiratory passages. Lommel found that the ciliary movements in the trachea of a normal dog were able to transport small particles at the rate of 0.3 to 0.4 mm. per second. It is evident that we have here a valuable means of removing fine particles from the respiratory passage. As the cilia do not extend beyond the epiglottis, expulsion of the mucus beyond that point must be accomplished by coughing. Little is known about pathological changes which may occur in the movements of the cilia lining the respiratory passages. Lommel, who studied these movements in the living dog, found that many measures, which affect ciliary motion in isolated cells, are without effect upon this motion in the living animal. He found, however, that anemia slowed the ciliary movements and that in acute alcoholism they were slowed very markedly. In a marasmic animal with pneumonia the movements had stopped, although microscopic examination showed that cilia were still present.

### *Smooth Muscle*

Beneath the mucous membrane of the air passages is a lining of smooth muscular tissue which is under the control of the vegetative nervous system. It has been suggested that this may assist in the removal of secretions from the lungs by means of peristaltic movements. Such a mechanism would be of particular value in the smaller bronchi. Einthoven observed movements of the bronchial musculature, but there is no direct evidence that these movements are of a peristaltic character. Nevertheless, H. Meyer, on account of the similarity which exists between the bronchial and intestinal muscles in their innervation and pharmacological reactions, regards peristalsis of the bronchial muscles as probable, and it may play an important rôle in the transportation of secretions out of the finer bronchioles.

### *Coughing*

So far as larger bodies in the upper passages are concerned, the most important protective mechanism is coughing. The act of coughing is initiated by a deep inspiration. This is followed by a strong expiratory effort against a closed glottis. After the pressure within the thoracic cavity has been increased, the glottis is suddenly opened, and air from the respiratory passages rushes through at high speed. The nasopharynx is closed off by the soft palate, and any material which is driven out of the air passages enters the cavity of the mouth.

It is evident that, in coughing, the greatest air velocity is attained in the trachea and in the larger air passages. Consequently, it will be most effective in removing sputum or foreign bodies from these regions. When exudates are present in the finer bronchi, or in the alveoli, coughing is much less effective as a method of carrying these toward the mouth. Indeed, if an alveolus is completely filled with exudate, or if a small bronchus is completely blocked, so that air cannot enter during the deep inspiration which precedes the act of coughing, then coughing can have little or no effect in removing the fluid. When, on the other hand, air is permitted to pass into the alveolus during inspiration, then the sudden release of pressure ahead, when the glottis is opened, tends to drive exudates even from the finer bronchi toward the larger air passages.

The act of coughing is controlled by a special nervous center which is situated in the medulla oblongata near the respiratory center. This center is most commonly stimulated by afferent nervous impulses coming from the mucous membrane lining the respiratory passages. Important sites, from which these reflexes may arise, are the region just below the true vocal cords and the bifurcation of the trachea. Reflexes may also arise from the trachea itself and from the bronchi, but they are less sensitive than the points named above. Apparently irritation of the pulmonary



tissue itself does not give rise to coughing reflexes. On the other hand, it is well known that irritation of the pleura may cause coughing. The afferent impulses travel from these sites to the coughing center by way of the vagus nerve. It seems probable, also, that this center may be stimulated by impulses coming from other points of distribution of the vagus, notably from the throat, the esophagus and possibly from the ear, the spleen and the liver. It is doubtful if a true "stomach cough" exists. Occasionally, reflexes from the nose will also produce coughing. In such cases the afferent impulses travel by way of the fifth nerve.

We have already spoken of the value of coughing as a protective measure against the entrance of foreign bodies into the lungs and as a means of removing bronchial mucus. Failure in this protective mechanism greatly increases the danger of pulmonary infections. The aspiration pneumonias which follow operations and deep drunkenness illustrate the dangers of deep narcosis. A disturbance in the reflex arc in organic nervous disease, either on the sensory or on the motor side, is a serious menace to the patient. In certain diseases of the lungs with profuse secretions, coughing may be distinctly impaired, either because of diminished sensation or of great muscular weakness. In prolonged bronchitis, in advanced tuberculosis and in the pneumonia of old and debilitated patients, this constitutes a distinct increase in the danger.

On the other hand, coughing is attended with certain dangers. It puts a strain on certain parts of the pulmonary tissues and tends to distend them. The rise of intrathoracic pressure tends to force air into the unprotected portions of the lungs, especially those lying behind and above the clavicles. In patients with chronic bronchitis and emphysema, the swelling of these portions of the lungs is sometimes plainly visible during coughing. Continued coughing also seems to favor the development of emphysema at the lower and anterior borders of the lungs, partly from the unusual inspiratory effort and partly from the associated closure of the bronchioles on expiration. The movements of air toward the apices in coughing tend to carry infections in that direction. Occasionally pneumothorax develops as a result of severe coughing. The blood pressure is raised, and cerebral or other hemorrhages may occur. It is evident, therefore, that excessive coughing has its disadvantages. When it results from causes other than the lodgment of material in the air passages, it serves no useful purpose. This is the case in dry inflammations of the larynx, trachea or larger bronchi, in pleurisy, and in coughs arising from such unusual sites as the nose and the abdominal viscera. It is in such cases, particularly, that the use of drugs for allaying the abnormal irritation of the respiratory center is indicated.

A number of other reflexes are of more or less protective value to the respiratory organs. Among these are reflex spasm of the glottis, which occurs when the upper part of the larynx is irritated, and the reflex cessa-

tion of breathing when irritating gases are breathed. In sneezing we have a mechanism similar to that of coughing, except that the air is discharged mainly through the nose and serves to remove bodies from that organ.

### References

#### Respiration—General

- Douglas (C. G.).** *Die Regulation der Atmung beim Menschen.* *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1914**, xiv, 338.
- Haldane (J. S.).** *Respiration.* In: *General Pathology.* Edited by M. S. Pembrey & J. Ritchie. London, **1913**, 432.
- Hofbauer (L.).** *Störungen der äusseren Atmung.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med.*, **1909**, iv, 1.
- Loewy (A.).** *Pathologie der Respiration.* In: *Physikalische Chemie und Medizin.* Kórány & Richter. **1908**, ii, 32.
- v. Minkowski (O.).** *Die Pathologie der Atmung.* In: *Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie.* Krehl & Marchand. **1908**, ii, 456.

#### The Dead Space

- Douglas (C. G.) & Haldane (J. S.).** *The capacity of the air passages under varying physiological conditions.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1912-13**, xlv, 235.
- Edsall (D. L.).** *The efficiency and significance of different forms of respiration.* *Tr. Assn. Am. Phys.*, **1912**, xxvii, 560.
- Hoover (C. F.).** *The alveolar air and minute volume of air in pulmonary emphysema.* *Tr. Assn. Am. Phys.*, **1912**, xxvii, 572.
- Krogh (A.) & Lindhard (J.).** *The volume of the "dead space" in breathing.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1913-14**, xlvii, 30.

#### Normal Regulation of Pulmonary Ventilation

- Barcroft (J.) & Camis (M.).** *The dissociation curve of blood.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1909-10**, xxxix, 118.
- Barcroft (J. B.), Cooke (A.), Hartridge (H.), Parsons (T. R.) & Parsons (W.).** *The flow of oxygen through the pulmonary epithelium.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1919-20**, liii, 450.
- Douglas (C. G.) & Haldane (J. S.).** *The causes of absorption of oxygen by the lungs.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xlv, 305.
- Edsall (D. L.) & Means (J. H.).** *The effect of strychnin, caffeine, atropin and camphor on the respiration and respiratory metabolism in normal human subjects.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 897.
- Haldane (J. S.) & Poulton (E. P.).** *The effects of want of oxygen on respiration.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1908**, xxvii, 390.
- Hasselbalch (K. A.).** *Neutralitätsregulation und Reizbarkeit des Atemzentrums in ihren Wirkungen auf die Kohlensäurespannung des Blutes.* *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1912**, xlv, 403.
- Lindhard (J.).** *On the excitability of the respiratory center.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1911**, xlii, 337.

#### Periodic Breathing

- Barbour (H. G.).** *Two types of periodic respiration due to morphin.* *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, **1914**, v, 393.
- Clark (A. J.) & Hamill (P.).** *Observations on the changes in the circulatory system in periodic respiration.* *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, **1914**, v, 357.

- Conner (L. A.).** *Biot's breathing.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1911**, cxli, 350.
- Douglas (C. G.).** *Periodic breathing at high altitudes.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1910**, xl, 454.
- Douglas (C. G.) & Haldane (J. S.).** *The causes of periodic or Cheyne-Stokes' breathing.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1909**, xxviii, 401.
- Eyster (J. A. E.).** *Clinical and experimental observations upon Cheyne-Stokes' respiration.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1906**, viii, 565.
- Gasser (H. S.) & Loevenhart (A. S.).** *The mechanism of stimulation of the medullary centers by decreased oxidation.* *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, **1914**, v, 239.
- Pembrey (M. S.).** *Observations on Cheyne-Stokes' respiration.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1907-08**, xii, 258.
- Pembrey (M. S.) & Allen (R. W.).** *Observations upon Cheyne-Stokes' respiration.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1905**, xxii, 18.
- Pollock (L. J.).** *Blood pressure in Cheyne-Stokes' respiration.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 406.
- White (W. H.), Ryffel (J. H.), Poulton (E. P.), Johnson (W.) & Chisolm (R. A.).** *Study of a case of very prolonged Cheyne-Stokes' breathing.* *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1914**, vii, 389.

### Acid Intoxication

- Barcroft (J.) & Orbeli (L.).** *The influence of lactic acid upon the dissociation curve of blood.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1910-11**, xli, 355.
- Campbell (J. M. H.), Douglas (C. G.), Haldane (J. S.) & Hobson (F. G.).** *The response of the respiratory center to carbonic acid, oxygen and hydrogen ion concentration.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1913**, xlii, 301.
- Loewy (A.) & Münzer (E.).** *Beiträge zur Lehre von der experimentellen Säurevergiftung.* *Arch. f. (Anat. u.) Physiol.*, **1901**, 81.
- Porges (O.), Leimdörfer (A.) & Markovici (E.).** *Über die Kohlensäurespannung des Blutes in pathologischen Zuständen.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, lxxiii, 389.
- Röver.** *Über Atmung des gesunden und säurevergifteten Menschen.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxvii, 228.

### Mountain Sickness—Caisson Disease

- Barcroft (J.).** *The effect of altitude on the dissociation curve of blood.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1911**, xlii, 44.
- Bornstein (A.).** *Physiologie und Pathologie des Lebens in verdichteter Luft.* *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1914**, li, 923.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Haldane (J. S.).** *The effects of low atmospheric pressures on respiration.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1908**, xxxvii, 355.
- Cohnheim (O.).** *Physiology des Alpinismus, II.* *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1912**, xii, 629.
- Douglas (C. G.), Haldane (J. S.), Henderson (Y.) & Schneider (E. C.).** *The physiological effects of low atmospheric pressures as observed on Pike's Peak, Colorado.* *Proc. Roy. Soc., London*, **1912**, lxxv, 65. *Series B.*
- Dixon (W. E.) & Ransom (F.).** *Broncho-dilator nerves.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1912-13**, xlv, 413.
- Haldane (J. S.).** *A lecture on the symptoms, causes and prevention of anoxæmia (insufficient supply of oxygen to the tissues) and the value of oxygen in its treatment.* *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1919**, ii, 65.
- Schneider (E. C.).** *Physiological effects of altitude.* *Physiol. Rev.*, **1921**, i, 631.
- Sundstroem (E. S.).** *Studies on adaptation of man to high altitudes. V. Effect of high altitudes on salt metabolism with special reference to the mechanism of maintaining the acid-base equilibrium of the body.* *U. C. Pub. Physiol.* **1919**, v, 121.



- Vernon (H. M.).** *The solubility of air in fats, and its relation to caisson disease.* *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **1907**, lxxix, 366. Series B.
- Ward (R.).** *Alveolar air on Monte Rosa.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1908**, xxxvii, 378.
- Zuntz (N.), Loewy (A.), Müller (F.) & Caspari (W.).** *Höhenklima und Bergwanderung in ihrer Wirkung auf den Menschen.* Berlin, **1906**.

### Anemia—Carbon Monoxid Poisoning

- Douglas (C. G.).** *The oxygen capacity of the blood after hemorrhage.* *Jour. Physiol.*, **1909–10**, xxxix, 453.
- FitzGerald (M. P.).** *The alveolar carbonic acid pressure in diseases of the blood and in diseases of the respiratory and circulatory systems.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1909–10**, xiv, 328.
- Hewlett (A. W.) & Van Zwaluwenburg (J. G.).** *The rate of blood flow in the arm.* *Heart*, **1909–10**, i, 87.
- Lundsgaard (C.).** *Studies of oxygen in the venous blood. V. Determinations on Patients with anemia.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1919**, xxx, 147.
- Mohr (L.).** *Ueber regulirende und kompensirende Vorgänge im Stoffwechsel der Anämischen.* *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1905–6**, ii, 435.  
*Gesamtstoffwechsel bei Anämien, Kachexien usw. In: Handbuch der Biochemie des Menschen u. d. Tiere.* C. Oppenheimer, Jena, **1910**, iv, 372.
- Morawitz (P.) & Röhrner (W.).** *Ueber die Sauerstoffversorgung bei Anämien.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciv, 529.
- Stewart (G. N.).** *Observations on the blood flow in the hands (mainly) in cases of anemia.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 113.
- Weizsäcker (V.).** *Beitrag zur Frage der Blutgeschwindigkeit bei Anämie.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, ci, 198.

### Respiration in Cardiac Disease

- Harrop (G. A.).** *The oxygen and carbon dioxide content of arterial and of venous blood in normal individuals and in patients with anemia and heart disease.* *J. Exper. M.*, **1919**, xxx, 241.
- Hofbauer (L.).** *Ursachen der Orthopnoe.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, lxxix, 128.
- Lewis (T.) Ryffel (J. H.), Wolf (C. G. L.), Cotton (T.) & Barcroft (J.).** *Observations relating to dyspnea in cardiac and renal patients.* *Heart*, **1913**, v, 45.
- Peabody (F. W.).** *Studies on acidosis and dyspnea in renal and cardiac disease.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 236.
- Pearce (R. G.).** *Studies in the physiology of the respiration. I. The capacity of the air passages and the percentage of carbon dioxide in the alveolar air during rest and exercise.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1917**, xliii, 73.
- Reinhardt (R.).** *Über die Atmung bei Herzkranken.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, cxi, 465.
- Rubow (V.).** *Die kardiale Dyspnoe.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med.*, **1909**, iii, 73.  
*Untersuchungen über die Atmung bei Herzkrankheiten. Ein Beitrag zum Studium der Pathologie des kleinen Kreislaufes.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1907–8**, xcii, 255.
- Siebeck (R.).** *Die funktionelle Bedeutung der Atemmechanik und die Lungenventilation bei kardialer Dyspnoe.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cxii, 252.

### Stenosis of Air Passages—Asthma

- Baehr (G.) & Pick (E. P.).** *Pharmakologische Studien an der Bronchialmuskulatur der überlebenden Meerschweinchenlunge.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1913**, lxxiv, 41.

- Cloetta (M.).** *Zur experimentellen Pathologie und Therapie der Asthma-Bronchiale.* Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol., **1913**, lxxiii, 233.
- Dixon (W. E.) & Ransom (F.).** *Broncho-dilator nerves.* Jour. Physiol., **1912-13**, xlv, 413.
- Friedman (E. D.) & Jackson (H. C.).** *The carbon dioxide content of blood and of alveolar air in obstructed expiration.* Arch. Int. Med., **1917**, xix, 767.
- Jackson (D. E.).** *The pulmonary action of the adrenal glands.* Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap., **1912-13**, iv, 59.
- Koessler (K. K.).** *Bronchial asthma due to hypersusceptibility to hens' eggs.* Ill. Med. Jour., **1913**, xxiii, 1.
- Meltzer (S. J.).** *Bronchial asthma as a phenomenon of anaphylaxis.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1910**, lv, 1021.
- Morawitz (P.) & Siebeck (R.).** *Die Dyspnoe durch Stenose der Luftwege.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1909**, xcvi, 201.
- Park (E. A.).** *The physiological action of epinephrin on the bronchi.* Jour. Exper. Med., **1912**, xvi, 558.
- Siebeck (R.).** *Die Dyspnoe durch Stenose der Luftwege, II. Die Einstellung der Mittellage* der Lunge. Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1909**, xcvi, 219.
- Warren (L. F.).** *An orthodiagraphic study of a case of bronchial asthma.* Am. Jour. Med. Sci., **1913**, cxlvi, 711.

### Lung Volume—Emphysema

- Bittorf (A.) & Forschbach (J.).** *Untersuchungen über die Lungenfüllung bei Krankheiten.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1910**, lxx, 474.
- Bohr (C.).** *Die funktionellen Änderungen in der Mittellage und Vitalkapazität der Lungen.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1906-7**, lxxviii, 335.
- Hoover (C. F.).** *The functions of the diaphragm and their diagnostic significance.* Tr. Assn. Am. Phys., **1913**, xxviii, 16.
- Plesch (J.).** *Die pathologische Physiologie des Lungenvolumens und seine Beziehung zum Kreislauf.* Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap., **1913**, xviii, 165.
- Reinhardt (R.).** *Ueber das Verhältnis von CO<sub>2</sub>-Ausscheidung zur Atemgröße beim Lungenemphysem.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912-13**, cix, 192.
- Scott (R. W.).** *Observations on the pathologic physiology of chronic pulmonary emphysema.* Arch. Int. Med., **1920**, xxvi, 544.
- Siebeck (R.).** *Die Lungenventilation beim Emphysem.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1911**, cii, 390.  
*Über die Beeinflussung der Atemmechanik durch krankhafte Zustände des Respirations- und Kreislauf-Apparates.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1910**, c, 204.
- Stahelin (R.) & Schutze (A.).** *Spirographische Untersuchungen an Gesunden, Emphysematikern und Asthmatikern.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1912**, lxxv, 15.
- Tendeloo (N. Ph.).** *Lungendehnung und Lungenemphysem.* Ergebn. d. inn. Med., **1910**, vi, 1.

### Loss of Respiration Surface

- Cloetta (M.).** *Über die Zirkulation in der Lunge und deren Beeinflussung durch Über- und Unterdruck.* Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol., **1911**, lxxi, 409.
- Hess (R.).** *Über die Durchblutung nicht atmender Lungengebiete.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1912**, cvi, 478.

- Hürter.** *Untersuchungen am arteriellen menschlichen Blute.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cviii, 1.
- Meakins (J.).** *Harmful effects of shallow breathing with special reference to pneumonia.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1920**, xxv, 1.
- Stadie (W. C.).** *The oxygen of the arterial and venous blood in pneumonia and its relation to cyanosis.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1919**, xxx, 215.

### *Diseases of Pleura*

- Bruns (O.).** *Untersuchungen über den respiratorischen Gaswechsel bei Erkrankungen der Lunge und der luftzuführenden Wege.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cvii, 468.  
*Über Folgezustände des einseitigen Pneumothorax.* *Beitr. z. Klin. d. Tuberk.*, **1909**, xii, 1.
- Capps (J. A.).** *An experimental study of the pain sense in the pleural membranes.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1911**, viii, 717.
- Capps (J. A.) & Lewis (D. D.).** *Blood-pressure-lowering reflexes from irrigation of the chest in empyema.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1908**, ii, 166.  
*Observations upon certain blood-pressure-lowering reflexes that arise from irritation of the inflamed pleura.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1907**, cxxxiv, 868.
- Emerson (C. P.).** *Pneumothorax; a historical, clinical and experimental study.* *The Johns Hopkins Hosp. Rep.*, **1903**, xi, 1.
- Gerhardt (D.).** *Über den Druck in Pleuraexsudaten.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1908**, *Festschrift f. Schmiederberg*, 228.
- Lippert (E.).** *Experimentelle Studien über das Verhalten der Blutgase bei Erkrankungen der Lunge und der luftführenden Wege.* *Beitr. z. Klin. d. Tuberk.*, **1912**, xxiv, 389.
- Wellman (C.).** *Die paradoxe Zwerchfellbewegung bei künstlichem Pneumothorax und Zwerchfellähmung.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, ciii, 387.

### *Protective Mechanism*

- Lommel (F.).** *Zur Physiologie und Pathologie des Flimmerepithels der Atmungsorgane.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciv, 365.



## Chapter VIII

# Disturbances of Kidney Function

### Physiological Considerations

The kidneys possess a variety of functions. Of these the excretion of urine is the most evident, the most thoroughly studied, and the only one that has thus far been brought into definite relationship with pathological processes. The excretory function serves to remove from the body various waste products of normal or abnormal metabolism. Furthermore, it plays an important part in maintaining a proper concentration of the body fluids and in maintaining the normal chemical reaction of the body.

Unlike that of most glands, the secretory function of the kidney is not, so far as we know, directly governed by nervous impulses. It is true that nervous influences may cause variations in renal secretion but they do this indirectly through changes in the renal circulation. Rises of blood pressure tend in general to increase the amount of urine excreted and falls of blood pressure tend to diminish it. The rate of blood flow through the kidney is also important. If high arterial pressure be associated with a marked constriction of the renal arteries, as in strychnin poisoning, or if the renal veins be obstructed, then the diminished rate of blood flow causes a diminution in the urinary secretion in spite of an increase in local blood pressure. Finally, as Gesell has shown, the secretion of urine is favorably influenced by the intermittent variations in blood pressure which occur with each heart beat.

The renal secretion is also markedly affected by the composition of the blood. When the blood is more hydremic than normal the excretion of water through the kidneys is favored. According to H. Meyer, the behavior of water in the blood plasma may be likened to the behavior of the water present in gelatin. When gelatin contains a considerable amount of water a certain quantity can be readily pressed out, but as the concentration of water falls it is held with more and more avidity. The blood behaves in a similar manner. When an excess of water is present it is readily removed by the kidneys, but when the percentage of water falls to normal or subnormal its excretion is resisted.

The amount of solid material excreted by the kidneys depends in part

upon the composition of the blood and in part upon the volume of urine excreted. When more urine is excreted its concentration is usually low but the total quantity of solid material is for the time being increased. Certain solids, such as urea, are excreted at a rate which seems to depend upon their total concentration in the blood. Other solids, however, notably sodium chlorid and glucose, are not excreted in any considerable quantity unless the blood concentration exceeds a certain threshold. When the concentration falls to about this threshold or below it, the excretion of these solids becomes very slight; when the concentration rises above this threshold the excretion increases rapidly.

The part which the different portions of the kidney play in the excretion of urine, though much discussed, is still quite unsettled. The theories of Ludwig and of Heidenhain, advanced over seventy years ago, still furnish the main basis of physiological discussion. According to the theory of Ludwig, there is a filtration of water containing crystalloids (urea and salts) through the glomeruli. As this filtrate passes on through the urinary tubules, water is absorbed by the cells lining these tubules and in this way a urine of increased concentration is produced. According to the theory of Heidenhain, water is excreted through the glomeruli by a specific cellular activity of the lining membrane, while most of the solid constituents of the urine are secreted by the cells lining the uriniferous tubules. Both theories have been more or less modified with the course of time and both probably contain elements of truth. After a careful review of the subject in 1907, Metzner concluded that it is very probable, as Ludwig claimed, that a filtration of water and salts takes place through the glomeruli and that water, as well as certain solids, is again resorbed by cells lining the urinary tubules. Other substances, however, and especially uric acid, phosphoric acid and foreign substances, are excreted into the urinary tubules by the epithelial cells of the tubules.

It is well known that the molecular concentration of the urine, as measured by the depression of its freezing point below that of water, is ordinarily far greater than the molecular concentration of blood. The freezing point of blood serum is approximately  $-0.56^{\circ}\text{C}.$ , while the freezing point of urine usually varies from  $-0.87^{\circ}$  to  $-2.7^{\circ}\text{C}.$  In order to excrete urine of increased molecular concentration considerable work is required of the kidney; and Dreser has calculated that the excretion of 200 c.c. of a urine with a freezing point of  $-2.3^{\circ}\text{C}.$  requires about 37 kilogrammeters of work.

### **Polyuria—Diabetes insipidus**

From the physiological standpoint an increased amount of urine, or polyuria, may be due (1) to an increased circulation of blood through the kidneys, (2) to a watery composition of the blood, or (3) to an increase

in the secretory activity of the kidney. The latter may result either from increased elimination through the glomeruli or from an interference with the resorption of fluid, which, according to Ludwig's hypothesis, normally takes place in the renal tubules, a veritable renal diarrhea.

**Polyuria from Drinking Liquids.**—It is a common observation that the amount of urine may be increased by drinking large quantities of liquid. So long as a normal water balance is maintained, the ingestion of more fluid is followed by a corresponding increase in the elimination. If there is no change in the water losses through perspiration, evaporation from the lungs or intestinal discharges, the extra amount taken must be eliminated by the kidneys. In the normal individual this takes place promptly. After drinking a large quantity of water, most of the excess is passed in the urine within a few hours. At the onset of such a diuresis the absolute amount of solids eliminated in a given time is increased. This increase is due to a transient washing out of nitrogenous and other materials from the body by the abundant renal secretion. If the diuresis is continued the total elimination of solids will return to the normal level. Strangely enough, the drinking of even large quantities of water causes no constant and definite reduction in the concentration of the blood plasma, whether this be determined by the refractive index of the serum (concentration of proteins) or by the reduction in freezing point (molecular concentration). The kidneys seem to be sensitive to blood changes which are not demonstrable by these methods.

**Polyuria During the Removal of Edemas.**—Polyuria also occurs during the disappearance of exudates and edemas. The polyuria in such conditions differs from that which follows the drinking of large quantities of water in that the urine, though usually of low specific gravity, contains greater quantities of sodium chlorid and of urea, which are derived from the absorbed exudates and edematous fluids. In typical renal edema the blood is usually hydremic. It contains a normal or an increased percentage of sodium chlorid but less than the normal percentage of proteins. If diuresis sets in and the edema disappears the blood tends to return to the normal concentration.

**Polyurias After Fevers.**—During fever there is frequently a diminution in the concentration of the blood and during convalescence there may be an increased secretion of urine with a return to the normal blood concentration. The polyuria in such cases, therefore, resembles in some respects that which accompanies the disappearance of a nephritic edema.

**Polyuria from Drugs.**—Polyuria may also be produced by various salts and drugs. This is most marked when there is water at the disposal of the kidneys either from ingestion or in the form of absorbable exudates. Changes in the blood, the renal circulation, or the activity of the renal cells may accompany such diureses. After large doses of sodium chlorid, for example, there is a dilution of the blood produced by the abstraction



of water from the tissues. The kidneys enlarge and with this there is usually an increased flow of urine. In some cases the hydremia and kidney changes seem to disappear before the diuresis ceases. Considerable variation exists in the reaction of different individuals to the taking of sodium chlorid. Not infrequently the chief elimination does not occur immediately but may be delayed for a day or more. Under pathological conditions, and especially in certain forms of nephritis, the administration of sodium chlorid not only may fail to act as a diuretic but may diminish both the quantity of the urine and amount of chlorids contained therein. Drugs belonging to the caffein group produce diuresis partly through a direct stimulation of the renal cells and partly through an improved circulation through the kidneys. Digitalis, in addition to its action upon the heart, seems to exert a specific dilating effect upon the renal vessels.

**Polyuria in Renal Disease.**—Polyuria is not uncommon in renal diseases, especially chronic interstitial nephritis. It also occurs in certain experimental forms of nephritis and is then, according to Schlager, associated with an excessive irritability of the renal vessels.

**Polyuria from Lesions in the Medulla oblongata.**—Polyuria may also be produced by lesions of the central nervous system. Claude Bernard showed that injuries to the floor of the fourth ventricle above the diabetic center may be followed by polyuria without glucosuria. This polyuria which is ordinarily of short duration may be prolonged by injecting a few drops of a strong silver nitrate solution at the point of puncture so as to produce a continuous irritation. The polyuria following puncture of the medulla is believed to be due to a local dilatation of the renal vessels caused by nervous impulses which reach the kidneys through the splanchnic nerves. According to Jungmann, this nervous polyuria, which may be induced either by puncture of the medulla or by section (irritation) of the splanchnic nerves, is associated with an increased elimination and concentration of sodium chlorid in the urine. It has, therefore, been spoken of as a sodium chlorid diabetes. In this respect it differs from the polyuria of diabetes insipidus, for in that condition, as we shall see, the concentration of salt in the urine is diminished.

**Polyuria and the Hypophysis.**—Polyuria may also be produced by experimental lesions of other portions of the brain. Operations upon the hypophysis and injuries to its immediate neighborhood are not infrequently followed by polyuria. Matthews has produced long-continued polyurias in animals by introducing a foreign body into the region of the hypophysis. Cushing and his associates have repeatedly noted the occurrence of polyuria after operations on the pituitary, and especially after operations which divided the stalk or injured the posterior lobe.

The earlier experimental work seemed to indicate that extracts of the posterior lobe of the hypophysis possessed marked diuretic properties.

More recent observation indicates, however, that the opposite is the case. The artificial diuresis, produced by having rabbits drink water, can be checked for a time by the injection of posterior lobe extract (Fig. 84).

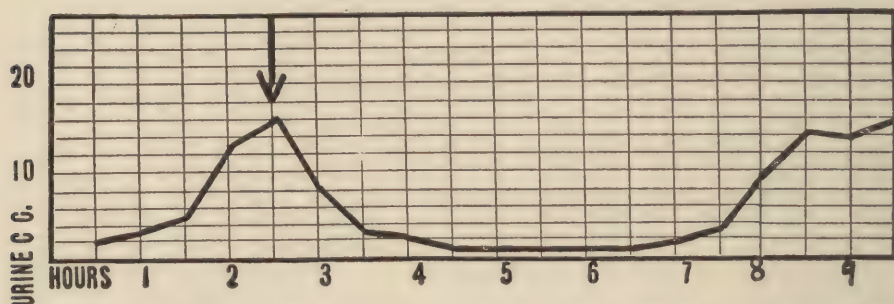


Fig. 84.—Artificial Polyuria in Rabbits Produced by Water, Checked by Pituitrin Subcutaneously. The Arrow Indicates the Time of Injection. (From Motzfeldt, Jour. Exp. Med.)

Apparently this antidiuretic effect depends upon circulatory changes in the kidney rather than upon direct action upon the renal cells.

### *Diabetes insipidus*

In diabetes insipidus unusually large quantities of dilute urine are habitually passed. This contains neither albumin nor sugar. Five to ten liters daily, with specific gravities ranging from 1.003 to 1.010, are not uncommon. The total solids eliminated during the day are normal and depend upon the character of the diet. Not infrequently, relatively large quantities of urine are excreted during the night (nycturia). Furthermore, when extra quantities of liquids are given there may be an unusual delay in their elimination. These evidences of slow elimination of liquids are, however, neither constant nor characteristic of the disease.

**Differentiation.**—Patients suffering from diabetes insipidus habitually drink excessive quantities of water and the question naturally arises: is the condition primarily one of increased thirst, a polydipsia with secondary polyuria; or is it due primarily to an excessive secretion of urine which causes a secondary thirst through an impoverishment of the body in water? It seems certain that either of these conditions may occur in man. The former is spoken of as a *primary polydipsia*, the latter constitutes diabetes insipidus in the more restricted sense. It is not always easy to distinguish cases of primary polydipsia from cases of true diabetes insipidus. The distinction is based mainly upon the results which follow a forced restriction of the liquid intake. As a result of such restriction, the urine of a patient with primary polydipsia approaches that of a normal

individual in quantity and in concentration. The urine of the patient with true diabetes insipidus, on the other hand, though lessened in amount, does not, as a rule, become as concentrated as normal urine, solids are retained in the body, the blood may show an abnormal increase in its molecular concentration and unpleasant or even alarming symptoms occur.

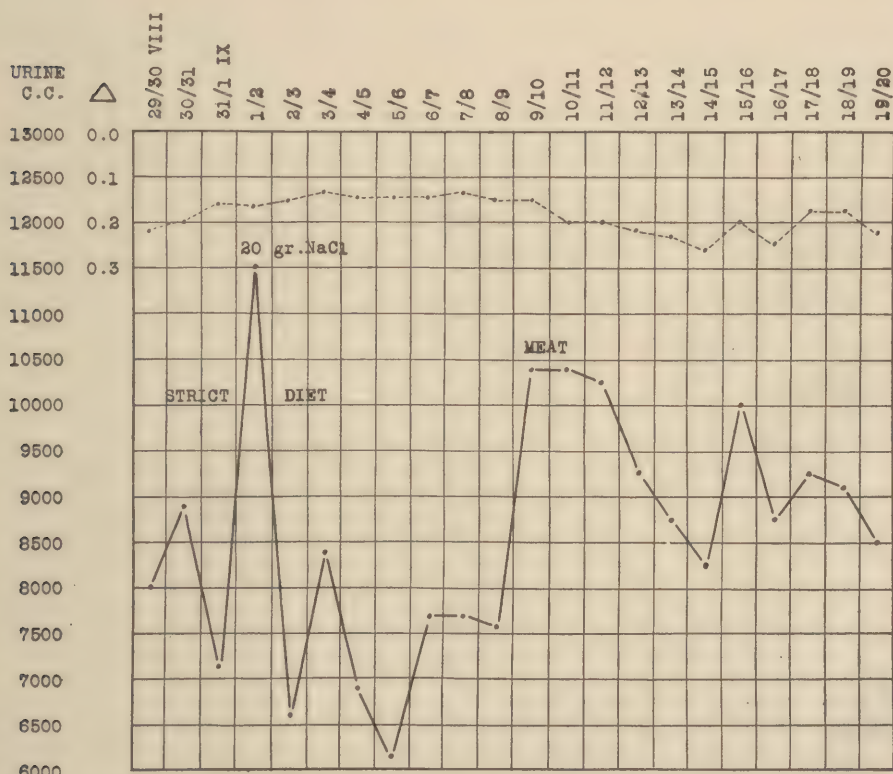


Fig. 85.—Diabetes insipidus. Continuous Line Represents the Amount of Urine Daily. Broken Line Represents the Molecular Concentration As Determined By Its Freezing Point ( $\Delta$ ). During the Strict Diet Which Contained Little Salt and a Minimum of Protein the Amount of Urine Was Reduced. The Addition of Salt or of Meat to the Diet Increased the Quantity of Urine Without Causing a Marked Change in Its Molecular Concentration. (Drawn from E. Meyer, Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.)

Diabetes insipidus must also be distinguished from those cases of *chronic nephritis* where large quantities of dilute urine are passed. Occasionally such patients show little or no albumin in the urine and the clinical differentiation is not simple. That the two are essentially different, however, is evident (1) because diabetes insipidus is not a fatal disease, (2) because patients with diabetes insipidus rarely develop nephritis, and (3) because no evidence of nephritis is ordinarily found at autopsy.



**Urinary Concentration.**—The most characteristic feature of diabetes insipidus is the fact that the concentration of the urine remains low in spite of measures which ordinarily raise it. In severe cases and with a free allowance of water, the administration of sodium chlorid to such patients results in an increased secretion of dilute urine. In this way the extra salt is eliminated from the body. Similarly, when meat is given the amount of urine is increased but its concentration is not greatly changed and in this way the extra nitrogenous waste is excreted. (See Fig. 85.) Conversely, the amount of urine may be reduced by a diet containing small amounts of salt and protein. If liquids be withheld there may be a diminution in the amount of urine but its concentration is not increased to the same degree as it would be in a normal individual under similar circumstances. The insufficient elimination of solids from the body may raise the molecular concentration of the blood and the patient suffers from intense thirst.

Erich Meyer believed that the essential disturbance in diabetes insipidus is an inability on the part of the kidney to secrete a concentrated urine. As a result of this inability large quantities of liquid must be excreted in order to carry away in dilute solution the nitrogenous wastes, the sodium chlorid and the other solids which are eliminated by way of the kidneys. The amount of urine is, therefore, determined by the quantity of solids which must be excreted. Since a low protein and low salt diet furnishes less solids it leads to a diminution in the amount of urine. According to the view of Forschbach and Weber, on the other hand, diabetes insipidus is due primarily to an excessive secretion of water. The low concentration of urine is a secondary manifestation. This concentration, though low, is not fixed and may be made to show as marked fluctuations, though at a lower level, as does normal urine. When liquids are restricted and salts or urea given, the concentration of the urine may be raised and the specific gravity may for a short time reach 1.020 or higher. In such an experiment, however, the concentration of sodium chlorid and other molecules in the blood may rise above the normal, as is seen in the

	Blood Examination for	Water ad lib.	Thirst + NaCl
Diabetes insipidus.....	$\delta$	-0.57	-0.69
Case I.....	NaCl	0.56%	1.03%
Diabetes insipidus.....	$\delta$	-0.57	-0.64
Case II.....	NaCl	0.56%	0.66%
Control.....	$\delta$	-0.56	-0.59
	NaCl	0.62%	0.61%

Effect of thirst plus administration of sodium chlorid upon the reduction of freezing point of blood ( $\delta$ ) and the percentage of sodium chlorid in serum. (From Socin.)

above chart. It would seem, therefore, that a relative rather than an absolute inability to concentrate the urine is the characteristic change.

**Other Secretions.**—The saliva is usually decreased and the mouth is dry. Perspiration is reduced and the skin harsh and dry. When exposed to heat, such patients do not perspire as profusely as do normal individuals. Constipation is frequent. These changes, like the excessive thirst, are usually attributed to a drying out of the body from excessive urination.

**Pituitary Lesions.**—No pathological changes are usually found in the kidneys of patients who have had diabetes insipidus; nor is the disease

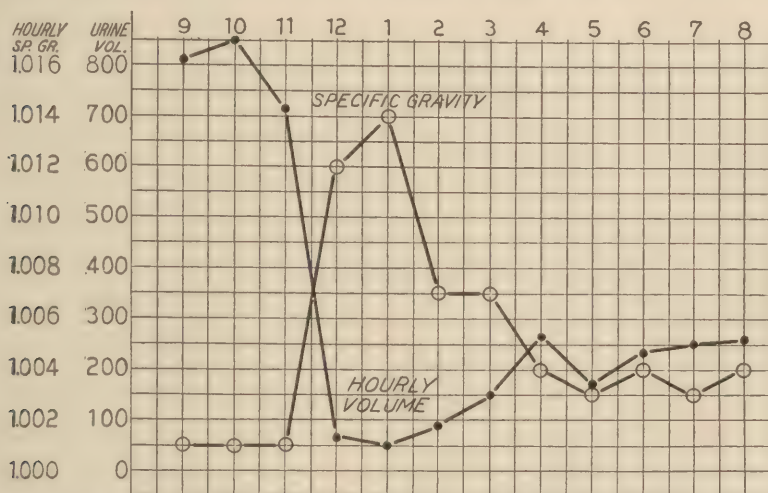


Fig. 85A.—The Effect of the Injection of Pituitary Extract upon the Hourly Excretion of Urine in a Case of Diabetes Insipidus. The Injection Was Given at Eleven O'clock. (Constructed from Data of Gibson and Martin.)

commonly associated clinically with any definite renal disease. We have mentioned that a transient polyuria can be produced by injury to certain portions of the medulla oblongata. Rarely if ever, however, have such lesions been found in patients with diabetes insipidus.

On the other hand, it is becoming more and more evident that diabetes insipidus is usually associated with lesions in or near the pituitary gland. The older literature contains many reports of the disease in which one might well assume the presence of pituitary disease, on account of associated optic atrophy, obesity or sexual infantilism. In 1919 Kennaway and Mottram collected nineteen cases of diabetes insipidus where autopsy showed disease of the pituitary, especially of the pars intermedia, the pars nervosa or the stalk. The anterior lobe was less frequently affected. They stated that there appeared to be no record of autopsies in cases of diabetes insipidus where the pituitary was examined and found to be perfectly normal. Anatomical lesions in or near the pituitary are, therefore, almost constant in this disease.

**Pathogenesis.**—Two explanations have been offered for the manner in which lesions in or near the pituitary gland may produce a diabetes insipidus. According to one, the polyuria is due to a lack of pituitary secretion; according to the other, it is due to a lesion of the neighboring base of the brain.

We have seen that the injection of an extract from the posterior and intermediate pituitary lobes checks the diuresis produced by drinking large quantities of water (Fig. 84). Similarly, in patients suffering from diabetes insipidus, the injection of pituitary extracts frequently has an antidiuretic effect. The volume of urine lessens and its specific gravity increases (Fig. 85A). The secretion from the intermediate and posterior pituitary lobes appears to pass up the stalk that connects the gland with the base of the brain; and persistent polyurias, produced by severing this stalk, have been attributed to a lack of posterior lobe secretion.

Recent experiments have shown, however that it is possible to produce prolonged polyurias by injuring the base of the brain near the entrance of the stalk, without damaging the pituitary itself and without manifestly interfering with the supposed flow of secretion. The mechanism by which this nerve lesion produces a prolonged polyuria is not understood; but it is evident that such observations tend to discredit the hypothesis that diabetes insipidus results from a lack of pituitary secretion.

## Oliguria—Anuria

A diminished quantity of urine may be due to a number of causes. Among these are a reduction in the amount of water available for urinary secretion, disturbances in the renal circulation and diseases of the renal cells.

**Oliguria from Lack of Water.**—Lack of available water may be due to a diminution in the amount of water taken by mouth or to an increased excretion of water through channels other than the kidneys. It is common knowledge that the urinary secretion is reduced when one drinks little water or when on account of excessive perspiration, constant vomiting, or severe diarrhea unusual quantities of water are lost from the body. Such conditions cause not only a diminution in the urine but they increase its concentration. Waste materials are usually removed to a normal degree and the molecular concentration and reaction of the body tissues are usually not changed. Only in very severe choleraform diarrhea is the molecular concentration of the body fluids altered.

**Oliguria from Poor Renal Circulation.**—A second cause for a diminution in the secretion of urine is an interference with the circulation of the blood through the kidneys. In heart disease this may occur owing to a general slowing of the circulation. It may also be due to an obstruction of the renal veins by the pressure of tumors or collections of fluid in the abdomen. Finally, it may be due to spasm of the arteries or arterioles in the kidney as in the acute stages of severe strychnin poisoning.



**Oliguria in Nephritis.**—The urine is frequently diminished in acute nephritis and in certain forms or stages of chronic nephritis. This oliguria may be due to various causes. Changes in the secretory activity of the renal cells and blocking of the tubules by cellular detritus seem responsible for the diminished secretion in certain forms of kidney affections. On the other hand, it seems certain that oliguria or anuria may also be due to secondary circulatory changes. A constriction of the renal blood vessels reduces the blood flow and diminishes the output of urine. According to Schlayer, oliguria in experimental nephritis is always associated with a demonstrable reduction in the vascular reactions of the diseased kidney. Finally, since the kidney is enclosed within a rather unyielding capsule, any marked swelling of the renal parenchyma might interfere with the renal circulation by reason of the increased intrarenal tension.

The diminution in urine produced by heart disease and by nephritis differs from that produced by thirst or loss of water from the body in that it is associated with the retention of water and other urinary constituents within the body. As a rule, sodium chlorid and water are retained together so that the osmotic relations within the body are not seriously altered. The questions whether the retention of salt or that of water is primary and whether such retentions are due primarily to renal disease or to changes in other tissues will be discussed elsewhere (page 454). It may be said in passing, however, that the retention of water and salt in the body is not necessarily attended by other evidences of disturbed renal function.

**Renal Decapsulation.**—Remarkable results sometimes follow decapsulation of or incision into a nephritic kidney. The exact value of decapsulation as a therapeutic procedure and the class of cases most suitable for this operation are still being discussed. It would seem, however, that the most brilliant results have been obtained in acute nephritis or in acute exacerbations of chronic nephritis associated with renal hemorrhage, edema, anuria or uremia. Following an operation on such patients there may be an almost immediate increase in the amount of urine excreted with relief from threatening symptoms.

It is generally conceded that the favorable results which follow renal decapsulation or nephrotomy are to be attributed mainly to changes in the circulation of the kidney. Especially in acute nephritis or in chronic nephritis associated with edema and anuria the kidneys often appear to be under considerable tension. By stripping back the capsule the tension is relieved and the circulation through the kidney is improved. Reginald Harrison, who was one of the first to advocate the surgical treatment of nephritis, compared such a kidney to a glaucomatous eye and attributed the beneficial results of the operation to the relief of tension. Edebohl sought to extend the use of decapsulation. He believed that the circula-

tion of the kidney was also improved by the entrance of new blood vessels through the new capsule. Experimental studies have shown, however, that an efficient collateral circulation rarely if ever follows decapsulation of the kidney. A new capsule is rapidly formed and ultimately this may furnish a poorer blood supply to the kidney than the original capsule. Decapsulation during the quiescent stages of chronic nephritis is now rarely advocated by surgeons, and little can be expected in such cases. It has proved of value mainly in cases with edema and threatening anuria and in cases with nephritic pain or hemorrhages.

### *Anuria*

In anuria the urinary output is reduced to zero. Anuria may be due either to a failure on the part of the kidney to secrete urine or to an obstruction in the urinary passages which prevents the excreted urine from escaping and eventually checks the renal function. It is unnecessary to enumerate all the causes of obstructive anuria. Among the more important are bilateral calculi, malignant tumors, and obstruction of a ureter when there is but a single functioning kidney. Anuria sometimes complicates acute nephritis, particularly that due to acute bichlorid poisoning.

**Nervous Anuria.**—In not a few cases of anuria even of several days' duration no mechanical explanation for the anuria has been found and the explanation usually offered is that the anuria is of a nervous character, being either reflex or hysterical. It is well known that the secretion from a kidney is influenced by reflexes which may arise from manipulations of the corresponding ureter. As a result of such reflexes there may be an increased or a decreased secretion of urine. In some cases when the ureter has been firmly tied, urinary secretion is inhibited from both kidneys and this anuria may last for five or six hours or more. Similarly, not a few cases have been reported in which changes in one ureter, especially those produced by stone, have caused complete suppression of urine, although the kidney on the opposite side was apparently normal. Charcot and others have also reported remarkable cases of anuria persisting over long periods of time which were attributed to hysteria. In some of these cases the anuria is said to have lasted from ten to twenty days with no apparent serious consequences. One may well doubt such extraordinary reports; at least until they have been supported by modern methods and the blood has been shown to contain excessive amounts of urinary material. On the other hand, the briefer anurias of reflex or hysterical origin may well be due to spasm of the smaller arterioles in the kidneys. In some of these cases it is possible that an acute edema of the kidney similar to angioneurotic edema may cause the anuria through compression of the kidney.

**Manifestations of Anuria.**—Anuria from hysterical or reflex causes is, so far as we know, rarely if ever fatal. Sooner or later the flow of urine is reëstablished. Anurias due to bilateral obstruction of the ureters and to acute nephritis frequently continue until death. The usual duration of life under such circumstances is from eight to fourteen days, but complete anurias of twenty days or even more have been reported.

During the earlier days of a complete anuria the symptoms are surprisingly few. As time goes on the patient often complains of headache, fatigue and weakness. The breath develops a urinous odor. Respirations become deeper. There may be muscular twitchings but general convulsions are rare. Toward the end the patient becomes somnolent and may die rather suddenly or after a brief coma. The symptoms of complete anuria resemble those which are present in nephritic patients who show a marked increase in the non-protein nitrogen of the blood.

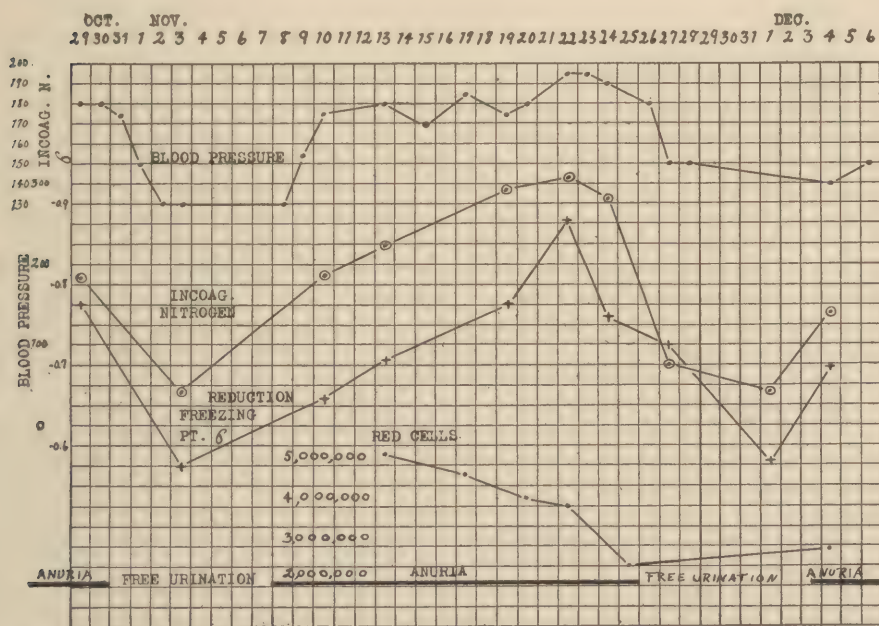


Fig. 86.—The Effect of Intermittent Anuria Due to Malignant Disease Upon the Blood and the Blood Pressure. Anuria Began About Oct. 22 and Lasted Through Oct. 30. This Was Followed by Free Urination and by Two Subsequent Periods of Anuria in the Last of Which the Patient Died. In Addition to the Changes of Blood Pressure, Note the Increase of Incoagulable Nitrogen with Each Retention. The Developing Anemia Is Probably Due in Part to Hydremia. (Drawn from a case reported by Brasch, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*)

The molecular concentration of the blood, as indicated by lowering of the freezing point, increases during anuria and there is also a marked increase of the non-protein nitrogen of the blood. A retention of water



with dilution of the blood and a rapid fall in the red blood corpuscles may also occur. As a rule, marked edema is absent. The blood pressure rises, but not to excessive heights, for pressures above 180 mm. of mercury are rare in cases of complete anuria. These changes are well shown in Figure 86, which has been constructed from Brasch's report of a case of *intermittent anuria* due to malignant disease.

## Albuminuria

### *Physiological Albuminurias*

Practically all urines contain minute traces of albumin which can be demonstrated by special methods. Albuminuria in the clinical sense, however, is a condition in which albumin may be detected in the urine by the tests in common use, particularly the heat and nitric acid test, Heller's ring test, and the potassium ferrocyanid and acetic acid test. Even with these, albuminurias occur under more or less physiological conditions. The albumin may be derived from admixtures of seminal or vaginal secretions, or from a diseased bladder, ureter or urethra. Of more interest, however, are those cases in which the albumin comes from the kidney.

**Alimentary Albuminuria.**—When a foreign protein is introduced into the body by other routes than the alimentary tract, it frequently happens that a portion is excreted in the urine and can be recognized by biological tests. Proteins taken with the food, on the other hand, do not ordinarily cause albuminuria. They are usually broken down during the processes of digestion and their constituent building stones are absorbed. After absorption these latter may be reconstructed into the body proteins or they may undergo still further disintegration. Under certain circumstances proteins may pass unchanged through the intestinal wall and thus enter the body as foreign substances. They may be recognized in the blood by biological tests and they may also be excreted by the kidneys and identified in the urine. Ascoli, for example, found that it was possible in certain healthy individuals to produce an egg white albuminuria by giving very large doses of egg white. Such an alimentary albuminuria depends more upon the permeability of the intestinal mucosa than upon changes in the kidneys. In infants who have in general a more permeable intestinal mucous membrane, alimentary albuminuria is more readily produced and especially is this true in inflammatory conditions of the gastrointestinal tract. In adults alimentary albuminuria appears to be quite uncommon.

**Albuminuria from Exercise.**—Albuminuria may also be produced in normal individuals by violent exercise. Thus, after rowing races, football games, or long distance running contests, albumin is present in the

urine of almost every contestant. The quantity may be very large and it may be accompanied by numerous casts and red blood cells. Ordinarily these urinary changes disappear in a day or two after the contest but they may continue for weeks or even longer in exceptional cases.

URINARY FINDINGS BEFORE A MARATHON RACE, IMMEDIATELY AFTER AND AT SUBSEQUENT PERIODS (FROM BARACH)

	No. of Cases	Albumin	Blood	Casts	Aceton Bodies
Before.....	24	1	0	0	0
Immediately after.....	19	19	18	19	18
One week subsequent.....	19	4	0	6	0
Three weeks subsequent.....	..	3	0	3	0

It is not possible to establish any quantitative relation between the amount of exercise and the occurrence or amount of albuminuria. There appear to be very considerable individual variations.

**Albuminuria from Cold.**—Albuminuria may also follow exposure to cold and particularly prolonged exposure with marked chilling. Apparently a brief exposure to cold with a good reaction as in hydrotherapeutic treatments does not ordinarily cause albuminuria.

**Orthostatic Albuminuria—Lordotic Albuminuria.**—By far the most important and the most interesting type of so-called physiological albuminuria is that which is variously known as cyclic, postural, or orthostatic albuminuria. In this condition the urine is free of albumin when the patient is lying down, but when he stands albumin appears. A daily cycle is, therefore, established. The urine secreted during the night contains no albumin. It appears in that excreted after rising and usually reaches a maximum sometime before noon. In the afternoon it is present in smaller amounts. It has been shown that this albuminuria depends not upon exercise but upon the upright posture, for it is not present if the patient exercises while lying down. In a majority of cases this albumin is serum albumin. Usually no casts appear, although a few hyaline or granular forms may be present. Orthostatic albuminuria is found particularly in adolescents between the ages of fifteen and twenty-one and its frequency during these ages has been variously estimated by different observers. According to Lommel, for example, it is present in about 19 per cent of such individuals.

*Persons suffering from orthostatic albuminuria* usually present no other symptoms referable to the kidneys. Many of them are of a delicate slender build, and they frequently complain of lassitude or of headache. Physical examination frequently, but not invariably, shows vasomotor and nervous instability.

**PROGNOSIS.**—The prognosis of orthostatic albuminuria has been much discussed. Certain authors, notably Senator, have been inclined to attribute most of these cases to an inflammatory irritation of the kidneys and consequently have advised extreme caution in giving a prognosis. It is certain that cases of true nephritis may during their milder or declining stages show an intermittent albuminuria which depends upon the posture of the individual and in a given individual it may not always be easy to exclude the possibility of a mild or disappearing nephritis. On the other hand, numerous observers have testified to the fact that by far the largest proportion of young individuals with orthostatic albuminuria never develop a definite nephritis and that in later life they lose the tendency toward albuminuria when standing.

**PATHOGENESIS.**—In such patients, therefore, some explanation other than a mild nephritis is sought. It has been suggested for example that this form of albuminuria may be due to changes in the permeability of the cells lining the urinary passages and particularly to changes in the glomeruli, so that albumin is not held back by the renal filter as it normally should be. This suggestion does not seem to be susceptible of proof.

According to another group of hypotheses, orthostatic albuminuria depends upon changes in the renal circulation. Erlanger and Hooker, who studied very carefully the blood pressures in a patient with orthostatic



Fig. 87.—Normal Lordosis in a Boy 12 Years Old. (From Jehle, "Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.," published by J. Springer, Berlin.)



Fig. 88.—Excessive Lordosis in a Boy 12 Years Old. (From Jehle, "Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.," published by J. Springer, Berlin.)



Fig. 89.—Excessive Lordosis in a Young Girl. (From Jehle, "Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.," published by J. Springer, Berlin.)

albuminuria, found no relation between the albuminuria and the absolute height of the blood pressure. On the other hand, they found that in their



patient the difference between systolic and diastolic pressures was less than the normal. This difference, the so-called pulse pressure, normally lessens



Fig. 90.—The Same Girl As in the Previous Figure, Showing Correction of the Lordosis by Placing One Foot on a Stool. In This Position the Albuminuria Previously Present Disappeared. (From Jehle, "Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.," published by J. Springer, Berlin.)

when a person assumes the standing position. It was also lessened when the patient with orthostatic albuminuria assumed an upright position. They suggested, therefore, that the albuminuria might depend upon the unusually small pulse pressure in their patient. Recently Gesell has shown that a diminished pulse pressure experimentally induced in animals may increase an albuminuria. On the other hand, Bass and Weissler have failed to establish any relation between blood pressure and orthostatic albuminuria.

Jehle has pointed out that patients with orthostatic albuminuria usually show an unusual anterior curvature of the spine in the region of the twelfth dorsal to the second lumbar vertebrae and he has attempted to prove that this lordosis which appears when these patients assume the standing position is responsible for the albuminuria. He found that it was usually possible to cause an albuminuria even when these patients were lying down, if the lordosis which occurred naturally in the standing position were reproduced artificially by placing props beneath the lumbar region. Furthermore, the albuminuria could be made to disappear when the patient was standing if the lordosis were corrected either by mechanical means, such as a jacket or brace, or by a corrective posture, e. g., placing

one foot on a chair. In spite of considerable controversy concerning Jehle's views, it is generally admitted that albuminuria from lordosis does occur. Just what proportion of cases of orthostatic albuminuria will be shown to be due to this cause is still uncertain. Jehle believes that while vasomotor influences may play a part in the etiology of orthostatic albuminuria the most important factor in practically all cases is the mechanical effect of the lordosis. Sonne's observation that the albumin came from only the left kidney supports the view that the left renal vein is compressed: possibly as it crosses the aorta.

### *Pathological Causes of Albuminuria*

Albumin in the urine may be derived either from the kidneys or from the urinary passages. When it comes from the latter it may be caused by inflammations or by hemorrhage. In such cases, as a rule, the amount of albumin is relatively small compared to the number of leukocytes or of

red cells. It differs in this respect from the albuminuria of kidney diseases, for in the latter the albumin is usually abundant when compared with the number of cells.

**Albuminuria from Circulatory Disturbances.**—Circulatory disturbances in the kidney may cause albuminuria. Even a brief interruption of the blood flow by ligature of the renal artery or veins produces this effect. Albuminuria is also common in the severe passive congestion of cardiac decompensation. It seems probable that as a result of a temporary stoppage or a long-continued slowing of the blood stream there is a change in the nutrition of the renal cells which renders them more permeable to albumin. We have seen that according to prevailing views orthostatic albuminuria is due to circulatory changes in the kidneys, which consist either in a diminished pulse pressure or in a mechanical interference with the venous outflow as a result of lordosis.

**Albuminuria from Kidney Disease.**—The most common and most important cause of albuminuria is disease of the kidneys themselves. The nephropathy may either be degenerative or inflammatory in character. The albumin in the urine is derived almost entirely from the proteins of the blood plasma, serum albumin passing through the renal membranes in larger quantities than serum globulin. As a rule, the largest amount of albumin seems to pass through the glomeruli but some may be derived from the kidney tubules.

### *Cylindruria*

In many diseases of the kidney casts and cylindroids appear in the urine. The relation between these two is not definitely established but it seems certain that no absolutely sharp line can be drawn. Many cylindroids are derived from the kidney, for transitions between casts and cylindroids are frequently found in the urine and patients who on some occasions show typical casts will on others show only cylindroids. In general, however, the presence of cylindroids seems to have a less serious significance than the presence of casts.

**Origin.**—Two views have been advanced as to the origin of casts. According to the first, the albumin which has passed the renal filter becomes coagulated in the renal tubules. According to the second view, casts are made up from cellular detritus which has been derived from the products of degenerative changes in the epithelium lining the tubules. Clinical observations have demonstrated that there is no constant relation between the degree of albuminuria and of cylindruria. Albuminuria with few casts is not uncommon, especially in circulatory affections of the kidneys. Cylindruria without albuminuria also occurs, particularly following the administration of salicylates and during constipation. In diabetic coma the number of casts is much greater proportionately than the amount of albumin. We have seen that the albumin enters the urine mainly

through the glomeruli and the fact that albuminuria and cylindruria are frequently dissociated suggests that casts may be derived from changes in the tubules. Experimental studies have, in fact, shown that casts occur particularly after extensive degenerative changes in the tubular epithelium. According to R. M. Smith, granular casts are due to a rapid formation and excretion while hyaline casts are formed and excreted slowly. The showers of casts which appear at times seem to be due to a rapid washing out of casts which have already formed.

## Experimental Nephritis

**Types of Experimental Nephritis.**—It has been known for some time that the injection of various poisons into animals will produce renal changes. Certain substances, particularly the chromium salts, the uranium salts, mercuric chlorid and the tartrates, cause extensive necroses of the epithelium lining of the urinary tubules. According to Suzuki, each of the first three of these poisons affects specific portions of the proximal convoluted tubules. On the other hand, cantharidin, arsenic and snake venom cause albuminuria, hematuria and anuria with anatomical changes mainly in the glomeruli. From the anatomical standpoint, therefore, there is a division into epithelial and vascular renal poisons. This distinction is never an absolute one. Cantharidin also produces cloudy swelling and formation of vacuoles in the proximal convoluted tubules, while glomerular changes have been described in uranium nephritis by Christian and by Baehr.

Of particular interest are studies of the functions of experimentally diseased kidneys, on account of the light which such studies throw on the problems of human nephritis. Schlayer and his associates studied the urinary elimination and the vascular reactions of normal and diseased kidneys. They tested the reaction of the renal vessels to reflexes from sensory stimuli (tobacco smoke blown into the nose) and to adrenalin, each of which normally produces a transient diminution of kidney volume with an increase in general arterial pressure. Caffein and strong salt solution were used for testing the reaction to influences which normally dilate the renal vessels. From their experiments they concluded that in the mild or moderately severe forms of tubular nephritis produced by potassium bichromate the vascular reactions were normal. Only in the later stages of this type of nephritis was there a marked reduction of diuresis and loss of the vascular reactions. After the administration of cantharidin or arsenic, on the other hand, the general blood pressure was low and the vascular reactions were altered, being excessive in the very mild cases and diminished or lost in the more severe cases. On the basis of these experiments Schlayer has distinguished two experimental types of



nephritis. In the tubular form no marked changes occur in the vascular reactions while in the vascular form the vascular reactions are at first increased, later diminished and finally abolished. The experimental nephritis produced by uranium seemed to occupy an intermediary position, because in this type there were not only tubular degenerations and necroses but early alterations in the reactions of the blood vessels. These observations have been confirmed in the main by R. M. Pearce and his associates, although these authors were unable to establish equally sharp distinctions between the two types of nephritis.

**Relation Between Diuresis and Vascular Reactions.**—We have stated that in the very mild forms of vascular nephritis the vascular reactions may be more marked than the normal, whereas in somewhat more severe forms the reactions are diminished and eventually they are lost. According to Schlager, the amount of urine secreted is directly proportioned to the irritability of the renal blood vessels as measured by the degree of vascular reaction. When the reactions are excessive polyuria is present. Polyuria, therefore, may represent a mild degree of vascular injury. When the reactions are less marked than normal there is oliguria, and when the reactions are absent, anuria. Schlager's contention that anuria is associated with an absence of vascular reactions has not been confirmed by certain of the later investigators (Pearce, MacNider).

**The Excretion of Lactose and Potassium Iodid.**—Schlager also found that damage to the renal tubules interfered with the excretion of sodium chlorid and he concluded that an inability to excrete sodium chlorid was characteristic of tubular lesions. From experimental studies, therefore, it would appear that severe vascular lesions diminish the excretion of water and that tubular lesions diminish the excretion of sodium chlorid. Inasmuch as both sodium chlorid and water are normal body constituents and their excretion through the kidney is influenced by factors outside of this organ, Schlager tested the excretion of other substances not normally present in the body, with the hope that these might serve to indicate the separate functional capacities of the tubules and of the renal blood vessels (glomeruli). He found that in experimental nephritis of the vascular type the excretion of lactose is interfered with, whereas in experimental nephritis of the tubular type the excretion of potassium iodid is delayed. He, therefore, advocated that the rate of excretion of these substances be used clinically as tests of the functional damage to the vascular and tubular apparatus in human nephritis.

The clinical value of Schlager's functional kidney tests with potassium iodid and lactose has not been definitely settled. A number of studies have been made in which the results of these tests were compared with other functional disturbances present in nephritic patients, and in particular they have been compared with the occurrence of nephritic edema and with the retention of nitrogenous waste products in the body. Nephritic edema,

as we shall see (page 446), is usually associated with an imperfect elimination of sodium chlorid. Comparative studies of the elimination of sodium chlorid and of potassium iodid by nephritic patients have shown that there is a general parallelism between the two and that patients who show a deficient elimination of the one usually show a deficient elimination of the other. Furthermore, in a single patient an improvement in the elimination of the one is usually accompanied by a simultaneous improvement in the elimination of the other. The parallelism, however, does not seem to be an absolutely strict one and some patients eliminate one poorly while eliminating the other well. It would seem, therefore, that the elimination of potassium iodid is not an absolutely trustworthy indicator of the ability of the body to eliminate sodium chlorid and that as a practical guide for instituting a low salt diet it is not altogether dependable.

The use of intravenous lactose injections, as recommended by Schlayer, yields results which are more or less parallel to those furnished by studies of nitrogenous retention. Here again, however, the parallelism is not an exact one and the rate of lactose elimination cannot replace estimations of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood. The excretion of lactose is relatively delayed in many cases of nephritis and it is possible that this test may prove of value as a very sensitive indicator of slight renal damage. From the practical standpoint, however, such injections are objectionable because they, like other intravenous injections, may be followed by violent febrile reactions unless scrupulous care be taken to avoid the so-called water fever (see page 501).

**Relation of Functional to Anatomical Changes.**—Even though the results obtained by these tests may fail to correspond with the occurrence of nephritic edema and with the retention of non-protein nitrogen in the body, they may still, as Schlayer believes, indicate the functional activity of different portions of the renal substance. While in general the functional tests correspond with anatomical changes in experimental nephritis, there are even here discrepancies, for in the experimental nephritis produced by uranium salts there may be a marked functional insufficiency of the vascular apparatus with relatively slight changes in the appearance of the blood vessels and glomeruli.

As yet but few autopsies have been reported on nephritic patients who have been subjected to Schlayer's tests, but these also show that it is difficult to correlate the chief anatomical lesions and the chief functional deficiencies. Here, as elsewhere, the explanation is always possible that functional changes occur without demonstrable anatomical lesions.

In view of the fact that we are still very uncertain as to the normal functions of renal tubules and glomeruli, it seems better for the present to discuss kidney disease not from the standpoint of deficiencies in these particular parts of the kidney but from the standpoint of deficiencies in the elimination of substances normally excreted, without regard to the

portion of the kidney involved. A discussion from this standpoint is further justified by the fact that retentions of sodium chlorid or of nitrogen waste are associated with definite symptoms and that they furnish valuable data for prognosis and therapy.

## **Retention of Nitrogenous Waste Products**

The catabolism of proteins in the body leads to the formation of simpler nitrogenous compounds which are distinguishable from proteins by the general fact that they are not so readily precipitated by various reagents. The amount of these substances is estimated by determining the nitrogen content of a body fluid after the proteins have been precipitated and removed by filtration. This nitrogen is spoken of as the non-protein or incoagulable nitrogen.

### ***Nitrogenous Excretion in Nephritis***

For the most part the nitrogen waste of the body is finally converted into urea and is eliminated as such by the kidneys. The amount of urea appearing in the urine depends primarily upon the amount of nitrogenous material taken in the food, for the body has but a limited storage capacity for nitrogenous compounds and promptly excretes any excess. It is evident, therefore, that no conclusion concerning the function of the kidneys can be drawn from simple estimations of the urea or total nitrogenous output in the urine. The excretion must always be compared with the intake. Even though both intake and output are determined it may be difficult or impossible to recognize nitrogenous retention, for it is evident that small differences between intake and output might in the long run lead to very marked accumulations of waste nitrogen in the body and that even when the intake and output balanced there might be either a low or a high level of waste nitrogen already in the body.

When the nitrogenous intake and output are carefully followed in cases of chronic nephritis temporary discrepancies are not infrequently found between the two. At certain times there may be a nitrogen retention, while at other times the nitrogen losses exceed the intake. The nephritic kidney frequently does not accommodate its excretion of nitrogenous substances to the dietetic intake with the same precision that is common in healthy individuals. The degree of accommodation may be tested by giving to patients in nitrogenous equilibrium a certain amount of urea and determining the promptness with which this excess is eliminated. In such experiments, von Monakow found that normally the excessive nitrogen from 20 g. of urea is eliminated within one and a half days. Among patients with nephritis, the elimination of the excessive nitrogen varies. In some patients it is normal, in others it is delayed, while in the



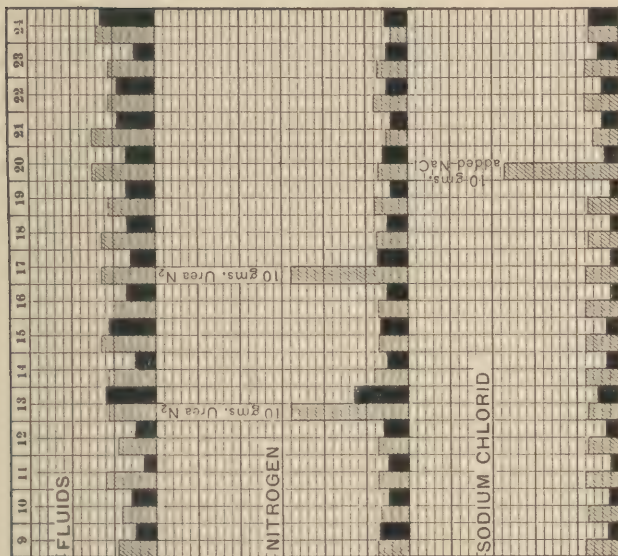


Fig. 91.—Chronic Nephritis. Table Showing the Intake and Urinary Output of Water, Nitrogen, and Sodium Chloride. The Intake Is Indicated by the Hatched Columns, the Output by the Solid Columns. Note that When 10 Grams of Urea Were Taken, the Excessive Amount of Nitrogen Was Almost Entirely Eliminated on the Same Day. The Patient Was on a Low Sodium Chloride Intake and the Addition of 10 Grams Caused Only a Slight Increase in the Output and This Was Greatest on the Day Following the Intake. (From Christian, Frothingham, O'Hare and Woods, *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*)

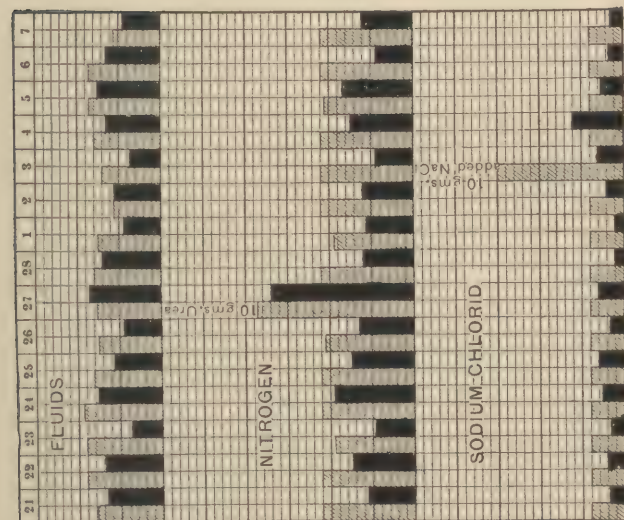


Fig. 92.—Chronic Nephritis. Table Showing the Intake and Urinary Output of Water, Nitrogen, and Sodium Chloride. The Intake Is Indicated by the Hatched Columns, the Output by the Solid Columns. Note that When 10 Grams of Urea Were Added to the Intake on Two Occasions, the Extra Nitrogen Was Almost Entirely Retained in the Body. Furthermore, the Addition of 10 Grams of Sodium Chloride Caused Almost No Increase in Its Elimination. (From Christian, Frothingham, O'Hare and Woods, *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*)

most severe disturbances the added nitrogen may be almost entirely retained in the body (Figs. 91 and 92).

### *Non-protein Nitrogen in the Blood*

Disturbances in the elimination of waste nitrogen are also indicated by an increased amount of non-protein nitrogen or of urea in the blood. The normal amounts present have been determined by different investigators but the results have varied according to the methods used. By the method of Folin and Denis, strictly normal individuals usually have between 22 and 28 mgms. of non-protein nitrogen per 100 c.c. of blood, of which about 50 per cent (11 to 14 mgms.) is urea nitrogen. Hospital patients show a much wider range, the total non-protein nitrogen varying from 15 mgms. to as much as 40 mgms. without clinical evidence of kidney disease. By the chemically imperfect but extensively used hypobromite method for determining "urea" in the blood, Widai and his coworkers have shown that from 15 to 50 mgms. of hypobromite urea are normally present in 100 c.c. of blood, or expressed in terms of urea nitrogen from 9 to 30 mgms. per 100 c.c.

Among the physiological influences which cause variations in the incoagulable nitrogen of the blood the most important is diet. After a large protein meal there is a distinct increase in the incoagulable nitrogen of the blood, even in a normal individual. Thus Weill records an increase from 21 to 46 mgms. of hypobromite urea after a meal containing about 120 grams of protein. The percentage in the blood is higher when patients are given diets containing large amounts of protein than when the proteins in the diet are restricted. It is probable that a similar rise in the non-protein nitrogen of the blood may be caused by an increased protein catabolism, such as occurs in certain fevers and intoxications. Evidently, therefore, the quantity of non-protein nitrogen in the blood, influenced as it is by the diet, and the rate of protein metabolism, cannot in itself be used as an absolute measure of the efficiency of the kidney in removing nitrogen waste. In order to make accurate comparisons between different individuals it is necessary either that they should be on a standard diet and that the blood should be taken at a given time of the day, or that some comparison be made between the waste nitrogen in the blood and the amount that passes through the kidney into the urine.

**Blood Urea and Urea Secretion.**—If some relation could be demonstrated between the concentration of urea in the blood and the amount excreted in the urine, this might furnish a basis for measuring accurately the ability of the kidney to excrete this class of waste products. Ambard has, in fact, sought to establish such relationship between the urea of the blood and its excretion in the urine. According to Ambard, the amount of urea excreted at a given concentration in the urine is directly proportional to the square of its concentration in the blood. When, according to

Ambard, the concentration in the blood is constant, the output in the urine will be greater when large quantities of urine are excreted, the output of urea being inversely proportional to the square root of its concentration in the urine. By combining these propositions in a mathematical formula,<sup>1</sup> Ambard believes that he has found a constant which expresses for any kidney its ability to excrete urea.

The Ambard formula has been criticized both on theoretical grounds and because large numbers of observations on normal individuals indicate that the Ambard quotient is not constant even for a given individual. Nevertheless, it has become clear that the rate of urea excretion is influenced by the level of blood urea and that a proper expression of relationship between these would be helpful in estimating renal functions. Addis, for example, has recently proposed that the ratio between blood urea and urea output be measured after the administration of water and urea by mouth. Under such a condition of strain the ratio between blood urea and urea excretion was relatively constant for a given individual.

**Acute Retention.**—A retention of nitrogenous waste may develop and pass off rapidly. In anuria from whatever cause, there is a rapid increase in the non-protein nitrogen of the blood. This is illustrated in Fig. 86, which also shows the rapid return to the normal when the secretion of urine is reëstablished. Similar changes sometimes occur in acute nephritis. Thus Reiss reports a case of nephritis after scarlet fever with 283 mgms. of non-protein nitrogen in 100 c.c. of blood with subsequent recovery. Similar changes have been demonstrated in the acute uranium nephritis of rabbits as well as in other forms of experimental nephritis.

**Chronic Retentions.**—The most important form of nitrogenous retention is that which is encountered in certain cases of chronic nephritis. It is difficult to state how frequently nitrogenous retention occurs in chronic nephritis on account of our uncertainty as to physiological limits. It is probable, however, that slight nitrogenous retentions are by no means infrequent. On the other hand, marked retentions, sufficient to be associated with characteristic symptoms and sufficient to render the prognosis unfavorable, are not very common. According to Widal, an increase in the hyperbromite urea of the blood from the normal upper limit of 50 mgms. to 100 mgms. per 100 c.c. of blood represents a mild to moderately severe retention. When the hyperbromite urea exceeds 100 mgms. a serious condition is always present. In exceptional cases 400 to 500 mgms. or even

<sup>1</sup> Ambard's formula is as follows:

$$K = \frac{Ur}{D \cdot \sqrt{\frac{C}{25}}}$$

Where K is the constant for a given individual; Ur is the amount of urea in one liter of blood; D is the output of urea estimated for 24 hours; C is the concentration per mille of urea in the urine.



more have been found, but such patients usually live only a short time. By Folin's method the total non-protein nitrogen should not exceed 40 mgms. per 100 c.c. It may be increased in nephritis to 300 mgms. or more.

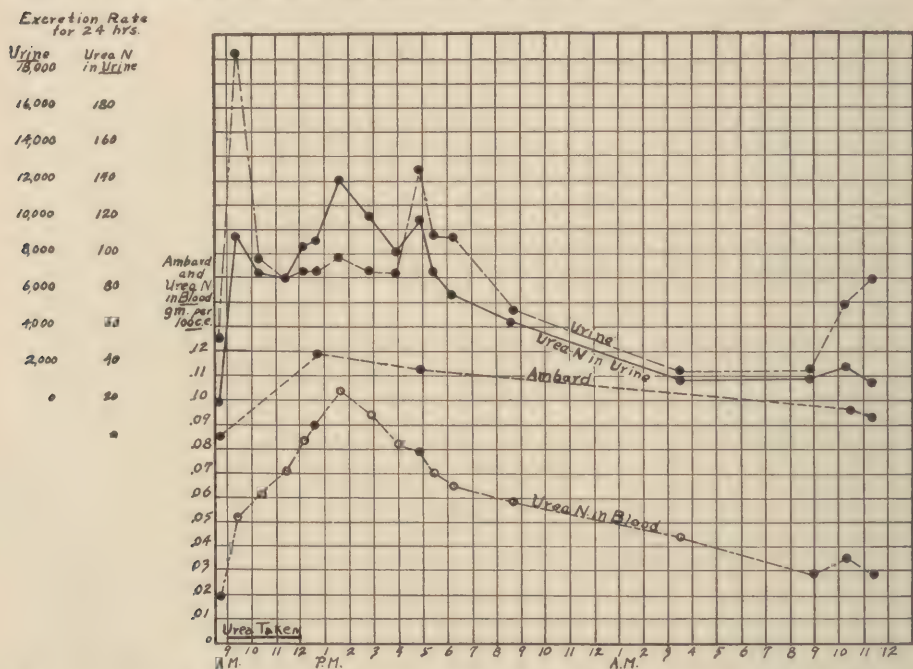


Fig. 93.—Effect of Ingestion of a Large Quantity of Urea by a Normal Individual. Beginning at 9 A.M. 25 Grams of Urea Were Taken Every Hour Until 12 M. (100 Grams in All). Water ad lib. Note the Marked Rise in the Blood Urea (Over 5 Times) While the Ambard "Constant" Rose Less Than 40 per cent. The Solid Dots on the Blood Curve Represent Actual Determinations, the Circles Represent Calculated Amounts of Urea. (From unpublished experiments by Hewlett, Gilbert and Wickett.)

**EFFECT OF DIET.**—Of particular interest is the fact that the non-protein nitrogen in the blood may be reduced by a low protein diet. When the patient is on an ordinary diet and the blood shows a moderate increase in non-protein nitrogen, the latter may be brought down to normal limits by a restriction of protein food. When the amount of incoagulable nitrogen in the blood is markedly increased, however, even strict dieting will no longer reduce it to the normal concentration. By lessening the protein intake the nitrogenous metabolism may be reduced, but not beyond a certain minimum (see page 241.) Whether this minimum in chronic nephritis differs from the normal or not we do not know, but it is suggestive that Mosenthal found variation from the normal protein metabolism in acute experimental uranium nephritis. If the minimum protein requirements of the body are not supplied by the diet then they must be supplied by the body proteins. It is evident, therefore, that the protein metabolism cannot be reduced beyond a certain point by dieting and since in a given

patient the amount of non-protein nitrogen in the blood depends to a large extent upon the rate of protein metabolism, it is evident that there is also a limit to the dietetic reductions of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood. For this reason even the most rigorous restrictions of the protein intake in severe cases of nephritis still leave an excess of nitrogen waste in the body fluids.

**EFFECTS OF DIURESIS.**—According to Foster and Davis, the increased non-protein nitrogen in the blood may also be reduced if diuresis follows an abundant intake of fluids. Certain patients with chronic nephritis, even though suffering from an imperfect elimination of nitrogenous wastes, are still able to excrete large quantities of water and in some such cases it would appear that some nitrogenous waste may be washed out of the blood by abundant water drinking.

### *Retention of Individual Nitrogenous Products*

**Urea.**—The urea nitrogen normally makes up about one-half of the total non-protein nitrogen of the blood. Whenever as a result of chronic nephritis there is a marked increase of the total non-protein nitrogen, the urea fraction is relatively high. The proportion of urea nitrogen in the blood may rise moderately (65 per cent of the total) or it may rise markedly (80 per cent and over).

**Uric Acid.**—We have seen that in gout there is usually an increase in the amount of uric acid in the blood and that this may occur even though the total non-protein nitrogen in the blood is not increased. In nephritis with nitrogenous retention, the amount of uric acid in the blood is also increased and in cases of marked retention it may exceed the figures usually obtained in gouty patients (page 328). As a rule, however, the proportion of uric acid relative to the total non-protein nitrogen is not great. Myers and his associates believe, however, that many early cases of nephritis, particularly of the interstitial type, give blood pictures which differ little from those of gout.

**Creatinin.**—The amounts of creatinin and creatin in the blood tend to increase in conditions of nitrogenous retention. A marked rise in the former indicates an unfavorable outcome (Myers and Killian). According to Myers and Fine, a lowered permeability of the kidney to nitrogenous wastes becomes first apparent by a retention of uric acid, later by a retention of urea, and lastly by a retention of creatinin.

**Other Nitrogenous Bodies.**—The amino acid nitrogen of the blood is also frequently increased in conditions of nitrogenous retention, but according to Woods, this increase does not parallel the retention of other bodies. The blood may also show a reaction for indican.

The total non-protein nitrogen in the blood always exceeds to a more or less marked degree the sum of the nitrogen derived from urea, uric

acid, creatinin, creatin and amino acids. This excess, which is sometimes called the residual nitrogen, cannot be determined very accurately, for the reason that any errors introduced into any of the preceding determinations influence this figure. Considerable interest is attached to this residual nitrogen, however, owing to the possibility that it may include some unknown bodies which are unusually toxic and which may give rise to toxic symptoms. Woods found that the residual nitrogen was increased in severe cases of retention.

### ***Nitrogen Waste in the Tissues***

Urea diffuses readily through the tissues and when the amount of urea in the body is increased excessive amounts are found in most of the tissues. Certain tissues, however, such as fat, bone, cartilage, etc., do not take up much urea. The concentration of urea in the spinal fluid, in the saliva and in various exudates, is approximately the same as its concentration in the blood. Concerning the distribution of the other nitrogenous products that may be retained in nephritis but little is known.

It has been noted by v. Monokow, Mosenthal and others, however, that a retention of nitrogen in chronic nephritis may not cause as high a rise in the non-protein nitrogen in the blood as one would expect if the amount retained were evenly distributed throughout the body. Apparently nitrogenous compounds have been deposited in the tissues. In what form this occurs and whether it is to be regarded as distinctly harmful or as comparable to the retention of nitrogenous material which may occur normally (page 240) is not known.

### ***Symptoms of Nitrogenous Retention***

According to Widal, the symptoms associated with nitrogenous retention are loss of appetite, with or without gastric disturbances, fatigue, lassitude, and prostration. These symptoms increase as the retention becomes more severe. In the later stages of retention, the patient becomes somnolent, vomiting and diarrhea may be present, the retinae frequently show the characteristic changes of albuminuric retinitis, itching is common, and there is frequently a marked anemia associated with leukocytosis. On the other hand, general convulsions, prolonged coma, paralysis and other serious or localized nervous manifestations are usually absent.

### ***Relation to Other Renal Functions***

Widal, Strauss and others have pointed out on various occasions that in nephritis the different functions of the kidneys may be impaired to different degrees. For example, patients with marked albuminuria, with edema, and with an inability to eliminate any but the smallest quantities



of sodium chlorid in the urine, may show no increase of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood. Indeed they may show an unusually good elimination of urea as measured by Ambard's constant and they may excrete phenolsulphonephthalein even better than the average normal individual. On the other hand, patients with marked nitrogen retention may show little or even no albuminuria and they may exhibit no tendency

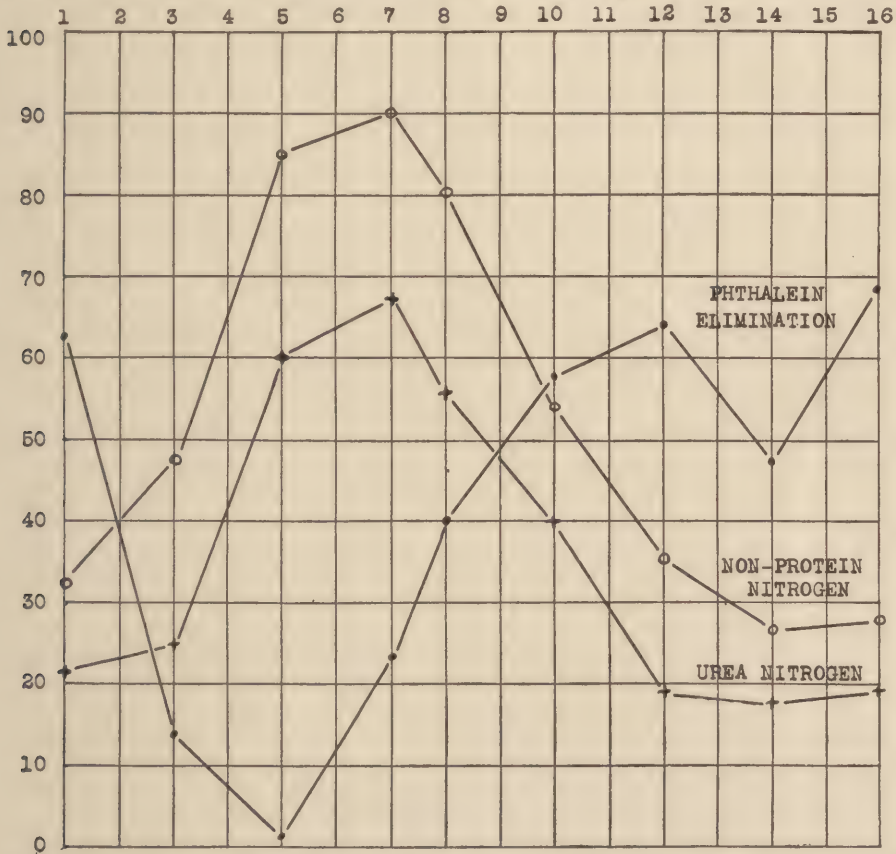


Fig. 94.—Diagram Showing the Excretion of Phenolsulphonephthalein and the Accumulation of Non-protein Nitrogen and of Urea Nitrogen in the Blood of a Rabbit During an Acute Nephritis Induced by Uranium Salts. Note that the Phthalein Excretion Changes More Promptly than the Accumulation of Nitrogenous Wastes. (Redrawn from Frothingham, Fitz, Folin and Denis, Arch. Int. Med.)

toward edema or salt retention. The relation of nitrogenous retention to high blood pressure is also inconstant. Most patients with an increase of non-protein nitrogen in the blood show some increase in the systolic blood pressure; but high blood pressure is frequently present with no marked nitrogenous retention and in a given individual the variations in the non-protein nitrogen in the blood caused by changes in the diet are not necessarily associated with corresponding changes in the blood pres-

sure. It is evident, therefore, that an increase in the non-protein nitrogen in the blood is not definitely related to the amount of albumin in the urine,

to the occurrence of edema, or to the height of the blood pressure. Patients with nephritis exhibit these manifestations in varying combinations.

**Excretion of Dyes.**—On the other hand, a general parallelism exists between an increase of non-protein nitrogen in the blood and the ability of the kidney to eliminate certain test dyes. Castaigne and Weill have made comparisons between the urea in the blood and the elimination of methylene blue and they have shown that a general but not a strict parallelism exists between the two. Similar results have been obtained in comparing the amount of non-protein nitrogen in the blood and the excretion of phenolsulphonephthalein. In the acute form of experimental uranum nephritis of rabbits, the phthalein excretion falls rapidly and with recovery it returns promptly to the normal. During the *first* stage the non-protein nitrogen accumulates in the blood and during the *second* it gradually returns to the normal level (Fig. 94). In experimental nephritis, therefore, the two tests give comparable results if one takes into consideration the fact that phthalein excretion indicates the renal function at the moment, whereas time enters as a factor in the accumulation and elimination of non-protein nitrogen. Studies on patients

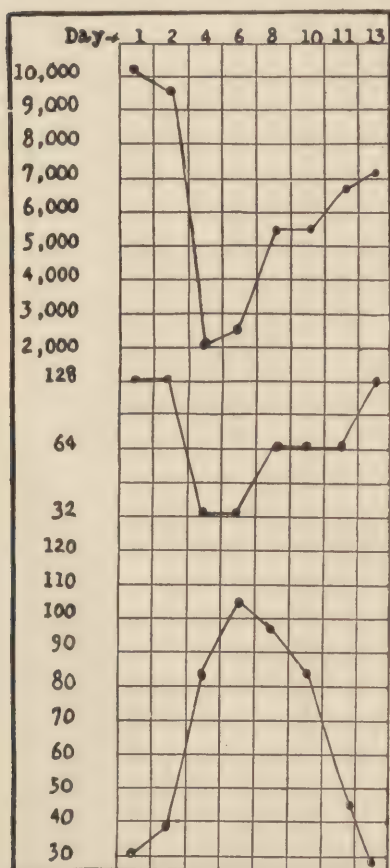


Fig. 95.—Curves Showing the Relation of Amylase Excretion (Upper Curve of "Absolute Diastatic" Strength, Middle of "d" Excretion) to the Accumulation of Non-protein Nitrogen in the Blood (Lower Curve) During a Moderate Nephritis Induced in the Rabbit by Uranium Nitrate. (From Fitz, Arch. Int. Med.)

have also shown a general parallelism between the two tests. As a rule, a marked reduction in phthalein excretion is associated with nitrogenous retention. This parallelism is not an absolutely strict one. In chronic passive congestion particularly, there may be a marked reduction in the output of phenolsulphonephthalein with no corresponding accumulation of non-protein nitrogen in the blood.

**Excretion of Amylase.**—The amount of starch splitting ferment in the urine of normal men is fairly constant. In nephritis it is frequently

diminished in proportion to the severity of the disease. Geyelin compared the excretion of amylase with that of phenolsulphonephthalein and found that the two varied together in nephritis but that in cardiac insufficiency the phthalein was often reduced with no corresponding reduction of the amylase output. Fitz has compared the amylase excretion and the non-protein nitrogen of the blood in experimental uranium nephritis and has found that with the onset of the nephritis the excretion of amylase falls and the non-protein nitrogen of the blood begins to rise and that with recovery the reverse relationship occurs. (See Fig. 95.) It appears, therefore, that a diminished excretion of amylase occurs in those types of nephritis which lead to a retention of nitrogen.

### *Prognosis*

Widal has pointed out that a marked increase in the non-protein nitrogen in the blood in chronic nephritis has an unfavorable prognostic significance and Rowntree and his associates have shown that a marked diminution in the excretion of phenolsulphonephthalein also indicates an unfavorable outcome. In judging prognosis from these tests, however, a number of modifying factors should be considered. It should be remembered that in acute nephritis and in the acute exacerbations of chronic nephritis these tests may be unfavorable and yet more or less complete recovery may take place. It should also be remembered that the amount of non-protein nitrogen in the blood is influenced by diet and that the phthalein test is influenced by the condition of the circulation through the kidneys. If, however, these modifying factors be taken into consideration, then these tests furnish important prognostic data in chronic nephritis; and their value is especially evident when we recall that serious accumulations of non-protein nitrogen may occur even when there is no edema and but little albumin in the urine.

## **Salt Retention—Nephritic Edema**

### *Normal Relations*

As a rule sodium chlorid is added to the food in order to improve its taste. The amount taken daily usually varies from seven to fifteen grams. Sodium chlorid leaves the body through various paths. Under ordinary circumstances the quantity excreted through the skin is very small and even after a sweat bath it rarely exceeds one or two grams. Small quantities are normally lost through the intestines and in pathological conditions this may be markedly increased. Most of the salt taken, however, leaves the body through the kidneys. When the intake of salt is constant, the amount excreted, though subject to consider-



able fluctuations, is on the whole equal to the intake. If an individual change from an ordinary diet containing from seven to fifteen grams of salt a day to one containing very small amounts (one to three grams), a new equilibrium is established. Before this occurs, however, the body usually loses a certain amount of salt which may amount in all to from five to fifteen grams. This loss of salt may be associated with little, if any, change in the body weight. It may, however, be accompanied by the loss of considerable water. In this way a fall of one to four pounds in the body weight may occur as the result of salt restriction. The rapid loss of weight during the first few days of complete starvation (page 232) has been attributed to a similar loss of salt and water from the body. If an individual who has been on a salt-poor diet returns to his original level of salt intake an equilibrium of salt intake and output again becomes established at the old level. Before this occurs, however, there is a retention of some salt in the body. This may or may not be accompanied by a corresponding retention of water. If water be retained, the weight increases to a corresponding degree. We see, therefore, that even in normal individuals a retention of salt is, at times, accompanied by a retention of water and a gain in weight. Under certain pathological conditions, this relation between salt and water retention becomes very striking.

**Relation of Salt in Blood to Its Excretion.**—We have seen that the excretion of urea depends upon its concentration in the blood and that according to Ambard the relation between the two can be expressed in mathematical terms, the urinary excretion at a given concentration being proportional to the square of the concentration in the blood. With respect to sodium chlorid the relations differ in that the concentration in the blood is more fixed and that when the concentration in the blood falls below a certain figure the excretion almost ceases. This threshold at which salt excretion practically ceases is fixed by Ambard and Weill at 5.62 grams per liter of blood for normal individuals. When the concentration of sodium chlorid in the blood rises above this figure its excretion in the urine, according to these authors, follows the same law for the excess above the threshold as is followed by urea for the total amount of urea in the blood; that is to say, the amount put out at a given urinary concentration is proportional to the square of the excess in the blood above the renal threshold and the amount put out at a given concentration in the blood varies inversely with its concentration in the urine.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> FOOTNOTE:—The formula advanced by these authors would therefor be as follows:—

$$K = \sqrt{\frac{E}{D}} \sqrt{\frac{C}{14}}$$

Where E is the excess above the threshold in the blood; i. e., the amount of blood sodium chlorid minus its threshold value (normally 5.62 g. per liter), D is the total salt excretion calculated for 24 hours, and C is the concentration per liter in the urine. K should be constant for any given individual.

**Sodium Chlorid as a Diuretic.**—The administration of sodium chlorid to normal individuals, like the administration of other salts that can be absorbed by the intestinal mucous membrane, may, under certain circumstances, cause a diuresis which accompanies the excretion of the excess of salt given. The exact nature of the action of such salts upon the kidney is but imperfectly understood. It should be pointed out, however, that such diuresis is associated with changes in the composition of the blood. Following an intravenous injection of sodium chlorid or following its absorption from the intestinal tract the blood becomes more dilute by reason of a flow of lymph from the tissues into the blood. The hydremia that follows the ingestion of common salt is shown in the following experiments, taken from Benzúr. The percentage of protein in the blood was estimated by means of its refractive index:

EXPERIMENT II Aneurism of Aorta  Received 12 g. NaCl at 8, fasting; drank nothing during experiment.			EXPERIMENT VIII Pulmonary Emphysema  Received 12 g. NaCl at 8, 1½ hr. after break- fast; drank nothing during experiment.		
Time	Blood Serum		Time	Blood Serum	
	nD	Percentage of Protein		nD	Percentage of Protein
8.00	1,3500	8.2	8.00	1,3513	9.0
8.20	1,3504	8.5	8.20	1,3503	8.4
8.40	1,3504	8.5	8.40	1,3499	8.2
9.00	1,3492	7.8	9.00	1,3494	7.9
9.30	1,3495	7.9	9.30	1,3494	7.9
11.00	1,3496	8.0	11.00	1,3497	8.1
12.00	1,3496	8.0	12.00	1,3500	8.2
1.00	1,3497	8.1	1.00	1,3508	8.7

In certain forms of nephritis the retention of salt in the body may also be accompanied by an hydremia, but in this case the kidney fails to respond by excreting a larger quantity of urine.

### *Salt Retention in Nephritis*

The ability of the diseased kidney to excrete sodium chlorid may be tested in various ways. In the first place, a single addition of salt may be made to the diet and the rapidity with which this excess is excreted may be estimated. In the second place, the ability of the individual to maintain a salt equilibrium at different levels of intake over more prolonged periods of time may be estimated. Finally, a comparison may be made

between the level of salt in the blood and its excretion in the urine and this may be compared with the normal relation by means of the mathematical formula devised by Ambard and Weill.

**Excretion of a Single Addition of Salt.**—We have seen that the addition of sodium chlorid to the diet of a normal individual results in an increased excretion, equilibrium being ultimately established at the new level of intake. When a single addition of salt to the diet is made,

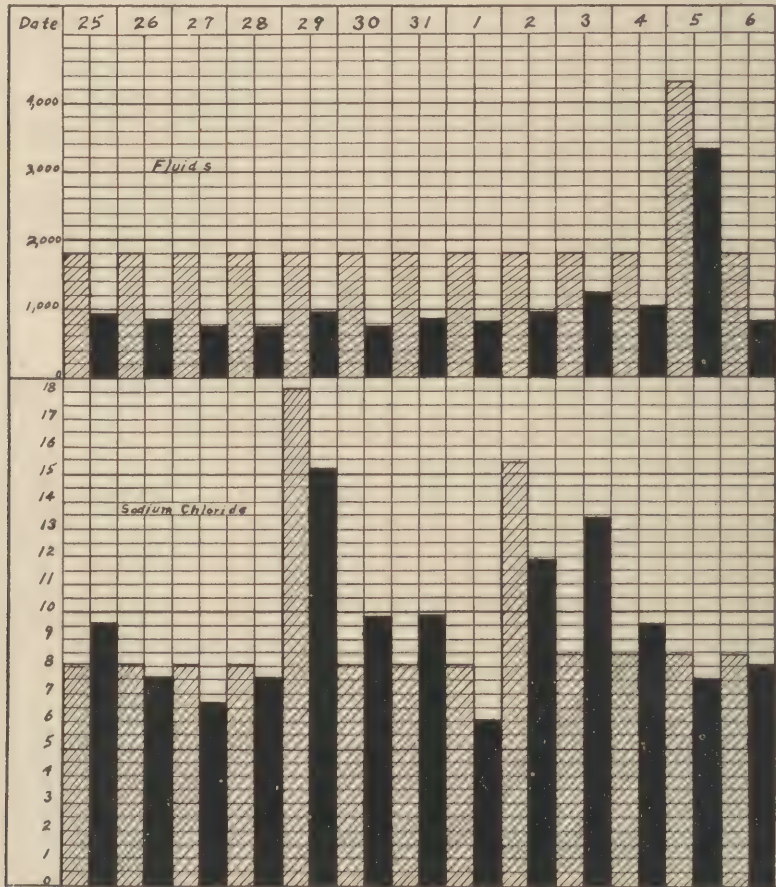


Fig. 96.—Normal Individual. Table Showing the Intake and Urinary Output of Water and Sodium Chlorid. The Intake Is Indicated by the Hatched Columns, the Output by the Solid Columns. Note that When Sodium Chlorid Was Added to the Diet, the Extra Amount Was Mostly Eliminated in One or Two Days with But Little Increase in the Diuresis. (Constructed from the data of Borelli and Girardi, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*)

the rapidity with which this excess is excreted varies according to circumstances. Under ordinary conditions of diet, the excess of salt is usually excreted within forty-eight hours (Fig. 96). If, however, the individual



has been on a restricted salt intake, the body seems to hold back the excess salt more tenaciously and several days may elapse before the excess is eliminated (Fig. 97).

Certain patients with nephritis show no deviation from the normal in their salt metabolism. In others, however, the single addition of an excess of salt to the diet may be almost without influence upon its excretion (Figs. 91 and 92). The retention of this excess of salt in the

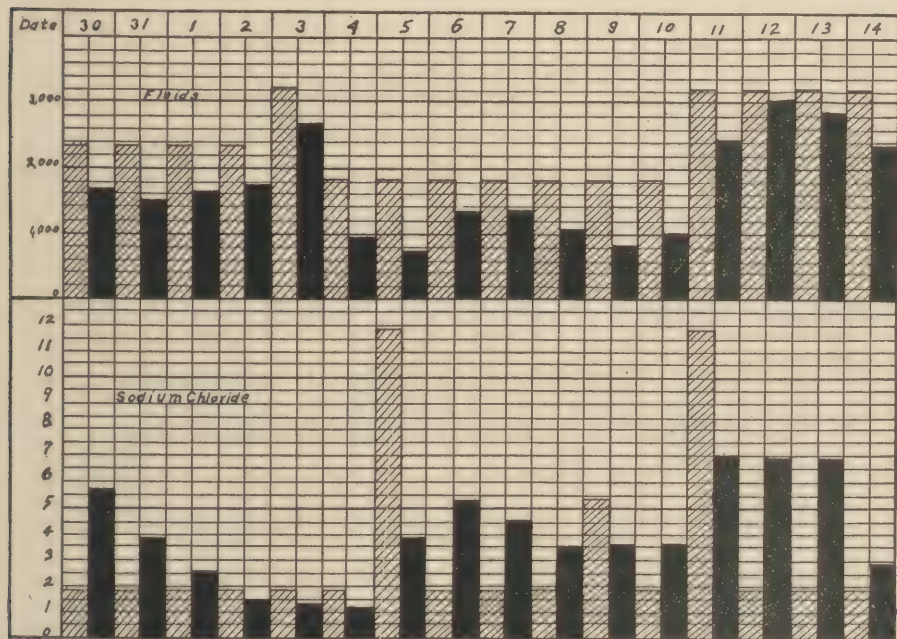


Fig. 97.—Normal Individual. Table Showing the Intake and Urinary Output of Water and Sodium Chlorid. The Intake Is Indicated by the Hatched Columns, the Output by the Solid Columns. Note that, When at the Start the Individual Was Placed on a Low Chlorid Intake, There Was a Progressive Loss of Sodium Chlorid from the Body, But that After About Three Days a Balance Became Established. When Sodium Chlorid Was Now Added to the Diet It Was Not Eliminated As Promptly As When the Individual Had Been on a Full Sodium Chlorid Intake. This Is Evident by Comparing with the Previous Figure from the Same Individual. Note Furthermore that in Both Figures the Water Output Followed the Intake Quite Promptly. In the Latter Figure the Elimination of Extra Sodium Chlorid Caused a Slight Diuresis. (Constructed from the data of Borelli and Girardi, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*)

body may or may not be accompanied by a retention of water and an increase in the body weight.

**Continued Administration of Salt.**—We have seen that the normal individual normally takes considerable salt in his diet and that he is able to establish an equilibrium between intake and output at widely different levels. Patients with nephritis vary greatly in their ability to establish such an equilibrium. While some can excrete the amount of salt taken in an ordinary diet, others may fail to do so. Their excretory ability may

be restricted to ten grams daily or in more serious cases it may be reduced even to one or two grams.

This ability to excrete salt also varies in the individual patient under varying circumstances. At times the addition of an excess of salt to the diet may result in a diminished output. The cause of this diminution is not understood. Possibly, as Widal suggests, it is due to an edema of the kidneys induced by the salt; possibly it exemplifies the general physiological law that when a function is overtaxed it is less efficient.

**Edema from Salt Retention.**—It has long been known that increases

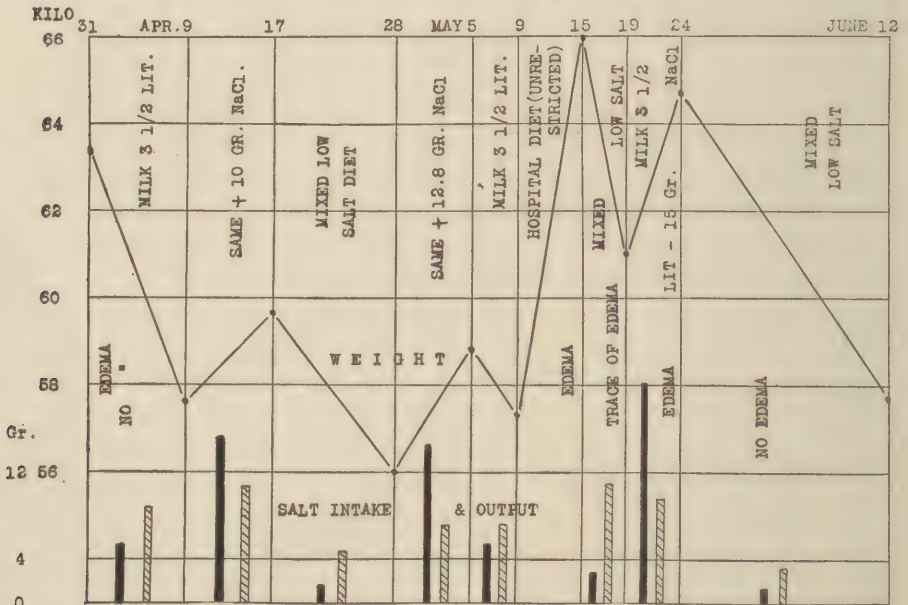


Fig. 98.—The Production and Relief of Edema in a Nephritic Patient by Varying the Salt Intake. The Average Intakes (Solid Lines) and Excretion (Hatched Lines) Are Shown in the Lower Part of the Figure. The Body Weight Varied According As Salt Was Retained in or Lost from the Body, in Reducing the Body Weight, a Mixed Diet Containing Little Salt Being As Effective As a Milk Diet. Note Furthermore that Edema Was Absent Even when a Considerable Amount of Water Had Been Retained in the Body, As Shown by the Weight Being Above the Lowest Level (Preedema), But that When the Weight Increased Beyond a Certain Point Clinical Edema Appeared. (Constructed from data on the classical case of Widal and Javal, *Bull. et Mém. Soc. Méd. d. Hôp.*)

of edema are associated with a retention of salt as well as of water in the body, and that when edema disappears both salt and water are lost from the body. In some cases the retention of water may be primary and the retention of salt secondary, the latter being necessary in order to maintain a normal constitution of the body fluids. Sodium chlorid may, however, play a primary rôle in such combined retentions. Its great importance in nephritic edema was pointed out by Strauss in Germany and by Achard, Widal and their associates in France. In certain patients

with nephritis it has been demonstrated conclusively that it is possible to induce edema by giving large quantities of sodium chlorid and that it is possible to remove this edema by restricting the salt intake. This is well shown in Figure 98, which has been constructed from observations made by Widal and Javal on their classical case. It is evident that the weight of this individual could be varied at will by adding salt to or subtracting it from the diet.

Water retention in the body causes at first an increase in body weight with no demonstrable edema. During this period the appearance of the patient may not change, although in some cases the skin, especially about

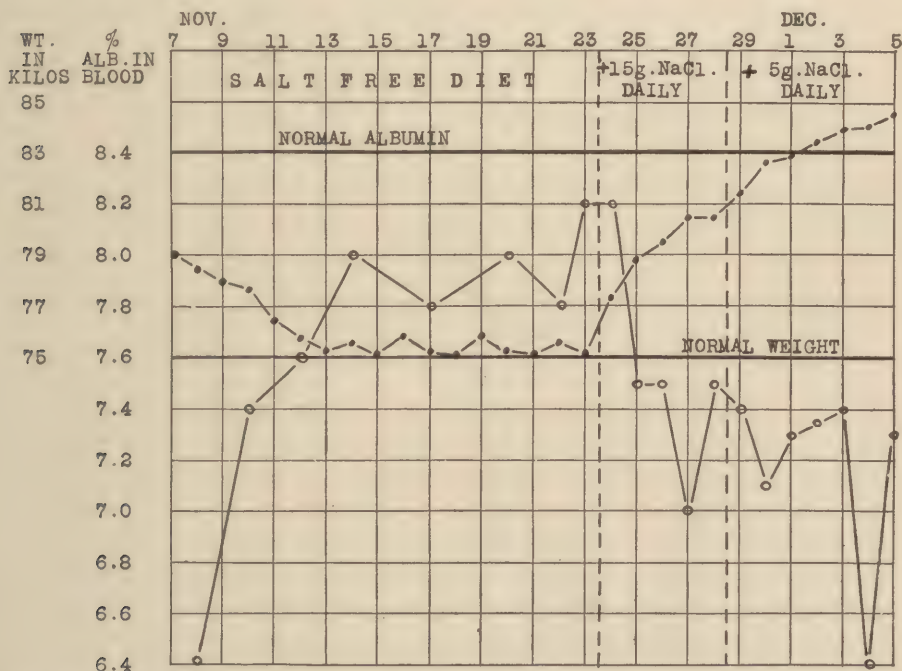


Fig. 99.—The Effect of Administration of Salt to a Nephritic Patient with Insufficient Salt Elimination. Note that During the Administration of a Diet Containing Little Salt the Body Weight Fell to a Fixed Level and the Concentration of Proteins in the Blood Increased. When Salt Was Added to the Diet the Weight Increased from Retention of Water and Hydrema Reappeared. (Drawn from Vaucher, Thèse de Paris.)

the face, appears smoother and fuller. Even at this early stage, however, there may also be a change in blood concentration. The refractive index of the serum falls, which indicates a lessened concentration of proteins in the blood (Fig. 99). Clinical edema does not usually appear until the retained water has caused an increase of from ten to fifteen pounds in the body weight. There is, however, considerable individual variation in this respect, for in some patients edema does not appear until the weight has increased as much as twenty-four pounds.



**Thirst.**—It is possible by a rigid restriction of liquids to lessen the increase of weight which would otherwise occur from salt retention. Under such circumstances, however, the increased concentration of salt in the tissues causes an excessive thirst. If liquids are not restricted the individual drinks enough water to reduce the concentration of sodium chlorid in his body. Salt retention, therefore, acts partly by increasing the thirst. In this respect it differs from a retention of non-protein nitrogen. Urea and other nitrogenous waste products may accumulate in the blood without causing a retention of water, an hydremia, or an increased thirst. It is evident, therefore, that water retention does not depend upon a general increase in the molecular concentration of the body fluids but upon an accumulation of sodium chlorid or other salts in the body. The cause of this difference between sodium chlorid and urea seems to depend upon a difference in their diffusibility through animal membranes. Urea diffuses readily and its concentration in plasma and red corpuscles is approximately the same. Sodium chlorid and other salts do not diffuse readily and the salt composition of the plasma differs markedly from the salt composition of the red cells.

### *Differences Between Salt and Nitrogenous Retentions*

The physiological differences between the retention of nitrogenous wastes and the retention of sodium chlorid are numerous. In retention of nitrogenous wastes their concentration in the blood and in the tissues is increased without necessarily causing a dilution of the blood (hydremia) or a retention of water within the body. As a result of the increase in the blood concentration the excretion of nitrogenous material through the kidneys is finally increased so that an equilibrium between nitrogenous intake and output is established. With sodium chlorid, on the other hand, retention tends to cause the retention of an equivalent amount of water. There results an hydremia and eventually an edema. The concentration of sodium chlorid in the blood plasma is but little affected. An increased administration of salt produces no corresponding increase in the elimination through the kidneys and there is, therefore, no tendency toward the establishment of a sodium chlorid balance between intake and output. The excessive salt is heaped up in the body in the edematous fluids.

### *Symptoms of Salt Retention*

The symptoms which occur when marked chlorid retention is produced by giving excessive quantities of salt to nephritic patients have been studied particularly by Widal and his associates. In addition to the increase in weight, the hydremia and the edema of the subcutaneous issues there may be a variety of disturbances, many of which apparently depend upon edema of particular organs.

Edema of the lungs, headache, Cheyne-Stokes breathing, eclamptic attacks, vomiting and diarrhea, and an increase in the albuminuria have been attributed to salt retention.

### ***Dry Retention***

As a rule, any considerable retention of chlorids in the body is associated with a simultaneous retention of water which is shown by an increase of the body weight. Small fluctuations in the sodium chlorid balance may, however, occur without changes in body weight. A careful study of the intake and output of sodium chlorid over considerable periods of time has also shown that there may be a considerable retention of salt without the usual increase of weight from retention of water. This so-called dry form of sodium chlorid retention appears to be due to a deposition of sodium chlorid in the tissues. Studies on man as well as upon animals have shown that the percentage of salt in the tissues is not fixed and that it bears no constant relationship to the percentage of water present. Even though no edema be present, the organs of men may, under pathological conditions, show twice the normal amount of sodium chlorid and it is of particular interest that the skin often shows a relatively great increase in chlorids, even up to three times the normal (Leva).

### ***Sodium Bicarbonate Edema***

Water retention and edema have been produced in susceptible individuals by the continued administration of large doses of sodium bicarbonate. In practice this has happened most frequently when sodium bicarbonate was given to diabetic patients with acidosis for the purpose of warding off a possible coma. Sodium bicarbonate edema has also been produced in other patients, particularly when they already showed a tendency toward edema from any cause. In such cases there is not only a retention of water in the body but a retention of sodium and usually a retention of chlorids. Widal has maintained that in such cases the edema is due to the secondary retention of chlorids. F. Müller, on the other hand, expresses the opinion that in the edema produced by sodium bicarbonate as well as that produced by sodium chlorid, the sodium ion probably plays a more important part than the chlorin ion.

### ***Primary Water Retention***

Nephritic edema has been discussed thus far from the standpoint of sodium chlorid retention and this has been done because of the remarkable variations in edema which have followed variations in the sodium chlorid intake of certain nephritic patients. From the practical standpoint this intimate relationship between nephritic edema and the intake of sodium chlorid is of great importance. It seems probable, however, that edema may also occur from a primary water retention accompanied by a second-

any retention of sodium chlorid. In acute nephritis, for example, with more or less suppression of the urine there may be a primary water retention. In chronic nephritis, also, the elimination of water ingested may not be so complete or so prompt as in health. There is reason to believe, therefore, that a primary water retention may occur in nephritis. Whether or not this is a frequent cause of nephritic edema we do not know. As a rule, the edema of chronic nephritis without cardiac insufficiency is associated with a deficient capacity for sodium chlorid elimination by the kidneys.

### *Renal and Extrarenal Factors*

**Renal Factors in the Production of Edema.**—Thus far we have spoken of a retention of sodium chlorid and of water in the bodies of nephritic patients. The mechanism of this retention is not well understood. Possibly it is due to an insufficient activity of the kidneys; but it may also be due to changes in the blood, the blood vessels or the tissues, of such a character that salt or water or both are held in the body and do not reach the kidneys in proper quantity or in a proper physical or chemical state for excretion. The marked hydremia which always accompanies nephritic edema shows that the blood contains a larger percentage of water than normally. The inability of the diseased kidney to eliminate water is therefore not due to any increased concentration in the blood that is supplied to it.

Nor is the defective elimination of salt due to a lack of salt in the blood. We shall point out later (page 497) that the failure to excrete chlorids in pneumonia may be attributed to such a lack of sodium chlorid in the blood. In nephritis with salt retention, however, the percentage of salt in the blood is normal or increased and the amount of sodium chlorid excreted in the urine is not so great as one finds in a normal individual with a similar percentage of salt in the blood. McLean has calculated from the Ambard formula the quantity of sodium chlorid in the blood which would correspond to the amount eliminated in the urine and finds that in chronic nephritis the blood contains larger quantities of sodium chlorid than one would expect normally (Fig. 100). It is evident, therefore, that the failure to eliminate chlorids like the failure to eliminate water cannot be attributed to their deficient concentration in the blood, and it seems probable, therefore, that the defect lies in the kidneys themselves.

**Extra Renal Factors.**—Considerable evidence has been advanced to show that the blood vessels of the body play an important part in the etiology of nephritic edema. In patients, as we have seen, the amount of water which must be retained in the body in order to produce edema is variable. In animal experiments it has been noted repeatedly that the degree of edema and its localization vary, even though the same amount of



water is retained in the body. Indeed, subcutaneous edema does not occur even when large quantities of salt solution are transfused rapidly into normal animals. Furthermore, experimental edema is more readily produced

when vascular poisons, such as arsenic or snake venom, are used in addition to the poisons which damage the kidney tubules. Whether these vascular poisons increase the tendency toward edema through their action upon the renal vessels or through their action upon the vessels in other parts of the body, is not certain.

The vascular permeability of nephritic animals has been tested by determining the rapidity with which various solutions leave the blood vessels after their intravenous injection. In order to eliminate the action of the kidneys in such experiments the latter have been thrown out of function either by ligation of the ureters or by double nephrectomy. The results of such experiments have not been uniform. Schmid and Schlayer found that the vessels of animals previously injected with large doses of the vascular poisons were unusually permeable to sodium chlorid

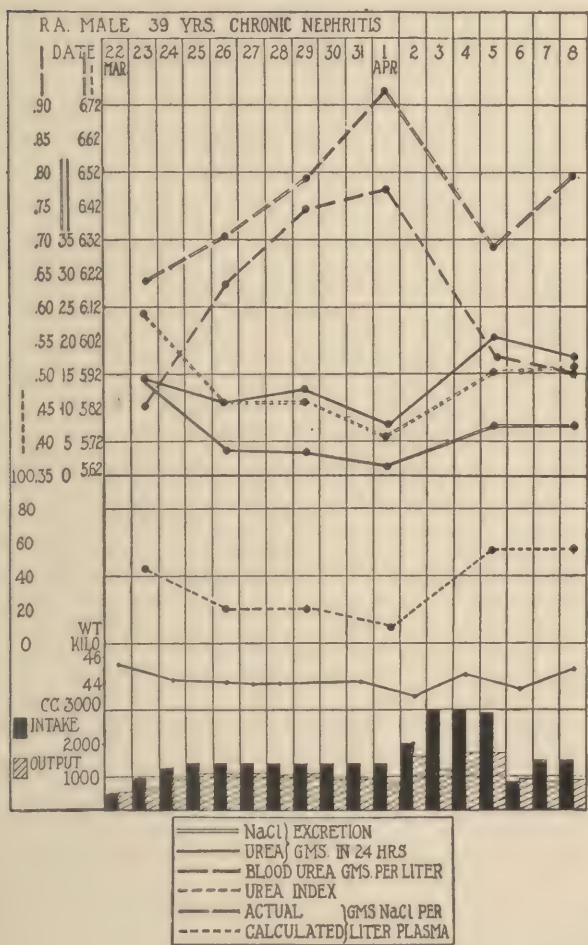


Fig. 100.—The Relation Between the Level of Sodium Chlorid in the Blood of a Nephritic Patient and the "Calculated" Level that Would Be Expected in a Normal Individual Who Was Excreting the Same Quantity of Salt in the Urine. Note that in This Patient the Level in the Blood Was Higher Than One Would Expect For a Normal Individual. From March 23 to April 2 the Fluids Were Restricted and Salt and Food Were Allowed ad libitum. After April 2 the Fluids Were Increased and the Food and Salt Restricted. (From McLean, Jour. Exp. Med.)

solutions. Boycott and Chisolm, on the other hand, found that in experimental uranium and chromate nephritis the body vessels were less perme-

able to salt solution, to gelatin solutions, and to protein solutions. We see, therefore, that while general considerations suggest that an unusual permeability of the blood vessels plays a part in the occurrence and localization of nephritic edema, the exact rôle of the blood vessels has not been definitely established.

It has also been suggested that nephritic edema may be due to a change in the chemical or physical character of the tissues themselves of such a character that these attract and hold salt or water or both. The deposition of salt particularly in the skin favors this view. Many localized edemas are doubtlessly due to local changes in the blood vessels or tissues, as is the case, for example, in inflammatory edema. In nephritic edema, however, the water is not intimately bound to the tissue substance. It readily redistributes itself about the body under the influence of gravity or pressure. Furthermore, when openings are made into the subcutaneous tissue the liquid runs out freely. It would seem, therefore, that in nephritic edema an excessive amount of free liquid is retained in the body. Definite evidence that it is fixed in nephritic tissues has not been furnished.

### ***Relation of Edema to Other Nephritic Manifestations***

No fixed relation exists between salt and water retention and the other manifestations of nephritis. Edema may be marked without any coincident retention of urea or non-protein nitrogen and a marked retention of waste nitrogen may be present when the excretion of chlorids and of water is normal. As a rule, patients with nephritic edema have considerable albumin and numerous casts in the urine. On the other hand, a few very remarkable cases have been reported (Wyss, Palmer) in which an edema was relieved by a restriction of salt intake, although no albumin was present in the urine. The relation of such cases to disease of the kidneys remains to be established.

## **Acidosis and Renal Disease**

In addition to the removal of nitrogenous wastes and the preservation of a normal water and salt concentration in the body, the kidney performs an important function in regulating the chemical reaction of the body. During catabolism various acid bodies are formed. The most important of these are carbonic acid from the oxidation of carbon containing compounds, and sulphuric and phosphoric acids from the oxidation of substances containing sulphur and phosphorus in organic combinations. Organic acids are also formed, particularly under pathological conditions. In spite of this constant formation of acid substances the chemical reaction of the body fluids remains practically neutral. This neutral reaction

is maintained, first, by neutralizing some of the acids with ammonia derived from organic compounds and, second, by the elimination of acid substances from the body (see Acidosis). Carbon dioxide is given off in the lungs, and the kidneys secrete an acid urine.

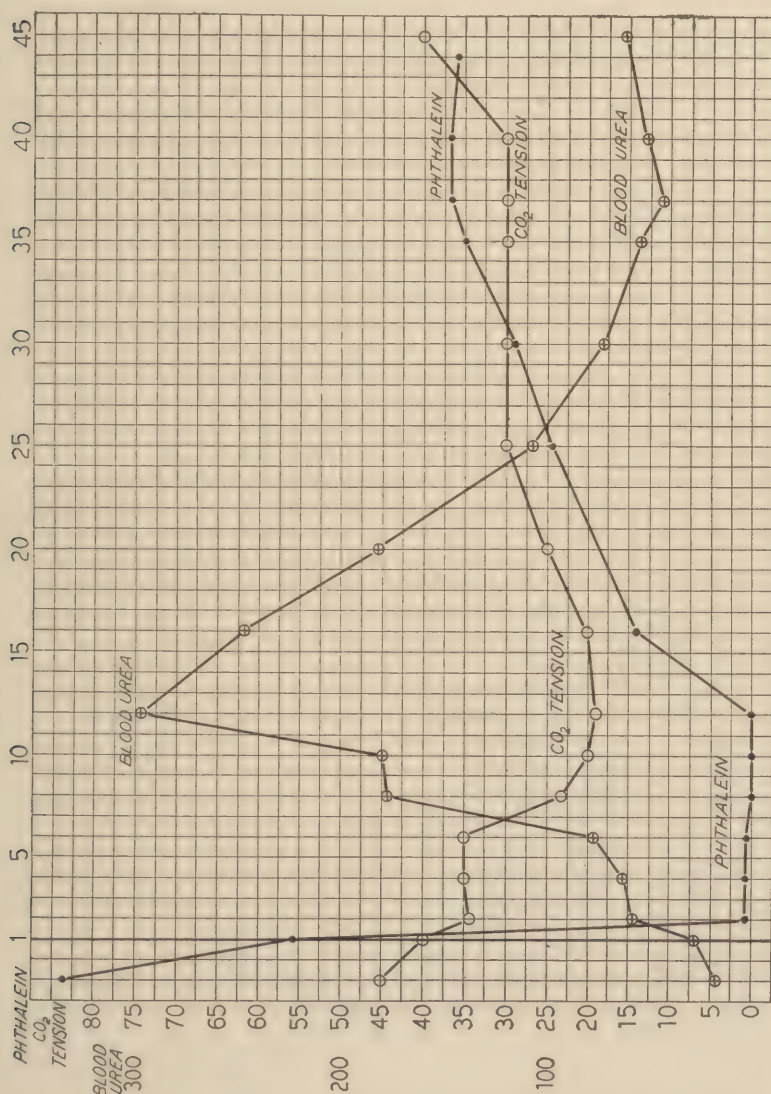


Fig. 100a.—Effect of Uranium on a Dog. Acute Followed by a Chronic Nephropathy. Effect on Blood Urea, Phthalein Output and Carbon Dioxide Tension. The Abscissæ Represent Days after the Injection. (Drawn from the Data of MacNider.)

**Occurrence.**—In the experimental forms of nephritis that follow the administration of uranium salts or of corrosive sublimate, the alveolar tension of carbon dioxide is lessened and the reserve alkali of the blood reduced (MacNider, Karsner). These changes parallel the reduction of phthalein output and the retention of urea in the blood (Fig. 100a). They



disappear as the animal recovers from the acute nephritis. In some animals the change in acid-base equilibrium is accompanied by the appearance of acetone bodies in the urine.

In man also a serious nephritis is frequently accompanied by a lessened tension of carbon dioxide in the alveolar air and by a reduced amount of carbonate in the blood. The curve of hemoglobin dissociation corresponds with that seen when acid is added to the blood. The titratable alkalinity of the blood is lessened (Sellards). Finally, unusual quantities of sodium bicarbonate must be given by mouth in order to render the urine alkaline. It is evident, therefore, that an acidosis can be demonstrated in certain cases of nephritis. The acidosis of renal disease in man, like that in animals, parallels the accumulation of waste nitrogen in the blood and the depression of phenolsulphonephthalein elimination. Acidosis is particularly marked in uremia associated with urea retention.

**Cause.**—In man the acidosis of renal disease is not usually accompanied by an increase in the acetone bodies. Nor has the formation of other abnormal acids in the body been demonstrated. When the urine has once been rendered alkaline, the quantity of sodium bicarbonate necessary to maintain its alkalinity is not greatly increased. Finally, the excretion of ammonium salts in the urine is not increased and it may be diminished.

The acidosis of renal disease differs therefore in many particulars from the type which is caused by excessive formation of acids in the body. It appears to be due to an insufficient excretion of acid by the diseased kidney. Urinary acidity is due mainly to the presence of acid phosphates. In the acidosis of nephritis there is frequently a definite increase of inorganic phosphates in the blood plasma. Experiments on normal individuals have shown that, while the administration of hydrochloric acid increases the output of ammonia in the urine, the administration of acid phosphate of equivalent acidity has no such effect. Furthermore, the administration of neutral phosphate depresses the excretion of ammonia, apparently because an increased phosphate buffer in the blood lessens ammonia formation. These various facts—failure to demonstrate excessive acid formation, increase of phosphates in the plasma, and normal or reduced ammonia in the urine—indicate that the acidosis of nephritis is due to an insufficient elimination of acid phosphate by the diseased kidney.

**Symptoms.**—To just what extent the acidosis of renal disease influences the clinical picture is not known. In cardiorenal disease, the presence of acidosis, necessitating as it does a better ventilation of the alveoli, tends to increase the dyspnea. In some cases it may even be the chief cause of the dyspnea, and the latter may be relieved by the administration of sodium bicarbonate. It has been suggested also that acidosis may cause other symptoms of uremia. In this connection it may be pointed out that an increase of plasma phosphates may occur without a corresponding rise of blood urea (Denis and Minot).

## Renal Function in Heart Disease

Cardiac disturbances are common in diseases of the kidney; and conversely the functions of the kidney may be altered as a result of chronic passive congestion attendant upon cardiac failure. It is indeed frequently difficult to determine the relative parts played by chronic renal congestion on the one hand, and by primary disease of the kidneys on the other, in the production of a given renal complex.

**Experimental Congestion.**—Experimentally it has been shown that in moderate degrees of renal passive congestion the excretion of sodium chlorid, potassium iodid, and lactose may be interfered with. With a more severe congestion there is a diminished elimination of phenolsulphonephthalein.

**Elimination of Water and of Sodium Chlorid.**—Studies on patients with moderate grades of cardiac decompensation have shown that when unusual quantities of water or of salt are added to the diet these are eliminated in some cases in a normal manner. Other patients and particularly those with edema and with marked oliguria fail to eliminate extra quantities of water or of salt taken during the day. During the oliguria from congestion, there is not only a decrease in the total quantity of sodium chlorid eliminated but its concentration in the urine may also be low. In patients with heart disease the administration of large quantities of sodium chlorid may increase the edema on account of the insufficient elimination of this salt through the kidneys. When the circulation improves and diuresis occurs, large quantities of sodium chlorid that have been retained in the body are eliminated.

**Nitrogen Excretion.**—In contrast to the frequent and severe disturbances of salt and water elimination during broken compensation, the excretion of nitrogenous waste products is usually but little affected. This has been demonstrated not only by giving to such patients large quantities of urea and determining the rate at which it is eliminated but also by examining the blood for non-protein nitrogen and for urea. Even when very small quantities of urine are being passed the congested kidney ordinarily responds to the administration of an additional amount of urea by excreting it in unusual concentration. Only in rare cases with marked oliguria is the nitrogenous elimination imperfect and only in such cases is there a definite accumulation of non-protein nitrogen in the blood.

**Functional Tests.**—The elimination of lactose is nearly always markedly reduced in cases of passive congestion and the elimination of potassium iodid is also frequently delayed. The phenolsulphonephthalein output is often reduced in marked congestion. It is in such cases particularly that a discrepancy occurs between this test and the accumulation of waste nitrogen in the blood. In chronic passive congestion of the kidneys

the phthalein elimination may be markedly reduced without any considerable increase in the incoagulable nitrogen of the blood.

## Renal Function in Eclampsia

The renal changes are no longer regarded as the sole cause of eclampsia. Nevertheless, the combination of albuminuria, hypertension, edema and convulsion suggests an impairment of renal function, and considerable interest is attached to the study of this function in cases of threatened or fully developed eclampsia.

Such studies have shown that, while the various nitrogenous waste materials in the blood—urea, uric acid and amino nitrogen—are often increased, this increase is not constant, it is rarely marked, and it bears no fixed relationship to the severity of the symptoms. Similarly, the elimination of phenolsulphonephthalein, though often somewhat reduced, is no measure of the toxemia. It is evident that eclampsia does not depend upon an insufficient elimination of the total nitrogenous waste or of any of the fractions thus far determined. Nor have studies of the blood sugar, of the plasma lipoids or of the carbon dioxid-combining power of the plasma, thrown any light on the nature of eclampsia.

The edema encountered in eclamptic patients is frequently accompanied by a marked chlorid retention and when the edema disappears large amounts of sodium chlorid are secreted in the urine. Whether this retention of chlorids bears any relation to the manifestations of eclampsia other than the edema we do not know. It is possible, however, that other unknown substances are retained with the chlorids and that these rather than the chlorids are responsible for some of the toxic symptoms of eclampsia.

## Uremia

Patients with nephritis not infrequently show a variety of disturbances which appear to be of a toxic character and which not infrequently prove fatal. To these the name of uremia has been given. It is unnecessary to review the numerous theories which have been advanced to explain these toxic symptoms in nephritis. Some symptoms often regarded as toxic are doubtlessly due to circulatory disturbances dependent upon an associated cerebral arteriosclerosis and they are, therefore, not of a direct toxic character. If these be omitted from consideration the toxic theories of uremia may be grouped in two general classes. According to the *first* of these, uremia results from a retention in the body of substances which are formed during normal metabolism. According to the *second* group of theories, the manifestations of uremia are due not to the



retention of substances formed in normal metabolism but to abnormal toxic substances formed as a result of a perverted metabolism during kidney disease.

It seems certain that the toxic symptoms in nephritis are not all due to a single cause and that consequently the term uremia, as commonly used, embraces a number of distinct conditions. Studies of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood have enabled us to separate two general groups of such toxic conditions. On the one side are those cases in which there is a marked increase of non-protein nitrogen and of urea in the blood. On the other side are the cases in which such an increase, if present, seems insufficient to account for the symptoms. Each type presents more or less characteristic symptoms, and each will be discussed separately.

### ***Uremia with Marked Nitrogenous Retention***

The toxic symptoms which occur in patients who show unusually large quantities of non-protein nitrogen in the blood have already been described in discussing nitrogenous retention. It will be recalled that slight or moderate degrees of retention are not associated with characteristic clinical symptoms. As the retention increases, however, the patient develops a condition of bodily weakness and mental apathy. He becomes drowsy, but as a rule can be aroused without great difficulty. Headache, dizziness and loss of appetite are common. Vomiting or diarrhea may occur. Itching is said to be a characteristic manifestation of this type of uremia. The blood pressure which at the onset is usually elevated may go still higher; but in long-continued cases with progressive weakness it tends eventually to fall to a lower level. Marked anemia of a secondary type is common. Gradually such patients become more prostrated and more apathetic. Death may occur quite suddenly, suggesting a cardiac death. More rarely the patient becomes comatose shortly before death. In this type of renal intoxication there may be muscular twitchings; but general convulsions, paralysis and other serious or localized nervous manifestations are frequently absent.

**Pathogenesis.**—The exact cause of the symptoms is uncertain. The degree of nitrogenous retention and the severity of the symptoms do not run exactly parallel. Before death the non-protein nitrogen in the blood usually exceeds 150 mgm. per 100 c.c. of blood, but much higher figures (300 mgm. and more) have been observed. That the symptoms depend in part upon the concentration of the retained substances in the body seems probable from the fact that a number of cases have been recorded in which marked diuresis has precipitated an attack of uremia in nephritic patients. In such cases the sudden loss of water from the body has evidently led to uremia through an increased concentration of the toxic substances.

A marked increase of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood is due in the main to an accumulation of urea. Urea is not ordinarily regarded as a toxic substance, yet it is possible that in the concentrations found in the blood of these patients it may be responsible for at least some of the symptoms. Recent experiments conducted with Gilbert and Wickett indicate that as a result of the ingestion of 100 grams of urea by normal individuals the urea nitrogen of the blood can be raised to 100 mgm. per 100 c.c. or more, figures which are not infrequently obtained or exceeded during the nitrogenous retention of chronic nephritis. When the blood urea exceeded 70 mgm. of urea nitrogen, symptoms of headache, dizziness and slight somnolence occurred. Whether these were due to the sudden alteration in the composition of the body tissues and fluids or whether they were toxic effects produced by the urea itself or the alteration in the molec-

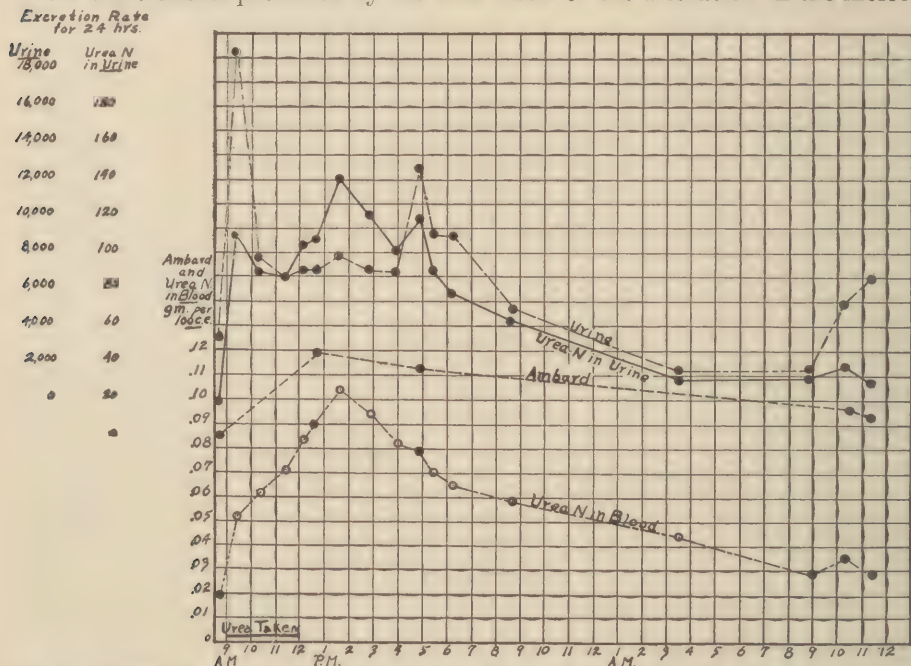


Fig. 101.—Effect of Ingestion of Large Quantities of Urea Upon a Normal Individual. Between 9 A.M. and 12 M. 100 Grams of Urea Were Taken. The Amount of Urea Nitrogen in the Blood Rose to Over 100 mgm. per 100 c.c. From 10:30 A.M. to 5:30 P.M. the Subject of the Experiment Complained of Headache, Dizziness and Some Stupor. (From unpublished experiments by Hewlett, Gilbert and Wickett.)

ular concentration of the body fluids has not been determined, but such symptoms suggest that urea in the concentration ordinarily found in this type of uremia may be directly responsible for some of the symptoms observed.

It should be remembered, however, that the type of uremia which we are now considering is also characterized by an increased concentration of

other nitrogenous bodies in the blood, among which are creatin, creatinin, uric acid and indican. While the toxic effects of comparable accumulations of these substances have not been demonstrated, nevertheless it is possible that they may exert some poisonous effect. Possibly also other substances of a more complex and toxic nature are retained in the body and are present in the undetermined fraction of non-protein nitrogen in the blood. The latter is often increased in uremic patients.

This type of uremia is frequently accompanied by an acidosis and by a retention of phosphates in the blood. Acidosis favors the production of dyspnea and this latter may be diminished by full doses of sodium bicarbonate. Occasionally the administration of alkalies seems to lessen other uremic symptoms.

### *Uremia Without Marked Nitrogenous Retention*

As opposed to the above type of uremia, which develops in patients who show unusual quantities of non-protein nitrogen in the blood, we have one or more other types in which there is either no such increase or in which the increase, though present, seems insufficient to explain the clinical symptoms. To this group belong the cases which show uremic convulsions. In these as well as in the convulsive type of eclampsia there is no necessary increase of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood, and the elimination of phenolsulphonephthalein may be normal or only moderately diminished. At the present time we are quite ignorant as to the immediate cause of the symptoms in such cases. Presumably they are due to the action of some unusually toxic substance which may be retained in the body owing to a specific impermeability of the kidney or which may be formed owing to some associated disturbance in the general or local (i. e., renal) metabolism. Of unusual interest in this connection are the observations of N. B. Foster, who succeeded in isolating from the blood of patients with epileptiform uremia a highly toxic base that killed guinea pigs on injection. Blood from each of the twenty-two cases of epileptiform uremia studied contained this poison. Blood from a larger number of controls, including patients suffering from other forms of uremia, from anuria and from epilepsy, did not yield the poison.

Numerically these uremias are more rare than those with considerable retentions of nitrogenous wastes. The clinical picture is so striking, however, that convulsions are always mentioned in descriptions of uremia. Other severe central nervous manifestations, such as psychoses and paralyses, may also occur with no considerable increase of the non-protein nitrogen in the blood. In at least some of these cases, however, the symptoms are due to an associated cerebral arteriosclerosis.



## Renal Calculi

### *Solution of Salts in the Urine*

The urine holds a considerable variety of salts in solution. The laws which govern this solution and the conditions which lead to a precipitation of the salts are, however, but imperfectly understood. The precipitation of solids depends only in part upon their concentration in the urine, for numerous observations have shown that the amounts and characters of urinary sediments bear no definite relationship to the concentration of these various substances in the urine. The formation of sediments is markedly influenced by the reaction of the urine. Certain constituents, like uric acid and the urates, are more apt to be precipitated from acid urine; while others, like calcium phosphate and oxalate, are more apt to be precipitated from alkaline urine.

**High Saturation.**—It should be noted that many salts are present in the urine in a concentration far greater than can be attained in a simple aqueous solution of these same salts. This is true of uric acid, the urates, and calcium oxalate. Nor is this high concentration in the urine a simple supersaturation. When crystals of a salt are added to a supersaturated solution, the excess of the salt is rapidly precipitated. If, on the other hand, a crystal of uric acid be added to urine, the precipitation of uric acid takes place slowly and less completely than if the crystal were added to a supersaturated solution of uric acid in water. Even after many hours the amount of uric acid still dissolved in the urine may be several times the amount that pure water will hold in solution.

**Colloids.**—Apparently, therefore, many salts of the urine are held in solution by other urinary constituents. According to Lichtwitz, colloidal substances play the most important rôle in maintaining this solution. When urinary salts are separated from these colloidal substances by dialysis, and the dialyzate is concentrated to the original volume of the urine used, a sediment of uric acid, calcium oxalate, and calcium phosphate is formed. Clear alkaline urines become cloudy only after hours, whereas if shaken with ether so as to remove the colloids soluble in ether a precipitation of phosphates may occur immediately. Changes in the urinary colloid may also account for the fact that a variety of salts are frequently precipitated at one time, as well as for the observation that a patient who at one time shows numerous calcium oxalate crystals in the fresh urine, may at another time show only phosphate precipitates.

### *Composition of Calculi*

**Inorganic Salts.**—Calculi found in the pelvis of the kidney are usually composed chiefly of calcium oxalate. Less commonly such stones are

made up of uric acid, urates, cystin, xanthin, etc. In the bladder, where alkaline decomposition of the urine frequently follows an obstruction of the lower urinary tract, stones containing considerable calcium carbonate and basic phosphates are common, for these salts are readily precipitated from an alkaline urine. If the bladder urine remains acid, uric acid stones may occur.

**Protein Framework.**—In addition to these crystalline substances, all urinary calculi contain a framework composed of protein matter. If the mineral portion of a stone be dissolved, this organic residue can be stained with eosin, and it is seen to extend through all portions of the stone.

**Nucleus.**—The nucleus of a urinary calculus may be composed of foreign matter. Various foreign substances, when introduced and left in the bladder, have become centers of stone formation. In the center of the stone may also be found parasites such as the *Bilharzia* or clumps of bacteria. Again, an old blood clot or a remnant of tissue has been found. More commonly, however, the nucleus of the stone contains no such foreign material, but appears, like the stone itself, to be formed by a precipitate composed of mineral and colloidal elements. The development of a calculus about such a center is greatly favored by urinary stasis, for it is evident that under ordinary circumstances nuclei, while still small, will be readily evacuated in the urine, and no opportunity is given for the gradual growth of a calculus.

**Growth.**—Calculi grow by the deposition of layers to the exterior. From what has been said regarding the important part played by colloids in holding the urinary salts in solution, it seems probable that these depositions on the nucleus or on the growing stone are intimately associated with changes in the colloidal chemistry of the urine. The protein framework is made up of such colloidal substances, and their deposition may cause secondary changes in the solubility of the organic substances in the immediate neighborhood. The exact mechanism, however, is not clear.

Urinary calculi usually show a concentric laminated structure, which indicates that depositions have taken place in varying amounts and at varying rates during the growth of the stone. Not infrequently these laminae also show variations in chemical composition, different salts being precipitated at different periods. These variations in the composition of the successive laminae depend in part upon variations in the composition of the urine as well as upon variations in its chemical reaction. Intercurrent or varying degrees of infection may also cause changes in the reaction of the urine. Furthermore, they change its colloidal composition by the admixture of mucinous material, bacteria and pus. Although infection plays an important part in the formation and growth of many calculi, it does not seem to be essential for stone formation.

## Hydronephrosis

The older experiments of Cohnheim, Albarran and others have shown that a sudden and complete obstruction of the ureter does not lead to a marked degree of hydronephrosis. As a result of such an obstruction, there is an acute rise of pressure in the pelvis of the kidney which may reach 73 mm. of mercury within an hour. The kidney becomes congested and hemorrhages may occur into the renal substance and into the cavity of its pelvis. On account of the high pressure and the renal changes the secretion of urine soon ceases, and if the obstruction continues there is eventually an atrophy of the kidney, with a partial or complete absorption of the fluid present in the pelvis. No marked hydronephrosis occurs.

### *Experimental Production*

Hydronephrosis has been produced experimentally by causing partial or intermittent closure of the ureter. This has been accomplished in some cases by moderate constriction from without, produced by ligatures or scar tissue following the injection of irritating substances. Partial obstructions from calculi which were produced experimentally by feeding oxamid to rabbits have also led to hydronephrosis. Finally, hydronephrosis has been produced experimentally by loosening the attachments of the kidney while the ureter was kept fixed, thus causing an intermittent closure of the ureter by kinking.

### *Etiology in Man*

**Congenital.**—In man hydronephrosis may be due to congenital or acquired causes. In the development of the ureter it passes through various stages during which constrictions and folds are apt to occur, particularly at its junction with the pelvis of the kidney and also near the bladder. Normally these disappear in the later stages of intra-uterine life owing to the growth of the embryo and the secretion of urine. In some, however, these congenital abnormalities persist. Even in intra-uterine life they may lead to the formation of hydronephrosis. More commonly, however, the disease does not become evident before the second or third decade. Examination may then show valvelike structures due to folds at the beginning of the ureter or less commonly there may be a partial obliteration of the lumen. Among other congenital causes for hydronephrosis are unusual positions of the kidney with irregularities in the insertion of the ureter.

*Anomalous renal blood vessels* lying close to the upper end of the ureter have been noted repeatedly in cases of hydronephrosis. Fenwick estimated that these were present in 16 per cent of all cases of hydronephrosis. They were found in twenty of twenty-seven cases reported from



the Mayo clinic. The frequency with which these have been described and the fact that in some cases at least the hydronephrotic dilatation extended to, but not below, the anomalous blood vessel makes it probable that such vessels may play an important rôle in the etiology of certain cases of hydronephrosis (Fig. 102).

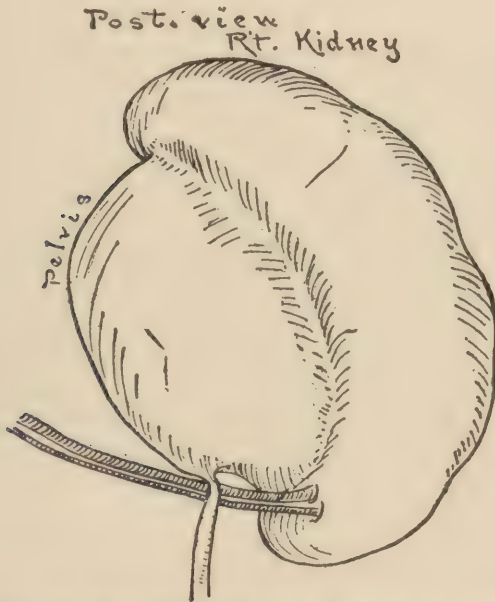


Fig. 102.—Hydronephrosis with Compression of the Ureter by Aberrant Renal Vessels. Sketch Made During an Operation. (From Mayo, Brasch, and MacCarty, Jour. Am. Med. Assn.)

**Acquired.**—Hydronephrosis is usually acquired as a result of a partial obstruction to the outflow of urine. This may be due to the presence of calculi in the pelvis of the kidney or in the bladder, to the pressure of a tumor on a ureter, to a urethral obstruction from an enlarged prostate or a stricture, or an inflammatory contracture at the junction of the ureter and the renal pelvis (Geraghty and Frontz).

The relation between movable kidney and hydronephrosis is an interesting one. It is evident that when a kidney is displaced, kinking or compression of the ureters may cause partial or temporary obstructions to the outflow of urine. Furthermore, hydronephrosis has been produced experimentally by loosening the renal attachments. Clinically slight or moderate dilatations of the renal pelvis are not uncommon in patients with movable kidneys. Marked degrees of hydronephrosis, however, are rather unusual in this class of patients.

### *Symptoms*

The symptoms of hydronephrosis are surprisingly few so long as the fluid accumulates gradually. Sudden retentions, however, cause severe symptoms. Not uncommonly, therefore, the symptomatic manifestations of hydronephrosis are of an intermittent paroxysmal character. During a paroxysm there is severe pain on the affected side, which may be accompanied by a diminished flow of urine and the appearance of a palpable tumor in the lumbar region, evidently due to a rapid accumulation of fluid in the hydronephrotic sac. Following the paroxysm there is frequently a profuse flow of urine which may even be greater than the estimated contents of the hydronephrotic sac. Such paroxysms seem to be caused by sudden closure of the upper end of the ureter by kinks or by valves which lead to an acute retention of fluid in the pelvis of the kidney. The unusual flow of urine which follows the paroxysms is due, not only to a discharge of the collected fluid, but also to an unusual secretion of urine by the partly damaged kidney. Where a tumor appears during the attack of pain the relation between the paroxysm and the intermittent hydronephrosis is an evident one. In certain patients with movable kidney similar attacks also occur (Dietl's crisis). Although there may be no palpable enlargement of the kidney, the capacity of the renal pelvis as determined by the injection of fluid through the catheterized ureter is nearly always increased in such patients (Hunner). It is probable, therefore, that Dietl's crises are really manifestations of an intermittent collection of urine in the pelvis of the kidney.

### **Renal Pain**

Pain is not a constant or characteristic symptom of nephritis. Some patients complain of backache and occasionally the pain is quite severe. Such severe pain is usually assumed to be due to an acute distention or inflammation of the renal capsule, to acute renal congestion, to infarcts, etc.

*Typical renal colic*, with violent paroxysms of pain, nausea, and vomiting, usually occurs only in diseases affecting the renal pelvis or the ureter. Such pains have been attributed either to lesions of the lining mucous membrane or to increased tension or spasm of the smooth muscle. It is doubtful if severe pain is ever caused by injuries or lacerations of the mucous membrane. We know that pyelitis may cause no pain and that large calculi may remain in the pelvis of the kidney for years without pronounced symptoms. On the other hand, there is positive evidence that an acute obstruction to the outflow of urine through a ureter will cause the typical pain of renal colic. Colic in man has followed an accidental but complete obstruction of a ureter during an operation. Furthermore, Kelly has shown that when a ureter is catheterized and fluid is in-

jected into the pelvis of the kidney in order to determine its capacity, typical attacks of renal colic may be produced by the overrapid injection of large quantities of fluid. It is evident, therefore, that an acute distention of the renal pelvis and ureter will cause colic. Chronic distentions are usually painless. Whether the pain results directly from an irritation of the sensory fibers through stretching or whether it is due to violent peristaltic contractions of the smooth muscle surrounding the passages is not certain, though the latter, from analogy with intestinal colic, seems the more probable explanation.

The pain of renal colic follows a characteristic distribution. It extends over the lumbar region behind, around the flank and above Poupart's ligament into the corresponding testicle or labus major. Pain may also be felt over the anterior and external thigh down to the region of the knee. It traverses the fields of distribution of the eleventh thoracic to the second lumbar spinal segments. This pain may be accompanied by a spasm of the muscles, abdominal and cremasteric, corresponding to a similar level of the spinal cord. This referred pain and muscle spasm, like that occurring in diseases of other viscera, is believed to be due to an irritation of the spinal cord at the level of entrance of the nerves from the urinary passages. Occasionally the pain is associated with an outbreak of herpes zoster over the corresponding region. In other cases hyperalgesia of the skin with painful pressure points can be demonstrated.

### References

#### Physiology

- Lindemann (W.).** *Zur Lehre von den Funktionen der Niere.* *Ergebn. d. Physiol.*, **1914**, xiv, 618.
- Metzner (R.).** *Die Absonderung und Herausbeförderung d. Harnes.* In: *Nagel's Handb. d. Physiol. d. Menschen.* Braunschweig, **1907**, ii, 207.
- Meyer (H.).** *Pharmakologie der Nierenfunktion.* *Experimentelle Pharmakologie.* Meyer & Gottlieb, Berlin & Wien, **1910**, 292.

#### Polyuria—Diabetes Insipidus

- Baehr (G.).** *Ueber die Polyurie bei subakuter Nephritis.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912-13**, cix, 417.
- Bailey (P.) & Bremer (F.).** *Experimental diabetes insipidus.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1921**, xxviii, 773.
- Benario (J.).** *Zur Pathologie und Therapie des Diabetes insipidus.* *München. med. Wchnschr.*, **1913**, lx, 1768.
- Ellern (H.).** *Ein Beitrag zum ätiologischen Studium des Diabetes insipidus.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912-13**, cix, 85.
- Finkelnburg (R.).** *Klinische und experimentelle Untersuchungen über Diabetes insipidus.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1907**, xci, 345.  
*Ueber das Konzentrationsvermögen der Niere bei Diabetes insipidus nach organischen Hirnerkrankungen.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, c, 33.



- Forschbach (J.).** Zur Frage des Konzentrierungsvermögens der Niere beim Diabetes insipidus. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxvii, 153.
- Frank (E.).** Ueber Beziehungen der Hypophyse zum Diabetes insipidus. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, xlix, 393.
- Gibson (R. B.) & Martin (F. T.).** Administration of a pituitary extract and histamin in a case of diabetes insipidus. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1921**, xxvii, 351.
- Herrick (J. B.).** Report of a case of diabetes insipidus with marked reduction in the amount of urine following lumbar puncture. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, x, 1.
- Hoskins (R. G.) & Means (J. W.).** The relation of vascular conditions to pituitrin diuresis. *Jour. Pharmacol. and Exp. Therap.*, **1913**, iv, 435.
- Jungmann (P.).** Die Abhängigkeit der Nierenfunktion vom Nervensystem. München. med. Wchnschr., **1913**, lx, 1760.
- Kennaway (E. L.) & Mottram (J. C.).** Observations upon two cases of diabetes insipidus; with an account of the literature relating to an association between the Pituitary gland and this disease. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1919**, xii, 225.
- Matthews (S. A.).** Experimental diabetes insipidus in dogs. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xv, 451.
- Meyer (E.).** Ueber Diabetes insipidus und andere Polyurien. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.* **1905**, lxxviii, 1.
- Motzfeldt (K.).** Experimental studies on the relation of the pituitary body to renal function. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1917**, xxv, 153.
- Schlayer.** Neuere klinische Anschauungen über Nephritis. *Med. Klinik*, **1912**, viii, Heft ix, 211.
- Socin (C.).** Über Diabetes insipidus. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxviii, 294.
- Vaquez (H.) & Cottet (J.).** Épreuve de la diurèse provoquée. *Presse Med.*, **1912**, xx, 993. Sur le rythme de la sécrétion urinaire. *Rev. d. Méd.*, **1910**, xxx, 529.
- Weber (S.) & Gross (O.).** Die Polyurien. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1909**, iii, 1.

### Oliguria—Anuria

- Adrian (C.).** Die Bedeutung der Blutdruckmessung für Diagnose und Prognose chirurgischer Nierenkrankheiten. *Ztschr. f. Urol.*, **1910**, iv, 355.
- Brasch (W.).** Über die klinischen Erscheinungen bei langandauernder Anurie. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, ciii, 483.
- Caspar (L.).** Die verschiedenen Arten der Anurie, ihre Pathogenese und Therapie. *Therap. d. Gegenw.*, **1907**, xlviii, 433.
- Ghiron (M.).** Die Nierenfunktion bei der durch Reflex hervorgerufenen Anurie. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1914**, li, 158.
- Harrison (R.).** A contribution to the study of some forms of albuminuria associated with kidney tension and their treatment. *Lancet*, **1896**, i, 18.
- Lloyd (S.).** The results of renal decapsulation for chronic nephritis. *Med. Rec.*, **1912**, lxxxi, 1030.
- Northrup (W. P.).** Anuria; five days; post-scarlatinal; boy, aged three and one-half years; recovery. *Tr. Assn. Am. Phys.*, **1910**, xxv, 547.
- Pässler (H.).** Beitrag zur Pathologie der Nierenkrankheiten, nach klinischen Beobachtungen bei totaler Harnsperrre. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1906**, lxxvii, 569.
- Ruge (E.).** Über den derzeitigen Stand einiger Nephritisfragen und der Nephritischirurgie. *Ergebn. d. Chir. u. Orthop.*, **1913**, vi, 565.
- Thorndike (P.).** Surgical treatment of nephritis. *Boston Med. & Surg. Jour.*, **1905**, clii, 393.

*Albuminuria—Cylindruria*

- Barach (J. H.).** Physiological and pathological effects of severe exertion (the marathon race) on the circulatory and renal systems. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1910**, v, 382.
- Bass (M. H.) & Wessler (H.).** Heart size and heart function in children showing orthostatic albuminuria: an orthodiagraphic study. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 403.  
A study of the blood pressure in children showing orthostatic albuminuria. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 39.
- Christian (H. A.).** Clinical value of recent studies in experimental nephritis. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1909**, lvi, 1792.
- Collier (W.).** Functional albuminuria in athletes. *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1907**, i, 4.
- Erlanger (J.) & Hooker (D. R.).** An experimental study of blood pressure and of pulse pressure in man. *Johns Hopkins Hosp. Rep.*, **1904**, xii, 145.
- Gesell (R. A.).** On the relation of pulse pressure to renal secretion. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1913**, xxii, 70.
- Goodhart (J. F.).** The after-history of cases of albuminuria occurring in adolescence. Discussion follows. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, **1911**, iv, 2 109 (Medical Section).
- Heubner (O.).** Zur Kenntniss der orthotischen Albuminurie. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1907**, xlv, 1. Discussions on pp. 61 & 87.
- Hooker (D. R.).** Postural or orthostatic albuminuria. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1910**, v, 491.
- Jehle (L.).** Die Albuminurie. Klinische-experimentelle Beiträge zur Frage der orthostatisch-lordotischen und der nephritischen Albuminurie. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, xii, 808.
- Smith (R. M.).** The origin of urinary casts; an experimental study. *Boston Med. & Surg. Jour.*, **1908**, clviii, 696.
- Sonne (C.).** Beitrag zur Ätiologie der lordotischen orthostatischen Albuminurie. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1920**, xc, 1.

*Experimental Nephritis*

- Aschoff (L.).** The pathogenesis of the contracted kidney. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 723.
- Austin (J. H.) & Eisenbrey (A. B.).** Experimental acute nephritis: the elimination of nitrogen and chlorids as compared with that of phenolsulphonaphthalein. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1911**, xiv, 366.
- Baehr (G.).** Ueber experimentelle Glomerulonephritis. (Ein Beitrag zur Lehre der Schrumpfnieren.) *Beit. z. path. Anat. u. allg. Path.*, **1913**, lv, 545.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Ryffel (J. H.).** The action of diuretics in experimental nephritis. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1912-13**, xvi, 458.
- Christian (H. A.).** On the study of renal function: the relation of functional tests to pathological diagnosis. *Tr. Cong. Am. Phys. & Surg.*, **1913**, ix, 1.
- Dickson (E. C.).** A report on the experimental production of chronic nephritis in animals by the use of uranium nitrate. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1909**, iii, 375.
- MacNider (W. de B.).** The vascular response of the kidney in acute uranium nephritis—The influence of the vascular response on diuresis. *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exp. Therap.*, **1914**, vi, 123.
- Ophüls (W.).** Experimental chronic nephritis. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1907**, xlviii, 483.
- Pearce (R. M.).** An experimental study of the late glomerular lesions caused by crotalus venom. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 149.
- Pearce (R. M.) & Eisenbrey (A. S.).** A physiological study of experimental nephritis due to bacterial poisons and cytotoxic sera. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1911**, xiv, 306.

- Pearce (R. M.), Hill (M. C.) & Eisenbrey (A. B.).** *Experimental acute nephritis: the vascular reactions and the elimination of nitrogen.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1910**, xii, 196.
- Schlayer.** *Untersuchungen über die Funktion kranker Nieren.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, cii, 311.
- Underhill (F. P.), Wells (H. G.) & Goldschmidt (S.).** *A note on the fate of tartrates in the body.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 317.  
*Tartrate nephritis, with especial reference to some of the conditions under which it may be produced.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 322.  
*A study of renal secretion during tartrate nephritis.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 347.
- Widal (F.) & Vallery-Radot (P.).** *Recherches sur les épreuves d'élimination comparée de l'iode et du lactose dans l'étude des néphrites.* *Semaine Med.*, **1914**, xxxiv, 325.

### Nitrogenous Retention

- Agnew (J. H.).** *Comparative study of phenolsulphonephthalein elimination and the incoagulable nitrogen of the blood in cardiorenal diseases.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 485.
- Ambard (L.) & Weill (A.).** *Les lois numériques de la sécrétion rénale de l'urée et du chlorure de sodium.* *Jour. Physiol. & Path. gen.*, **1912**, xiv, 753.
- Farr (C. B.) & Austin (J. H.).** *The total non-protein nitrogen of the blood in nephritis and allied conditions.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 228.
- Fitz (R.).** *The relation between amylase retention and excretion and non-protein nitrogen retention in experimental uranium nephritis.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xv, 524.
- Folin (O.), Denis (W.) & Seymour (M.).** *The non-protein nitrogenous constituents of the blood in chronic vascular nephritis (arteriosclerosis) as influenced by the level of protein metabolism.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 224.
- Folin (O.), Karsner (H. T.) & Denis (W.).** *Nitrogen retention in the blood in experimental acute nephritis of the cat.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1912**, xvi, 789.
- Foster (N. B.) & Davis (H. B.).** *The effect of water intake on nitrogenous retention in nephritis.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1916**, cli, 49.
- Frothingham (C., Jr.), Fitz (R.), Folin (O.) & Denis (W.).** *The relation between non-protein nitrogen retention and phenolsulphonephthalein excretion in experimental uranium nephritis.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 245.
- Frothingham (C., Jr.) & Smillie (W. G.).** *The relation between phenolsulphonephthalein excretion in the urine and the non-protein nitrogen content of the blood in human cases.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 541.
- Geyelin (H. R.).** *A clinical study of amylase in the urine.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 96.
- Hohlweg (H.).** *Ueber das Verhalten der Reststickstoffe des Blutes bei Nephritis und Urämie.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, civ, 216.
- Karsner (H. T.) & Denis (W.).** *A further study of nitrogen retention in the blood in experimental acute nephritis.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1914**, xix, 259.  
*A note on nitrogen retention following repeated injections of nephrotoxic agents.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1914**, xix, 270.
- McLean (F. C.) & Selling (L.).** *Urea and total non-protein nitrogen in normal human blood; relation of their concentration to rate of elimination.* *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1914**, xix, 31.
- v. Monakow (P.).** *Beitrag zur Funktionsprüfung der Niere.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, cii, 248.
- Mosenthal (H. O.).** *The interpretation of a positive nitrogen balance in nephritis.* *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. & Med.*, **1915**, xiii, 9.
- Myers (V. C.), Fine (M. S.) & Lough (W. G.).** *The significance of the uric acid, urea and creatinin of the blood in nephritis.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, xvi, 570.



- Myers (V. C.) & Killian (J. A.).** The prognostic value of the creatinine of the blood in nephritis. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1919**, clvii, 674.
- Rowntree (L. G.).** On the study of renal function: the prognostic value of studies of renal function. *Tr. Cong. Am. Phys. & Surg.*, **1913**, ix, 23.
- Rowntree (L. G.) & Geraghty (J. T.).** An experimental and clinical study of phenol-sulphonaphthalein in relation to renal function in health and disease. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 284.
- Savidan (R.).** L'azotémie et la constante d'Ambard. Thèse de Paris, **1912**.
- Strauss (H.).** Der Reststickstoff in seinen Beziehungen zur Urämie und zur Prognose von Nephritiden. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cvi, 219.  
Zur Prognosenstellung bei Nephritiden. *Ztschr. f. Urol.*, **1913**, vii, 287.
- Weill (A.).** L'azotémie au cours des néphrites chroniques. Thèse de Paris, **1913**.
- Widal (F.) & Lemierre (A.).** Die diätetische Behandlung der Nierenentzündungen. *Ergeb. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1909**, iv, 523.

### Salt Retention—Nephritic Edema

- Ambard (L.) & Weill (A.).** La sécrétion rénale des chlorures. *Sem. Méd.*, **1912**.
- Baetjer (W. A.).** Superpermeability in nephritis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 593.
- Borelli (L.) & Girardi (P.).** Versuche über den Kochsalz- und Wasserwechsel beim gesunden Menschen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, cxvi, 206.
- Boycott (A. E.).** On the regulation of the blood volume in normal and nephritic animals. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1913-14**, xviii, 11.  
*Ibid.*, **1913-14**, xviii, 498; **1914**, xix, 221.
- Chisolm (R. A.).** The regulation of the blood volume in experimental nephritis. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1913-14**, xviii, 552; **1914**, xix, 265.  
The water content of the tissues in experimental nephritis. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1913-14**, xviii, 404.
- Janeway (T. C.).** The study of renal function: its bearing on treatment. *Tr. Cong. Am. Phys. & Surg.*, **1913**, ix, 14.
- v. Korányi (A.).** Physikalisch-chemische Methoden und Gesichtspunkte in ihrer Anwendung auf die pathologische Physiologie der Nieren. In *Physikalische Chemie und Medizin*. Korányi u. Richler, Leipzig, **1908**, ii, 133.
- Leva (J.).** Organuntersuchungen, sowie experimentelle Studien über anhydropische Chlorretention. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1915**, lxxvii, 1.
- McLean (F. C.).** The numerical laws governing the rate of excretion of urea and of chlorides in man. II. The influence of pathological conditions and of drugs on excretion. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1915**, xxii, 366.
- v. Müller (F.).** Discussion Kongr. f. inn. Med., **1914**, cxxi, 654.
- Palmer (W. H.).** Studies in paroxysmal edema. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xv, 329.
- Reiss (E.).** Die refraktometrische Blutuntersuchung und ihre Ergebnisse für die Physiologie und Pathologie des Menschen. *Ergeb. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, x, 531.
- Schmid (P.) & Schlayer.** Über nephritisches Odem. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, civ, 44.
- Scholz (B.) & Hinkel (A.).** Zur Frage der Chlorretention. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, cxvii, 334.
- Strauss (H.).** Die Chlorentziehungskur der Nieren und Herzwassersucht. *Verhandl. d. Kong. f. inn. Med.*, **1909**, xxvi, 91.
- Vaucher (E.).** L'hydrémie chez les brightiques et les cardiaques oedémateux. . . Thèse de Paris, **1911-12**, xlii, 1.
- Veil (W. H.).** Über die klinische Bedeutung der Blutkonzentrationsbestimmung. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1913-14**, cxvii, 504; **1914**, cxviii, 226.

- Wahlgren (V.).** Ueber die Bedeutung der Gewebe als Chlordepots. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1909**, lxi, 97.
- Widal (F.).** Die Kochsalzentziehungskur in der Brightschen Krankheit. *Verhandl. d. Kong. f. inn. Med.*, **1909**, xxvi, 43.
- Widal (F.), Benard (R.) & Vaucher (E.).** L'hydrémie chez les brightiques et les cardiaques oedémateux; son étude à l'aide de la méthode réfractométrique; comparaison de ses variations à celles du poids. *Semaine Méd.*, **1911**, xxxi, 49.
- Widal (F.) & Javal (A.).** La cure de déchloruration. Son action sur l'oedème, sur l'hydratation et sur l'albuminurie à certaines périodes de la néphrite épithéliale. *Bull. et Mém. d. l. Soc. Méd. d. Hôp.*, Paris, **1903**, xx, 733.
- Widal (F.) & Lemierre (A.).** Die diätetische Behandlung der Nierenentzündungen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1909**, iv, 523.
- Widal (F.), Lemierre (A.) & Cotonni.** Le rôle du chlorure de sodium dans les oedèmes provoqués par le bicarbonate de soude à dose massive. *Semaine Méd.*, **1911**, xxxi, 325.
- Widal (F.), Lemierre (A.) & Weill (A.).** Recherches sur les oedèmes provoqués par le bicarbonate de soude. Rôle du chlorure de sodium. *Bull. et Mém. Soc. Méd. d. Hôp.*, Paris, **1912**, xxxiii, 641.
- v. Wyss (H.).** Über Ödeme durch Natrium bicarbonicum. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, cxi, 93.

### Acidosis and Renal Disease

- Chace (A. F.) & Myers (V. C.).** Acidosis in nephritis. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1920**, lxxiv, 641.
- Denis (W.) & Minot (A. S.).** A study of phosphate retention from the standpoint of blood analysis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1920**, xxvi, 99.
- Fischer (M. H.).** Oedema and nephritis. New York, 1915.
- Henderson (L. J.), Palmer (W. W.) & Newburgh (L. H.).** The swelling of colloids and hydrogen ion concentration. *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, **1914**, v, 449.
- v. Hösslin (R.).** Ueber die Abhängigkeit der Albuminurie vom Säuregrad des Urins und über den Einfluss der Alkalizufuhr auf Acidität, Albuminurie, Diurese und Chloridausscheidung, sowie auf das Harnammoniak. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911-12**, cv, 147.
- Karsner (H. T.), Reimann (S. P.) & Brooks (S. C.).** Studies of uranium poisoning. IV. The relation of acid intoxication to nephritis. *Jour. Med. Res.*, **1918**, xxxix, 177.
- Lewis (T.), Ryffel (J. H.), Wolf (C. G. L.), Cotton (T.) & Barcroft (J.).** Observations relating to dyspnea in cardiac and renal patients. *Heart*, **1913**, v, 45.
- MacNider (W. deB.).** A study of renal function and the associated disturbance in the acid-base equilibrium of the blood in certain experimental and naturally acquired nephropathies. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1920**, xxvi, 1.
- Marriott (W. McK.) & Howland (J.).** The influence of acid phosphate on the elimination of ammonia in the urine. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1918**, xxii, 477.
- Marriott (W. McK.) & Howland (J.).** Phosphate retention as a factor in the production of acidosis in nephritis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1916**, xviii, 708.
- Palmer (W. W.) & Henderson (L. J.).** Clinical studies on acid base equilibrium and the nature of acidosis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 153.
- Peabody (F. W.).** Studies on acidosis and dyspnea in renal and cardiac disease. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 236.
- Peabody (F. W.).** Clinical studies on the respiration. II. The acidosis of chronic nephritis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 955.
- Porges (O.) & Leimdorfer (A.).** Über die Kohlensäurespannung bei Nierenkrankungen. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxvii, 464.

- Sellards (A. W.).** *A clinical method for studying titratable alkalinity of the blood and its application to acidosis.* Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., **1914**, xxv, 101.  
*The determination of the equilibrium in the human body between acids and bases with especial reference to acidosis and nephropathies.* Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., **1912**, xxiii, 289.
- Straub (H.) & Schlager.** *Die Urämie eine Säurevergiftung.* München. med. Wchnschr., **1912**, lix, 569.

### *Renal Function in Passive Congestion*

- Nonnenbruch (W.).** *Zur Kenntnis der Funktion der Stauungsniere.* Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., **1913**, cx, 162.
- Rowntree (L. G.) & Fitz (R.).** *Studies of renal function in renal, cardiorenal and cardiac diseases.* Arch. Int. Med., **1913**, xi, 258.

### *Renal Function in Eclampsia*

- Ballantyne (J. W.) [et al.].** *Discussion on the etiology of eclampsia.* Brit. Med. Jour., **1912**, ii, 1122.
- Buttner (O.).** *Untersuchungen über die Nierenfunktion bei Schwangerschaftsniere und Eklampsie.* Arch. f. Gynäk., **1906**, lxxix, 421.
- Farr (C. B.) & Williams (P. F.).** *The total non-protein nitrogen of the blood in pregnancy and eclampsia.* Am. Jour. Med. Sc., **1914**, cxlvii, 556.
- Slemons (J. M.).** *Analysis of the blood in eclampsia and allied intoxications.* Am. Jour. Obst., **1918**, lxxvii, 797.
- Zangemeister (W.).** *Untersuchungen über die Blutbeschaffenheit und die Harnsecretion bei Eklampsie.* Ztschr. f. Geburtsh. u. Gynäk., **1903**, 1, 385.
- Zinsser (A.).** *Ueber die Nierenfunktion Eklamptischer.* Ztschr. f. Geburtsh. u. Gynäk., **1912**, lxx, 201.

### *Uremia*

See also references under Nitrogenous Retention, Acidosis and Renal Disease, Eclampsia.

- Foster (N. B.).** *Pathological deviations in the chemistry of uremic blood.* Arch. Int. Med., **1912**, x, 414.
- Foster (N. B.).** *Uremia.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1921**, lxxvi, 281.
- Leiter (L.).** *Observations on the relation of urea to uremia.* Arch. Int. Med., **1921**, xxviii, 331.
- Obermayer (F.) & Popper (H.).** *Ueber Urämie.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1911**, lxxii, 332.
- Reiss (E.).** *Zur Klinik und Eiteilung der Urämie.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1914**, lxxx, 97.
- Smillie (W. G.).** *Potassium poisoning in nephritis.* Arch. Int. Med., **1915**, xvi, 330.

### *Calculus—Hydronephrosis—Renal Pain*

- Bittorf (A.).** *Herpes zoster und Nierenkolik.* Deutsch. med. Wchnschr., **1911**, xxxvii, 290.
- Cumston (C. G.).** *Primary (congenital) hydronephrosis.* Ann. of Surg., **1910**, lii, 626.
- Fenwick (E. H.).** *Clinical lectures on kidney pain.* Brit. Med. Jour., **1911**, i, 8.
- Gardner (F. E.).** *The etiology of hydronephrosis.* Ann. of Surg., **1908**, xlvii, 575.
- Geraghty (J. T.) & Frontz (W. A.).** *A study of primary hydronephrosis.* Jour. Urol., **1918**, ii, 161.



- Hunner (G. L.).** *Forcible dilatation of the kidney pelvis as a means of diagnosis.* *Surg. Gyn. & Obst.*, **1910**, x, 485.
- Kahn (M.) & Rosenbloom (J.).** *A report of some chemical analyses of urinary calculi.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1912**, lix, 2252.
- Legueu (F.).** *Pathogénie et traitement de l'hydronéphrose.* *Ann. d. Malad. d. Org. Génito-Urin.*, **1896**, xiv, 982.
- Lichtwitz (L.).** *Die Bildung der Harnsedimente und Harnsteine.* *Ztschr. f. Urol.*, **1913**, vii, 810.
- Lichtwitz (L.).** *Ueber die Bildung der Harn- und Gallensteine.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1914**, xviii, 1.
- McDonald (A. L.).** *Anomalous renal arteries and their relation to hydronephrosis.* *Ann. of Surg.*, **1910**, lii, 814.
- Mayo (W. J.), Braasch (W. F.) & MacCarty (W. C.).** *Relation of anomalous renal blood vessels to hydronephrosis.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1909**, lii, 1383.
- Pal (I.).** *Über einige reflektorische Symptome der Nierenkolik.* *Wien. med. Wchnschr.*, **1911**, lxi, 2335.
- Posner (C.).** *Die Bildung der Harnsteine.* *Ztschr. f. Urol.*, **1913**, vii, 799.
- Verhoogen (J.) & de Graeuwe (A.).** *Beitrag zum Studium der kongenitalen Hydronephrose.* *Ztschr. f. Urol.*, **1911**, v, 602.
- Wildbolz (H.).** *Über traumatische Hydronephrosen und Pseudo-Hydronephrosen.* *Ztschr. f. Urol.*, **1910**, iv, 241.

## Chapter IX

# Disturbances of Heat Regulation— Fever

### Physiological Variations in Temperature

#### *(a) In Different Animals*

With respect to the regulation of the body temperature fundamental differences exist among animals. In the so-called cold-blooded or poikilothermic animals the temperature of the body depends upon the temperature of its surroundings. It rises in warm weather and falls in cold, and the life of such an animal varies accordingly. When warm the animal is active and its metabolic processes proceed at a rapid rate. When cold the metabolism is slowed and the animal often becomes torpid. In the so-called warm-blooded or homothermic animals, on the other hand, the body temperature is maintained at a fairly constant level and the activities of the animal are more or less independent of its surroundings. Transitions between these two types occur. In hibernating animals and in certain of the lowest mammals the temperature of the body is imperfectly regulated and it descends on exposure to unusual cold.

The mean body temperature maintained by different homothermic animals varies considerably. Among birds the normal mean temperature usually lies between  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $104^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) and  $42^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $107.6^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) while normal maximum temperatures may reach  $43^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $109.4^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) or more. Most mammals have mean body temperatures which are lower than that of birds but somewhat higher than that of man.

#### *(b) Normal Variations of Temperature in Man*

Although it is customary to fix  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $98.6^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) as the normal temperature of man it should be remembered that considerable variations occur both in different parts of the body and during different times of the day. The rectal temperature is usually about  $0.6^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $1.0^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) higher than the mouth temperature and this difference is increased when

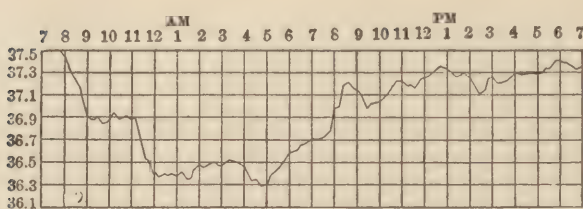


Fig. 103.—Fluctuations in Body Temperature of G. W. H. During "Normal" Day. (After Benedict, Am. Jour. Physiol.)

beneath the tongue for five minutes or more, unusual differences between mouth and rectal temperatures are not infrequently encountered; especially in the aged, in the feeble, in those with a poor circulation and in those exposed to cold external temperatures.

The normal temperature of man also shows a regular diurnal rhythm. It rises during the day and reaches its maximum in the late afternoon.

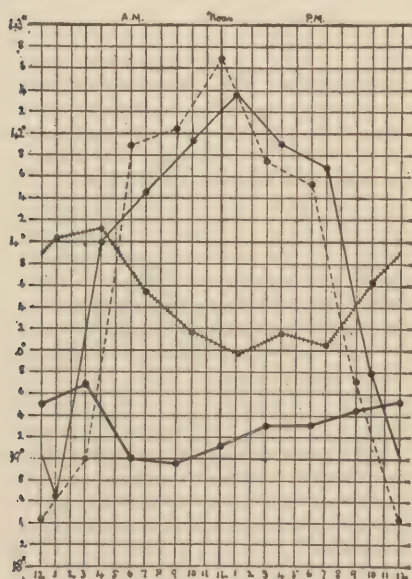


Fig. 105.—The Body Temperature of Birds. Higher Curves from the Thrush, Lower Curves from the Owl. Note that the Nocturnal Life of the Latter Causes a Reversal of Its Temperature Curve. (From Simpson and Galbraith, Jour. Physiol.)

the mouth has been cooled by taking cold food or liquid, by talking, or by breathing with the mouth open. Even though these temporary changes in the temperature of the mouth be avoided by leaving a thermometer

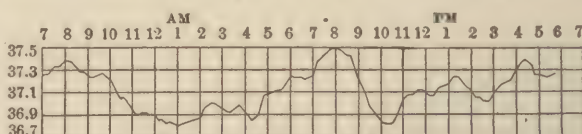


Fig. 104.—Fluctuations in Body Temperature of G. W. H. on the Tenth Day of Inversion of the Daily Routine (Night Work). Note the Incomplete Reversal of the Curve. (After Benedict, Am. Jour. Physiol.)

It falls during the night and reaches its minimum in the early morning hours. (See Fig. 103.) The difference between the maximal and minimal temperatures is usually somewhat over  $1^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $1.8^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). The cause of this normal diurnal variation in the body temperature of man is not completely understood. Doubtless it depends in part upon the muscular activities of the waking hours, for even such a slight difference in muscular activity as is produced by changing from sitting to standing affects the body temperature to an appreciable extent. It is likewise influenced by the taking of food, for diurnal variations are less marked during fasting. It would appear, however, that in man at least the diurnal variations do not depend entirely upon the difference in activity between the sleeping and waking



hours, for Benedict and others have found that these variations, though markedly influenced, are not completely reversed by night work, even when this has been followed for years (Fig. 104). In nocturnal birds, however, the reversal of temperature seems to be complete (Fig. 105).

## Regulation against Overheating and Overcooling

### *The Normal Regulation of Body Temperature*

The temperature of the body is determined by the relation which exists between the amount of heat produced and the amount of heat eliminated. The heat produced depends upon the basal body metabolism and upon excesses above this resulting from muscular activity, the ingestion of food and possibly other factors (see Total Metabolism). Heat is lost mainly through conduction and radiation from the skin and through evaporation of water from the skin and respiratory tract. Under the usual conditions prevailing in a temperate climate from two to three times as much heat is lost by conduction and radiation as by evaporation; and since during rest the losses by evaporation are about equally divided between the skin and the lungs, it is evident that the skin is the main organ through which heat is lost from the human body.

The delicate adjustment which exists in the body between heat production and heat elimination is under the control of the central nervous system. The principal centers for heat regulation lie in or near the basal ganglia, but they have not been identified with any definite anatomical structures. These centers influence both the production and the dissipation of heat; and they in turn are influenced by afferent stimuli from the skin and mucous membranes as well as by the temperature of the blood which circulates through them.

### *Regulation Against Overheating*

A rise of body temperature results when the amount of heat produced is greater than that eliminated. We have seen that the *production of heat is increased* after the absorption of food, and especially after the absorption of protein food. The extra heat thus liberated is never very great, however, and ordinarily it is promptly eliminated. *Overeating*, and especially the overeating of meats, may increase one's discomfort during hot weather by throwing an extra burden upon heat elimination, but this extra heat rarely, if ever, causes a serious rise in the body temperature of normal individuals. *Muscular activity*, on the other hand, may be an important cause of overheating. The total metabolism of the body may be increased from five to eight times the normal resting metabolism during brief periods of violent exercise and increases of two or three

times the normal are not uncommon during moderate exercise. This increased heat production from exercise not infrequently affects the body temperature. Even under conditions which are favorable for heat elimination moderate exercise may raise the rectal temperature  $1^{\circ}$  or  $2^{\circ}$  Fahrenheit. An equilibrium, however, is usually established at this new level and during continuance of the work there is no further rise. The extra heat is eliminated by an increase in the radiation, conduction and evaporation from the surface of the body and also by more rapid and deep breathing. Where the conditions for heat elimination are unfavorable, exercise may cause a serious elevation of body temperature. This has been observed particularly among soldiers who have marched during hot weather while dressed in heavy clothing.

In the dog, where perspiration is almost absent, excessive heat is eliminated mainly by the evaporation of moisture from the tongue and mouth. When overheated the dog opens his mouth, allows his tongue to hang out and breathes very rapidly. If this evaporation is prevented by having the dog breathe through a cannula inserted into the trachea, exercise raises the body temperature to an unusual degree and may cause death from heat stroke.

In man disturbances of temperature regulation may result from diseases of the skin. The loss of skin perspiration in patients with general ichthyosis lessens their ability to regulate against overheating. Exposure to heat or muscular activity may raise the temperature of such patients to an unusual degree. According to Block, these patients compensate to some extent for the absence of perspiration by breathing more rapidly, thus increasing the evaporation from the respiratory surfaces, in a manner analogous to that used by the dog.

We have seen that *heat elimination* is ordinarily accomplished mainly through radiation, conduction and evaporation. The amount of heat lost by conduction and radiation is determined in part by the temperature of the skin, and this in turn by the rate at which the blood circulates through the cutaneous vessels. The circulation in the periphery of the body is very sensitive to changes which affect heat regulation. When exposed to room temperatures sufficiently high to cause moderate feelings of warmth the blood flow through the arm usually increases to about twice the normal. It is evident, however, that if the external temperature is higher than that of the body heat losses by radiation and conduction necessarily cease. Under such circumstances evaporation becomes the sole method of heat elimination. Since the rate of evaporation depends mainly upon the *humidity of the air*, the latter plays an important part in the physiological effects of warm climates. From the physiological standpoint the wet bulb thermometer gives a far better indication of the effective heat than does the ordinary dry bulb thermometer. When the humidity is low evaporation takes place at a more rapid rate and far

higher temperatures can be borne. Movements of air also assist evaporation from the skin and excessive heat is better borne when the air is in motion. Protection against overheating in tropical weather is, therefore, accomplished mainly by an increased activity of the functions which govern heat dissipation. At the same time, however, the individual usually feels relaxed, restricts his exercise, and eats less; all of which diminish heat production, and lessen the danger of overheating.

We have seen that in man the regulation against overheating is effected mainly by a dilatation of the cutaneous blood vessels and by an increase in the perspiration. These reactions are under the control of the central nervous system and they do not take place in an extremity which has been separated from its central nervous control. The nervous centers seem to be guided in this regulation against overheating by two factors:

- (1) The temperature of the blood coming to them, and
- (2) Reflexes from the warm skin.

If the temperature of the nervous centers be raised either by warming the carotid blood going to the brain or by the direct application of

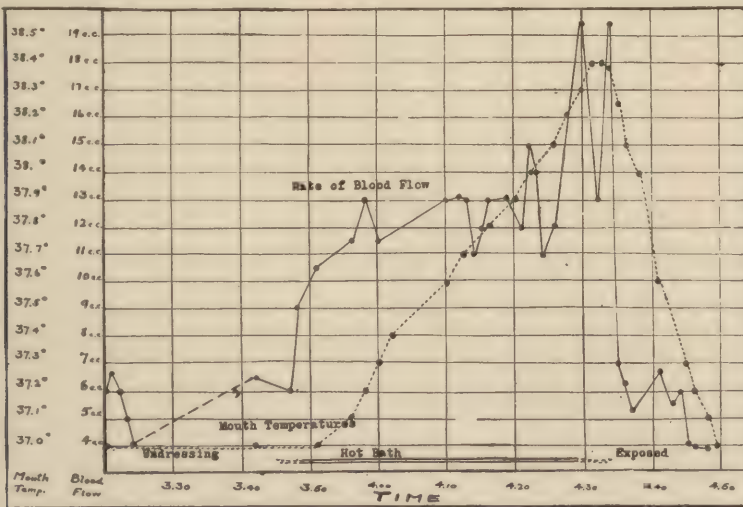


Fig. 106.—The Relation Between the Mouth Temperature and the Blood Flow in the Arm During a Hot Tub Bath. Note that the Rate of Flow Rose at the Beginning of the Bath Before the Mouth Temperature Showed a Change; Also that the Rate Fell When the Water Ran Out, While the Mouth Temperature Was Still Above 38° C. These Effects Were Due to Reflexes from the Skin Produced by the Heat and Cold Respectively. The Arm Studied Was Not Immersed in the Water. (After Hewlett, Van Zwaluwenburg and Marshall, Arch. Int. Med.)

heat through small tubes introduced into the region of the corpora striata, the various physiological changes that characterize the regulation against overheating take place. In rabbits the skin vessels dilate, in dogs the



characteristic rapid breathing appears. Artificial heating of certain parts of the brain may, therefore, lead in animals to a lowering of the general body temperature. Apparently in man also the temperature of the blood is an important factor in setting in operation the mechanism for increasing its heat losses. Thus, Stern showed that when a person is immersed in a moderately warm bath sweating does not occur at first but appears when the body temperature has been raised from  $0.1^{\circ}$  to  $0.8^{\circ}$  C. ( $0.2^{\circ}$  to  $1.4^{\circ}$  F.).

On the other hand, it is certain that in man reflexes from the skin play an important part in setting in operation the mechanisms for heat loss. Filehne showed that by being partially immersed in a hot bath he could cause an outbreak of perspiration even though the body temperature remained constant or fell slightly. Furthermore, as may be seen in Figure 106, the blood flow through the arm is promptly accelerated when the body is immersed in hot water, long before the mouth thermometer shows any appreciable rise of temperature. In this experiment the reflex effect produced by the stimulation of the skin by heat appeared to be more potent in increasing the blood flow in the arm than did the later rise of body temperature. During muscular exercise, on the other hand, it is not improbable that the chief stimulus to the heat regulatory centers may arise from the elevated temperature of the blood, for the skin is often cool from perspiration.

### **Sunstroke**

Slight rises of body temperature are not infrequent as a result of exercise, but if reasonable opportunities are present for heat losses, these rises never become dangerous. Rises may also be produced artificially in normal animals or men by placing them under conditions which prevent heat losses from the body. This may be done most simply by subjecting them to moist heat, thus preventing heat losses by conduction, by radiation and by evaporation. If a normal man be immersed up to his neck in a hot bath the body temperature may readily be raised to  $38^{\circ}$  C. ( $100.4^{\circ}$  F.) or  $38.5^{\circ}$  C. ( $101.3^{\circ}$  F.) without great discomfort; and by continuing the immersion it may be raised to  $40^{\circ}$  C. ( $104^{\circ}$  F.) or, indeed, to dangerous heights.

These hyperthermias produced by exposure to moist heat have many points in common with the effects of heat which are frequently observed in those living in hot climates. In the milder cases of heatstroke, the so-called *heat prostrations*, the patient usually complains of headache, dizziness, pains in the back and limbs, nausea, and thirst. He is unable to work and sleeps poorly. His temperature, though occasionally subnormal, is as a rule moderately elevated, from  $37.3^{\circ}$  C. to  $40.4^{\circ}$  C. ( $99.1^{\circ}$ – $104.7^{\circ}$  F.). In the so-called *asphyxial form* of sunstroke, which is relatively uncommon, the patient becomes unconscious with a temperature showing about the same

range as in heat prostration. The *more severe forms of sunstroke* are always associated with a marked increase of the body temperature. In these cases there is frequently a history of prodromal symptoms similar to those present in heat prostration, which prodromes are then followed by unconsciousness. The body temperature rises to heights that are rarely approached during acute infections. From  $40^{\circ}$  to  $44^{\circ}$  C. ( $104^{\circ}$ – $111.2^{\circ}$  F.) are common, while temperatures of  $46^{\circ}$  C. ( $114.8^{\circ}$  F.) and over have been observed. When the temperature does not pass  $44^{\circ}$  C. ( $111.2^{\circ}$  F.) recovery is fairly frequent under vigorous antipyretic treatment but when the temperature exceeds this limit recoveries are rare. Patients showing these high temperatures are as a rule deeply comatose and have lost control over micturition and defecation. The skin is often dry, it may be hot or cool, and its color may be pale, livid or cyanotic. A dry, cool or pale skin indicates that a maximum heat dissipation is not taking place, and it shows that the normal mechanism which regulates against overheating has become deranged.

Among the most common causes of sunstroke are continued high temperatures with high humidity, and continued exercise during warm weather while wearing unsuitable clothing. Heat prostrations, though usually of the milder type, are relatively common when soldiers march long distances in hot weather and in full uniform. They are common, too, in large cities during prolonged periods of hot weather.

**Predisposing Factors.**—Many facts indicate that in clinical heatstroke we are dealing not with a simple overpowering of a normal temperature regulation but with the overpowering of a relatively inefficient mechanism and ultimately with a derangement of this mechanism. It is well known, for example, that heatstroke is more prone to attack certain individuals, presumably because their regulation against excessive heat is less perfect than the average. Persons of low vitality and especially fat individuals with poor circulations are liable to sunstroke. By far the most important predisposing cause is the abuse of alcohol. The majority of heatstroke cases in larger cities occur in moderate to heavy users of alcohol, which drug seems to lessen the effectiveness of the regulation against overheating. A weakening of the mechanism is also the probable explanation of the fact that in large cities heatstrokes do not occur with any high degree of frequency during the early days of a hot spell. Continuance of very hot weather seems to break down the ability of certain individuals to resist it. The dry or cool skin present in certain patients suffering from heatstroke also indicates a faulty elimination. Finally, after the patient's temperature has been reduced to the normal or nearly normal level by the vigorous use of hydrotherapy, it is common for the patient to show occasional or continuous fever for days and even weeks after the acute hyperpyrexia has subsided. During this time the body temperature may be exceedingly sensitive to external influences and it may rise with every

increase in the external temperature. For years after, such patients may show an increased sensitiveness to heat. It is evident, therefore, that the hyperpyrexial form of heatstroke is usually associated with and is followed by marked disturbances in the heat regulation of the body. The overpowering of a normal or weakened regulation by excessive heat deranges the nervous centers which regulate heat losses.

### ***Regulation Against Overcooling***

Man is ordinarily exposed to temperatures considerably lower than that of the body; and for this reason regulation against overcooling is in more frequent demand than regulation against overheating. As a matter of fact, a much greater range of low than of high temperatures can be tolerated. Protection against heat losses is assisted by a thick layer of fat beneath the skin. In animals the fur and other coverings of the body serve to prevent excessive dissipation of heat and by means of clothes man is enabled to interpose an artificial resistance to cold. Aside from these factors an individual exposed to cold has at his disposal two general methods for maintaining his normal body temperature. The first of these, the so-called *physical regulation*, consists of restricting the heat losses by diminishing the caliber of the skin vessels so that less blood flows through the periphery of the body. Exposure to moderate cold reduces the blood flow through the arm to one-half or less of what it is at comfortable external temperatures. Under these circumstances the skin may appear blue or white according as the cutaneous capillaries contain more or less blood; but in either case the circulation through them is very slow. The second method of regulating against overcooling, the so-called *chemical regulation*, is accomplished by an increased metabolism in the muscles. When the body is exposed to moderate external temperatures this chemical regulation is not operative and protection against overcooling is governed solely by physical means. When exposed to lower temperatures, however, the physical regulation may be insufficient. It is well known that persons ordinarily exercise or shiver when exposed to excessive cold. The heat thus liberated is used to maintain the body temperature. Extra heat may also be derived from the ingestion of food and persons withstand cold better after a full meal than when fasting. Apparently in man exposure to cold does not increase heat production unless it produces the active muscular movements characteristic of shivering.

As with the regulation against overheating, so here also, we have a control of the mechanism by the heat regulatory centers of the central nervous system. If cold be directly applied to these centers they regulate so as to retain heat in the body and thus increase the body temperature. They are also influenced by sensory impulses from the skin, for if the latter be suddenly cooled a reflex constriction of the cutaneous



vessels of the body occurs almost immediately. Indeed, a brief cold bath not infrequently causes a rise of body temperature because of the increased muscular activity and constricted skin vessels that result from the cutaneous stimulation by cold.

### *Freezing*

We have seen that when a warm-blooded animal is exposed to cold a reduction of the body temperature is prevented partly by diminishing heat dissipation and partly by increasing heat production. Under certain circumstances, however, this protective mechanism is broken down and the bodily temperature then falls. In hibernating animals such a fall is physiological and during the winter sleep they live with all the body functions markedly depressed and with the body temperature not far above the freezing point of water. In most warm-blooded animals, however, any marked reduction of body temperature causes death. It is usually stated that for mammals body temperatures of 20° C. (68° F.) or below are incompatible with life, but life is seriously endangered, in the rabbit at least, when the body temperature falls below 30° C. (86° F.). Reincke has reported a remarkable case where a drunken man after exposure to cold was admitted to the hospital with a rectal temperature of 24° C. (75.2° F.) and yet recovered.

**Predisposing Factors.**—Among the factors which reduce the ability of an individual to withstand cold are absence of proper clothing, lack of food, and muscular weakness. Small animals, on account of the relatively large surface of their bodies in proportion to the weight, have in general a less perfect regulation against cold than have large animals. If a rabbit, guinea-pig or cat be tied on its back and exposed to a moderately cold room its temperature falls owing to its extended position and lack of exercise, and death may result. As might be expected, this cooling proceeds more rapidly if the fur has been cut away. Infants and especially the new-born also resist cold poorly. In the latter this lack of resistance seems to depend, not so much upon the small size, as upon an imperfect action of the heat regulatory mechanism shortly after birth. Alcoholism is also an important factor in the etiology of freezing just as it is in the etiology of sunstroke. The dilatation of the cutaneous vessels caused by alcohol produces a feeling of warmth but at the same time it increases the heat losses and in this way tends to reduce the body temperature. The most important action of alcohol, however, is upon the nervous centers, producing somnolence and a less perfect nervous control of the mechanism which guards against heat losses.

**Symptoms.**—The initial symptoms produced by exposure to cold consist of increased muscular activity which is manifest either by increased exercise or shivering. The mind is alert and the individual often feels

unusually energetic. When, however, the temperature of the body begins to fall and there is danger of freezing, the alertness and muscular activity are replaced by muscular weakness and fatigue, stiffness in the limbs and drowsiness, which are followed by deepening coma. The muscular relaxation, somnolence and coma are evidence of a breaking down in the normal body regulation against cold, for they indicate that the overproduction of heat from muscular activity has ceased. The body metabolism which at first is increased through the increased muscular activities eventually becomes reduced, just as the metabolism of a cold-blooded animal lessens when its temperature has fallen on account of exposure to cold surroundings.

### The Effect of Spinal Cord Section

It has been known since the time of Benjamin Brodie that marked variations in the temperature of the body are apt to follow injuries that cause a division of the cervical spinal cord. The temperature may be either raised or lowered. Gardiner and Pembrey have collected from the records of Guy's Hospital twenty-four uncomplicated cases of spinal cord injury in man where the temperature was disturbed. Of these, nineteen showed hyperthermia and five showed hypothermia. Extraordinary temperatures may occur in such patients. In Benjamin Brodie's patient, for example, the temperature rose to  $43.9^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $111^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) before death. On the other hand, it may fall to  $26.7^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $80.6^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) or even lower. While in man a rise of temperature is more common than a fall, in animals section of the cervical cord is ordinarily followed by hypothermia. Only in the case of large animals or where care has been taken to maintain unusually warm surroundings does the temperature rise as it does in the majority of clinical cases.

The causes of the temperature changes which follow high section of the spinal cord are now fairly well understood. Rises of temperature are due in part to the irritation of the nervous tissues at the site of the lesion and are more apt to follow transverse lacerations than clean cut sections. Most important is the fact that such injuries sever the nervous paths leading to the main tissues that regulate the body temperature, particularly the muscles and the skin. The muscles in the paralyzed area become flaccid, the skin circulation is at first increased and later diminished, and the sweat glands soon cease to be active. All have lost their connections with the nervous centers which govern the body temperature. The temperature of a rabbit with the spinal cord severed in the lower cervical region is influenced by external temperatures in much the same way as is the body temperature of a cold-blooded animal. At a certain external temperature its body temperature is normal but the latter rises and falls with slight external changes. If the cord is cut in the upper

thoracic region the regulation against cold, though less perfect than normal, is far better than when the cervical cord is divided. (See Fig. 107.) According to Freund, this marked difference between the effect of a lower cervical and an upper thoracic operation is due to the severance of sympathetic paths leading to the abdominal viscera.

When a warm-blooded animal is exposed to cold there is an increased metabolism due to muscular activity. Pembrey has shown that after division of the dorsal cord of mice the metabolism fails to show this characteristic change when they are exposed to cold and may even

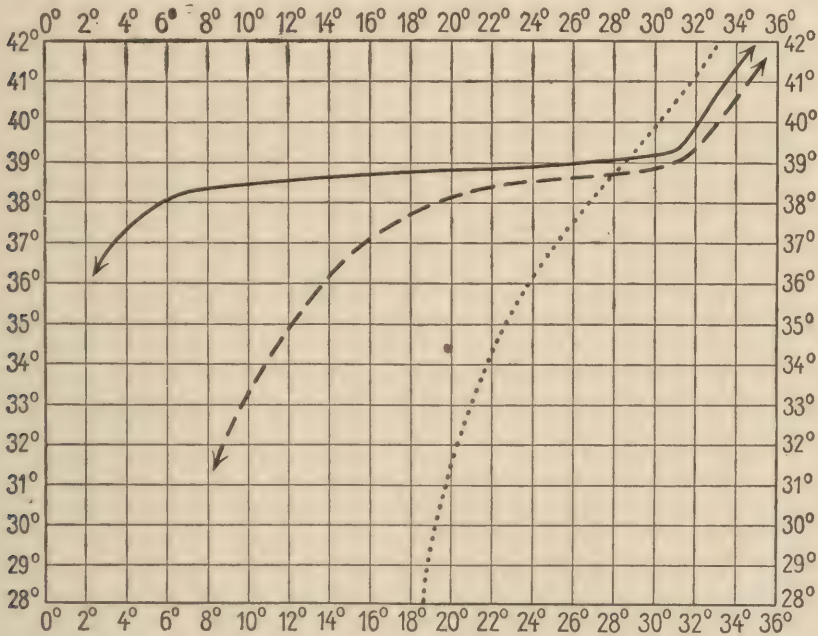


Fig. 107.—The Effect of External Temperatures Upon the Body Temperatures of Rabbits. Continuous Line Normal Animals, Broken Line After Section of the Dorsal Cord, and Dotted Line After Section of the Cervical Cord. Note that the First Withstand Low External Temperatures While the Last Behave Like Poikilothermic Animals. (After Freund and Strasmann, *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmak.*, published by F. C. W. Vogel, Leipzig.)

show the opposite change, with temperature and metabolism varying in the same direction, just as happens in cold-blooded animals. In the paralyzed portion of the body where there is no central nervous control over heat production and heat loss, temperature regulation is completely absent; in the unparalyzed portion it takes place normally with shivering when the body temperature falls and sweating when it rises. The resulting body temperature depends upon the combination of these two factors. In small animals with a relatively large body surface the temperature falls when the animal is exposed to ordinary room temperatures. In man with body surface relatively small in proportion to his weight the tempera-



ture is more apt to rise; and particularly so if, as so frequently happens, he is kept unusually warm after the accident. The changes in body temperature which follow section of the cervical spinal cord are, therefore, due mainly to a loss of the normal heat regulation over an extensive portion of the body. Hyperthermias of this type differ from true fever in that the latter, as we shall see, depend upon a perversion of the temperature regulation rather than upon its abolition.

## The Conception of Fever

**Definition.**—The term fever, though in common use, is by no means easy to define. Our conception of fever is based upon the reaction seen in infectious diseases. This reaction consists in part of an alteration in the body temperature together with changes in the mechanisms which control this temperature. The reaction consists also of various other responses by the body, such, for example, as the formation of antibodies. The term fever is applied particularly to the reactions which have to do with the elevation of body temperature and in the broader sense it may be applied to all temperature reactions which resemble those occurring in infectious processes. As we shall see, fever in this broader sense may be due to many causes other than infection. That due to the parenteral introduction of foreign proteins or to the unusual destruction of protein substances within the body is most closely related to infectious fever. The rise of temperature following the injection of certain chemicals and that following injury of the base of the brain are also closely related, inasmuch as the mechanism of temperature changes is similar to that which prevails in infections.

On the other hand, certain forms of hyperthermia are distinctly different from infectious fever. This is true, for example, of the rise of body temperature induced by exposure to moist heat where the normal heat regulation of the body is broken down by external conditions. Nor can the excessive temperatures which frequently follow lesions of the upper spinal cord of man be called fevers in the sense that we have used the term; for these are caused by a *lack* of thermic regulation which is similar to that present in cold-blooded animals; whereas, in true fever, heat regulation is *present* but *perverted*.

## Types of Fever

It is customary to divide fevers according to the height of the temperature into the low, high and excessively high fevers. It is customary to divide them furthermore according to the constancy with which the elevated temperature is maintained. When the temperature is maintained at a fairly constant level for several days with fluctuations not

much greater than those occurring in normal individuals the fever is spoken of as being *continuous*. When the fluctuations are considerably greater but still the temperature remains above the normal the fever is described as *remittent*. When finally the fever touches normal at some time in the day but goes considerably above normal at other times the fever is spoken of as being *intermittent*. The rise in temperature in fever may be gradual and steplike or it may be very sudden. In the latter case chilly sensations or a shaking *chill* are usually present. It may fall slowly by *lysis*, or it may fall suddenly by *crisis*.

## Heat Regulation in Fever

Considerable interest attaches itself to the mechanism whereby the temperature of the body is raised or lowered during febrile changes of temperature and to the mechanism whereby an elevated but fairly constant temperature is maintained.

### Sudden Changes of Temperature

The phenomena attending the *febrile chill* are striking. The skin becomes pale or cyanotic and often feels dry and cool to the touch. The peripheral circulation is slow and the insensible perspiration is diminished. The individual experiences sensations of great chilliness, and there may be severe shivering. Everything conspires toward the elevation of the internal temperature of the body. The increased muscular activity caused by the shivering sets free excessive quantities of heat. The reduced peripheral circulation tends to check heat losses. DuBois and his co-workers have shown, however, that the heat elimination during the chill may be increased slightly above the normal. Owing to the marked discrepancy between heat formation and heat elimination the body temperature rises rapidly and may reach  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $104^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) within an hour or two.

During the rapid fall of temperature which occurs during a *febrile crisis* the opposite manifestations occur. The skin is warm and moist

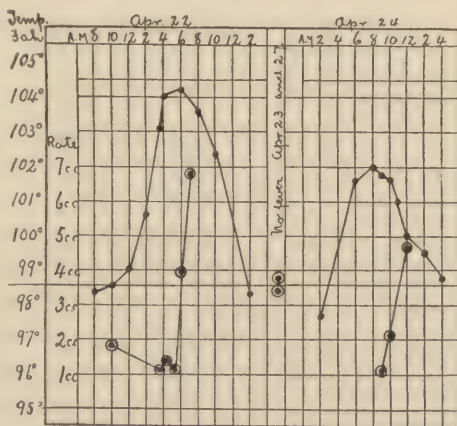


Fig. 108.—The Relation of Sudden Changes in Febrile Temperature (Upper Curves) to the Blood Flow in the Arm (Lower Curves). On April 23 the Temperature Was Normal and the Blood Flow About 3.5 c.c. per 100 c.c. of Arm Volume per Minute. During the Rising Temperature and Somewhat Thereafter the Blood Flow Is Slow; During the Febrile Fall the Blood Flow Is Rapid. (From Hewlett, Heart.)

and there is often a profuse sweat. The skin circulation is increased. During this time also the rate of body metabolism descends to a level only slightly above normal.

Less rapid fluctuations in temperature cause similar though less marked changes. The circulation in the arm is relatively slow during rises of temperature and is relatively fast during falls. (See Fig. 108.)

In the febrile chill with the constricted skin vessels and increased muscular activity we have a counterpart of the normal regulation against cold. Or to express it in another manner, the *phenomena of the chill* are such as one would expect if for some reason the body temperature of a normal individual were suddenly reduced and his centers were endeavoring to raise it. Similarly, the *phenomena of the crisis* are in every way comparable to those which follow moderate overheating of the body by violent exercise or by a hot tub bath. They are those which are used by the normal individual to regulate his body temperature downward.

### Continuous Fever

Studies on patients have shown that there is, as a rule, a *moderate increase in the total heat production* during the continuous periods of

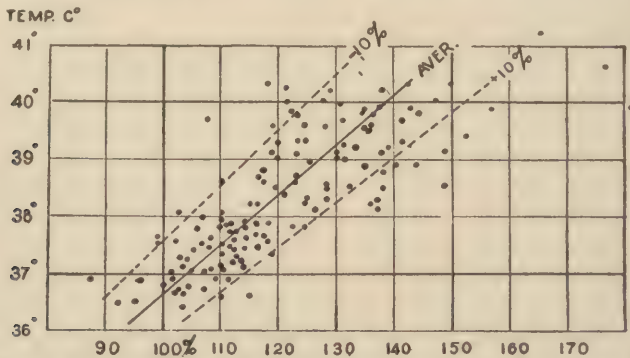


Fig. 108a.—Basal Metabolisms and Body Temperatures in Fever. (From DuBois, Jour. Am. Med. Assn.)

fever. This increase is usually from ten to forty per cent above the normal. DuBois states that, in fever the average increase of basal metabolism is 13 per cent for each centigrade degree above the normal temperature. (Fig. 108a.) Inanition lessens this increase, and feeding or a toxic destruction of proteins increases it. The increased rate of metabolism during continuous fever is caused mainly by the accelerating influence of an elevated bodily temperature.

Whatever may be the chief cause of the increased heat production commonly present in fever, it is certain that one cannot explain the febrile rise of temperature from this increased heat production alone.



The normal body can and frequently does produce and eliminate far larger amounts of heat without a significant rise in temperature. During moderate exertion, for example, two to three times the normal heat is produced within the body and yet this is eliminated with ease. The insignificant rise in body temperature produced by exercise promptly disappears after its cessation. During exercise the chief source of the extra heat is an increased combustion of carbohydrates. That the body may also eliminate heat derived from other sources is evident from the fact that an increased heat formation of sixty per cent produced by feeding protein to dogs is eliminated with ease.

When we compare these examples of the normal capacity for heat elimination with the amounts of heat produced in the body during fever it becomes evident that an overproduction of heat can play but a small part in producing the febrile elevation of temperature. Far more important is a *relative insufficiency in the heat elimination*. As a matter of fact, the blood flow through the feet and through the arms is usually somewhat slower than normal in continuous fevers and the insensible perspiration is but moderately increased. If the temperature of a normal individual be raised artificially to  $38^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $100.4^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) his heat regulatory mechanism responds with an enormously increased blood flow through the extremities and with profuse sweating. The patient with fever, on the other hand, with an equally high or higher body temperature, usually shows a diminished skin circulation and no unusual activity of perspiration.

This relative inactivity of the mechanism for heat dissipation does not mean that the febrile patient is unable to dissipate heat. If he be artificially heated above his febrile temperature he reacts exactly as the normal individual does. Stern has shown that when a febrile patient is immersed in a warm bath a further increase in his body temperature of  $0.1^{\circ}$  to  $0.8^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $0.18^{\circ}$  to  $1.4^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) will cause sweating just as it does in the normal individual. If exercise be taken the extra heat liberated within the body is for the most part dissipated in a normal manner. The insensible perspiration after taking food is increased to about the same extent in febrile and in normal individuals. R. Hirsch has shown that in the trypanosome fever of dogs the administration of quinin may reduce the heat production to the normal and yet owing to a corresponding reduction of heat elimination the febrile temperature may remain constant. Finally, the febrile patient maintains his body temperature against agencies which tend to reduce it just as the normal man does. When he is exposed to cold his skin vessels contract and he shivers.

It is evident, therefore, that in continuous fever there is no absolute insufficiency on the part of the various agencies which control heat production and heat dissipation. Heat is produced and is lost in response to agencies which might change the febrile temperature exactly as it is in the normal individual. *The febrile temperature is primarily due not to an*

*increase in heat production or to an absolute inefficiency in heat dissipation but to a lack of adjustment between the two.* According to Liebermeister, the heat regulation in fever behaves as if the regulatory centers were "set" to maintain the body temperature at a new level, which new level is maintained in much the same manner as is the normal temperature. More recent writers speak of an increased excitation or excitability of the heat centers which causes them to regulate the body temperature at the new and higher level.

### ***Imperfect Heat Regulation in Fever***

Although the heat regulation in fever is carried on by the same mechanism as in the normal individual there are many reasons for believing that it is less perfectly adjusted than in health. The healthy adult, for example, is far more resistant to the effects of the cold bath than is the patient with fever. It is more difficult to reduce his temperature and the reductions are more transient. The same is true with regard to the effect of antipyretic drugs. Marked differences exist among fever patients or in a given patient at different times, in regard to the constancy with which the febrile temperature is maintained when the body is exposed to disturbing influences. This is particularly well seen on the charts of typhoid fever patients who have been treated with cold baths. During the earlier and more continuous portions of fever the reductions of temperature produced by the baths are relatively slight and transient. In the third week of the disease, however, when the temperature is beginning to show wider diurnal fluctuations, baths usually produce much more marked and prolonged remissions in the fever. Furthermore, the remissions are most marked at times when the febrile temperature itself shows a downward tendency.

Not only is the febrile regulation against antipyretic influences less perfect than the normal but it seems probable that extra heat produced within the body is less perfectly eliminated by fever patients than by normal individuals. It is well known, for example, that patients with tuberculosis and convalescents from typhoid fever not infrequently show transient rises of temperature after moderate exercise. In such cases, it is difficult, of course, to exclude reinfection or intoxication as a cause of the rise of temperature. Nevertheless, it seems probable that, in some cases at least, such a rise of temperature may simply be an exaggeration of the rise of temperature which occurs in normal individuals after exercise. The unusual rises in these patients may be due to an unstable condition of the heat regulatory centers and an imperfect elimination of the heat set free by exercise. The same may be true of certain rises of temperature which occasionally occur in convalescent typhoid patients after a hearty meal.

## Metabolism in Fever

### *Nitrogenous Metabolism*

It has long been known that during fever there is usually a *negative nitrogen balance*. More nitrogen is eliminated in the excreta than is taken in the food. Efforts to cover these nitrogen losses by feeding increased amounts of protein have, as a rule, led to simultaneous increases in the output of nitrogen in the urine and the nitrogen balance has remained negative. The amount of protein which is lost from the body may be very considerable. In some cases it is equivalent to a daily loss of from 200 to 500 grams of muscle tissue a day. In Staehelin experiments with animals infected with surra he estimates that over one-fifth of the protein of the body was lost during the course of the disease. The rate of nitrogen loss during fever does not follow very accurately the height of the temperature. In some cases it is pronounced although the fever is not high and it may be relatively slight with a high fever. Of particular interest is the fact that there may be a marked increase in the excretion of nitrogenous material in the urine immediately following the close of the fever, the so-called epicritical excretion. During convalescence there is usually a nitrogen retention and a replacement in the body of the protein lost during the febrile period.

The increased excretion of total nitrogen during fever is usually accompanied by an increase in the excretion of uric acid and purin bases, as well as by an increase in the excretion of creatinin. The increased excretion of purin bodies indicates an increased catabolism of the nucleoproteins of the body. The increase in creatinin indicates destruction of muscular tissue. The increase in these bodies, therefore, is a further evidence of a loss of living substance from the body during the course of the fever.

Various efforts have been made to demonstrate that in fever there is not only a quantitative increase in protein destruction but that the protein catabolism is qualitatively abnormal. Krehl and Matthes, for example, found albumoses in the urines of fever patients, and at one time they believed that these played a part in causing the rise of temperature. Subsequent work has shown, however, that these bodies may occur in the urines of non-febrile patients and that they are absent from many febrile urines. Other evidence in favor of the view that the protein metabolism is qualitatively altered has been sought from the abnormally low respiratory quotient found in fever by certain investigators and from a change in the relation between the carbon and the nitrogen in the urine. Both of these findings are, however, doubtful and at the present time there seems to be no proof of a definite qualitative change in the character of the protein metabolism during fever. That such a change may be present



is suggested by the extensive degenerations in the tissues seen microscopically, by the epicritical elimination of urea which may well be derived from degenerated tissue, and by the diazo-reaction which is believed by von Fürth to depend upon the presence of abnormal products of protein catabolism in the urine.

The *cause* of the increased protein decomposition in fever has been of great interest because it has seemed possible that this might be related in some way to the production of the febrile reaction. All observers recognize that the increased protein metabolism in fever is due to a number of causes. Among these causes may be mentioned the increased temperature of the body. Experiments on animals as well as on men have shown that in certain cases when the temperature of the body is artificially raised the protein metabolism is increased. According to Linser and Schmid, this increase in man begins when the body temperature has reached 39° or 40° C. (102.2° or 104° F.) and beyond this point it may become very marked. Graham and Poulton, on the other hand, were unable to obtain definite increases. A second factor in the causation of the increased protein metabolism during fever is partial starvation. Partly on account of the poor appetite of febrile patients and partly on account of a general desire not to overtax their digestive capacity, it has been customary to furnish diets which are markedly deficient in nutriment. The number of calories present in most fever diets (1,200 calories or less) will not cover the needs of a normal individual; and since the febrile patient has a basal metabolism which is usually 10 to 40 per cent more than the normal, he develops a condition of **marked** undernutrition. Under such circumstances his body tissues must be consumed in order to supply his caloric needs. According to Grafe, the increased protein metabolism under such circumstances does not differ essentially from what one obtains in normal individuals who are subjected to a similar grade of undernutrition. A further cause for increased elimination of nitrogen in the urine during fever is a resorption of inflammatory exudates, such as takes place during the course of pneumonia, acute rheumatic fever, pleurisy and other conditions.

The question remains, whether, after allowing for the increase in protein metabolism which may be caused by the high temperature, by the partial starvation and by the resorption of exudates, there still exists an abnormal protein decomposition which is due to some toxic cause and is more or less characteristic of fever. This doctrine of a *toxic protein destruction* has played an important rôle in discussions as to the nature of fever. We have seen that the attempt to prove an abnormal protein catabolism by demonstrating unusual end-products such as albumoses has not met with great success. The toxic theory has also been supported by the practical difficulties encountered when one attempts to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium in fever patients. Shaffer and Coleman have,

however, demonstrated conclusively that it is possible to maintain patients with typhoid fever in nitrogenous equilibrium by giving them a diet of very high caloric value which also contains large amounts of carbohydrates. They demonstrated, furthermore, that this diet not only maintains nitrogenous equilibrium but that it reduces the abnormal excretion of creatinin which, as we have seen, is probably derived from a breaking down of the muscular tissue. It seems probable, therefore, that this diet protects the body proteins from disintegration, for these results could hardly be explained on the basis of a retention of food proteins or of the products of protein decomposition within the body. These observations have since been confirmed by Roland and by others with diets which were believed to cover merely the caloric requirements of the febrile patients. It is evident, therefore, that the nitrogen losses of fever can be overcome, in part or in whole, by a liberal use of properly selected carbohydrate food. The doctrine of a toxic or essential protein destruction in fever is, therefore, no longer supported by the argument of an essentially negative nitrogen balance. Nevertheless, as R. A. Kocher has shown, a complete analogy to the normal has not been proven, for the abundant use of carbohydrate food will not give as low a protein minimum in fever as in health (page 243). There appears, therefore, to be a specific protein destruction in fever.

### *Non-nitrogenous Metabolism*

We have already stated that the total metabolism in fever is, as a rule, moderately increased. According to Grafe, this increase usually averages between twenty and thirty per cent above the normal basal metabolism for the same individual. If, however, one could compare the metabolism in fever with that of the same individual during an equal degree of under-nutrition this percentage increase would be somewhat greater. The increased metabolism during fever rarely exceeds forty or fifty per cent over the normal. In some cases, and especially in long-continued low fevers with advanced inanition, the rate of metabolism may be lower than the normal. Here again, however, it is difficult to compare the figures obtained with those of the same individual in a similar stage of inanition. This increase in the total metabolism is due, in part at least, to the accelerating effect of the increased body temperature upon its chemical processes. By overheating the body with moist heat Sutton obtained an increase in the rate of total metabolism equal to or greater than the increases which have usually been observed in fevers of corresponding height.

We have seen that in fever there is an increase in the protein decomposition which can usually be covered by a proper diet. On the usual fever diet about eighty per cent of the heat production is derived from non-nitrogenous material. Grafe calculates that the greatest proportion

of this is supplied by the combustion of fats. It is probable that the carbohydrate reserves of the body are rapidly depleted and that the considerable fat metabolism is due to the partial starvation. With an adequate supply of carbohydrates the combustion of fats as well as of proteins can be restricted.

### ***Acidosis***

In fever evidence of acidosis is frequently present. Acetone bodies may be found in the urine, the urinary ammonia is often increased and the tension of carbon dioxid in the alveolar air is often diminished. In so far as this acidosis depends upon the acetone bodies it is probable that its cause, like that of most other forms, is the inanition, with increased combustion of fats and diminished combustion of carbohydrates. Graham and Poulton have shown that if the body be overheated during partial starvation a striking increase in the elimination of the acetone bodies results, probably on account of an increased combustion of fats. This does not occur, however, if the body be well supplied with carbohydrates. It seems probable, therefore, that a diet rich in carbohydrates and of sufficient caloric value would diminish and perhaps eliminate the acidosis due to acetone bodies which occurs during fever. Whether there are in addition other sources of the acidosis of fever has not been settled.

### ***Salt and Water Retention***

It is an old observation that the *excretion of chlorids* in the urine is frequently reduced to a remarkable extent during the febrile state. This is particularly true of lobar pneumonia and it is more marked in pneumococcus than in influenzal pneumonia. It is associated with a reduced elimination of sodium and calcium. The reduction of chlorids may occur so promptly that it cannot be attributed to partial starvation or to a diet poor in chlorids, although such diets may contribute to a continuance of the small chlorid excretion during the fever. Furthermore, when sodium chlorid is administered to febrile patients it is retained in the body to a greater degree than when it is administered to normal individuals. The exact cause of this retention and the portion of the body in which the sodium chlorid is deposited are not known. This retention of salt during infectious diseases seems to be associated with a simultaneous retention of water. It is an old view that such a *retention of water* occurs during acute infections and that with the crisis there is an unusual loss of weight due to an elimination of this extra water. Studies of the water balance in fever are carried out with difficulty and much doubt has been expressed concerning the correctness of this view. It is supported, however, by



recent studies of the blood concentration in infectious fevers. These studies have shown that during many infections there is an hydremia or dilution of the blood serum and that with the crisis the hydremia may disappear with a simultaneous elimination of chlorids and a sudden loss of weight due to elimination of water (Fig. 109).

The cause of this hydremia with retention of salt and of water is not well understood. Examinations of the blood during the periods of reten-

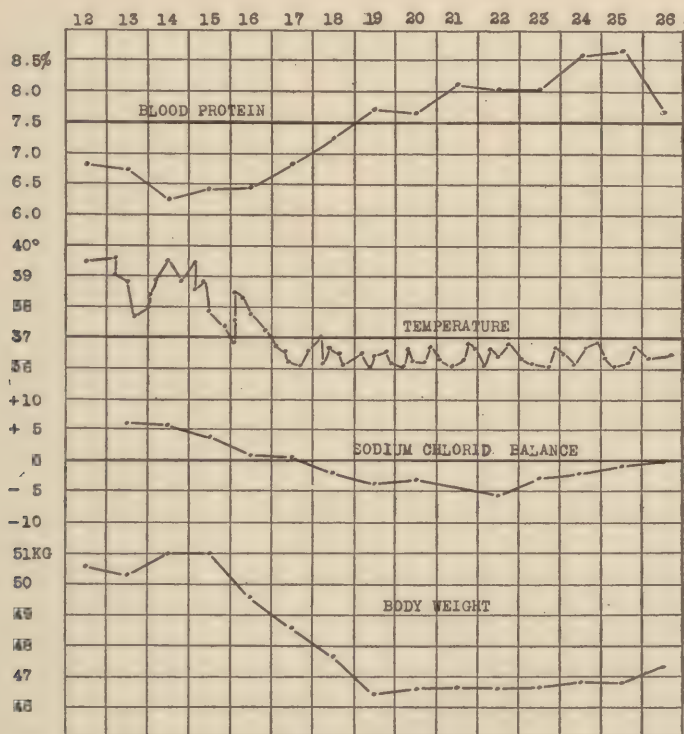


Fig. 109.—Lobar Pneumonia. Note that During the Fever the Percentage of Blood Protein Is Low (Hydremia) and that Salt Is Retained in the Body. With the Fall of Temperature There Is an Increased Excretion of Sodium Chlorid, a Concentration of the Blood and a Rapid Fall in Weight Due to the Loss of Water. (After Sandelowsky, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, published by F. C. W. Vogel, Leipzig.)

tion by Peabody, by Snapper, and by McLean, have shown, however, that the concentration of sodium chlorid in the blood is abnormally low. It differs, therefore, from the salt retention in nephritis, where, as we have seen, the concentration of chlorids in the blood is relatively high. This would seem to indicate that in fever the fault lies not in a diminished excretory ability of the kidney but in some physical or chemical change in the body which leads to a deposition of salt in the tissues.

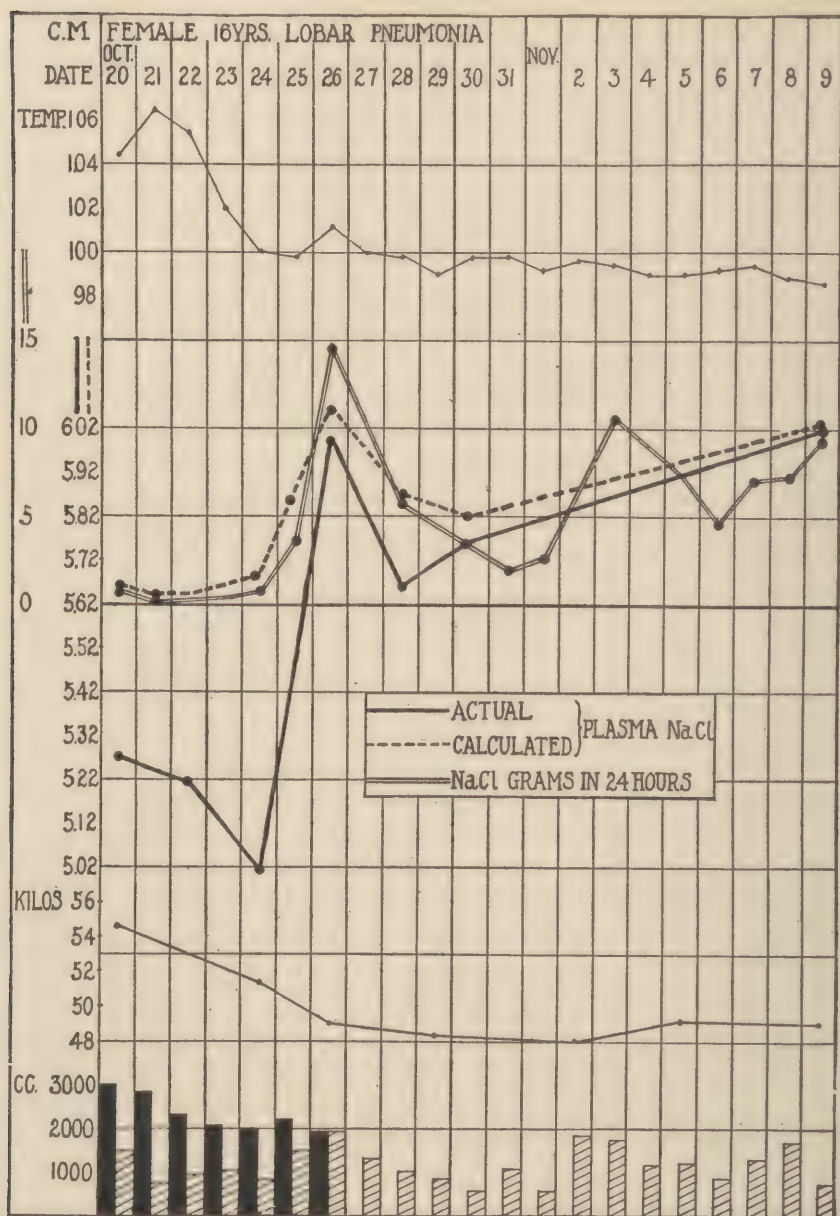


Fig. 110.—Uncomplicated Lobar Pneumonia with Recovery Showing the Water and Salt Metabolism. Note that the Crisis Is Accompanied by a Rapid Fall of Weight (Loss of Water) and by a Rapid Excretion of Chlorids. During the Fever the Chlorids in the Urine Were Markedly Depressed. The Examination of the Blood Showed that the Chlorids in the Blood Were Below What Would Correspond to the Urinary Excretion in a Normal Individual (page 446). This Indicates that the Diminished Excretion Was Not Due to a Renal Insufficiency But to a Withdrawal of Chlorids from the Blood by the Tissues. (From McLean, Jour. Exp. Med.)

## Causes of Fever

### *Lesions of the Central Nervous System*

We have seen that in fever the high temperature of the body can best be explained by assuming that the normal relation between heat formation and heat elimination is disturbed. The febrile patient regulates his body temperature at the new level by the same methods that are used normally. This change in heat regulation seems to depend upon changes in the irritability of the heat regulatory center or centers in the brain. This view has received strong support from the rise of body temperature which follows certain experimental nervous lesions. In 1884, Aronsohn and Sachs showed that it was possible to produce an elevation of body temperature in rabbits by puncturing the base of the brain. This so-called *heat puncture* has been successfully performed by numerous observers and on a variety of animals. The importance of the base of the brain for heat regulation has been further demonstrated through the interesting experiments of Barbour, who showed that the direct application of heat to this region throws into operation the mechanism for increasing heat losses with a resultant fall in the body temperature. On the other hand, the direct application of cold to this region throws into operation the mechanism for raising the body temperature. The centers are, therefore, stimulated by cold and depressed by heat. Successful punctures usually pierce the region of the basal ganglia but discussion still continues as to the exact portion of the brain which causes the rise of temperature after a successful puncture. The caudate nuclei, the optic thalami, and the lateral ventricles have each been regarded as the essential region that must be injured in order to produce fever. Isenschmid and Krehl have shown that the cerebrum, the caudate nuclei and the anterior portion of the optic thalami may be removed from rabbits with only a temporary change in the heat regulatory mechanism. When, however, the posterior and ventral portions of the optic thalami were removed their animals lost the ability to regulate the body temperatures and the latter then became subject to external conditions just as happens in the case of an animal whose cervical cord has been cut.

After a successful heat puncture the rabbit's temperature may show a brief fall. It then rises abruptly, usually attaining a height of from 40° to 42° C. (104° to 107.6° F.), and remains elevated for from two to four days. This rise of temperature is associated with a constriction of the peripheral blood vessels and an increased production of heat within the body. Broadly speaking, therefore, it resembles the hyperthermia of infections. Various attempts have been made to establish fundamental distinctions between the hyperthermia of heat puncture and that of infectious dis-



eases. It has been claimed, for example, that in heat puncture the excessive heat produced is derived mainly from a combustion of the carbohydrates derived from hepatic glycogen, whereas in fever we have a more marked combustion of proteins. According to Senator and Richter, however, it is possible to get an increased temperature from puncture even though the glycogen store in the body is depleted. Furthermore, the increased protein metabolism is by no means so constant a characteristic of infectious fever as was formerly believed. It has also been claimed that the rabbit does not regulate its temperature after thermic puncture as perfectly as in infectious fever; yet this difference may be quantitative rather than qualitative.

In a broad way, therefore, the rise of temperature produced by puncture of the base of the brain resembles that which occurs during infectious processes. Essential and undoubted differences have not been established and the most probable explanation of the rise of temperature during infectious diseases is that the heat regulatory centers in the midbrain are stimulated by some products of infection. That the cause of the febrile rise of temperature acts upon the region of the optic thalami has been shown by Freund and others who found that, after section of the cervical cord or after removal of the forebrain and thalami, septic and other materials which ordinarily cause fever in rabbits fail to produce a rise of body temperature.

Clinically, rises of temperature are not uncommon after *cerebral hemorrhages* and particularly after those where blood enters the lateral ventricles. Such hyperthermias are due, in part at least, to mechanical or chemical irritation of the basal portions of the brain where the heat regulatory centers are located. Inasmuch as the temperature of the body is under nervous control, the question naturally arises whether this control can be influenced by the higher nerve centers and particularly whether there exists such a thing as *hysterical fever*. On this point opinions differ. Some deny the existence of hysterical fever while others believe that hysteria may cause the most extraordinary elevations of temperature (41.1° C. (106° F.) and over). One must accept the fact that in hysteria as in other conditions unusual muscular exertion (convulsions) causes slight elevation of temperature and it is possible that in hysteria the temperature regulation may be less perfect, so that such rises may be greater than in health. On the other hand, the excessively high temperatures ascribed to hysteria may well be regarded with suspicion. Many have been proved to be fraudulent, the mercury in the thermometer having been raised by such methods as contact with a hot water bag, etc. Others may have been due to undiagnosed febrile diseases such as tuberculosis, malaria, etc. *Reflex fevers* have also been described, especially after biliary colic, catheterizations, etc., but at least some of these and probably all are due to coincident infection.

### *Simple Chemical Substances*

Fever has been produced in animals, as well as in man, by various chemical substances of a simple character. In children, particularly, but occasionally in adults, the administration of sodium chlorid by mouth has been a cause of fever. When salt solution is injected under the skin or directly into the veins more or less fever not infrequently follows. In some cases this so-called *salt fever* seems to be due to an "unbalanced" salt solution and is prevented by adding calcium and potassium salts in approximately the proportions present in Ringer's solution. It has been shown, however, that the violent febrile reactions which occasionally follow the intravenous injections of considerable quantities of salt solution, and especially solutions of salvarsan, may be almost eliminated if freshly distilled water be used for the injections. The cause of this fever, the so-called *water fever*, seems to lie in the presence of some minute trace of organic matter in the water used for injection rather than in the sodium chlorid or the water itself.

Fever has also been produced by the administration of a variety of *chemical substances*. Among these are caffein and xanthin. Mandel has suggested that in infection the increased purin metabolism may be directly responsible for the increased temperature. Fevers have also been produced in animals by aloin and particularly by tetrahydronaphthylamin. Benedict and Carpenter have reported cases of fever in man which were presumably due to intoxication with the vapors of mercury. The writer has seen fever in man after strychnin poisoning.

### *Injection of Foreign Protein*

Vaughan and his coworkers, as well as many others, have shown that it is possible to produce fever in animals by the repeated injection of foreign proteins. By choosing the proper doses and time intervals one may produce at will continuous, remittent, or intermittent fevers; or by the use of large doses febrile collapse. The proteins used for this purpose are varied. They may be those of egg-white or they may be derived from the bodies of bacteria, from laked corpuscles of a foreign blood, or from other sources. Many cases of so-called *aseptic fever* are due to the destruction of tissues within the body. It seems probable that this tissue destruction liberates proteins which cause a rise of body temperature. In this way the rise seen after severe contusions, fractures, internal hemorrhages, etc., may be explained without assuming that there has been a coincident infection. There seems to be no reason for assuming that the fibrin ferment plays a predominant part in the production of such fevers. Of the fever producing elements in freshly shed blood, the disintegrating platelets seem the most important.

The mechanism by which the parenteral introduction of foreign pro-

teins causes fever is probably the same as the mechanism leading to the various phenomena of anaphylaxis (see Phenomena of Infection). The foreign proteins are disintegrated or cause a disintegration of other proteins in the body and certain products of this change are the immediate cause of the fever. These products act upon the central nervous mechanism which regulates the temperature of the body, for, as we have seen, no fever results when they are injected into an animal after division of the cervical spinal cord or after excision of the midbrain.

### *Infections*

The fever present in infections is probably closely related to that produced by the parenteral injection of foreign proteins. The microorganisms growing within the body liberate a continual supply of foreign protein substances and these probably cause the fever and many phenomena of infection.

No constant relation exists between the severity of the infection and the height of the fever. It is well known that in mild infections the temperature is usually low, whereas in severe infections the temperature is more apt to be high. Yet in the most severe infections of all the temperature may not be very high; indeed, in place of fever we may have a fall in temperature, the so-called febrile collapse. If we regard fever as the expression of a reaction on the part of the body to the infecting organism these varying relations between infection and the height of fever become more clear. Mild infections call forth mild responses and more severe infections call forth more marked responses. In the most severe infections of all, however, or in patients already weak or debilitated, the body fails to make an adequate response to the infectious agent and succumbs without a normal reaction.

The exact cause of the marked fluctuations of the temperature which frequently occur during fever is not well understood. In some this seems to be an exaggeration of the normal diurnal variation with a high temperature in the late afternoon and a low temperature in the early morning. This type of irregular fever, seen particularly in tuberculosis and in the declining stages of typhoid fever, may possibly depend upon the same factors that produce the normal diurnal changes. These, as we have seen, are determined in part by the ingestion of food, by muscular exercise, and by the other activities of the waking day; in part, they depend upon a periodicity which is not entirely interrupted by a change from day to night work. The more irregular variations of febrile temperature and those which do not show an evening rise are not easily explained. Such irregular temperatures occur particularly in malaria, certain cases of sepsis, etc. In malaria the chill coincides with the sporulation of the organisms and it is probably due to the sudden liberation of proteins resulting from the disintegrated corpuscles or from the parasites themselves. Heubner has



shown that the injection of an extremely fine paraffin suspension will cause fever and it is just possible that the malarial paroxysm is due to the mechanical effect of the large number of small bodies in the blood stream rather than to chemical substances.

## The Significance of Fever

The relation of the febrile elevation of temperature to its cause, the infection, has always been a problem of great interest on account of the practical question involved: to what extent should one attempt to reduce the temperature during an infectious disease? Up to the time of Liebermeister the opinion generally prevailed that the febrile rise of temperature was on the whole a favorable manifestation and assisted the patient in overcoming the disease. Against this point of view, Liebermeister exerted his great influence and advocated the view that hyperthermia was the essential manifestation of infection, that it was dangerous in itself, and that it should be vigorously combated. Since that time the question of the favorable or unfavorable influence of the increased temperature upon patients suffering from infectious diseases has been under more or less continual discussion.

It is difficult to obtain a satisfactory answer to this question from observations on patients on account of the many factors which must be considered. It is, for example, a common experience that patients with high temperatures are more sick than those with low temperatures. This is probably so, not because the high temperature is itself an unfavorable form of reaction, but because such patients are suffering from more intense infections. Furthermore, as we have seen, in the most unfavorable infections of all the temperature may be low. It becomes difficult, therefore, to estimate the favorable or unfavorable effect of temperature upon infection through a comparison of different clinical cases. Nor does our experience with antipyretic measures give a clear answer to the question, for these measures not only reduce the temperature but they have various effects upon other portions of the body and especially upon the brain and the circulation. The reduced mortality which has followed the bath treatment of typhoid fever, for example, is to be attributed not alone to the reductions of body temperature produced by the baths but to the favorable effect which these produce upon the nervous system and the circulation. The importance of these other effects is evident from the fact that a reduction of temperature produced by the liberal use of antipyretic drugs is not regarded as equivalent in value to a similar reduction produced by hydrotherapeutic measures.

We are indebted, particularly, to experimental studies for our data concerning the relative effects of high temperature and of infection upon the body. It has been shown that moderate hyperthermias without infec-

tion, such as may be produced by exposure to moist heat, are borne by animals without serious consequences. The body temperatures of rabbits have been kept at  $41^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $105.8^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) and over for weeks at a time without serious damage. The degeneration of the internal organs so often observed in those suffering from infectious processes does not follow such a prolonged overheating of the body. The chief effects produced are an increased body metabolism, a moderate anemia and some loss of weight. Serious effects only result when the body temperature has been raised to heights not usually encountered in fever. It is evident, therefore, that animals endure an increase in the body temperature equal to that which occurs in fever without serious consequences. It is the infection and not the hyperthermia which causes the serious damage to the body in infectious processes.

The question remains, however: does the hyperthermia exert a favorable or an unfavorable effect upon the course of an infection? It is conceivable, for example, that the high temperature might act directly upon the invading organism or that it might assist the infected host in developing its protective mechanisms. The temperatures encountered in fever are sufficiently high to inhibit the growth of certain bacteria. In test tube experiments it has been shown that the gonococcus, the pneumococcus and some others do not grow as well at temperatures of  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $104^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) and over as at normal body temperatures. It is possible, however, that these experiments cannot be applied to infecting organisms on account of the different conditions of growth in the animal body and in the test tube.

Experiments have also been made to determine the effect that is produced upon the course of an induced infection by artificially raising the temperature of the body. In such experiments the body temperature is raised by placing the animal in a steam cabinet, by puncture of the heat centers at the base of the brain, or by injection of some aseptic pyrogenic material. Experiments of this type have given variable results. Erysipelas has been made milder and shorter by overheating the body; and infections with staphylococcus, pneumococcus, diphtheria bacillus and others have in the hands of some investigators run milder courses when the body temperatures of the animals were artificially elevated. Other observers, however, have not been able to obtain definite results.

Finally, comparative experiments have been made in order to determine with what speed the various protective substances are formed and the amounts that are formed:

- (1) When infected animals have been artificially heated, and
- (2) When the infections have been allowed to run their natural course.

These experiments have shown in general that with moderate overheating of the body the formation of agglutinins, bacteriolysins and anti-toxins is increased. According to Rolly, the favorable effect of higher body temperatures exists up to temperatures of  $39.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ . to  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $103.2^{\circ}$

to 104° F.) while beyond this point the formation of antibodies may be interfered with by the high temperatures.

From the results of studies upon animals, therefore, we must conclude that a moderately high temperature, even though maintained for a long time, is not in itself a dangerous manifestation. On the whole, an increased temperature causes artificial infections in animals to run a more favorable course and it increases the speed with which protective antibodies are formed. Modern studies, therefore, have shown that the high temperatures accompanying infections are up to a certain point a favorable element in the combat against the disease. In the treatment of fevers one should not attempt to force down the high temperatures too vigorously except in cases where they reach unusual heights (41° C. (105.8° F.) or over). In such cases, as in the hyperpyrexia of acute rheumatic fever, the reduction of body temperature may become imperative. Ordinary febrile temperatures do not constitute an absolute indication for active interference. The value of antipyretic measures in such cases is to be judged not solely from their effect in reducing the temperature but also from their effect upon the general condition of the patient and particularly upon his nervous symptoms and the circulation.

## References

### General

- Kraus (F.).** *Fieber und Infektion.* In: v. Noorden's *Handbuch der Pathologie des Stoffwechsels.* Berlin, **1906**, i, 578.
- Krehl (L.).** *Das Fieber.* Pathologische Physiologie. 7th ed. Leipzig, **1912**, 524.
- Lusk (G.).** *The elements of the science of nutrition.* Philadelphia & London, **1909**.
- MacCallum (W. G.).** *Fever.* Arch. Int. Med., **1908**, ii, 569.
- Meyer (H. H.), Krehl (L.) [et al.].** *Wesen und Behandlung des Fiebers.* Verhandl. d. Kong. f. inn. Med., **1913**, xxx, 15-136.
- Pembrey (M. S.).** *The physiology and pathology of temperature.* In: *General Pathology.* Edited by M. S. Pembrey & J. Ritchie. London, **1913**, 498.
- Richter (P. F.).** *Fieber.* In: Oppenheimer's *Handbuch der Biochemie des Menschen und der Tiere.* Jena, **1910**, iv<sup>2</sup>, 104.
- Barbour (H. G.).** *The heat-regulating mechanism of the body.* Physiol. Rev., **1921**, i, 295.
- Tigerstedt (R.).** *Die Wärmeökonomie des Körpers.* In: W. Nagel's *Handbuch der Physiologie des Menschen.* Braunschweig, i, 557.

### Physiology of Heat Regulation

- Benedict (F. G.).** *Studies in body temperature.* I. Influence of the inversion of the daily routine; the temperature of night-workers. Am. Jour. Physiol., **1904**, xi, 145.
- Bloch (B.).** *Beziehungen zwischen Hautkrankheiten und Stoffwechsel.* Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh., **1908**, ii, 521.
- Filehne (W.).** *Zur Lehre von der Wärmeregulation.* Arch. f. Anat. u. Physiol., **1910**, 551.
- Hewlett (A. W.).** *The effect of room temperature upon the blood-flow in the arm, with a few observations on the effect of fever.* Heart, **1910-11**, ii, 230.



- Hewlett (A. W.), Van Zwaluwenburg (J. G.) & Marshall (M.).** The effect of some hydrotherapeutic procedures on the blood flow in the arm. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1911**, viii, 591.
- Kahn (R. H.).** Über die Erwärmung des Carotidenblutes. *Arch. f. (Anat. u.) Physiol.*, **1904**, Suppl. 81.
- Rubner (M.).** Die Gesetze des Energieverbrauchs bei der Ernährung. Leipzig & Wien, **1902**.
- Simpson (S.) & Galbraith (J. J.).** An investigation into the diurnal variation of the body temperature of nocturnal and other birds, and a few mammals. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1905-6**, xxviii, 225.
- Voit (C.).** Über die Wirkung der Temperatur der umgebenden Luft auf die Zersetzungen im Organismus der Warmblüter. *Ztschr. f. Biol.*, **1878**, xiv, 57.

### Heatstroke, Freezing

- Haldane (J. S.).** The influence of high air temperatures. *Jour. Hyg.*, **1905**, v, 494.
- Lambert (A.).** Sunstroke as it occurred in New York City during 1896. *Med. News*, **1897**, lxxi, 97.
- Linser (P.) & Schmid (J.).** Über den Stoffwechsel bei Hyperthermie. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1903-4**, lxxix, 514.
- Marchand (F.).** Die thermischen Krankheitsursachen. In the *Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathol.* Krehl & Marchand, **1908**, i, 49.
- Reincke (J. J.).** Beobachtungen über die Körpertemperatur Betrunkener. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1875**, xvi, 12.

### Temperature after Spinal Cord Injuries

- Freund (H.) & Grafe (E.).** Untersuchungen über den nervösen Mechanismus der Wärmeregulation. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1912**, lxx, 135.
- Freund (H.) & Strassmann (R.).** Zur Kenntnis des nervösen Mechanismus der Wärmeregulation. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1912**, lxxix, 12.
- Gardiner (H.) & Pembrey (M. S.).** Observations on the temperature of man after traumatic section of the spinal cord. *Guy's Hosp. Rep.*, **1912**, lxxvi, 87.
- Kennaway (E. L.) & Pembrey (M. S.).** Observations upon the effects of section of the spinal cord upon temperature and metabolism. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1912-13**, xlv, 82.

### Heat Regulation in Fever

- Hirsch (R.).** Fieber und Chininwirkung im Fieber. *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1913**, xiii, 84.
- Schwenkenbecher & Tuteur.** Wie reagiert der fiebernde Mensch auf eine willkürliche Steigerung seiner Wärmebildung? *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1907**, lvii, 285.
- Stern (R.).** Über das Verhalten der Wärmeregulation in Fieber und unter der Einwirkung von Antipyreticis. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1892**, xx, 63.
- Stewart (G. N.).** The blood flow in the feet with special reference to fever. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xviii, 372.

### Metabolism in Fever

- Barr (D. P.) & Du Bois (E. F.).** The metabolism in malarial fever. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1918**, xxi, 627.
- Benedict (H.) & Suranyi (N.).** Die Stoffwechselvorgänge während der Typhusreconvalescenz. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1903**, xlix, 482.
- Du Bois (E. F.).** The basal metabolism in fever. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, lxxvii, 352.

- Carpenter (T. M.) & Benedict (F. G.).** Preliminary observations on metabolism during fever. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1909**, xxiv, 203.
- Cathcart (E. P.), Kennaway (E. L.) & Leathes (J. B.).** On the origin of endogenous uric acid. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1907-8**, i, 416.
- Fridericia (L. S.) & Olsen (O.).** Untersuchungen über die Kohlensäurespannung in der Alveolarluft der Lungen bei akut-febrilen Krankheiten. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cvii, 236.
- Garratt (G. C.).** Observations on metabolism in the febrile state in man. *Med.-chir. Tr.*, **1904**, lxxvii, 163.
- Grafe (E.).** Untersuchungen über den Stoff- und Kraftwechsel im Fieber. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1910-11**, ci, 209.
- Graham (G.) & Poulton (E. P.).** The influence of high temperature on protein metabolism with reference to fever. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1912-13**, vi, 82.
- Hirsch (R.).** Trypanosomen-Wärmestich-Anaphylatoxinie beim Kaninchen. *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1913**, xiii, 132.
- v. Hösslin (H.).** Über den Kochsalzstoffwechsel bei Pneumonie. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciii, 404.
- Leathes (J. B.).** On the excretion of nitrogen, creatinin and uric acid in fever. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1906-7**, xxxv, 205.
- Kocher (R. A.).** Ueber die Grösse des Eiweisszerfalls bei Fieber und bei Arbeitsleistung. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, cxv, 82.
- Magnus & Alsleben (E.).** Über die Ausscheidung des Kohlenstoffs im Harn. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1909**, lxviii, 358.
- Medigreceanu (F.).** On the mechanism of chlorin retention in pneumonia. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1911**, xiv, 289.
- Myers (V. C.) & Volovic (G. O.).** Metabolism in an experimental fever with special reference to the creatinin elimination. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1911-12**, xxix, 18.
- Peabody (F. W.).** The carbon dioxid content of the blood in pneumonia. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1912**, xvi, 701.  
Studies of the inorganic metabolism in pneumonia with especial reference to calcium and magnesium. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1913**, xvii, 71.
- Reiss (E.).** Die refraktometrische Blutuntersuchung und ihre Ergebnisse für die Physiologie und Pathologie des Menschen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, x, 531.
- Rolland (A.).** Zur Frage des toxischen Eiweisszerfalls im Fieber des Menschen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cvii, 440.
- Rolly (F.).** Experimentelle Untersuchungen über den Stoffwechsel im Fieber und in der Rekonvaleszenz. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911**, cxiii, 93.
- Rolly (F.) & Hörnig (P.).** Stoffwechseluntersuchungen an Typhuskranken mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Verhaltens des respiratorischen Quotienten. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908-9**, xcvi, 74.
- Rolly (F.) & Meltzer (O.).** Stoffwechseluntersuchungen bei Fieber, Inanition und kachektischen Zuständen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1909**, xcvi, 262.
- Sandelowsky (J.).** Blutkonzentration bei Pneumonie. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1909**, xcvi, 445.
- Schwenkenbecher (A.).** Über den Kochsalzstoffwechsel bei Infektionskrankheiten. *Med. Klin.*, **1907**, iii<sup>2</sup>, 831, 858.
- Schwenkenbecher (A.) & Inagaki.** Über die Schweisssekretion im Fieber. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1905**, liii, 365.
- Shaffer (P. A.) & Coleman (W.).** Protein metabolism in typhoid fever. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1909**, iv, 538.
- Snapper (J.).** Über den Zusammenhang zwischen Funktion der Nieren und Chlorretention bei fieberhaften Krankheiten. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, cxi, 429.

**Sutton (H.).** *The influence of high temperatures on the human body, especially with regard to heatstroke.* *Jour. Path. und Bacteriol.*, **1908-9**, xiii, 63.

### Heat Regulatory Center

**Aronsohn (E.).** *Über den Ort der Wärmebildung in dem durch Gehirnstich erzeugten Fieber.* *Arch. f. path. Anat.*, **1902**, clxix, 501.

**Barbour (H. G.).** *Die Wirkung unmittelbarer Erwärmung und Abkühlung der Wärmezentra auf die Körpertemperatur.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1912**, lxx, 1.

**Barbour (H. G.) & Wing (E. S.).** *The direct application of drugs to the temperature centers.* *Jour. Pharmacol. and exper. Therap.*, **1913**, v, 105.

**Citron (J.) & Leschke (E.).** *Über den Einfluss der Ausschaltung des Zwischenhirns auf das infectiöse und nichtinfectiöse Fieber.* *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1913**, xiv, 379.

**Freund (H.).** *Über das Wärmestichfieber als Ausdruck des Wärmeregulationsvermögens.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1913**, lxxii, 304.  
*Über die Bedeutung der Vagi für die Wärmeregulation.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1913**, lxxii, 295.

**Isenschmid (R.) & Krehl (L.).** *Über den Einfluss des Gehirns auf die Wärmeregulation.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1912**, lxx, 109.

**Jacobj (C.) & Roemer (C.).** *Beitrag zur Erklärung der Wärmestichhyperthermie.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1912**, lxx, 149.

**Leschke (E.).** *Über den Einfluss des Zwischenhirns auf die Wärmeregulation.* *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1913**, xiv, 167.

**Sachs (E.).** *On the relation of the optic thalamus to respiration, circulation, temperature and the spleen.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1911**, xiv, 408.

**Sinelnikow (E.).** *Über die Wirkungsweise des Wärmezentrums im Gehirne.* *Arch. f. (Anat. u.) Physiol.*, **1910**, 279.

**Streerath (E.).** *Die Wirksamkeit der Wärmezentren im Gehirne.* *Arch. f. (Anat. u.) Physiol.*, **1910**, 295.

**Walbaum (H.).** *Ein Beitrag zur Klarstellung des Mechanismus der Wärmeregulation beim normalen und dem durch Gehirnreizung (Wärmestich) hyperthermisch gemachten Kaninchen.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1913**, lxxii, 153.

### Causes of Fever

**Berrar (M.).** *Ein Beitrag zur Physiologie der künstlichen Gicht und des künstlichen Fiebers.* *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1913**, xlix, 426.

**Freund (H.).** *Über Kochsalzfieber und Wasserfehler.* *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.*, **1913**, lxxiv, 311.  
*Studien über das Fieber durch Blutzerfall und Bluttransfusion.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911-12**, cv, 44.

**Heim (P.) & John (K.).** *Wärmestauung und Salzfehler.* *Ztschr. f. Kinderheilk.*, **1912**, vii, 115.

**Heubner (W.).** *Über Fieber nach intravenösen Injektionen.* *München. med. Wchnschr.*, **1911**, lviii, 2433.

**Hewlett (A. W.).** *A case of strychnin poisoning.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1913**, cxlvi, 536.

**Hort (E. C.) & Penfold (W. J.).** *A critical study of experimental fever.* *Proc. Royal Soc.*, **1912**, lxxxv, 174.

**Leschke (E.).** *Über die Beziehungen zwischen Anaphylaxie und Fieber sowie über die Wirkungen von Anaphylatoxin, Histamin, Organextracten und Pepton auf die Temperatur.* *Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap.*, **1913**, xiv, 151.



- Mandel (A. R.).** Xanthin as a cause of fever and its neutralization by salicylates. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1907-8**, *xx*, 439.
- McIntosh (J.), Fildes (P.) & Dearden (H.).** Salt fever and the treatment of syphilis by "606." *Ztschr. f. Immunitätsforsch. u. exper. Therap.*, **1912**, *Orig. xii*, 164.
- Mutch (N.) & Pembrey (M. S.).** The influence of tetrahydrobetanaphthylamin upon the temperature and respiratory exchange. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1911-12**, *xliii*, 109.
- Vaughan (V. C.), (V. C., Jr.) & (J. W.).** Protein split products in relation to immunity and disease. Philadelphia & New York, **1913**.

### *Significance of Fever*

- Lüdke (H.).** Über die Bedeutung der Temperatursteigerung für die Antikörperproduktion. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908-9**, *xcv*, 425.
- Rolly (F.).** Über Entstehung, Wesen und Bedeutung des Fiebers. *Deutsch. med. Wchnschr.*, **1911**, *xxxvii*, 2121, 2186.
- Rolly (F.) & Meltzer (O.).** Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Bedeutung der Hyperthermie. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, *xciv*, 335.

# Chapter X

## Infection and Immunity

### The Conception of Infection

#### General Considerations

Infection takes place when a foreign organism, by invading and maintaining itself in the tissues of a host, produces the symptoms of disease. Occasionally an invasion is of mutual benefit to the invader and to the host. This is true, for example, of the nitrifying bacteria which live on the root hairs of leguminous plants and which furnish these plants with nitrogenous compounds synthesized from the nitrogen of the air. Such a beneficial symbiosis is also conceivable in the case of man and the higher vertebrates, but no definite instances are known in which an invasion of their tissues by foreign organisms is beneficial in its effects. As a rule, such an invasion is associated with definite evidence of disease, though in a few instances the host seems little harmed by the infection. This is the case, for example, in rats who harbor the trypanosomes of Lewis in their blood, and in certain human infections with filaria.

Invasion of the host is obviously present when the infecting organisms can be demonstrated in the blood stream or the living tissues. It is not present when the organisms simply lie on a surface of the body. Healthy individuals commonly harbor staphylococci in the skin, the *Bacillus xerosis* in the conjunctival sac, cocci and spirilli in the mouth, colon and other bacilli in the intestines, and Döderlein's bacillus in the vagina. Many of these organisms are capable of producing disease if they enter the body under favoring conditions. Ordinarily, however, the epithelial coverings of the body resist their penetration into the tissues, and so long as this resistance is effective no invasion and no infection takes place.

**Bacterial Intoxication.**—For a true infection to occur it is necessary that the foreign organisms invade the living tissues of the host. Diseases that result from the absorption of toxic bacterial products formed outside of the body are not infectious. Thus the *Bacillus botulinus* forms a poison outside of the body by its action on meat, beans, etc., and the disease

produced by the absorption of this poison is a bacterial intoxication rather than a true infection. In other cases the distinction between bacterial infection and bacterial intoxication is less clear. For example, when bacteria grow in necrotic tissues, symptoms may be produced by an absorption of the soluble products of tissue decomposition or bacterial growth. Strictly speaking, such symptoms are due to an intoxication rather than to an infection, so long as the organisms present do not invade the living tissues. Certain bacteria, such as the diphtheria and tetanus bacilli, form soluble poisons, and the characteristic manifestations of the diseases to which they give rise are due largely to the specific action of these poisons. Such poisons are not formed by the great majority of infectious agents, so that in each of these diseases we are dealing in part with a specific bacterial intoxication. However, since these intoxications commonly take place only when the bacteria are able to maintain themselves within the tissues of the host, the intoxication is usually a result of infection.

## Local and General Infections

### *Localized Infections*

When organisms gain entrance to the body and are not immediately killed, the defenses at the point of entrance may be sufficiently active to limit the growth of the invaders to a restricted zone. This results in a local infection at the point of invasion. The conflict between host and invader usually gives rise to a local inflammation, the severity of which is determined by the degree of conflict between the two forces. Localization at the point of invasion is, however, a relative term, for the degree of localization may vary from that seen in a superficial boil to that seen in the spreading phlegmon of a streptococcus infection. In strictly local infections, organisms that escape into the blood or lymph streams are promptly killed, and are not allowed to establish themselves in distant parts of the body.

**Secondary Localizations.**—When invading organisms escape into distant parts of the body without being promptly killed, the infection is no longer localized to the point of invasion. Not infrequently the invaders settle and multiply in definite regions. These secondary points of infection are determined in part by the character of the invading organisms, and in part by the conditions of local tissue resistance. Thus the virus of rabies and that of poliomyelitis seem to concentrate particularly in the central nervous system, gonococci and certain types of streptococci tend to settle in the joint and on the heart valves, glanders bacilli injected into the peritoneal cavity of the male guinea-pig lead to an infection of the testicles, etc. Injury to the tissues may also determine the point at which invading organisms localize. For example, staphylococci tend to produce



osteomyelitis in bones that have been the seat of injury. In many such metastatic infections there is little or no reaction at the point of entrance to the body, and this point may indeed be determined only with great difficulty. Having localized at one or more secondary foci, the infection may then proceed with the clinical manifestations of a strictly local disease, as happens, for example, in osteomyelitis. It is evident from the nature of secondary localizations, however, that a wide distribution in the body must often occur, and that no sharp line separates the severe cases from generalized infections. If the secondary localizations are numerous and give rise to abscesses, the condition is spoken of as a pyemia.

### *Septicemia*

**True Septicemia.**—When bacteria can be recovered from the blood stream a bacteriemia or septicemia is present. Bacteriemias are of two types, and within each type there are various grades of severity. The first type, which constitutes a septicemia in the strict sense of the term, is characterized by the growth and multiplication of the infecting organisms in the circulating blood. Such a true septicemia may be produced experimentally by injecting highly virulent organisms, such as anthrax or plague bacilli, into very susceptible animals. It seems probable that in man a growth of bacteria in the blood stream is not necessarily so serious as might be expected from the examples of septicemia that have been produced experimentally in animals. During the early stages of typhoid fever, for example, bacilli are regularly present in the blood stream, and they probably multiply there; yet the septicemia, in this instance, is not of exceptionally grave import.

**Septicemia from Local Foci of Infection.**—In the second type of septicemia the bacteria enter the blood, more or less continuously, from some local area of infection. They are, however, unable to maintain themselves in the blood, but are being constantly destroyed by the specific immune substances which are present in the body fluids. The organisms present in the blood are, therefore, merely transients that have escaped from local foci. Among the bacteriemias associated with the local foci of infection, the most important are those of malignant endocarditis and septic venous thrombosis. The relation between the bacteriemia and the local disease is particularly evident in the septic venous thrombosis that not infrequently complicates mastoid disease. That the bacteria in this instance are derived from the local focus of infection, and are often unable to maintain themselves continuously in the blood, has been demonstrated repeatedly, for the bacteriemia usually disappears when the diseased veins are ligated and drained.

**Differences between the Two Types.**—It is evident that such a secondary bacteriemia is fundamentally different from the type which results from a free growth of organisms in the blood stream itself. In the

latter, the body fluids are unable to cope with the invading organisms. In the former, the body fluids may be able to destroy such invaders as escape from the foci of infection and the immune substances in the body fluids may be markedly increased. Within the local foci, however, the invaders are more or less protected from the action of these antibodies and from these foci the invaders enter the blood or lymph streams more or less continuously. Such an entrance is particularly easy when the foci are located within the blood vessels or on the heart valves. From the therapeutic standpoint, also, the distinction between a true septicemia and one secondary to foci of infection is fundamental. In the former, one may perhaps endeavor to destroy the organism circulating in the blood. In the latter, the blood is not the real seat of the disease, and its bactericidal properties are often high. Therapeutic efforts should be directed more particularly toward a removal or cure of the primary focus or foci of infection, particularly by surgical methods. If these foci can be destroyed, the bacteriemia will often be overcome by the defensive mechanisms of the body.

### Acute and Chronic Infections

An infection, whether general or local, may run either a rapid or a prolonged course. An acute course indicates a lively conflict between the host and the invader which results in a decisive victory for the one or the other. If the invader is entirely overcome, the host recovers; if the invader is wholly victorious, death ensues.

Chronicity results when, for any reason, neither the host nor the invader is able to gain a decisive victory. The invading microorganisms establish themselves within the tissues of the host and are not expelled. At the same time the host does not succumb to the infection. Chronicity may be due to various causes. It may result from the focal character of the infection. The general defenses of the body may be excellent, and bacteria which escape into the blood may be promptly killed. Nevertheless, the local conditions about the infection may be such that the invader is protected from direct attack by the host, and within the focus of infection it may grow and multiply. Again, a disease may be chronic because neither the host nor invader is able to muster sufficient offensive properties to overcome the defense of the other. The defensive properties of each may be relatively marked, the offensive relatively weak. During the course of an infection both host and invader may develop a considerable resistance to the offense of the other, so that the disease passes gradually into a subacute and chronic stage. Finally, as Theobald Smith has pointed out, there is another type of parasite which may dispense largely with both offensive and defensive properties. We may conceive of this type as exerting a metabolic activity approximating so closely to that of the host that

the latter reacts but slightly, and then only after a long period of stimulation. This type of parasite would have very little that is body-foreign or blood-foreign. In this class he places the spirochetes of syphilis.

## The Portals of Entry

The phenomena of infection and of immunity may be regarded as manifestations or results of the conflict between two contending organisms, the host and the invaders. In this conflict the invaders must first effect an entrance to the body of the host. After this has been accomplished, the ensuing history depends in part upon the invaders' ability to maintain themselves against the attacks of the host, and in part upon the invaders' offensive properties and the ability of the host to defend himself against these. The countless variations seen in the course of the infectious diseases are due to the numerous variations in each of these individual factors. Each disease, and to a certain extent each individual infection, presents separate problems. Broad generalizations as to the offensive and defensive properties of host and invaders, as well as to the modifications of these properties during the course of the various infectious diseases, are not possible.

**First Step in Infection.**—The first step in every infection consists in the entrance of the foreign microorganisms into the tissues of the host. This entrance may be effected in various ways and at various parts of the body, and the mode of entrance plays no small part in the subsequent history of the infection. A knowledge of the mode of infection is of the greatest importance in the prevention of infectious diseases.

The point at which the infection enters is spoken of as the portal of infection, and we shall, therefore, consider first the more common portals of infection and the conditions which govern the entrance of microorganisms at these various portals.

### *The Skin*

As a general rule, the unbroken skin affords an efficient protection against invasion by the various bacteria with which man comes in contact. Only exceptionally do infections take place through a normal skin. The best example of such an infection is the production of boils by rubbing pure cultures of virulent staphylococci into the unbroken skin. Plague bacilli may be introduced into guinea-pigs by placing infectious material on the carefully shaved surface of the skin, but in this case it seems probable that the bacteria penetrate the skin through slight abrasions produced by the shaving. Various animal parasites may burrow into the skin, and infections with hookworm are usually due to a penetration of the unbroken



skin by the larvae of the worms. The symptoms of "ground itch" are due to this manner of gaining entrance to the body.

**Infection through Broken Skin.**—The great majority of infections through the skin take place through some break in its continuity. This break may be so small as to escape a cursory examination. Infection is also favored by a local injury at the point of entrance, for the injured tissues and the local extravasation offer a more favorable opportunity for the growth of the invaders. This is particularly true of infections with tetanus bacilli. Punctured or contused wounds are much more liable to tetanus infection than are clean-cut wounds, and a few tetanus spores free of toxin may be placed in a clean wound without causing the disease. Tetanus is also favored by the presence of pyogenic organisms, possibly because these injure the tissues, and possibly because they create the more strictly anaërobic conditions necessary for the growth of tetanus bacilli.

Of the numerous infections that may gain entrance to the body through the broken skin, we may mention infections with the pus cocci, rabies, anthrax, tetanus, syphilis, plague, etc. Infections with plague are of particular interest, for the reason that such infections frequently result from the bites of infected fleas. Plague is primarily a disease of rats and other rodents, and fleas commonly acquire the bacilli from having bitten infected animals. It is probable that the flea neither suffers from a plague infection nor directly inoculates man during its feeding; but that the bacilli live in its digestive tract, pass out with its dejecta in a live and virulent condition, and, being deposited in the neighborhood of the bite, subsequently penetrate the abraded skin, particularly if the individual rub or scratch the region of the bite.

**FROM BITE OF BLOOD-SUCKING PARASITE.**—Various other infectious diseases are transmitted by the bites of blood-sucking parasites. In some cases, as in that of plague, the parasite appears to be simply a carrier of the infectious agent. In other cases, the infecting organism undergoes a cycle of development within the parasite, and until this cycle is completed infection does not follow its bite. The malarial organism, for example, must complete its sexual cycle of development in the *Anopheles* mosquito before the latter can transmit the disease to man. Similarly, yellow fever is transmitted by the *Stegomyia* mosquito only after a definite period of incubation. Among other diseases conveyed by the bites of animal parasites are typhus fever, transmitted by the body louse; Rocky Mountain fever, transmitted by the tick; and dengue fever and filariasis, which are probably transmitted by mosquitoes.

### ***Mucous Membranes Near Body Surface***

The mucous membranes near the exterior of the body are exposed to a great number and variety of microörganisms. Their resistance to invasion, though considerable, is not equal to that of the skin. The con-

junctivae, even when intact, may become infected by various bacteria, among which are gonococci, pneumococci and diphtheria bacilli. The mucous membrane of the nose is a common site of infection in acute coryza. The unbroken mucous membrane of the mouth is very resistant to the penetration of microorganisms. About the teeth, however, infections are not infrequent, and chronic infections near their roots are believed to be an important cause of the low grade sepsis present in many cases of chronic arthritis.

**Vulnerability of Tonsils.**—The tonsils constitute the most vulnerable portion of the upper respiratory and digestive passages. Owing to the anatomical structure of the tonsillar crypts, microorganisms readily lodge in them, where these organisms may grow and multiply. The mucous membrane lining the crypts is frequently damaged, and an opportunity is thus afforded for the penetration of bacteria into the substance of the gland and from here into other parts of the body. Infections of the tonsils are frequently produced by streptococci and other cocci, by the organisms of Vincent's angina and by diphtheria bacilli. The tonsils may also be the portals of entry for tuberculosis, syphilis and other diseases. Local foci of infection in the tonsils may be the source of acute or chronic sepsis; and the intimate relationship between tonsillar disease, on the one hand, and arthritis, endocarditis and nephritis, on the other, has been repeatedly emphasized in recent years. Removal of the tonsils from such patients may check a low grade sepsis, or it may guard the patient from future bacterial invasions from this source.

**Urethra.**—The urethra is the common site of gonococcus infections. No primary abrasion of the mucous membrane seems necessary for the establishment of this infection.

### *The Gastro-intestinal Canal*

The stomach is rarely the site of a bacterial invasion. Furthermore, the acid gastric juice possesses some antiseptic power, and this affords some protection to the intestines against infection by pathogenic organisms that may be swallowed with the food or drink. This protection is not very perfect, however, even in healthy individuals, for a part of the food and most of the water swallowed normally pass promptly through the pylorus into the duodenum (page 159). When the stomach empties itself prematurely or when the gastric secretion contains little or no acid, unusual quantities of undigested and undisinfected food may enter the intestines. Intestinal disturbances are indeed not uncommon in patients with gastric achlorhydria, and these disturbances are due in part to abnormal bacterial activities, which are favored by lack of gastric digestion and disinfection.

**Infections Entering by Intestines.**—The intestines constitute the usual

portal of entry for a variety of infections. Among these are typhoid and paratyphoid fever, dysentery and cholera. Tubercle bacilli may also enter the body through the digestive tract. In the case of cholera the infection usually remains localized to the intestinal mucous membrane, whereas in typhoid and paratyphoid fevers the infection early takes the form of a general bacteriemia. Tubercle bacilli may pass through an apparently intact mucous membrane without causing a demonstrable local lesion at the point of penetration. The regional lymphatic glands may become diseased, or the tubercle bacilli may pass these and involve other and more distant parts of the body.

### *The Respiratory Passages*

The lungs are protected from bacterial invasion by a number of special mechanisms (page 408). Particles floating in the inspired air are caught by the mucus that covers the upper respiratory passages and those that lodge in the trachea and larger bronchi are propelled toward the larynx by the cilia that line these passages. Coughing and sneezing serve to expel foreign bodies and collections of mucus.

**Infections of Respiratory Tract.**—Infections of the respiratory tract are caused most commonly by pneumococci, streptococci, influenza bacilli or tubercle bacilli. Acute infections frequently start in the upper respiratory passages and gradually extend downward. A coryza and pharyngitis is not infrequently followed by a bronchitis, and this in turn may precede the onset of pneumonia. According to Cole, about 50 per cent of patients with pneumonia give a previous history of inflammation of the upper respiratory passages. Pneumonia has also been produced experimentally by the injection of pure bacterial cultures into the bronchi.

**TUBERCULOSIS.**—Tubercle bacilli enter the body by various paths. We have already pointed out that they may be inoculated through the broken skin, that they may pass through the apparently intact mucous membrane of the intestines, and that they may invade the tonsils. From the last two localities particularly an invasion of the lymphatic channels, with subsequent involvement of the lungs, may take place, and some have maintained that these are, indeed, the most frequent portals of entry in the usual type of pulmonary tuberculosis. According to this view, tubercle bacilli which are inhaled rarely infect the lungs or air passages directly, but only after they have been swallowed or have penetrated the tissues of the tonsils. While these paths of infection cannot be denied, nevertheless it seems probable that they are not the usual paths of infection in the pulmonary tuberculosis of adults. The more common path is probably the direct infection of the lungs or air passages by bacilli suspended in the inspired air. The experience of pathological anatomists favors this view, as do also the experiments which showed that while a small number of



bacilli may cause tuberculosis when inhaled, much larger quantities are required to produce the disease when ingested.

## Defensive Properties of Infectious Microorganisms

We have seen that microorganisms cause infection only when they are able to maintain themselves in the fluids or tissues of the host. In order to do this they must withstand the attacks to which they are subjected. These attacks probably vary in intensity; and while some invaders call forth but little response on the part of the host, others call forth a violent reaction. The ability of a foreign microorganism to defend itself against these attacks constitutes one of the important factors in what is known as its virulence.

### *Virulence*

The virulence of microorganisms varies greatly not only among different strains, but also in the same strain at different times and under different circumstances. The study of factors that reduce the virulence of pathogenic microorganisms has assumed great importance in the preparation of living cultures for use as prophylactic vaccines against disease. As a general rule, cultivation on artificial media tends to reduce virulence, particularly when the growths are exposed to unusually high temperatures, to injurious chemicals, or to the products of growth of the microorganism itself. On the other hand, the passage of microorganisms through the bodies of susceptible animals tends to increase their virulence. Certain bacteria, such as Friedländer's bacillus, maintain a relatively constant virulence under varying external conditions. Others, such as the streptococci, change their virulence quickly and markedly when the conditions under which they are kept or grown are varied.

**Specific Virulence for Certain Animals.**—The increase of virulence caused by the passage through the bodies of susceptible animals was utilized by Pasteur in the preparation of his fixed virus for the treatment of rabies. When the virus from a mad dog is inoculated into rabbits the resulting disease develops in from 14 to 21 days. If the virus be successively inoculated from one rabbit to another, the incubation period shortens until finally the rabbits invariably sicken on the sixth or seventh day and die on the ninth or tenth day. Of great importance is the fact that this increased virulence is specific for rabbits. With each successive passage through these animals the virulence of the virus for dogs diminishes. Similarly, the passage of the rabies virus through monkeys may reduce its virulence for rabbits almost to extinction. Furthermore, Pasteur found that when the bacilli of swine plague were passed through rabbits or pigeons the virulence for these animals increased, but at the same time the

virulence for hogs diminished. Streptococci may also show an increased virulence for one animal while losing some of their virulence for another. It is evident, therefore, that the virulence of a microörganism is a quality which may be more or less specific for a given species of animal.

**Increased Resistance to Certain Drugs.**—This development of resistance to deleterious influence is not limited to an increased defense against the attack of a particular host, but it may also show itself against poisons of a relatively simple composition. Thus anthrax bacilli can be accustomed to increasing strengths of arsenic. When patients having trypanosome infections are treated with arsenic compounds, trypan red, or other drugs, a large number of the infecting organisms may be killed. On the other hand, the organisms left in the body may give rise to a strain which is particularly resistant to the drug used. The spirochetes of syphilis are said to become more resistant to salvarsan, and certain strains of malarial parasite seem to become relatively resistant to quinin. Apparently in such cases we are dealing with a survival of the fittest. The organisms which resisted the original doses of the drug used give rise to a race of resistant descendants.

**Morphological Changes in Virulent Bacteria.**—In some instances the phenomenon of resistance to destruction and of increased virulence is associated with well-defined morphological changes in the microörganisms. It has been observed, for example, that bacteria, like plague bacilli, pneumococci and certain streptococci, are more virulent when in the capsulated stage. As the organisms are passed through animals an increase in capsule formation and an increase in virulence go hand in hand. When grown in artificial media the loss of capsules and the loss in virulence occur simultaneously. Other organisms which do not form capsules seem to develop changes in their ectoplasm coincident with changes in infecting properties. It has been noted, for example, that colon bacilli appear larger when recovered from fatal infections of guinea-pigs, and the same is said to be true of streptococci. Apparently this thickening is due to the changes in the exterior layer of the bacteria, which renders them less vulnerable to the attacks of the host.

**Specific Defensive Mechanism.**—It is evident, however, that the changes whereby a pathogenic organism increases its virulence for one species of animals while losing its virulence for another, cannot be explained in so simple a way as by a change in its ectodermic covering. Welch has pointed out that bacteria, like their hosts, probably acquire a specific defensive mechanism which enables them to resist the attacks of the host. Bacteria which have been cultivated on the sera of immunized animals may show an increased resistance against the bacteriolytic and agglutinative substances of immune sera. According to Rosenow, there is a definite relationship between the virulence of pneumococci and their resistance to phagocytosis, and he was able to extract substances from

virulent pneumococci which inhibited the action of pneumococcus opsonin (page 553). It is readily conceivable that this resistance to bacteriolysis or phagocytosis should be more or less specific against the antibodies furnished by a particular species of animals.

## Offensive Properties of Infectious Microorganisms

The defensive properties of infectious microorganisms enable them to resist the attacks of the host, and thus permit their multiplication within the tissues of the latter. In addition, infecting microorganisms do harm to the host by virtue of their offensive properties.

### *Ptomains*

When it was discovered that basic nitrogenous compounds, known as ptomains, were formed during the putrefaction of organic matter, and that certain of these ptomains were toxic, it was surmised that these same organic bases might be formed during infections, and that they might be responsible for the toxic symptoms observed during the infectious diseases. Further studies have shown, however, that such substances are not formed in appreciable quantities during the course of the infectious diseases, and that they are probably not responsible for the toxic symptoms observed. The pathological importance of ptomains seems limited to the possibility that, when decomposed food is eaten, toxic symptoms may be produced by poisonous ptomains formed in the decomposed food. Such intoxications, however, have little in common with the infectious diseases. Furthermore, the great majority of disorders which have resulted from the ingestion of decomposed food have been due, not to the presence of ptomains in the food, but to infections from pathogenic bacteria that were swallowed with the food.

### *Soluble Toxins*

Soluble toxic substances are elaborated by the diphtheria bacillus, the tetanus bacillus and certain other bacteria. If such bacteria are grown under proper conditions the toxic substances pass into the culture fluids, and may thus be separated from the bacteria themselves. When injected into animals these soluble toxins may produce much the same symptoms as do the diseases themselves. The symptoms of these diseases are, therefore, due in large part to the action of the soluble toxins secreted by the bacilli during their growth in the infected animal. The exact composition of bacterial toxins has not been determined. It has been impossible thus far to separate them entirely from proteins. Such toxins are responsible for many symptoms produced by the diphtheria bacillus and the tetanus bacillus. They are also formed by the *Bacillus botulinus*, the *Bacillus*



pyocyaneus and the *Bacillus* of symptomatic anthrax. Biologically such soluble toxins are characterized by the fact that, in common with the vegetable poisons ricin and abrin, certain snake venoms, and the ferments, they give rise to the production of neutralizing antitoxins when they are injected into the animal body.

### *Endotoxins*

The vast majority of infectious microorganisms, and notably the typhoid bacillus, the plague bacillus and the cholera spirillum, produce no soluble toxins. Filtrates from fresh and actively growing cultures do not give rise to the characteristic symptoms of the diseases produced by the living organisms. Nor do these filtrates give rise to protective antitoxins. When the organisms have been allowed to disintegrate, however, or when the dead bodies of the bacteria are injected, certain toxic symptoms may be produced. On the basis of such experiments it has been assumed that these bacteria contain within their bodies certain poisons, the so-called "endotoxins," which are insoluble and which are liberated only when the bacteria themselves disintegrate. The symptoms of the infectious diseases produced by such microorganisms are believed by some to be due to the liberation of the toxic "endotoxins" from the bodies of bacteria destroyed in the host during the course of the disease. According to this view, each pathogenic organism possesses certain definite endotoxins, and the specific character of an infection is due to the specific character of this poison which is liberated in the body of the host in consequence of bacterial disintegration.

### *Non-specific Protein Poisons*

Opposed to this view of the specific character of the insoluble "endotoxins" in different bacteria is the view of Vaughan and of Friedberger, that, in infectious diseases of this type, we are dealing not with specific bacterial poisons, but with an intoxication which is analogous to that produced by the disintegration of any foreign protein within the animal body. Vaughan has shown, for example, that many phenomena of infection may be reproduced by the parenteral injection of various kinds of foreign protein. He believes that these phenomena are not determined by specific bacterial endotoxins. The question will be discussed more fully when the phenomena of anaphylaxis are considered (page 561).

## **Immunity, Resistance and Susceptibility**

In the preceding paragraphs infection has been discussed chiefly from the standpoint of the invader. An equally important rôle, however, is played by the host. When a given number of microorganisms of definite

virulence are introduced into an animal, they may produce no disease whatsoever. The animal is said to be immune. They may, on the other hand, produce a mild disease with recovery, or a severe disease resulting in death. The animal is then said to be susceptible to the infection to a lesser or greater degree. All such reactions depend to some extent upon the dose, the virulence, and manner of introducing the infectious agent. Some animals succumb to exceedingly minute doses, while others require very large doses, or may, indeed, resist all attempts to cause infection. Furthermore, microorganisms which cause death when injected into an animal may be relatively harmless in a state of nature, for the reason that they are unable to gain entrance to the body in sufficient numbers to cause infection.

Immunity to infection may be natural to the host; it may be acquired by having passed through the disease in question, or it may be produced by injecting specific protective substances.

### *Natural Immunity*

Wide variations exist among different species of animals in their susceptibility to different diseases. Many infections that afflict man, for example, do not occur naturally among animals. Among these are influenza, typhoid fever, cholera, gonorrhea, syphilis, yellow fever, malaria, and the acute exanthemata. Some of these diseases have not been transmitted to the lower animals; some are transmitted only with difficulty and to species closely related to man, while the organisms that cause still others are pathogenic to certain animals, but do not reproduce a disease which resembles clinically that which occurs in man. On the other hand, many diseases that occur among animals are not transmissible to man. Different species of animals, therefore, are susceptible to different infectious diseases; or, conversely, immunity to certain infections is a characteristic of the species to which an animal belongs.

**Cause of Immunity in Different Species.**—The cause of these differences among species is but imperfectly understood. In a few instances they seem to depend upon differences in body temperature. Thus frogs, which are ordinarily resistant to anthrax, may be infected if they are kept at temperatures of 35° C.; and lizards, which are resistant to plague bacilli, may be infected if the temperature of the surrounding air is raised. The bacilli of avian tuberculosis grow best at temperatures of 40° to 45° C., while the bacilli of mammalian tuberculosis cease to grow at temperatures above 40° C. Since the body temperature of birds is considerably higher than that of mammals, the different susceptibility of these animals to the different strains of tubercle bacilli may be explainable in part by the differences in the body temperatures. It has been suggested also that differences between herbivora and carnivora may depend upon the differ-

ence in their food supply. As a rule, however, the wide differences in susceptibility to infection exhibited by different species cannot be explained so simply. As we shall see, biological reactions of various kinds have demonstrated that marked differences exist in the proteins of different species of animals, and it seems probable that the observed differences in natural immunity are but another expression of these biological differences among different species of animals.

**Varying Susceptibility of Different Races.**—Different races belonging to the same species may also show variations in susceptibility to certain infectious diseases. For example, Algerian sheep are relatively immune to anthrax, whereas European sheep are quite susceptible. Similarly, gray mice are said to be more resistant to streptococci and pneumococci than are white mice. In man also racial differences have frequently been noted; but it is not altogether certain that these depend upon fundamental differences in racial susceptibility. The high incidence of tuberculosis among the American negroes, for example, depends, in part at least, upon the unhygienic conditions under which they live and the unusual exposure to tuberculosis to which they are subjected. The relative immunity of the black to yellow fever may possibly depend upon less frequent bites by the infecting mosquitoes. The immunity of the natives of Central Africa to malaria is not a natural immunity, but is one acquired by having had the disease in very early life. Some have, therefore, doubted the existence of racial differences in susceptibility.

**INFECTIOUS DISEASE VIRULENT IN FIRST OUTBREAK.**—When an infectious disease is introduced for the first time among a race which has never been exposed to the disease previously, it is often particularly virulent in its manifestations. Such has been the history of measles, syphilis, tuberculosis and other infections. In such cases, at least, there appears to be a distinct racial susceptibility to the disease in question. This depends upon the previous freedom from this infection. Whether the relative resistance possessed by races long exposed to the infection is inherited from ancestors who have had the disease, or whether it depends upon a natural selection through the survival of those who could resist, has not been definitely settled.

**Individual Susceptibility.**—**LOCAL FACTORS.**—When a given infectious disease invades a community, only a certain proportion of those exposed become sick. This is doubtlessly due in part to variations in the number of infectious organisms that happen to come in contact with exposed individuals, and in part to local points of lessened resistance which permit a more ready entrance of the infectious agent. For example, catarrhal conditions of the upper respiratory passage predispose to infections by the bacteria causing diphtheria, pneumonia, etc., and catarrhal disturbances of the intestines are said to predispose to cholera. An absence of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice and an unusually rapid discharge of



the gastric contents into the duodenum permit a more ready access of living cholera or typhoid bacilli to the intestines. Injuries of any kind may permit the entrance of bacteria which would otherwise be resisted, as happens in traumatic pneumonia and many other conditions.

**GENERAL FACTORS.**—Individual susceptibility to various infectious diseases may also depend upon general factors, such as poor nutrition, fatigue or chilling. This is supported not only by clinical but by experimental evidence. Animals ordinarily immune to a given infection have been made susceptible by starvation, by fatigue from prolonged exercise and by exposure to very high or very low temperatures. The administration of alcohol, clinically as well as experimentally, reduces the resistance to certain infections. Chronic diseases in general render the individual more susceptible to infections. In diabetes, for example, the patients are peculiarly prone to boils and other staphylococcus infections as well as to tuberculosis.

### *Naturally Acquired Immunity*

It has long been known that a single attack of certain infectious diseases protects the individual from subsequent attacks. Among the diseases which confer such an immunity may be mentioned the acute exanthemata, plague, typhoid, cholera, yellow fever, diphtheria, typhus, and mumps. A single attack of any of these diseases usually endows the individual with a substantial immunity which is lifelong, and second attacks are rare. Other infections ordinarily leave behind no lasting and effective immunity to the disease in question. Repeated attacks of boils, erysipelas, pneumonia, gonorrhea, and malaria are common. Indeed, it has been held that some of these infections, and particularly boils, erysipelas, and pneumonia, may leave behind an increased susceptibility to future attacks. It seems more probable, however, that these infections increase the resistance only for a short time, and that the repetition of attacks is due to other causes, such as a natural susceptibility on the part of the individual, damage to certain tissues or some chronic source of infection. Repeated attacks of erysipelas, for example, may arise from a chronic streptococcus infection in the nose or nasal sinuses.

**Immunity to Tuberculosis and Malaria.**—Even such infections as malaria and tuberculosis are followed by a certain degree of immunity. Natives born in the tropics owe their resistance to malarial infections in part to early infections with the disease. Mild tuberculosis infections may protect a guinea-pig from fresh infections. The mild tuberculous infection which most human individuals pass through during childhood modifies the course of subsequent infections. Chronic pulmonary tuberculosis is believed to be a secondary infection with a course that has been modified by the primary infection of childhood.

According to Theobald Smith, "the researches of the past twenty-five years have shown definitely that all parasites, from the ultramicroscopic forms to the higher entozoa, induce in the body of the host a degree of antagonism higher than that existing before invasion. This antagonism may not be sufficient to eliminate the parasites; it may not even be strong enough to check the march of the invasion and the progressive disease resulting therefrom; it may even, in some of its stages, be injurious to the host, as when it leads to the hypersensitiveness of anaphylaxis. This increased antagonism exists, however insignificant it seems to us."

**Immunity and Unrecognized Infections.**—We have seen that immunity may be a characteristic of the species, the race or the individual, or that it may be acquired by having passed through the disease in question. While the theoretical difference between these two forms of immunity is fundamental, nevertheless it is not always simple in practice to distinguish an immunity that is natural to the individual from one that has been acquired as the result of an infection. We know that infections may be of such a mild character as to cause no easily recognized clinical symptoms and that such infections may profoundly alter the reaction of the individual to the diseases in question. For example, 35 per cent or more of all adults react to tuberculin. This indicates the prevalence of this infection in a form that is not recognized clinically but which nevertheless alters the biological reactions of the individual. The importance of such mild and unrecognized infections as an important factor in the spread of infectious diseases is well known, but their rôle in protecting a certain number of individuals against infectious diseases is only beginning to be recognized.

**SCHICK DIPHTHERIA REACTION.**—Susceptibility to diphtheria may now be tested by means of the so-called Schick reaction. In performing this test an amount of diphtheria toxin equal to one-fiftieth of the minimum lethal dose for a guinea-pig weighing about 250 grams is injected into the human skin. If this injection produces no local reaction, the individual seldom acquires the disease. If, on the other hand, the injection produces a skin reaction, the individual is relatively susceptible to diphtheria. The practical value of such a test in separating susceptible from relatively immune individuals has led to its wide application by Schick, by Park and his associates, by Kolmer and Moshage, and by others.

In performing the Schick test, care must be taken not to confuse a skin reaction to diphtheria toxin with the pseudoreaction produced by autolysed proteins of the bacillus. The pseudoreaction runs a more rapid course and reaches its maximum within twenty-four hours. In case of doubt, a control pseudoreaction test should be made with a solution in which the toxin has been destroyed by heating to 75° C. for five minutes. Zingher, who carefully excluded pseudoreactions, has tested a large number

of normal individuals of different ages by the Schick test. His results are shown in the following table:

PERCENTAGES OF PERSONS SUSCEPTIBLE TO DIPHTHERIA AS INDICATED BY THE SCHICK REACTION (Zingher)

Arranged According to Age:

	—Months—		Years						
	0-6	6-12	1-2	2-4	4-6	6-8	8-10	10-15	15-20
Number of persons tested...	101	84	52	127	348	366	170	626	94
Per cent susceptible.....	18.0	52.3	46.1	35.8	16.1	8.2	12.9	5.8	5.3

As may be seen from this table, the Schick reaction indicates that susceptibility to diphtheria is most common between the ages of six months and four years, while very young infants as well as persons who have passed the age of ten years are usually immune to the disease. The immunity of very young infants is comparable to the immunity which these infants enjoy against various other acute infectious diseases, and is probably due to protective substances received from the mother. The cause of the immunity shown by most persons who have passed the age of ten years is not known.

**SKIN TEST FOR TYPHOID IMMUNITY.**—Gay and Force have recently described a skin reaction which in their opinion indicates immunity from typhoid fever. Of twenty-one individuals who had recovered from the disease, twenty gave a positive reaction even after long periods of time. The test was also positive in a large proportion of those who had been recently vaccinated against the disease. On the other hand, 9 per cent of supposedly normal individuals gave positive tests, presumably because at some previous time they had overcome an unrecognized infection with the typhoid bacillus. The practical value of the test is still undecided.

**UNRECOGNIZED SYPHILITIC INFECTION.**—Serological as well as pathological studies have also shown that a certain number of individuals have had syphilitic infections without history or evident clinical manifestations. The immunity of the nursing mother against infection from her syphilitic child (Colles' law) has in this way been shown to be due to the fact that such mothers already have syphilis, even though the history of infection as well as the physical examination may be negative.

### *Artificially Acquired Immunity*

#### *(a) Active Immunity*

The observation that a more or less perfect immunity follows certain of the infectious diseases early lead to attempts to immunize by inoculating these diseases into healthy individuals.

**Smallpox Inoculation.**—Inoculation against smallpox was practiced



by the ancients in China and India, and was introduced into England by Lady Mary Wortley Montague in the early part of the eighteenth century. Inoculated smallpox was far less fatal than the naturally acquired disease, possibly because the average healthy person is better able to withstand infection than one who acquires the disease naturally, possibly because the mode of infection influenced its virulence. Nevertheless, the inoculation of smallpox was not without danger and it was justified at that time only by the fact that relatively few escaped the natural disease.

**Vaccination.**—The discovery of vaccination by Jenner introduced a new era in the history of artificially acquired immunity. Cowpox, which furnished the material for Jenner's method of vaccination, is now believed to be an attenuated form of smallpox. The dangers of vaccination with cowpox are insignificant, while the protection against smallpox conferred by this means lasts for years.

**Injection of Attenuated Cultures.**—It remained for Pasteur, however, to apply in a systematic manner the principles involved in vaccination. He found that cultures of chicken cholera bacilli which had been allowed to stand for months decreased in virulence, but that the injection of such cultures into fowls protected them against subsequent infection. Pasteur followed this by a method of preventative inoculation against anthrax, in which the virulence of the bacilli had been attenuated by cultivation at high temperatures ( $42^{\circ}$ - $43^{\circ}$ ). His work along these lines finally culminated in the development of his inoculation treatment for rabies. Various methods for the attenuation of living cultures have been used. Among these are the passage through other animals, growth at high temperatures, drying, and the exposure to chemicals or to the products of bacterial growth.

**Injection of Virulent Cultures.**—In contradistinction to immunization with attenuated cultures of living microorganisms, attempts have also been made to immunize by introducing into the body very small numbers of fully virulent bacteria and by gradually increasing the number used. By this method Webb, Williams and Barber have succeeded in immunizing against small amounts of fully virulent cultures of tubercle and of anthrax bacilli.

**Danger in Use of Living Cultures.**—It is evident that when living organisms are introduced into the body the conditions approach those which prevail during an actual infection, and particularly is this true when small doses of virulent, rather than large doses of attenuated, organisms are used. The immunity obtained by these methods is the most reliable that can be produced experimentally. On the other hand, the method is difficult to control so that it will be free of danger. When used on animals an occasional death does not greatly impair its usefulness, provided adequate protection is conferred on the great majority of those inoculated. When used on man, however, the mere possibility of a fatal accident

constitutes a very serious obstacle, and it would then be justified *only* in the presence of a widespread and fatal epidemic. For man, the living virus has found its greatest applications in vaccination against smallpox and in the treatment of those bitten by rabid dogs. An extensive and effective use of attenuated living vaccines as a prophylactic against cholera has been made by Haffkine. Strong has also recommended the use of attenuated living cultures as a prophylactic vaccine against plague. It is quite probable, however, that in these cases satisfactory results may be obtained by using dead vaccines rather than living organisms.

**Injection of Toxins.**—The practical difficulties attending the use of living cultures and the danger of occasional accidents from their administration tend to restrict their general application as immunizing agents against the infectious diseases of man. It is simpler and safer, where possible, to produce immunity by methods in which no living organisms are injected. In those cases in which the microorganisms produce a soluble toxin that causes the symptoms of the disease (diphtheria, tetanus, etc.), the injection of this toxin gives rise to an immunity which depends upon the formation of an antitoxin in the body. The production of such an antitoxic immunity in animals is now widely used in the commercial preparation of antitoxins for diphtheria and tetanus. Active immunization of human beings against diphtheria toxin has also been used to some extent as a prophylactic measure against the disease.

**Injection of Dead Cultures.**—In most instances, however, infecting microorganisms produce no soluble toxin, and the naturally acquired immunity does not depend upon the presence of antitoxin in the blood. In some such cases artificial immunity can be produced by the injection of dead or disintegrated bacilli. In preparing such immunizing agents, the bacteria may be killed by heat or chemical agents, they may be dissolved, or they may be destroyed mechanically by being ground into a very fine powder. The immunity conferred by the injection of such preparations can hardly be expected to be as efficacious as that which results from the natural disease or the use of living virulent organisms; first, because the process of killing the bacteria may destroy certain substances which give rise to immunity, and, second, because the injection of one or more doses of vaccine is hardly comparable with the continuous stimulus to which the body is subjected when microorganisms are permitted to multiply within its tissues. Nevertheless, satisfactory protection has been produced by this means against plague, cholera, and typhoid fever. Vaccination against typhoid fever with cultures killed by heat has been made compulsory in the United States Army, and it has resulted in an almost complete disappearance of this disease among the troops, even when they have been mobilized in districts where typhoid fever prevailed. The statistics for our army, as compiled by Russell, are shown in the following table:

TYPHOID FEVER, 1907 TO 1913, FOR THE WHOLE UNITED STATES ARMY. COMPULSATORY VACCINATION FOR THOSE UNDER 45 YEARS INTRODUCED IN 1911

Year	Mean Strength	Cases		Deaths		Occurring among those Vaccinated	
		No.	%	No.	%	Cases	Deaths
1907.....	62,523	237	3.79	19	0.30	..	..
1908.....	74,692	239	3.20	24	0.31	..	..
1909.....	84,077	282	3.35	22	0.26	1	0
1910.....	81,474	198	2.43	14	0.17	7	0
1911.....	82,802	70	0.85	8	0.10	11	0
1912.....	88,478	27	0.31	4	0.04	8	0
1913.....	90,646	3	0.03	0	0.00	1	0

### (b) *Passive Immunity*

The immunity that follows an infectious disease, naturally acquired or produced by inoculation, as well as the immunity that results from the introduction of dead bacteria or bacterial products into the body, depends upon a reaction on the part of the tissues of the host. It is an active immunity. Such an immunity develops slowly, but when once established it is more or less durable. Numerous attempts have been made to transfer this immunity to non-infected animals by injecting into them the blood or blood serum of actively immune animals. When immunity results from such an injection it is spoken of as a passive immunity. In contradistinction to active immunity this type develops almost immediately after the injection, but it is never very durable.

**Antitoxic Type.**—Passive immunization has been most successful in those cases where the active immunity was due to the presence of antitoxins in the blood. It has been widely used in the treatment of diphtheria and in the prophylaxis and treatment of tetanus, and it is effective against the vegetable poisons, ricin and abrin, and against various snake venoms.

**Other Forms.**—Numerous attempts have been made to establish a passive immunity against those infectious agents which produce no soluble toxins. The transferal of such an immunity from the immune to the healthy animal has not been so successful as the transferal of antitoxins. The conditions here are extremely complicated, and the consideration of such measures must be deferred until the nature of this type of immunity has been more fully discussed.

**Infant Immunity.**—A special form of passive immunity is that which is conferred by the mother upon her infant. Ehrlich studied the transmission of immunity against the vegetable poisons, ricin and abrin. He showed, in the first place, that resistance to these poisons could be trans-



mitted to the new-born offspring from an immune mother but not from an immune father. In the second place, if the young of an immune female were nursed by a non-immune, they lost their immunity in about three weeks; whereas if the young of a non-immune were nursed by an immune animal they acquired an immunity. Evidently, therefore, the immunity to ricin can be transferred both to the fetus in utero, and to the nursing offspring by the milk. Like other forms of passive immunity, however, it is not very durable. These experiments have since been repeated upon a variety of animals and with a variety of infections. In certain cases, Ehrlich's results have been confirmed; in other cases the immunity has not been transmitted. The relations are evidently quite complicated and all immune bodies are not transmitted with equal ease.

It is well known that certain of the infectious diseases of childhood occur with relative infrequency during the first year of life. Among these are scarlet fever, measles, rubeola and diphtheria; and it is not improbable that in these cases the relative immunity of very young infants is due to protective substances derived from the mother. In the case of diphtheria, as we have seen, immunity, as estimated by the Schick reaction, is more common under six months than in later infancy and childhood.

## Mechanism of Antitoxic Immunity

### *Toxin and Antitoxin*

We have seen that toxins are soluble poisonous products of bacterial growth. Aside from their physiological action, little is known about them. Chemically, they are closely related to the proteins and even the purest preparations of bacterial toxins thus far obtained give some protein reactions. Toxins are sensitive to heat and are usually destroyed when in solution by temperatures of 80° C. or less. Biologically, the toxins are characterized by the fact that when proper doses are injected into certain animals the blood sera of the latter acquire the property of counteracting the effect of the particular toxin used. Such sera contain antitoxin. Among pathogenic bacteria the most important toxin producers are the diphtheria bacillus, the tetanus bacillus, the *Bacillus botulinus*, the *Bacillus pyocyaneus* and the *Bacillus* of symptomatic anthrax. It has also been claimed that soluble toxins are produced by typhoid, cholera and dysentery bacilli; but even admitting that this be true, it is, nevertheless, certain that the symptoms of these diseases are not due in any large measure to these substances. Similar to the toxins are those soluble poisons, secreted by certain bacteria, which possess the property of hemolyzing red corpuscles. Furthermore, the *staphylococcus aureus* secretes a

poison which directly and visibly injures the white corpuscles of the host (leukocydin).

**Other Substances that Behave Like Toxins.**—Substances having many chemical, physical and biological reactions of the toxins may be derived from sources other than bacteria. Thus ricin from the castor oil bean, abrin from the jequirity bean, and croton from the *Croton tiglium*, as well as other plant derivatives have such properties. Snake venoms and spider poison are similar substances derived from animal sources. All of these produce specific antitoxins when injected into animals. Snake venoms, however, differ from bacterial toxins in that they are more resistant to the action of heat.

**FERMENTS.**—Ferments in general, though less poisonous than toxins, nevertheless possess many points with them in common. They are sensitive to heat, they cannot be separated easily from proteins, and when injected into the animal body they give rise to antiferments. Many, therefore, have classed toxins with the ferments.

### Neutralization of Toxin by Antitoxin

The older view, that an antitoxin renders the corresponding toxin inert by decomposing it, has now been generally abandoned. Inert mixtures of the two have been made poisonous by measures which destroyed the antitoxin in the mixture. Thus Morgenroth found that when a small amount of hydrochloric acid was added to a neutral mixture of snake venom and its antitoxin, the latter could be destroyed by heating, and the toxin was left in a free and active state. Such experiments indicate that antitoxin neutralizes the toxin in somewhat the same manner that an acid neutralizes a base. The toxin is rendered inert because it enters into combination with the antitoxin.

**Effect of Adding Toxin to Neutral Toxin-antitoxin Mixtures.**—Quantitative studies of the neutralization of diphtheria toxin by antitoxin have shown, however, that the reaction is by no means so simple as that which takes place between strong acids and bases. When an exactly neutral toxin-antitoxin mixture is prepared, it is found that considerably more than a fatal dose of toxin must be added in order that the mixture cause the death of a guinea-pig. Let us assume, for example, that 0.01 c.c. is the minimum amount of a certain solution of diphtheria toxin that will kill a guinea-pig in three to four days. Let us assume, furthermore, that it requires 1.00 c.c. of this toxin solution to make a neutral mixture with one standard antitoxin unit. If further toxin be added, the mixture will cause some manifestation of disease, such as a local reaction at the point of injection or a late paralysis. In order to cause the death of a guinea-pig in three or four days, however, it may be necessary to add to the neutral mixture 1.00 c.c. of the toxin solution.

In other words, 100 times the minimum fatal dose may have to be added in order to make the neutral mixture fatal within the specified time. This discrepancy between the minimum fatal dose of pure toxin and the amount of toxin which must be added to a neutral mixture of toxin and antitoxin in order to be fatal has received various explanations.

**EHRlich's EXPLANATORY HYPOTHESIS.**—According to Ehrlich, solutions of diphtheria toxin contain two types of substances. The first of these, or toxin proper, possesses both a high toxicity and the property of uniting with antitoxin. The second group (toxoid and toxon) combine with antitoxin but their toxicity is relatively slight. When the solution of diphtheria toxin is completely neutralized by antitoxin, both toxin and toxon are neutralized. If more diphtheria toxin solution be added to the mixture, the true toxin contained therein will displace the toxon from its antitoxin combination and the free toxon may then produce such symptoms as a local reaction or a late paralysis. It fails, however, to produce death in the specified time of three or four days. Only when the antitoxin is completely saturated with toxin is an excess of the latter able to cause the death of the animal in the specified time.

Ehrlich showed, furthermore, that while the toxicity of a solution of diphtheria toxin diminishes rapidly, shortly after it has been prepared, there is no marked change in the amount required to neutralize a standard antitoxin unit. He believes that toxins have become converted into toxoids.

**OPPOSING HYPOTHESES.**—According to Ehrlich's hypothesis, therefore, diphtheria toxin is a complex mixture of bacterial substances which are capable of neutralizing antitoxin but which possess different degrees of toxicity. The "haptophore" group of atoms by which these substances combine with antitoxin is identical. The "toxophore" groups to which they owe their toxic action differ. Ehrlich's view that toxin solutions contain a number of substances with varying degrees of toxicity is disputed by Arrhenius and Madsen, who hold that the observations concerning the toxicity of toxin-antitoxin mixtures may be explained, if we assume that these substances do not behave like mixtures of strong acids and bases, but rather like mixtures of weak acids and bases. In such mixtures a portion of each substance remains free in the solution. Bordet believes that when antitoxin is added to a toxin solution in amounts insufficient to effect a complete neutralization, it does not leave a certain portion of the toxin free in solution, but distributes itself over all the molecules of the toxin and partially neutralizes each one of these so that their toxicity is modified but not destroyed. Bordet compares the reaction between toxin and antitoxin to the staining of starch paste with iodine, where varying amounts of the latter are absorbed by the former with the production of colors of varying intensity. This "absorption" theory of the reaction between toxin and antitoxin explains the observed facts in a



fairly satisfactory manner, and is in accordance with the laws governing reactions between colloidal substances.

### The Formation of Antitoxins

The early view of Buchner and others, that antitoxins are formed by some chemical transformation of the toxins in the body, is now definitely disproven. The amount of antitoxin formed may be altogether too great to be accounted for in this manner. Thus Knorr has shown that 100,000 units of antitoxin may be produced in response to a dose of toxin that corresponds to a single antitoxic unit, and others have shown that the antitoxin production in the blood continues even after the entire amount of blood has been removed by repeated bleeding. It is now universally held that the formation of antitoxin represents a specific response on the part of the body cells to a specific poisoning or irritation by the toxin.

**Side-chain Theory.**—The nature of this response has been formulated by Ehrlich in his now famous side-chain theory. Not only toxins but a variety of other substances give rise to antibodies of one form or another when they are introduced into the animal body. Such substances which possess the property of giving rise to antibodies are spoken of in general as antigens. Ehrlich conceives that when such antigens are introduced into the body they enter into combination with certain of the body cells because they possess atomic complexes (haptophore groups) that unite with atomic complexes (side-chains) of the body cells. Through this combination the antigen is able to act upon the cells of the body, and the latter may be damaged or irritated. The side-chains with which the toxin has united are rendered useless and the cells proceed to form new side-chains of a similar character. This formation, however, is usually excessive, for it is a general biological law that irritation or damage leads to an overproduction of the damaged tissues. The new side-chains thus produced in excessive numbers are cast off into the circulation as free molecules. If new toxin be now introduced into the blood it combines with and is neutralized by these free side-chains in the body fluids. In this manner it is prevented from attacking and injuring the body cells. According to Ehrlich's hypothesis, therefore, antitoxin is nothing more than the sum of the free side-chains which have been produced by, and given off from, the body cells in response to a specific injury by toxin (Fig. 111).



Fig. 111.—The Relation of Toxin to Antitoxin, According to Ehrlich.

**Affinity Between Toxin and Susceptible Tissue.**—The side-chain theory postulates that the toxin enters into a chemical combination with the cells that it injures and that these cells in turn produce the specific protective antitoxin. Many experiments have been made in order to demon-

strate that susceptible tissues have a peculiar affinity for the toxin that injures them. It has been shown, for example, that various toxins when injected into susceptible animals disappear rapidly from the circulating blood; whereas when they are injected into certain non-susceptible animals, no such prompt disappearance takes place. Pigeons, for example, are only slightly susceptible to tetanus and the tetanus toxin may be demonstrated in the blood, liver, spleen, kidneys and muscles for several days after an injection. None is found in the central nervous system, however, apparently because that which is taken up here is either neutralized or destroyed. Lizards are practically insusceptible to tetanus, and when tetanus toxin is injected into these animals it may be demonstrated in the blood as long as two months after the injection. It has been shown, furthermore, that a pulp made from the nervous tissue of susceptible animals will neutralize the tetanus toxin in much the same way as antitoxin does, apparently because it contains substances which combine with the toxin. The nervous tissue of relatively insusceptible animals, such as chickens, has a weaker neutralizing power, and the nervous tissue of very insusceptible animals, such as the frog and turtle, is almost without neutralizing action. There seems, therefore, to be a definite relation between the affinity of the nerve cells for tetanus toxin and the natural susceptibility of the animal. Other toxins which act upon the nervous system also combine with these tissues.

**REACTION IN NERVE TISSUE WITH LIPOIDS OR PROTEINS.**—It has been suggested that the peculiar affinity between tetanus toxin and nervous tissue may depend, not upon a chemical combination between the toxin and the nerve proteins, but upon some physical or chemical reaction with the lipoids that are so abundant in nerve tissues. That lipoids possess a peculiar relationship to toxins is certain. It seems improbable, however, that this can account for the differences observed between susceptible and non-susceptible animals. Furthermore, the binding character of the nervous tissues may be destroyed by heat—a fact which favors the view that the affinity depends in large measure upon protein substances present in the cells.

**Time Needed for Reaction.**—Time is required to complete the reaction between toxin and antitoxin or between toxin and body cells. When a mixture of toxin and antitoxin is allowed to stand for half an hour it may be completely innocuous, whereas the same mixture if injected immediately may cause symptoms, for the reason that some of the toxin has escaped neutralization. Similar relations seem to hold with respect to the union of toxin to the cells of the body. When toxin is injected into an animal and antitoxin is subsequently administered, the protective influence of the latter diminishes rapidly as time elapses between the two injections. After a few hours, the union between the body cells and the toxin may be so firm that no dose of antitoxin, however

large, is able to save the animal. This fact is of great practical importance, since it indicates the necessity for early therapeutic injections of antitoxin. In the case of tetanus, for example, prophylactic injections of antitoxin are of undoubted value, whereas the injection of antitoxin after symptoms have developed often fails to modify the clinical picture. The therapeutic value of antitoxin lies mainly in the fact that it neutralizes any fresh toxin that may be produced in the body. Possibly also it breaks up recently formed and still unstable unions between the tissues and the toxin.

**SUSCEPTIBILITY OF FROGS TO TETANUS TOXIN.**—It has been pointed out that tetanus toxin is not readily taken up by the nerve tissues of animals that are insusceptible to the disease. In the case of frogs the toxin may be demonstrated in the circulation for months after an injection. It has been shown that if such frogs be warmed to  $25^{\circ}$  to  $30^{\circ}$  the animals may develop the disease. This is due in part to the fact that at these temperatures the toxin combines more readily with the nervous tissues. As Morgenroth has shown, however, some tetanus toxin may be bound by the nerve cells of these animals even at low temperatures and this may produce toxic symptoms only when the animals are heated. Apparently some union with the body cells takes place at low temperatures, whereas a higher temperature is required in order that the toxin produce its poisonous effects.

**Union of Toxin and Cell Prerequisites of Antitoxin.**—That a union between toxin and cell is a necessary prerequisite for the formation of antitoxin is supported by the fact that the frog and turtle form no antitoxin. It should be remembered, however, that the mere failure to produce symptoms does not necessarily indicate that no union between toxin and body cells has taken place. The alligator and the hen, for example, though highly resistant to tetanus, nevertheless form antitoxin in considerable amounts, apparently because the toxin unites with other tissues than the central nervous system, and these other tissues furnish the antitoxin without, however, giving rise to the characteristic nervous manifestations of the disease. The formation of antibodies may be a purely local phenomenon. Thus Römer produced an immunity to abrin by dropping it into one eye of a rabbit and then showed that the conjunctiva of this eye contained abundant antitoxin, whereas the conjunctiva of the opposite eye contained little or none.

## Bactericidal Properties of Blood Serum

When an infecting microörganism produces symptoms mainly through a soluble toxin, the subsequent immunity is due largely to the formation of a specific antitoxin. In most infectious diseases, however, no soluble toxin is formed and the subsequent immunity is due to some mechanism



which acts against the bacteria themselves. It is an antibacterial immunity. Such an immunity may depend either upon changes in the body fluids (humoral immunity) or upon changes in the activities of the body cells and particularly of the leukocytes that come into the neighborhood of the infecting bacteria (cellular immunity).

**Alexins.**—The natural bactericidal properties of blood were indicated by John Hunter's observations that blood does not decompose so readily as do other putrescible materials. Many years passed, however, before it became possible for Nuttall and others to show that when bacteria are added to fresh blood or blood serum a considerable number could be destroyed, and that heating the blood to  $60^{\circ}$  C. caused it to lose this property. The substances which killed the bacteria were spoken of as alexins.

**Bacteriolysis.**—In certain forms of immunity the bactericidal properties of the blood are increased. Pfeiffer found that when cholera spirilla were injected into the peritoneal cavity of an immunized guinea-pig they rapidly disintegrated (bacteriolysis); whereas the same amount injected into the peritoneal cavity of a non-immune animal multiplied and caused death. If other bacteria were used, no difference could be observed between the normal and the cholera-immune animals. The reaction was, therefore, a specific one. Pfeiffer showed, furthermore, that if serum from an immunized animal were mixed with the spirilla and the mixture were injected into the peritoneal cavity of a normal guinea-pig, the spirilla were rapidly destroyed just as in an immune animal, and that this occurred even though the immune serum had previously been heated so as to destroy completely its bactericidal properties.

**TWO SUBSTANCES OF IMMUNE SERUM.**—Bacteriolysis has also been observed and studied outside of the animal body. Fresh normal serum has little effect upon the cholera spirilla. Serum from an immune animal has a powerful bacteriolytic action but loses this when heated to  $60^{\circ}$  C. If, however, the heated immune serum be mixed with fresh normal serum it regains its bacteriolytic properties. Evidently two substances are present in such bacteriolytic serum. One is heat resistant and is contained in the immune serum. The other is readily destroyed by heat and is present in normal as well as in immune serum.

**OTHER REACTIONS OF SAME TYPE; HEMOLYSIS.**—Further studies have shown that the development of bacteriolytic properties in response to bacterial injections is but one of a general group of reactions of this type. Various foreign cells when injected into an animal may give rise to the production of specific cytolytic substances. The reactions following the injection of alien red blood corpuscles have been particularly studied. If the erythrocytes of an animal *A* be injected into an animal *B*, the blood serum of *B* frequently acquires the property of hemolyzing the erythrocytes of *A*. This hemolysis, like the bacteriolysis produced by immune serum, is due to the action of two substances. The first, which

is resistant to moderate heat, is greatly increased during the process of immunization and it is specific for the corpuscles injected. It is spoken of as the immune body, the amboceptor or the sensitizer. The second, which is readily destroyed by heat, is not increased during immunization. It is called the complement.

### *Amboceptor and Complement*

When a specific hemolytic serum prepared by injecting foreign red corpuscles into an animal is heated to  $55^{\circ}$  C. for an hour, the complement is destroyed and the hemolyzing properties disappear. The serum is said to have become inactivated. Inactivation does not, however, destroy the amboceptor, for the hemolytic properties are restored by the addition of fresh non-immune serum which contains complement but in itself may cause no hemolysis.

**Affinity of Red Cells for Specific Amboceptor.**—The red corpuscles possess a strong affinity for their specific amboceptors. When mixed with an inactivated immune serum and later separated by centrifugalization they carry the amboceptor out with them. The serum loses some or all of its amboceptor and the red cells are now readily hemolyzed by the complement of normal sera. When red cells are mixed with a hemolytic serum at a temperature of  $0^{\circ}$  C. no hemolysis occurs. If the cells are then separated from the serum without raising its temperature they carry the amboceptor out with them, but leave the complement behind. At this low temperature a union occurs between the cells and the amboceptor, but the complement does not fix itself to the cells and no hemolysis occurs.

**Formation and Action of Amboceptor.**—We have seen that immunization against foreign cells causes a marked increase in the amount of amboceptor in the blood. Ehrlich conceives that material from the injected cells, like antigens in general, is bound by certain "side-chains" on the body cells and that the subsequent multiplication and liberation of these side-chains give rise to the amboceptors which have a special affinity for the injected cells. Unlike antitoxins, however, these immune bodies require the presence of a second substance, the complement, in order to manifest their activity. Ehrlich believes that the complement is unable to unite with the foreign cells directly and that it does this only through the medium of the amboceptors. Schematically his views are expressed in Figure 112.

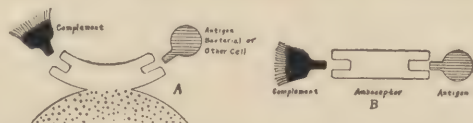


Fig. 112.—The Relation of Amboceptor to Antigen and to Complement, According to Ehrlich.

**BORDET'S OPPOSING HYPOTHESIS.**—Bordet, on the other hand, believes that no definite proof has been offered for the view that the ambo-

ceptor acts as an intermediary body between cell and complement. He believes that the immune body, which he calls the sensitizer, unites with the cells and changes them in some way so that they become sensitive to

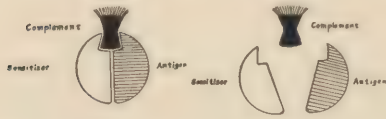


Fig. 113.—The Relation of Sensitizer and Antigen to Complement, as Given by Zinsser, to Represent the View of Bordet. (Redrawn from Zinsser, "Infection and Resistance.")

the direct action of the complement. The exact nature of the change is not known, but the point is emphasized that the complement unites not with the amboceptor alone but with the cell itself, after the latter has been properly prepared by absorption of amboceptor. Ehrlich and his school have sought to support their view by proving that

union between the amboceptor and complement may occur without the participation of the antigenic cells, but the evidence thus far submitted has not received general acceptance.

**CHEMICAL PROPERTIES OF AMBOCEPTOR.**—Concerning the nature of the amboceptor relatively little is known. We have seen that it is resistant to moderate heat. It may be preserved for long periods of time, particularly when kept in the dark and at a low temperature. Its colloidal character is indicated by the fact that it does not pass through an animal membrane. It is precipitated with the globulins of the blood serum but its protein nature is not established.

**SITE OF FORMATION.**—The specific immune bodies against the cholera spirilla are formed particularly in the spleen, the bone marrow, and the lymphatic glands, yet the removal of the spleen does not materially affect this formation in the body. Amboceptor may also be formed locally and has been demonstrated to be most abundant in the region where the foreign cells have been injected.

**Characteristics of Complement.**—The complement is very sensitive to heat and is quickly destroyed by temperatures of  $50^{\circ}$  to  $60^{\circ}$  C. When serum is preserved the amount of the complement diminishes rapidly. Immunization does not increase the amount of complement in the body. Furthermore, the complement has not the highly specific character of the amboceptor, and apparently the same complement may enter into a variety of reactions provided the proper antigen and amboceptor are present.

### ***Isohemolysins—Autohemolysins***

We have seen that it is possible to induce the formation of specific hemolysins by the injection of red corpuscles from animals of one species into animals of a different species. The injection of red corpuscles from one animal into other animals of the same species may or may not lead to the production of hemolytic substances against the injected corpuscles. When such hemolysins are formed they are spoken of as isohemolysins. Isohemolysins may also occur naturally, and they account for some of the



occasional accidents which have followed the direct transfusion of blood from one individual into another of the same species (page 629). When an animal is injected with his own red corpuscles no hemolysins against these are formed, nor do autohemolysins normally result from the disintegration of blood within the body. The immune reactions of which hemolysis may be taken as an example, are reactions against foreign cells and that they do not ordinarily occur when cells disintegrate within the body.

### *Specificity of Cytolysins*

The statement that immune bodies are specific for the cells injected requires certain modifications. Cytolysins affect not only the cells used for their production but also closely related cells, and by determining the extent to which this occurs one may estimate the biological relationship between different types of cells. It has been found, for example, that when an isohemolytic serum has been prepared by injecting the red corpuscles of one animal into another of the same species, this serum not only destroys the red corpuscles of the animal which has furnished them but also destroys the red corpuscles of certain other animals of the same species. On the other hand, it is inactive against corpuscles of the treated animal as well as against the red corpuscles of certain other animals of the same species. On the basis of such a test, therefore, one may establish biological relationships or differences between groups of animals belonging to a single species.

**Cytolysins Specific for the Animal Rather Than the Organ.**—Different tissues from a single individual usually show similar biological reactions. As a rule, cytolysins prepared by the injection of washed and macerated tissues have been toxic not only for the tissues used, but also for other tissues, particularly the red corpuscles. Specific antibodies have been prepared not only against the red corpuscles but against spermatozoa, ciliated epithelium and other tissues. To this rule the crystalline lens forms an interesting exception. Guyer and Smith injected lens cytotoxin into female rabbits about ten days after impregnation. The eyes of the mothers were not affected but the eyes of a small proportion of the newborn rabbits showed various defects; and these eye defects, when once secured, could be transmitted to subsequent generations through inbreeding. Attempts to produce specific lesions in various organs by the injection of cytolysins have frequently failed; because the cytolytic damaged tissues other than the organ for which it was prepared and particularly the red corpuscles. By preliminary treatment of a nephrotoxic serum with red corpuscles, however, Oliver succeeded in producing characteristic kidney lesions in injected animals. From the biological standpoint, therefore, the relationship is, as a rule, more intimate between the various cells of a single species than between the corresponding cells (e. g., the red corpuscles) of different species.

*Immunity and the Bactericidal Properties of Blood Serum*

The increased bactericidal properties of the serum in animals immunized against cholera, typhoid, and certain other infections, raised the hope that herein might be found an explanation for all those forms of immunity that depend upon the antibacterial activities of the infected animal. It soon appeared, however, that this generalization was not correct. In many infections and particularly in those produced by the pneumococcus, the streptococcus and the anthrax bacillus, the bactericidal properties of the blood serum do not run parallel to the degree of immunity.

**Further Objections to Bactericidal Theory.**—Furthermore, animals that have been immunized against cholera or typhoid and that yield strongly bactericidal sera and are quite resistant to intraperitoneal injections of these bacilli, may yet be relatively susceptible to infection if the same bacteria are introduced subcutaneously or by way of the alimentary tract. Possibly the local character of these infections may interfere with the protective activities of the body fluids or possibly the doses given were relatively large when compared with the small numbers that probably suffice to produce the natural diseases in man.

Those who have opposed the bactericidal doctrine of immunity furthermore emphasize the fact that bacteria may persist in the bodies of so-called bacillus carriers for years, even though the blood serum possesses marked bactericidal properties. This persistence undoubtedly depends in part upon the local conditions about the infection which interfere with the free access of the body fluids. In addition, it depends upon the fact that under these circumstances a strain of bacteria is developed that is resistant to the antibacterial activities of the blood serum. The bacteria have become "serum fast."

Those who support the bactericidal doctrine of immunity now admit its limitations, first as regards certain infections, such as those with anthrax bacilli and the cocci, and second as regards certain local infections and infections with "serum fast" organisms. Nevertheless, they maintain that in certain infectious diseases, such as typhoid and cholera, an increased bactericidal activity of the body fluids plays an important part in warding off subsequent infection with the relatively small numbers of organisms that ordinarily enter the body at any one time.

**Antibacterial Substances Present in Plasma.**—From the first, Metchnikoff and his school have opposed the entire humoral doctrine of immunity, and have emphasized the importance of the phagocytic activity of certain cells in protecting the body against the infectious diseases. They have maintained that the antibacterial properties of blood serum do not exist in the unshed blood plasma, and that the serum owes its bactericidal properties to substances derived from the leukocytes during

the process of clotting. The question is a difficult one to decide, for it is practically impossible to prove that the bactericidal properties of blood may not have changed after its withdrawal from the blood vessels. However, the majority of those who have worked with cell-free blood plasma that has been kept from coagulating by various means have found that such plasma possesses the same bactericidal properties as blood serum. It seems highly probable, therefore, that these antibacterial substances are present as such in the body fluids and that they are not formed after the blood has been drawn.

**Antibacterial Immunity Complex and Varied.**—The controversy between those who supported the humoral theory of immunity, and those who attributed immunity to the phagocytic action of certain cells in the body, has shown that the immunity which depends upon the antibacterial activities of the body is of a complex nature and is not the same in all cases. In certain diseases, the body owes at least a part of its immunity solely to changes in the body fluids. In other diseases, more dependence is placed upon the direct activity of the body cells. Even here, however, as we shall see, the activity of the cells is greatly influenced by substances present in the body fluids (see Opsonins). Thus the discussion as to which doctrine is correct has given way to attempts to determine the relative parts played by cells and fluids in various types of infection.

## Complement Fixation

In studying the mechanism of immunity a number of methods have been discovered which have proved of great value in the diagnosis of infections. Among these is the method of complement fixation. Bordet and Gengou showed that when heated immune serum was mixed with the specific bacteria used in its production the mixture was capable of fixing the complement in a fresh non-immune serum. If red corpuscles and their specific immune bodies were subsequently added to this mixture no hemolysis occurred, because all of the complement had been fixed by the bacteria and their immune bodies. These relationships are represented graphically in terms of the Ehrlich hypothesis in the accompanying diagram.

Later Gengou showed that the complement fixation reaction was not limited to mixtures of cells and their specific antibodies, but that it also occurred when various dissolved proteins, such as egg white, dog's serum, etc., were brought in con-

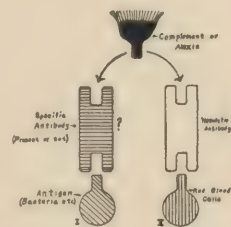


Fig. 114.—Schematic Representation of the Complement Fixation Reaction. If the Blood Contains a Specific Antibody for a Given Antigen, It Will Fix the Complement and the Subsequent Addition of Red Cells and Their Specific Antibodies Cause No Hemolysis. If Hemolysis Occurs It Indicates an Absence of the Specific Antibody for a Given Antigen. (Redrawn from Zinsser, "Infection and Resistance.")



tact with the sera of animals which had previously received injections of these same proteins.

**Method of Using Test.**—The great value of complement fixation, both as a practical diagnostic measure and as a means of approaching certain theoretical problems, has now been conclusively proven. The blood serum of patients suspected of suffering from a given infection is first heated and is then mixed with the microorganisms in question, or, better still, with extracts derived from these organisms. To this mixture fresh serum containing complement is added. After allowing the mixture to stand for a time, red corpuscles from another animal together with an inactivated immune hemolytic serum (amboceptor) against these corpuscles are added. If the complement in the fresh serum has been fixed by the original mixture, no hemolysis occurs. The antibodies in the patient's serum have united with the antigen added and this combination has fixed the complement present. The suspected serum from the patient contains antibodies against the disease in question. If, on the other hand, hemolysis occurs, the complement was not fixed and no antibodies against the disease in question were present in the patient's serum.

**Applications of Complement Fixation.**—The complement fixation test has been used with success in the diagnosis of chronic gonorrheal infections, glanders, echinococcus disease and tuberculosis. It has proved a very delicate test for recognizing the origin of certain proteins and particularly for determining the source of very small amounts of blood, being more sensitive than the precipitin test that will be described later.

**WASSERMANN REACTION FOR SYPHILIS.**—The complement fixation test has found its widest practical application in the diagnosis of syphilis. Wassermann's discovery of this reaction was based upon the reasoning already given. Organs rich in spirochetes were extracted. This extract when mixed with the blood serum of syphilitic patients was found to fix complement and to prevent hemolysis when red cells and their specific immune amboceptors were subsequently added to the mixture. Later work has shown, however, that it is not necessary to use organs containing the spirochetes of syphilis in performing the Wassermann reaction. Extracts prepared from the heart muscle as well as other organs of normal animals will also fix complement when mixed with the blood serum of syphilitics. Even a one per cent solution of commercial lecithin has been used for this purpose. Furthermore, extracts prepared from pure cultures of syphilitic spirochetes do not regularly fix complement when mixed with syphilitic blood and they cannot be used in practical diagnostic work. It is evident, therefore, that the Wassermann reaction does not depend upon a fixation of complement by a union of substances derived from the spirochetes with antibodies present in the patient's blood. From the theoretical standpoint it is not a specific test for the *spirocheta pallida*. The nature of the reaction is by no means clear. Most antigens which have been used

successfully in Wassermann tests are of a lipoidal character, and it would seem that these combine with some substance present in the serum of syphilitic patients, and that this combination is capable of fixing complement.

Despite the fact that the Wassermann reaction has been shown to depend upon other substances than the syphilitic spirochetes, its great value in the diagnosis of syphilis has been amply proven by innumerable clinical tests. The reaction is practically never obtained with blood serum of normal individuals. Experience has shown, indeed, that it may be positive in certain other diseases than syphilis, among which are yaws, trypanosomiasis, scarlet fever, etc. Its diagnostic value is not greatly lessened by this fact, for these diseases are either rare in temperate climates or they can be readily differentiated from syphilis by other means.

## Agglutination

In studying the effect of immune sera upon the bacteria used in immunization, it was early noted that when minute quantities of such sera were added to a liquid suspension of the homologous bacteria the latter often formed clumps. This phenomenon is called agglutination. If a hanging drop preparation is studied under the microscope, it is seen that motile bacteria soon lose their motility and then gradually gather together into groups, leaving the intervening fluid free of microorganisms. If the bacterial suspension and the immune serum are mixed in small test tubes the process becomes evident by the disappearance of the uniform cloudiness and the formation of a sediment composed of the clumped bacilli.

**Method for Identifying Bacteria.**—The phenomenon of agglutination is relatively specific for the microorganisms used, and it has found a variety of applications. On the one hand, the serum of an animal immunized against a particular strain of bacteria may be used for the purpose of identifying unknown bacteria. For example, Cole and his associates have recently used this method for the rapid recognition of the various types of pneumococcus present in patients suffering from pneumonia.

**Agglutination Tests in Infections.**—On the other hand, the serum of a patient suffering from an acute infection may be tested to determine whether or not it contains agglutinins with respect to known bacteria. This test has proved of particular value in the recognition of typhoid fever, paratyphoid fever, Malta fever, and dysentery. Experimentally, a large number of agglutinins have been produced. The practical diagnostic value of the reaction is restricted, however, by the fact that agglutinins usually do not develop until rather late in the disease. Where an infection, such as typhoid fever, is prolonged, the development of agglu-

tinative properties after seven to ten days of the disease may still be of great diagnostic value. In more acute infections, such as plague, however, an equally late development of agglutinins robs the test of much of its practical value.

Agglutination occurs with non-motile as well as with motile organisms. It may also be obtained with dead organisms, a fact which has been utilized in the Ficker method of diagnosing typhoid fever.

**Quantitative Tests Necessary.**—Agglutination tests are specific only in a quantitative sense. In low dilutions the sera of certain normal individuals agglutinate the typhoid bacilli. In order to eliminate this source of error in diagnostic work it is necessary to dilute the serum tested, dilutions of one to forty being commonly used. The origin of the agglutinins in normal sera is not known, but the interesting fact that they are not present in the new-born suggests the possibility that they may have arisen from very mild unrecognized infections with typhoid or with related organisms, or that they may be due to the absorption of bacterial products from the intestines. The necessity for quantitative agglutination tests has also become apparent from the study of the sera of highly immunized animals. It has been found that such sera not only agglutinate the organisms used during immunization, but that they may also agglutinate other strains of bacteria. For example, the sera of animals which have been immunized against typhoid agglutinate not only the *Bacillus typhosis* but also suspensions of paratyphoid bacilli and even colon or other bacteria. The latter, however, are never agglutinated in as high dilutions as is the typhoid bacillus. Furthermore, if any of these other organisms are added to the immune serum and later separated by centrifugalization they remove all or nearly all the agglutinins that act upon them, but leave behind the major part of the typhoid agglutinin. It is evident, therefore, that the agglutinins formed in response to immunization with typhoid bacilli are of various kinds. Some of these, the so-called group agglutinins, react with the certain other bacteria, while others are strictly specific for the typhoid bacillus alone. The specificity of an immune serum can, therefore, be demonstrated either by using high dilutions or by absorption experiments.

**Failure to Agglutinate at Low Dilutions.**—Quantitative tests have also shown that in certain cases the immune serum agglutinates better at high than at low dilutions. The cause of this anomaly is not well understood. It has been suggested that "proagglutinoids" may be present which unite with the bacteria but do not produce agglutination, and that these prevent the union with the true agglutinins. On the other hand, it is possible that here, as in other colloidal reactions, the substances must be mixed in definite proportions in order to produce the reaction.

**Resistant Strains of Bacilli.**—Quantitative studies have also shown that agglutination depends not only upon the agglutinative strength of



the serum used but also upon the bacteria. An excess of bacteria in the mixture may interfere with the reaction. More important, however, is the fact that certain strains of bacilli are relatively resistant to agglutination. It has been noted repeatedly that typhoid bacilli, freshly isolated from the blood of patients suffering from the disease, are relatively resistant to agglutination, and the same is true if bacteria are cultivated in an inactivated immune serum. This resistance to agglutination is usually associated with an increased resistance to bacteriolysis by the immune serum. It indicates that bacteria may develop a certain immunity to the attacks of the host. They become serum fast. The exact cause of this resistance to agglutination is not well understood, but it seems to depend upon some change in the bacteria whereby a union with the agglutinins is interfered with.

**Agglutination of Other Cells.**—The phenomenon of agglutination is not restricted to bacteria but also occurs when immune sera, prepared by the injection of other foreign cells into the body, are mixed with the cells used. Red corpuscles, for example, are agglutinated by a homologous immune serum after the hemolyzing properties have been destroyed by heating. Indeed, the blood sera of certain normal individuals agglutinate the red corpuscles of certain other individuals of the same species, and human bloods have been divided into several classes, the classification being based on the presence of such "iso-agglutinins." The practical significance of such substances in the transfusion of human blood is discussed elsewhere (page 629).

**Agglutinins in Ehrlich Theory.**—According to Ehrlich's theory, agglutinins, like other antibodies, are molecular complexes or side-chains, which combine with the proteins of foreign cells and which are given off from the body cells in consequence of a previous union of the foreign proteins with the body cells (page 533). Ehrlich conceives that the agglutinins consist of two portions. The one unites with the foreign protein, while the other causes agglutination. His views are expressed in Figure 115.

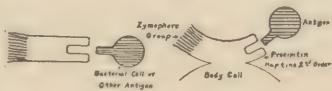


Fig. 115.—Schematic Representation of the Formation and Reaction of Precipitins, According to Ehrlich.

**Nature of Agglutinin Reaction Obscure.**—The nature of the reaction between the agglutinins and the cells which they agglutinate is not well understood. The reaction does not depend upon the motility or flagellated character of the reacting organisms, for non-motile, non-flagellated bacteria may be agglutinated by their homologous sera. The reaction has many features in common with the precipitation of proteins by their specific precipitins and it seems probable indeed that the two reactions are identical in character. The nature of precipitins will be discussed at the end of the next section.

## The Precipitin Reaction

In studying the formation of agglutinins it was noted by R. Kraus that when the sera of animals which have been treated with bacterial proteins were mixed in proper proportions with clear solutions of these proteins a precipitate was formed in the mixture. This reaction is a general one and can be obtained after almost any soluble protein has been injected into an animal. Precipitins like agglutinins withstand temperatures of  $56^{\circ}$  C. but are injured or destroyed at higher temperatures ( $70^{\circ}$  C. or over). In neither case does the serum complement take part in the reaction.

**Used for Identification of Proteins.**—The reaction between a protein and its precipitin evidently belongs to the general group of immune reactions. It has found its main application, however, in the identification of various proteins and particularly in the recognition of the source of blood stains; a question that is often of great importance in forensic medicine. Like agglutination the precipitin reaction is relatively specific for the protein used. By immunizing an animal against human blood serum, for example, it is possible to produce precipitins of such potency that when mixed with human serum, diluted even to one hundred thousand times, a precipitate is still formed. In practice the blood serum is usually diluted one thousand times. When antihuman serum is mixed with the blood serum of another animal no precipitate ordinarily results. Only the sera of the higher monkeys and particularly of the chimpanzee, the gorilla and the orang, give results at all comparable to those obtained with human sera, though even here not in such high dilutions. Blood sera from other monkeys may give precipitates with antihuman serum at low dilutions, or again they may fail to react at all. It is evident, therefore, that precipitin tests may shed light upon the biological relationship of animals—a fact which has been successfully used in deciding certain disputed points in zoölogy.

**Organ Specificity and Species Specificity.**—The antisera produced by the injection of different fluids or organ extracts from a given species of animals react not only with the fluids or extracts used, but also with most other protein solutions prepared from this same species. They fail to react with most proteins from other animal species. Here then, as in the case of the cytolytic sera (page 539), it is evident that a closer biological relationship exists between different organs of the same animal species than between the same organs of different animal species. To this rule the crystalline lens is an exception, for it is possible to produce a lens precipitin which does not react with the blood serum of the animal used but which does react with the lens protein of animals of different species. Protein from the crystalline lens, therefore,

shows an "organ specificity" but not a "species specificity." Substances from the testis may also show an organ specificity.

**Failure from Excess of Either Substance.**—The precipitation reaction may fail when either of the two reacting substances is present in excess. This is shown in the following table taken from Zinsser's "Infection and Resistance" (page 253):

Anti-sheep Serum from Rabbit	Sheep Serum 0.5 c.c. of Following Dilutions	Precipitation
0.5 c.c.....	1:10	+ -
0.5 c.c.....	1:100	+++
0.5 c.c.....	1:500	+++
0.5 c.c.....	1:1000	++
0.5 c.c.....	1:5000	+
0.5 c.c.....	1:10000	0

**EXPLANATORY THEORIES.**—We have already noted that a somewhat similar relationship exists with respect to agglutination and that in some instances agglutination takes place more readily at fairly high than at very low dilutions of the serum. Ehrlich conceives that precipitins like agglutinins contain two distinct atomic complexes. One of these combines with the protein against which the antibodies are prepared, while the other causes the specific reaction. He explains the occasional failure of agglutination, when agglutinins are in excess, by assuming that there are present in the immune serum "proagglutinins" which unite with the bacteria without causing agglutination and which prevent the union of the true agglutinins. It is possible, however, as Zinsser and others have pointed out, that such failures may be due to the colloidal character of the reacting substances, for it is well known that colloidal reactions take place only when the reacting substances are present in the proper proportions. An excess of either may interfere with the precipitation or agglutination which would otherwise take place.

## Phagocytosis

### *General Principles*

When a cell possessing ameboid motion is placed in close relation to foreign particles or cells it not infrequently moves toward these foreign bodies, engulfs them in its interior and digests them. The motion of the cell toward a foreign particle is probably determined by chemical substances emanating from the latter and is spoken of as *chemotaxis*. The engulfing of foreign particles by the cell is spoken of as *phagocytosis*. The disappearance of the foreign body within the cell is due to *intracellular solution or digestion*.

**Influences Determining Migration of Motile Cells.**—These phenomena



are more or less independent of one another. They have been studied not only in the special case of ameboid cells derived from the bodies of higher animals, but also in unicellular organisms and in the lower plants and animals. The migration of motile cells and organisms is determined by a variety of influences, such as light, heat, gravity and the chemical constitution of the surrounding medium. The latter is of dominant importance in determining the ameboid movements of cells in the bodies of higher animals. Chemical substances may attract or repel motile cells and organisms, the effects varying with the chemical substances used, their concentration and character of the cells or organisms experimented upon. When ameboid cells are attracted, the phenomenon is called positive chemotaxis; when repelled, negative chemotaxis.

**Phagocytosis Due in Part to Chemotaxis.**—The engulfing of solid particles by motile ameboid cells, which is called phagocytosis, is in many cases at least an extension of the process of chemotaxis. The motile cell not only moves toward the region of the attracting chemical substances but having arrived there it surrounds the foreign body. In addition, it seems possible that mere contact with a solid particle may in some cases cause the phagocytic cell to enclose it. Chemically inert substances such as particles of coal dust or India-ink are often taken up by phagocytic cells.

**Reaction Between Cell and Foreign Particle.**—The subsequent fate of the foreign body within the phagocytic cell is determined by the mutual reaction between the cell and the foreign particle. Not infrequently the particle can be seen to undergo disintegration, apparently because it is digested by the intracellular ferments of the phagocytic cell. Proteolytic ferments have been prepared from the bodies of amebae, and the intracellular digestion in this case serves the useful purposes of nutrition. Polynuclear leukocytes also contain proteolytic ferments, which are active in an alkaline solution. On the other hand, the engulfed particles may exert a deleterious effect upon the cells which contain them; and bacteria, especially if taken in excessive numbers, may destroy the phagocytic cells.

**Physical Explanation for Chemotaxis and Phagocytosis.**—Attempts have been made to explain the phenomena of chemotaxis and phagocytosis in accordance with well-known physical and chemical laws. When small particles of one liquid are suspended in another liquid in which they are insoluble, the individual particles in suspension tend to assume spherical forms by virtue of the phenomenon of surface tension. If, for any reason, this surface tension is diminished on one side of the particle the latter loses its spherical shape and fluid is pushed out in the direction of the lessened surface tension. A "pseudopodium" is thus formed and the whole drop tends to move in the direction of the "pseudopodium." When it reaches a foreign body that diminishes the surface tension of the droplet, the for-

eign body becomes surrounded by the "artificial ameba." Such phenomena have been produced by a variety of methods. If a drop of mercury be placed in a dish of water rendered acid with nitric acid, its surface tension can be changed by placing a crystal of potassium bichromate in its neighborhood. This local reduction of surface tension causes the mercury to send out a pseudopodium toward the crystal and to move toward it. Similarly when a drop of chloroform is suspended in water and a particle of shellac is brought into its immediate vicinity, the chloroform drop envelops the particle of shellac and eventually dissolves it. If shellac has been painted on a particle of glass, the latter is engulfed as before. After the shellac has been removed, however, the drop of chloroform casts out the "indigestible" particle of glass. All of these processes so closely resemble the chemotactic and phagocytic activities of leukocytes and of certain lower forms of life that it seems certain that these also are to a large extent governed by the phenomena of surface tension and solution.

### *Chemotaxis in Higher Animals*

When suspensions of pus-producing cocci are injected into the tissues of an animal, they soon become surrounded by a zone of inflammation containing numerous polynuclear leukocytes. These leukocytes are attracted to the locality by positive chemotactic substances emanating from the cocci. Such positive chemotactic substances have been extracted from various bacteria, and collections of leukocytes have been produced by their injection. It has been demonstrated, furthermore, that not only bacterial extracts but a variety of other substances have the power of attracting leukocytes in the animal body. Among these are turpentine, croton oil, and certain vegetable proteins (aleuronat). Probably also the disintegration of tissue gives rise to substances having a positive chemotactic influence upon the polynuclear leukocytes.

**Increase of Polynuclear Cells in Circulating Blood.**—In addition to the local collection of polynuclear cells at the point of infection, there is often also an increase in the number of these cells in the circulating blood. This increase is believed to be due to the escape of positive chemotactic substances from the point of infection into the blood. There they attract leukocytes out of the tissues and particularly out of their place of formation, the bone marrow. From the latter region not only mature leukocytes enter the blood stream but there may also be an entrance of immature cells with relatively few nuclei and even of myelocytes (page 639). The signs of active regeneration seen in the bone marrow are due in part to this loss of cells.

**ABSENCE OF LEUKOCYTOSIS IN SOME INFECTIONS.**—The polynuclear leukocytosis which is present in many infectious diseases can thus be

explained in a fairly satisfactory manner. Why it should be absent in other infections is less clear. Overwhelming infections with the pneumococcus, for example, may cause little or no leukocytosis, and the latter is usually absent in typhoid fever, influenza, and tuberculosis. That these organisms contain positive chemotactic substances has been demonstrated by the collection of leukocytes which follows their injection into the peritoneal cavities of animals. A strictly localized infection may possibly in some instances fail to discharge chemotactic substances into the blood, and an overwhelming dose may paralyze or damage the marrow cells rather than irritate them. In many cases, however, such as typhoid fever, the explanation for the absence of leukocytosis is not clear.

**Animal Parasites and Eosinophilic Polynuclears.**—Infections with various animal parasites not infrequently lead to a leukocytosis in which the predominating cells are the eosinophilic polynuclears. Apparently these parasites exert a chemotactic effect upon this variety of cells, which is similar to the chemotactic effect exerted by bacteria upon the polynuclear neutrophils.

### ***Phagocytosis in Higher Animals***

When a purulent peritoneal exudate, produced by the injection of cocci, is examined microscopically, it is seen that many of the bacteria have been ingested by leukocytes that have collected in the region of the inflammation. These ingested cocci may show various stages of degeneration and disintegration. Even in the milder types of infection the leukocytes which contain many cocci may disintegrate but ultimately all cocci are taken up by the leukocytes and are destroyed. In very severe infections the phagocytosis may be quite active at first. Later, however, the disintegration of the leukocytes becomes more marked until finally the bacteria grow freely in the peritoneal exudate. It is evident, therefore, that a distinct relationship exists between the ultimate outcome of the infection and the degree of phagocytosis. Upon this fact is based the theory that the fate of the animal depends upon the result of the conflict between the infecting bacteria, on the one hand, and the phagocytic cells, on the other.

**Metchnikoff's Macrophage and Microphage.**—Particular attention has been paid thus far to the phagocytosis of bacteria by the polynuclear leukocytes, which are most active in the earlier stages of an inflammation induced by the injection of suspensions of cocci into the tissues. If later examinations are made, however, it is seen that a considerable number of large mononuclear cells have appeared in the zone of inflammation and that these are taking up particles of cellular detritus and even the polynuclear leukocytes themselves. Metchnikoff has spoken of these large mononuclear phagocytic cells as the macrophages, in contradistinction to the polynuclear leukocytes or microphages. The latter



seem to be particularly active in the ingestion of bacteria. The former ingest more particularly cellular detritus, extravasated red corpuscles, foreign bodies of various kinds and bacteria that produce chronic types of infection. It seems probable that cells of this type located in sinuses of the spleen, and to a lesser extent in the capillaries of the lymphatic glands, the bone marrow and the liver (Kuppfer's cells), normally remove from the circulation decrepit red corpuscles and finely divided particles of various kinds. These macrophages seem to arise from fixed cells of the tissues and are of connective tissue origin. Cells of similar appearance take up foreign particles in the lungs and these "dust cells" probably arise from the lining of the pulmonary alveoli. From the standpoint of infection, the macrophages are of particular importance in the later stages of the infection when they serve to remove the accumulated detritus as well as some of the bacteria. In certain types of infection and particularly in chronic infections, such as leprosy, they seem to play a more direct part by engulfing the bacteria.

### *Relation of Phagocytosis to Immunity*

We have seen that, in certain instances, the severity of the infection and its probable outcome may be correlated with the degree of phagocytosis which takes place in the infected area. In discussing the relation of bacteriolysis to immunity, it was also pointed out that the phenomenon of bacteriolysis could not account for all types of immunity (page 540). This has been particularly exemplified in the case of infections with anthrax bacilli. Metchnikoff showed that no definite relationship exists between natural resistance to anthrax infections and the bactericidal properties of the blood serum. Rabbit serum has a greater bactericidal effect upon anthrax bacilli than has dog serum; yet rabbits are very susceptible to the natural infection, whereas dogs are highly resistant. On the other hand, there is a close parallelism between the phagocytic activities of the leukocytes and the natural resistance to anthrax. Thus in frogs, chickens, and dogs, all naturally resistant to anthrax, there is an active phagocytosis if the bacilli are injected into these animals; whereas in rabbits and guinea-pigs, both highly susceptible, no marked phagocytosis occurs. Similar relationships between phagocytosis and immunity have also been found for streptococci, staphylococci and pneumococci. Furthermore, animals artificially immunized against these infections show a definite increase in the phagocytic activities of their leukocytes.

Objections have been raised to these experiments by those who have supported the humoral theory of immunity. Possibly the bacteria are first killed by the fluids of the body and the phagocytes act simply as scavengers, which remove the bodies of the dead bacteria and do not carry on an active fight against the disease. The numerous experiments

that have been performed to settle this question have demonstrated fairly conclusively that leukocytes ingest living as well as dead bacteria, and that after ingestion the living bacteria may be killed. This fact, together with the intimate relationship that exists between the degree of phagocytosis and the degree of natural or acquired immunity to certain infections, leaves little doubt but that phagocytosis plays an important part in protecting against many infections.

Metchnikoff has, however, gone much further and has opposed the entire humoral doctrine of immunity, claiming that all types of immunity depend solely upon the activity of the cells in the body. We have already expressed the view that the bactericidal properties of the blood serum, whether natural or acquired, are not due to changes that occur after the blood has been drawn but that they exist in the unchanged body fluids. If this be admitted one must certainly assign to the bactericidal properties of the body fluids some rôle in the protection against infection. The degree of this protection becomes a quantitative rather than a qualitative question and must be decided separately for each infection. Naturally, in the last analysis, the bactericidal substances are derived from the body cells, but that they come solely from the polynuclear leukocytes or that they are directly connected with phagocytosis is more than doubtful. Furthermore, we now know that the phagocytic activity of the leukocytes is governed in large measure by substances present in the body fluids (opsonins). It is evident, therefore, that no sharp line of demarcation can be drawn between humoral and cellular processes in immunity reactions.

**Types of Antibacterial Immunity.**—It would appear, therefore, that antibacterial as opposed to antitoxic immunity may be due either to bactericidal substances in the body fluids or to the phagocytic activities of the leukocytes and other cells in the body, or to combinations of these two protective mechanisms. The rôle played by each differs in different infections. Immunity to typhoid, cholera and related infections is intimately associated with an increase in the bactericidal properties of the body fluids. Immunity to anthrax and to the pathogenic cocci, on the other hand, probably depends mainly upon active phagocytosis. The exact quantitative rôle which each plays in different infections is more or less undetermined at the present time.

### *The Opsonins*

The increased phagocytosis, so frequently observed in animals that are naturally or artificially immune against an infection, was at first believed to depend upon changes in the activity of the leukocytes themselves. While the ability to perform phagocytosis undoubtedly does depend to some extent upon the activity of the cells, nevertheless the main

cause of variations in phagocytosis is a difference in the composition of the blood serum. Leukocytes from a non-immune animal, for example, show a certain degree of phagocytic activity when they are left in their own serum, but they become more actively phagocytic when placed in the serum of an immune animal. Further analysis of this phenomenon showed that washed leukocytes possess but little phagocytic activity against freshly cultivated bacteria. If, however, the bacteria are left in contact with immune serum and then separated by centrifugalization, they are readily taken up by washed leukocytes. Evidently the bacteria have absorbed from the serum certain substances which render them susceptible to phagocytosis. To these substances Wright has given the name of opsonins.

**Opsonins in Normal and Immune Sera.**—Opsonins are present in normal sera and they are increased in the sera of immunized animals, the increase being strictly specific for the microorganisms used during the immunization. Furthermore, according to Hektoen, there is during favorable cases of pneumonia a wavelike increase in the pneumococcus opsonins which reaches its height at the time of the crisis, whereas during fatal cases no such increase is demonstrable.

Concerning the structure of opsonins various views have been held. After a careful analysis of the available evidence, Zinsser came to the conclusion that "the full opsonic action both of normal and immune sera is dependent upon the coöperation of two bodies," one of which is comparable to the amboceptor that takes part in bacteriolysis, while the other is comparable to the complement. Whether or not the substances which prepare bacteria for phagocytosis are identical with the bacteriolytic constituents of the serum is at the present time an open question.

We thus see that the immunity due to phagocytosis is not a cellular immunity in the strict sense of the term, but that it is determined in large measure by the opsonins present in the body fluids.

### ***Bacterial Resistance to Phagocytosis***

Numerous studies have demonstrated that there is not infrequently a definite parallelism between the virulence of certain bacteria and their resistance to phagocytosis. Avirulent strains are readily engulfed by the leukocytes, whereas virulent strains resist phagocytosis. When virulence has been produced by passage through the animal body the associated resistance to phagocytosis, like the increased resistance to the agglutinative and bactericidal properties of the serum, indicates that the bacteria have developed a defensive mechanism against the attacks of the host. They have become "serum fast." For this reason the bacteria are able to maintain themselves in the body of the host, and upon this ability their virulence in large measure depends.



**Causes of Increased Bacterial Resistance to Phagocytosis.**—The exact cause of this increased resistance to phagocytosis is not well understood. Bail's view, that virulent bacteria secrete a substance which prevents the approach of the leukocytes, has not received general confirmation. Rosenow found that virulent, in contradistinction to avirulent pneumococci, failed to absorb opsonins from the serum. He found, furthermore, that a substance, virulin, could be extracted from the bodies of virulent pneumococci which had the property of neutralizing the opsonins of the blood serum. We have pointed out elsewhere that changes in virulence may be associated with changes in the exterior layers of infectious organisms. Capsulated strains of pneumococci and streptococci are in general more virulent than uncapsulated strains, and virulent colon bacilli may appear thicker than avirulent bacilli. This change in the exterior of bacteria may well bear a relation either to the absorption of opsonins or to their neutralization, but the exact mechanism in the different cases is still a subject of discussion.

## Anaphylaxis and Protein Sensitization

Proteins taken in the food are absorbed by the mucous membrane of the intestines only after they have been broken down by the action of the digestive juices into relatively simple compounds, the polypeptids and amino acids. After their absorption, these compounds are again built up into proteins; but the latter, as we have learned from precipitin and other biological reactions, are to a high degree specific for each animal species. When proteins are introduced into the body by other routes than the digestive tract, i. e., parenterally, they are not prepared for the body by alimentary digestion and subsequent synthesis, but come directly in contact with the cells of the body. The first injection of a foreign protein ordinarily causes no physiological disturbance. That a change has occurred in the animal, however, is evident from the fact that a second injection of the same protein given after a suitable interval may produce manifest or even dangerous symptoms. The first injection is said to have made the animal sensitive to the particular protein used, and this condition of hypersensitiveness is spoken of as anaphylaxis.

**The Sensitizing Dose.**—It is evident that the phenomena described may be analyzed into three components: (1) the introduction of the sensitizing dose; (2) the period of incubation; and (3) the introduction of the second or toxic dose. Various protein substances have been successfully used in sensitizing animals. It seems probable also that no substances other than those of a protein nature are capable of inducing sensitization. The quantity of protein that must be introduced in order to produce sensitization varies considerably with different species

of animals. The guinea-pig may be sensitized by very minute quantities. Thus Rosenau and Anderson were able to sensitize guinea-pigs by injecting 0.000,001 c.c. of horse serum, though doses of 0.01 c.c. are commonly employed for this purpose. In most experiments the animals have been sensitized by injecting the foreign protein into the blood, the peritoneal cavity or the subcutaneous tissues. Sensitization may, however, be produced in other ways. For example, it may be transmitted from the mother guinea-pig to her young. Guinea-pigs have also been sensitized by being fed horse serum, by instillation of horse serum into the conjunctival sac, by inhalation of horse serum sprays, by keeping them in horse stables, and finally by inunctions of horse serum ointments. These experiments are of particular interest in view of the fact that human individuals are sometimes highly sensitive to foreign proteins, even though no injection of such proteins has ever been given.

**Incubation Period.**—A certain time must elapse after introducing the sensitizing dose before the animal reacts to a second injection of the foreign protein. This incubation period varies from about one to three weeks in different animals and under different experimental conditions. Once developed, the hypersensitive condition persists for a variable period of time. In the guinea-pig and in man it usually lasts for years, whereas in the dog and the rabbit it may disappear after weeks or months.

**The Toxic Dose.**—The symptoms produced by the second or toxic dose differ according to the animal used, but they are fairly constant for a given species of animal no matter what proteins have been used for the injections. The dose required to produce toxic symptoms is in general much larger than the dose minimum required to produce sensitization, being for the guinea-pig from 200 to 2,000 times as large.

### ***Specificity of Anaphylaxis***

As a rule the injection of a foreign protein into an animal sensitizes it to this particular protein and not to others. The animal may, however, become more or less sensitized to closely related proteins. In studying anaphylaxis following the injection of the distinguishable, but closely related, proteins—gliadin from wheat and hordein from barley—Wells and Osborne found that animals sensitized to the one reacted to the other; though not so strongly as to the original protein used. A guinea-pig that has received an injection of horse serum is sensitized to subsequent injections of horse serum, but is unaffected by injections of goat or rabbit serum. If the sera of closely related animals are used, such as the chicken and the duck, cross sensitization may occur, presumably because some proteins in the complex sera are common to each.

**Species and Organ Specificity.**—In discussing precipitins it was pointed out that this biological reaction indicated that there is a more intimate biological relationship between the various proteins derived from

different organs of a given species of animals, than between proteins derived from the same organ of different species. The same rule holds with respect to the specificity of anaphylactic reactions. Extracts from various organs from a given species of animals produce crossed sensitization, whereas the extract from a given organ does not sensitize to the proteins of the same organ of a different animal species. The most noteworthy exception to this rule both in anaphylactic and in precipitin reactions is the protein from the crystalline lens which sensitizes to the lens proteins of different animals, but not to proteins derived from other organs of the same animal. Proteins from each organ also seem to show a certain amount of "organ specificity," for the treated animals are somewhat more sensitive to extracts of the same organ than to extracts made from other organs of the same animal.

### ***Anaphylactic Reactions in Different Animals***

Thus far we have spoken of the anaphylactic reaction in general terms without describing its physiological manifestations. These manifestations differ so markedly among different species of animals that no single description will apply to all cases. The physiological changes have been studied particularly in the guinea-pig, the rabbit, and the dog; but the diverse character of the reaction in these animals suggests that still further variations are possible in other animals.

#### **(a) The Guinea-pig**

After a guinea-pig, previously sensitized, has received an intravenous injection of a foreign protein, it remains quiet for about a minute. It then becomes restless, its hair becomes ruffled, it sneezes and rubs its nose. Within a few minutes it falls over and convulsions may occur. Soon respiratory difficulties appear and finally respiration ceases while the heart is still beating. At autopsy the lungs are found to be markedly distended and they do not collapse even when taken out of the body and cut into pieces. Auer and Lewis showed that this remarkable change in the lungs is due to a spasmodic closure of the finer bronchioles which finally causes the death of the animal from asphyxia. As in other conditions of bronchiolar obstruction this causes pulmonary distention.

#### **(b) The Rabbit**

Anaphylactic reactions are not obtained as regularly in the rabbit as in the guinea-pig. Two types have been described. The *local reaction* which occurs about repeated subcutaneous injections constitutes the so-called Arthus phenomenon. This local reaction consists in a local edema with infiltration which may persist for days or weeks. In very severe cases it leads to a local gangrene. The *general reaction* is obtained in only a





Fig. 116.—Typical Anaphylactic Lung in the Guinea-pig (Right) Compared with Collapsed Lung (Left). Both Taken from Sensitized Animals After a Second Injection of Horse Serum. The Animal With the Collapsed Lung, However, Had Received a Dose of Atropin Before Being Given the Second Injection of Serum. (From Auer, Forchheimer's "Therapeutics of Internal Diseases.")

small proportion of sensitized animals and then only when the toxic injection is given intravenously. After a preliminary quickening of the respiration the animal falls down with convulsive movements. Following the convulsions the animal lies motionless without breathing and palpation of the chest shows no cardiac movements. Acute distention of the lungs is usually absent in the rabbit. According to Auer, the cause of death is cardiac failure, for the heart shows both physiological and anatomical changes. According to Coca, the circulation through the lungs meets great resistance, apparently from muscular spasm of the pulmonary arterioles. If the rabbit survive the acute symptoms it may die later of cachexia. In this particular also it differs from the guinea-pig, for the latter animal either dies or makes a good recovery.

### (c) The Dog

If a sensitized dog be given an intravenous injection of protein there is at first a short period of excitement which is soon followed by a profound depression with weakness and vomiting. In this stage the animal may die or it may recover. There are no marked respiratory changes as in the guinea-pig and the cardiac changes observed in the rabbit are slight or absent. Anaphylactic shock in the dog is associated with a

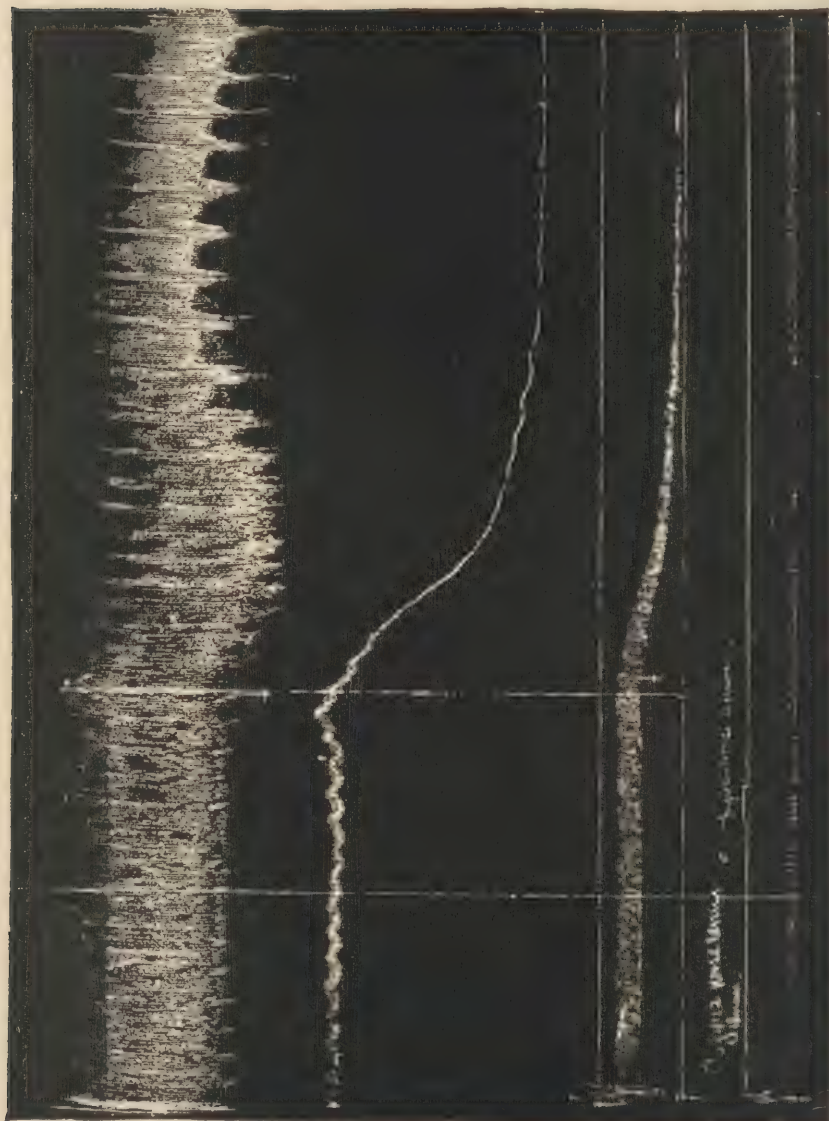


FIG. 117.—Anaphylactic Shock in the Dog. Upper Tracing Taken From the Heart; Second the Arterial Pressure, As Recorded by a Mercury Manometer; Lowest the Arterial Pressure As Recorded by a Membrane Manometer. (From Eisenbrey and Pearce, Jour. Pharmacol. and Exp. Therap.)

profound fall in the blood pressure, which reaches its lowest point about two minutes after the injection and only gradually returns to the normal. This fall in blood pressure is due to a dilatation of the blood vessels, especially in the splanchnic area, with a collection of blood in the abdominal veins and in the liver.

**Cause of the Differences in Reaction.**—It is evident therefore, that the same cause, the reinjection of a foreign protein, produces a different set of physiological reactions in each of these animals. In the guinea-pig, acute anaphylactic death is due to spasm of the bronchial musculature; in the rabbit it is due to cardiac failure, secondary perhaps to spasm of the pulmonary arterioles; while in the dog a marked fall of arterial pressure occurs, the stasis in the portal system being caused possibly by spasm of vessels in the liver. In each case the shock may be attributed to spasm of smooth muscle and the difference in different animals to anatomical differences in the smooth muscle of different parts of the body. Thus the guinea-pig shows an exceptional development of its bronchial musculature and the same is true of the pulmonary arteries of the rabbit and the hepatic veins of the dog.

**Other Changes During the Reaction.**—Various other physiological changes occur during the anaphylactic reaction in animals. Thus the isolated virgin uterus of a guinea-pig sensitized to horse serum contracts when a minute amount of horse serum is added to the liquid in which it is suspended. Intestinal peristalsis is often markedly increased during anaphylactic shock. In the dog, the liver seems to play an important part both in the sensitization of the animal and in the production of anaphylactic shock, for if the liver be excluded from the circulation by an Eck fistula no fall of blood pressure results from the second injection of the protein, and no reaction whatever occurs if the liver has been excluded from the circulation previous to the sensitizing dose. The dog's blood becomes less coagulable during the height of the anaphylactic shock and at the same time the polynuclear leukocytes practically disappear from the circulating blood. As the animal recovers a polynuclear leukocytosis appears. Mild or delayed reactions may cause an eosinophilic leukocytosis in the dog and guinea-pig. There is also a local eosinophilia in the lungs of guinea-pigs and in the subcutaneous edema of rabbits showing the Arthus phenomenon. Subacute anaphylactic shock may give rise to an acute fall of the body temperature. When smaller toxic doses are used fever may be produced.

### *Passive Anaphylaxis*

If the serum of an animal, rendered sensitive to a particular protein, be injected into a non-sensitive animal, the latter becomes sensitive to the protein used. It is therefore possible to transfer the anaphylactic



condition from one animal to another by means of the blood serum. Injection of this serum does not sensitize immediately. In the passive sensitization of guinea-pigs there is a latent period of at least four hours before the animal becomes sensitive. Some reaction apparently takes place between the injected serum and the cells of the recipient animal before the latter becomes sensitive.

### *Desensitization*

After an animal has recovered from anaphylactic shock it is for the time refractory to doses of the foreign protein which would otherwise be surely fatal. This refractory condition usually lasts only a few days or at most a few weeks and it is followed by a gradual return of sensitiveness. Apparently this desensitization depends upon an exhaustion or saturation of the antibodies which had been formed in response to the original injection of the foreign protein. Desensitization may be accomplished without shock if the antigen be injected slowly.

Sensitized animals may be refractory to anaphylaxis because free antibodies are present in the circulating blood in such number that the antigen is prevented from coming in contact with the intracellular antibodies. The isolated lungs of such guinea-pigs, washed free of blood, may be highly sensitive to the foreign protein (Manwaring and Kusama).

### *Theory of Anaphylaxis*

At first appearance, anaphylaxis seems the antithesis of immunity. The treated animal, instead of being less sensitive to the action of a particular protein (prophylactic action), becomes more sensitive (anaphylactic action). Yet anaphylaxis is beyond doubt intimately related to immunity and its study has thrown a flood of light upon the problems of infection. Studies on the nature of the anaphylactic reaction have centered particularly on whether the essential reaction occurs in the body cells or in the body fluids, and on the nature of the changes which give rise to the intoxication.

**Site of the Reaction.**—That anaphylactic phenomena may occur in the absence of body fluids has been proved by the experiments of Schultz and of Dale. The latter, for example, showed that the uterus of a sensitized animal, when washed free of blood and placed in Ringer's solution, exhibits a typical anaphylactic response if the protein used be added to the surrounding fluid. Similar experiments, repeated by various observers and with many modifications, indicate that the essential features of acute anaphylactic shock depend in part or perhaps entirely upon reactions occurring in the cells of the sensitive animal. The latent period required for passive sensitization is interpreted as the time taken for the antibodies introduced with the serum to penetrate and influence the tissue cells.

To what extent an antigen-antibody reaction in the circulating blood contributes to the phenomena of anaphylactic shock is less certain, but it seems probable that this may also be of importance.

**Nature of the Reaction.**—The inherent difficulty of studying the nature of the anaphylactic reaction within the tissue cells has restricted studies of this character to the changes that occur when the antigen is added to the serum of sensitized animals. These have shown that under proper conditions toxic substances may result from such a mixture.

Vaughan has shown that, when proteins of bacterial, vegetable or animal origin are exposed to the action of weak alkalis dissolved in absolute alcohol, they are split into two classes of substances, the one poisonous and the other non-poisonous. He conceives that similar changes occur when a foreign protein is introduced parenterally into the body, through the action of cellular ferments. In untreated animals, the amount of ferment available for this purpose is small. Consequently, the digestion takes place slowly and the toxic group is not liberated with sufficient speed to cause symptoms. After an injection of foreign protein, however, the specific ferment is increased. When the same protein is subsequently injected, it is rapidly decomposed and the rapid liberation of toxic products causes anaphylactic shock. Friedberger's conception of the mechanism of anaphylaxis is similar to that just described, except that the antibody formed after the first injection is assumed to be similar to an amboceptor. This enables ferments (complement), already present in the body, to attack the foreign material.

According to a second group of hypotheses, anaphylactic shock is caused, not by the rapid digestion of the foreign protein, but by an auto-digestion of the body proteins which is made possible by changes that follow the union of the injected protein with its antibody. Bronfenbrenner assumed, for example, that, under these circumstances, antitrypsin is removed from the blood and that the trypsin of the blood is left free to digest proteins, and in this way to give rise to toxin substances.

It is suggestive that histamine, a derivative of the protein building-stone, histidine, produces physiological effects which resemble those of anaphylactic shock. In guinea-pigs it causes bronchial spasm, in rabbits obstruction to the pulmonary circulation, and in dogs fall of arterial blood pressure. Furthermore, when applied to the scarified skin of man, it causes local urticaria similar to that seen in persons who have been exposed to proteins to which they were sensitive.

There is, therefore, considerable evidence for the belief, that, after the injection of a foreign protein, the antibodies formed in the body will react with this same protein, if it be subsequently injected, in such a way that an explosive digestion of protein occurs. The products of this protein digestion are believed to cause the phenomena of anaphylactic shock. The fact that shock is due in part or perhaps entirely to reactions occurring

within the cells of susceptible tissues does not necessarily alter the essential nature of the reaction

### *Human Reactions to Foreign Protein*

Foreign proteins usually enter the body through the intestinal tract, after having been split into their constituent amino-acids. Under certain conditions, however, a protein may gain access without such cleavage and in this case it may, under certain conditions, cause disturbances of body function.

**Portals of Entry.**—The paths by which foreign proteins may thus enter the body are various. It is evident that they may be injected directly into various tissues or into the blood. The therapeutic use of such injections has increased greatly in recent years. Foreign proteins may also enter the body through breaks in the skin, and through exposed mucous membranes, such as the conjunctiva, the nasal mucous membrane or the lining of the mouth and respiratory tract. In some cases, also, the protein penetrates the intestinal lining without having been decomposed into amino-acids. Finally, it should be remembered that when infectious micro-organisms have gained entrance to, and multiply within, the body, foreign proteins are formed by these bacterial cells. In every infectious disease, these bacterial proteins may excite bodily reactions, which do not differ in character from those excited by foreign proteins of non-infectious origin that have gained access to the tissues.

**Local and General Reactions.**—Foreign proteins frequently cause a reaction at the site of their penetration into the body. Here the protein is present in relatively high concentration; and if the local tissues are capable of reacting, a more or less marked reaction may be expected at this site of entrance.

Having once entered the body, the foreign protein is carried to different tissues and organs and it may then excite reactions which depend upon the local sensitiveness or physiological importance of these various tissues. When the protein is injected intravenously, the entire dose is suddenly distributed through the body and an unusually violent reaction may follow this path of entrance.

**Relation to Anaphylaxis.**—Of the various reactions observed when human beings are exposed to the action of foreign proteins, some are common to practically all individuals, others occur in most but not all individuals, while still others occur with peculiar severity in certain individuals only. This last group of individuals are said to be hypersensitive to the protein in question. One is tempted to draw an analogy between individuals with such an idiosyncrasy and the animal that has been rendered sensitive to anaphylaxis by the previous injection of a foreign protein. Beyond doubt some conditions of hypersensitiveness



observed in man are of an anaphylactic nature and are due to the previous entrance of the protein into the body. In many cases, however, it is difficult to establish the previous entrance of the protein. Furthermore, the reactions observed in human beings may differ in certain particulars from the anaphylactic reactions of animals. The study of anaphylaxis in animals has done much to stimulate the investigation of hypersensitive states in human beings. None the less, it seems advisable for the present that the analogy between the two should not be forced. Hypersensitiveness in human beings should be studied as a phenomenon analogous to, but not always identical with, the anaphylaxis experimentally produced in animals by the prior injection of a protein.

### ***The Reactions after Intravenous Injections***

When a solution containing foreign protein is injected directly into a vein, it causes a febrile reaction in practically all individuals. The study of this reaction in man has been facilitated by the fact that this reaction appears to exercise a favorable effect upon the course of certain diseases, notably arthritis, iritis and typhoid fever. Various proteins may be used for producing such a febrile reaction. Most frequently, perhaps, typhoid vaccine has been employed for this purpose, some 50 million dead organisms being injected. Immediately following such an injection, there is no apparent change in the patient's condition. After one half to two hours, however, a chill occurs, which may be quite severe and which is accompanied by all the usual symptoms of a febrile chill. During and following the chill there is a rise in body temperature which reaches its maximum of approximately  $103^{\circ}$  some four hours after the injection. This fever is followed by a profuse sweat and the temperature usually reaches normal within twenty-four hours. The febrile reaction which follows the intravenous injection of a foreign protein is accompanied by a primary fall of leucocytes, by a secondary rise which reaches a maximum of 30,000 or more about six hours after the injection, and by a gradual fall in leucocytes to about their original level. The blood pressure rises during the chill and falls during the fever and sweat (Fig. 117a). Such reactions as these have been produced by the intravenous injection of a variety of proteins. Among these are vaccines, serum, milk and arsaphenamine, the last especially when dissolved in water that has not been distilled. A similar reaction occurs less regularly after subcutaneous or intramuscular injections of various vaccines and proteins.

The reaction which follows the intravenous injection of foreign protein resembles the typical *malarial paroxysm*. It seems likely indeed that malarial paroxysms are due to the liberation of disintegrating protein material in the blood, for it is well known that these paroxysms occur with sporulation of the malaria parasites. At this time infected red cells

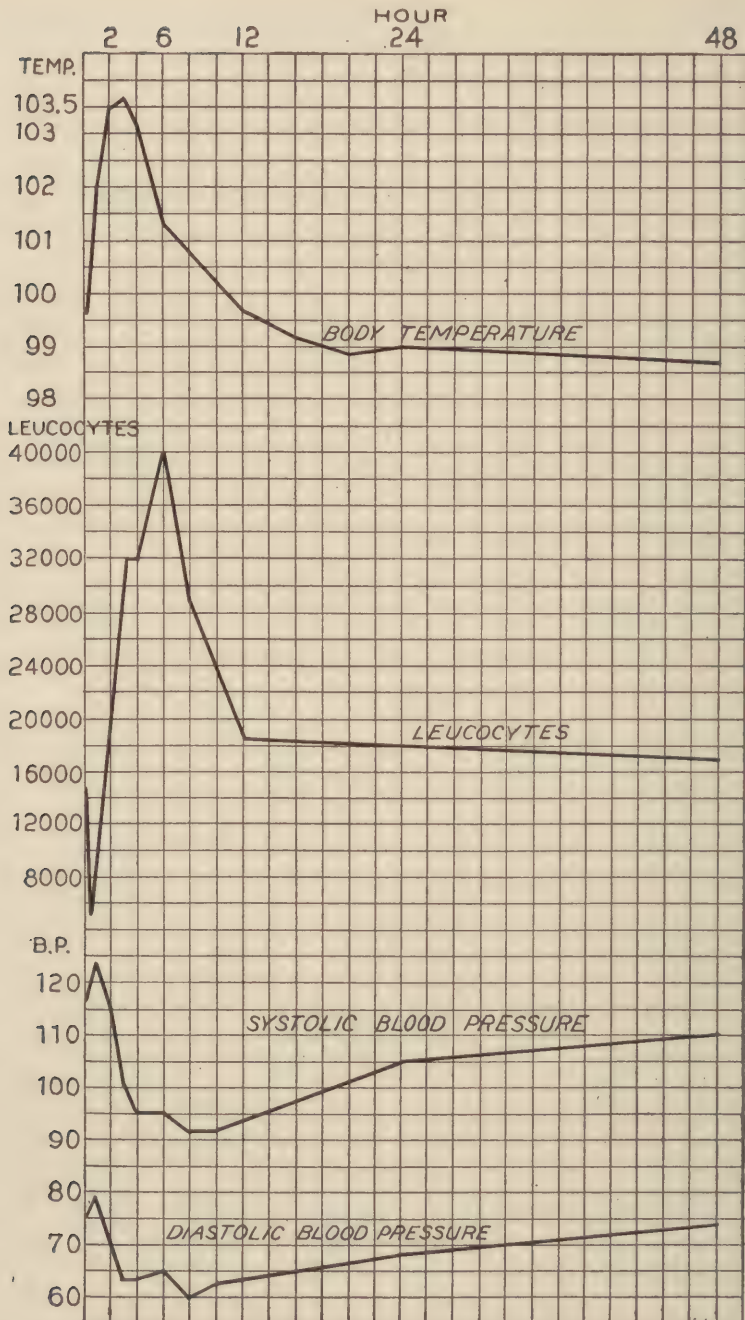


Fig. 117a.—Composite Curves Showing the Temperature, the Leucocyte Count and the Blood Pressure after the Intravenous Injection of Typhoid Vaccine in Patients Suffering from Acute Articular Rheumatism. (Redrawn from Scully, J. A. M. A.)

disintegrate and young parasites are set free in the circulation. Febrile paroxysms of this character also occur in various forms of *sepsis*. In at least some of these, they may be attributed to the escape of septic material from infected thrombi into the circulation.

The cause of the febrile reaction which frequently follows the intravenous injection of foreign protein in man is not understood. Deleterious effects following the intravenous injections of foreign protein has been studied in animals mainly from the standpoint of their relation to anaphylactic phenomena rather than from the standpoint of their relation to the febrile reaction so commonly observed in man. Karsner and Hanzlik showed that agar and numerous other substances produced "anaphylactoid" symptoms after intravenous injection, because they caused occlusion of the pulmonary capillaries by thrombosis or by agglutinated corpuscles or platelets. They attributed the observed bronchial constriction, with asphyxia and pulmonary distention, to a passive obstruction of the bronchioles by the distended pulmonary blood vessels. That similar respiratory disturbances may occur in man after intravenous injections is certain. They appear, however, to be quite uncommon, and their relation to the more common febrile reaction is not clear.

### *Serum Sickness*

The use of various sera in the treatment of human disease soon led to the discovery that such injections were not infrequently followed by undesirable symptoms, the most common of which were rashes of an urticarial type. That these symptoms depended upon the serum used and not upon the specific antibodies contained therein is well established, for they occur not only after injections of antidiphtheritic, antistreptococcic sera, etc., but also after injections of serum derived from normal horses. Furthermore, there is a direct relationship between the amount of serum used and the incidence of symptoms. This is apparent in the following table taken from Weaver's statistics:

INCIDENCE OF SERUM DISEASE ARRANGED ACCORDING TO AMOUNTS GIVEN

Total amount of serum.....	1-9 c.c.	10-19 c.c.	20-29	30-49	50-99	100 or over
Total number of cases.....	82	189	140	120	121	40
Cases showing reaction.....	9	52	40	47	61	27
Percentage showing reaction..	10.9	27.5	28.5	39.2	50.4	67.5

The use of sera with high antitoxic content diminishes the incidence of serum disease, for less serum is then necessary in order to administer the requisite number of antitoxin units. Sera also vary among themselves, for the sera from certain horses produce undesirable symptoms more frequently than equal amounts of sera derived from other horses. Finally, the tendency of horse serum to produce toxic symptoms seems to diminish as the serum ages. For this reason manufacturers ordinarily



keep their therapeutic sera on ice for some time before placing them upon the market.

**Reactions After Injection of Horse Serum.**—The typical reaction which follows a first injection of horse serum into man does not develop until about the eighth or ninth day after the injection. Among the manifestations are skin rashes of an urticarial or erythematous character, fever, malaise, glandular swellings, joint and other pains, edema, and occasionally albuminuria. These symptoms last from a few days to two weeks and recovery practically always takes place. Von Pirquet and Schick pointed out that when an individual had received injections of horse serum on previous occasions, this *typical first reaction* was modified, and they described two types of modified reaction. The first of these, or the *immediate reaction*, occurs within the first twenty-four hours; the other, or the *accelerated reaction*, occurs on the fifth to the seventh day. Both are qualitatively similar to the reaction which may follow a first injection but both run a more rapid course. When the reinjection is given in from ten days to six months after the primary injection the immediate reaction is more apt to appear; after six months the accelerated reaction is the more common; combinations of the two are also not infrequent. Furthermore, reinjections of horse serum, unlike the primary injection, not infrequently produce a marked local infiltration about the point of injection. This local reaction is similar to that which has been observed when rabbits are given repeated injections of horse serum (*Arthus phenomenon*).

**The Cause of Serum Sickness.**—The ordinary form of serum sickness affects the majority of all individuals who receive large amounts of horse serum. Some persons, however, do not develop the disease, even though they have received massive doses of the serum. Longcope and his associates have studied the blood of patients who have received horse serum, particularly with respect to the content of horse serum proteins and of antibodies (precipitins) to horse serum. In patients who developed typical serum disease, precipitins appeared toward the end of the serum disease and the horse serum disappeared from the circulation shortly thereafter. Apparently the horse serum had united with the tissue cells, antibodies had been formed, and the serum sickness was a result of these reactions. In patients who did not develop serum disease, practically no precipitins could be demonstrated and the horse serum proteins persisted in the circulation, even for months. These observations indicate that the susceptibility to serum disease depends in some way on the readiness with which the cells of the body unite with the circulating horse serum and form antibodies.

**FATALITIES IMMEDIATELY AFTER INJECTION.**—Occasionally the injection of horse serum into man is shortly followed by a series of alarming and dangerous symptoms. In a case reported by Gillette, for example,

the patient, who was subject to asthma, asked for an injection of diphtheria antitoxin in the hope that this might cure his disease. He received 2,000 units. While dressing he experienced a prickling sensation in the neck and chest. Soon he sat down and complained that he could not breathe, nor did he breathe again. The pulse at the wrist remained regular and full for some time after respirations ceased. Death apparently occurred from asphyxia. Fortunately such accidents are very rare. They have occurred almost invariably after a first injection of the serum. The resemblance to anaphylactic shock in the guinea-pig is a striking one and the view that death, like that of the guinea-pig, depends upon an acute spasm of the bronchial muscles is supported both by the observation that in some cases there has been an acute distention of the lungs, and by the fact that most of those who have suffered from such symptoms have been sufferers from asthma or other respiratory affections. The resemblance to anaphylactic shock is further emphasized by the fact that sensitive persons may be desensitized by injecting minute quantities of serum, following which full doses may be safely given. The dangers attending serum injections into such patients, and particularly in those who are sensitive to contact with horses (horse-asthma), must always be borne in mind when antitoxin is administered. In other patients the acute symptoms following injections of horse serum have suggested a circulatory collapse, and it is possible that such a collapse may occur either from involvement of the heart, as in rabbits, or from involvement of the vascular apparatus, as in dogs.

**MANNER OF SENSITIZATION.**—One remarkable feature of these acute deaths is the fact that most of the individuals affected have never received a previous injection of horse serum. One might assume that in such patients the horse serum acted as a primary poison and that there was no relation to the anaphylaxis observed in animals. However, the general resemblance to the anaphylactic shock of guinea-pigs, and the fact that human individuals are not infrequently hypersensitive to other protein substances, even though they have never received injections, indicate that hypersensitiveness in man may result in some other manner than by the injection of the foreign protein. We know that guinea-pigs may be sensitized to horse serum by various other means, such as the feeding of horse serum, inhalations, enemata, and inunctions, and it is probable that the same is true of man. There is, indeed, direct evidence that foreign proteins may at times enter the blood in an unchanged condition from the intestines, particularly in infants and during gastro-intestinal disturbances, for under certain conditions the foreign protein has been demonstrated by biological methods both in the blood and in the urine. There is also reason to believe that foreign proteins may be absorbed unchanged by the respiratory tract, particularly in hay fever. In any event it is clear that the acute deaths which result from a first injection

of horse serum are due, not to a primary toxicity of the serum but to a hypersensitiveness of the individual.

### *Diseases Dependent upon Hypersensitiveness*

Any person may show a febrile reaction after the intravenous injection of a foreign protein and the majority of persons develop serum disease when sufficiently large amounts of horse serum are injected. We have seen, also, that, occasionally, persons are extraordinarily sensitive to horse serum and that these may show alarming symptoms immediately after an injection of serum has been given. Such persons are said to be hypersensitive to horse serum. Hypersensitiveness to one or other protein is not particularly uncommon; and persons with such an idiosyncrasy may suffer whenever the offending protein gains access to a mucous membrane or penetrates to the interior of the body.

**Hay Fever.**—It has long been known that certain individuals develop a coryza, with sneezing, lacrimation and suffusion of the mucous membranes of the nose and throat, at definite periods of the year, a fact that has given rise to the terms June cold and autumnal catarrh. These disturbances are usually caused by the pollen of plants to which such individuals are sensitive; hence the group name of hay fever.

In our Eastern states, autumnal hay fever is commonly caused by the pollen of rag-weed; while spring hay fever is usually due to the pollen of grasses, such as timothy, red top and June grass. Longcope states that symptoms similar to hay fever may also result from the use of sachet or face powders, being caused by the orris root or corn starch contained therein.

**Asthma.**—The possibility that asthma might be caused by hypersensitiveness to foreign proteins was emphasized when Auer and Lewis demonstrated that the characteristic anaphylactic shock of guinea-pigs was due to acute broncho-spasm. In the study of large groups of asthmatic patients, about 50 per cent have been shown to be hypersensitive to one or more proteins. They give definite skin reactions to the hair or dandruff of animals (horse asthma), the feathers of birds (pillows), certain pollens (hay asthma), certain food stuffs (egg asthma), or certain bacteria. In many patients the history of attacks after exposure to the offending protein and the cessation of attacks when the offending protein is avoided or when the patient has been desensitized by the injection or ingestion of minute quantities of the protein in question have demonstrated the relation between this protein and the disease. The relief from asthmatic paroxysms which sometimes follows nasal operations may often be attributed to the removal of a chronic nasal infection from which bacterial or other proteins were being absorbed.

**Skin Lesions.**—It has long been known that certain skin eruptions,



particularly *urticarial and erythematous rashes*, may follow the ingestion of certain foods by susceptible persons. Similar skin eruptions occur in serum disease, they can be caused by applying the protein to the broken skin of hypersensitive persons and they may be accompanied by other manifestations of hypersensitiveness such as asthma. Certain cases of *chronic eczema*, both in infants and in adults, also appear to be due to hypersensitiveness, either to proteins that come in contact with the skin or to proteins that are taken in the food.

**Gastro-Intestinal Disturbances.**—Gastro-intestinal disturbances, especially in infants or children, are sometimes due to an idiosyncrasy to certain food proteins. They may be accompanied by skin eruptions and by cutaneous reactions, when the material is applied to the broken skin. The idiosyncrasy may disappear as a child grows older.

**Multiple Hypersensitiveness.**—We have seen that any one of a great variety of proteins may provoke symptoms in a susceptible individual. The systematic application of cutaneous tests to persons suffering from the above group of diseases has shown that many of these patients are sensitive to a variety of proteins. Despite this multiple hypersensitiveness, the symptoms from which the patient seeks relief are frequently caused by a single protein only. The others either do not ordinarily gain access to his body in sufficient quantity or the sensitiveness to them is not sufficient to provoke symptoms. Patients suffering from the autumnal type of hay fever, for example, frequently show cutaneous reactions to golden rod as well as to rag weed. Yet the attacks of hay fever or asthma are seldom due to golden rod, because its pollen is comparatively heavy and does not float in the air as does the pollen of rag weed.

**The Role of Inheritance.**—It is common knowledge that the tendency to hay fever, to asthma and to other diseases of this class may be inherited. Cooke and Vander Veer obtained a familial history of sensitization in almost 50 per cent of their hypersensitive patients, whereas such a history was obtained in only about 15 per cent of normal individuals. The offspring of a sensitive parent are not born sensitive, but acquire their sensitizations later, owing to an inherited capacity for developing this condition.

**Cellular Hypersensitiveness.**—The study of anaphylaxis in animals has shown that the acute shock depends in the main upon changes in the body cells, but that the anaphylactic condition can be transferred to a normal animal by injecting it with the serum of a sensitized animal. The hypersensitiveness of man to various proteins is closely related to the hypersensitiveness of animals which have previously been injected with a foreign protein.

Presumably, the different manifestations of human hypersensitiveness, aside from those occurring locally at the portal of entry, are due to different degrees of sensitiveness in the different tissues. Thus, asthma

may be attributed to a special sensitiveness of the bronchial muscle, urticaria to a special sensitiveness of the skin, and angioneurotic edema to a special sensitiveness of the subcutaneous tissues. It is interesting that a given individual may at different periods of his life show different manifestations of his hypersensitive condition. As a child he may have gastrointestinal disturbances, with eczema or urticaria, later he may develop hay fever, and eventually asthma.

**The Blood Serum in Hypersensitiveness.**—Attempts to demonstrate specific antibodies in the blood serum of hypersensitive individuals have only occasionally been successful. A few reports are on record of the transfer of sensitivity by injecting the blood of sensitive individuals into animals or into other human beings. A remarkable case of this type has been reported by Ramirez. The patient underwent blood transfusion for primary anemia and two weeks later he developed repeated attacks of asthma when exposed to horses, although he had never before been subject to any symptoms attributable to hypersensitiveness. It was then learned that the donor of the blood was subject to asthma and he gave a marked cutaneous reaction to horse dandruff.

### *Hypersensitiveness due to Infection*

The introduction of bacterial proteins into animals may render them hypersensitive to later injections. Typical anaphylactic shock has been produced by the reinjection of bacteria, dead or alive, and by the injection of bacterial extracts.

In certain infections, both of man and of animals, evidence may be obtained of hypersensitiveness to products derived from the infecting microorganisms. As examples, one may mention the various tuberculin reactions, the gonococcus reaction (Irons), the typhoidin reaction, the mallein reaction and the leutin reaction. These reactions not only differ from the ordinary anaphylactic reactions in their clinical manifestations, but they may be separated in other ways. Particularly impressive are the experiments of Baldwin. These showed that in the guinea-pig, anaphylactic shock may follow the reinjection of tuberculo-proteins. Such injections, however, do not cause the animal to show the usual tuberculin reactions. These latter occur only when there is an infection with living tubercle bacilli.

### *The Tuberculin Reaction*

In tuberculous patients, *local reactions* at the point of application may occur when tuberculin is applied to the scarified skin (von Pirquet test), when tuberculin solutions are dropped into the conjunctival sac (Calmette reaction), when tuberculin ointment is rubbed on the unbroken skin (Moro reaction), or when tuberculin is injected cutaneously or subcutaneously. The typical skin reactions to tuberculin differ from the skin

reactions used to demonstrate the type of protein hypersensitiveness that may accompany hay-fever, asthma and similar conditions. The latter resembles an urticarial wheal and reaches its height within an hour or two. The former appears more like an acute inflammation of the skin and reaches its height in twenty-four hours or later.

The absorption of tuberculin, particularly after a subcutaneous injection, gives rise to the so-called *general reaction* which is characterized by fever lasting a few days with the usual accompanying symptoms. The focus of disease in the body may show evidences of increased inflammation. For example, areas of lupus vulgaris become red and swollen, tuberculous joints enlarge and become more painful, and tuberculous lesions in the lungs may show more numerous râles with an increase of sputum. These constitute the *focal reaction*.

**Significance of a Positive Reaction.**—The significance of a positive tuberculin reaction has been much discussed. It is now generally held that such a test always indicates an infection with tubercle bacilli. This does not mean, however, that tuberculosis in the clinical sense is present, for the reaction is frequently obtained in individuals who present no clinical manifestations of tuberculosis, and who do not develop the disease at later periods of life. Von Pirquet showed that the number of children with a positive cutaneous test increases progressively with advancing years. His figures are as follows:

CUTANEOUS TUBERCULIN REACTIONS IN CHILDREN  
ARRANGED ACCORDING TO AGE

Age	Months			Years					
	0-3	3-6	5-12	1-2	2-4	4-6	6-10	10-14	over 14
Per cent of positive reactions	0	5	6	24	37	53	57	58	90

Others have obtained a smaller proportion of positive reactions in adults, owing doubtlessly to the lesser prevalence of tuberculosis among the particular group of individuals studied. Among the students in the Medical Department of the University of Michigan, for example, it was found that only about one-third gave positive cutaneous tests. Similar results have been obtained when tuberculin has been injected subcutaneously into supposedly healthy individuals. Hamman and Wolman, for example, estimate from their own experience, as well as from the experience of others, that approximately 50 per cent of apparently healthy individuals give tuberculin reactions after subcutaneous injections. It is evident, therefore, that a considerable proportion of all individuals give positive cutaneous and subcutaneous tuberculin tests. The tests indicate, as autopsy records have shown, that a large number of people have at some time become infected with tubercle bacilli without necessarily developing noteworthy clinical manifestations.



In a general way it may be said that tuberculin reactions are more common and more severe in those showing clinical evidence of the disease. Experiments on animals also indicate that the intensity of tuberculin skin tests varies with the severity and extent of the lesions (Kraus) and that they tend to lessen as the lesions heal. Nevertheless the exact diagnostic value of tuberculin tests in clinical practice is still undecided. When they are negative, the patient being in sufficiently good general condition to give a reaction, the presence of active tuberculosis is rendered improbable. When they are positive, the patient may or may not have an active lesion in the clinical sense. Even a focal reaction at the site of disease after a tuberculin injection does not necessarily indicate its tuberculous nature, for inflammatory foci of various sorts may be stirred into temporary activity by non-specific injections of foreign material (Petersen).

## Some Phenomena of Infection

The general, as distinguished from the local, manifestations of infection may be divided into two classes. To the first belong the formation and the reactions of the various antibodies, such as antitoxins, bactericidins, bacteriolysins, agglutinins, opsonins, etc. These have been discussed in the preceding sections. To the second group belong the clinical manifestations, such as the changes in temperature, respiration, circulation and metabolism, the loss of appetite and the nervous symptoms. These are discussed, in part, under the appropriate headings, and more particularly in the chapter on fever. The manner in which infection produces certain of these clinical manifestations and their relation to the phenomena of protein sensitiveness will be discussed briefly in the following paragraphs.

### *Cause of Symptoms*

Infections are caused by the growth of microorganisms in the tissues of the animal body. Aside from changes in the immediate neighborhood of the invaders, the symptoms of infection may be due: (1) to soluble toxins secreted by the invading microorganisms; (2) to poisonous substances liberated from the bodies of the dead bacteria; and (3) to substances derived from the tissues or fluids of the host.

#### (1) Soluble Toxins

Infections with bacteria that produce soluble toxins liberate these toxins in the body of the host, and the symptoms of the infection may be more or less dominated by the action of these poisonous substances. The nervous manifestations of tetanus and the nervous and cardiovascular disturbances of diphtheria, for example, correspond to the symptoms pro-

duced when the soluble toxins are injected into an animal. Soluble toxins have also been prepared from other microorganisms, but in most cases the symptoms of the corresponding infections cannot be accounted for in this manner.

## (2) Substances Derived from Bacterial Disintegration

The great majority of infectious bacteria produce no soluble toxins, or at least none that can account for the major symptoms of the infections which they cause. It is an old view that such bacteria contain harmful substances which are liberated when the bacteria disintegrate in the body of the host. Pfeiffer conceived that such bacteria contain within themselves certain preformed poisonous substances, called endotoxins, which were specific for each organism, and which produced the characteristic manifestations of the infection. Vaughan, on the other hand, has held that the poisonous substances liberated are not specific, but that they are similar to those liberated when any foreign protein disintegrates within the animal body. He regards the symptoms of infection as being, in essence, those of a prolonged intoxication with the decomposition products of foreign proteins derived from the invading bacteria.

## (3) Substances Derived from the Host

Fever may result from a disintegration of the fluids or tissues of the body itself, and it is not improbable that some manifestations of infection may be due to this cause. Indeed, according to one theory of anaphylaxis, the toxic action of reinjected proteins is due to changes which produce toxic substances from the body tissues or fluids.

Whether the immediate cause of these toxic symptoms be substances derived from the foreign protein or substances derived from the normal body fluids, there are many analogies between infection and the effects produced by single or repeated injections of a foreign protein. In the following paragraphs particular attention will be directed to these analogies.

### *The Incubation Period*

One of the characteristic features of infectious diseases is the interval that elapses between the entrance of the microorganisms and the subsequent development of symptoms. Analogies to this incubation period occur in protein intoxications. Thus we have seen that, in order to produce anaphylactic shock, a certain time must elapse between the first and the second injections of the foreign protein, during which time certain antibodies against the foreign protein are being developed within the body.

Furthermore, after a first injection of horse serum into a human being, the symptoms of serum disease do not ordinarily develop until eight or nine days have passed. It is often assumed that the incubation period of an infectious disease depends upon a multiplication of the causative organisms in the body, but in serum disease no such multiplication can occur, and, in this case at least, the incubation period must be due to some other cause. According to von Pirquet, the incubation period of serum disease represents the time required for the body to elaborate the specific antibodies which react with the foreign proteins of the horse serum, and thus cause a liberation of the toxic substances that produce the symptoms.

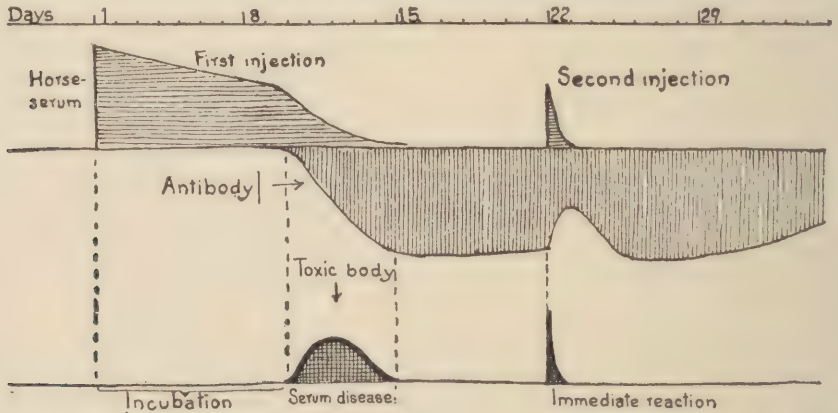


Fig. 118.—The Incubation Period in Serum Disease. When the Antibody to the Horse Has Formed the Two Interact and Give Rise to the Toxic Body Which Causes the Disease. A Second Injection, Given Shortly After, Causes an Immediate Reaction Because Antibody Is Already Present in the Blood. (From Pirquet, Arch. Int. Med.)

If a second injection of horse serum be given a few weeks after the first, there is an immediate reaction, because the serum encounters antibodies already formed in the body of the individual.

**Incubation Periods of Infections.**—Similar relations apparently hold with regard to certain infections. Thus Vaughan states that if a lethal dose of living colon bacilli be injected into the peritoneal cavity of a guinea-pig, the incubation period is from eight to twelve hours, if a lethal dose of the dead bacilli be injected the incubation period is shortened to about four hours, while if toxic products derived from colon bacilli be injected the animal dies almost immediately.

**IMPORTANCE OF INFECTION INCUBATION PERIOD.**—The incubation period of an infectious disease, therefore, while devoid of symptoms, is of great importance from the standpoint of infection. Not only do the infecting organisms gain an entrance to and multiply in the body of the infected individual, but the latter is preparing the specific substances which later play a part in the conflict that characterizes the disease itself.



### *Fever*

During subacute anaphylaxis the temperature of the animal frequently falls. In infectious diseases it usually rises. This discrepancy is apparent rather than real; for Vaughan as well as Friedberger has shown that it is possible to produce any type of fever by protein injections, provided sufficiently small doses be chosen and these be repeated at sufficiently frequent intervals. In other words, one must produce a gradual type of protein intoxication comparable to that present when foreign microorganisms disintegrate in the body. Furthermore, we know that a rise of temperature is not a necessary accompaniment of infection. When an individual with but little resistance suffers from a severe infection the body temperature may fall, causing the so-called febrile collapse. This fall of temperature finds its analogy in the lowered temperature of subacute anaphylaxis.

**Physiological Mechanism of Rise.**—The physiological mechanism governing the rise of temperature in infectious fever and in that accompanying protein intoxication also appears to be the same. In the chapter on fever it was pointed out that the rise of temperature in fever is probably due to some disturbance in the heat regulatory centers of the midbrain. If these centers be cut off from the remainder of the body, the introduction of microorganisms does not cause a rise of temperature. Leschke has shown that the reintroduction of protein into animals operated upon in this manner also fails to affect the body temperature.

### *Circulatory Changes*

We have seen that the circulation in fever is frequently abnormal and that the circulatory collapse of infectious diseases, like the circulatory collapse in surgical shock, is probably due to a collection of blood in the veins and capillaries of the body. It may be pointed out in this place that the circulatory changes which characterize anaphylactic shock in the dog are accompanied by a collection of blood in the abdominal veins. The general analogy is a striking one, although it is not possible at the present time to affirm that the two are precisely the same.

### *Other Analogies Between Infection and Protein Intoxication*

Infections are usually accompanied by some increase in the protein metabolism. Major found a similar increase in rabbits after injections of horse serum. Finally, Longcope has shown that anatomical changes may be produced in the kidneys, the myocardium and liver by repeated injections of a foreign protein, and it is possible that the changes accompanying and following infections are also due in part to the effect of the disintegration of the bacterial proteins in the body.

### *The Specificity of Infections*

The view that a single substance may be responsible for the general symptoms of infection is not a new one, but may be found throughout the earlier literature on fever. Opposed to this view has been the fact that each infectious disease tends to pursue a more or less characteristic course with involvement of certain organs in the body. These specific differences are due in part to differences in the portal of entry into the body and in part to the tendency of each invader to localize in certain tissues where they produce local as distinguished from general symptoms. Vaughan has pointed out, however, that a variation of toxic symptoms, when different proteins are used, may also occur, even though the immediate toxic agent be the same in all cases. Sensitization of the body is primarily cellular in character, and the tissues that are sensitized in different infections are probably different. As a result of these differences the foreign protein will be split up in greater quantity at certain points of the body, and the toxic action will therefore be greater at these points.

**Chronic Intoxication Hypothesis of Infection.**—Numerous analogies certainly exist between the symptoms commonly observed in infections and those which may be produced by repeated and properly spaced injections of a foreign protein. The conception of infection as a chronic intoxication, analogous to that which may be produced by repeated injections of any foreign protein, has thrown much light upon and has done much to stimulate interest in the nature of the physiological alterations in fever, and it will beyond doubt influence all future interpretations of the manifestations of infection. Nevertheless, it seems possible that there is a tendency at the present time to push the analogy between infection and protein intoxication too far, and that too little emphasis has been laid upon the specific differences between the various infections and the differences between infection and anaphylaxis. In this connection, it may be recalled that normal animals treated with tuberculin react to future injections only with anaphylactic shock, whereas animals who have the disease give a typical tuberculin reaction.

### *References*

#### *General Aspects of Infection*

- von Baumgarten (P.).** *Die Lehre von den Krankheitsanlagen.* In: Krehl and Marchand, *Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie*, 1908, i, 363.
- Cole (R.).** *Pneumococcus infection and lobar pneumonia.* Arch. Int. Med., 1914, xiv, 56.
- Lamar (R. V.) & Meltzer (S. J.).** *Experimental pneumonia by intratracheal insufflation.* Jour. Exp. Med., 1912, xv, 133.
- Ophüls (W.).** *Some remarks on the mode of infection and dissemination of tuberculosis in man.* Tr. Nat. Assn. Study and Prevent. Tuberc., 1911, vii, 394.
- Schottmüller (H.).** *Wesen und Behandlung der Sepsis.* Verhandl. d. Kongr. f. inn. Med., 1914, xxxi, 257.

- Smith (T.).** *An attempt to interpret present day uses of vaccines.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., 1913, lx, 1591.
- Wollstein (M.) & Bartlett (F. H.).** *A study of tuberculous lesions in infants and young children.* Tr. Nat. Assn. Study and Prevent. Tuberc., 1914, x, 208.
- Zinsser (H.).** *Infection and resistance.* New York, 1914.

### *Immunity and the Immune Bodies*

- Addis (T.).** *The bactericidal and hemolytic powers of "paraffine" plasma and of serum.* Jour. Infect. Dis., 1912, x, 200.
- Arrhenius (S. A.).** *Immunochemistry.* New York, 1907.
- Böhme (A.).** *Opsonine und Vaccinationstherapie.* Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh., 1913, xii, 1.
- Bordet (J.).** *Studies in Immunity, collected and translated by Gay.* New York, 1909.
- Cooke (J. V.).** *Complement fixation with acid-fast bacteria.* Jour. Infect Dis., 1919, xxv, 452.
- Force (F. N.) & Stevens (I. M.).** *Further studies on typhoidin.* Arch. Int. Med., 1917, xix, 440.
- Gay (F. P.).** *Typhusimmunisierung.* Ergebn. d. Immunitätsfors. exper. Therap., Bakteriolog. u. Hyg., 1914, i, 231.
- Gay (F. P.) & Force (J. N.).** *A skin reaction indicative of immunity against typhoid fever.* Arch. Int. Med., 1914, xiii, 471.
- Guyer (M. F.) & Smith (E. A.).** *Studies on cytolytins. II. Transmission of induced eye defects.* Jour. Exper. Zool., 1920, xxxi, 171.
- Hektoen (L.).** *The mechanism of recovery in pneumonia.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., 1914, lxii, 264.
- Hektoen (L.) & Ruedinger (G. F.).** *Studies in phagocytosis.* Jour. Infect., Dis., 1905, vi, 128.
- Jeans (P. C.).** *Familial syphilis.* Am. Jour. Dis. Child., 1916, xi, 11.
- Kolmer (J. A.) & Moshage (E. L.).** *The Schick toxin reaction for immunity in diphtheria.* Am. Jour. Dis. Child., 1915, ix, 189.
- Kilgore (E. S.).** *Typhoidin Quotients. An analysis of the factors of uncertainty in the cutaneous typhoidin test.* Arch. Int. Med., 1917, xix, 263.
- Metchnikoff (E.).** *L'immunité dans les maladies infect.* Paris, 1901.
- Morgenroth (J.).** *Ueber die Wiedergewinnung von Toxin aus seiner Antitoxinverbindung.* Berl. klin. Wchnschr., 1905, xlii, 1550.
- Noguchi (H.).** *A cutaneous reaction in syphilis.* Jour. Exp. Med., 1911, xiv, 557.
- Park (W. H.), Serota (M. H.) & Zingher (A.).** *The Schick reaction and its practical applications.* Arch. Pediat., 1914, xxxi, 481.
- Proescher (F.) & Roddy (J. A.).** *Bacteriological studies on paratyphoid A and paratyphoid B.* Arch. Int. Med., 1910, v, 263.
- Römer (P.).** *Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Abrin-Immunität.* Arch. f. Ophth., 1901, lii, 72.
- Rosenow (E. C.).** *Human pneumococcal opsonin and the antiopsonic substance in virulent pneumococci.* Jour. Inf. Dis., 1907, iv, 285.
- Russell (F. T.).** *Antityphoid vaccination in the army during 1913.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., 1914, lxii, 1371.
- Schick (S.).** *Die Diphtherietoxin-Hautreaktion des Menschen als Vorprobe der prophylaktischen Diphtherieheilseruminjektion.* München. med. Wchnschr., 1913, lx, 2608.
- Smith (T.).** *Active immunity produced by so-called balanced or neutral mixtures of diphtheria toxin and antitoxin.* Jour. Exp. Med., 1909, xi, 241.



- Webb (G. B.), Williams (W. W.) & Barber (M. A.).** Immunity produced by inoculation of increasing numbers of bacteria beginning with a single organism. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1909**, *xx*, 1.
- Wells (H. G.).** Inflammation. In: *Chemical Pathology*. Philadelphia, **1914**.
- Wright (A. E.) & Douglas (S. R.).** Rôle of the body fluids in connection with phagocytosis. *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, **1903**, *lxxii*, 357; **1904**, *lxxiii*, 126. **1904**, *lxxiv*, 147, 159.
- Zingher (A.).** Further studies with the Schick test. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1917**, *xx*, 392.
- Zinsser (H.).** Infection and resistance. New York, **1914**.

### Anaphylaxis

- Auer (J.).** The junctional analysis of anaphylaxis. In: *Forchheimer, Therapeutics of Internal Diseases*. **1914**, *v*, 39.
- Auer (J.) & Lewis (P. A.).** The physiology of the immediate reaction of anaphylaxis in the guinea-pig. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1910**, *xii*, 15.
- Bronfenbrenner (J.).** Studies on so-called protective ferments. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, **1914**, *xii*, 7.  
The nature of anaphylatoxin. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1915**, *xxi*, 480.
- Cooke (R. A.) & VanderVeer (A., Jr.).** Human sensitization. *Jour. Immunol.*, **1916**, *i*, 201.
- Cowie (D. M.) & Calhoun (H.).** Nonspecific therapy in arthritis and infections. *Arch. Int. Med.* **1919**, *xxiii*, 69.
- Dale (H. H.).** The anaphylactic reaction of plain muscle in the guinea-pig. *Jour. of Phar. and Exp. Therap.*, **1913**, *iv*, 167.
- De Besche (A.).** The antibodies with constitutional hypersensitiveness, asthma, hay fever, etc. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1919**, *lxviii*, 874.
- Edmunds (C. W.).** The action of protein poison on dogs; a study in anaphylaxis, *Ztschr. f. Immun. u. exper. Therap.*, **1913**, *xvii*, 105.
- Fleischner (E. C.), Meyer (K. F.) & Shaw (E. B.).** A résumé of some experimental studies on cutaneous hypersensitiveness. *Am. Jour. Dis. Child.*, **1919**, *xviii*, 577.
- Fox (H.) & Fischer (J. E.).** Protein sensitization in eczema of adults. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1920**, *lxxv*, 907.
- Gay (F. P.) & Southard (E. E.).** On serum anaphylaxis in the guinea-pig. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1907**, *xvi*, 143.  
Further studies in anaphylaxis. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1908**, *xix*, 1, 5, 17.
- Gillette (H. F.).** Untoward results from diphtheria antitoxin with special reference to asthma. *N. Y. State Med. Jour.*, **1909**, *ix*, 373.
- Koessler (K. K.).** The specific treatment of hay fever. In: *Forchheimer, Therapeutics of Internal Diseases*. **1914**, *v*, 671.  
Bronchial asthma due to hypersusceptibility to hens' eggs. *Ill. Med. Jour.*, **1913**.
- Leschke (E.).** Untersuchungen über anaphylaktisches Fieber. *Verhandl. Kongr. f. inn. Med.*, **1913**, *xxx*, 80.
- Longcope (W. T.).** The production of experimental nephritis by repeated protein intoxication. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1913**, *xviii*, 678.  
Cirrhosis of the liver produced by chronic protein intoxication. *Trans. Assn. Am. Phy.*, **1913**, *xxviii*, 497.
- Longcope (W. T.).** Protein hypersensitiveness and its importance in the etiology of disease. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, *lxxvii*, 1535.
- Major (R. H.).** Ueber den Einfluss der Anaphylaxie auf den Stickstoffwechsel bei Kaninchen. *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, *cxvi*, 248.
- Manwaring (W. H.) & Kusama (Y.).** Analysis of the anaphylactic and immune reactions by means of the isolated guinea-pig lungs. *Jour. Immunol.*, **1916-17**, *11*, 157.

- Pearce (R. M.), Karsner (H. T.) & Eisenbrey (A. B.).** *Studies in immunity and anaphylaxis. The proteins of the kidney and liver.* *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1911**, xiv, 44.
- Pearce (R. M.) & Eisenbrey (A. B.).** *A study of the action of the heart in anaphylactic shock in the dog.* *Jour. Pharmac. and Exp. Therap.*, **1912**, v, 21.
- Petersen (W. F.).** *The focal reaction.* *Am. Rev. Tuberculosis*, **1921**, v, 218.
- von Pirquet (C. E.).** *Allergy.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1911**, vii, 259, 383.
- Ramirez (M. A.).** *Horse asthma following blood transfusion.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1919**, lxxiii, 984.
- Rosenau (M. J.) & Anderson (J. F.).** *A study of the cause of sudden death following the injection of horse serum.* *U. S. Bull. Hyg. Lab.*, **1906**, xxix.  
*Further studies upon anaphylaxis.* *U. S. Bull. Hyg. Lab.*, **1907**, xxxii; **1908**, xlv, 1.
- Scully (F. J.).** *The reaction after intravenous injections of foreign protein.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1917**, lxxix, 20.
- Simonds (J. P.).** *The fundamental physiologic reaction in anaphylactic and peptone shock.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1919**, lxxiii, 1437.
- Vaughan (V. C.).** *Die Phänomene der Infektion.* *Ergebn. d. Immunitätsf. exper. Therap., Bakt. u. Hyg.*, **1914**, i, 372.
- Vaughan (V. C.), Vaughan (V. C., Jr.) & Vaughan (J. W.).** *Protein split products in relation to immunity and disease.* Philadelphia, **1913**.
- Weaver (G. H.).** *Serum disease.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1909**, iii, 485.
- Weil (R.).** *The nature of anaphylaxis and the relation between anaphylaxis and immunity.* *Jour. Med. Research*, **1913**, xxvii, 497.
- Wells (H. G.) & Osborne (T. B.).** *The biological reactions of the vegetable proteins.* *Jour. Inf. Dis.*, **1911**, viii, 66; **1913**, xii, 341.
- Wells (H. G.).** *The present status of the problems of anaphylaxis.* *Physiol. Rev.*, **1921**, i, 44.
- Zinsser (H.).** *Studies on the tuberculin reaction and on specific hypersensitiveness in bacterial infection.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1921**, xxxiv, 495.  
*The more recent developments in the study of anaphylactic phenomena.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 223.

# Chapter XI

## The Blood

### Functions of the Blood

The blood is the common carrier of the body. It carries oxygen from the lungs to the tissues and carbon dioxid from the tissues to the lungs. It transports food to the organs and waste products to the kidneys. It contains the internal secretions and the complex biological substances which have to do with the processes of immunity and recovery from infections. These functions are discussed in other places. In the present chapter attention will be paid more particularly to variations in the quantity and concentration of the blood, to changes in its formed elements and to alterations of its coagulating properties.

### The Quantity of Blood

Most of our data concerning the blood deal with the concentration of its various constituents in a unit of volume and not with the total amount of these constituents in the body. It is not easy to determine the total blood volume. The most accurate determinations are those made on animals by bleeding and then washing out the blood vessels (Welcker's method).

**Bloodless Methods for Determining Volume.**—Most bloodless methods for determining the blood volume are based upon a single principle. A definite quantity of a known substance is added to the circulation and its concentration in a sample of blood is estimated shortly thereafter. If the substance added has not left the circulation and if it has caused no interchange of water between the blood and the tissues, it becomes possible to calculate the total quantity of blood in the body from the concentration of the foreign substance in a unit of blood volume. By this method, estimates of the total quantity of blood in the body have been made: (1) by injecting normal salt solution into the veins and then determining the dilu-



tion of the blood; (2) by inhaling a given amount of carbon monoxid and then determining the amount of carbon monoxid hemoglobin in the circulating blood and (3) by injecting a known amount of a soluble, non-toxic, foreign substance and later determining its concentration in the blood serum. Tetanus antitoxin, vital red and acacia have been used for this purpose. The carbon monoxid and the vital red methods have been extensively used on man. Comparisons with Weleker's method have shown their approximate accuracy. The injection of salt solution has yielded concordant results in the hands of certain investigators although it would seem less reliable on account of the ease with which it leaves the blood vessels. According to these methods the total mass of blood in the human body averages between 7 and 8 per cent of its weight, the carbon monoxid method giving lower averages (down to 5 per cent), the vital red method and the antitoxic method highest averages (about 9 per cent).

**Maintenance of Blood Volume.**—Experimental studies have shown that the blood volume remains fairly constant despite influences which tend to alter it. When a physiological salt solution is injected intravenously it gradually passes out of the circulation, and this happens even though excretion through the kidneys be excluded. Even when blood is directly transfused from another animal of the same species, it does not lead to a permanent increase in the amount of blood within the blood vessels. An addition of 80 per cent in the total quantity of blood can be received without serious symptoms and much larger quantities have been given. Immediately after such a transfusion there is an increased fullness in the vessels of the mucous membranes and retina. The fluid portions of the blood are then rapidly eliminated from the blood vessels so that an increased concentration of cellular elements occurs. By such injections of blood the red cells may be increased to ten million or more per cubic millimeter, but the major portion of the injected red cells disappears in from four to seven days. In some cases, normal conditions are not re-established for 28 to 30 days. A continued increase of blood has been produced experimentally in rabbits by Hess, who injected defibrinated blood repeatedly into their blood vessels.

**REDUCTION DIFFICULT.**—Attempts to reduce the volume of blood also meet with considerable difficulties. After a hemorrhage the volume of blood is rapidly restored by a passage of liquid from the tissues into the blood vessels. The extent to which this occurs obviously depends upon the amount of fluid available in the tissues and upon the amount which is taken by mouth. Rabbits are said to restore the original volume of blood within two or three hours after being bled to a third or even a half of their total hemoglobin, while in dogs and men the restoration is more gradual.

### *Plethora*

The doctrine of plethora or an increased amount of blood in the body played a very important rôle in the minds of physicians and pathologists half a century ago, and it derived therapeutic importance from the fact that it was considered an indication for bleeding. At autopsy an increased quantity of blood often seemed to be present in the body. According to these older views, plethora was suggested clinically by a full condition of the peripheral blood vessels with a tendency toward hyperemia of the visible mucous membranes and skin. It was supposed to be a cause of cardiac hypertrophy, and to predispose to congestions and to cerebral hemorrhage. Doubtlessly many of these "full-blooded" patients whose symptoms were formerly attributed to plethora belong to the group that we now recognize as chronic hypertention. Veith, Rowntree and Geraghty have shown, however, that plethora is not the rule in such patients.

**Increase of Blood Volume.**—The newer methods for estimating the quantity of blood in the body have shown that this quantity is at times definitely increased. In patients with polycythemia, for example, the total volume of blood may be normal or it may be increased, even to twice the usual amount. The blood volume is said to be increased in chlorosis, and in anasarca. During the later months of pregnancy a moderate increase of blood volume also occurs. Aside from this condition, however, simple plethora seems to be rare. The more marked increases in the total blood volume are associated either with qualitative changes in the blood itself or with manifest disease of other organs.

### *Oligemia*

In contrast to the plethoric state a condition of oligemia or diminished quantity of blood is suggested when the patient is unusually pale, but the percentage of hemoglobin is normal. The skin pallor may, however, be due to a vascular constriction of the cutaneous vessels or possibly, as Sahli suggests, to an unusually thick skin. No demonstration has been furnished that oligemia actually exists in most such patients. Only in certain anemias and in obesity is there a chronic reduction of the blood volume in proportion to body weight.

**Acute Oligemia.**—It is recognized, however, that a reduction in the volume of blood in the body may be produced by a serious depletion of water, such as may occur, for example, in Asiatic cholera. Such oligemias are, as a rule, temporary, for when the diarrhea subsides and the increased thirst is satisfied the blood volume returns to the normal.

## Hydremia

Hydremia means a watery condition of the blood. Since the corpuscular elements in the blood are relatively rich in solids, their number markedly influences the percentage of water in the total blood. It seems advisable, however, to exclude from consideration the changes in blood concentration that are caused by variations in the number of corpuscles. Thus restricted, the term hydremia means a watery condition of the blood serum or blood plasma. The degree of hydremia can be estimated by determining the total amount of solids in the blood serum or by determining its specific gravity. Variations in the solid constituents of the blood serum are due mainly to variations in the percentage of proteins present, for the concentration of sodium chlorid, its principal salt, is relatively fixed. A watery condition of the blood serum usually means, therefore, that the percentage of proteins is low. Only when there is a considerable accumulation of non-protein nitrogen in the blood do variations from this rule occur. The percentage of proteins present in the blood can be approximately determined by estimating its refractive index. Since this estimation requires but little time and only small quantities of blood, it is the most convenient clinical method for determining the degree of hydremia.

**Physiological Variations of Blood Concentration.**—Repeated examinations of the refractive index of the same individual have shown that the concentration of the blood serum is subject to a number of physiological variations. Its concentration is increased after exercise; partly, perhaps, because of the perspiration, but mainly because the exercised muscles take up water. It is diminished immediately after bleeding on account of the dilution of the blood with lymph, which is relatively poor in proteins. It is diminished for a few hours after the ingestion of considerable sodium chlorid, because the salt which enters the blood vessels attracts water from the tissues. The blood concentration is at times increased by eliminating salt from the diet and returns to the normal level when salt is again taken. Curiously enough, water drinking has little effect upon the concentration of the serum in man, nor has moderate sweating from exposure to heat any marked effect. The blood plasma maintains its normal concentration under these circumstances by interchange with the tissue fluids of the body and by variations in the loss of fluid through the kidneys.

**Variations Under Pathological Conditions.**—In pathological conditions, hydremia is of particular interest in its relation to rapid changes of body weight and to the occurrence of edema. It is well known, for example, that in diabetes a rapid alteration of weight may occur as a result of changes in diet or of the administration of sodium bicarbonate. Such rapid changes are ordinarily due to variations in the water content



of the body. Examinations of the concentration of the blood have generally borne out this view, for with sudden increases in weight the blood often becomes more hydremic and with sudden losses of weight it becomes more concentrated.

IN RENAL EDEMA.—In typical renal edema marked degrees of hydremia are usually present. The gain in weight which may follow the administration of sodium chlorid to patients with Bright's disease is associated with a prompt fall in the concentration of the blood serum (Fig.

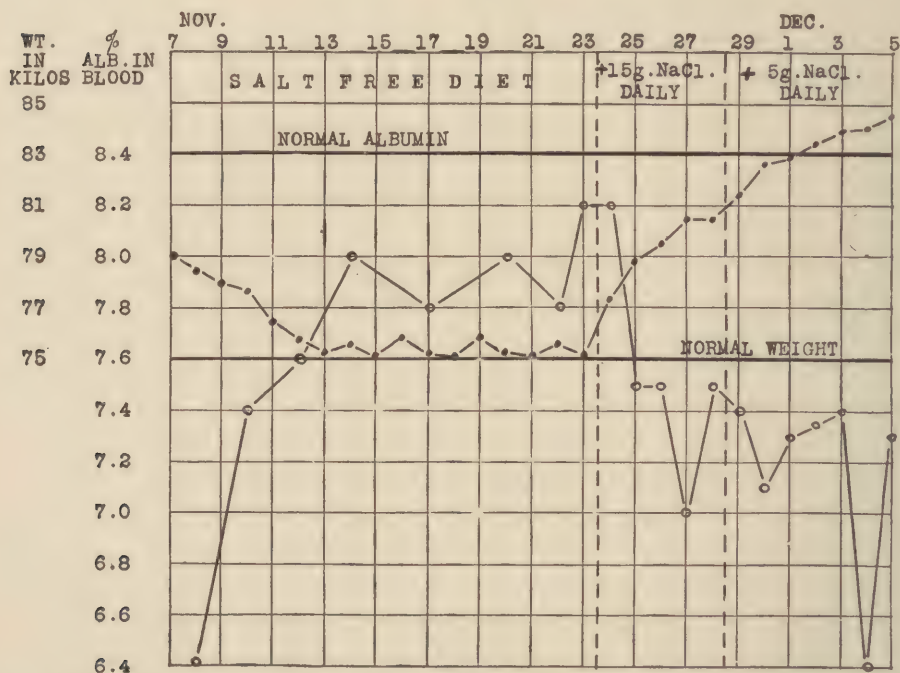


Fig. 119.—Hydremia Produced in a Nephritic Patient by the Administration of Sodium Chlorid. Note that the Increase in Weight Caused by Salt and Water Retention Was Accompanied by a Reduced Percentage of Proteins in the Blood, i.e., a Hydremia. (Drawn from Vaucher, Thèse de Paris.)

119). This usually occurs before any clinical evidence of edema appears. An examination of the refractive index of the blood in cases of renal disease is, therefore, of value, inasmuch as hydremia may be present before collections of fluid can be demonstrated in the body cavities or the subcutaneous tissues. So long as this hydremia is present the water metabolism cannot be regarded as normal. In the edema of heart disease, similar relations may or may not be present. As a rule, hydremia is less marked in cardiac than in nephritic edema and cardiac edema may occur with no dilution of the blood serum.

**IN INFECTIOUS DISEASES.**—Infectious diseases are often accompanied by an hydremic condition of the blood. With the crisis of pneumonia or scarlet fever there may be a rapid fall of weight, a disappearance of hydremia and an unusual elimination of chlorids (Fig. 120). The oc-

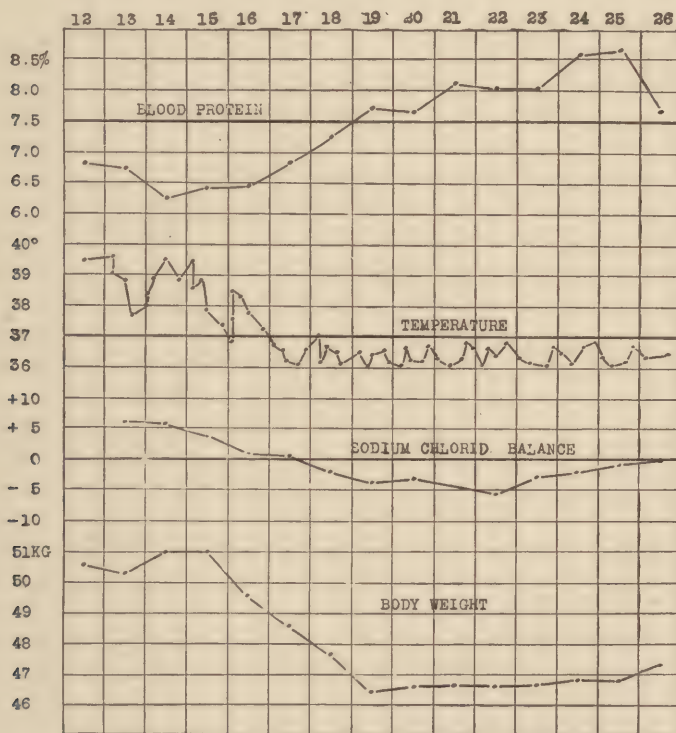


Fig. 120.—Hydremia During Lobar Pneumonia. Note that During the Fever the Percentage of Blood Protein Is Low (Hydremia) and that This Rose When the Fever Fell. (From Sandelowsky, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, published by F. C. W. Vogel, Leipzig.)

currence of salt and water retention during acute infections has been discussed under Metabolism in Fever.

**IN CHRONIC CACHEXIAS.**—Finally, in chronic cachexias, especially those due to carcinoma, hydremia is often present. The exact cause of this type is not known.

**Hydremic Plethora.**—When a rapid, transitory fall in the concentration of the blood occurs, as after the intake of sodium chlorid, the hydremia is obviously due to the addition of water to the blood. Such an increase of blood volume from addition of water is called an hydremic plethora. Hydremic plethora probably also occurs in nephritic edema. In other prolonged types of hydremia, however, we do not know whether the total volume of blood in the body is normal or is increased.

## Coagulation, Thrombosis and the Hemorrhagic Diseases

### *Extravascular Clotting*

In spite of the very large amount of work devoted to the study of blood coagulation there still exist wide differences of opinion as to the exact processes involved. For the most part, however, it is now agreed that the final step of coagulation consists of a reaction between the fibrin ferment (thrombin) and fibrinogen, a protein of the blood. When solutions of thrombin are added to solutions of fibrinogen, each being as pure as it can be made, typical coagulation occurs. Coagulation does not occur in the circulating blood, for the reason that no free and active thrombin is present.

**Formation of Thrombin.**—**CALCIUM SALTS.**—The formation of thrombin depends upon the interaction of at least three factors. The first of these is the presence of calcium salts. Freshly shed blood may be prevented from coagulating by the addition of oxalates or of other salts which either precipitate or “inactivate” (citrate) the calcium salts. If to such oxalate plasma, calcium salts be added in amounts sufficient to neutralize the oxalate present, coagulation takes place as usual.

**SECOND FACTOR: THROMBOGEN, PROTHROMBIN, SEROZYM.**—The second factor which is necessary for the formation of thrombin appears to be present in circulating plasma, or to be formed with extraordinary ease in shed blood. Its source is not certain, although it appears to arise in part from the blood platelets. To this factor has been given various names: *thrombogen, prothrombin and serozym*.

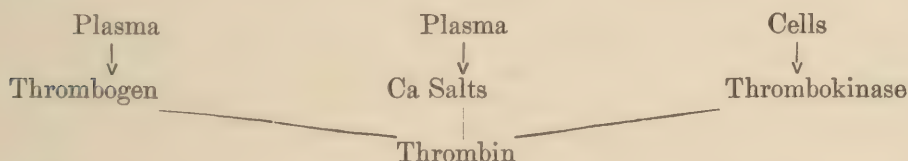
**THIRD FACTOR: THROMBOKINASE, THROMBOPLASTIN, CYTOZYM.**—The third factor is derived from the tissues or from the formed elements of the blood, and particularly from the blood platelets. When oxalated blood is centrifugalized, the major portion of the corpuscles are thrown down. The plasma thus obtained, which is cloudy from the presence of blood platelets, will clot in from eight to fifteen minutes on the addition of recalcifying fluid. If, however, the major portion of the platelets be removed by repeated centrifugalizations, the addition of recalcifying fluid may cause coagulation only after a lapse of forty-five minutes (Lee and Vincent). When platelets are added to such a clear plasma it again coagulates rapidly. Evidently the platelets furnish an element which hastens coagulation. Oxalate plasma which has passed through a Berkefeld filter may fail to coagulate at all when calcium salts are added, but it is possible that in this case other changes than a simple removal of the platelets are responsible for the change.

Extracts from various tissues, while unable in themselves to coagulate pure fibrinogen solutions, furnish an element which hastens the coagulation of blood. The importance of this tissue element is illustrated by the fact

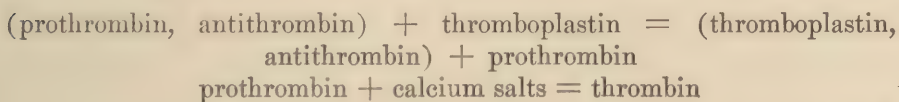


that when the blood of birds and reptiles is taken directly from the blood vessels without coming in contact with the tissues, coagulation is exceedingly slow, and if the cells be removed promptly by centrifugalization, the resulting plasma may not coagulate for days. If, however, such blood comes in contact with the juices of the tissues, or if an extract prepared from the tissues be added to the plasma, coagulation takes place rapidly. To this substance that is derived from the platelets and body tissues various names, such as *thrombokinese*, *thromboplastin*, *cytozym*, have been given. According to Howell, thromboplastin is a phosphatid (kephalin) soluble in ether.

**INTERACTION OF FORMATIVE SUBSTANCES.**—Several views have been expressed concerning the interaction of the substances which take part in the formation of thrombin. According to Morawitz, thrombin is formed directly by a reaction between calcium salts, thrombokinese and thrombogen:



Howell believes, however, that the action of tissue juices (thrombokinese, thromboplastin) is best explained by assuming that they neutralize an antithrombin, which is present in the circulating blood where it is united with the prothrombin. When the antithrombin is neutralized prothrombin is set free and it then unites with calcium to form thrombin. His view is indicated by the following reactions:



Normal fluidity of blood is safeguarded by a substance from the liver, heparin, which, not only prevents the activation of prothrombin, but unites with a substance in the blood to form antithrombin (Howell and Holt).

The incoagulable condition of the blood produced by hirudin, a substance that is contained in the extract from leaches, is believed to be due to the antithrombin contained in this extract. The incoagulable blood which follows the intravenous injection of peptone into the dog is also attributed to an excess of antithrombin in the blood.

### **Thrombosis**

The formation of thrombi within the blood vessels of a living animal differs markedly from the extravascular coagulation of blood. The

earliest portion of an intravascular thrombus is white and usually consists of masses of blood platelets which have adhered to one another and to the neighboring vessel wall. The frame work thus produced by the platelets soon becomes surrounded and infiltrated with polynuclear leukocytes. Such a *white thrombus* does not form when a vessel that has been ligated at both ends is removed from the body. It can evidently form only where the blood is in motion. This latter condition is the rule during the earlier stages of thrombus formation within the blood vessels. When once the current of blood has been stopped by a primary thrombus a *secondary red thrombus* develops in the obstructed vessel. This usually extends back to the next anastomosing vessel, and it consists of an irregular mass of red and white corpuscles, blood platelets and fibrin. The secondary red thrombus, therefore, resembles the clot formed during extravascular coagulation. The formation of this secondary thrombus is probably favored by the disintegration of the platelets in the primary thrombus; for, as we have seen, the material derived from disintegrated platelets accelerates extravascular coagulation.

**Slowing of Blood Current.**—Among the conditions which favor the development of thrombi is a marked slowing of the blood current. This may be due to a general slowing of the blood stream throughout the body (cardiac insufficiency), or it may be due to some local obstruction to the blood flow. Marked slowing also occurs in certain portions of the eddies which always arise when any flowing stream passes an obstruction, a bend, or a sudden widening. It is evident, therefore, that thrombus formation is favored particularly in the irregular dilatations of varicose veins, such as occur in the lower limbs and in the prostatic plexus of elderly men. The bend in the femoral veins near Poupart's ligament, and the dilatation in the blood channel which occurs when the blood enters an aneurism or an auricle, play a rôle in explaining the frequency of thrombi in these locations. Compression of the left iliac vein by the arterial trunks may account for the well-known frequency of thrombosis in the left as compared with the right lower limb.

**Changes in Platelets.**—It is evident also that changes in the quantity or quality of the blood platelets might influence thrombus formation, but of these changes we know little. After hemorrhage there is a very rapid regeneration of blood platelets and the amount of antithrombin in the blood is diminished. According to K. R. and C. K. Drinker, the latter change is responsible for the more rapid extravascular clotting after hemorrhage. The tendency to intravascular coagulation after operations and confinements may be due in part to both factors.

**Injuries or Diseases of Vessel Walls.**—Injuries to or disease of the walls of the vessels are also generally regarded as factors favoring the development of local thrombosis. In addition to the eddies produced by an irregular wall, it seems probable that a diseased intima favors an ad-

herence and accumulation of platelets and a liberation of substances that favor clotting (thrombokinase).

**Infections and Thrombosis.**—Concerning the interrelationship of infections and thrombosis there is still considerable difference of opinion. It is well known that thrombosis occurs not infrequently during the course of infectious diseases, and especially during typhoid fever. Furthermore, thrombi frequently contain microorganisms. In some cases, the thrombi seem to have become infected secondarily, or microorganisms free in the blood stream have been caught mechanically in the thrombus and have undergone further development there. In other cases, the infection seems to be the immediate cause of the thrombus by damaging the vessel wall either through direct extension from the site of infection or possibly through the action of bacteria or toxins that have been carried to some distant point. Whether infection may change the properties of the platelets or other elements in the blood so as to favor thrombosis is not known.

**Effect of Injecting Substances into Blood Stream.**—The injection of various substances directly into the blood stream may lead to multiple plugging of the blood vessels in different parts of the body. Among the substances which produce intravascular clotting when injected directly into the blood current are various sera, substances which destroy or agglutinate the blood cells, finely divided suspensions of bacteria or other particles, and tissue extracts (thrombokinase). The examination of animals shortly after such an injection shows that the capillaries of certain organs, and particularly of the lungs, the liver, and the spleen, are obstructed by minute thrombi. According to Ashoff, such capillary thrombi may be composed of masses of agglutinated platelets, of the stromata of hemolyzed red corpuscles, of the detritus from injured cells derived from the blood-forming organs, or finally of masses of white corpuscles. Their composition varies according to the cause which produces them. Such occlusions of the capillaries may in certain cases be followed by extensive intravascular coagulation from fibrin formation, and this is particularly apt to happen if the blood platelets are disintegrated. Under such circumstances the coagulability of the blood as whole may be either increased or diminished. When there is a widespread obstruction in the capillaries and the coagulability of the blood is increased, extensive clotting in the heart and larger blood vessels may be found at autopsy. It is an open question, however, whether fibrinous clotting, such as occurs outside of the body, ever occurs as a primary result of such injections. In many cases it certainly follows the plugging of the finer vessels by the agglutinated or disintegrated products of formed elements, that have been derived either from the blood or the blood-forming organs.

**OF SUBSTANCES INFLUENCING EXTRAVASCULAR CLOTTING.**—When substances which are known to influence extravascular clotting are injected into the circulation, the resulting effect upon the coagulability of the



blood is by no means a simple one. We have seen, for example, that tissue extracts contain a thromboplastic substance. When injected in large quantities, they may cause fatal intravascular clotting. When smaller quantities are injected, on the other hand, the blood may clot more slowly than before the injection was made. When pure thrombin is injected even in considerable quantity no demonstrable effect upon the living animal is produced, other than a lengthening of the coagulation time of the blood. The mechanism which causes this slower coagulation of the blood after the intravenous injection of substances which accelerate extravascular clotting is not thoroughly understood. In some cases, capillary thrombi are formed, and these seem to remove certain formed or unformed elements that normally assist clotting. In other cases, it would appear that the injection of thrombin or tissue extracts calls forth a reaction on the part of those tissues which form antithrombin, and that the subsequent fluidity of the blood is due to an excess of this inhibiting substance.

### ***Hemorrhagic Diseases with Reduction in the Blood Platelets***

The number of blood platelets to the cubic millimeter of normal blood averages about 450,000, but it may vary from 200,000 to 800,000 without being distinctly pathological. Denys, Hayem and other observers have shown that in certain hemorrhagic diseases there is a striking reduction in the number of blood platelets in the circulating blood. Such a reduction of platelets has been found in purpura hemorrhagica, in the hemorrhagic types of certain infectious diseases, especially smallpox and diphtheria, and in certain blood diseases associated with multiple hemorrhages, especially acute leukemia and aplastic anemia. A reduction of blood platelets with hemorrhagic tendency has been produced experimentally by poisoning with large doses of benzol and diphtheria toxin, and by injecting antiplatelet serum.

In these hemorrhagic diseases the number of platelets may fall far below the normal. With moderate hemorrhagic symptoms counts from 40,000 to 100,000 have been obtained while in severe hemorrhagic disease the platelets may be reduced below 10,000 per c.mm. In some cases, it may indeed be difficult to find any platelets in the blood.

**Extravascular Coagulation.**—In hemorrhagic disease with a reduced platelet count the coagulation of blood which has been removed from the body usually takes place with about the usual rapidity. The clot formed often fails to retract in a normal manner and it is often soft and weak. There may be some reduction in the prothrombin but the antithrombin and fibrinogen content of the blood plasma are normal.

**Bleeding Time.**—Despite the normal coagulation time, Duke has shown that, in these cases, there is a striking change in the duration of the hemorrhage which follows puncture of the ear. In the normal

individual the hemorrhage from such a puncture rapidly lessens. This can be demonstrated by applying blotting paper to the punctured ear at regular intervals (Fig.

121). In patients who show a hemorrhagic tendency associated with a marked reduction in the number of blood platelets, however, the bleeding time from the ear is strikingly prolonged (Fig. 122). Under normal circumstances, the hemorrhage from such a wound seems to be checked mainly by the formation of platelet thrombi in the injured capillaries. When the number of platelets is markedly reduced, these thrombi do not form with normal speed and the bleeding time is, therefore, prolonged.

**Cause of Purpuric Eruption.**—This increased bleeding time in patients with marked reduction of platelets affords a satisfactory explanation for the long-continued hemorrhages which sometimes follow slight injuries to the mucous membranes. The explanation of the cutaneous and subcutaneous hemorrhages, so characteristic of purpura hemorrhagica and related diseases, is not altogether clear. In some cases, slight injuries or



Fig. 121.—Normal Bleeding Time. (A) From Small Cut; (B) From Larger Cut; and (C) From Very Large Cut. At Half Minute Intervals Absorbent Paper Was Applied to the Cut in the Lobe of the Ear and the Decrease in the Size of the Blood Stains Represents the Rate of Decrease in the Intensity of the Hemorrhage. (From Duke, Arch. Int. Med.)

abrasions may have ruptured small blood vessels, and the local hemorrhages have been more profuse than normal by reason of a delay in the formation of platelet thrombi. On the other hand, numerous cutaneous hemorrhages may occur in such patients with no apparent relation to injury. Whether, in such cases, we are to assume numerous insignificant injuries, such as rubbing or scratching, or whether, as seems more likely, there are, in addition, pathological changes in the vessel walls, is still unsettled.

### *Hemophilia*

The classical type of hemophilia occurs in the male members of certain families, being transmitted most commonly through the females. The disease is characterized clinically: (1) by the uncontrollable bleeding which may follow relatively slight injuries, and (2) by the occurrence of joint symptoms after minor injuries, owing to hemorrhages into the joint cavities. All modern students of this disease agree that the blood, when drawn under proper precautions, requires an unusually long time to coagulate outside of the body. Thus Howell found that blood obtained directly from the vein of a hemophiliac did not clot for three or four hours, whereas blood similarly obtained from normal individuals usually clotted in twenty to forty minutes.

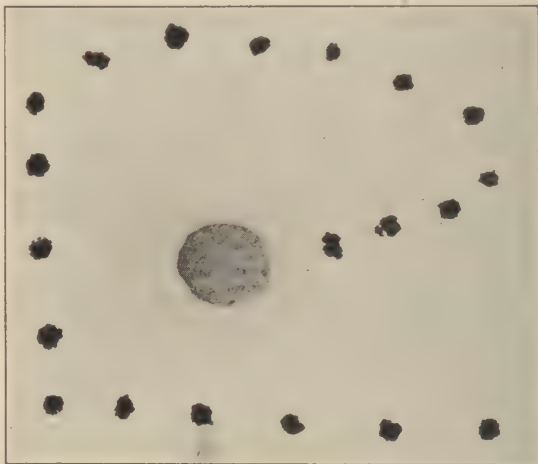


Fig. 122.—Prolonged Bleeding Time. Made from a Very Small Cut in the Ear in the Same Manner As in the Preceding Figure. Note that the Twentieth Stain Was Practically As Large As the First. (From Duke, Arch. Int. Med.)

Addis, using a modification of McGowan's method for estimating the coagulation time, found that whereas normal blood coagulated in nine to eleven minutes, the coagulation time of the blood in hemophilia varied up to ninety minutes or more. He showed, furthermore, from the study of an unusual number of cases, that the severity of the clinical symptoms corresponded to the prolongation of coagulation time, thus proving that the delayed coagulation demonstrable outside the body stands in a direct relationship to the tendency to bleed.

**Cause of Slow Extravascular Coagulation.**—The cause of the slow extravascular coagulation of hemophilic blood has been much studied but it is still rather obscure. Examination of the blood shows no marked departure from the normal as regards the red and white corpuscles. The number and appearance of the blood platelets are also normal. No lack of calcium salts in the blood can be demonstrated, and the addition of calcium salts to hemophilic blood does not increase its rate of coagulation to any striking degree. The fibrinogen is normal in amount and it is readily coagulated by thrombin. Howell has recently suggested some increase in inhibitory substances.

**EFFECT OF ADDED KEPHALIN.**—All modern work has shown that



the coagulation of hemophilic blood is markedly influenced by the addition of tissue extract. In one of Howell's experiments, for example, 1 c.c. of hemophilic blood added to 1 c.c. of a dextrose solution did not begin to clot for over two hours, whereas 1 c.c. of this blood plus 1 c.c. of a dextrose solution containing the active principle of tissue substance (kephalin) coagulated in from ten to eleven minutes. The accelerating effect produced by an admixture of tissue substance is also evident from the fact that in drawing blood from the veins of these patients for test purposes it is important that the puncture be made successfully on the first attempt. Any failure to enter the vein may result in obtaining blood which shows relatively little delay in coagulation. The same is true when blood is obtained by puncture of the skin. Normal blood obtained in this manner usually coagulates more rapidly than blood obtained directly from a vein, but in hemophilia the difference is increased. Indeed, if the tissues about the puncture are squeezed, the blood obtained by such puncture from cases of hemophilia may coagulate in the normal time.

**EXPLANATORY HYPOTHESES.**—These findings have been variously interpreted. Thus Morawitz and Sahli, on the basis of the coagulation theory of the former, believe that we have in hemophilia a diminution of the element that is derived from the tissues (thrombokinase). This deficiency may arise from qualitative changes in the formed elements of the blood or from changes in the tissues, particularly the vessel walls. Sahli believes that the washed cells of hemophilic blood are less effective in hastening coagulation than the washed cells of normal blood. According to Howell and to Addis, on the other hand, the essential change is in the prothrombin. Howell believes that this is quantitatively deficient and Addis that it is a qualitative defective.

**Causes of Prolonged Bleeding.**—It is well known that after relatively slight injuries patients suffering from hemophilia may bleed continuously for long periods of time, much longer, in fact, than is required for the coagulation of their own blood even when this is drawn directly from a vein. It may be asked why this prolonged bleeding occurs, and especially so since the blood ordinarily comes in contact with wounded tissue, the juice from which accelerates its extravascular coagulation. Fairly firm clots may form over the wound of a hemophilic patient, but these are apt to be dislodged by slight injuries and when thus dislodged the bleeding begins afresh. Addis has pointed out, that in hemophilia clots form fairly readily over the surface of the wounded tissues. In doing so, however, they prevent the tissue element (thromboplastin) from reaching the blood that flows from the injured vessels. It seems not improbable, in addition, that the continued hemorrhage in hemophilia may be due to some qualitative change in the blood platelets. We have seen that in certain hemorrhagic diseases the platelets are markedly reduced, and that the prolonged bleeding time is due not to a slow coagulation but to a deficient

plugging of the smaller blood vessels by platelet thrombi. In hemophilia it is possible that the slow coagulation and the prolonged bleeding time may both be due to some peculiarity of the platelets which prevents their normal agglutination and disintegration.

### ***Hemorrhagic Disease from Diminished Fibrinogen***

Continued hemorrhages may be due to the small amount of fibrinogen in the blood. Such a condition may be produced experimentally in the dog by severe chloroform poisoning. The blood from such animals clots with the usual rapidity, but the clot is flabby on account of the deficient fibrin formed, and it is too weak to make a firm closure of the ruptured blood vessels. Obviously such a condition will favor continued hemorrhage. Fibrinogen originates in the liver and the reduction of fibrinogen in severe chloroform poisoning is to be attributed to the marked hepatic changes which accompany this condition.

**In Severe Liver Destruction.**—It is well known that a marked tendency to hemorrhage accompanies certain forms of severe liver destruction in man, such as may occur in chloroform poisoning, phosphorus poisoning, acute yellow atrophy of the liver, and yellow fever. It is probable that, in these cases as in the severe chloroform poisoning of dogs, the hemorrhagic tendency is due in part, at least, to a deficiency in the fibrinogen of the blood. Whipple and his coworkers have shown that in chronic cirrhosis of the liver the fibrinogen is frequently less than normal, and at times it is so low that it may be regarded as the cause of the hemorrhagic tendency.

### ***Other Hemorrhagic Conditions***

In most other conditions showing a tendency to hemorrhage, there is neither a reduction in the number of platelets nor a reduction in the amount of fibrinogen. It is possible that, in some cases, there may be a qualitative change in the blood platelets, but of this we have no definite information. In most studies of such bloods it has been assumed that the hemorrhages were due to delayed coagulation, and efforts have been made to determine which of the various factors that control normal coagulation was altered and was thus responsible for the slow coagulation.

**Diminished Calcium.**—Only rarely can delayed coagulation be attributed to a deficiency or inactivity of the calcium salts. Possibly this is the cause of the slow coagulation in certain cases of obstructive jaundice, for the addition of calcium salts to the blood or the administration of calcium salts to such patients frequently seems to shorten the coagulation time (Lee and Vincent).

**Excess of Antithrombia.**—Among other factors which have been held responsible for delayed coagulation may be mentioned: (1) a de-

iciency in the prothrombin; (2) a deficiency in the thromboplastin; and (3) an excess of antithrombin. The latter, as we have seen, is the cause of the incoagulability of hirudin blood and probably also of peptone blood. According to Whipple, it is also responsible for a large number and great variety of clinical forms of delayed coagulation, such as occur in septicemia, pneumonia, endocarditis, miliary tuberculosis, general vascular thrombosis, etc.

**Deficient Prothrombin.**—According to the same author, a deficiency of prothrombin in many, and perhaps in all instances, characterizes the condition of melena neonatorum. Certainly the striking benefit derived by the latter group of patients from injections of serum or from the direct transfusion of blood indicates that the disease arises from some deficiency in one of the clotting factors. Morawitz is inclined to lay great stress upon an absence of thromboplastic substances as an etiological factor in obscure hemorrhagic diseases. It must be admitted, however, that, at the present time, the study of these hemorrhagic conditions is hampered by the fact that much is uncertain concerning the physiology of blood coagulation and the spontaneous cessation of hemorrhage from open vessels. Furthermore, it must be borne in mind, that in the purpuras with diminished platelet counts we have hemorrhagic conditions not associated with any definite reduction in the extravascular coagulation time. It is possible that qualitative changes in the blood platelets, of which we know nothing at the present time, are responsible for certain failures to arrest hemorrhages.

## Pathology of the Red Blood Corpuscles

### *Increased Destruction Hemolysis*

#### **The Rate of Destruction**

There is a constant disintegration and regeneration of the red corpuscles in the body. We do not know the exact rapidity with which this takes place. Estimates are based mainly upon the daily excretion of bile pigments, or of urobilin and related substances, which are derived from the hemoglobin of the red cells. By this method it has been estimated that under normal conditions from one-tenth to one-twentieth of all the red cells in the body are destroyed daily. The average life of the erythrocyte would, therefore, be from ten to twenty days. Under pathological conditions the rate of destruction may be very markedly increased. During acute attacks of hemolysis, such as occur in blackwater fever, this is plainly evident from the rapid fall of hemoglobin during the attack. An increased destruction may also occur as a chronic condition. In chronic hemolytic jaundice, for example, the amount of urobilin excreted in the



stools and urine is so large that the average life of the red corpuscle is said to be not more than two or three days (Eppinger and Charnas).

### Types of Destruction

Two separate processes may be distinguished. The first of these is hemolysis in the narrower sense, a solution of the red cells in the circulating blood. This almost certainly occurs in those pathological conditions where considerable quantities of free hemoglobin can be demonstrated in the blood plasma and where hemoglobin passes into the urine. Under normal conditions, however, it is probable that red cells are rarely if ever dissolved directly in the plasma. Free hemoglobin is almost never found in the normal circulating blood, even when there is an increased rate of blood destruction.

**Fragmentation and Phagocytosis.**—According to Rous and his associates, the initial stage of normal red cell destruction consists in a fragmentation of these cells while they are yet in circulation. The fine particles are engulfed and dissolved by the phagocytic endothelial cells of the spleen and other organs. The high iron content of the spleen and its increase when hemolysis is active is further evidence of the important rôle played by this organ in blood destruction. Phagocytic cells in the liver, the lymph glands and the bone marrow perform a like function, particularly in conditions of increased hemolysis or where the spleen has been removed.

It is doubtful if these phagocytic cells ever engulf entire red cells under normal conditions in man. Under pathological conditions this may perhaps occur and even relatively healthy cells be attacked and digested.

### Manifestations of Increased Destruction

The manifestations of a very rapid destruction of red cells in the body are caused in part by the liberation and disintegration of hemoglobin and in part by the toxic or mechanical action of the erythrocytic stromata.

**Hemoglobinuria.**—If the concentration of hemoglobin in the plasma exceeds a certain limit, it is excreted by the kidneys, giving rise to hemoglobinuria. The concentration which must be reached before hemoglobinuria occurs has been placed by Pearce and his coworkers at approximately 0.06 gram of hemoglobin per kilo of body weight for the dog, a figure which is somewhat less than the older estimate of 1/60 of the total hemoglobin. It seems probable, however, that under pathological conditions the renal threshold for the excretion of hemoglobin may be lowered. In paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, hemoglobinuria has occurred even though only small amounts of blood were hemolysed.

In hemoglobinuria the urine usually contains albumin and casts and

the kidneys show a severe degeneration of the renal parenchyma with desquamation of the renal cells. When the destruction of red cells is very marked anuria may result.

**Jaundice.**—Whenever there is an increased destruction of red corpuscles, the increased amount of hemoglobin set free causes an increased formation of bile pigments. The latter may be almost wholly excreted by the liver, or bile pigments may be retained in the body to such an extent that jaundice is produced. Apparently no very exact relationship exists between the rate of blood destruction and the degree of jaundice present. Changes in the liver cells, in the bile capillaries or in the viscosity of the bile probably play rôles in determining the incidence and severity of the jaundice (see Jaundice). Variations in the renal permeability to hemoglobin would also influence the level of hemoglobin in the blood and the amount available for bile pigment formation.

**Fever and Toxic Symptoms in Acute Hemolysis.**—Acute attacks of hemolysis from whatever cause are often associated with fever and with toxic symptoms. Apparently these symptoms depend only to a minor degree upon the liberation of free hemoglobin. These toxic effects are more commonly produced by the stromata of the disintegrating erythrocytes; for the injection of pure hemoglobin solutions into animals is less poisonous than the injection of the erythrocytic stromata after the removal of hemoglobin. In all conditions of rapid hemolysis the spleen becomes enlarged. This is due, in part at least, to an accumulation therein of the disintegrated red cells and their stromata (spodogenous enlargement).

**Urobilin Excretion.**—The destruction of erythrocytes in the body may be increased to a moderate or considerable extent without producing either hemoglobinuria or jaundice. The increased amount of bile pigments derived from the liberated hemoglobin is removed almost entirely by the liver and is excreted in the bile. Unfortunately, it is not possible to determine directly the amount of bile pigments that are formed in the bodies of such patients. Approximate estimates of these amounts can, however, be made. In the intestines the bile pigments are converted into urobilinogen and urobilin. These pigments are partially resorbed from the intestines and some may then pass through the liver and be excreted in the urine. A considerable part, however, is excreted in the stools and the total amount of these pigments in the stools and in the urine is a rough measure of the rate of erythrocytic disintegration.

**Deposition of Insoluble Pigments.**—Increased hemolysis may also lead to the deposition of insoluble pigments in various organs. Some of these give the chemical reactions of iron (hemosiderin), others fail to do so. These pigments are deposited particularly in the liver, the spleen, the kidney and the bone marrow.

### **Causes of Hemolysis**

In many respects the red blood corpuscles behave as if they were surrounded by semipermeable membranes which allow certain substances to pass through more freely than others. The retention of hemoglobin within the cell is often ascribed to such a membrane. That this is not the correct explanation for this retention is evident, however, from the fact that even when red cells are cut into pieces in isotonic salt solution the hemoglobin does not escape. It seems intimately bound by chemical or physical means to the stromata of the red cells. When hemoglobin is discharged from the red cells, the fluid loses its opaque red color and becomes more transparent. This process is called hemolysis.

Many substances will cause an escape of hemoglobin from the erythrocytes and the mechanism of hemolysis varies according to its cause. Furthermore, the substances which cause hemolysis in the test tube are not always equally effective in the body, for the latter can protect itself to some extent against certain hemolytic agents. Conversely, certain substances which have little or no hemolytic action in the test tube are active destroyers of red cells when introduced into the body.

#### *1. Hemolysis by Salt Solutions*

With respect to sodium chlorid and a number of other salt solutions the red corpuscle behaves as if it were surrounded by a semipermeable membrane which permits the free passage of water but restricts the passage of salts. Indeed, the salts normally present in red corpuscles differ from the salts present in plasma, being poor in sodium chlorid and rich in potassium salts. When erythrocytes are placed in an isotonic sodium chlorid solution (0.9 per cent), no change occurs in their appearance. When the salt solution is more concentrated (hypertonic), water leaves the corpuscles, they shrivel up, and they may eventually discharge their hemoglobin. When the salt solution is less concentrated (hypotonic), the corpuscles take up water, swell, and finally discharge their hemoglobin. With normal corpuscles, hemolysis begins in solutions containing about 0.42 per cent of sodium chlorid, and hemolysis of all the cells occurs in solutions containing about 0.36 per cent of sodium chlorid. The ease with which the corpuscles give up their hemoglobin when exposed to diminishing concentrations of salt solution is called the corpuscular fragility. In certain diseases, and particularly in cases of congenital hemolytic jaundice, some or all of the corpuscles do not withstand dilute salt solutions to a normal degree. Their fragility is said to be increased.

Other salts, especially the ammonia salts, have a specific hemolytic effect upon the red cells. They cause hemolysis even when the solution contains the same number of molecules as an isotonic sodium chlorid solution.



## 2. *Lipoids and Lipoidal Solvents*

The stromata of the red corpuscles contain a certain amount of lipoidal material which is soluble in alcohol and ether. Various substances cause hemolysis because they possess an affinity for this portion of the red cells. Among these are ether, chloroform, bile salts, soaps, and amyl alcohol. These substances are in general more destructive to corpuscles suspended in salt solution than to corpuscles suspended in blood serum or plasma, probably because the proteins and lipoids contained in these latter fluids take up the destructive agent.

**Saponin Hemolysis.**—The saponins, which are powerful hemolytic agents, act in a manner similar to the lipoidal solvents, for they combine with cholesterin and with lecithin. In the test tube their action on red cells may be prevented by the addition of cholesterin. Studies on patients have emphasized the fact that the resistance of red cells to saponin hemolysis differs from their resistance to hemolysis by hypotonic salt solution, for the two do not vary in the same directions in different pathological conditions. In obstructive jaundice and in pernicious anemia, for example, the resistance of the erythrocytes to hypotonic salt solution is increased whereas their resistance to saponin is diminished.

## 3. *Snake Venoms*

The venoms from the poisonous snakes (cobra, water moccasin, copperhead and rattlesnake) all contain hemolytic substances. The hemolytic substance of cobra venom is only destructive to washed red corpuscles in the presence of lecithin. Like many other hemolytic substances, these snake venoms also cause agglutination of the red blood cells, but the agglutinative properties do not appear to run parallel to the hemolytic properties. The resistance to hemolysis by cobra venom is usually increased in the later stages of syphilis, a fact which has been used for diagnostic purposes.

## 4. *Bacterial Hemolysins*

Hemolytic substances have been extracted from various bacteria, and these are doubtlessly responsible for the definite signs of hemolysis which occasionally occur during the course of infectious diseases. Whether the anemia which develops during so many infections is due mainly to these hemolytic substances or to other factors is not definitely determined.

## 5. *Hemolysis by Specific Immune Sera*

It has long been known that the sera of certain animals will dissolve the red corpuscles of animals belonging to certain other species. Where

the serum does not possess this property originally, it may be developed if the animal receives repeated injections of the foreign corpuscles. By this means an active hemolytic serum is produced, which acts only against the type of corpuscles that has been injected. Such specific hemolytic sera have proved of great interest in immunity studies, for the reason that the mechanism of their formation and action is similar to that which enables the blood serum to destroy bacteria or other foreign cells (see *Bactericidal Properties of Blood Serum*).

**Amboceptor and Complement.**—Through the classical work of Bordet, Ehrlich and their collaborators it has been shown that when a hemolytic serum has been produced by the injection of foreign corpuscles, its activity is due to the presence of two substances. The first of these, the so-called amboceptor or immune body, is of a specific character and acts only against the type of cells that has been injected. The unusual activity of immune sera is due to the increased amounts of amboceptor which they contain. The second body, or complement, is probably non-specific and it is not increased during the process of immunization. Since the immune body withstands a higher temperature than the complement, it is possible to destroy the latter by heating the serum to 55° C. for one hour. Such an inactivated immune serum does not destroy the red corpuscles against which it has been prepared; but if the complement be added the mixture produces rapid hemolysis. There is a strong affinity between the red blood corpuscles and their amboceptors. If erythrocytes be allowed to remain in an inactivated immune serum and then be separated by centrifugalization, they carry out the immune body with them. Such corpuscles may then be hemolyzed by placing them in a fresh non-immune serum.

Hemolytic immune sera destroy the red corpuscles through their action on the stromata of the red cells and such sera can be produced by the injection of washed stromata from erythrocytes after removal of the hemoglobin.

#### 6. *Hemolysis by Non-immune Sera*

In addition to the hemolytic activity which develops as a result of the injection of foreign erythrocytes, the blood sera of certain animals possess natural hemolytic properties toward the corpuscles of certain other animals. In such cases, also, the hemolysis is due to the combined action of amboceptor and complement.

**Isohemolysins; Autohemolysins.**—As a rule, the sera derived from animals of a given species do not hemolyze the corpuscles of other animals belonging to the same species. Occasionally, however, this occurs and such sera are said to possess isohemolysins. When, as rarely happens, the serum of a given animal will dissolve its own corpuscles, the serum is said to possess autohemolysins. The possible presence of isohemolysins is of great importance when direct transfusions of blood are made from one

individual to another, and they will be considered later (see Transfusion of Blood).

**ASSOCIATION OF ISOHEMOLYSINS WITH CERTAIN DISEASES.**—Efforts have been made to show that isohemolysins appear in the blood of patients suffering from certain diseases. Crile believes, for example, that the sera of cancer patients possess unusual hemolytic properties. While this seems to be true in a general sense, it is not a constant phenomenon, and it is not restricted to the sera derived from cancer patients. Its value as a diagnostic aid is, therefore, not established.

### **Paroxysmal Hemoglobinuria**

Paroxysmal hemoglobinuria is characterized by remarkable attacks of acute hemolysis within the blood vessels. The exciting cause of such attacks is usually exposure to cold, and attacks may be produced artificially by immersing the hands of susceptible individuals in cold water. If the veins leading from the cooled extremity be obstructed hemolysis occurs locally, but not in the remainder of the body.

**Symptoms.**—The paroxysms themselves are characterized by the typical manifestations of severe acute hemolysis: hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria, fever, enlargements of the liver and spleen, and occasionally jaundice. The frequent absence of jaundice may be due to the unusually rapid excretion of hemoglobin by the kidney, such as occurred in the case reported by Dennie and Robertson.

**Mechanism of Hemolysis.**—The mechanism of hemolysis in these patients has been studied particularly by Eason and by Donath and Landsteiner. These investigators showed that the solution of erythrocytes was caused by a peculiar autohemolysin. When the patient's serum, freshly prepared, is mixed either with his own or with another person's red corpuscles and the mixture is cooled, the hemolytic substances combine with the red blood corpuscles and on subsequent warming, hemolysis occurs. The degree of cooling that is necessary in order to effect this combination between erythrocytes and hemolysins varies in different individuals. In some an ordinary room temperature of 15° to 22° C. suffices, while in others the mixture of serum and erythrocytes must be cooled in an ice-chest. These differences correspond to the observed difference in the ease with which paroxysms may be induced in various patients. It seems probable, however, that the hemolysis occurs more readily within the body of the patient than it does in the test tube. There is no evidence that the red blood corpuscles of these patients are altered in such a manner as to render them unusually liable to hemolysis.

**Associated Vascular Spasm.**—We have said that attacks of hemoglobinuria are usually induced in susceptible patients by exposure to cold. A contributory factor, which is frequently present, is the tendency toward vascular spasms in the peripheral parts of the body. As a result of such



vascular spasms the circulation in an affected extremity becomes exceedingly slow, and this allows the temperature of the contained blood to approach that of the surrounding air.

**Relation to Syphilis.**—The underlying cause of paroxysmal hemoglobinuria is usually a syphilitic infection. Many patients give a history or show stigmata of old syphilis, and a positive Wassermann reaction has been found in as high a proportion as 90 per cent of the patients examined. Recoveries under antisymphilitic treatment have also been reported.

### Blackwater Fever

Blackwater fever, a condition which occurs almost exclusively among inhabitants of the tropics, is characterized by severe paroxysms of hemolysis within the blood vessels. The principal symptoms and signs—fever, hemoglobinuria, jaundice, anemia, urinary changes and splenic enlargement—may all be attributed to the rapid destruction of red corpuscles. It is noteworthy, however, that the accompanying jaundice is distinctly more marked than in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria.

**Relation to Malaria.**—It has long been known that blackwater fever occurs chiefly, and perhaps exclusively, in those who have been infected with malaria. Its exact relationship to malaria is not altogether clear, however, for the attacks are frequently precipitated by the administration of quinin, a drug which destroys the malarial parasites.

**NUMBER OF PARASITES IN PERIPHERAL BLOOD.**—In malaria the rate of erythrocytic destruction is increased. The infected red cells disintegrate during sporulation of the parasites, pigments probably derived from hemoglobin are deposited in various parts of the body and the excretion of urobilin in the stools is increased. In severe malarial infections, therefore, one would expect to find a more rapid disintegration of red cells. It is a noteworthy fact, however, that in blackwater fever the number of malarial parasites found in the peripheral blood bears no definite relationship to the severity of the attacks. It has been indeed a common observation that the number of parasites in the peripheral blood diminishes markedly during or just after the attack, and many cases have been reported in which no blood parasites could be found. Probably, however, the parasites are always present in the internal organs.

**ATTACKS FREQUENTLY PRECIPITATED BY QUININ.**—The immediate cause of the destruction of red cells which leads to blackwater fever is not known. Brem describes a hemolytic substance in malarial parasites and it may be that this is responsible for the attack of hemolysis. Of particular interest, however, is the fact that the attacks are frequently precipitated by the administration of quinin. Various substances chemically related to quinin are known to possess more or less marked hemolytic properties; and the administration of quinin to normal individuals

is said to increase the excretion of urobilin in the stools (Barratt and Yorke). It is quite possible that in certain malarial infections there are changes in the red cells which render them peculiarly liable to this action of quinin. Concerning this, however, we have no positive evidence.

### **Hemoglobinuria from Other Causes**

Hemoglobinuria has been observed occasionally in man from a variety of other causes. Among these are extensive burns as well as the action of various poisons, such as arseniureted hydrogen, carbolic acid and snake venom. It is noteworthy that arseniureted hydrogen, which produces hemoglobinemia in the body, does not hemolyze red corpuscles in a test tube. Hemoglobinuria also occasionally accompanies severe infections, particularly sepsis and scarlet fever. It may also follow the transfusion of blood.

### **Methemoglobin and Red Cell Destruction**

Methemoglobin differs physiologically from oxyhemoglobin in that the oxygen is firmly bound to the hemoglobin and is not readily dissociated. For respiratory purposes, therefore, methemoglobin is useless. Its presence in the blood gives to the latter a dark chocolate color and patients with methemoglobinemia usually present the appearance of cyanosis. It is probable that during intense hemolysis from any cause some methemoglobin is formed. In certain types of poisoning, however, the methemoglobin formation antedates the destruction of the red blood corpuscles, and the latter may not be sufficiently rapid to cause evident signs and symptoms. In other cases, it causes anemia, jaundice, methemoglobinuria and disturbances of kidney function.

**Drugs Leading to Its Formation.**—Among the drugs which may lead to the formation of methemoglobin are potassium chlorate, the nitrites and various anilin derivatives, particularly acetanilid. Years ago Marchand pointed out the danger of administering considerable quantities of potassium chlorate, as was then the custom in the treatment of diphtheria. More recently, emphasis has been laid upon the danger of methemoglobin formation from the excessive use of the anilin derivatives commonly present in headache remedies. Methemoglobin is also found in severe pneumococcus infections.

### **Increased Destruction of Erythrocytes Without Evident Signs**

The types of red cell destruction thus far considered have been of such a character as to produce striking clinical symptoms or signs. It is evident, however, that a less marked or more gradual destruction may produce neither hemoglobinuria nor jaundice, although if long continued

it might constitute a serious drain upon the blood. Evidence of such an increased destruction is furnished by the demonstration of an increased excretion of urobilin and of urobilinogen and by a deposition in the various organs of pigments derived from hemoglobin. We know, for example, that in certain forms of anemia, particularly pernicious anemia, such evidence is present. We are still very ignorant concerning the nature of the destructive process in most of these cases. The red cells may be destroyed through hemolytic agents of an unknown nature, or possibly through an increased phagocytic activity of certain cells in the body. In experimental trypanosome anemia, for example, there is a marked phagocytosis of erythrocytes by the endothelial cells of the lymphatic glands, the liver and the spleen. The same occurs in animals that have received injections of hemolytic sera. Such an increased cellular activity may simply remove from the circulation those red cells that have been previously damaged, and in this way it may prevent the evil consequences of a direct solution of erythrocytes in the blood stream. On the other hand, the phagocytic cells may possibly contribute to the blood destruction by taking up cells that are still healthy.

### ***Regeneration of Red Corpuscles***

Under normal conditions the total number of red cells in the body varies but slightly. There is a delicate physiological adjustment between destruction and new formation. Any loss or destruction of erythrocytes calls forth an increased new formation with a consequent tendency to return to the normal cell count.

### **Clinical Evidence of Increased Regeneration**

Unfortunately, we have no satisfactory clinical method for determining directly the rate at which new red cells are formed in the living subject. So long as the blood remains constant, however, the rate of regeneration must be equal to the rate of destruction. Indirectly, therefore, the rate of regeneration may be roughly estimated by determining the amount of urobilin and of urobilinogen excreted in the stools and urine.

**Immature Nucleated Forms in Peripheral Blood.**—Qualitative evidence of an increased formation of red cells may often be obtained on microscopic examination of the blood. During periods of rapid regeneration a certain number of immature, nucleated forms often escape from the bone marrow into the circulation, so that the presence of nucleated erythrocytes in the peripheral blood indicates an increased activity of the blood-forming tissues. The number of nucleated red cells is, however, no quantitative measure of the rate of new cell formation, for immature cells may be thrown into the circulation by qualitative as well as by quantitative changes in the regeneration. When, for example, malignant tumors in-



vade the bone marrow, nucleated red cells may appear in the peripheral circulation in great numbers; yet this seems to be due to a direct damage to the marrow rather than to a high rate of new cell formation.

**STAINING PECULIARITIES.**—The presence of basic staining granules in fixed blood preparations and of reticulated (granulofilamentous) corpuscles in preparations that have been stained by vital methods, appears to indicate an immaturity of the cells. Such staining peculiarities may possibly occur in old cells, but it seems probable that this is rarely if ever the case in the blood stream of man.

Morawitz observed that immature red cells use up oxygen with unusual rapidity when they are incubated under anaërobic conditions. Harrop found that the oxygen consumption parallels the number of reticulated red cells, both changes indicating immaturity. According to Masing, immature blood may be further distinguished by the fact that it contains a larger amount of nuclein phosphorus.

### **Anatomical Evidence of Increased Regeneration**

At autopsy an excessive new formation of red cells may be suspected when the red marrow of the bones has extended beyond its usual confines. The activity of the bone marrow may also be estimated by its richness in nucleated red cells. Finally, when the regeneration of erythrocytes has been rapid, areas of new formation may be found outside of the bone marrow and particularly in the spleen and in the liver.

### **The Stimulus to Regeneration**

The mechanism which regulates the new formation of red cells is delicately adjusted to the needs of the body, for the number of erythrocytes remains remarkably constant under varying conditions.

**Stimulation by Diminished Oxygen Supply.**—It has been suggested that a diminished oxygen supply to the bone marrow may stimulate the new formation of erythrocytes, and it is an interesting fact that in a variety of conditions which evidently lessen the oxygen supply to the body, such as the anemias, cyanosis, diminished atmospheric pressure and carbon monoxid poisoning, there appears to be an increased formation of erythrocytes. It is not certain, however, that this is the normal mechanism which governs the new formation of red cells.

**Stimulation by Products of Hemolysis.**—In experimental anemias the regeneration of red cells varies according to the cause. In anemias produced by hemolytic agents the evidences of regeneration are more numerous than in anemias produced by hemorrhage. Unripe cells occur in the peripheral blood in greater numbers, areas of red cell formation outside of the bone marrow are more common, the restoration of the normal blood

count is more rapid and the red cells show a greater oxygen consumption (Morawitz). These differences may be due either to a loss during hemorrhage of certain substances that are necessary for the reconstruction of red cells (iron), or they may be due to the stimulating effect of substances derived from the erythrocytes during their hemolysis. Kepinow found that the injection of lipoids derived from red cells accelerated recovery from experimental anemia, and Morawitz believes that the favorable effects which sometimes follow an injection of blood into anemic individuals are due, not so much to the red corpuscles that are introduced, as to their stimulating effect upon the blood-forming organs. The occurrence of remissions in pernicious anemia after blood transfusion may be best explained in this manner. Morawitz suggests, furthermore, that the products of erythrocytic disintegration may furnish a normal stimulus to regeneration, and that it may thus serve to maintain a constant composition of the blood in the body.

### Types of Regeneration

**Simple.**—Two general types of blood regeneration are commonly distinguished. The first and more common type is characterized by the presence of red corpuscles that are poor in hemoglobin (low color index). Their size and shape are approximately normal and changes in their staining properties, though often present, are rarely extreme. Relatively few nucleated red cells escape into the general circulation and these are usually of the normoblast variety. This is called the *simple or normoblastic type of regeneration*. In man it is the common form after hemorrhages and most other well recognized causes of anemia.

**Pernicious.**—The second type of regeneration is typified by that seen in pernicious anemia. It is characterized by a reduction in the number of red corpuscles which equals or exceeds the reduction in the amount of hemoglobin (high color index). This high color index is due to a high content of the individual cells in normal hemoglobin and is not due to any change in the composition of this pigment (Butterfield). In this type of regeneration basic staining granules in the cells are common and unusually large red cells either nucleated (megaloblasts) or non-nucleated (megalocytes) are present. It is therefore called the *pernicious or megaloblastic type of regeneration*. The variations in shape of the red cells and the unusually small forms, both of which are common in this type of anemia, are believed to be due to degenerative rather than to regenerative changes.

Although these two types can usually be separated, transitions do occur, and in the toxic anemias that have been produced experimentally in animals it has often proved difficult to classify the anemia. Furthermore, the normoblastic regeneration, which is the rule after hemorrhage, may

in animals be replaced by a megaloblastic picture if the hemorrhages are frequently repeated.

**CAUSE OF DIFFERENCE.**—The cause of the difference between these two types of regeneration is not certain. That the megaloblastic type is due exclusively to an unusually rapid or an unusually prolonged regeneration of new cells is rendered improbable by the fact that in chronic hemolytic jaundice remarkable increases in the excretion of urobilin occur without a megaloblastic blood picture; whereas in pernicious anemia the excretion of urobilin, though increased, is usually less marked than in chronic hemolytic jaundice. Apparently the megaloblastic type of regeneration depends upon qualitative changes in the bone marrow, which may be brought about either by exhaustion or by the direct action of toxic substances.

## *Anemia*

### **General Considerations**

The term anemia, though meaning a lack of blood, has come to be applied more specifically to those conditions in which the number of red cells or the amount of hemoglobin to the unit of blood volume is diminished.

**Skin Pallor.**—Skin pallor is not necessarily due to anemia. The normal tint of the skin is determined in part by its pigments and in part by the quantity and quality of the blood that it contains. The pallor of fainting, for example, is obviously due to a lack of blood in the cutaneous vessels. Certain persons habitually have a pale skin even though the blood shows no deficit in hemoglobin. In such cases the pallor is presumably due to a chronic narrowing of the skin capillaries and venules, or possibly to an unusually thick and but slightly pigmented skin. Such pallor may occur when the individual appears to be in perfect health or again it occurs in association with certain pathological conditions. Persons who live under poor hygienic conditions often appear pale even though the blood shows no anemia. The combination of hard work, poor food and dark or poorly lighted work rooms or dwellings produces such a pallor which may or may not be associated with demonstrable anemia. It is a common experience also that patients with nephritis appear pale, even when the hemoglobin content of the blood is approximately normal. Possibly in such cases the pallor is due to an increased amount of fluid in the cutaneous tissues.

**Relation to Total Blood Volume.**—The ordinary picture of anemic blood may be due not to a reduction in the total amount of hemoglobin in the body, but to the presence of an excessive amount of plasma. In order to estimate the total number of red cells or the total quantity of hemoglobin in the body, it is necessary to know the total blood



volume. In the following discussion of anemia, reference will frequently be made to the total blood volume, as determined particularly by the carbon monoxid method. It should be remembered, however, that the accuracy of methods for determining the total blood in the body is still somewhat open to question, so that at present this factor constitutes an uncertain element in blood studies.

**Variation in Number of Red Cells.**—If variations in blood volume be omitted from consideration, then any fall in the red cell count indicates that more red cells are being destroyed than are being formed, and any rise in this count indicates a difference in the opposite direction. When the number of cells in the blood remains constant the number formed must equal the number destroyed. During stationary periods of anemia or health, therefore, a more or less exact balance exists between blood destruction and blood regeneration.

**DETERMINATION OF NUMBER.**—During such stationary periods the number of cells in the blood is determined: (1) by the average life of the individual cells; and (2) by the rate at which new cells are formed (and old ones destroyed). It is obvious, for example, that if the average life of the individual corpuscles be lessened while the rate of new formation (and disintegration) remains constant, there will be fewer erythrocytes in the blood (*Anemia from Blood Destruction*). Also, if the rate of new formation (and destruction) be lessened with no change in the average life of the cells, the number of erythrocytes in the blood will be low (*Anemia from Lessened New Formation*). Anemia may, therefore, be due to either of these causes or to their combination. On the other hand, a normal blood count may be present, not alone when the conditions governing blood formation and blood destruction are in every way normal, but also when a shortened life of the average corpuscle is accompanied by an increased rate of new formation (compensation of increased destruction by increased new formation).

The classification of anemias is based upon these principles; and although it is difficult to fit certain clinical forms into any rational scheme, the following may be used as a working classification:

### Classification of Anemias

- I. Anemia from Increased Losses of Red Cells.
  1. Anemia from hemorrhage.
  2. Anemia from blood destruction (toxic, etc.).
    - a. With simple (normoblastic) regeneration.
    - b. With pernicious (megaloblastic) regeneration.
- II. Anemias from Lessened Formation of Cells or Hemoglobin.
- III. Anemias due to an Increase in the Blood Plasma.

**Anemia from Hemorrhage**

**Acute Hemorrhage.**—Acute loss of blood is usually associated with trauma, peptic ulcer, typhoid ulcers or extrauterine pregnancy; and the clinical picture is, naturally, complicated by the primary disease. In profuse acute hemorrhages it is the reduction of blood volume which immediately threatens life. A rapid hemorrhage may cause death when about one-third of the total amount of blood (about two liters) has been lost. If the hemorrhage is prolonged for twenty-four hours, as much as two-thirds of the original blood volume may be lost without a fatal outcome.

The symptoms of acute hemorrhage, such as pallor, rapid and feeble pulse, low blood pressure, restlessness, sweating and delirium can be attributed to the deficient circulation. During and immediately after the acute hemorrhage, the hemoglobin and red cell count furnish no reliable measure of the amount of blood lost. More important are the character and rapidity of the pulse and the reduction of blood pressure. Systolic pressures below 90 indicate that the hemorrhage has reached serious dimensions.

**Replacement of Fluids.**—During and after an acute hemorrhage, liquids pass from the tissues into the blood vessels. In animals this may occur so rapidly that the blood coming from an open artery may be distinctly lighter in color at the end of fifteen minutes of moderate bleeding. The rapidity of this fluid replacement appears to depend upon the amount of available water in the body and the type of animal. Rabbits, for example, seem to replace the lost fluid more rapidly than dogs. In man several hours may elapse before a definite dilution of the hemoglobin by fluid replacement is demonstrable.

Replacement of fluid after an acute hemorrhage dilutes the blood. The hemoglobin percentage and the red cell count fall, and this fall may continue for two or three weeks despite the regeneration of red cells by the bone marrow. In man the volume of blood after a hemorrhage usually remains less than normal for some time but in animals it may eventually rise above the original level (Fig. 123). The tendency to restore blood to approximately the normal volume may be assisted by injections of fluid intravenously or subcutaneously, by rectal administration of fluid or by drinking large quantities of water. If, according to Robertson, the hemoglobin is below 30 per cent these measures frequently fail to dilute the blood further, even though the patient has a lessened blood volume. Under such circumstances, particularly, blood transfusions are superior to measures which merely furnish additional fluids.

**Replacement of Red Cells and of Hemoglobin.**—The loss of blood after an acute hemorrhage leads to an increased production of red cells and of hemoglobin. This is evident not alone from the gradual rise in the hemoglobin and in the erythrocyte count when compared with the volume

of blood in the body but also from qualitative changes in the red cells. Nucleated erythrocytes in small numbers may appear in the circulating blood. Of more importance is the increase in the number of reticulated red cells which may make up from 5 to 25 per cent of the total number of red cells. The new corpuscles are usually deficient in hemoglobin, which indicates that the restoration of color is not as rapid as the restoration of the number of red cells (low color index).

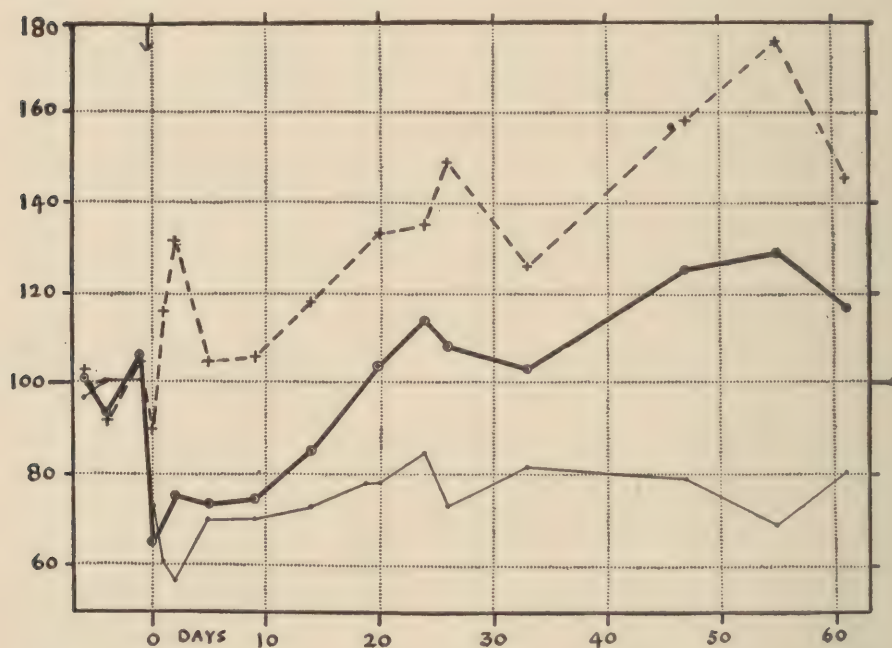


Fig. 123.—Effect of a Single Hemorrhage upon the Hemoglobin and Blood Volume of a Rabbit. The Thin Line Represents the Percentage of Hemoglobin in the Blood, the Broken Line Represents the Blood Volume, and the Heavy Line the Total Amount of Hemoglobin in the Body. Note that the Immediate Effect of the Hemorrhage Was a Reduction in the Percentage of Hemoglobin and that This Percentage Continued to Fall for Two or Three Days. The Percentage Rose After This But Did Not Reach the Original Percentage. The Increase in the Blood Volume, However, During the Later Portions of the Curve Caused an Increase in the Total Amount of Hemoglobin in the Body. (From Boycott and Douglas, *Jour. Path. and Bacter.*)

Increased activity on the part of the bone marrow occurs almost immediately after a hemorrhage. Within a few hours there is an active polynuclear leucocytosis, averaging about twenty thousand but sometimes reaching as high as forty thousand. During the first twenty-four hours the blood platelets begin to increase and their number reaches a maximum of about a million within the next few days. The reticulated red cells often rise to 10 to 12 per cent within the first forty-eight hours. During the first week these evidences of bone marrow activity may lessen



but a moderate increase in the leucocytes, platelets and reticulated cells continues for some time.

**Rapidity of Return to Normal.**—The time required for a restoration of the blood to normal after a severe hemorrhage varies from six weeks to six months. The rapidity of this restoration depends not alone upon the severity of the hemorrhage but also on the age of the individual, his general nutrition, the character of the diet, the supply of iron, etc. In dogs, Whipple and his associates found that cooked lean meat, beef heart and cooked liver hastened recovery; while Bland's pills and other iron and arsenic preparations were without definite effect.

**Chronic Hemorrhage.**—Repeated hemorrhages are encountered most frequently in association with bleeding hemorrhoids, excessive menstruation, bleeding peptic ulcers, etc. The changes which follow repeated hemorrhages are in many respects similar to those which follow a single hemorrhage. If the hemorrhages are small, the hemoglobin in the body may be maintained at the normal level for long periods of time, owing to a compensatory increase in the regeneration. Indeed, the excessive regeneration may at times overcompensate the blood losses. Eventually, however, if the hemorrhages are frequently repeated, the reparative processes tend to become exhausted, either from lack of new building material (iron) or from some fundamental change in the bone marrow cells. In such cases a severe and chronic anemia may become established.

### Simple Toxic Anemias

We have seen that various poisons, which injure or destroy the red cells, may in large doses produce acute hemolysis, with hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria, jaundice, methemoglobin formation, etc. If the destructive action is less marked but more prolonged, the poisoning may cause anemia without other striking manifestations.

**Lead Poisoning.**—The anemia of lead poisoning, for example, is characterized by evidence of increased blood destruction and of increased activity on the part of the bone marrow. In a case examined by Eppinger and Charuaz, large amounts of urobilin were found in the stools, which indicates an increased blood destruction. In lead poisoning a considerable number of the red cells in the peripheral blood may show basic staining granules. This change is believed to indicate immaturity and it suggests an increased activity on the part of the bone marrow. Why this increase in basophilic erythrocytes during lead poisoning is not accompanied by a corresponding increase in the number of nucleated forms is not known.

**Infections.**—The anemias which accompany various infections are usually regarded as being due to some toxic action upon the red corpuscles. In most cases, direct evidence in favor of this view is lacking, and it is probable that infections may also depress the formation of new cells

in the bone marrow. In certain patients suffering from infections diseases, however, there is direct as well as indirect evidence of increased hemolysis. Thus Wilbur and Addis found an increased urobilin excretion in a case of malignant endocarditis. Hemolysins have been obtained from certain bacteria (streptococci) and in some infections sharp attacks of hemolysis occur. The anemia of malarial fever is due in part to the disintegration of the infected corpuscles, but there is also evidence that the malarial parasites may produce hemolytic substances (see Blackwater Fever).

**Malignant Tumors.**—Malignant tumors may cause anemia partly through repeated hemorrhages and partly through interfering with the general nutrition of the body. They also contain hemolytic substances, and the blood sera of patients suffering from malignant disease show at times an unusual hemolytic action toward the red corpuscles of normal individuals.

**Bothriocephalus and Hookworm.**—Hemolytic substances have been isolated from the bodies of certain intestinal parasites, notably the bothriocephalus and the hookworm. The anemia which not infrequently accompanies infection with intestinal parasites is due in part to these hemolytic substances, in part to repeated small hemorrhages from the bowel (hookworm).

### Megaloblastic Toxic Anemias

Experiments on animals have shown that anemias produced by certain toxic agents (phenylhydrazin, etc.) are accompanied by qualitative changes in the type of blood regeneration. Unusual numbers of nucleated and of basic staining erythrocytes appear in the peripheral blood, while abnormally large cells (megalocytes) or abnormally large cells with reticulated nuclei (megaloblasts) are also common. Such toxic anemias are, therefore, of the megaloblastic type. Examinations of the bone marrow in such cases also show a change in the character of the marrow cells which corresponds to that seen in the blood.

**Pathogenesis.**—The cause of this different type of blood regeneration is still under discussion. By some the difference has been attributed to an unusually active proliferation of cells in the bone marrow, the megaloblastic blood picture indicating that regeneration in the marrow is unusually active. In favor of this view is the fact that showers of nucleated red cells in the peripheral blood during the course of pernicious anemia are usually accompanied and followed by a rapid improvement in the anemia. By others the difference in type of blood regeneration is believed to be due, not to an increased functional activity alone, but to some direct damage of the blood-forming tissues. The intravenous injection of a hemolytic substance, for example, may cause a megaloblastic blood picture, whereas the subcutaneous injection of the same substance produces

a simple anemia. Possibly, in the former case, the toxic material directly damages the bone marrow. In chronic hemolytic jaundice the rate of red cell destruction may exceed that in pernicious anemia without the occurrence of a megaloblastic picture. This fact favors the view that the latter blood picture is due in part to some qualitative change in the blood-forming tissues. It therefore seems probable that the megaloblastic type of toxic anemia is due in part to direct damage to the bone marrow, and in part to an excessive new formation of red cells by this damaged and irritated tissue.

### *Pernicious Anemia*

The cause of pernicious anemia is not known and for this reason it may properly be designated as a cryptogenic anemia. The term primary as applied to pernicious anemia is objectionable, for the reason that there is every reason to believe that pernicious anemia is due to some unknown intoxication or infection; but the term serves the useful purpose of distinguishing this disease from those conditions in which a similar blood picture is produced by known causes. Ultimately, however, we may hope that the cause of pernicious as well as that of other so-called primary anemias will be found, and that with this finding these anemias will be classified according to their etiology.

**Characteristic Changes.**—The disease which has come to be known as pernicious anemia is characterized not alone by the changes in the blood to which so much attention has been given, but also by changes in other parts of the body and particularly in the nervous system and in the digestive apparatus. In patients suffering from this disease, free hydrochloric acid is almost invariably absent from the stomach contents. This achlorhydria may precede the anemia by many years, and it persists even when the blood picture becomes practically normal during remissions in the disease. According to Faber, it is accompanied by the anatomic changes of a chronic gastritis. Inflammatory conditions about the mouth (glossitis and stomatitis) are also common in pernicious anemia, and Hunter believes that these play a rôle in the pathogenesis of the disease. The diarrheas and other intestinal disturbances are similar to the intestinal complications of other types of achlorhydria.

**NERVOUS SYMPTOMS.**—Nervous symptoms occur in a large proportion of patients suffering from pernicious anemia. The milder and more common manifestations consist of paresthesias in the hands and feet. The more serious manifestations consist of paralyses, ataxias, and mental changes. The more serious nervous symptoms are caused by focal lesions in the spinal cord and brain. Like the achlorhydria, the nervous manifestations do not run parallel to the severity of the anemia, nor do they im-



prove with remissions in the blood picture. It is possible that the nervous changes may also, in some cases, antedate the development of anemia.

**RELATION BETWEEN SYMPTOM GROUPS.**—Apparently these three main groups of symptoms—the blood changes, the gastro-intestinal symptoms, and the nerve lesions—do not depend upon one another but are the result of a common cause. Their frequent association in pernicious anemia but not in other forms of anemia favors the view that this disease is a well-defined entity.

**Increased Destruction of Red Cells.**—In pernicious anemia there is an increased destruction of the red corpuscles. Iron containing pigments (hemosiderin) are deposited in the liver, the spleen and the kidneys. The slight yellow staining of the conjunctivae, the yellow skin and the brilliant yellow tint of the body fat are probably due to pigments derived from the destruction of the red cells. The amount of urobilin in the stools is usually increased and may be from three to ten times the normal. Urobilin is also frequently found in the urine, probably because it is absorbed in such quantity from the intestines that it passes through the liver into the general circulation. Just where or how the destruction of red cells occurs we do not know, although the remarkable reduction in the output of urobilin which sometimes follows splenectomy (Eppinger, Robertson) suggests that the spleen plays some rôle in the destruction of red cells in this disease. As a rule, no free hemoglobin can be demonstrated in the blood serum and hemoglobinuria rarely, if ever, occurs.

**Activity of Bone Marrow.**—In addition to the increased destruction of red cells in pernicious anemia there is also evidence of an unusual activity on the part of the bone marrow. Immature red cells are common in the peripheral blood, as is shown by the frequent occurrence of cells taking the basic stains, of cells with basic staining granules, and of nucleated red corpuscles. Qualitative changes in blood regeneration are indicated by the presence of large red cells (megaloeytes) and of large nucleated cells with reticulated nuclei (megaloblasts). Pathological examination shows that the red bone marrow is more extensive than in health, and that it contains a relatively large number of immature cells. Extramedullary centers of new cell formation may also be found in the spleen, the liver and the other organs.

**Possible Causes of Red Cell Changes.**—Two explanations may be offered for the fact that both the destruction and the new formation of red cells are increased in pernicious anemia. In the first place, the new red cells may be in some way defective, so that they disintegrate in the blood with abnormal ease. In the second place, the increased new formation may be entirely secondary to an increased blood destruction and may, therefore, be regarded as a compensatory process. While a final answer as to the correctness of these possibilities cannot be given, it may be pointed out again that the blood picture in pernicious anemia cannot be

explained solely on the hypothesis of an increased destruction of red cells, for we know that in chronic hemolytic jaundice a much greater destruction may occur with no change to a megaloblastic type of regeneration.

### *Other Megaloblastic Anemias*

We have seen that anemias of a megaloblastic type may follow the introduction of certain toxic substances into animals. In man also the continued administration of certain drugs, and particularly of acetanilid, occasionally produces blood changes which resemble the blood picture of pernicious anemia. In addition to these toxic anemias of a megaloblastic type, a number of other similar anemias may occur in man where the etiology is more or less obscure.

**Bothriocephalus Anemia.**—The best studied of these is the pernicious type of anemia that is caused by the fish tapeworm, the *Bothriocephalus latus*. With the expulsion of the parasite, this anemia may disappear. A megaloblastic anemia occurs in only a small proportion of patients harboring this parasite, so that its occurrence appears to depend upon some contributing factor that is not yet known. The gastric achlorhydria which is practically universal in pernicious anemia is also common in the anemia produced by the bothriocephalus, being found, according to Tallqvist, in about 70 per cent of all cases.

A hemolytic substance has been isolated from the fish tapeworm, this being, according to Faust and Tallqvist, a cholesterin oleic acid compound. When this compound is split in the digestive tract, the oleic acid set free combines with alkalis to form soaps. Oleic acid and its soaps, like other unsaturated acids, cause hemolysis, and anemias have been produced experimentally by the administration of such acids to animals. As a rule, however, the resulting anemia has not been of a megaloblastic type, so that the relation of unsaturated fatty acids to bothriocephalus anemia and to typical pernicious anemia has not been satisfactorily demonstrated.

**During Pregnancy and Confinement.**—Anemias of a megaloblastic type also occur occasionally during *pregnancy* and in the *puerperium*. The clinical course of these anemias differs from that of pernicious anemia in that the disease usually runs an acute course and ends either fatally or with recovery. The exact cause of this anemia is not known.

**In Other Conditions.**—Pernicious types of anemia have also been described in association with syphilis, with malaria, and with a variety of other conditions. Such conditions usually produce simple anemias only and the occurrence of the pernicious form is so uncommon that it

may be a coincidence. Proof of an etiologic relation between the blood picture and these diseases could be demonstrated by showing that a complete and permanent recovery followed a removal of the supposed cause.

### *Pathogenesis of Pernicious Anemia*

The fact that various poisons may produce anemias of a megaloblastic type both in animals and man suggests that pernicious anemia is also caused by the action of some toxic substance. Where this poison originates in the body and what is its nature have been subjects of much investigation, but as yet the pathogenesis of pernicious anemia is veiled in obscurity.

**Digestive Tract.**—In seeking a site of origin for the supposed toxic substance particular attention has been directed toward the *digestive apparatus*. Inflammations of the mouth and tongue are common in pernicious anemia and Hunter has laid particular stress upon such inflammations as etiological factors in the disease. The gastric achlorhydria which is present in nearly every case is certainly not a result of the blood changes, for: (1) it is often absent in other anemias of equal intensity; (2) pernicious anemia may develop in patients who have had achlorhydria for years (Faber); and (3) the achlorhydria persists during improvements in the blood picture. As a rule, the achlorhydria is regarded as coördinate with the anemia in the sense that both arise from a common cause. It is possible, however, that the achlorhydria may stand in an etiological relation to the disease. Achlorhydria permits the passage of unusual quantities of undigested material into the intestines, and bacteria from an infected mouth or from the food are not subjected to the antiseptic action of normal gastric juice. That hemolytic substances may be produced by these bacteria or by an unusual decomposition of material in the intestinal tract is possible but it is not proved. We know, furthermore, that the majority of patients with achlorhydria either have no anemia at all or have an anemia of the simple type.

**TOXIC SUBSTANCES.**—Nor are we any better informed concerning the *nature of the toxic substance* which is supposed to produce the anemia. Among horses an anemia of the pernicious type is associated with the occurrence of fly larvae in the walls of the stomach (Seyderhelm) but nothing similar has been observed in man. Since a hemolytic substance of lipoidal character has been isolated from the fish tapeworm, efforts have been made to demonstrate that similar lipoidal substances are responsible for the hemolysis in pernicious anemia. Such substances have been extracted from the intestinal flora and from the intestinal mucous membrane of patients suffering from pernicious anemia, but they have been found in other conditions, so that their relation to the anemia is not established. King believes that a parallelism exists between the amount of



unsaturated fatty acids in the blood (oleic acid?) and the hemolysis observed in pernicious anemia and other hemolytic conditions. The observation is highly suggestive but it requires further confirmation and control. At the present time, therefore, despite the large amount of time and work which has been devoted to this problem, the pathogenesis of pernicious anemia remains unsolved.

### **Anemia from Defective Red Cell Formation**

Poor general nutrition does not usually cause anemia. Even during prolonged periods of complete starvation, the number of red cells and the percentage of hemoglobin change but little. It is possible, however, that poor food and defective hygiene may lessen the resistance of an individual to other causes of anemia.

**Deficiency of Iron.**—A deficient amount of iron in the diet is rarely if ever the sole cause of anemia in adults. Although considerable amounts of iron compounds (100–200 mg.) are liberated daily as a result of the normal disintegration of the red cells, only very small quantities (6 mg.) are excreted, the major part being conserved for the formation of new hemoglobin. If, however, iron be lost from the body, as when anemia is produced by hemorrhage, a deficient supply of iron may become evident, for recovery from such an anemia is delayed unless adequate quantities of iron be taken in the food. Milk contains relatively small amounts of iron (2–3 mg. per liter). During the first year of life the infant makes good this deficit by using iron stored in his body. If, however, an exclusive milk diet be continued beyond the first year of life an anemia may develop from iron deficiency. According to Stöltzner, an iron deficit may in certain cases appear earlier than this; particularly when, as in premature infants or twins, there may have been a deficient supply of iron in the body at birth.

**Bone Marrow Disease; Leukemia.**—Disturbances in red cell formation may also result from a diffuse disease of the bone marrow. Such a disease may reduce the normal erythroblastic tissue or it may disturb its activities. In leukemia, for example, anemia is common and is apparently caused by the exuberant growth of the cells which give rise to leukocytes, thus interfering with the growth of the erythroblastic tissues.

### *Aplastic Anemia*

In the rare disease known as aplastic anemia the red bone marrow is so reduced in extent as to be almost absent. This condition is characterized by a severe anemia without the appearance of immature erythrocytes in the peripheral blood, by a leukocyte count of 2,000 or less owing to a reduction in the granular leukocytes, and by a tendency to hem-

orrhages (lack of platelets). The rate of red cell production is usually diminished, and evidences of an increased rate of erythrocytic destruction are usually absent. In a few cases, however, abnormal deposits of iron have been found in the internal organs. This anemia, therefore, appears to be due to a failure on the part of the bone marrow which may be, but usually is not, accompanied by evidences of increased destruction.

**Produced by Experiment in Animals.**—This type of anemia has been produced experimentally in animals by certain poisons which damage the bone marrow, such as saponin and benzol.

**Secondary Aplasia.**—Aplasia of the bone marrow occasionally complicates other types of anemia, both hemorrhagic and toxic. In such cases, it appears to represent a secondary condition of exhaustion or damage which results in a failure of regeneration. This secondary aplasia is probably distinct from the true aplastic anemias in which the bone marrow aplasia is the primary cause of the blood changes.

**Milder Forms.**—Of the milder forms of bone marrow aplasia we know almost nothing. It is not improbable, however, that various anemias in which no excessive blood destruction has been demonstrated may depend on a slight failure of bone marrow activity. Certain anemias associated with infectious diseases and malignant tumors may possibly arise in this way.

### *Chronic Hemolytic Jaundice*

We have seen that acute attacks of hemolysis may cause a transient jaundice owing to the formation of large quantities of bile pigment from the liberated hemoglobin. A chronic increase in the rate of red cell destruction may cause an analogous, but chronic, jaundice. This rare condition (chronic hemolytic jaundice) may occur as a family disease, or it may be acquired.

### **Family Hemolytic Jaundice**

This remarkable disease, to which attention was first directed by Hayem and by Minkowski, presents a well-defined clinical entity which is characterized as follows: (1) the child is usually born jaundiced or becomes so shortly after birth; (2) this jaundice may persist for years with no apparent impairment of health and no shortening of life; (3) the spleen is enlarged; (4) bile pigments are present in the stools and in the blood but are absent in the urine, the dark color of the latter being due to urobilin; and (5) the condition is a family disease.

**Excessive Red Cell Destruction.**—In such patients there is no gross obstruction in the bile passages and the liver appears normal. The jaundice is due to an increased destruction of red blood corpuscles in the body. Clinically this is evident from the extraordinary quantities of urobilin

that appear in the stools. According to Eppinger and Charnas, this may be as high as 20 to 30 times the normal. Considerable urobilin also appears in the urine. Pathologically the excessive blood destruction is evident from the large deposits of iron free pigment in the liver and spleen and the smaller deposits of iron-containing pigment in the spleen and kidney. It is obvious that with such an increased destruction of red cells there must be a corresponding new formation. Signs of increased regeneration are found on examination of the blood films from such patients. The red cells show polychromasia and basophilic granulations, and nucleated forms, both normoblasts and to a lesser extent megaloblasts, may be present in varying numbers. Vital staining of the red cells shows a peculiar granular filamentous structure of many cells which is also evidence of immaturity.

**HEMOLYTIC CRISES.**—In this type of hemolytic jaundice, crises of increased red cell destruction may occur. During these the jaundice deepens, the swelling of the spleen increases, and there may be hemoglobinuria or acute attacks of pain either in the splenic or hepatic regions. After such crises there is a fall in the hemoglobin and in the number of red cells.

### **Acquired Hemolytic Jaundice**

The acquired type of hemolytic jaundice appears to be rare and it does not present such a well-defined clinical syndrome as the family type. In some cases it appears to be associated with syphilis, malaria or carcinoma, in other cases no cause is apparent. The clinical manifestations: jaundice with increased urobilin in the stools and urine, anemia, splenic tumor and hemolytic crises, are similar to the manifestations of the family form of the disease. The anemia is at times a more marked manifestation than the jaundice, so that transitions occur to cases of splenic anemia with increased blood destruction.

### **Pathogenesis**

The cause of the remarkable hemolysis in these conditions is not certain. Chauffard showed that in the family type of the disease the red corpuscles were unusually susceptible to hemolysis by dilute salt solutions; their fragility was increased. Hemolysis by other agents, such as weak acids and sera, may also occur with unusual ease, whereas hemolysis with other toxic substances, such as saponin, may not differ from the normal. In the acquired type of hemolytic jaundice the corpuscular fragility is usually less affected. Possibly some defect in the red cells represents the primary cause of the disease, particularly in the family type. Hemolytic



substances have been looked for repeatedly in the sera of these patients, but as a rule they have not been found.

**Enlargement of Spleen.**—The enlargement of the spleen in hemolytic jaundice has been variously interpreted. By some it is regarded as a secondary manifestation, being due to a collection of cellular detritus in this organ. By others the spleen has been assumed to take an active part in the hemolytic processes. The fact that excision of the spleen has at times been followed by a lessened excretion of urobilin in the stools and by an improvement in the anemia favors the second view.

### ***The Relation of the Spleen to Anemia***

Enlargement of the spleen occurs in various blood diseases. In leukemia it is due to the increased number of white cells in this organ, and in certain anemias areas of red cell proliferation may be present. After hemolysis from various causes the spleen contains considerable detritus derived from disintegrated or destroyed corpuscles. It is certain that these may be in part the result of a mechanical and phagocytic filtration of the detritus out of the blood, and that the spleen acts as a graveyard for damaged red cells. Of more importance, however, are the questions as to whether the spleen plays an active rather than a passive rôle in the destruction of red cells, and whether it is a primary or contributing factor in the pathogenesis of certain forms of anemia. To solve this question numerous studies on patients and on animals have been carried out.

### **Effect of Splenic Excision on Normal Animals**

The spleen is not an organ which is essential to life and it may be removed from men as well as from animals without serious consequences. Following its removal from dogs there develops an anemia which usually reaches its height in from three to six weeks, after which the blood gradually returns to the normal. A leukocytosis develops within the first twenty-four hours after splenectomy and this may persist to a slight extent for months. The cause of the anemia which follows removal of the spleen from normal animals has not been determined. While Pugliesi and Gauckler maintain that the secretion of bile is reduced to one-half or less after splenectomy, Paulesco was unable to obtain a similar result. It seems probable that in normal animals excision of the spleen diminishes blood destruction. If this be so, the anemia can only be due to a diminished activity of the blood-forming tissues. Of this there is no conclusive evidence, and Pearce and Pepper found that while the bone marrow was not markedly changed during the first two or three months following splenectomy, there was ultimately an increase in the red marrow at a time when the anemia had improved.

**Fragility of Red Corpuscles.**—Excision of the spleen from animals is followed by an increase in the resistance of the red corpuscles to the action of hypotonic salt solution and to that of various hemolytic agents. Pearce and his coworkers have attributed this increased resistance to the anemia and have shown that a similar increase may occur when anemia is produced in other ways.

**Effect of Toluylendiamin Injection.**—The injection of toluylendiamin into normal animals produces a hemolytic anemia with jaundice. W. Hunter, Banti, Joannovics and others have shown that splenectomized animals are peculiarly resistant to this action of toluylendiamin. Jaundice is less easily produced, the anemia following the injection is less marked, and deposits of iron-containing pigments in the liver and bone marrow may be absent. Toluylendiamin does not dissolve red corpuscles in vitro and its injection into the body must, therefore, lead to changes in the tissues or fluids whereby red cell destruction and jaundice are favored. The increased resistance of splenectomized animals to toluylendiamin injections suggests that the spleen plays some important rôle in the hemolysis caused by this poison.

### Splenic Anemia and Related Conditions

Splenic anemia, described by Banti in 1882, is characterized by a considerable splenomegaly, a severe progressive anemia, and by recovery after a successful extirpation of the spleen. The condition known as Banti's disease is analogous to splenic anemia but there is here in addition an atrophic hepatic cirrhosis. In this condition also splenectomy may be followed by an improvement of the anemia and by an arrest of the hepatic cirrhosis.

**Changes in the Splenic Vein.**—Changes in the splenic vein are common in these diseases. They assume considerable clinical interest, partly because they may be responsible for the severe gastric hemorrhages that frequently complicate these conditions, and partly because the sclerotic veins add to the technical difficulties encountered by the surgeon who undertakes to remove the spleen. These changes in the splenic vein may possibly be due to changes in the blood coming from the spleen. Possibly, however, as Dock and Warthin have pointed out, a thrombophlebitis of the splenic and portal veins may cause or contribute to the clinical picture.

**Relation of Enlarged Spleen to Blood Changes.**—The relation of the enlarged spleen to the blood changes in splenic anemia is not altogether certain, but in view of the recoveries after splenectomy it seems fair to assume that the enlarged spleen plays an important rôle in producing the anemia. Increased hemolysis has not been demonstrated in all of these

cases. To the cases associated with jaundice Banti has given the name of hemolytic splenomegaly.

### Effect of Splenectomy upon Pathological Hemolysis

In certain diseases of the blood associated with evidence of increased destruction of red cells, splenectomy may be followed by prompt improvement and by evidence of diminished hemolysis. This is true, for example, in chronic hemolytic jaundice and in the type of splenic anemia that is associated with increased hemolysis. More recently, splenectomy has been advocated in the treatment of pernicious anemia by Eppinger and others. The immediate improvement following this operation is at times striking; and Eppinger, Robertson and others have shown that the operation may be followed by a definite and marked reduction in the amount of urobilin excreted:

EFFECT OF SPLENECTOMY ON UROBILIN EXCRETION  
(After Eppinger)

Disease	Urobilin in Stool Before Splenectomy	Urobilin in Stool After Splenectomy
Normal.....	0.13	....
Hemolytic Jaundice I.....	2.96	0.062
Hemolytic Jaundice II.....	3.95	0.070
Pernicious Anemia I.....	0.276	0.03
Pernicious Anemia II.....	0.65	0.015
Banti's Disease.....	0.36	0.05
Hypertrophic Hepatic Cirrhosis.....	0.413	0.08

**Clinical Results.**—These observations indicate that the spleen plays an important rôle in the excessive destruction of red corpuscles that occurs in pernicious anemia, in chronic hemolytic jaundice and in Banti's disease. The amount of improvement that follows its removal in these conditions varies. In patients suffering from splenic anemia and from chronic hemolytic jaundice, splenectomy usually causes a marked and lasting improvement, both in the anemia and in the general clinical condition. The excessive hemolysis in these diseases appears to be largely caused by a faulty splenic function.

The end results in pernicious anemia have been much less satisfactory. Shortly after removal of the spleen, there is frequently a remission of the anemia, accompanied by a lessened amount of urobilin in the feces, the urine and the duodenal contents. Large numbers of nucleated red cells may also appear in the peripheral blood. In other patients, no improvement occurs. Even where there is an immediate improvement after splenectomy, most patients with pernicious anemia eventually relapse and die. In favorable cases the operation causes a remission and prolongs the patient's life; but rarely, if ever, does it lead to a permanent cure. It seems certain, therefore, that pernicious anemia is not due primarily to faulty splenic function.



### *Chlorosis*

Chlorosis occurs mainly, if not exclusively, in young women. The occurrence of the disease in men or in children is doubtful. The disease usually develops about the time of puberty, between the ages of 14 and 20. Once having developed, however, relapses may occur beyond these ages. Patients suffering from chlorosis are pale but are commonly well nourished. They suffer from the usual symptoms of anemia; weakness, dyspnea on exertion, and fatigue. Not infrequently they are constipated and suffer from menstrual disturbances. The administration of iron preparations usually causes a striking improvement in the anemia and an amelioration of all symptoms.

**Blood Picture.**—The blood picture of chlorosis is characterized by an unusually low color index. While the number of red corpuscles is normal or but moderately reduced, the hemoglobin falls to 50 per cent or less. The red cells appear pale, the white cells are not definitely changed, and the platelets tend to be increased.

**Etiology.**—The cause of chlorosis is not known. The fact that it occurs mainly, or possibly exclusively, in women at about the time of puberty suggests that it depends in some manner upon the development of the sexual functions of the female sex. Beyond this, however, we know nothing. The anemia does not appear to depend upon an increased destruction of erythrocytes, for the urobilin in the stools is not increased and pigmentations are rare. Nor is there any marked evidence of increased proliferation on the part of the red cells, for basophilic cells and nucleated cells are uncommon. It seems probable, therefore, that the immediate cause of the blood picture is some alteration in the formation of red cells in the bone marrow.

**Blood Volume.**—According to Lorain Smith and to Plesch, the quantity of blood in the body of chlorotic patients is increased. Using the carbon monoxid method, Smith determined the blood volume in thirty chlorotic patients and found that this volume was regularly increased in the severe types of the disease, and that the increase was approximately proportional to the reduction in the percentage of hemoglobin. It would appear from these determinations, therefore, that the total quantity of hemoglobin in the blood of chlorotic patients approximates the normal, while the total number of red cells in their blood is greater than the normal. Smith found, furthermore, that with an improvement in the anemia the total quantity of blood in the body returned to the normal. Possibly

**Blood Volume in Other Blood Diseases.**—The marked increase in the blood volume of chlorotic patients, as determined by the carbon monoxid method, is of no little interest. By the same method, increased blood volumes have been found in the posthemorrhagic anemias of certain animals and in the anemia caused by hook worm infection. It has been occasionally observed in pernicious anemia. (Review by Boycott.) By

other methods, however, the blood volume in pernicious anemia has been found to be regularly diminished. Thus Bock, using the vital red method, found that in place of a blood volume of 8.2 per cent, the volume in seven cases of pernicious anemia varied from 4.3 to 7.3 per cent of the body weight with an average of 5.7 per cent. By methods based on changes in the number of red cells or in the oxygen capacity of the blood after transfusion with known amounts of normal blood, Lindeman, as well as Denny, found decreased volumes in nearly all cases of pernicious anemia. According to Bock, the volume of plasma is relatively constant in various blood diseases, so that the main change in total blood volume is caused by variations in the number and size of the red corpuscles. In anemia, the reduced number of red cells lessens the total volume of blood; while in polycythemia, the increased number of red cells produces the opposite result. Studies of the blood volume in chlorosis with the vital red method have not been reported up to the present time.

BLOOD AND PLASMA VOLUMES. (Re-arranged from Bock)

Diagnosis	Number of Cases.	Total Plasma in c.c.	Total Plasma per cent of Body Weight	Red Blood in Millions.	Total Blood in c.c.	Total Blood per cent of Body Weight.
Normal .....	5	3,414	5.1	4.8	5,467	8.2
Polycythemia.....	3	2,824	5.1	9.1	7,388	13.7
Pernicious anemia....	7	2,555	4.9	1.6	3,022	5.7
Miscellaneous.....	7	2,876	4.9	3.9	4,162	7.1
Diabetes .....	8	2,414	4.8	4.6	3,721	7.3

### *Polycythemia*

#### Classification

Polycythemia, or an increase in the number of red corpuscles or in the amount of hemoglobin to the unit of blood volume, may be due to a number of causes.

**Relative Polycythemia.**—In this form, there is no absolute increase in the number of red cells nor in the amount of hemoglobin in the body. The change that is evident on an ordinary blood examination is due to a concentration of the blood, owing to a reduction in the amount of plasma. Such a reduction may be general throughout the body or it may be local. General reductions may result from marked losses of fluid, such as occur in copious diarrheas, profuse sweats, or acute pulmonary edema. Local polycythemia occurs when the veins from an extremity are obstructed and more fluid escapes out of the peripheral capillaries. In histamin poisoning the endothelium of the capillaries becomes more permeable to fluid and the escape of fluid into the tissues increases the number of red cells

per unit volume of blood. A similar escape probably occurs in surgical and traumatic shock. The injection of epinephrin may cause a polycythemia, partly because the blood pressure is raised and partly because, in the dog at least, an unusual amount of lymph is formed in the liver (Lamson).

**True Polycythemia.**—In the true polycythemias, on the other hand, there is not only an increase in the number of red corpuscles to the unit of blood volume, but the total number of corpuscles and the total amount of hemoglobin in the body are also increased. In such patients, indeed, the blood volume may be greater than normal, so that the total number of red cells in the body is even greater than the count indicates. In some cases of polycythemia, the condition is evidently dependent on other pathological changes. It is, therefore, a secondary or symptomatic polycythemia. In other cases, the cause of the blood change is not known, and these have been described as primary, essential, or cryptogenic polycythemias. As with anemias, however, the latter group will tend to diminish in number as our growing knowledge enables us to recognize the various causes of the blood change.

#### Symptomatic Polycythemias

**Cyanosis.**—It has long been known that the cyanosis of congenital heart disease is usually associated with an increased number of red cells to the unit of blood volume. Intense cyanosis in other cardiac conditions, though less common, may at times be associated with a moderate polycythemia. In the marked cyanosis which characterizes the circulatory failure in pulmonary emphysema, the red cell count may also be markedly increased. Sclerosis of the pulmonary artery and of its branches may lead to high grade cyanosis and polycythemia. In such conditions blood counts of 9,000,000 and over have been reported, while the hemoglobin may rise considerably above 100 per cent. That such conditions are not due simply to a lessened amount of blood plasma is evident: (1) from the fact that the red bone marrow may be more extensive than usual; and (2) from the fact that determinations of the blood volume have shown that this is either normal or increased. Thus Lorain Smith and McKisack observed a child with marked cyanosis due to adherent pericardium in whom the red cells were increased to about six millions while the blood volume as determined by the carbon monoxid method was about twice the normal.

**Altitude.**—The red cell count is regularly increased in men as well as in animals who live at very high altitudes. In the higher Andes, for example, counts of 7 to 8 millions are normal. The cause of such high counts has been a subject of numerous investigations. Some have maintained that the blood changes are purely relative, being due to losses of liquid from the body or to vasomotor influences. Others have maintained that there is an actual increase in the total number of red cells in the body. It seems probable that both factors play a part in producing the polycythemias that have



been observed at high altitudes. In some individuals the red cell count increases promptly when a change is made to a high altitude, and decreases just as promptly if the return to sea level is made after a short stay. Exposure to a low atmospheric pressure may cause a demonstrable increase in the red cell count within an hour. Such sudden changes probably depend upon variations in blood concentration, and they have been attributed to losses of liquid and to vasomotor disturbances.

**Absolute Increase in Red Cells and Hemoglobin.**—On the other hand, it now seems definitely established that a prolonged residence at high altitudes leads not only to an increase in the blood count, but also to an increase in the total number of red cells and the total amount of hemoglobin in the blood, for the blood volume is normal or increased. This increase in hemoglobin at high altitudes may be regarded as one of the compensatory processes which enables the inhabitants of mountainous regions to overcome the physiological disturbances produced by a low oxygen tension (see *Respiration at High Altitudes*).

### *Intoxications*

Polycythemia has also been observed after the action of various poisons. As a rule, the poisons which produce this effect either damage the red cells or interfere with the carrying or utilization of oxygen in the body. Among the toxic substances that may at times produce polycythemia are arsenic, phosphorus, carbon monoxid, and small doses of certain hemolytic poisons, such as toluylendiamin and acetanilid.

### **Cryptogenic Polycythemias**

The cryptogenic type of polycythemia is usually associated with general cyanosis and a marked enlargement of the spleen (Vaquez's disease, Osler's disease). If the skin circulation becomes markedly accelerated, owing to exposure to heat, the cyanotic color may change to a bright red. The mucous membranes present a violet color and the retinal veins are congested and tortuous, so that the ophthalmoscopic picture is suggestive of the condition.

**Increased Number of Red Corpuscles.**—The number of red corpuscles is increased. Counts of from 7 to 10 million are common, and in exceptional cases counts of 15 million or even more have been reported. The increase in hemoglobin is usually less marked than the increase in the number of red cells, thus producing a color index of less than 1.0. The total blood is often increased, and by various methods increases of from one and a half to three times the normal have been determined. The increased quantity of blood has also been remarked at autopsy, for unusual amounts escape from the heart and veins. There is, therefore, a

true plethora, and the ordinary blood examinations fall short of indicating the actual increase of red cells and of hemoglobin in the body.

**Clinical Symptoms.**—Among the clinical manifestations, cerebral symptoms are common. Of the cases collected by Lucas, 31 per cent complained of headache and about 34 per cent of vertigo. Increases of blood pressure have also been rather frequent, as may be seen from his collected statistics:

Blood Pressure	Number of Cases
Below 140.....	21
145-170.....	23
180-200.....	13
200 and over.....	9

The cases with high blood pressure frequently show no splenic enlargement, and it has been suggested that they should be placed in a separate group from the cases with normal blood pressure and splenomegaly.

### Pathogenesis of Polycythemia

As in other blood conditions, the number of red cells destroyed must equal the number formed, so long as the blood picture remains stationary. Under such circumstances, an increase in the total number of red corpuscles in the body may be produced: (1) by a longer life of the individual red cells in the blood; (2) by a more rapid rate of regeneration and destruction; or (3) by a combination of the two processes. In most cases the rates of erythrocytic production and destruction in polycythemia appear to be increased. In the cases examined by Eppinger and Charnas, the urobilin output in the stools was increased, and urobilin has often been found in the urine. Basic staining red corpuscles and nucleated red cells have been found in a considerable proportion of the cases. Occasionally large numbers of nucleated red cells and even of megaloblasts have been reported. The leukocytes may also be increased. In many, but not in all cases, the red bone marrow has extended beyond its usual confines.

**Increased Production and Destruction of Red Cells.**—It seems evident, therefore, that in many cases of polycythemia there is an increase in the rate of red cell proliferation and of red cell destruction. In the two cases examined by Eppinger and Charnas, for example, the urobilin excretion in the stools (0.50 and 0.89 g.) was four to seven times the normal (0.13 g.). If the average life of the red corpuscle was not altered, such an increase in red cell destruction and formation would cause a corresponding increase in the total number of red cells in the body. Since the red cell count in these cases, 7,100,000 and 8,500,000, respectively, indicated that the number of red cells in the body fell short of this estimate, it seems probable that in these cases at least a prolongation of the life of the individual cell played no part in the production of the polycythemia. The overproduction of red cells appears to be primary, the over-

destruction, in part at least, a secondary result. On the other hand, Wilbur and Addis report a case of cryptogenetic polycythemia in which there was no increase in urobilin output, and occasional cases have been observed in which at autopsy no evidence of change in the blood-forming organs was found. Possibly in these cases the polycythemia was due to an unusually prolonged life of the red corpuscles.

**Diminished Oxygen Supply.**—The stimulus that leads to an overproduction of red cells in certain cases is not definitely known, but it has been suggested that in certain forms of symptomatic polycythemia there may be some deficiency in the oxygen supply to the tissues, and particularly to the bone marrow. This is true, for example, of the cyanosis accompanying congenital heart disease and advanced pulmonary emphysema, of life at high altitudes, and of carbon monoxid poisoning, in which last condition a portion of the hemoglobin is rendered useless for respiratory purposes. In phosphorus poisoning, also, there seems to be a change in the tissue metabolism which interferes with the utilization of oxygen (see *Acidosis*, *Lactic Acid*). Apparently the bone marrow reacts to a deficient oxygen supply by an increased production of red cells.

**After Giving Hemolytic Poisons.**—Other types of symptomatic polycythemia have followed the administration of hemolytic poisons, such as toluylendiamin or acetanilid. In the anemias produced by such toxic substances the formation of red cells is also increased, but the increase is not sufficient to compensate for the shortened life of the average erythrocyte. It seems probable that under certain conditions, and especially when small doses are given, the reaction on the part of the bone marrow may be excessive, so that despite the briefer life of the red cells their number in the blood is increased.

**Cryptogenic Type.**—The pathogenesis of cryptogenic polycythemia is not known. Attempts have been made to separate it entirely from the secondary types of the disease, comparing it with leukemia (erythremia) rather than with the leukocytoses (erythrocytosis). It is true that the cryptogenic type of polycythemia is, on the whole, more intense, that the spleen is more commonly enlarged and that the prognosis is relatively unfavorable. But these appear to be differences in degree rather than in kind, and the symptomatic form may in some cases present all the clinical features of the cryptogenic form, save that its etiology is known. Furthermore, Pappenheim points out that the marrow changes in cryptogenic polycythemia are in no way comparable to those observed in leukemia. The overproduction of red cells is usually of a normal type and it is quantitatively less, for example, than that which occurs in chronic hemolytic jaundice (urobilin determinations). There seems no reason for separating the various forms of polycythemia in such a fundamental way. At the present time, therefore, it seems advisable to classify them as secondary when the etiology is known, and as cryptogenic when it is unknown.



### ***The Transfusion of Blood***

The possible advantages that might accrue from the transfer of blood from a healthy animal or man to a sick patient were recognized by the older generation of physicians; but the serious or even fatal consequences that occasionally occurred during such transfers caused the method to be discarded. With our increased knowledge of the nature of these dangers, however, it has become possible to avoid them. For this reason the transfusion of blood has assumed great practical value in the treatment of certain diseases. Various phenomena associated with the introduction of blood into an animal have been discussed in previous pages, but it seems advisable to bring these together in the present place.

#### **Dangers of Transfusion**

##### **(a) Hemolysis**

Blood cannot be safely transferred from one animal to another belonging to a different species. The blood serum of one species often hemolyzes the corpuscles of another, and even though such hemolytic properties are absent, they frequently develop in response to repeated injections of foreign red cells. For this reason successive injections of foreign blood become increasingly dangerous (see Hemolysis). Even among animals belonging to the same species hemolysins may, in certain instances, be developed by repeated blood injections (isohemolysins).

**Avoidance by Preliminary Tests.**—It is said that hemolysis never occurs when the sera and corpuscles from normal men are mixed; but isohemolytic substances may probably develop in certain instances on repeated injections, and hemolysis may certainly occur when sera or corpuscles from diseased persons are used. A blood transfusion for the treatment of disease may, therefore, be followed by an acute hemolysis, with hemoglobinuria and even death. This acute hemolysis may be anticipated and prevented, however, by a preliminary examination of the reaction that takes place in a test tube between the blood of the patient and the blood of the proposed donor. Experience has shown that where no hemolysis occurs in the test tube no danger from intravascular hemolysis after transfusion need be feared.

##### **(b) Agglutination**

Agglutination of the red cells of one individual by the serum of another is far more common than is hemolysis. When hemolysis occurs, moreover, it is usually preceded or accompanied by agglutination. Moss has classified individuals according to the agglutinative properties of their sera and red cells as follows:

- Group I. Sera agglutinate no corpuscles.  
Corpuscles agglutinated by sera of all other groups.
- Group II. Sera agglutinate corpuscles of I and III.  
Corpuscles agglutinated by sera of III and IV.
- Group III. Sera agglutinate corpuscles of I and II.  
Corpuscles agglutinated by sera of II and IV.
- Group IV. Sera agglutinate corpuscles of all other groups.  
Corpuscles agglutinated by no sera.

Within each group no agglutination and no hemolysis occurs when the sera and corpuscles of different individuals are mixed. Transfusion from one to another individual within a given group is, therefore, perfectly safe so far as any dangers connected with these phenomena are concerned.

**Danger from Agglutination.**—The actual danger associated with transfusion in those cases where the serum of the donor possesses agglutinative properties toward the corpuscles of the recipient is not great, for the amount of serum received is relatively small, and it is usually not present in sufficient concentration within the body of the recipient to agglutinate his corpuscles. When, however, the serum of the recipient agglutinates the corpuscles of the donor, it seems probable that agglutination may occur within the body of the recipient. Even here, however, accidents appear to have been rare; although the remarkable phagocytosis of (foreign?) red cells observed after certain transfusions may have been dependent upon the sensitization of the foreign corpuscles by such agglutinative substances.

### *(c) Coagulation and Protein Intoxications*

The injection of various substances into the blood vessels may cause fever and intravascular clotting (see Causes of Fever, Thrombosis). Defibrinated blood has, in certain cases, caused intravascular thrombi. The substance responsible for this change is not fibrin ferment, for large quantities of pure ferment may be injected into animals with impunity. On the other hand, substances that contain thrombokinase, or that lead to a liberation of thrombokinase by destruction of the formed elements of the blood, may cause intravascular thrombi. When defibrinated blood is used for transfusion it has been claimed that the dangers of clotting may be minimized by taking care not to squeeze the fibrin taken from the blood and by allowing the defibrinated blood to remain in an ice chest for 24 hours previous to making the injection.

**Use of Uncoagulated Blood.**—Modern technic has greatly lessened this danger by making it possible to use uncoagulated blood. The latter may be introduced: (1) directly by anastomosing superficial blood vessels

of the recipient and donor (Crile); (2) by injecting blood immediately after it has been withdrawn from the blood vessels (Lindeman); or (3) by preventing clotting with small amounts of sodium citrate (Weil).

**Effect of Foreign Proteins.**—Not infrequently a group of symptoms follow the transfusion of blood which are similar to those produced by the intravenous injection of any foreign proteins. Among these symptoms are fever and skin eruptions of an urticarial nature. Such symptoms appear to be more frequent when an anticoagulant, such as sodium citrate, has been used.

### Beneficial Effects of Transfusion

The beneficial effects of blood transfusions are due in part to the increased amount of fluid introduced into the vessels. In this regard they probably possess no great advantage over the injection of acacia solutions.

**The Introduction of Red Cells.**—The second cause of benefit depends upon the introduction of red cells. In anemias from various causes and in poisoning from illuminating gas the beneficial effect of such an addition of red cells is obvious. The life of the red cells introduced into the body

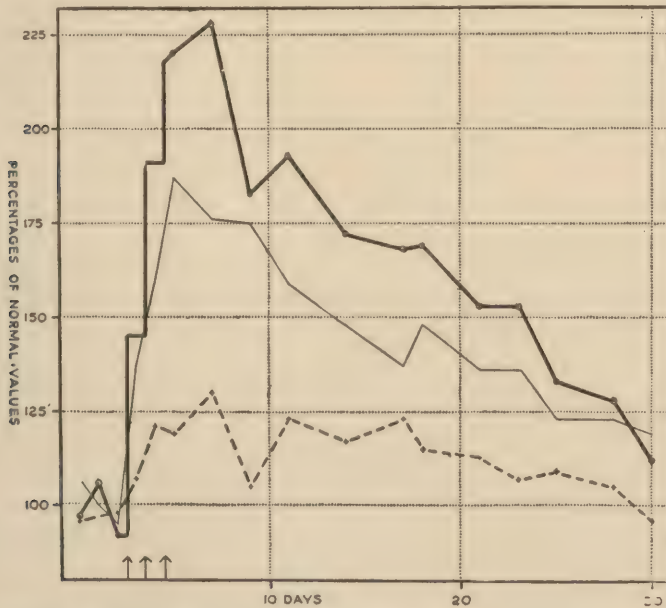


Fig. 124.—Effect of Repeated Transfusions of Blood Upon the Hemoglobin and Blood Volume of a Rabbit. The Thin Line Represents the Percentage of Hemoglobin, the Broken Line Represents the Blood Volume, and the Heavy Line Represents the Total Amount of Hemoglobin in the Body. Note that As a Result of the Transfusions There Is a Slight Increase in the Total Amount of Blood in the Body and a More Marked Increase in the Percentage and Total Amount of Hemoglobin. The Effect Lasted for Over Thirty Days. (From Boycott and Douglas, Jour. Path. and Bacter.)



has been variously estimated. The life of the normal red cell is estimated at from ten to twenty days, and it seems probable that the life of foreign cells is less. Todd and White, were able to demonstrate these cells for from four to nine days after the injection; Ashby for as long as thirty days or more. After large transfusions into normal animals the quantity of hemoglobin in the body may be increased for twenty days or more (Fig. 124). While the lifesaving effects of blood transfusions are thus easily explained in such conditions as acute hemorrhage or carbon monoxid poisoning, it is evident that some other explanation is required for the prolonged improvement which may follow blood transfusion in such chronic conditions as pernicious anemia. Morawitz has suggested that the foreign blood, even in small quantities, may exert some stimulating effect upon the processes of regeneration in the bone marrow.

**Beneficial Effect in Hemorrhagic Diseases.**—Remarkable improvement has followed the transfusion of blood into patients suffering from various hemorrhagic diseases, such as hemophilia, purpura hemorrhagica, melena neonatorum, etc. The mechanism of the improvement in these various types of hemorrhagic disease probably varies according to the character of the disease, but it is evident from the prompt cessation of hemorrhage in many cases that the foreign blood supplies some element which prevents further hemorrhage.

## Pathology of the Leukocytes

### *Classification and Origin*

#### **Classification**

The white corpuscles of normal human blood are distinguished from one another partly by the shape and staining properties of their nuclei and partly by the amount, staining properties, and granulations of their protoplasm. They fall into two main groups: the non-granular mononuclear cells and the granular polynuclear (polymorphonuclear) cells.

**Non-granular Cells.**—To the first group belong the typical *lymphocytes*. These are small to medium-sized cells, having a single, small and deeply stained nucleus, which is surrounded by a narrow or broad band of basic-staining protoplasm. The nucleus is usually round, but it may be somewhat flattened or indented. These cells make up about 23 per cent of the total leukocytes of normal blood.

In the first group also we may place the *large mononuclear cells*, which are characterized by their large size, the round or somewhat irregular character of their nuclei, and the relatively good staining of nucleus and protoplasm. The nature and relationship of these cells are at present uncertain, for while some have allied them with the lymphocytes, others

have allied them with the transitional cells. Certain ancestors of the granular forms resemble in appearance the large mononuclears, but it seems improbable that these appear normally in the peripheral blood stream. The large mononuclear cells make up from 2 to 4 per cent of the total leukocyte count.

**Granular Polynuclear Leukocytes.**—The polynuclear leukocytes with protoplasmic granulations are divided into three main groups according to the character of the granulations. The most numerous are those containing fine granules which take the neutral stains, the *neutrophils*. These make up from 65 to 72 per cent of the leukocytes in normal human blood. Next in number come the polynuclear cells, which contain large, round and highly refractile protoplasmic granules. These cells, the *eosinophils*, make up from 2 to 4 per cent of all leukocytes. Finally, we have cells with large, irregular granules which take a deep basic stain, the *mast cells*. The last make up less than one per cent of the total leukocyte count.

**Transitional Cells.**—All of the leukocytes thus far described are now regarded as mature cells in the sense that transitions do not occur from one form to another in the peripheral blood. The so-called *transitional cells* are large cells with a single indented or lobed nucleus and with an abundant protoplasm, containing very fine granules which take basic stains. It seems certain that these cells do not represent a transition between the large mononuclear cells and the polynuclear neutrophils. Some observers have held that the transitionals are related to the large mononuclears, others that they are related to the parent cells of the polynuclear neutrophils (myelocytes), while still others believe that they are to be distinguished from both.

### Origin

**Polynuclear Cells.**—Both neutrophilic and eosinophilic cells originate normally in the *bone marrow*, and they have, therefore, been called the myeloid cells. Their immediate ancestors, the *myelocytes*, possess the characteristic granulations, but their nuclei are round or oval. As the myelocytes become older the nucleus becomes more deeply indented (kidney and horseshoe shapes) and eventually it is broken up into several fragments, often united by fine filaments of nuclear material. The age of granular cells is, therefore, indicated by the degree of nuclear lobulation. Arneth has proposed that these cells be further classified according to the number of nuclear fragments which they contain.

The myelocytes, both neutrophilic and eosinophilic, are derived in turn from large bone marrow cells which have a non-granular, basic staining protoplasm and a round nucleus (*myeloblasts*). In the development of granular leukocytes, therefore, we have originally a large mononuclear and non-granular cell which first develops protoplasmic granules and later a lobulation of its nucleus.

**Mononuclear Cells.**—The lymphocytes of the peripheral blood take their origin from the small lymphatic cells that are found in *lymphatic tissues* through the body. The origin of the large mononuclear and transitional cells is still uncertain.

**Ultimate Ancestry of Blood Cells.**—While most hematologists believe that the immediate ancestry of the various blood cells is distinct and that transitions do not occur between the main types, it is possible that at a very early period the cells of the blood may all have arisen from a common ancestral cell. In pathological studies, however, the changes observed may, as a rule, be correlated with the immediate ancestry of the cells and the ultimate origin is rarely of clinical interest.

### *Some Biological Properties of the Leukocytes*

#### **Chemotaxis**

The white blood corpuscles show ameboid movements. These are particularly evident in the case of the neutrophils, are somewhat less marked in the case of the eosinophils, and are very slight and slow in the case of the lymphocytes. The last, indeed, are often regarded as non-ameboid cells. The direction in which the leukocytes move is governed mainly by the chemical constitution of the medium that surrounds them. Bacteria and foreign proteins usually exert an attractive influence (positive chemotaxis) upon the neutrophils, and when introduced into the body they often become surrounded by large numbers of these cells. The part played by such cells in the processes of infection and immunity has been discussed elsewhere (see Phagocytosis). It will be recalled that such local collections of leukocytes are often associated with an increased number of the corresponding cells in the circulating blood.

Just as bacteria and their products usually exert a positive chemotactic influence upon the neutrophilic leukocytes, so the material from trichinae and other parasitic worms is believed to exert a similar attractive influence upon the eosinophilic cells. To what extent chemotactic substances are responsible for collections of lymphocytes is less certain.

#### **Ferments**

The white cells in the blood like cells elsewhere in the body possess a variety of ferments. These ferments may be liberated after death of the cells or possibly they may be secreted during their vital activities. The ferment content of the different leukocytes varies. Neutrophilic cells contain an oxidizing ferment and also contain a powerful proteolytic ferment, which, like trypsin, is most active in neutral or slightly alkaline solutions. Lymphocytes, on the other hand, possess a proteolytic ferment which is most active in acid solutions. Lymphocytes and lymphatic tissue



also contain a fat-splitting ferment which is said to be absent from other forms of leukocytes.

### ***Leukocytosis and Leukopenia***

The number of leukocytes in the peripheral blood ordinarily varies from 6,000 to 10,000 per cubic millimeter. When the number is increased, it is called a leukocytosis; when diminished, a leukopenia.

Leukocytoses are distinguished according to the type of cell that is most increased beyond the normal. Most common are the neutrophilic leukocytoses, less common the eosinophilic leukocytoses and the lymphocytoses. At times there is a percentile but not an absolute increase in a certain type of cell, owing to a reduction in the number of other forms.

### **Physiological Leukocytoses**

The number of leukocytes may be moderately increased under a variety of physiological conditions; such as after meals, during the later stages of pregnancy, shortly after birth, after very severe exercise, and after thorough chilling. The leukocytosis of chilling appears to be local in character and to be caused by the marked constriction of the peripheral vessels with slowing of the blood stream. This causes the white cells to accumulate in the cutaneous or subcutaneous vessels.

**Digestion Leukocytosis.**—Considerable interest is attached to the so-called digestion leukocytosis. This is most marked when an individual, after fasting, eats a meal containing large quantities of protein. Under these conditions the number of leukocytes in the peripheral blood may be increased by about one-third, the increase being particularly marked in the neutrophilic cells. The cause of this leukocytosis is not known, but the increase in neutrophils may possibly bear some relation to the fact that they contain the largest amounts of proteolytic ferment that is active in slightly alkaline media.

### **Pathological Leukocytoses**

#### ***(a) Neutrophilic Leukocytoses***

The most important type of neutrophilic leukocytosis is that which occurs in certain infectious diseases; particularly, pneumonia, abscesses, tonsillitis, scarlet fever, and erysipelas. In these conditions leukocyte counts from 15,000 to 20,000 are common and counts of 50,000 or more may occur. The predominant increase is in the neutrophilic cells. The occurrence and the degree of infectious leukocytoses depend upon a variety of factors.

**Factors Governing Leukocytoses.**—(1) Type of infecting organ-

ism. Infectious cocci are more frequent causes of leukocytosis than are the typhoid bacillus, the colon bacillus or the tubercle bacillus.

(2) Localization of the process. Localized abscesses even when produced by the typhoid or colon bacilli may increase the number of leukocytes, whereas generalized infections with cocci (as in malignant endocarditis) may fail to do so. In tuberculous meningitis a leukocytosis is the rule, whereas it is usually absent in other tuberculous infections.

(3) The reaction of the patient. In a general way the leukocytic reactions are analogous to the febrile reactions that occur in infectious processes. A severe infection with a marked reaction on the part of the patient tends in general to be associated with a high leukocytosis. A mild infection or a failure on the part of the patient to react against a severe infection may each be the cause of low or absent leukocytosis in conditions where increased counts are the rule.

The leukocytosis which follows acute hemorrhage is probably due to the increased activity of the bone marrow that follows a loss of blood.

### (b) *Eosinophilic Leukocytoses*

Eosinophilias have been observed in a great variety of clinical conditions, among which are infections with parasitic worms, asthma and certain skin conditions (urticaria, pemphigus, dermatitis herpetiformis, etc.)

**Trichiniasis.**—In trichiniasis the percentage of eosinophils in the blood

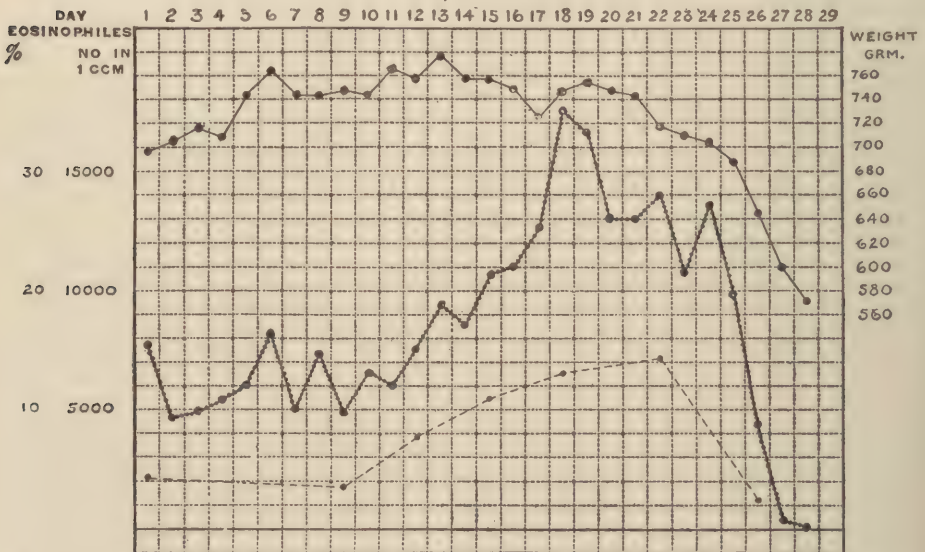


Fig. 125.—Experimental Eosinophilia Produced by Infecting Guinea-pigs with a Moderate Number of the Parasite. The Upper Curve Represents the Weight of the Animal, the Middle Curve the Percentage of Eosinophils, and the Lower Curve the Number of Eosinophils per c.mm. of Blood. Note that the Rise Occurred About the Tenth Day and that There Was a Fall Before the Death of the Animal. (From Opie, Am. Jour. Med. Sci.)

may reach 65 per cent, with a corresponding increase in the total number of leukocytes. Opie has shown that eosinophilia may be produced in guinea-pigs by infecting them experimentally with trichinae. This experimental eosinophilia appears about one week after the infection, reaches its height about the end of the third week and falls below the normal before death. If the animals are infected with an overwhelming dose the number of eosinophils in the blood may be diminished from the start. The

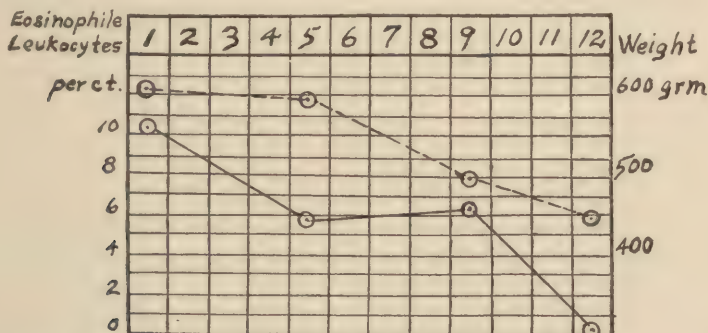


Fig. 126.—Effect Upon Eosinophils of an Overwhelming Infection of a Guinea-pig with *Trichinae*. Upper Line Represents the Body Weight. Lower Line Represents the Percentage of Eosinophils in the Peripheral Blood. Note that the Fall Begins Early and that These Cells Practically Disappear from the Circulating Blood at the Time of Death which Occurred on the Twelfth Day. (Drawn from data of Opie, Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.)

eosinophilia in these animals is associated with local accumulations of these cells in the mesenteric nodes and in the lungs, presumably because embryos have lodged in these localities and have attracted the cells. In man collections of eosinophils have also been observed in the voluntary muscles about the encysted embryos. The bone marrow in experimental infections is usually increased in extent and shows large numbers of mature and immature eosinophilic cells (polynuclears and myelocytes). In very severe infections, on the other hand, the eosinophilic cells in the bone marrow may show evidences of degeneration.

**As an Anaphylactic Phenomenon.**—The eosinophilia accompanying asthma and certain exudative skin lesions is possibly to be regarded as an anaphylactic phenomenon, for Schlecht and others have shown that eosinophilia may be produced in the guinea-pig and in the dog by repeated injections of foreign proteins. These eosinophilias are associated with local collections of these cells in the lungs (asthma) and in the skin lesions. The local inflammations, which occur when a foreign protein is repeatedly injected into certain animals (Arthus's phenomenon), also contain a large number of these cells. Finally, vernal conjunctivitis, which may be of an anaphylactic character, is characterized by the occurrence of numerous eosinophils in the exudate.

**Bacterial Infection and Eosinophilia.**—During bacterial infections



the number of eosinophils in the peripheral blood is frequently diminished, but as the fever subsides their number rises and during convalescence there may be a moderate increase. Similar changes have been observed

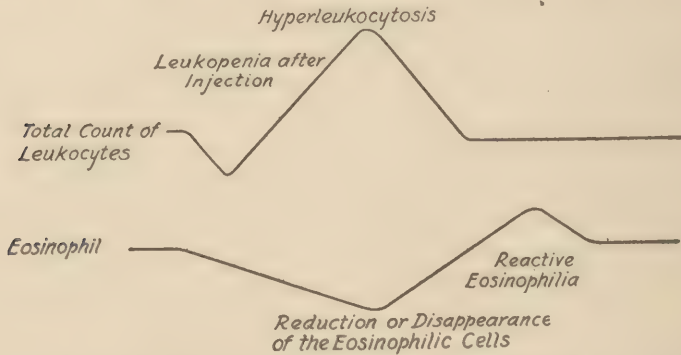


Fig. 127.—Effect of Bacterial Infection Upon the Eosinophils. During the Leukocytosis the Eosinophils Fall and with Recovery There Is a Reactive Eosinophilia. (From Stübli, "Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.," published by J. Springer, Berlin.)

after the injection of dead cultures into animals. In the region about such injections, eosinophilic cells are rare, either because the bacterial poisons destroy these cells or because they are driven away by negative chemotactic influences.

### (c) *Lymphocytosis*

In young infants a lymphocytosis is normal, the percentage of these cells in the blood being 40 per cent or more. During childhood there seems to be a special tendency to the development of lymphocytoses, and increased numbers of lymphocytes have been observed in certain gastrointestinal disturbances and in cervical lymphadenitis. Whooping-cough is often accompanied by a very striking increase in the number of these cells, particularly in children. In adults a lymphocytosis is occasionally observed during infectious diseases where one ordinarily expects to find an increase in the neutrophils (Cabot). The nature of this form is not clear. Local collections of lymphocytic cells often occur about lesions caused by bacteria that contain lipoid substances (tubercle bacilli, leprosy bacilli). Possibly such collections may be correlated with the observation that lymphocytes possess a special lipolytic ferment.

### (d) *Increases in the Large Mononuclears and Transitionals*

An increased number of large mononuclear cells in the peripheral blood has been observed in malaria. The transitionals are increased in Hodgkin's disease, although where a leukocytosis is present this increase may be an absolute one and may not be evident on the differential count

alone. An increase in the number of transitional cells has also been observed occasionally in lymph gland tuberculosis and in typhoid fever. Evans has reported a remarkable case in which the transitionals rose to over 54 per cent for a brief period of time.

### **Leukopenia**

As a rule, a reduction in the total number of leukocytes in the peripheral blood is due to a reduction in the number of neutrophils. As a result of such a reduction there is a high percentage, though not an absolute increase, in the number of other cells and particularly of the lymphocytes. Among febrile diseases, typhoid fever and tuberculosis not infrequently produce such a blood picture.

### **Pathogenesis of Leukocytoses**

An increased number of cells in the circulating blood may be due: (1) to an attraction of such cells out of the tissues in which they are formed or out of collections in the internal organs; or (2) to an increased activity of the tissues that give rise to these cells. The latter condition is responsible for the leukocytoses observed in certain cases of bone tumor, for the leukocytosis following hemorrhage, and for the increased number of leukocytes and their progenitors in leukemia.

**Relation to Chemotaxis.**—We have seen that bacterial products and various other substances exert a positive chemotactic influence upon the neutrophilic leukocytes, and that an analogous relation exists between certain animal parasites and the eosinophilic leukocytes. It is obvious that when such bacteria or animal parasites gain entrance to the body they will tend to attract certain forms of leukocytes, and in this way a local collection of the attracted cells takes place about the offending particles. Such a local accumulation of cells would tend to diminish their number in the circulating blood. When, however, the chemotactic substances enter the blood they attract cells out of their sites of formation or out of any collections that may be present elsewhere in the body. Under such circumstances, the number of cells in the blood increases, and the increase is due to the particular cells that are attracted by the substance in question.

**Increased Activity of Formative Tissues.**—As a result of this loss of cells the formative tissues tend to reproduce these cells in greater numbers and an overproduction may take place. Possibly, in addition, the chemotactic or other substances derived from the foreign cells may irritate the formative tissues and thus accelerate their functional activity. In any case, the bone marrow of patients with neutrophilic or eosinophilic leukocytoses usually shows evidences of increased activity. The active marrow may extend beyond its usual limits and the cells in question, as

well as their progenitors, are increased in number and are actively multiplying. Under such circumstances one might anticipate that immature cells would escape into the circulating blood. This is, in fact, the case. The polynuclear cells show an increased percentage of the forms with single or few nuclei, and a diminished percentage of the more highly fragmented forms. Furthermore, small numbers of myelocytes frequently accompany any polynuclear leukocytosis, the myelocytes showing the same granulations as the increased polynuclears.

### **Pathogenesis of Leukopenia**

**Injury to Formative Tissues.**—The leukocytes which wander into the immediate neighborhood of the infecting organisms often succumb to the attacks of the latter, and may be observed in various stages of disintegration. It seems probable that these injurious substances may also enter the blood stream, and thus act not only upon the blood cells but upon the formative tissues. A slight injury to these last may increase their activity; this being, as we have seen, one explanation for the leukocytosis commonly observed during infections. On the other hand, a more serious injury to the bone marrow may diminish the regenerative processes there taking place. Such, apparently, is the explanation for the absence of leukocytosis and for the leukopenia observed in overwhelming infections. If the resistance of the individual is diminished, such a serious damage to the blood-forming tissues is more readily produced. Leukopenia may also be produced by benzol and by exposure to the x-rays, both of which damage the bone marrow. It may be due, furthermore, to an exhaustion or aplasia of the marrow tissue (see Aplastic Anemia).

**Collection of Cells in Internal Organs.**—Finally, certain forms of leukopenia are due to other causes than a failure on the part of the bone marrow. During anaphylactic shock in the dog, for example, the polynuclear cells practically disappear from the circulating blood. In this case the disappearance seems to be due to a collection of these cells in the internal organs (lungs).

## ***Leukemia and Allied Conditions***

### **General Considerations**

By leukemia we mean a diffuse, unrestrained growth of the tissues that give rise to the white blood cells. However important from the clinical standpoint may be the appearance of the blood, the essential change in this disease lies in the hyperplastic or tumorlike (saroid) alterations which are found in the blood-forming tissues. As a rule, these are associated with quantitative and qualitative alterations in the blood picture, owing to the entrance of numerous ripe and unripe leukocytes into the



circulation; but the blood picture is not an essential feature of the disease, and to those rare cases in which leukemic changes in the blood-forming tissues have been associated with little or no change in the blood itself the name of aleukemic leukemia has been given.

**Two Groups: Myeloid and Lymphatic.**—The leukemias are divided into two main groups, the myeloid and the lymphatic. In the former, the myeloid tissues throughout the body show an abnormal proliferation; in the latter, the lymphatic tissues show a similar change. As a general rule, the two forms of leukemia are mutually exclusive. Only a few mixed forms have been described, and the interpretation of such cases as true mixtures of the two types has been questioned.

### Chronic Myeloid Leukemia

The anatomical changes in chronic myeloid leukemia consist essentially in a diffuse hyperplasia of the myeloid tissue in the bone marrow. To this may be added the appearance of myeloid tissue in other organs, and particularly in the liver, the lymph nodes and the spleen. The relation of these latter to the bone marrow changes has been variously interpreted. By some, they are regarded as colonizations or metastases of cells which are carried from the bone marrow, deposited in these new sites, and there take root and grow. By others, the opinion has been advanced that these extramedullary areas of proliferation develop *in situ* from cells that took part in the formation of white blood cells during fetal life. The latter view is founded in part upon embryological considerations, in part upon the observation that such myeloid masses may be present without any corresponding alteration in the bone marrow.

**Myelocytes and Myeloblasts.**—Histologically these areas of myeloid tissue are characterized by the prevalence of cells which are the normal progenitors of the polynuclear granular cells; i. e., granular mononuclear cells (myelocytes) and non-granular mononuclear cells (myeloblasts).

**Blood Picture.**—The blood picture in typical cases of myeloid leukemia is characterized by the large number of cells of myeloid origin that appear in the circulating blood. The total number of leukocytes is usually increased to from 100,000 to 800,000. The differential count usually shows about 50 per cent of the polynuclear granular forms (neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils), about 40 per cent of their ancestral forms (neutrophilic and eosinophilic myelocytes, myeloblasts, and related forms) and a marked reduction in the percentage of typical lymphocytes. In addition, there is frequently a more or less marked anemia, and nucleated red cells in large numbers may appear in the circulating blood. The changes in the red cell formation are due to mechanical or other effects produced by the exuberant growth of myeloid tissue upon the marrow cells that normally give rise to red corpuscles.

**VARIATIONS IN THE BLOOD PICTURE.**—Remarkable changes in the

blood picture of myeloid leukemia may occur. During treatment with the x-ray or with benzol, both of which destroy myeloblastic cells, the leukocyte count may fall even to the normal, the enlarged spleen may lessen in size, and the anemia may improve. Similar changes sometimes occur either spontaneously or as a sequel to acute infections. As a rule, however, the quantitative change in the blood picture is more striking than the qualitative change, for blood smears may still show an unusual number of immature granular cells. At other times the blood picture becomes practically normal. That such changes represent a remission rather than a cure of the disease is evident, however, from the fact that sooner or later a relapse usually occurs.

### Chronic Lymphatic Leukemia

The anatomical changes in chronic lymphatic leukemia consist in a diffuse hyperplasia of the lymphatic tissues throughout the body, and especially in the lymph glands, the spleen and the bone marrow. The overgrowth of bone marrow with lymphatic tissue is believed to originate from areas of lymphatic tissue present in this region. An absolute as well as a relative reduction in the number of granular cells in the circulating blood may result from this cause.

**Increase of White Corpuscles.**—In lymphatic leukemia the number of white corpuscles in the blood is usually increased to from 40,000 to 500,000 per cubic millimeter. Of these from 85 to 99 per cent are small or medium-sized lymphocytes. As a rule, nucleated red cells are less common in the circulating blood than in the myeloid form of leukemia, but at times they appear in large numbers. They are due to the overgrowth of bone marrow with lymphatic tissue.

**EFFECT OF TREATMENT—ALEUKEMIC TYPES.**—As in the myeloid form of the disease, treatment with the x-ray or with benzol may be followed by a marked reduction in the number of lymphocytes in the blood and even with a return to a normal blood picture. Aleukemic types of the disease which do not depend upon treatment are more common than in myeloid leukemia. In such cases, there may be an enlargement of the lymphatic glands which show the typical anatomical picture of lymphatic leukemia. The total leukocyte count is normal or subnormal, but in many cases there is a relative increase in the lymphocytes of the blood.

### Acute Leukemia

Acute leukemia is to be separated from the chronic forms by reason of its rapid course, its peculiar blood picture and its resemblance to an infectious disease.

Acute leukemia is, as a rule, rapidly fatal, the illness lasting from one to nine weeks. In some patients, the high fever and great prostration sug-

gest an acute infectious disease; in others, the marked hemorrhagic tendency suggests a diagnosis of purpura hemorrhagica. Blood examinations usually show a moderate to marked increase in the number of white blood corpuscles, the prevailing cell being a large mononuclear form with few if any granules.

**Origin of Mononuclear Cells.**—Acute leukemia was formerly regarded as a subvariety of the chronic lymphatic form of the disease, differing from it in its rapid course and in the large size of the prevailing blood cells. More recent work, however, indicates that in many, and perhaps in most, of the cases the large non-granular cells that predominate in the circulating blood belong to the myeloid rather than to the lymphatic type of cells. This view is supported by the following facts: (1) typical granular myelocytes may be found in the peripheral blood; (2) anatomical examination may show an especial involvement of the myeloid tissue; and (3) biological tests indicate that the abnormal cells in the blood are more closely related to the granular cells than to the lymphocytes. Longcope, for example, found that the cells in the acute leukemias which he studied possessed proteolytic ferments similar to those possessed by the neutrophilic polynuclears, and others have shown that, in certain cases, these cells may contain the oxidizing ferment which characterizes neutrophilic cells.

### Chloroma

This rare neoplasm is characterized anatomically by its green color, by its origin from periosteum, especially that covering the bones of the face, and by an altered blood picture. The latter is similar to or identical with the blood picture of leukemia. Although the number of leukocytes may at times be normal, they are often increased, and in nearly all cases the differential count shows the changes that occur in myeloid, in lymphatic, or particularly, in acute leukemia. In view of these blood findings the view is generally accepted that chloroma is essentially related to leukemia, but that for some reason a tumor is formed which has a structure similar to that of the blood-forming tissues.

### Etiology of Leukemia

Despite the large amount of attention that has been paid to this subject, the etiology of leukemia is still unsolved. According to one view, it is caused by an infection which produces a peculiar reaction on the part of the blood-forming tissues. According to the other view, it is a malignant disease of these tissues with an escape of neoplastic cells into the circulating blood.

**First Hypothesis: A Malignant Disease.**—The view that leukemia is essentially a malignant disease is based upon the fact that in this disease



we have an unrestrained growth of certain cells in the body. It differs from an ordinary neoplasm in that it has no local origin but arises from all the tissues belonging to a certain system; i. e., from those which give rise to certain types of white blood corpuscles. Transitions to localized tumors do, however, occur. As we have seen, chloromata are usually associated with a leukemic blood picture. A less intimate relationship exists between leukemias and the so-called myelomata. The latter are multiple, circumscribed tumors of the bone marrow which invade and destroy the neighboring bone. Histologically, myelomata may be made up of myelocytes, of myeloblasts, of lymphocytes, of plasma cells, or of erythroblastic tissue. The blood picture is not characteristic. Myelomata differ from the aleukemic leukemias in that the new growing tissue is circumscribed and not generalized. In an analogous relation to lymphatic leukemia stand the so-called lymphosarcomata. These show an aggressive infiltrative growth of lymphatic cells, but the process does not involve all of the lymphatic tissues equally. Blood changes may be absent. It is evident, therefore, that we have various transitions between typical leukemia and circumscribed, though multiple, tumor masses, which are composed of similar cells and which may or may not be accompanied by leukemic changes in the blood. If these tumor masses are to be regarded as malignant neoplasms in the narrower sense of the word, then leukemia must also belong to the same category, for no sharp line of separation can be drawn. If, on the other hand, the leukemias are essentially infectious processes, then it seems probable that some, if not all, of these tumorlike new growths are likewise of an infectious character.

**Second Hypothesis: An Infectious Disease.**—The infectious theory of leukemia is supported by the fact that the acute type of the disease usually runs a course strongly suggesting an acute infection, with high fever, prostration, and a hemorrhagic tendency. Various pathogenic microorganisms have been cultivated from the blood or tissues of such patients and the blood changes of acute leukemia have been found in patients dying of miliary tuberculosis. It is evident, therefore, that if acute leukemia is due to an infection, either the causative organism has not been found or the disease represents an unusual and abnormal reaction on the part of the bone marrow, which may be induced by a variety of microorganisms. The view that leukemia is due to an infection has been strongly supported by the experiments of Ellerman and Bang, who succeeded in transmitting chicken leukemia to normal fowls. They found, furthermore, that such transmission could be accomplished even though all cells were removed by passages through a fine filter. These authors believe, therefore, that chicken leukemia is due to a filtrable virus. Most interesting is their observation that some of the animals inoculated developed the myeloid form of the disease while others developed the lymphatic form.

**RELATION OF MALIGNANT TUMORS TO INFECTIONS.**—Perhaps one

should not be too insistent in separating tumors from infections, for it is possible that tumors result either from infections directly or from the irritation produced by infections. Peyton Rous has succeeded in transmitting a sarcomalike tumor from one chicken to another by means of cell free filtrates. Up to the present, however, attempts to transmit other tumors in this way have failed.

### *Hodgkin's Disease*

An enlargement of lymphatic glands in various parts of the body, often associated with an enlargement of the spleen, may occur in a variety of conditions. Among these are the leukemias, generalized tuberculosis of the lymphatic system, and other infectious processes. Anatomical studies by Dorothy Reed and by Longcope have shown, however, that these may be distinguished from a well-defined type of general glandular enlargement to which the name of Hodgkin's disease may properly be applied.

**A Systemic Lymphatic Disease.**—Hodgkin's disease (lymphogranulomatosis, malignant lymphoma) is a systemic disease of the lymphatic apparatus. The enlarged glands contain lymphocytes, fibroblasts, leukocytes and peculiar giant cells in irregular arrangement. Not infrequently an unusual number of eosinophils are also present. These cellular areas may be separated by areas of necrotic or fibrous tissue.

**Blood Picture in Hodgkin's Disease.**—The blood picture in Hodgkin's disease is more or less characteristic. According to Bunting, two types must be distinguished: those with a normal and those with an increased leukocyte count. The latter is due to an increase in the neutrophilic cells and it occurs particularly in patients who have had the disease for a year or more. When the number of leukocytes is normal, the transitionals are increased both absolutely and relatively (8 to 15 per cent); when the number of leukocytes is increased, the percentage of transitionals may be normal, but their absolute number is increased. In all cases there is an increased number of blood platelets.

**Nature of Disease Obscure.**—The nature of Hodgkin's disease is still under discussion. The gross appearance of the glandular masses and their tendency to invade neighboring structures suggest a malignant process. On the other hand, their histological picture suggests a chronic inflammation (lymphogranulomatosis).

**BACTERIA ISOLATED FROM ENLARGED GLANDS.**—In recent years a number of investigators have isolated bacteria from the enlarged glands of patients suffering from Hodgkin's disease. Particularly characteristic are the diphtheroid bacilli which have been isolated, among others, by Bunting and Yates. These investigators have also succeeded in producing a disease similar to Hodgkin's by injecting pure cultures of their bacilli into monkeys. The finding of similar organisms in a variety of other clinical conditions, and the question as to the identity of the various

diphtheroid bacilli isolated from cases of Hodgkin's disease, indicate, however, that further study is required before a final decision as to the etiological relationship of these organisms to the disease is established.

### References

#### Blood

##### General

- Boycott (A. E.).** Pathology of the blood. In: Pembrey & Ritchie, General Pathology. London, 1913, 9.
- Emerson (C. P.).** Clinical diagnosis. 3d ed. Philadelphia, 1911.
- Flesch (H.).** Die Anämien im Kindesalter. Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk., 1909, iii, 186.
- Hunter (W.).** Recent advances in hematology. London, 1911.  
Severest anemias. London, 1909.
- Paltauf (R.).** Pathologie der roten Blutkörperchen. In: Krehl & Marchand, Handbuch der allgem. Path., 1908, ii, 55.
- Port (Fr.).** Neuere Forschungen und therapeutische Bestrebungen auf dem Gebiete der Blutkrankheiten. Beihefte zur Med. Klinik, 1914.

##### Blood Volume

- Boycott (A. E.).** The size and growth of the blood in rabbits. Jour. Path. & Bacteriol. 1911-12, xvi, 485.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Douglas (C. G.).** On the carbon monoxid method of determining the total oxygen capacity and volume of blood in animals, with some experiments on anemia and transfusion. Jour. Path. & Bacteriol., 1908-09, xiii, 256.
- Erlanger (J.).** Blood volume and its regulation. Physiol. Rev., 1921, i, 177.
- Hess (R.).** Künstliche Plethora und Herzarbeit. Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., 1908-09, xcv, 482.
- Kammerer (H.) & Waldmann (A.).** Blutmengebestimmungen nach v. Behring und andere quantitative Untersuchungen der Blutbestandteile. Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., 1912-13, cix, 524.
- Keith (N. M.), Rountree (L. G.) & Geraghty (I. T.).** A method for the determination of plasma and blood volume. Arch. Int. Med., 1915, xvi, 547.
- Oerum (H. P. T.).** Quantitative Blutuntersuchungen. Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., 1908, xciii, 356.
- Plesch (J.).** Hämodynamische Studien. Ztschr. f. exper. Path. u. Therap., 1909, vi, 380.
- Salvensen (H. A.).** The determination of blood volume by the carbon monoxide method, J. Biol. Chem., 1919, xl, 109.
- Smith (J. L.).** A discussion on the blood in disease. Tr. Path. Soc. of London, 1900, li, 311.
- Smith (J. L.) & McKisack (H. L.).** On a case in which cyanosis and plethora occurred in association with adherent pericardium. Tr. Path. Soc. of London, 1902, liii, 136.
- Todd (C.) & White (R. G.).** On the fate of red corpuscles when injected into the circulation of an animal of the same species; with a new method for the determination of the total volume of the blood. Proc. Roy. Soc. of London, 1911-12, lxxxiv, B, 255.



*Coagulation and Hemorrhagic Diseases*

- Addis (T.).** Hereditary hemophilia. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1910-11**, iv, 14.  
The pathogenesis of hereditary hemophilia. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1910**, xv, 427.
- Aschoff (L.).** Thrombosis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 503.
- Barratt (J. W.).** On fibrinaemia. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1912-13**, xvii, 303.
- Bayne-Jones (S. W.).** The presence of prothrombin and thromboplastin in the blood platelets. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xxx, 74.
- Beneke (R.).** Die Thrombose. In: Krehl & Marchand, *Handbuch der allgem. Path.*, ii, Abl. ii, 180.
- Cramer (W.) & Pringle (H.).** On the coagulation of blood. *Quart. Jour. Exper. Physiol.*, **1913**, vi, 1.
- Davis (D.).** The intravenous injection of thrombin. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1911-12**, xxix, 160.
- Drinker (C. K.) & Hurwitz (S. H.).** The factors of coagulation in primary pernicious anemia. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xv, 733.
- Drinker (K. R.) & Drinker (C. K.).** Factors affecting the coagulation time of blood. VI. The effect of rapid progressive hemorrhage upon the factors of coagulation. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxvi, 305.
- Duke (W. W.).** The relation of blood platelets to hemorrhagic disease. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1910**, lv, 1185.  
Causes of variation in the platelet count. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 100.  
The behavior of the blood platelets in toxemias and hemorrhagic disease: a preliminary report. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1912**, xxiii, 144.  
The pathogenesis of purpura hemorrhagica, with especial reference to the part played by blood-platelets. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, x, 445.
- Freund (E.).** Die Gerinnung des Blutes. In: Krehl & Marchand, *Handbuch der allgem. Pathol.*, ii, 1, 32.
- Howell (W. H.).** The condition of the blood in hemophilia, thrombosis and purpura. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 76.  
The nature and action of the thromboplastic (zymoplastic) substance of the tissues. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1912-13**, xxxi, 1.  
The preparation and properties of thrombin, together with observations on antithrombin and prothrombin. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1910**, xxvi, 453.  
The coagulation of blood. *Cleveland Med. Jour.*, **1910**, ix, 1.
- Howell (W. H.) & Holt (E.).** Two new factors in blood coagulation-heparin and pro-anti-thrombin. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1918-19**, xlvii, 328.
- Hurwitz (S. H.) & Drinker (C. K.).** The factors of coagulation in the experimental aplastic anemia of benzol poisoning, with special reference to the origin of prothrombin. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1915**, xxi, 401.
- Kusama (S.).** Ueber Aufbau und Entstehung der toxischen Thrombose und deren Bedeutung. *Beitr. z. path. Anat.*, **1913**, lv, 459.
- Lee (R. I.) & Vincent (B.).** The coagulation of normal human blood. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 398.  
The relation of calcium to the delayed coagulation of blood in obstructive jaundice. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 59.
- Lee (R. I.) & Robertson (O. H.).** The effect of antiplatelet serum on blood platelets and the experimental production of purpura hemorrhagica. *J. M. Res.*, **1916**, xxxiii, 323.
- Loeb (L.).** Einige neuere Arbeiten über die Blutgerinnung bei Wirbellosen und bei Wirbeltieren. *Biochem. Centralbl.*, **1907**, vi, 889.
- Meek (W. J.).** Relation of the liver to the fibrinogen content of the blood. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xxx, 161.
- Morawitz (P.) & Lossen (J.).** Ueber Hämophilie. *Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1908**, xciv, 110.

- Nolf (P.).** *Eine neue Theorie der Blutgerinnung.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, x, 275.
- Sahli (H.).** *Weitere Beiträge zur Lehre von der Hämophilie.* *Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1910**, xcix, 518.
- Whipple (G. H.).** Hemorrhagic disease. Antithrombin and prothrombin factors. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 637.  
Hemorrhagic disease—septicemia, melena neonatorum and hepatic cirrhosis. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 365.
- Whipple (G. H.) & Hurwitz (S. H.).** Fibrinogen of the blood as influenced by the liver necrosis of chloroform poisoning. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1911**, xiii, 136.
- Whipple (G. H.), Mason (V. R.) & Peightal (T. C.).** Tests for hepatic function and disease under experimental conditions. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1913**, xxiv, 207.

### Hemolysis

- Barratt (J. O. W.) & Yorke (W.).** An investigation into the mechanism of production of blackwater. *Ann. Trop. Med. & Parasit.*, **1909-10**, iii, 1.  
The production of general symptoms in hemoglobinemia. *Brit. Med. Jour.*, **1914**, i, 235.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Price-Jones (C.).** Experimental trypanosome anemia. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1912-13**, xvii, 347.
- Brem (W. V.).** Studies of malaria in Panama: III. The etiology of the erythrolytic hemoglobinuric type of black-water fever. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, ix, 129.
- Browning (C. H.).** Hemolysis in its clinical aspects. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1912-13**, vi, 399.
- Butler (G. G.).** The fragility of the red blood corpuscles. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1912-13**, vi, 145.
- Cooke (R. A.).** Paroxysmal hemoglobinuria. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1912**, cxliv, 203.
- Crile (G. W.).** Hemorrhage and transfusion. New York & London, **1909**.
- Dennie (C. C.) & Robertson (O. H.).** Study of a case of paroxysmal hemoglobinuria. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 205.
- Donath (J.) & Landsteiner (K.).** Ueber paroxysmale Hämoglobinurie. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1906**, lviii, 173.
- Eason (J.).** The pathology of paroxysmal hemoglobinuria. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1906-07**, xi, 167.
- Freund (H.).** Studien über das Fieber durch Blutzerfall und Bluttransfusion. *Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1911-12**, cv, 44.
- Gilbert (A.), Chabrol (E.) & Benard (H.).** Recherches sur la biligénie. *Presse Med.*, **1912**, xx, 113.
- Gorham (L. W.) & Lisser (H.).** Hemolysis in vivo and in vitro as diagnostic of cancer. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1912**, cxliv, 103.
- Kyes (P.).** Venum hemolysis. *Jour. Infect. Dis.*, **1910**, vii, 181.
- Landsteiner (K.).** Hämaggglutination und Hämolyse. In: Oppenheimer, *Handbuch der Biochemie des Menschen*, **1910**, ii, 395.
- Macalister (G. H. K.).** The pathology of paroxysmal hemoglobinuria. *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1908-09**, ii, 368.
- Meyerstein (W.).** Ueber pathologischen Blutzerfall. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, xii, 489.
- Miller (J. W.).** Ueber Hämoglobinurie. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1912**, xlix, 1921.
- M'Neil (C.).** The resistance of human red blood corpuscles in health and disease to hemolysis by saponin, etc. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1910**, xv, 56.
- Moss (W. L.).** Studies on isoagglutinins and isohemolysins. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1910**, xxi, 63.  
Paroxysmal hemoglobinuria. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1911**, xxii, 238.

- Pearce (R. M.), Austin (J. H.) & Eisenbrey (A. B.).** *The relation of hemoglobinemia to hemoglobinuria and jaundice in normal and splenectomized animals.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1912**, xvi, 375.
- Robertson (O. H.) & Rous (P.).** *The normal fate of erythrocytes. II. Blood destruction in plethoric animals and in animals with a simple anemia.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1917**, xxv, 665.
- Rous (P.) & Robertson (O. H.).** *The normal fate of erythrocytes. I. The findings in healthy animals.* *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1917**, xxv, 651.
- Simpson (G. C.).** *On hemolysis in malarial fever.* *Ann. Trop. Med. & Parasit.*, **1912**, vi, 231.
- Simpson (G. C.).** *On hemoglobin metabolism in malarial fever.* *Ann. Trop. Med. & Parasit.*, **1910-11**, iv, 313.
- Simpson (G. C.) & Edie (E. S.).** *On hemoglobin metabolism in malarial fever.* *Ann. Trop. Med. & Parasit.*, **1912**, vi, 443.
- Stone (W. J.) & Schottstaedt (R.).** *The cobra venom hemolysis test in syphilis.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1912**, x, 8.
- Weil (R.).** *On the resistance of human erythrocytes to cobra venom.* *Jour. Infect. Dis.*, **1909**, vi, 688.
- Wilbur (R. L.) & Addis (T.).** *Urobilin: its clinical significance.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiii, 235.

### Blood Regeneration

- Bunting (C. H.).** *Experimental anemias in the rabbit.* *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1906**, viii, 625.
- Butterfield (E. E.).** *The color index and color of the red blood corpuscles.* *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. & Med.*, **1912**, x, 155.  
*Ueber die Lichtextinktion, das Gasbindungsvermögen und den Eisengehalt des menschlichen Blutfarbstoffs in normalen und krankhaften Zuständen.* *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1909**, lxii, 173.
- Harrop (G. A.).** *The oxygen consumption of human erythrocytes.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1919**, xxiii, 745.
- Kepinow (L.).** *Ueber den Einfluss der Blutkörperchenlipotide auf die Blutbildung.* *Biochem. Ztschr.*, **1910**, xxx, 160.
- Morawitz (P.).** *Einige neuere Anschauungen über Blutregeneration.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, xi, 277.
- O'Brien (R. A.).** *The rate of reproduction of various constituents of the blood of an immunized horse after a large bleeding.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1913**, xviii, 89.
- Price-Jones (C.).** *Observations on the changes produced in the blood and bone marrow by hemorrhage and blood destruction.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1911-12**, xvi, 48.

### Anemia

- Ash (J. E.).** *The blood in inanition.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 8.
- Boycott (A. E.).** *The rate of regeneration of hemoglobin after hemorrhage.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1911-12**, xvi, 269.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Chisholm (R. A.).** *The influence of under-feeding on the blood.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1911-12**, xvi, 263.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Douglas (C. G.).** *On the carbon monoxid method of determining the total oxygen capacity and volume of blood in animals, with some experiments on anemia and transfusion.* *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1908-09**, xviii, 256.



- Eppinger (H.) & Charnas (D.).** Was lehren uns quantitative Urobilinbestimmungen im Stuhl? *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1913**, lxxviii, 387.
- Flesch (H.).** Die Anämien im Kindesalter. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1909**, iii, 186.
- M'Leod (I. W.) & M'Nee (J. W.).** On the anemia produced by the injection of the hemolysin obtained from streptococci, etc. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1912-13**, xvii, 524.
- Milne (L. S.).** Post-hemorrhagic anemia. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1912**, xvi, 325.
- Muir (R.) & M'Nee (J. W.).** The anemia produced by a hemolytic serum. *Jour. Path. & Bacteriol.*, **1911-12**, xvi, 410.
- Reiss (E.).** Die refraktometrische Blutuntersuchung und ihre Ergebnisse für die Physiologie und Pathologie des Menschen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1913**, x, 578.
- Robertson (O. H.) & Bock (A. V.).** Blood volume in wounded soldiers. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1919**, xxix, 139.
- Stoeltzner (W.).** Schwere Säuglingsanemie durch primären Eisenmangel. *Med. Klin.*, **1909**, iv, 962.
- Whipple (G. H.), Robscheit (F. S.) & Hooper (C. W.).** Blood regeneration following simple anemia. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1920**, lvi, 236.

### Pernicious Anemia

- Adler (H. M.).** The experimental production of pernicious anemia in rabbits. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1913**, xxviii, 199.  
Unsaturated fatty acid as a neurolytic agent. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 187.
- Cederberg (A.).** Die Pathogenese einiger Anämien mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der kryptogenetischen perniziösen Anämie. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1914**, li, 585.
- Faber (K.).** Anämische Zustände bei der chronischen Achylia gastrica. *Berl. klin. Wchnschr.*, **1913**, i, 958.
- Faust (E. St.) & Tallqvist (T. W.).** Über die Ursachen der Bothriocephalusanämie. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1907**, lvii, 367.
- King (J. H.).** Studies in the pathology of the spleen. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 145.
- Pappenheim (A.).** Perniziöse Anämie und Karzinom in ihrer gegenseitigen Beziehung. *Fol. Haematolog.*, **1912-13**, xiv, 329.
- Robertson (O. H.).** Urobilin in the stool in pernicious anemia as influenced by splenectomy, transfusion and salvarsan. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 429.
- Schmincke (A.) & Flury (F.).** Über das Verhalten der Erythrocyten bei chronischer Oelsäurevergiftung. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmakol.*, **1910**, lxiv, 126.
- Seyderhelm (R.).** Ueber die Eigenschaften und Wirkungen des Oestrins und seine Beziehung zur perniziösen Anämie der Pferde. *Archiv. f. exper. Pathol. u. Pharmakol.*, **1918**, lxxvii, 253.

### Aplastic Anemias

- Blumenthal (R.) u. Morawitz (P.).** Experimentelle Untersuchungen über posthämorrhagische Anämien und ihre Beziehungen zur aplastischen Anämie. *Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1907-08**, xcii, 25.
- Lavenson (R. S.).** The nature of aplastic anemia and its relation to other anemias. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1907**, cxxviii, 100.
- Musser (J. H.), Jr.** Study of a case of aplastic anemia. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1914**, xiv, 275.
- Selling (L.).** Benzol as a leukotoxin. *Johns Hopkins Hosp. Monographs*, **1913**, n. s. ii.

*Hemolytic Anemia*

- Brulé (M.).** *Les ictères hémolytiques acquis.* Thèse, Paris, 1909.
- Giffin (H. Z.).** *Hæmolytic jaundice: a review of seventeen cases.* Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 1917, xxv, 152.
- Hawkins (H. P.) & Dudgeon (L. S.).** *Congenital family cholemia.* Quart. Jour. Med., 1908-09, ii, 165.
- Hutchison (R.) & Panton (P. N.).** *A contribution to the study of congenital family cholemia.* Quart. Jour. Med., 1908-09, ii, 432.
- Kahn (F.).** *Ueber hämolytischen Icterus und seine Beeinflussung durch Splenektomie.* Verhandl. d. Kong. f. inn. Med., 1913, xx, 326.
- Lichtwitz (L.).** *Ueber chronischen acholurischen Icterus mit chronischer Splenomegalie.* Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., 1912, cvi, 545.
- Lüdke (H.).** *Klinische und experimentelle Untersuchungen über den hämolytischen Icterus.* Verhandl. d. Kong. f. inn. Med., 1914, xxii, 623.
- Pel (L.).** *Ueber familiären hämolytischen Icterus nebst einigen Bemerkungen über das Vorkommen von Gallensfarbstoffen im Blut und im Harn.* Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., 1912, cvi, 239.
- Roth (O.).** *Ueber die hämolytische Anämie.* Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., 1912, cvi, 137.

*Spleen and Anemia*

- Banti (G.).** *Splénomégalie hémolytique anhémostiétique; le rôle de la rate dans l'hémolyse.* Semaine Med., 1913, xxiii, 313.  
*La splénomégalie hémolytique.* Semaine Med., 1912, xxii, 265.
- Banti (G.).** *L'ufficio della milza nell'emolisi.* 17th International Cong. of Med., 1913, Sect. vi, Part I, 1.
- Eppinger (H.).** *Zur Pathologie der Milzfunktion.* Berl. klin. Wchnschr., 1913, i, 1509, 1572.
- Eppinger (H.) & Charnas (D.).** *Was lehren uns quantitative Urobilinbestimmungen im Stuhl?* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., 1913, lxxviii, 387.
- Giffin (H. Z.) & Szlapka (T. L.).** *The treatment of pernicious anemia by splenectomy.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., 1921, lxxvi, 290.
- King (J. H.).** *Studies in the pathology of the spleen.* Arch. Int. Med., 1914, xiv, 145.
- Paton (N.) & Goodall (A.).** *The spleen in relationship to the processes of hemolysis.* Jour. Physiol., 1903, xxix, 411.
- Pearce (R. M.) & his associates.** *The relation of the spleen to blood destruction and regeneration and to hemolytic jaundice.* Jour. Exper. Med., 1912, xvi, 363, 375, 758, 769, 780; 1913, xviii, 487, 494, 665; 1914, xx, 19, 108.
- Pugliese (A.).** *Beiträge zur Lehre von der Milzfunktion.* Arch. f. (Anat. u.) Physiol., 1899, 60.
- Türk (W.).** *Die Bedeutung der Milz bei anämischen Zuständen in bezug auf Pathogenese und Therapie.* Deutsche med. Wchnschr., 1914, xl, 371.
- Warthin (A. S.).** *The relation of thrombophlebitis of the portal and splenic veins to splenic anemia and Banti's disease.* Internat. Clin., 1910, iv, 189.

*Chlorosis and Blood Volume in Blood Disease*

- Bock (A. V.).** *The constancy of the volume of the blood plasma.* Arch. Int. Med., 1921, xxvii, 83.
- Denny (G. P.).** *Blood volume in pernicious anemia.* Arch. Int. Med., 1921, xxvii, 38.

- Lindeman (E.).** *The total blood volume in pernicious anemia.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1918**, lxx, 1292.
- Boycott (A. E.).** *Pathology of the blood.* In: Pembrey & Ritchie, *General Pathology.* London, **1913**.
- Oerum (H. P. T.).** *Quantitative Blutuntersuchungen.* Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., **1908**, xciii, 356.
- Smith (J. Lorrain).** *A discussion on the blood in disease.* Tr. Path. Soc., London, **1900**, i, 311.

### Polycythemia

- Aubertin (C.).** *Les polyglobulies.* Arch. d. mal. du cœur, **1913**, vi, 103.
- Douglas (C. G.), Haldane (J. S.), Henderson (Y.) & Schneider (E. C.).** *The physiological effects of low atmospheric pressures, as observed on Pike's Peak, Colorado.* Proc. Roy. Soc., London, **1912**, lxxv, 65. Ser. B.
- Hertz (R.) & Ehrlich (M.).** *Ueber den Einfluss kleiner Gaben Toluylendiamins auf das Blut mit einem Beitrag zur Lehre über die Entstehung experimenteller Hyperglobulie.* Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., **1914**, cxvi, 43.
- Hess (R.).** *Künstliche Plethora und Herzarbeit.* Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med., **1908-09**, xcv, 482.
- Lucas (W. S.).** *Erythremia, or polycythemia with chronic cyanosis and splenomegaly.* Arch. Int. Med., **1912**, x, 597.
- Mosse (M.).** *Polyglobulie und Lebererkrankung.* Ztschr. f. klin. Med., **1914**, lxxix, 431.
- Osler (W.).** *Clinical lecture on erythremia.* Lancet, **1908**, i, 143.
- Smith (J. L.) & McKisack (H. L.).** *On a case in which cyanosis and plethora occurred in association with adherent pericardium.* Tr. Path. Soc., London, **1902**, liii, 136.
- Weber (F. P.).** *Polycythemia, erythrocytosis and erythremia.* Quart. Jour. Med., **1908-09**, ii, 85.

### Transfusion of Blood

- Ashby (W.).** *The determination of the length of life of transfused blood corpuscles in man.* Jour. Exper. Med., **1919**, xxix, 267.
- Boycott (A. E.) & Douglas (C. G.).** *Observations by the carbon monoxid method on a chlorotic anemia in a rabbit, and on transfusion.* Jour. Path. & Bacteriol., **1908-09**, xiii, 414.  
*Further observations on transfusion.* Jour. Path. & Bacteriol., **1909-10**, xiv, 294.
- Crile (G. W.).** *Hemorrhage and transfusion.* New York & London, **1909**.
- Dreyer (L.).** *Transfusion und Infusion.* Ergebn. d. Chir. u. Orthop., **1913**, vi, 76.
- Drinker (C. K.) & Brittingham (H. H.).** *The cause of the reactions following transfusion of citrated blood.* Arch. Int. Med., **1919**, xxiii, 133.
- Lindeman (E.).** *Simple syringe transfusion with special canulas.* Am. Jour. Child. Dis., **1913**, vi, 28.
- Moss (W. L.).** *A simple method for the indirect transfusion of blood.* Am. Jour. Med. Sc., **1914**, cxlvii, 698.
- Ottenberg (R.) & Kaliski (D. J.).** *Accidents in transfusion.* Jour. Am. Med. Assn., **1913**, lxi, 2133.
- Ottenberg (R.) & Libman (E.).** *Blood transfusion; indications; results; general management.* Am. Jour. Med. Sc., **1915**, cl, 36.
- Schultz (W.).** *Ueber Bluttransfusion beim Menschen unter Berücksichtigung biologischer Vorprüfungen.* Berl. klin. Wchnschr., **1910**, xlvii, 1407, 1457.



- Todd (C.) & White (R. G.).** *On the fate of red blood corpuscles when injected into the circulation of an animal of the same species; with a new method for the determination of the total volume of the blood.* *Proc. Roy. Soc., London*, **1911-12**, lxxiv, Ser. B, 255.
- Tuffier (T.).** *La transfusion du Sang.* *Jour. méd. fran.*, **1913**, vi, 269.
- Vogel (K. M.) & McCurdy (U. F.).** *Blood transfusion and regeneration in pernicious anemia.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 707.
- Weil (R.).** *Sodium citrate in the transfusion of blood.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1915**, lxv, 425.

### *Leukocytes and Leukocytosis*

- Bergel (S.).** *Hämolyse, Lipolyse und die Rolle der einkernigen ungranulierten basophilen Zellen.* *Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cvi, 47.
- Cabot (R. C.).** *The lymphocytosis of infection.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1913**, cxlv, 335.
- Evans (F. A.).** *Observations on the origin and status of the so-called "transitional" white blood cells.* *Arch. Int. Med.* **1916**, xvii, 1.
- Pappenheim (A.).** *Unsere derzeitigen Kenntnisse und Vorstellungen von der Morphologie, Genese, Histiogenese, Funktion und diagnostischen Bedeutung der Leukocyten.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1912**, viii, 183.

### *Eosinophilia*

- Herrick (W. W.).** *Experimental eosinophilia with an extract of an animal parasite.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xi, 165.
- Howard (C. P.).** *The relation of the eosinophilic cells of the blood, peritoneum and tissues to various toxins.* *Jour. Med. Research*, **1907-08**, xvii, 237.
- Opie (E. L.).** *The relation of cells with eosinophile granulation to bacterial infections.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1904**, cxvii, 988.  
*An experimental study of the relation of cells with eosinophile granulation to infection with an animal parasite (trichina spiralis).* *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1904**, cxvii, 477.
- Proscher (F.).** *Ueber experimentelle Erzeugung von eosinophilen Exsudaten.* *Fol. Haematol.*, **1905**, ii, 543.
- Putzig (H.).** *Das Vorkommen und die klinische Bedeutung der eosinophilen Zellen im Säuglingsalter, besonders bei der exsudativen Diathese.* *Ztschr. f. Kinderheilk. (Originalen)*, **1913**, ix, 429.
- Schlecht (H.) & Schwenker (G.).** *Ueber die Beziehungen der Eosinophilie zur Anaphylaxie.* *Deutsches Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1912**, cviii, 405.
- Stäubli (C.).** *Die klinische Bedeutung der Eosinophilie.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1910**, vi, 192.

### *Leukemia and Related Conditions*

- Dock (G.) & Warthin (A. S.).** *A new case of chloroma with leukemia, etc.* *Med. News*, **1904**, lxxv, 971, 1025, 1078, 1118.
- Dunn (J. S.).** *The use of the oxydase reaction in the differentiation of acute leukemia.* *Quart. Jour. Med.*, **1912-13**, vi, 293.
- Ellermann (V.).** *Untersuchungen über das Virus der Hühnerleukämie.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, lxxix, 43.
- Herz (A.).** *Ueber die den Leukämien verwandten Krankheitsprozesse.* *Fol. Haematol.*, **1912**, xviii, I. Teil, 408.
- Hirschfeld (H.).** *Die generalisierte aleukämische Myelose und ihre Stellung im System der leukämischen Erkrankungen.* *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, lxxx, 126.

- Lehndorff (H.)** *Chlorom. Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, **1910**, vi, 221.
- Longcope (W. T.) & Cooke (J. V.)**. A preliminary note upon the enzymes and the leukocytes in acute leukemia. *Proc. Path. Soc., Philadelphia*, **1911**, xiv, 72.
- Longcope (W. T.) & Donhauser (J. L.)**. A study of the proteolytic ferments of the large lymphocytes in a case of acute leukemia. *Proc. Path. Soc., Philadelphia*, **1908**, xi, 267.
- Morris (R. S.) & Boggs (T. R.)**. Leukocytic enzymes in leukemia in neutral media. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1911**, viii, 806.
- Port (F.)**. Neuere Forschungen und therapeutische Bestrebungen auf dem Gebiete der Blutkrankheiten. *Med. Klin.*, Heft. No. 7, **1914**, x.
- Rous (P.)**. A sarcoma of the fowl transmissible by an agent separable from the tumor cells. *Jour. Exper. Med.*, **1911**, xiii, 397.
- Warthin (A. S.)**. The minute changes produced in leukemic tissues by exposure to Röntgen rays. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1913**, cxlvii, 72.  
The neoplasm theory of leukemia. *Tr. Assn. Am. Physicians*, **1904**, xix, 421.

### Hodgkin's Disease

- Billings (F.) & Rosenow (E. C.)**. The etiology and vaccine treatment of Hodgkin's disease. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1913**, lxi, 2122.
- Bloomfield (A. L.)**. The bacterial flora of lymphatic glands. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 197.
- Bunting (C. H.)**. The blood-picture in Hodgkin's disease. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1911**, xxii, 369; **1914**, xxv, 173.
- Bunting (C. H.) & Yates (J. L.)**. An etiologic study of Hodgkin's disease. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxii, 516.
- Fox (H.)**. Studies in diphtheroids. III. Bacteria isolated from enlarged glands, especially in Hodgkin's disease. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1915**, xvi, 465.
- Longcope (W. T.)**. On the pathological histology of Hodgkin's disease. *Bull. Ayer Clin. Lab.*, **1903-04**, 14.
- Oliver (J.)**. The relation of Hodgkin's disease to lymphosarcoma and endothelioma. *Jour. Med. Research*, **1913**, xxix, 191.
- Reed (D. M.)**. On the pathological changes in Hodgkin's disease. *Johns Hopkins Hosp. Reports*, **1902**, x, 133.
- Steiger (O.)**. Klinik und Pathologie der Lymphogranulomatosis. *Ztschr. f. klin. Med.*, **1914**, lxxix, 452.

## Chapter XII

### The Endocrine Glands

#### The Chemical Regulation of Body Functions

##### General Considerations

Up to the final quarter of the past century, the attention of physiologists was directed almost entirely toward the nervous control of the various functions of the body. The activities of voluntary muscle, of smooth muscle and of glandular organs could be influenced by stimulating the proper nerves, and this appeared to be the most important, if not the sole, means by which the body controlled and correlated the functions of its component parts. It is true that in 1849 Berthold had shown that the body changes which follow the castration of young cockerels could be prevented by implanting the testicles at some distant part of the body, and that birds operated upon in this manner developed the vocal powers, the desire for combat, the comb and the sexual instincts of normal cocks. This decisive demonstration of a chemical control of development by the sex glands made little impression at the time, however, and the view held sway that the chemical processes of the body consisted solely in a building up and a breaking down of various tissues, in absorption, combustion, excretion and similar processes.

**Hormones.**—At the present time, however, we recognize that the body functions are regulated not alone by nervous influences, but also by chemical substances that pass from the tissues into the blood stream. We have seen, for example, that carbon dioxid and other waste products of an acid character exert a preponderating influence upon the activities of the respiratory center and thus upon the respiratory movements, that pancreatic tissue, even when separated from its nerve supply, exercises a profound effect upon carbohydrate metabolism, and that pancreatic juice is secreted after the injection of secretin, a substance that can be



prepared by the action of acids or soaps upon the duodenal mucosa. To such substances that are derived from one organ and that influence another after passage into the blood stream, Starling has given the name of chemical messengers or hormones.

### *The Endocrine Glands*

With the discovery that certain glands possess ducts and that characteristic secretions escape through these ducts, the functions of these glands seemed well on the way to solution. But the function of certain other glandlike organs which lacked secretory ducts remained a riddle. Among these latter are the thyroid, the parathyroids, the thymus, the hypophysis, the epiphysis and the adrenals. To Brown-Séquard belongs the credit for having impressed the medical world with the view that all glandular organs, be they with or without ducts, may give off to the blood certain substances that are necessary for the welfare of the body as a whole. The essential correctness of his conception is now generally recognized, and the glands that possess such functions are called the endocrine glands. These include not only the ductless glands just enumerated, but certain others which elaborate both an external secretion that escapes through the duct and an internal secretion that enters the blood. Among the glands that possess this double function may be mentioned the pancreas, the liver, the duodenal mucosa and the sex glands.

### *Evidences of Internal Secretion*

Direct and conclusive proof that a particular gland supplies an internal secretion to the body is furnished, if peculiar, physiologically active substances can be demonstrated in the blood or lymph that leaves the gland in question. Proof of this character has been furnished only for one gland of internal secretion, the adrenal. It is evident, however, that a failure to find an active substance in the blood that leaves a gland does not demonstrate the absence of an internal secretion; for the secretion poured out may be greatly diluted by the large quantity of blood and of lymph that comes from the gland, and may thus escape detection by any available method.

**Effects of Excision and Implantation.**—Next in order of value as evidence of internal secretion is the observation that the excision of the gland produces characteristic changes in the vital processes. If to this be added the observation that such changes may be more or less prevented or neutralized by implantation of the gland elsewhere in the body or by the administration of glandular preparations, then the evidence in favor of an internal secretion may also be regarded as conclusive. Demonstrations of this type have been furnished for the internal secre-

tion of the pancreas, the thyroid, the parathyroids, the hypophysis, the adrenals and the sex glands.

**The Administration of Glandular Extracts.**—Finally comes the study of the physiological effect produced by the administration by mouth or by injections of glandular extracts and of other preparations derived from the glands. The demonstration of physiologically active principles in a gland of internal secretion suggests that similar substances may pass into the circulation under normal or pathological conditions. This possibility is strengthened if the symptoms produced by supposed hyperfunction correspond to those produced by the administration of glandular substance or if the symptoms attributed to hypofunction are relieved by such administration. The former is the case in toxic thyroid adenomata: the latter is the case in myxedema. In diabetes insipidus the control of polyuria by pituitary injections suggests but does not demonstrate a lessened function of the pituitary gland.

### *Types of Glandular Disturbance*

**Hypofunction.**—Diminished function of a gland of internal secretion is suggested, when the anatomical changes present are those of aplasia or destruction and when the symptoms correspond with those that follow the surgical extirpation of a part or the whole of the gland in question. If, in addition, the symptoms are relieved by the administration of glandular products or by the successful transplantation of the gland in question, the evidence of diminished or absent function is conclusive.

**Hyperfunction.**—An excessive or hyperfunction of a gland of internal secretion is suggested when the clinical symptoms of a disease resemble those produced by the administration of the gland in question, and when, furthermore, the anatomical study of the gland shows hyperplastic or other changes, indicative of increased functional activity of its cells. Further evidence of hyperfunction is furnished by the results of operative removal of a part of the diseased structure. If, after such removal, normal conditions become reestablished the evidence of hyperfunction is conclusive.

**Aberrant Types.**—There remain for discussion a not inconsiderable number of clinical conditions which are evidently referable to pathological disturbances of the endocrine glands but which nevertheless do not fall clearly either into the group of hyperfunctions or into the group of hypofunctions. The cause of these aberrant types of disease is not altogether clear. We know that certain endocrine glands, such as the hypophysis and the adrenals, possess a complex structure and that the different parts show different physiological properties. It is possible also that, where the structure is of a homogenous character, the gland may secrete more than one physiologically active substance. In either case,

it is conceivable that under pathological conditions one element in the secretion may be increased, whereas another is normal or diminished. In such cases, the clinical disease may represent a mixture of the effects produced by variations in the component elements of the glandular activity. Possibly also the deviations from the typical pictures of hyperfunction and hypofunction are due to some peculiar reaction on the part of the individual patient. It is possible, finally, that variations from the characteristic pictures may be due not only to changes in the quantity of the secretion, but also to changes in its quality. Indubitable proof of such a *dysfunction* is not easily furnished, but it affords a ready and convenient explanation for many aberrant types of endocrine disease.

## Disturbances of the Thyroid Gland

### *Hypothyroidism*

The condition, now recognized as hypothyroidism of adults, was first described in 1873 by Sir William Gull. Five years later it was given the name of myxedema by Ord, who found a mucinlike material in the subcutaneous tissue of a patient coming to autopsy. The relation of myxedema to the thyroid gland did not become clear, however, until the surgeons, Reverdin of Geneva and Kocher of Berne, had described a similar condition which followed the complete extirpation of goiterous thyroid glands from their patients. The suggestion that both diseases were due to a lack of thyroid secretion called forth a multitude of studies, both as to the effect of thyroid extirpation upon animals, and the effect of thyroid administration and transplantation on those suffering from these diseases. As a result of these studies it became evident that a diminished or absent thyroid secretion produces a definite clinical picture.

### **Myxedema of Adults**

We have seen that the name myxedema was given to this disease on account of the peculiar swellings observed in the subcutaneous and other tissues. Although such swellings suggest at first an ordinary edema, they differ from this in that they do not pit on pressure and that on anatomical examination they contain a mucinlike material. In pronounced cases of the disease, such swellings are more or less general over the body. They are, however, particularly marked about the cheeks, the nose and the eyelids. The immobility which they cause gives to the face a peculiar, expressionless appearance. Swellings are also common in the neck, above the clavicles, and on the backs of the hands and feet. Such swellings are caused in part by the mucinlike material just mentioned, in part they are due to an increase in the connective tissues.

**Thickenings in Mucous Membrane.**—Similar thickenings may appear



in the mucous membranes. The tongue becomes enlarged, the voice becomes hoarse by reason of an involvement of the vocal cords, mouth breathing may result from a thickening of the palate and pharynx, and deafness may be due to involvement of the middle ear or of the eustachian tubes. The joint and



Fig. 128.—True Myxedema Before and After Thyroid Treatment. Note the Baldness. (From Hertoghe, by permission of the Editor of the Practitioner.)

muscle pains so common in this class of patients are believed to be caused by myxedematous infiltrations of the muscles and the periarticular tissues.



Fig. 129.—Same Patient As in Previous Figure, Before and After Treatment. (From Hertoghe, by permission of the Editor of the Practitioner.)

**Depression of Bodily Functions.**—Finally, a depression of various body functions takes place. The basal metabolism is diminished and the patients avoid exercise. The weight is usually increased. The alimentary tolerance for sugar is often greater than normal. The temperature tends to be somewhat subnormal and the heart action is slow. Menstruation usually ceases. Characteristic mental changes appear, the most common and striking being apathy and somnolence.

### **Tegumental Changes.**

—In addition to these characteristic swellings, patients suffering from myxedema show various changes in their tegumental structures. The skin is dry and has a peculiar sallow color, the nails are brittle, the hair is both dry and brittle and tends to fall, while the teeth decay and are lost.



Fig. 130.—True Myxedema Before and After Treatment. Note the Loss of Eyebrows and the Coarse Features. (From Hertoghe, by permission of the Editor of the Practitioner.)

### Mild Types of Hypothyroidism

In addition to the outspoken cases of myxedema with characteristic swellings, a variety of milder and less characteristic forms have been described. Thus Marchiafava described a form of thyroid insufficiency which was characterized by apathy and somnolence. In other cases, joint pains, defective menstruation, hoarse voice, deafness, and severe constipation have been attributed to this cause. Finally, von Noorden believes that certain forms of obesity are due to a partial thyroid insufficiency (see Obesity). In all such cases, the assumption that a patient is suffering from a mild type of hypothyroidism is based in part upon a similarity of the symptoms observed to those of typical myxedema, and in part upon the beneficial results which have followed the administration of thyroid preparations.

### Sporadic Cretinism

When hypothyroidism occurs in early life (sporadic cretinism) the effects are particularly striking, for the reason that the thyroid secretion



Fig. 131.—True Infantile Myxedema (Sporadic Cretinism). (a) Before Treatment. The Child Is Eight Years Old. Height Is 34 in. Note the Enlarged Abdomen and Deformities of the Bones of the Lower Limbs; (b) After One Year of Treatment; (c) After Two Years of Treatment, and (d) After Five Years of Treatment. (From Hertoghe, by permission of the Editor of the Practitioner.)

is an essential factor in the normal development of mind and body. In sporadic cretins the bony development is incomplete. The formation of the centers of ossification is delayed and the epiphyses unite with the long bones either late or in severe cases not at all. The lack of growth in the long bones leads to a dwarf stature, the lack of growth of the facial bones causes

the face to be small relative to the size of the cranium, while the lack of development of the sphenoid gives a sunken appearance to the base of the nose. The fontanels do not close until late in life and dentition is delayed.

**Mental Development.**—The mental development of cretins is likewise imperfect and in pronounced cases the individual never attains a mental development beyond that of late infancy.

**Resemblance to Myxedema.**—Changes in nutrition and in the tegumental structures, as well as mucinous deposits, resemble those which occur in myxedema. The basal metabolism is definitely diminished. The abdomen is often distended.

**Retarded Development in Mild Types.**—Milder types of hypothyroidism in infants and children retard the mental, bodily and sexual development. The patients are stupid, undersized, and sexually infantile.

#### Relation of the Thyroid to Sporadic Cretinism and Myxedema

That myxedema and sporadic cretinism are due wholly or in large part to a deficient secretion of the thyroid gland may be regarded as definitely established. The typical complex of myxedema has followed



Fig. 132.—Photograph of Cretin Lamb About One Year Old and of a Normal Lamb of Eleven Months. (From Simpson, *Quart. Jour. Exp. Physiol.*, published by Charles Griffin & Co., London.)

the operative removal of the gland in man. The removal of the thyroid from very young animals has led to changes similar to those of sporadic cretinism. The long bones remain short, psychic apathy may occur (sheep), the hair differs from that of normal animals, and sexual development is delayed or absent.

**Effect of Use of Thyroid Substances.**—The administration of thyroid substance to myxedematous patients causes striking changes. The swellings disappear, the skin becomes warm and soft, the metabolism is accelerated and the mental apathy and stupor disappear. The administration of thyroid substance to sporadic cretins causes, in addition, a development of the mind, the body and the sexual functions. The transplantation of thyroid tissue derived from other individuals into various parts of the body has been followed by similar changes, but in most, if not in all, instances the tissue so transplanted has ultimately degenerated



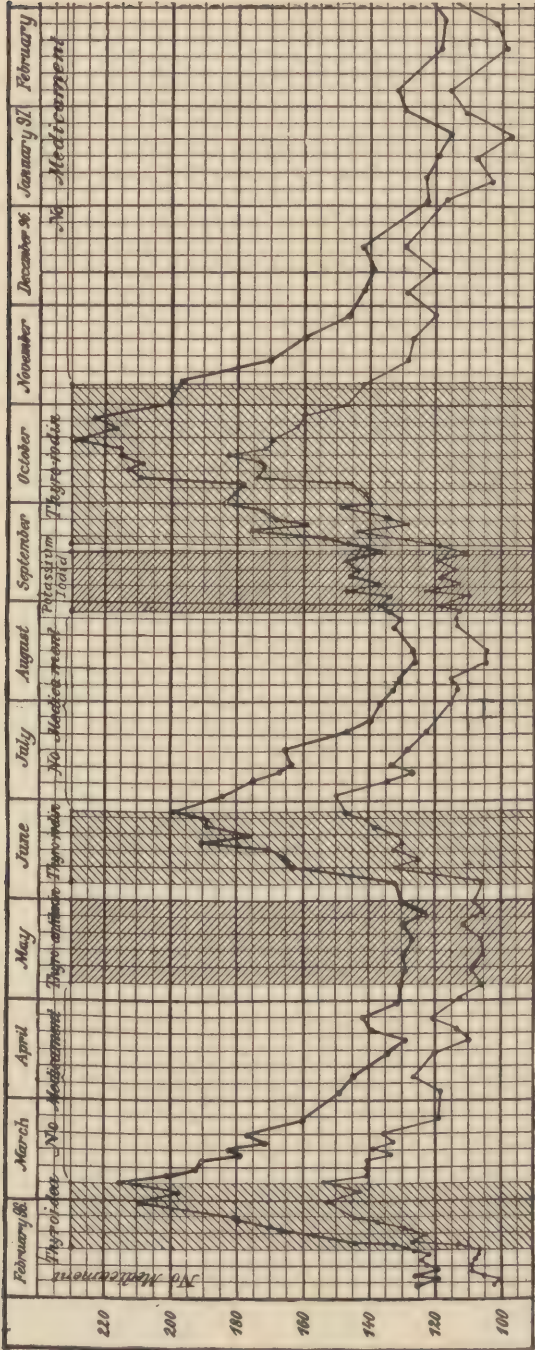


Fig. 133.—The Effect of Thyroid Medication Upon the Gaseous Metabolism of a Sporadic Cretin. Upper Curve Oxygen Consumption and Lower Curve Carbon Dioxide Elimination in c.c. per Minute. Note that Thyreo-autotoxin Produced No Effect and Potassium Iodid But Slight Effect. Thyroid Preparations, on the Other Hand, Caused a Marked Acceleration in the Metabolism. (After Magnus-Levy, Ztschr. f. klin. Med., published by A. Hirschwald, Berlin.)

and the symptoms have returned, so that the hope for a permanent cure by surgical means has not been realized.

**RESTORATION OFTEN INCOMPLETE.**—In many instances patients have been restored to a normal or nearly normal condition by the administration of thyroid substance, and have relapsed into their original state when the administration of thyroid was discontinued. At times, however, the patients have been improved by thyroid administration only to a certain point. If the administration of thyroid substance were pushed beyond this point toxic symptoms of hyperthyroidism have appeared even when certain symptoms of myxedema were still present. In sporadic cretinism, also, the administration of thyroid substance, while causing a marked improvement, has often failed to restore the individual to a perfectly normal condition. The reason for such partial failures of thyroid medication is not altogether clear. Possibly, as Talta suggests, the failures may be due to various complications, such as involvement of other glands of internal secretion and degenerations of the heart muscle or of other tissues. Possibly, also, the thyroid medication used does not provide a perfect substitution therapy or possibly the original disease is due not to hypothyroidism alone but also to some perversion of the secretion (dysthyroidism).

## ***Hyperthyroidism***

### **Experimental Hyperthyroidism**

For the production of experimental hyperthyroidism two general methods have been employed. The first of these consists in the administration of thyroid preparations, the second in increasing the functional activity of the thyroid gland.

#### ***(1) Effects of Thyroid Administration***

The remarkable improvements that have followed the administrations of thyroid preparations to myxedematous patients and to sporadic cretins, naturally led to studies of the effect of these preparations on other diseases and on normal animals and men. Toxic symptoms can be induced in most and probably in all animals by thyroid feeding. As Carlson and his associates have shown, however, the resistance to such feeding varies widely in the different species. Carnivora are relatively resistant, herbivora less so, while man appears to be the most susceptible to thyroid feeding. The most constant symptoms observed are loss of body weight, gastro-enteritis, and diarrhea. As a rule, animals develop neither a rapid heart rate, increased nervousness, nor exophthalmos.

**Effect on Man.**—Thyroid substance has been administered to man mainly for therapeutic purposes. During such administration toxic

symptoms not infrequently appear. These consist of loss of weight, feelings of warmth and sweating, tachycardia, trembling, restlessness, insomnia, and gastro-intestinal disturbances. In a remarkable case reported by Notthafft, the patient, who had been gaining weight, took nearly a thousand thyroid tablets during the course of five weeks. In addition to most of the above symptoms he showed rapid respirations, slight rise of temperature, glycosuria, and bilateral exophthalmos.

Various authors have reported individual differences in susceptibility to thyroid medication. Patients with thyroid disease, whether myxedema or Graves' disease, are said to be more prone to develop toxic symptoms. That the differences reported do not depend solely upon differences in the preparations used or upon differences in their absorption is evident from the work of Plummer and Boothby. These observers found that intravenous injections of thyroxin increased the basal metabolic rate, on the average, by 2.8 per cent for each milligram injected, but that very considerable variations from this average occurred, the limits being 5.6 per cent and 1.0 per cent.

### (2) *Thyroid Stimulation*

The administration of iodine preparations to patients with thyroid disease is occasionally followed by a group of symptoms that are similar in character to those produced by the administration of thyroid substance itself. Among these are tachycardia, tremor, increased nervousness and loss of weight. These effects may be produced in susceptible individuals by relatively small doses. Apparently in such cases the iodids cause the liberation of an excessive amount of thyroid secretion. Such effects are rarely, if ever, produced in normal individuals.

**Stimulation of Nerves.**—Cannon and his associates reported that it was possible to produce the symptoms of hyperthyroidism experimentally in cats by anastomosing the central end of the cut phrenic nerve with the peripheral end of the cut cervical sympathetic. After union had taken place, the rhythmical stimuli, which normally pass down the phrenic nerve to the diaphragm during each respiration, presumably were carried to the thyroid gland. Following this operation the animals became unusually excitable, developed tachycardia and diarrhea, and had a high basal metabolism. Repetitions of this experiment by Burget and by Marine did not cause hyperthyroid manifestations.

### *Toxic Goiters*

It has long been known that some patients who have goiter suffer from toxic symptoms. These occur particularly in those with diffuse hyperplasia of the gland (exophthalmic goiter) and in some with one or more adenomatous nodules in the gland (toxic adenomata).



**Clinical Differentiation.**—Plummer has differentiated the clinical pictures which accompany these two types of toxic goiter. Diffuse hyperplasia of the gland is associated with the characteristic manifestations of exophthalmic goiter, which include metabolic changes, ocular signs, tachycardia and other cardiovascular signs, and nervous changes. The manifestations of toxic thyroid adenomata are similar, except for the rarity of exophthalmus and of thrills and murmurs. The symptoms in exophthalmic goiter usually become marked within a few years after the goiter appears or they may be present when no goiter is evident on physical examination. On the other hand patients with adenomata frequently have a goiter for many years before toxic symptoms develop. Finally the majority of exophthalmic goiter patients requiring treatment are less than forty years old, whereas the majority of patients with adenomatous goiter are over forty years by the time that the symptoms become marked.

### *Manifestations*

Thyroid intoxication manifests itself mainly by (a) metabolic changes, (b) ocular changes, (c) cardiovascular changes, and (d) nervous changes.

(a) **Metabolism.**—Thyroid intoxication is characterized by an increase in the metabolic rate. While this increase is enhanced by the nervousness and by the restless muscular activity of these patients, it remains higher than normal even when these extraneous influences are, so far as possible, eliminated. The basal metabolism in toxic goiter is commonly from 20 to 80 per cent above the normal and there is no other condition in which the basal metabolism equals that seen in severe cases of thyroid intoxication. This increase in metabolism is roughly proportional to the clinical manifestations and it furnishes our most accurate single measure of the severity of the disease. When the metabolic rate is from 20 to 50 per cent above normal the disease is ordinarily mild; when it is from 50 to 75 per cent above normal the disease is severe; and when it is more than 75 per cent above normal the disease is very severe.

The condition known as irritable heart, or *neurocirculatory asthenia*, is characterized by various manifestations of nervousness and by a rapid and violent heart action. It is frequently difficult to differentiate this from the milder forms of toxic goiter, particularly if the patient has some enlargement of the thyroid gland. In this condition, however, there is no definite or constant increase in the basal metabolic rate. This fact indicates that neurocirculatory asthenia is not related to the commonly recognized forms of thyroid intoxication.

The increased metabolic rate in toxic goiter, the restlessness and muscular activity, the tendency to loss of appetite and to digestive disturbances, are all in part responsible for the *loss of weight* that is so common in this condition. Even where the appetite and digestion are good and the

patient eats well, he may yet lose weight because of the rapid metabolism. The increased metabolic rate is also responsible for the tendency towards a *slight elevation of body temperature*, and for the *warm moist skin*, which latter serves to increase the elimination of heat from the body.

In addition to the rapid total metabolism of toxic goiter, there is sometimes an increase in the nitrogenous metabolism, which makes difficult the maintenance of nitrogenous equilibrium. Patients with toxic goiter who have been given 100 grams of glucose by mouth often show an unusual elevation of blood sugar and an *alimentary glycosuria* (q. v.), despite the fact that excessive quantities of material are being consumed in the body. The administration of thyroid to animals lessens the amount of glycogen in the liver. It seems probable, therefore, that the alimentary glycosuria of toxic goiter is due to some defect in the glycogenic function of the liver.

**(b) Ocular Signs.**—The protrusion of the eyeballs, to which symptom exophthalmic goiter owes a part of its name, may develop gradually or it may appear quite suddenly. Occasionally it varies markedly within short periods of time. It is possible that these variations may result, as

some have held, from vascular changes in the vessels lying in the orbit. It is more probable, however, that the exophthalmos is due to a spasm of the smooth muscle fibers, described by Müller, and by Landström. These fibers extend about the eyeball and are attached to the lids and the anterior orbital fascia. Their contraction tends to draw back the lids and to protrude the eyeball. This smooth muscle is innervated by the cervical sympathetic nerve, and stimulation of this nerve produces, among other effects, a widening of the palpebral fissure and a protrusion of the eyeball. Extirpation of the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion from patients with exophthalmic goiter has frequently been followed by a noteworthy reduction of the exophthalmos, a fact which sup-

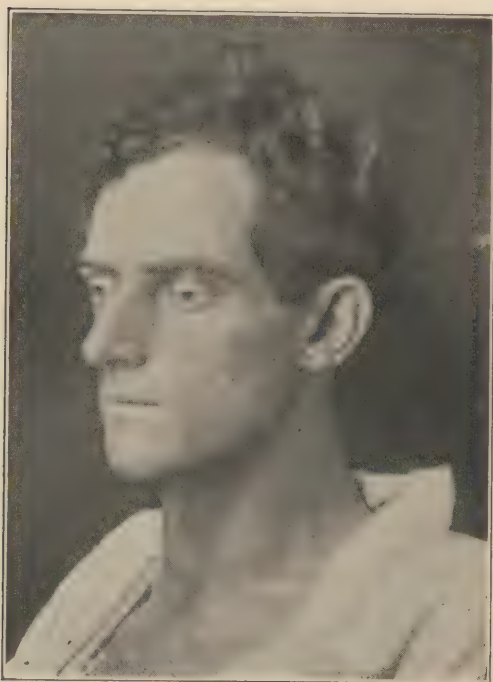


Fig. 134.—Exophthalmic Goiter. Note the Moderate and Uniform Enlargement of the Thyroid Gland, the Emaciation, and the Protrusion of the Eyeball with Retraction of the Upper Lid.

ports the view that the protrusion of the eye is due to an unusual activity of the smooth muscle fibers in the orbit.

**PERSISTENCE OF PROTRUSION.**—After exophthalmos has persisted for some time, there appears to be a deposit of fat in the posterial orbital tissues which tends to fix the eyeball in its new position. For this reason, it not infrequently happens that patients, who have recovered from other symptoms of exophthalmic goiter, continue to show a prominence of the eyes.

**ACTION OF OTHER ORBITAL MUSCLES.**—The other ocular manifestations of this disease may also be explained by assuming a spasm of the smooth muscle fibers in the orbit, which tends to retract the lids and to interfere with the movements of the ocular globe. Possibly, also, the failure of the upper lid to follow the movement of the eyeball as the patient watches an object move from above downward (Graefe's sign), the widened palpebral fissure (Dalrymple) and the retraction of the upper lid when the patient looks intently at an object (Kocher), are all due to a spasm of the levator of the upper eyelid. The imperfect convergence of the eyes when an object is held close to the face (Moebius) may be due to a weakness of the internal recti.

**(c) Cardiovascular Symptoms.**—Tachycardia is an almost constant manifestation of toxic goiter. The general level of blood pressure may be normal, elevated or reduced; but the pulse pressure is almost regularly increased. The rapid pulse rate together with the increased pulse pressure indicate that in these patients the minute output from the heart is greater than normal. The palpitation, the excessive arterial pulsations and the accidental murmurs heard over the heart are all due, in part, to this excessive cardiac activity. These changes in pulse rate and pulse pressure roughly parallel the changes in metabolic rate and they doubtlessly depend in part upon the general level of body metabolism.

Yet the cardiac changes present in toxic goiter are only in part a manifestation of the increased metabolic rate. Long standing cases frequently show evidence of myocardial disease—such as cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy, extrasystoles and auricular fibrillation. In such cases, operations on the thyroid gland may lessen or remove the hyperthyroidism; but they usually fail to relieve the cardiac insufficiency.

The warm moist skin, so characteristic of severe types of thyrotoxicosis, is due to an increased flow of blood to the surface of the body. Through this means the extra heat produced in the body by the increased rate of metabolism is carried to the surface for elimination.

In exophthalmic goiter the thyroid gland is usually vascular and its vessels bleed profusely at operation. The rapid flow of blood through the organ causes the thrills and murmurs so commonly observed about the gland.

**(d) Nervous Symptoms.**—Patients suffering from toxic goiter are, as



a rule, nervous and emotional. They speak and move quickly. Tremors of the hands and tongue are common. Occasionally a definite psychosis develops. It is probable that nervous influences play a part in causing the disease. Nervousness is also a result of thyroid disease, for increased nervousness has been produced by thyroid administration to susceptible individuals, and the nervousness of patients suffering from Graves' disease often abates after partial thyroidectomy. In this disease, therefore, a vicious circle tends to become established, for the thyroid disease increases the nervousness, while the latter probably stimulates the thyroid to increased activity.

**(e) Other Manifestations.**—Among the other disturbances in exophthalmic goiter are muscular weakness, rapid and superficial respirations, increase of mononuclear cells in the blood, diarrhea, and pigmentations.

### *Pathogenesis of Toxic Goiter*

Many facts favor the view that toxic goiter is due, at least in part, to a hyperfunction of the thyroid gland.

**Effect of Thyroid Medication.**—When thyroid substance is administered to susceptible individuals, it produces tremors, increased nervousness, rapid metabolism, loss of weight, sweating and tachycardia, all of which are analogous to the symptoms present in the disease. As a rule, exophthalmos does not follow the administration of thyroid substance either to man or animals. While the susceptibility of different individuals to thyroid administration varies considerably, it is a rule that patients with a mild form of exophthalmic goiter are made worse by such administration.

**Structure of Gland.**—The appearance of the gland in patients suffering from toxic goiter also favors the theory of hyperfunction. In exophthalmic goiter there is an increase in the size of the gland, an increased vascularity of the gland and an increase in the number and size of the epithelial cells. The acini contain very little colloid, and are almost filled with hyperplastic and desquamating, epithelial cells. In toxic adenomatous goiter, the adenomata are composed of active thyroid tissue.

**Effect of Partial Thyroidectomy.**—Further evidence of increased function is furnished by the results of surgical operation. Immediately after partial thyroidectomy there is not infrequently an acute exacerbation of symptoms with very rapid pulse, great restlessness and extreme nervousness. These symptoms of acute intoxication are probably due to the action of thyroid secretion that has been liberated during or immediately after the operation. After recovery from the operation, however, the symptoms are usually greatly benefited or even cured.

**Thyroid Secretion in Blood.**—Conclusive evidence of an excess of thyroid secretion in the blood of patients suffering from exophthalmic

goiter has not been furnished. When small amounts of thyroid are fed to mice, they acquire a marked resistance to the poisonous action of acetonitril (R. Hunt). If the blood from thyrotoxic patients be fed, the mice are not, as a rule, protected from this drug (Carlson and Woelfel).

**Contrast with Cachexia Thyreopriva.**—The view that Graves' disease is due to a thyroid hyperfunction was originally advocated because of the contrast between the clinical manifestations of this disease and those produced by a removal of the gland. A. Kocher has tabulated this contrast in the following form:

## CACHEXIA THYREOPRIVA

Absence or atrophy of the thyroid gland

Slow, small, regular pulse

Cold skin, without flushings

An uninterested, quiet stare without expression of life

Narrow palpebral aperture

Slow digestion and excretion, poor appetite, requiring little food

Retarded metabolism

Skin is thick, opaque, folded, dry and scaling

Short, thick fingers with broad ends

Sleepy

Slow sensation, apperception and action

Lack of thoughts, interest and emotion

Slow, awkward, muscular movements

Stiffness of the extremities

Delay in growth of bones, often with deformities. Bones thick and short

Constant chilliness

Slow, difficult breathing

Increase of weight

Aged appearance even of young people

## GRAVES' DISEASE

Swelling of the thyroid gland, usually of a diffuse nature. Hypervascularization

Frequent, often tense and at times irregular pulse

Irritable vasomotor system

Anxious, changing glances, angry expression

Wide palpebral aperture, exophthalmos

Abundant excretions, an excessive appetite with increased needs of food

Increased metabolism

Skin is thin, transparent, finely injected and moist

Long, slender fingers with pointed ends

Wakeful and disturbed sleep

Increased sensation, apperception and action

Flight of ideas, psychic excitation even to hallucination, mania and melancholy

Constant activity and haste

Tremor and increased mobility of joints

Slender skeleton with here and there soft bones

Unbearable feeling of heat

Superficial breathing with imperfect inspiratory expansion

Loss of weight

Youthful rank development of the body, especially at the onset

**Qualitative Changes in Thyroid Secretion.**—Many facts have therefore been brought forward in support of the view that toxic thyroid conditions are caused by hyperfunction of the gland. The further question arises—is the increased secretion which escapes into the body similar to the normal secretion, or is it an altered secretion (dysthyroidism).

The symptoms observed in patients suffering from toxic adenomata differ in no way from those produced by the administration of the active thyroid principle, thyroxin. Plummer, therefore, believes that toxic

adenomata produce a pure hyperthyroidism. In typical exophthalmic goiter, on the other hand, the exophthalmos, the thrills and the murmurs differentiate the condition both from the hyperthyroidism produced by the administration of thyroxin and from that due to toxic adenomata. Plummer believes that in exophthalmic goiter the secretion is not only excessive, but that it is qualitatively changed from the normal.

**Effect of Enlarged or Overactive Thymus.**—In recent years particular attention has also been paid to the part which an enlarged or overactive thymus may play in contributing to the symptom-complex of exophthalmic goiter. As a result of clinical and anatomical studies, A. Kocher estimates that in from 45 to 50 per cent of all patients suffering from Graves' disease there is an enlargement of the thymus gland. It appears, furthermore, that in certain instances the operative results following partial thyroidectomy are improved if the thymus is also excised or if a secondary treatment of the thymus with the x-ray is carried out. Up to the present, however, the evidence indicates that the part played by the thymus in producing the typical picture of exophthalmic goiter is secondary in importance to the part played by the excessive and perhaps perverted thyroid secretion.

It appears probable, therefore, that while the symptoms of toxic goiter are due in the main to a hypersecretion of the thyroid gland, there are not infrequently other changes, either in this secretion itself or in other parts of the body, which alter the fundamental picture of hyperthyroidism.

### *Etiology of Toxic Goiter*

Concerning the cause of the thyroid changes that lead to exophthalmic goiter we know little. Clinicians have frequently pointed out that the symptoms of this disease occasionally develop after some unusual *excitement or emotion*, and that practically all patients do badly when exposed to exciting influences. Rabe, Rogers, Fawcett and Beebe showed that stimulation of one cervical sympathetic nerve led to demonstrable changes in the corresponding lobe of the thyroid. The observation of Cannon and his associates that hyperthyroidism results from stimulation of the nerves leading to the thyroid gland has not been confirmed by others. Furthermore, the statement has been made that exophthalmic goiter was not unusually frequent during the Great War. We are, therefore, still in doubt whether nervous strain may actually produce the disease in normal individuals, or whether it merely causes the disease to become more apparent in those who already have it in a mild form.

We have pointed out that in certain patients with thyroid disease toxic symptoms develop or become more marked when *iodids* are given. In some cases acute or subacute inflammations of the gland appear to have given rise to the symptoms of hyperthyroidism, but the frequency with



which *infectious processes* are responsible for Graves' disease is not settled.

### *The Active Principles of Thyroid Secretion*

It has long been known that the thyroid possesses a peculiar affinity for *iodin* and that the percentage of this element in thyroid substance is often eight to ten times as great as is the percentage in other tissues. Furthermore, when the body is subjected to iodin want, the thyroid retains its iodine with peculiar tenacity. The occurrence of toxic symptoms in certain patients suffering from thyroid disease and the disappearance of certain goiters after the administration of iodids also favor the view that this element has some peculiar relation to thyroid activity.

**Thyroxin.**—Kendall has prepared a relatively simple, crystalline, iodine-containing compound from thyroid substance. Small amounts of this preparation, thyroxin, give rise to symptoms comparable to those observed in the hyperthyroidism of toxic adenomata. Thyroxin has been used successfully in the treatment of human myxedema and cretinism. It is regarded as the active principal of the thyroid gland.

According to Kendall, the increase in metabolic rate which follows the injection of thyroxin is due primarily, not to its content of iodine, but to its imino groups; for this increase does not follow injections of a derivative of thyroxin in which the hydrogen of the imino group, CO-NH, has been replaced, and the content of iodine left unaltered. The metamorphosis of the tadpole is checked by thyroid excision and accelerated by thyroid administration. This thyroid effect depends primarily upon iodine compounds, for when inorganic iodine is fed to thyroidless larvae, metamorphosis rapidly occurs (Swingle).

### *Endemic Cretinism, Endemic Goiter and the Goiter Heart*

The etiology of various other diseases of the thyroid gland and their relation to the body as a whole have been much studied, but many points remain obscure.

#### **Endemic Cretinism**

That the thyroid gland is diseased or almost absent in those suffering from the endemic type of cretinism is certain, but the relation of this disease to sporadic cretinism is not definitely known. As contrasted with the latter, endemic cretins exhibit myxedematous swellings less frequently and the psychic and bodily development vary greatly. Furthermore, the administration of thyroid substance to endemic cretins is less successful than its administration to those suffering from the sporadic form of the disease. According to some, these differences are not suffi-

cient to separate the two diseases; according to others, endemic cretinism is a general disease and the thyroid changes are but one manifestation of the general disease. The frequency of deaf-mutism in regions where endemic cretinism and endemic goiter prevail has been held to prove that all are due to a common cause.

### Endemic Goiter

Endemic goiter occurs in certain districts and particularly in the mountainous regions of the Alps, the Pyrenees, the Carpathians, the Himalayas and the Andes. In the United States it is common in the Great Lakes District and in the State of Washington. It appears to be associated with certain geological formations and it has been variously attributed to the water supply, to the food supply and to infection.

**Prevention by Iodin.**—In goiterous districts many enlargements of the thyroid appear about the time of puberty and persist throughout life. Marine found that young trout could be made goiterous by feeding them on hog's liver and heart, and that the goiters could be cured by giving them the meat of sea fish. He found also that the addition of small amounts of iodid to the water was sufficient to prevent the occurrence of goiter.

It has long been known that goiters sometimes disappear when iodine preparations are given. Marine lessened the prevalence of goiter in certain Ohio schools by the systematic administration of very small quantities of iodid. It is established therefore that the simple goiter of adolescence can often be prevented or cured by iodid. A lack of this element in the diet or drinking water appears to play an important rôle in the etiology of this condition.

**Toxic Symptoms in Goiter.**—The toxic symptoms in goiter bear no definite relation to the size of the gland. Toxic goiters may be of small size and large goiters are frequently accompanied by no toxic symptoms. The administration of iodids sometimes reduces the size of an enlarged thyroid but at the same time increases its activity. The development of toxic symptoms in persons who have had a goiter for many years is usually due to the activity of adenomatous nodules.

### The Goiter Heart

Patients suffering from apparently simple goiters are peculiarly liable to cardiac disturbances. These may be caused by pressure of the tumor upon neighboring structures. Compression of the trachea causes an inspiratory dyspnea with unusual fluctuations of the intrathoracic pressure and this, as we have seen (page 44), may be a cause of cardiac disease (goiter heart of Rose). Pressure upon the sympathetic or vagus nerves in the lower neck or upper thorax may also alter the heart action.

**Toxic Nature of Most Disturbances.**—The majority of cardiac disturbances associated with goiter are probably of a toxic nature. At times the cardiac manifestations resemble those seen in Graves' disease, even though other manifestations of this disease are absent. In such cases, particularly, the toxic nature of the cardiac disturbances seems probable. Furthermore, patients with goiter not infrequently show evidence of myocardial disturbances, such as dilatation, hypertrophy, and irregularities (extrasystoles and auricular fibrillation). The occasional occurrence of transient auricular fibrillation after partial thyroidectomy also indicates that toxic substances of thyroid origin may disturb the heart rhythm.

## **The Parathyroids**

It was noted by early observers that complete removal of the thyroid gland produced variable effects. While some subjects developed symptoms that closely resembled those of myxedema, others showed acute symptoms of a convulsive character. The latter effects were particularly common in dogs, and it was thought at first that thyroidectomy produced results in carnivora which differed from those produced in herbivora. Further studies, initiated by Gley and by Vassale and Generali, showed, however, that the convulsive seizures observed in certain animals were due, not to a removal of the thyroid gland, but to the removal of the small parathyroid glandules that had been described by Sandström in 1880. The varying results observed after such operations were due to the varying amounts of parathyroid tissue that had been excised with the thyroid. When, as in some animals, all the parathyroids are intimately connected with the thyroid, excision was often followed by tetany; whereas, when two or more of the parathyroids were at some distance from the thyroid, they readily escaped removal and after operation such animals became myxedematous. Finally, the excision of all the parathyroids with as little thyroid tissue as possible resulted in tetany.

### ***Symptoms of Tetany***

Tetany is characterized by an increased irritability of the nervous system, associated with muscular tremors and convulsive seizures that affect particularly the hands and feet. The peripheral nerves show an increased irritability to the galvanic current (Erb) and frequently also a variation from their normal responses to the opening and closing of this circuit. Pressure over a nerve (Trousseau) or mechanical stimulation of a nerve by tapping (Chvostek) may induce muscular contractions or spasms. There is also an increased irritability of the sensory nerves to the electrical current and the same is true of the acoustic nerve.



### ***Experimental Tetany after Parathyroidectomy***

The excision of all parathyroids leads to the characteristic nervous manifestations of tetany that have just been described. The effect upon the internal organs has also been studied. While Falta and Kahn found that patients suffering from clinical forms of tetany show a tendency to spasms of the stomach, the ciliary muscles and the blood vessels, as well as to a hypersecretion of sweat, tears, and the digestive juices, Carlson found that in cats and dogs parathyroidectomy tends, if anything, to depress the movements of the gastro-intestinal canal, and Keeton that it lessens the secretion of gastric juice. Hoskins and Wheelan have noted that parathyroid deficiency increases the reactions of the blood vessels to certain drugs (epinephrin, pituitrin and nicotin).

**Peripheral Nature of Increased Nervous Irritability.**—In tetany the peripheral neuron which extends from the spinal cord to the muscle is altered. Convulsive seizures still occur in the hind extremities even after the spinal cord has been severed. Furthermore, MacCallum and his associates have shown that the electrical irritability of a peripheral nerve is altered in the characteristic manner if an extremity be perfused with blood from a parathyroidectomized animal or with blood from which calcium salts have been removed. This local hypersensitiveness of the nerves disappears if the extremity be again supplied with normal blood. Although the peripheral nature of many nervous manifestations of tetany has been demonstrated, it seems probable that in severe types of the disease the motor cells of the brain may also become affected, thus causing epileptiform seizures.

### ***Metabolism in Tetany***

Numerous studies have been made of the metabolic changes in both experimental and clinical tetany. Two types of change have attracted particular attention. The first of these is a reduction in the circulating calcium, the second is a change in the acid-base equilibrium of the body.

**Disturbed Calcium Metabolism.**—MacCallum and Voegtlin found that parathyroidectomized animals suffering from tetany had an increased output of calcium salts in the urine and feces, and a reduced amount of calcium in the blood and in the brain. The intravenous injection of calcium salts into such animals led to a prompt ameliorization of the symptoms and life might be markedly prolonged by repeated injections. Apparently the parathyroid glands exert some influence upon the retention of calcium salts by the blood and the nervous tissues. Binger produced tetany in dogs by injecting sodium phosphate solutions of the proper hydrogen ion concentration; and found that the convulsions were associated with a reduction of the calcium content of the serum from the normal of about 10 mgm. per 100 c.c. to levels of 6 mgm. or less.

Howland and Marriott, who studied the blood in the tetany of infants,

found that, in practically every case, the calcium content of the serum was below 7 mgm. per 100 c.c. (average 5.6 mgm.) whereas normal infants, rachitic infants and infants suffering from other types of convulsions, always had 8 mgm. or over (average about 10 mgm.).

**Disturbed Acid-Base Equilibrium.**—Tetany may follow the intravenous injection of bicarbonate solutions. Wilson and his associates found that the tetany following parathyroidectomy was associated with a condition of alkalosis and that the injection of acid controlled the convulsions. McCann found in addition that operations on the stomach which exclude the acid from the duodenum led to tetany, and that this was accompanied by an increase in the carbon dioxid combining power of the plasma (alkalosis), similar to that observed in parathyroid tetany. Finally, Collip and Backus, as well as Grant and Goldman, observed tetany after prolonged forced breathing by normal men. The loss of carbonic acid from the blood had apparently caused a condition of alkalosis and tetany.

There is, thus, ample evidence that tetany may be accompanied by a reduction in the calcium content of the blood plasma, by an alkalosis, or by a combination of these two conditions. The exact interrelation of these factors and the possible occurrence of other changes await further study.

### *Etiology of Tetany in Man*

In certain districts tetany in man is endemic and occurs particularly in those following certain occupations (tailors and shoemakers). The cause of this type is quite unknown.

**Tetany During Pregnancy and After Parturition.**—The type of tetany that occurs during the later months of pregnancy as well as after parturition has been reproduced in animals; for after a partial excision of the parathyroid glandules an animal may remain free of tetany under ordinary circumstances but may develop the disease when pregnancy occurs. The partisans of the calcium theory point out that the losses of calcium from the mother during the growth of the fetus and during the secretion of milk may be responsible for the tetany in such cases.

**Tetany in Infants.**—Tetany and related conditions are particularly common in infants. Various changes in the parathyroid glands have been described in such patients, but no definite relation between these and the disease has been established. We have pointed out that the tetany of infants is regularly associated with a diminished calcium content of the blood serum. Howland and Marriott found no evidence of an alkalosis. The administration of calcium salts relieves this type of tetany, but the administration must be continued, for the serum content of the plasma falls rapidly after stopping the salt. Apparently some fundamental alteration in the body is at fault, but we do not know what this is.

**Gastric Tetany.**—Tetany has also been observed in man in association with gastric disease, and particularly in patients who have long suffered from obstruction at the pyloric orifice. This type is apparently due to the loss of salts or of acid in consequence of the prolonged vomiting. In such cases the parathyroid glands are usually intact. The condition is often relieved by gastro-enterostomy.

**Relation to Parathyroid Insufficiency.**—It is obvious, therefore, that tetany in man may occur under a variety of conditions and that its relation to parathyroid insufficiency is by no means proved, except in those rare cases that have followed operative excision of these glands. A residue of one-fourth or less of the total parathyroid tissue will protect operated animals from tetany, and there is no reason to believe from anatomical examinations that such a reduction, as a result of disease, is at all common in man. The relation of various clinical forms of tetany to that which follows excision of the parathyroid glands is, therefore, problematical. It is possible that in these patients there is a marked parathyroid insufficiency with no evident anatomical change, it is possible that the immediate cause of the tetany, such, for example, as a lack of circulating calcium, may be produced not only by parathyroid deficiency but by other causes, or it is possible, finally, that no relation exists between the various clinical forms of the disease. Of these things we know almost nothing.

### *Parathyroid Medication*

The administration of parathyroid substance by mouth has at times appeared to benefit patients suffering from the effects of parathyroidectomy, but the results obtained in animals after experimental excision have not been curative. The treatment of parathyroid deficiency by the administration of parathyroid substance is, therefore, less successful than the corresponding treatment of thyroid deficiency. In forms of tetany other than that caused by excision of the parathyroids, the therapeutic results of parathyroid medication have been disappointing.

**Transplantation.**—The transplantation of parathyroid tissue from its normal site to other parts of the body has been successfully accomplished, and in the absence of other parathyroid tissue in the body (parathyroid want), this transplanted tissue may survive, functionate and prevent the development of tetany. The transplantation of these glandules from one animal to another is usually, if not always, unsuccessful, and there seems little encouragement for the hope that such surgical measures will permanently relieve a parathyroid deficiency.



## The Thymus and the Status Lymphaticus

In man the weight of the thymus gland relative to the body weight is greatest at birth. Its absolute weight, however, increases up to about the time of puberty, after which it atrophies.

### *Effect of Thymus Excision*

Certain investigators have described serious nutritional disturbances after the complete excision of the thymus from young dogs. According to Klose and Vogt and others, there develops, after a latent period, general weakness and cachexia, retardation in the growth of the long bones, swollen epiphyses and a tendency to bending of the bones. These bony changes resemble those seen in rickets. Repetitions of this experiment by others have been completely negative (Park and McClure); and it seems probable that the changes ascribed to thymus excision have been due, in whole or in part, to nutritional disturbances that are caused by the confinement or poor food following the operation.

### *Thymic Asthma and Thymic Death*

The chief clinical interest in the thymus gland centers about the fact that sudden deaths, particularly in infants, are not infrequently accompanied by an enlargement of the thymus gland. The evidence at hand indicates that in many, and perhaps in all, cases the symptoms are due to the mechanical effect of the enlarged gland. Pressure upon the trachea has been demonstrated not only at autopsy, but during life by the x-ray, by tracheoscopy, and during intubation. During life dyspnea, either continuous or intermittent, accompanied by suffocative attacks and stridor, are the principal manifestations. These have been relieved by successful thymectomy. Pressure upon the blood vessels or upon the nerves that pass through the upper aperture of the thorax may also play a part in producing the symptoms associated with enlarged thymus.

**Increased Lymphadenomatous Tissue.**—In a certain number of sudden deaths, however, particularly in older persons, the thymus, though enlarged, does not seem to have been large enough to produce pressure symptoms. In such cases, and especially where there is a concomitant increase of lymphadenomatous tissue throughout the body, the view has been expressed that the unexpected death is due to some change in the constitution of the individual (status lymphaticus) or to some toxemia.

### *The Thymus in Graves' Disease*

We have already pointed out that where partial thyroidectomy has failed to cure Graves' disease, further improvement may take place if a

portion of the (often enlarged) thymus is extirpated or if the thymus gland be exposed to the destructive action of the x-ray. It is believed that certain of the symptoms observed in Graves' disease, and particularly the lymphocytosis and the cardiac disturbances, may depend upon a perverted function of the thymus. More investigation in this field is required, however, before the function of the thymus is understood.

### *Status lymphaticus*

Intimately associated with the occurrence of enlarged thymus is the enlargement of lymphatic tissue elsewhere in the body. Sudden deaths occurring in older children and adults, in which a mechanical pressure by the thymus appeared to be improbable, have been attributed by some to changes in the body accompanying this overgrowth of lymphatic tissue. The exact relations are uncertain, but in such cases there often appears to be a constitutional hypoplasia of the aorta and of the chromaffin tissues. Crowe and Wislocki observed such changes in the thymus and lymphatic apparatus after partial excision of the adrenals (see Adrenals).

## The Pituitary Gland

The pituitary gland, or hypophysis cerebri, lies in the cavity of the sella tureica. It is composed of two distinct parts which differ in their structure, in their physiological activities, and in their development. The *anterior lobe* is composed of epithelial cells, many of which may show basophilic or eosinophilic granulations. It develops during embryonic life as an outpocketing of the epithelium which lines the vault of the buccopharyngeal pouch contiguous to the brain. The *posterior lobe* is composed mainly of glia cells and of nerve fibers. It arises from an outgrowth of the central nervous tissues.

In extra-uterine life the pituitary is separated by the sphenoid bone from the mucous membrane lining the nasal cavity; but occasionally, as a result of developmental anomalies, the original connection may be retained, or cellular masses, similar in structure to the anterior lobe, may be found in the bone or in the vault of the pharynx. The posterior lobe, on the other hand, remains in connection with the brain by means of the infundibulum which pierces the fibrous covering of the sella, and a pocket from the third ventricular cavity extends down into the infundibulum.

**Pars intermedia.**—The anterior pituitary lobe lies over the posterior much as a catcher's mitt surrounds a baseball. When the two are separated the line of cleavage runs through a small cavity which appears to be a remnant of the original cavity formed by the outpocketing of the pharynx. During such a separation a number of epithelial cells which line the

posterior part of this cavity are left in contact with the posterior lobe. These are known as the pars intermedia and to these cells have been attributed certain special physiological activities of the pituitary gland.

### ***Action of Pituitary Extracts***

In 1895, Oliver and Schäfer demonstrated that extracts from the pituitary gland cause a rise of blood pressure when injected intravenously. This rise is usually less marked but more prolonged than that produced by epinephrin. This active substance is not present in the anterior lobe. It may be obtained from either the posterior lobe or from the pars intermedia. Possibly, as some have believed, it is formed in the latter and passes through the former on its way to the infundibular canal.

**On Smooth Muscle Tissues.**—Pituitary extract causes a rise of blood pressure through its constricting effect upon the blood vessels. It also leads to a contraction of other smooth muscle tissues in the body. Strips of uterine muscle, especially from a pregnant uterus, may be made to contract by the addition of pituitary extract to solutions in which they are suspended. Pituitary extract has been used during parturition for the treatment of uterine inertia. The muscular contractions of the stomach, intestines and bladder are likewise increased by pituitary extract, and it has been used successfully in certain cases of intestinal paresis after operation. The increased flow of milk after pituitary administration appears to be due to an increased contraction of the smooth muscle in the mammary gland rather than to an increased secretion. Finally, pituitary extract decreases the flow of urine.

**Secretion of These Substances.**—The relation of these various activities of pituitary extract to normal or pathological vital processes is still unsettled. It is doubtful if they play any essential part in the regulation of the normal activities of smooth muscle, for animals from which the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland has been removed exhibit no change in these activities. If, indeed, the substances present in pituitary extract play a part in the normal activities of the body their loss is not felt, for the reason that other substances can supply the deficiency. Only in diabetes insipidus is there reason to suspect that a lack of pituitary secretion may possibly be responsible for the continuous and marked secretion of urine.

### ***Anterior Lobe Feeding***

The active pituitary principle which produces a physiological effect immediately after its injection is contained in the posterior lobe or the pars intermedia. No characteristic effects immediately follow the administration of the anterior lobe. Prolonged administration, however, has, in the hands of certain investigators, led to more rapid growth, to a



larger stature and to changes in the sexual sphere. Uhlenhuth, for example, was able to produce unusually large salamanders by feeding the developing animals on anterior lobe substance and suggestive experiments of a similar type have been reported on mammals. It seems likely that the feeding or the injection of anterior lobe substance will eventually be shown to produce a condition in animals analogous to the gigantism which occurs in certain types of pituitary disease of man.

### *Experimental Hypopituitarism*

Complete removal of the pituitary gland is usually fatal. According to Cushing, adult dogs live within two to five days after the operation, while puppies may live ten to thirty days, or even longer. Among the symptoms manifested by such animals are tremors, fibrillary twitchings, slow respirations and pulse, fall of temperature, stupor and coma.

**Effect of Partial Hypophysectomy.**—Numerous experiments have shown that animals surviving a partial hypophysectomy frequently show a characteristic group of symptoms. In young animals retardation of growth and retardation or lack of sexual development are common. In older animals there may be an abeyance of sexual function with atrophy of the sex organs. There is a noteworthy tendency to obesity in such animals and this may be accompanied by a reduced metabolic rate. Finally polyuria is common after pituitary operations and may continue for months.

The relation of these various changes to the different portions of the pituitary gland is not yet settled. The arrest of growth and of sexual function are usually attributed to diminished activity of the anterior lobe. The metabolic changes and the polyuria appear to depend upon changes in the posterior lobe, but of this we are much less certain. Some have held that the polyuria is caused by injury to the neighboring portion of the brain (subthalamie region).

### *Fröhlich's Syndrome and Related Conditions*

Certain types of pituitary disease are associated with changes which resemble those that have been produced in dogs and other animals by partial removal of the pituitary gland. In the condition known as Fröhlich's syndrome (*dystrophia adiposogenitalis*), the individual has usually shown his first symptoms of pituitary disease in early life. In the fully developed condition there is a retardation of skeletal growth, sexual infantilism and obesity. The fat is distributed mainly about the abdomen, the buttocks, and the breasts, giving a feminine type of figure (Fig. 135). The extremities are short and the hands and feet are small. Sexual characteristics, primary as well as secondary, develop late

or imperfectly. The skin is dry. Variations from this typical picture are common. In adults there may be a regression of sex characteristics and obesity. Or again, in less typical cases, the obesity may be absent and the individual may present the appearance of an underdeveloped adolescent rather than that of a fat boy (Fig. 136).

**Relation to Hypopituitarism.**—That the typical syndrome of Fröhlich



Fig. 135.—Fröhlich's Syndrome. History of Brain Tumor, Blindness Due to Primary Optic Atrophy, Retarded Growth, Sexual Infantilism, Obesity, and Diabetes insipidus. Young Man 27 Years Old. Height 4 ft. 9½ in. (From Hewlett, Arch. Int. Med.)

is due in the main to a hypofunction of the pituitary gland can hardly be doubted. The striking resemblance to the condition produced in animals by partial hypophysectomy is in itself suggestive. To this is added the fact that, in many cases, the pathological changes found in or about the pituitary gland are of such a character that one may easily infer compression or other damage to the gland. Finally, the general antithesis of this condition to the typical cases of acromegaly suggest

that they are due to glandular changes of an opposite type, and acromegaly, as we shall see, is probably due to hyperpituitarism.

The treatment of Fröhlich's syndrome and related conditions by means of pituitary substance has as yet led to no striking results. Unlike the use of thyroid preparations in myxedema, the administration of hypophysis substance has not up to the present compensated for a hypophyseal deficiency. That a substitution therapy will be found seems likely however from recent animal experiments.

### *Acromegaly*

Acromegaly is believed to be due to an oversecretion of the pituitary gland, and particularly of its anterior lobe. It is characterized clinically by changes in the growth, the nutrition and the sexual characteristics. The hands and feet become enlarged, the nose is widened, the lips are thick, the lower jaw protrudes and in closing the mouth the lower incisors extend beyond the upper (Fig. 137). The

voice becomes more hoarse and the skin more rough. The hair may fall or there may be an increase of hair in various parts of the body, such as occurs in the male. The sex organs are often enlarged but the sexual powers and in women the menses are often lost. Glycosuria is common (page 284).

**Gigantism.**—When a corresponding condition develops in growing individuals there is a marked increase in stature owing to an overgrowth of the long bones. Many giants are indeed sufferers from pituitary disease.

**Overactivity of Anterior Lobe of Gland.**—So far as the effects upon body growth and development are concerned, acromegaly and gigantism

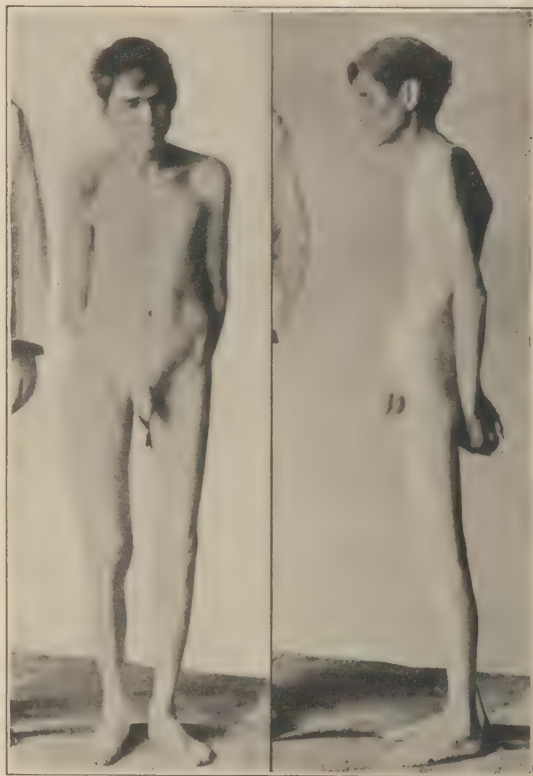


Fig. 136.—Pituitary Dystrophy in a Man 40 Years Old. Height 5 ft. 2 in. Note the Adolescent Figure, the Absence of Obesity, and the Absence of Hair on the Face and Pubic Region. (From Hewlett, Arch. Int. Med.)



are the opposite of Fröhlich's syndrome. The theory that the former are due to an overactivity of the pituitary gland, and particularly to an overactivity of its anterior lobe, is supported by anatomical examinations of the diseased gland, for these frequently show adenomatous tumors of the anterior lobe which might well give rise to an excessive secretion. Furthermore, partial excision of the diseased gland has caused a more or less complete regression of the changes in body form.

### *Other Types of Pituitary Disease*

While, as we have just seen, acromegaly and Fröhlich's syndrome represent fairly definite complexes which may reasonably be attributed to hyperfunction or hypofunction, respectively, of the pituitary gland and more especially to such changes in its epithelial portion, a number of other patients suffering from pituitary disease display a mixture of symptoms, the interpretation of which in terms of hyperfunction or



Fig. 137.—Acromegaly. (a) Photograph Taken Before the Onset of the Disease, (b) and (c) at the Time of Examination. Note the Thickening of the Lips, the Protrusion of the Lower Jaw, and the Coarsening of the Features.

hypofunction is not simple. Thus obesity or emaciation have been associated with the changes in growth that characterize either acromegaly or Fröhlich's syndrome. Furthermore, the sexual functions, while always depressed in the typical Fröhlich's syndrome, may also be depressed in acromegaly.

**Interpretation of Mixed Symptoms.**—The exact interpretation of such mixed cases is often difficult. It seems probable, however, that many such atypical combinations are due to independent alterations in different portions of the hypophysis. If, as is generally admitted, the anterior lobe exercises a preponderating influence upon body growth and form, and if, as many believe, the posterior lobe or the pars intermedia

influence the body metabolism, then it is readily conceived that a hyperfunction in one part of the gland might be associated with a hypofunction in some other part, and that in this way a variety of mixed symptom groups might be produced. Even with such an assumption, however, the interpretation of pituitary complexes is often difficult, and the possibility of dysfunctions of certain parts of the gland must often be considered.

## The Pineal Gland

### *Experimental Studies*

The function of the pineal gland, or epiphysis cerebri, is but little understood. Extirpation is difficult and is succeeded by a high mortality of the animals operated upon. The recovery of a number of animals after complete excision, however, indicates that the gland is not essential for life. Many investigators have been unable to convince themselves that extirpation of the pineal body is followed by any characteristic change in growth, in sexual development or in metabolism (see, for example, Dandy). On the other hand, Foa and others have described premature sexual development after such operations on young animals and to this may be added premature somatic development and adiposity.

#### **Effect of Pineal Substance on Animals.—**

Curiously enough, the administration of pineal substance to growing animals is said to lead to a group of symptoms that are, in a way, analogous to those described above as following extirpation of the gland. According to McCord, the oral or hypodermic administration of pineal substance derived from young animals to other young animals increased their rate of growth and brought about an early sexual maturity, but the animals thus treated did not become unusually large adults. The administration of pineal substance to adults produced no change.

### *Somatic Changes in Pineal Tumors*

Tumors of the pineal gland are very rare and in the great majority of these no change in the somatic processes has been observed. In chil-



Fig. 138.—Obesity and Overgrowth Presumably Due to a Pituitary Dystrophy. Sixteen Years Old, Height 6 ft., Weight 185 lbs. Note the Absence of Axillary Hair, the Obesity, and the Long Legs with General Resemblance to a Feminine Type of Figure.

dren, and particularly in boys, however, the presence of a pineal tumor may be associated with the so-called pineal syndrome. The latter consists: (1) of early sexual maturity, with early development of the sex characteristics (voice, hair, and sex organs); (2) precocious mental development; (3) rapid growth, so that a child may have the stature of one much older; (4) obesity.

**Possibly Due to Internal Hydrocephalus.**—Here we see a group of symptoms which resemble those that have been described both after extirpation of the epiphysis in animals and following the feeding of its substance to young animals. It is, therefore, premature to speculate concerning the nature of the pineal change which could bring about such somatic alterations in development. Possibly, indeed, a portion of the changes included in the pineal complex are due not to the pineal directly but to the internal hydrocephalus which so frequently accompanies disease of this organ and which is known to influence the function of the pituitary gland.

## The Adrenals

Like the pituitary, the adrenal glands are composed of two elements, which differ in their development, in their structure and in their physiological properties.

**Adrenal Medulla.**—The adrenal medulla consists mainly of nervous tissue which is closely related in development to the sympathetic nervous system. The medullary cells stain darkly with chromium salts and the adrenal medulla belongs, therefore, to the "chromaffin tissue system," which also includes various other collections of similar cells that lie in the neighborhood of the abdominal sympathetic ganglia. There is reason to believe that all these groups of chromaffin cells possess a common function, for they all yield on extraction blood pressure raising substances similar to epinephrin.

**Adrenal Cortex.**—The adrenal cortex is composed of columns of epithelial cells arranged for the most part in a radial manner. These develop from a mass of tissue which lies close to the kidney in the neighborhood whence the sex glands arise. Accessory masses of adrenal cortical tissue are at times found along the spermatic vein or about the pelvis of the kidney. The cortical cells of the adrenal are related to the lutein cells of the ovary and to the interstitial cells of the testis. The cortical cells contain relatively large quantities of cholesterolin compounds.

### *Epinephrin*

Like the posterior or nervous portion of the pituitary, the medulla or nervous portion of the adrenal gland contains a substance which causes



a marked rise of blood pressure when injected intravenously. This is known as epinephrin (adrenalin, suprarenin, etc.). Its chemical structure, which is now known (page 249), shows that it is related to the protein-building stone, tyrosin. It has been prepared synthetically.

**Effects of Epinephrin Injection.**—As Elliott pointed out, the physiological effects produced by the intravenous injection of epinephrin are the same as those which follow stimulation of the sympathetic nerve fibers. There is a marked constriction of the arteries and particularly of those which supply the abdominal viscera. Relatively little effect is produced upon the pulmonary arteries or upon those supplying the brain,

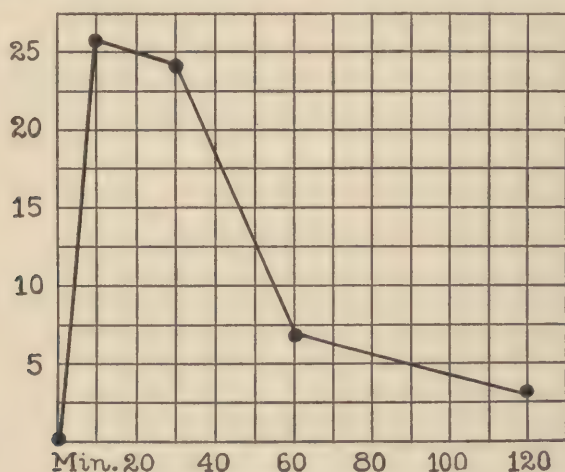


Fig. 139.—Typical Curve of the Percentage Increase in the Total Calories Following the Injection of Adrenalin Chlorid. (From Sandiford.)

while the coronary arteries of most laboratory animals (but not of man?) become dilated. The contractions of the pregnant uterus are also increased.

On the other hand, the injection of epinephrin, like sympathetic stimulation, tends to relax certain smooth muscle tissues. This happens, for example, in the smooth muscle surrounding the gastro-intestinal canal. Intestinal peristalsis is inhibited by epinephrin. Sympathetic stimulation tends, furthermore, to relax the muscles surrounding the bronchi, and epinephrin has been widely used for the treatment of bronchial asthma, a condition caused by spasm of this muscle (see Bronchial Asthma).

**Epinephrin Injections in Man.**—The subcutaneous or intramuscular injection of therapeutic doses of epinephrin (0.5 c.c. of a one to one thousand solution) produces a characteristic reaction in man. The metabolic rate increases (Fig. 139), the pulse usually becomes more rapid, the systolic pressure often rises, the diastolic pressure varies and

the pulse pressure is usually increased (Fig. 140). Susceptible individuals show muscular tremors, sweating, vascular pulsation, palpitation, nervousness and apprehension.

The degree of reaction to a standard dose of epinephrin varies in different individuals. Hypersensitiveness to epinephrin is found in many patients who show the clinical picture of hyperthyroidism with increased basal metabolism, but it is not constant under these conditions. Hyper-

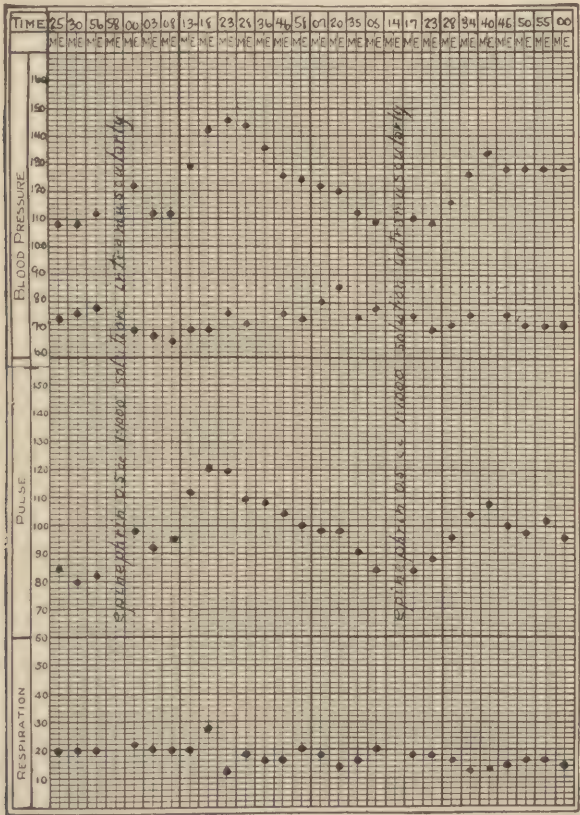


Fig. 140.—A Characteristic Reaction Following Intramuscular Injections of Epinephrin. (From Wearn and Sturgis.)

sensitiveness is also found in persons who show no indication of hyperthyroidism, and it is particularly common in highly nervous individuals. There is no good evidence for the assumption that epinephrin hypersensitiveness is a pathognomic sign of thyroid hyperfunction.

**Epinephrin Secretion.**—It is evident that epinephrin injections may produce a variety of important physiological effects. The question may be asked, however, whether these effects are ever produced by a liberation of this compound from the adrenal medulla, and, if so, what is the physio-

logical importance of such liberation. Stewart and Rogoff have shown that the cat and the dog may live normally for weeks with one adrenal excised and the other denervated, an operation which is followed by no demonstrable secretion of epinephrin from the gland. Apparently, then, epinephrin secretion is not a necessity for well being. On the other hand, Cannon found that excitement, pain or asphyxia are commonly associated with an increased output of epinephrin. He has pointed out that such a secretion would aid the sympathetic nervous system in producing the physiological changes occurring under great stress; such as the cessation of gastro-intestinal movements, increased blood pressure and mobilization of sugar in the body. These changes might be of value to the primitive animal when an emergency must be met by combat, flight or pursuit. According to Cannon's emergency theory, therefore, the liberation of epinephrin from the adrenal medulla aids the primitive animal to meet the emergencies which cause fright or pain.

### *Excision of the Adrenals*

When the adrenal glands are completely removed, death invariably follows. The blood pressure falls, the appetite is lost, symptoms of muscular weakness appear, and the animal finally develops increasing drowsiness and possibly convulsions and dies within one or several days. The symptoms which follow the total excision of the adrenal glands have often been attributed to a lack of epinephrin in the blood. There are many reasons, however, for believing that the fatal results of epinephrectomy are due, not to a lack of medullary substance and its secretion (epinephrin), but to a lack of the cortical portion of the glands. Thus the administration of epinephrin is of little or no value in preventing the consequences of experimental epinephrectomy. Biedl has shown, furthermore, that in certain species of fish where the cortical adrenal tissue is separated from the medullary tissue, the extirpation of the cortical organ (interrenal body) leads to death with typical symptoms of muscular weakness. Again, after recovery from partial epinephrectomy it is the cortical tissue which hypertrophies. Finally, if one regards the chromaffin tissue in other parts of the body as the functional equivalent of the adrenal medulla, it is difficult to understand the serious effect of removing only a part of the chromaffin tissue of the body. For all these reasons, therefore, it seems probable that the fatal effects following extirpation of the adrenal glands depend not upon a lack of medulla and of epinephrin but upon the absence of cortical tissue.

### *Addison's Disease*

Certain of the characteristic manifestations of Addison's disease, and particularly the muscular weakness, the low blood pressure, the vomiting,



and the diarrhea, are, in a general way, comparable to the symptoms produced by extirpation of the adrenal glands from animals. The further fact, that the majority of patients dying of Addison's disease show a bilateral destruction or atrophy of the adrenal glands, also favors the view that Addison's disease is due to an insufficiency of these glands. The administration of epinephrin has, as a rule, failed to stay the course of this disease; yet this is not surprising when we consider: (1) that it also fails after experimental epinephrectomy; and (2) that the symptoms of adrenal deficiency probably depend mainly upon the lack of cortical rather than the lack of medullary tissue.

**Characteristic Pigmentation.**—The characteristic pigmentation of Addison's disease appears as a dark bronzing of the exposed and irritated parts of the skin, as well as of the skin about the genitalia, the nipples, axillae, etc. Pigmentation of the mucous membranes is remarkably frequent. The cause of this pigmentation is not definitely known. The coloring matter does not appear to be derived from the products of hemoglobin catabolism, but rather from certain of the building stones of the protein molecule (tyrosin, tryptophan, etc. See Melanin). Some of these substances are chemically related to epinephrin, and it seems possible that the pigmentation of Addison's disease depends upon some alteration in the epinephrin-forming function of the adrenal glands. Just what this alteration is, however, we do not know.

### *Hyperfunction of the Adrenals*

Cannon believes that the major emotions are accompanied by a discharge of epinephrin from the adrenal glands and that this transient hyperfunction assists the sympathetic nervous system in producing certain of the bodily changes which accompany violent emotions. Concerning the possibility that a chronic increase of epinephrin in the blood may accompany certain pathological conditions and particularly chronic arterial hypertension, there has been much speculation. It is doubtful, however, if epinephrin is demonstrable in the circulating blood of normal individuals, and there is no evidence that the quantity is increased in conditions of chronic hypertension. Only in exophthalmic goiter have considerable increases of epinephrin in the circulating blood been reported, but, owing to the inaccuracies of the methods used, further work is required in order to establish this observation.

**Effect of Adrenal Tumors.**—Tumors of the adrenal glands do not as a rule cause any change in distant parts of the body. Occasionally, however, when such tumors have developed during childhood, there has been a marked acceleration of the body growth and a premature sexual development. At times, also, it has been noted that the development of adrenal tumors in women has led to a cessation of the menses and to an increased hairiness of the face and the linea alba. Thus it would seem that, in

certain instances, tumors of the adrenal glands have influenced the growth and the sexual characteristics.

## Internal Secretion of the Sex Glands

The sex glands not only form and liberate the specific reproductive cells (ova, spermatozoa) but they also exert a profound influence upon the development of the body and mind. That this influence depends upon chemical rather than upon nervous influences was shown years ago by Berthold's experiment. Cockerels, whose testicles had been transplanted to some distant part of the body, developed the vocal powers, the combativeness, the comb and the sexual instincts of normal cocks.

**Interstitial and Lutein Cells.**—The influence of the sex glands upon development and upon temperament does not depend so much upon the reproductive cells proper as upon other cell groups in the sex organs. In the testes these are known as the interstitial cells of Leydig while in the ovaries they are the lutein cells. In a man, for example, the true sperm cells may degenerate, so that the individual becomes sterile; at the same time, however, the interstitial cells may remain functionally active so that the sex characteristics develop and are retained. Such a condition has been produced experimentally in animals by ligating the vasa deferentia or by exposing the testicles to the action of the x-ray. It occurs also in certain individuals suffering from undescended testes.

**Effect of Removal of Testicles.**—When the testicles are entirely removed during early youth, so that not only the sperm but also the interstitial cells are lost, there is an almost complete failure in the development of the sexual characteristics. The skin remains smooth, the voice is high-pitched, fat develops about the buttocks, and the individual often attains an unusual height owing to an overgrowth of the long bones of the legs. This overgrowth is associated with a delayed union of the epiphyses. In addition, the dispositions of eunuchs differ from those of the average male. As a rule, they are less ambitious, less striving, more indolent, treacherous, and cowardly.

**Influence of Sex Glands on Women.**—The sexual glands produce a profound influence upon the body and mental functions of women. Cyclic changes in the blood pressure, the body temperature and the general nervous condition have been observed in connection with the menstrual function. The menopause, whether natural or artificial, is often associated with increased nervousness, skin flushings, and ultimately with increased weight. It is interesting in this connection that Hoskins found that when the ovaries had been removed from animals the vascular responses to certain test drugs were increased.

## Interrelationship of the Internal Secretions

In reviewing the effects produced by changes in the internal secretions it is noteworthy that certain functions of the body appear to be particularly influenced by such chemical influences. We have seen, for example, that the *growth of the long bones* is increased in acromegaly and is diminished in Fröhlisch's syndrome, that there is an increased length of the long bones in eunuchs, that the growth is overrapid in certain adrenal tumors and in certain disturbances of the pineal gland, and that the growth is stunted in cretinism.

**Effect on Sexual Characteristics.**—The internal secretions also exercise a profound effect upon the development of the sexual characteristics. Aside from the effects of the interstitial cells and the lutein cells, we may mention the sexual infantilism accompanying various forms of pituitary disease and cretinism, and the sexual precocity that is occasionally associated with pituitary, adrenal and pineal tumors.

**On Body Metabolism.**—Finally, the internal secretions influence the body metabolism. In certain disturbances obesity is common, as in pituitary disease, hypothyroidism, after castration, etc. Then, too, the effect of the various internal secretions upon the sugar mobilization and utilization in the body has been a subject of repeated studies, but the results of these studies are at the present time of a conflicting character.

**Primary and Secondary Glandular Disturbances.**—It is possible to interpret many of these manifestations either as the direct or as the indirect result of the primary glandular disturbance. In the case of the obesity associated with pituitary disease, for example, the collection of fat may be regarded as the direct result of the lack of pituitary secretion, or it may be due to a secondary thyroid or sex gland insufficiency.

**EFFECT OF EXCISION ON OTHER GLANDS.**—That the various glands of internal secretion do indeed affect each other is evident from the fact that excision of one gland has frequently been followed by secondary changes in other glands. After thyroidectomy, for example, the anterior lobe of the hypophysis increases in size. A variety of similar alterations have been noted; such as, swelling of the thyroid during menstruation and during pregnancy, enlargement of the adrenals during experimental hyperthyroidism, increase of lymphatic tissue during experimental hypofunction of the adrenals, the effect of various glands upon sexual development, etc.

**Schemata of Relationships.**—It is evident, therefore, that the internal secretions may not only neutralize or supplement one another, but that changes in one gland tend to alter the structure and presumably the secretion of other glands. Various efforts have been made to express these complex relationships in a schematic way, but at the present time the attempts to formulate the interrelationships, that doubtlessly exist



between the various glands of internal secretion, suffer from a lack of facts. Until this deficiency is supplied, such schemata can be no more than working hypotheses which will doubtlessly be modified as more is learned of the relations existing between the internal secretions.

## References

### General

- Biedl (A.).** *Innere Sekretion.* 2d ed. Berlin & Vienna, **1913.**  
**Falta (W.).** *Die Erkrankungen der Blutdrüsen.* Berlin, **1913.**  
**Gley (E.).** *Relations entre les organes à sécrétions internes et les troubles de ces sécrétions.* The International Congress of Medicine, London, **1913**, Sec. vi, 73.  
**Gley (E.), Hertoghe (E.) et al.** Symposium on the internal secretions. Practitioner, **1915**, xciv, January & February.  
**Vincent (S.).** *Internal secretion and the ductless glands.* London, **1912.**

### Thyroid Gland

- Bircher (E.).** *Die Aetiologie des endemischen Kropfes.* *Ergebn. d. Chir. u. Orthopäd.*, **1913**, v, 133.  
**Blum (F.) & Grützner (R.).** *Jodspeicherung und Jodbindung im Organismus.* *Ztschr. f. physiol. Chem.*, **1914**, xcii, 360.  
**Boothby (W. M.).** *The basal metabolic rate in hyperthyroidism.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1921**, lxxvii, 252.  
**Burget (G. E.).** *Attempts to produce experimental thyroid hyperplasia.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1917**, xlv, 492.  
**Cannon (W. B.), Binger (C. A. L.) & Fitz (R.).** *Experimental hyperthyroidism.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1915**, xxxvi, 363.  
**Carlson (A. J.), Rooks (J. R.) & McKie (J. F.).** *Attempts to produce experimental hyperthyroidism in mammals and birds.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xxx, 129.  
**Cramer (W.) & Krause (R. A.).** *Carbohydrate metabolism in its relation to the thyroid gland. The effect of thyroid feeding in the glycogen-content of the liver and on the nitrogen distribution in the urine.* *Proc. Roy. Soc., London*, **1913**, Series B, lxxvii, 550.  
**Falta (W.).** *Die Erkrankungen der Blutdrüsen.* Berlin, **1913.**  
**Gudernatsch (J. T.).** *A further contribution to the knowledge of organs with internal secretion.* *Am. Jour. Anat.*, **1914**, xv, 431.  
**von Haberer (H.).** *Weitere Erfahrungen. Thymusreduktion bei Basedow und Struma.* *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1914**, cv, 296.  
**Halsted (W. S.).** *The results of the x-ray treatment of the thymus gland in Graves' disease.* *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1915**, xxvi, 55.  
**Hunt (R.).** *The probable demonstration of thyroid secretion in the blood in exophthalmic goitre.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1907**, xlix, 240.  
*The relation of iodine to the thyroid gland.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1907**, xlix, 1323.  
**Hunter (A.) & Simpson (S.).** *The influence of a diet of marine algae upon the iodine content of sheep's thyroid.* *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1915**, xx, 119.  
**Jones (A. P.) & Tatum (A. L.).** *On the demonstration of variations in the thyroid colloid in conditions of hyper- and hypothyroidism.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1913**, xii, 225.  
**Kendall (E. C.).** *The isolation in crystalline form of the compound containing iodine, which occurs in the thyroid.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1915**, lxix, 2042.

- Kendall (E. C.).** *Physiological action of the thyroid hormone.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1919**, xlix, 136.
- Kendall (E. C.).** *Isolation of the iodine compound which occurs in the thyroid.* *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1919**, xxxix, 125.
- Kimball (O. P.) & Marine (D.).** *The prevention of simple goiter in man.* *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1918**, xxii, 41.
- Klose (H.).** *Die Basedowsche Krankheit.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1912**, ix, 167.
- Kocher (A.).** *Ueber Morbus Basedowi.* *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chir.*, **1902**, ix, 1.
- Kocher (A.).** *Ueber Basedowsche Krankheit und Thymus.* *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1914**, cv, 924.
- Kocher (T.).** *Ueber die Bedingungen erfolgreicher Schilddrüsentransplantation beim Menschen.* *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1914**, cv, 832.
- Krumbhaar (E. B.).** *Electrocardiographic observations in toxic goitre.* *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1918**, clv, 175.
- Kuriyama (S.).** *The influence of thyroid feeding upon carbohydrate metabolism.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1917**, xliii, 481.
- Landström (J.).** *Ueber Morbus Basedowii, etc.* *Stockholm*, **1907**.
- MacCallum (W. G.) & Cornell (W. B.).** *On the mechanism of exophthalmos.* *Medical News*, **1904**, lxxv, 732.
- Marine (D.).** *Further observations and experiments on goitre in brook trout. III. Its prevention and cure.* *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1914**, xix, 70.
- Marine (D.), Rogoff (J. M.) & Stewart (G. N.).** *The influence of the thyroid of anastomosis of the phrenic and cervical sympathetic nerves.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1918**, xlv, 268.
- Mayo (C. H.).** *The surgical treatment of exophthalmos.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxi, 1147.
- Oswald (A.).** *Ueber die Gefahren der Iodmedikation.* *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, **1915**, cxvii, 551.
- Payr (E.).** *Zur Frage der Schilddrüsentransplantation.* *Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, **1915**, cvi, 16.
- Rabe (J. M.), Rogers (J.), Fawcett (G. C.) & Beebe (S. P.).** *The nerve control of the thyroid gland.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxxiv, 72.
- Siegert (F.).** *Myxoedem im Kindesalter.* *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1910**, vi, 601.
- Waters (C. A.).** *Röntgenization of the thymus gland in Graves' disease.* *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1915**, lxv, 1392.
- Wilson (L. B.).** *The pathology of the thyroid in exophthalmic goitre.* *Tr. Assn. Am. Phys.*, **1913**, xxviii, 576.

### Parathyroid Glands

- Brown (A.) & Fletcher (A.).** *The etiology of tetany—metabolic and clinical studies.* *Am. Jour. Child. Dis.*, **1915**, x, 313.
- Carlson (A. J.).** *The tonus and hunger contractions of the empty stomach during parathyroid tetany.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1913**, xxxii, 398.
- Carlson (A. J.).** *The parathyroids and pregnancy.* *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. and Med.*, **1913**, x, 183.
- Collip (J. B.) & Backus (P. L.).** *The effect of prolonged hyperpnœa on the carbon dioxide combining power of the plasma, the carbon dioxide tension of alveolar air and the excretion of acid and basic phosphate and ammonia by the kidney.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1920**, li, 568.
- Grant (S. B.) & Goldman (A.).** *A study of forced respiration: experimental production of tetany.* *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1920**, lii, 209.

- Halsted (W. S.).** Auto- and isotransplantation in dogs of the parathyroid glandules. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1909**, xi, 175.
- Howland (J.) & Marriott (W. McK.).** Observations upon the calcium content of the blood in infantile tetany and upon the effect of treatment by calcium. *Quart. J. M.*, **1918**, xi, 289.
- Keeton (R. W.).** The secretion of the gastric juice during parathyroid tetany. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1914**, xxiii, 25.
- MacCallum (W. G.).** Die Nebenschilddrüsen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1913**, xi, 569.  
Ueber die Uebererregbarkeit der Nerven bei Tetanie. *Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. u. Chir.*, **1913**, xv, 941.
- MacCallum (W. G.), Lambert (R. A.) & Vogel (K. M.).** The removal of calcium from the blood by dialysis in the study of tetany. *Tr. Assn. Am. Phys.*, **1914**, xix, 338.
- MacCallum (W. G.) & Voegtlin (C.).** On the relation of tetany to the parathyroid glands and to calcium metabolism. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1909**, xi, 118.
- McCann (W. S.).** A study of the carbon dioxide-combining power of the blood plasma in experimental tetany. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1918**, xxv, 553.
- Marine (D.).** Observations on tetany in dogs. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1914**, xix, 89.
- Rudinger (C.).** Physiologie und Pathologie der Epithelkörperchen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1908**, ii, 221.
- Wilson (D. W.), Stearns (T.) & Janney (J. H.), Jr.** The effect of acid administration on parathyroid tetany. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1915**, xxi, 169.
- Wilson (D. W.), Stearns (T.) & Thurlow (M. DeG.).** The acid-base equilibria in the blood after parathyroidectomy. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, **1915**, xxiii, 89.

### Thymus Gland

- Klose (H.) & Vogt (H.).** Klinik und Biologie der Thymusdrüse. *Beitr. z. klin. Chir.*, **1910**, lxi, 1.
- Matti (H.).** Physiologie und Pathologie der Thymusdrüse. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1913**, x, 1.
- Pappenheimer (A. M.).** Effects of early extirpation of thymus in albino rats. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1914**, xix, 319.
- Park (E. A.) & McClure (R. D.).** The results of thymus extirpation in the dog. With a review of the experimental literature on thymus extirpation. *Am. Jour. Child. Dis.*, **1919**, xviii, 317.
- Parker (C. A.).** Surgery of the thymus gland. Thymectomy. Reports of fifty operated cases. *Am. Jour. Child. Dis.*, **1913**, v, 89.

### The Pituitary Gland

- Aldrich (T. B.).** On feeding young white rats the posterior and the anterior parts of the pituitary gland. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xxxi, 94.
- Borchardt (L.).** Funktion und funktionelle Erkrankungen der Hypophyse. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1909**, vii, 288.
- Cushing (H.).** The pituitary body and its disorders. Philadelphia & London, **1912**.  
Concerning the symptomatic differentiation between disorders of the two lobes of the pituitary body. *Am. Jour. Med. Sc.*, **1913**, cxlv, 313.
- Uhlenhuth (E.).** Experimental gigantism produced by feeding pituitary gland. *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.*, **1920**, xviii, 11.



*The Pineal Gland*

- Bailey (P.) & Jelliffe (S. E.).** Tumors of the pineal body. With an account of the pineal syndromes. *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1911**, viii, 851.
- Dandy (W. E.).** Extirpation of the pineal body. *Jour. Exp. Med.*, **1915**, xxii, 237.
- McCord (C. P.).** The pineal gland in relation to somatic, sexual and mental development. *Jour. Am. Med. Assn.*, **1914**, lxviii, 232.
- Marburg (O.).** Die Klinik der Zirbeldrüsenkrankungen. *Ergebn. d. inn. Med. u. Kinderh.*, **1912**, x, 147.

*The Adrenals*

- Cannon (W. B.).** Studies on the conditions of activity in endocrine glands. V. The isolated heart as an indicator of adrenal secretion induced by pain, asphyxia and excitement. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1920**, l, 399.
- Cannon (W. B.) & de la Paz (D.).** Emotional stimulation of adrenal secretion. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1911**, xxviii, 64.
- Crowe (S. G.) & Wislocki (G. B.).** Experimental observations on the suprarenal glands, with especial reference to the functions of their interrenal portions. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, **1914**, xxv, 287.
- Elliott (T. R.).** The control of the suprarenal gland by the splanchnic nerves. *Jour. Physiol.*, **1912**, xlv, 374.  
The adrenal glands. *Practitioner*, **1915**, xciv, 123.
- Hoskins (R. G.).** The adrenal glands. *Cleveland Med. Jour.*, **1912**, xi, 180.
- Paton (D. Noel).** The physiology of the chromaffin system. *Practitioner*, **1915**, xciv, 112.
- Peabody (F. W.), Sturgis (C. C.), Tompkins (E. M.) & Wearn (J. T.).** Epinephrin hypersensitiveness and its relation to hyperthyroidism. *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, **1921**, clxi, 508.
- Sandiford (I.).** The effect of the subcutaneous injection of adrenalin chlorid on the heat production, blood pressure and pulse rate in man. *Am. Jour. Physiol.*, **1920**, li, 407.
- Stewart (G. N.) & Rogoff (J. M.).** The spontaneous liberation of epinephrin from the adrenals. *Jour. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.*, **1916**, viii, 479.
- Wearn (J. T.) & Sturgis (C. C.).** Studies on epinephrin. Effects of the injection of epinephrin in soldiers with "irritable heart." *Arch. Int. Med.*, **1919**, xxiv, 247.

## Chapter XIII

# The Nervous System

We have seen that the transport of chemical substances in the blood or lymph from one tissue to another constitutes one method of communication between various parts of the body. These chemical substances may be specific secretions coming from particular organs or they may be common products of metabolism which are formed in many tissues of the body. The chemical control of respiration, the chemical excitation of pancreatic secretion, the influence of the thyroid gland upon metabolism and the influence of the pituitary gland upon body growth are examples of the chemical type of control. Obviously, however, control through chemical agencies requires a certain amount of time and the body needs some method of immediately adapting its activities to altered conditions. The nervous system furnishes such a rapid means of control.

**General Considerations.**—The nervous system consists of nerve cells and their supporting tissues. From the nerve cells there extend out fine processes of various lengths which enable these cells to come in contact with other cells in the body. One of these cell processes, *the axis cylinder*, is often of considerable length. It may extend from the cerebral cortex to the spinal centers or from the spinal cord to the surface of the body. Impulses in the axis cylinder always travel in a given direction. Those passing from a more peripheral toward a more central portion of the nervous systems are called *afferent impulses*, while those passing in the opposite direction are called *efferent impulses*. Numerous connections exist between neighboring nerve cells both through axis cylinder branches and through the other processes of the nerve cells, which are known as *dendrites*. In this way many paths of communication are established between neighboring cells throughout the nervous system.

Groups of nerve cells are present in various parts of the body. The gray matter of the brain and spinal cord is largely composed of such cells. Smaller groups of nerve cells are connected with the sensory nerve roots and with the visceral nerves. These smaller collections are known as *nerve ganglia*.

Near the surface of the body are located various organs which are sensitive to changes in the conditions surrounding the body. From these superficial sense organs as well as from nerve terminals within or near the surface of the body a constant stream of afferent impulses travel toward

the central nervous structures. Some of these afferent impulses eventually rise to a level, where they may produce conscious sensations and may influence the train of thought or the volitional control of voluntary muscles. Afferent stimuli coming from the surface or from the interior of the body may also modify the bodily activities without the intervention of the higher cerebral centers. In such cases the incoming impulses influence subcortical nerve cells which give rise to efferent fibers. Changes in muscular or secretory activity that result in this manner are called *reflexes*. A nervous reflex therefore arises in a sense organ or in sensory nerve terminals and passes through afferent *receptor* fibers to a lower nerve center. There it alters, either directly or through *connector* neurons, the activity of cells connected with efferent fibers, and impulses descend through these *effector* fibers to groups of muscles or to glandular organs. The muscles effected may respond by an active contraction or their tone may alone be affected.

Alterations in the function of the nervous system may be divided into (1) those affecting the receptive sensory organs, their afferent fibers and their central representations in the spinal cord or brain, (2) those affecting the motor or other efferent centers and the fibers leading from these to the muscles and glands and (3) those affecting the higher mental processes. The visceral nervous system differs in many particulars from that governing ordinary sensation and the control of voluntary muscles. It will be discussed separately.

### *Disturbances of Sensation*

Disturbances of sensation may be due to alterations in (1) the receptive sensory organs, in (2) the nerve fibers or tracts which conduct the afferent impulses from the receptive organs to the higher brain centers, or in (3) these higher centers themselves.

Disturbances of sensations may also be divided according to the form of sensation affected. The following is a classification of sensory disturbances from this viewpoint.

- I. Disturbances of Common Sensation.
  1. Superficial sensations, originating in the skin and exposed mucus membranes.
  2. Deep sensations, originating in muscles, joints, etc.
  3. Visceral sensations.
- II. Disturbances of Special Senses.
  1. Smell.
  2. Taste.
  3. Sight.
  4. Hearing.
  5. Vestibular.



Finally, sensory disturbances, of whatever character, may be classified according to the character of the changes present. The sensations may be less acute or absent, they may be abnormally acute or they may be altered in quality. The two latter changes are often grouped together as irritative symptoms. With respect to the sense of touch, these changes are known respectively as hypesthesia and anesthesia, hyperesthesia and paresthesia. A similar nomenclature is employed for changes in other forms of sensations. In addition to disturbances in the intensity and character of a sensation, there may also be a delay in its appreciation.

### *Disturbances in the Common Sensations*

By common sensations we mean those which are distributed generally over the body. Superficial common sensations come from the skin and exposed mucous membranes. Deep common sensations come from the muscles, joints, bones, tendons and ligaments. Visceral sensations, which come from the internal organs, will be discussed in connection with the visceral nervous system.

**Diminished Superficial Sensibility.**—The superficial sensations, which arise in the skin and the exposed mucous membranes, are of various kinds, the most important being the sensations of *touch*, of *pain*, of *cold* and of *heat*. Each of these appears to have its own receptive nerve endings in the skin, for it is possible to map out definite cutaneous points or areas where one or other of these sensations can be appreciated. Thus the skin contains hot points, cold points, pain points and touch points, each of which is sensitive to the particular stimulus in question. Between these points or areas the skin is insensitive to the particular type of stimulus employed. Of diseases that involve these nerve terminals without manifest changes in the skin we know little.

Loss of cutaneous sensation has been studied with particular care after the division of nerves that contain sensory fibers coming from the skin. The area of complete cutaneous insensibility, caused by such division, is considerably smaller than the total skin area supplied by the nerve divided. Surrounding this smaller area of total anesthesia is a zone where cutaneous sensations are lessened but not entirely abolished. The outer limit of this zone roughly corresponds to the outer limit of anatomic distribution of the nerve. Over this border zone, according to Head, the individual is able to feel pain, although the character of the pain seems altered and its localization is not accurate. Extremes of heat or cold are also felt. On the other hand, this border zone is insensitive to light touch and to minor variations in temperature (from 27° to 38° centigrade). Nor can two compass points, simultaneously applied, be distinguished over this area. This retention of some sensation over the border of distribution

of a severed cutaneous nerve is due to the overlap of fibers from adjacent nerves. If these also be severed, the adjacent region becomes totally anesthetic.

On the basis of these observations, Head has divided cutaneous sensations into two major groups, which he has called *protopathic* sensation and *epicritic* sensation. The former of these is represented by the sensations present near the periphery of distribution of a divided cutaneous nerve. It consists of sensibility to pain, which is poorly localized and unusual in character, together with sensibility to extremes of heat and cold. The glans penis is endowed with protopathic sensibility only. Epicritic sensation includes the sensations not present in the border zone—i. e., the appreciation of fine touch and moderate changes in temperature and the accurate localization of touch. Head showed furthermore that, as a divided nerve regenerates, protopathic sensation often returns to the completely anesthetic area some considerable time before epicritic sensation is restored. This return, according to Pollach, is not due to a more rapid regeneration of protopathic fibers in the severed nerve, but to the assumption of function by overlapping fibers from adjacent nerves.

**Diminished Deep Sensibility.**—The *deep sensations* arise from the muscles, joints, bones, tendons and ligaments. By virtue of these sensations one is able to appreciate the position and movements of the various joints and muscles of the body. Pressure upon the skin may be appreciated and localized through these nerves of deep sensation. They may also give rise to pain, as from excessive pressure, muscular cramps and injury or disease of joints. The fibers conveying deep sensation travel toward the spinal cord mainly through the nerves which supply the muscles. For this reason they are not involved in lesions that damage only the cutaneous nerves and after such damage moderate pressure and deep pain over the anesthetic skin area can still be appreciated.

Disease of the peripheral nerves, caused by compression or by inflammation, usually causes muscular paralyses or irritative sensory symptoms (pain, hyperesthesia or paresthesias) sooner than they cause loss of sensation. There are exceptions to this rule, however, and at times sensory losses occur early and without paralysis. As a rule, the sense of touch and the deep sensibility are most affected.

**Sensory Conduction in the Spinal Cord.**—The course of the different sensory impulses after their entrance into the spinal cord is not completely understood. We know, however, that in the cord a regrouping of impulses occurs. Painful sensations, for example, whether originating in the deep sensibility system, in the protopathic cutaneous system or in the epicritic cutaneous system, are transmitted upward in the cord by a rather compact group of fibers. With or near them are the paths which convey temperature sensations. These are all separated from the fibers conveying the

deep sensations of posture and motion, and the epicritic superficial sensations which enables one to recognize the two points of a compass, simultaneously applied to the skin.

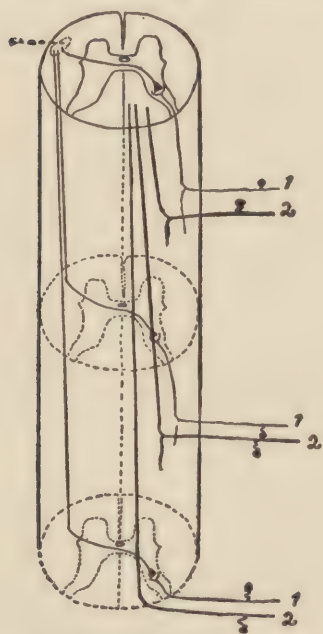
The paths which conduct the *sensations of temperature and of pain* cross to the opposite side of the cord not far above their entrance. They appear to ascend for a short distance in the dorsal column of the cord (tract of Lissauer) and then enter the substantia gelatinosa of the posterior horn of gray matter. At this point a relay takes place and the

new fibers cross by the gray commissure and ascend to the brain in the spino-thalamic tract. This lies in the antero-lateral region of the cord just inside the cerebellar tract (Fig. 141). Loss of pain and temperature sense with little or no involvement of other forms of sensation has been observed in syringomyelia and in hematomyelia. These diseases are particularly prone to involve the posterior horns of gray matter and the gray commissure. In this way, they interrupt the pain and temperature sense fibers that enter the cord a short distance below the level of the lesion. The spino-thalamic tract has been severed by surgeons for the relief of intractable pain in the lower part of the body. After a successful operation of this type, pain and temperature sense in the opposite lower extremity are lost without manifest changes in the sense of touch.

The fibers which conduct those *deep sensations that have to do with recognition of posture, movement and weight, together with those that serve to discriminate two compass points simultaneously applied to*

*the skin* ascend in the posterior columns of the same side of the cord. When, as in *tabes dorsalis*, the posterior columns are degenerated, the patient is unable to recognize accurately the position of his lower extremities or of their component parts. Passive movements of the great toe that have been produced by the examiner may be quite unappreciated by the patient. The importance of this loss of deep sensibility in the production of tabetic ataxia will be discussed later.

The *sense of touch* may be produced by contact which stimulates either the superficial or deep nerves. In the cord, this sensation, from either



Courtesy of Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine.  
Fig. 141.—Diagram Representing Two of the Chief Paths of Sensory Conduction in the Spinal Cord. 1. Path for Pain and Temperature Sensations. 2. Path for Discriminative Sensations, Both Deep and Superficial. (From Nelson's Loose-Leaf Living Medicine.)



source, appears to ascend partly in the posterior column of the same side and partly in the lateral column of the opposite side.

From what has been said it is evident that destruction of one side of the cord interrupts the transmission of pain and temperature sensations coming from the opposite side of the body below the level of the lesion, together with the transmission of the sensations of posture, motion and cutaneous discrimination coming the same side of the body below the level of the lesion. These sensory changes, together with a motor paralysis on the same side of the body below the lesion, constitute the so-called Brown-Sequard syndrome.

**Segmental Localization in the Cord.**—A large portion of the body is composed of a succession of segments. Each has its organs of common sensibility in the skin and deeper structures and its afferent nerves which carry these sensations to the segmental centers in the spinal cord. From these centers the efferent nerves conduct motor impulses to the muscles which belong to the segment. This segmental arrangement of the body is very apparent in many of the lower animals, but in the higher vertebrates it becomes less evident partly because neighboring segments become structurally and functionally fused, and partly because the growth of the extremities and the marked development of suprasegmental nervous structures in the brain have tended to obscure the underlying segmental arrangement. Nevertheless, in the spinal cord, the segmental arrangement is plainly evident. It is particularly striking with respect to the distribution of sensation in the skin. This distribution is of considerable practical importance in localizing spinal disease.

The *segmental arrangement of skin sensation* in man has been studied partly by comparing the sensory with the pathological changes in patients who have had an injury or disease of the spinal cord, and partly by studying the distribution of the eruption in herpes zoster, a disease characterized by inflammation of one or more dorsal root ganglia. A diagram based on such studies is shown in Fig. 142. Certain guiding lines stand out in this figure. Thus, a line which extends from the vertex of the scalp behind the ears to the chin separates the distribution of the trigeminal nerves from the second and third cervical segments. At the junction of the lower neck with the trunk is the line which separates the skin distribution of the fourth cervical segment and the second thoracic segment. A line drawn through the nipples corresponds to the distribution of the fourth thoracic segment. The umbilicus is situated at the tenth thoracic skin segment. The line between the trunk and the lower extremities corresponds to the first lumbar segment. Finally the skin of the genital and anal regions are supplied by the extreme end of the cord (the tail region). In the upper extremities, the fifth cervical to the second thoracic segments supply long strips of skin which are arranged from without (radial side) to within (ulnar side). The lower extremities are supplied

from the second lumbar to the second sacral segments. These are arranged in order down the front and sides of an extremity to the foot and then back up the midportion of the rear.

The segmental distribution of cutaneous sensation, like the distribution of cutaneous nerves, shows a considerable overlapping. For this

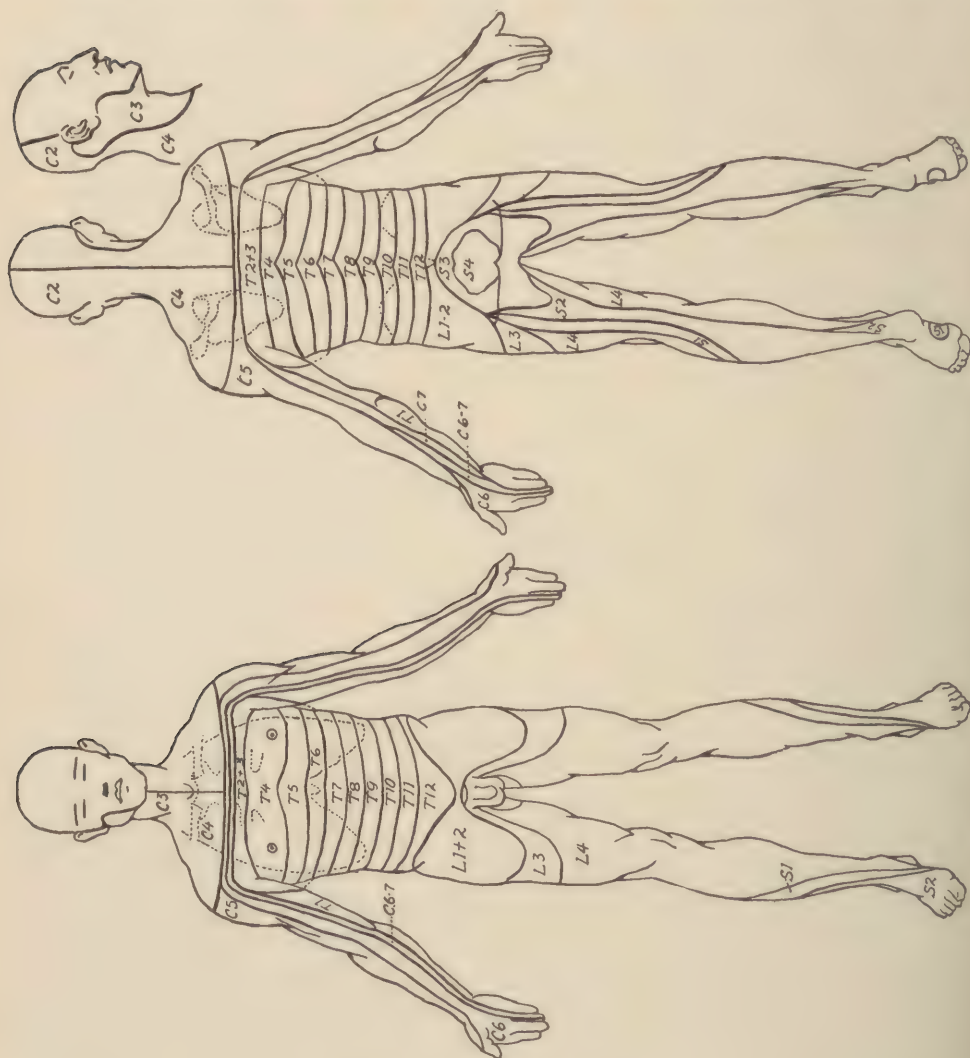


Fig. 142.—Segmental or Radicular Innervation of the Skin.

reason, the sensory changes at the level of a cord lesion may be lessened by the overlap from above. In the topical diagnosis of cord diseases this fact must always be borne in mind, for the disease is often somewhat higher than the sensory changes would indicate.

In addition to the segmental arrangement of skin sensations, there is

also a segmental arrangement of muscular innervation and a segmental arrangement of certain fibers coming from and going to the various internal organs. The muscle segments are of importance in the localization of cord lesions. The afferent segmental fibers from the internal organs enable us to explain the phenomenon of referred pain.

**Sensory Conduction Above the Cord.**—In the *medulla*, the uncrossed sensory fibers of the posterior columns of the cord enter the nuclei which terminate these columns (nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus). Fibers from these nuclei then decussate and continue their course toward the thalamus in the mesial fillet. Hence it is that all fibers conveying sensory impulses from the part of the body supplied by the spinal cord ascend on the opposite side of the upper medulla and pons. The sensory fibers from the face which enter by way of the fifth nerve lie on the same side of the medulla and pons. Unilateral lesions of the upper medulla, therefore, may cause a loss of sensation in the face on the side of the lesion and an impairment of sensation more or less marked on the opposite side of the remainder of the body (crossed hemianesthesia).

All paths of common sensation proceeding from the periphery toward the cerebral centers enter the *thalamus* of the opposite side. From here fibers extend through the posterior part of the internal capsule to the cortex of the cerebrum and more particularly to the posterior central convolution, just behind the fissure of Rolando. Diseases in these regions lead to sensory disturbances on the opposite side of the body. Where the fibers are compactly arranged, as occurs in the thalamus and in the internal capsule, a lesion tends to cause sensory disturbances which involve the entire opposite half of the body. Where the fibers are more spread out, as occurs toward the cerebral cortex, the disturbance is apt to be more limited in extent. In addition to these variations in extent, there are also variations in the quality of sensory disturbances, according as the lesion involves the thalamus or the cortical centers of sensation. According to Head, the thalamus is the seat of those physiological processes which underlie crude sensations of contact, pain, heat and cold, together with the feeling-tone they evoke. It is the center for the affective aspects of sensation. The sensory cortex, on the other hand, is the seat more particularly of sensory discrimination and spacial projection.

Lesions of the thalamus produce a partial loss of sensation over the contralateral half of the body. This involves, to a greater or less extent, all types of deep and superficial sensibility. Despite the insensitiveness to finer stimuli, there is often an exaggerated response when thermic or painful stimuli are increased to the point where they can be felt, and severe paroxysmal pains of lancinating character are often present in the hypesthetic side of the body. In the thalamic syndrome of Dejerine-Roussy this group of sensory disturbances is combined with unprovoked outbursts of weeping or laughing and with certain motor disturbances on



the affected side, such as hemiataxia, hemitremor and hemiathetosis. These motor disturbances appear to be produced by changes in the neighborhood of the thalamus (corpus striatum) rather than in this structure itself.

The *postcentral* area of the cerebral cortex is the primary cortical

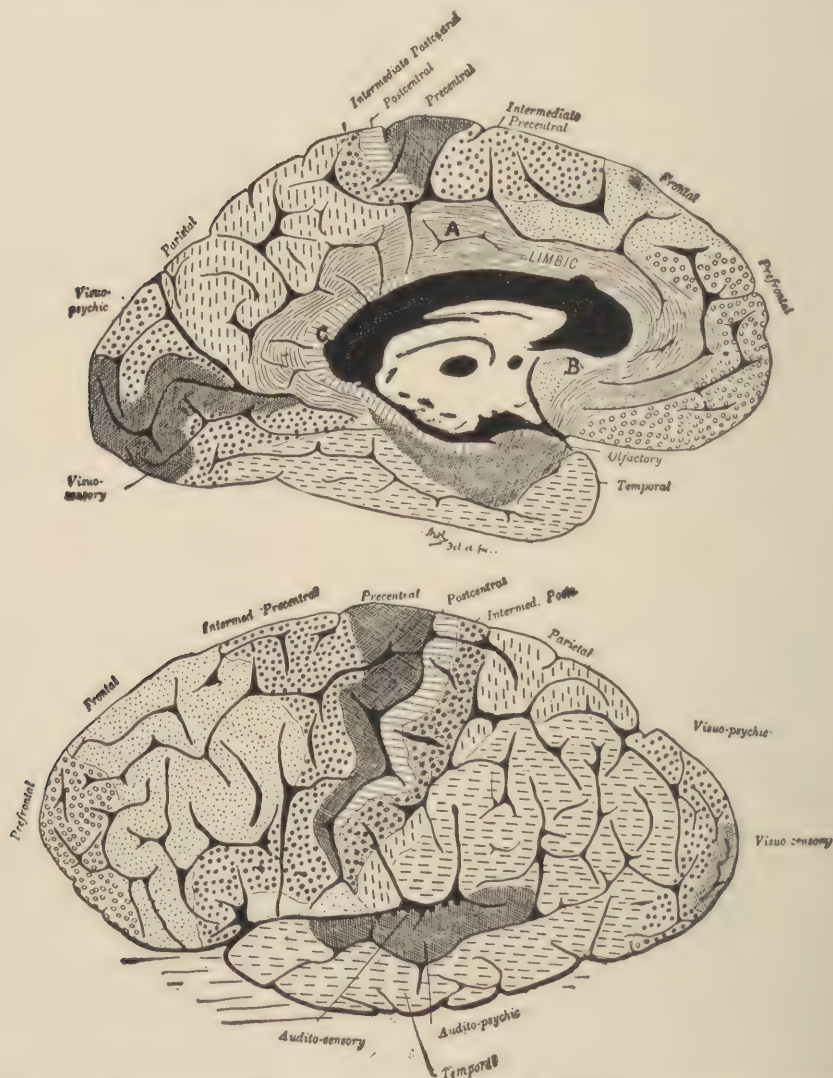


Fig. 143.—Areas of the Human Cortex, Each of Which Possesses a Distinctive Structure. (From Ranson after Campbell.)

receiving station for deep and superficial sensations. In the neighboring *intermediate postcentral* area there appears to take place the combination of various sensations which is necessary for recognizing the object and for comparing present with past sensations (Fig. 143). The sensory

changes following lesions of the sensory cortex have proved difficult to study and to analyze. The patient's answers to sensory tests vary from time to time and he is confused about his own sensations. The most striking changes, according to Head, are a loss of the appreciation of the intensity of the stimulus and an inability to relate and measure sensations, particularly as regards their spacial relations. Lesions limited to the postcentral region lessen the sensory perception of stimuli applied to the opposite half of the body. Lesions limited to the intermediate postcentral region, on the other hand, interfere more particularly with the synthesis of these impressions. This synthesis is necessary for the recognition of an object and for the comparison of present with past impressions. In such a case, the primary impressions from the hand may not be seriously disturbed, yet the patient may be quite unable to recognize objects that are placed in the hand if his eyes are closed (astereognosis).

In *hysteria* marked losses of sensation may be found. These are distinguished from losses due to organic cerebral lesions by their tendency to involve the extremities up to a definite level (glove and stocking anesthesia), by their sharp borders and by the total loss of sensation over the affected region. Total hemianesthesia always suggests an hysterical origin. These characteristics of hysterical anesthesia are not always present and the diagnosis of the condition depends in many instances on the ability to alter its distribution by suggestion.

### ***Irritative Sensory Symptoms***

Under this heading may be roughly grouped all sensory disturbances of a painful or disagreeable nature. These may be provoked by external stimuli or they may occur spontaneously. Objectively, there is frequently a diminished perception of the finer grades of sensory stimulation. Nevertheless, when the stimulus is increased to the point where it causes a conscious sensation, the latter is both painful and disagreeable. Such is the case, for example, over the normal glans penis and over skin areas where epicritic sensation is lost and protopathic sensation retained. Such is also the case in certain thalamic lesions. Not infrequently a patient complains of subjective tingling in hands or feet where objective examination shows a loss of the finer grades of sensory perception.

**Neuritis.**—Irritative sensory symptoms are common in neuritis. This disease frequently causes spontaneous pains of a burning or tearing character, hypersensitiveness to pressure over the nerves of the muscles and skin, and various forms of paresthesia, such as numbness, tingling and subjective sensations of heat or cold.

**Herpes Zoster.**—In herpes zoster there is an inflammation of one or more of the dorsal root ganglia. In addition to the general symptoms of infection, the disease is characterized by the appearance of small vesicles

and of sensory disturbances over the skin area that is supplied by nerve filaments from the affected root ganglia. Among these sensory disturbances are spontaneous pain, which is frequently intense and may be persistent, hypersensitiveness to touch, pain and temperature, and various forms of parasthesia. Later there may develop a diminution in all types of sensation over the affected area.

**Central Disease.**—Diseases involving the posterior root fibers and their prolongations in the spinal cord may be the source of severe pain. This is illustrated by the lancinating pains of tabes dorsalis and by the severe pains which occur when the posterior roots are involved in tumors or inflammation. Diseases of the spinal cord itself do not usually cause pain. Nevertheless paresthesias and at times pain may be due to disease involving the sensory tracts not only in the cord but also in the thalamus, the internal capsule, and the cerebral cortex.

**Hysteria.**—Cutaneous hyperesthesia is common in hysteria. Particularly characteristic is an excessive sensitiveness about the mammillae or over the lower portion of the abdomen.

**Referred Pain.**—In other chapters it has been pointed out that the pain produced by diseases of the internal organs is frequently referred to the distribution of the cutaneous fibers which enter the cord at the same level as do the visceral nerves in question. For this reason we have a characteristic peripheral distribution of pain in various diseases of the inner organs. Visceral disease may also cause the corresponding regions of the skin to become hypersensitive to painful stimuli.

### *Disturbances of Smell*

The receptive organ for the sense of smell consists of an area of mucous membrane in the uppermost part of the nose. Here are located the special cells of the sense of smell. Each of these is a spindle-shaped ganglia cell, one end of which pierces the mucous membrane, while the other extends as a nerve fiber toward the brain. These nerve fibers pass into the cranial cavity through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone and terminate almost immediately in the olfactory bulb. From here a new set of fibers proceed by way of the olfactory tracts to the under surface of the brain, where they establish connections with the uncinate gyrus and neighboring portions of the cortex (Fig. 143).

Most of the air breathed passes through the lower portion of the nose without coming in direct contact with the portion of mucous membrane which contains the organ of smell. The mucous membrane lining this lower part of the nose is supplied by filaments of the fifth nerve. These are stimulated when the air breathed contains irritating substances, but such stimulation does not cause a sense of smell. The latter is provoked only when currents of air carrying odorous particles enter the region of



the olfactory sense organ. Air containing odorous material may also reach this region by way of the nasopharynx. When food is swallowed its odor is carried to the olfactory organ. All the finer food flavors are appreciated in this manner.

A great variety of odors can be distinguished by normal individuals and it has not been possible to classify them into well defined groups.

Diminution or loss of smell results if the respired air cannot enter freely the upper portion of the nose. In coryza and other acute nasal infections it is common for the sense of smell to be diminished or lost from this cause. The sense of smell may also be impaired because the olfactory mucous membrane is damaged. This may occur in various chronic nasal diseases or as a result of inhaling poisonous or irritating substances.

Loss or diminution in the sense of smell may also be due to diseases affecting the olfactory filaments, the olfactory bulbs or the olfactory tracts. Head traumas and inflammations in the anterior fossa are particularly apt to damage these structures.

The cortical center for smell is located in the gyrus uncinatus, the gyrus hippocampi and the neighboring cortex. Injury or disease of this part of the brain may impair the sense of smell. Particularly interesting are the so-called *uncinate fits* which may accompany a tumor or other disease of the gyrus uncinatus. Such patients experience olfactory hallucinations, usually of a disagreeable character, which are accompanied by disturbances of consciousness or even by convulsions, and which may be succeeded by a transient loss of smell.

### ***Disturbances of Taste***

The receptive organs for the sense of taste are the so-called taste-buds, which consist of a number of cells arranged in onion-like layers with a central opening to the surface. These taste buds are scattered over the tongue, being more numerous toward its edges. The buds are numerous in the grooves about the circumvallate papillae, a few are found in the fungiform papillae and almost none in the filiform papillae. A small number are also found on the hard palate, the anterior pillars of the pharynx, the back of the pharynx and the inner walls of the cheeks. The nerve fibers which convey taste sensations from the posterior third of the tongue enter the glossopharyngeal nerve. Those which convey taste sensations from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue enter the lingual branch of the fifth nerve (Fig. 144). The taste fibers leave this nerve by way of the chorda tympani and join the facial nerve below the ear. Later they leave the facial nerve at the geniculate ganglia and are carried by one of the petrosal nerves to the third or second division of the fifth cranial nerve, with which they finally enter the medulla.

Four varieties of taste are distinguished—sweet, sour, bitter and salt. Special nerve endings appear to receive the special varieties of sensation, for mixtures of substances having different tastes are appreciated differently when applied to different parts of the tongue.

Disturbances of taste may be divided according to the nature of the disturbances into (*a*) an absence or lessening of taste (ageusia and hypogeusia) and a hyperactive or perverted taste (hypergeusia or parageusia). They may also be divided, according to the site of the lesion, into peripheral and central disturbances of taste.

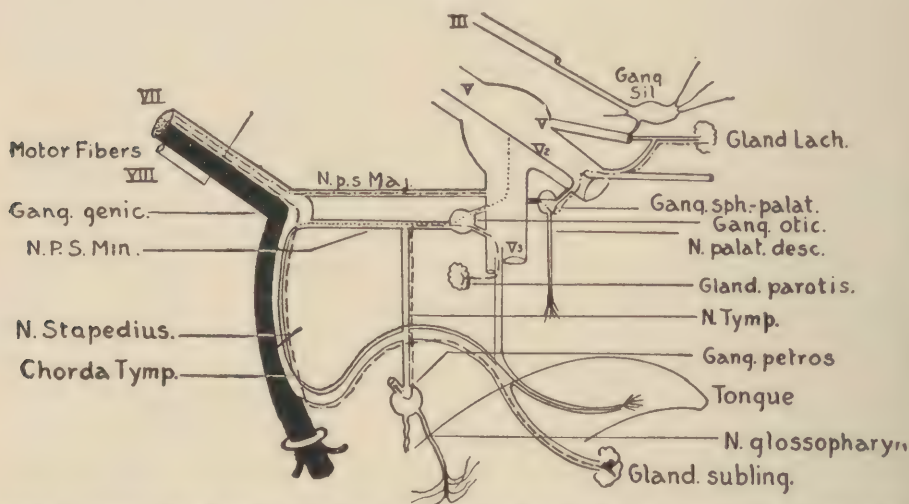


Fig. 144.—Schema of the Peripheral Connections of the Facial, Auditory, Trigeminal and Glossopharyngeal Nerves and the Sympathetic (Modified from Veraguth). Gustatory Fibers Indicated by Continuous Line through N. trigeminus to Ganglion Sphenopalatinum, by Fine Dotted Line through Ganglion Oticum and N. P. S. Mins and Again by Continuous Line through Chorda Tympani to the Tongue. Motor Fibers of N. Facialis Shown in Heavy Black; iii—N. oculomotorius; v—N. trigeminus with Its Three Branches,  $V_1$ ,  $V_2$ ,  $V_3$ ; Gang. cil.—Ganglion ciliare; Gland. lach.—Glandula lacrimalis; Gang. sph. palat.—Ganglion sphenopalatinum; Gang. Otic.—Ganglion oticum; N. palat. desc.—Nervus palatinus descendens; N. tymp.—Nervus tympanicus; Gang. petros.—Ganglion petrosum; N. glossopharynx—Nervus glossopharyngeus; Chorda tympani—Chorda tympani; N. p. s. min.—Nervus petrosus superficialis minor; N. p. s. maj.—Nervus petrosus superficialis major; Gang. genic.—Ganglion geniculi.

Peripheral disturbances of taste may arise from changes in the taste buds after an injury of the tongue by inflammation, burns, sears, etc. Cocain usually first abolishes bitter tastes, the juice of *gymnema sylvestre* is said to abolish the sense of bitter and sweet tastes, while *eriodictyon* has a similar effect on bitter tastes. Changes in the nerves which convey the sensations may also alter or abolish taste. The lingual nerve may be cut in operations about the tongue. The chorda tympani is at times affected in ear disease, thus lessening the taste sensation over the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. A similar effect may be produced by such lesions of the facial nerve as are located between the geniculate ganglion

and the entrance of the corda tympani. Taste may also be altered when the fifth nerve at the base of the skull is injured or when the gasserian ganglia is excised. A few cases are on record in which the loss of taste has been due to a lesion of the ninth nerve without the involvement of the fifth.

Alterations in taste occasionally occur in diseases of the medulla, particularly in multiple sclerosis, in tabes and in syringomyelia. Of the cortical representation of the sense of taste we know practically nothing.

In hysteria alterations of taste are common.

### ***Disturbances of Vision***

The receptive organs for the sensation of vision are the eyes. In these the inverted image of external objects is thrown upon the retinae by an optical mechanism which resembles that of the photographic camera. The *iris* acts as a diaphragm and controls the amount of light that may enter the eye through the pupil. The formation of an image is caused by the lens-like action of the various *refractive media* in the eye. The principal surface of refraction is the external surface of the cornea. Next in importance are the anterior and posterior surfaces of the crystalline lens.

The image of external objects upon the retina excites the structures which are specifically sensitive to light. These are known as the *rods and cones*. They lie on the outer surface of the retinal membrane and, in order to reach them, the light must pass through the other retinal layers. The portion of the retina which corresponds to the central point of vision and which is known as the *macula lutea* is very thin, so that the light passes through fewer layers to reach the sensitive elements. In this region there are no rods, the cones being the sole structures sensitive to light. The stimulus received by the rods and cones is transmitted to the ganglionic cells lying in the retina and the nerve fibers coming from these cells are gathered together to form the optic nerve.

The *optic nerve* after leaving the eye proceeds backward in the orbit and then enters the cranial cavity. Shortly after entering this cavity the two nerves unite in the optic chiasm. From the posterior part of this chiasm the optic tracts proceed to the under surface of the brain.

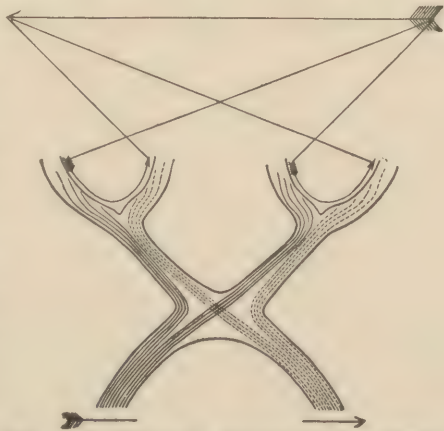


Fig. 145.—Diagram Showing How Fibers Cross in the Optic Chiasm. Injury to the Right Optic Tract Injures Vision on the Right Half of Each Retina (Left Visual Field). (From Ranson.)



In the *optic chiasm* some fibers from each nerve cross to the opposite side and proceed backward in the optic tracts of the opposite sides. The crossing of fibers is of such a character that all fibers coming from the right side of each retina are united in the right optic tract, while all fibers from the left side of each retina are united in the left optic tract (Fig. 145). An injury to the right optic tract or to its representation in the brain would, therefore, cause blindness in the right side of each retina. Since images of the external world are thrown upon the opposite side of the retina a lesion in the right tract would cause blindness in the left visual field of each eye, while a lesion in the left tract would cause blindness in the right visual field of each eye.

Each *optic tract* establishes connections with the corresponding lateral geniculate body, with the optic thalamus and with the anterior corpus quadrigeminus. Visual sensations appear to be transmitted mainly by way of the lateral geniculate body. From here new fibers proceed in the *occipital lobes*. Here conscious perception of visual sensations take place and from here association tracts lead to the centers for visual memory and the higher visual mental processes.

**Disturbances in the Dioptic Apparatus.**—Impairment of vision may depend upon changes in the eye which lessen its efficiency as an optical instrument. There may be opacities in the various media, these being most commonly found in the cornea or in the lens (cataract).

The optical properties of the eye may also be impaired in such a way that the image of external objects is not properly focussed upon the retina. For example, the image of distant objects may fall in front of the retina. As an object approaches the eye its image moves backward and in such eyes it will eventually fall on the retina. Such individuals therefore may see near objects distinctly without the use of accommodation but they see distant objects indistinctly. They are said to be near-sighted or *myopic*.

In other individuals, the image of distant objects is formed behind the retina unless the muscle of accommodation is used. By using the muscle of accommodation such an individual may see distant objects distinctly. The image of near objects, however, cannot be focussed on the retina even with the greatest effort of accommodation. Such an eye is said to be far-sighted or *hypermetropic*.

Finally, a poor retinal focus may depend upon some irregularity in the planes of refraction. Most commonly such an irregularity is due to the fact that the curvature of the cornea is greater in one direction than in another. In such an eye a point is no longer focussed as a point but tends to focus as a short line. Such an eye is said to be *astigmatic*.

Difficulties in focus may also depend upon *disturbances of accommodation*. In the camera, the focusing for different distances is accomplished by altering the position of the sensitive surface which receives the image.

In the eye, however, focussing for different distances is accomplished by altering the curvature of the crystalline lens. This lens is ordinarily kept somewhat flattened by the tension of a ligament attached to its outer margin. When the muscle of accommodation contracts it lessens the tension of this ligament and the lens bulges. The strength of the lens is thus increased and nearer objects are focussed upon the retina. Disturbances in accommodation may be due to weakness or paralysis of the muscle of accommodation. Disease of the third cranial nerve or temporary blocking of the impulses of this nerve by the local use of atropin produce such a condition. Disturbances of accommodation may also be due to a lessened bulging of the lens when its ligament is relaxed. This is the cause of *presbyopia*, or the inability of elderly people to see near objects distinctly without the use of convex glasses.

**Color Blindness.**—Certain persons are unable to distinguish all of the color sensations that are commonly differentiated by normal individuals. Most frequently this defect involves the colors red and green. Indeed these colors may be so confused that the person sees no difference in tint between a red flower and the green leaves that surround it. When tested by being required to describe the colors in a spectrum, individuals with the red-green type of color blindness fall into two classes. In one class there appears to be an insensitiveness to the red end of the spectrum (red blindness). In the other class the red end of the spectrum is seen and the defect appears to be due to an inability to appreciate properly the central spectral colors. Other types of color blindness are exceptional. The nature of the defect which causes color blindness is not understood. We do know, however, that the condition is congenital, that it is frequently hereditary, that it occurs far more frequently in males than in females and that the defect may be passed down to her sons by a woman who is not herself color blind.

Disturbances in the recognition of green and red colors over a larger or smaller portion of the visual field may also result from disease, particularly of the optic nerve.

**Choked Disc and Optic Neuritis.**—Two types of inflammation of the optic nerve are distinguished. The one produces changes in the nerve head, which are visible on ophthalmoscopic examination of the retina. The nerve head or optic disc is swollen and slightly reddened, its outlines are indistinct and its veins distended and tortuous. In the so-called retrobulbar neuritis, on the other hand, no changes in the disc are visible.

The first type of optic neuritis is not readily distinguished from the so-called *choked disc* which occurs in conditions where the intracranial pressure is increased. It is commonly stated that one is justified in diagnosing a choked disc only where the swelling of the disc exceeds two diopters. Despite the fact that optic neuritis and choked disc may present a similar ophthalmoscopic appearance, it is believed that choked disc is

not due to an inflammation of the optic nerve, but results from the mechanical effect of an increased intracranial pressure. This view is supported particularly by the repeated observation that, when the intracranial pressure is reduced by operation, the eye changes commonly disappear rapidly. This has occurred even though there has been no removal of cerebrospinal fluid, thus disposing of the theory that the eye changes are due to toxic substances in this fluid. The exact mechanism by which a heightened intracranial pressure leads to choked disc has been the subject of much discussion. An intracranial obstruction to the return flow of blood from the retina is not a satisfactory explanation, because the retinal veins anastomose with other veins in the orbit previously to their entrance into the cranial cavity. The cause of choked disc is to be sought rather in a displacement of cerebrospinal fluid out of the cranial cavity into the potential space that lies between the optic nerve and its vaginal sheath. This space is directly continuous with the intermeningeal spaces about the brain. When an excess of fluid is forced into the sheath of the optic nerve its pressure obstructs the venous return from the retina and causes a passive congestion with edema of the nerve head.

The usual disturbances produced by optic neuritis or by choked disc are often much less marked than one would anticipate from the appearance of the optic disc and the retina. In time, however, a concentric limitation of vision develops and there may also be some central loss of vision. In choked disc transient attacks of complete blindness may occur owing to transient increases of intracranial pressure.

**Retrobulbar Neuritis.**—In the second form of optic neuritis the inflammation does not involve the nerve head and no marked alteration of the optic disc is visible on ophthalmoscopic examination. This type of neuritis may develop acutely or it may come on slowly. The disturbance of vision is usually most marked in the center of the visual field, thus causing a central scotoma or blind area. When the visual disturbance is less marked, there may be merely a loss of central vision for the colors red and green. Apparently, the process which produces retrobulbar neuritis is prone to affect the nerve fibers coming from the macular region of each eye.

**Optic Atrophy.**—Optic atrophy may result from neuritis of the nerve head, the so-called secondary optic atrophy; or it may come on without previous neuritis of the nerve head, the so-called primary optic neuritis. In optic atrophy, the disc appears unusually pale and the blood vessels are small. Functionally, there is a diminution in central vision and there are often defects in the field of vision which are located either at its periphery or in isolated areas (scotomata). Loss of color sense at the periphery is common and it usually effects in turn the recognition of green, red, yellow and blue. Isolated loss of central vision suggests a retrobulbar neuritis rather than a primary atrophy.



**Lesions of the Chiasm.**—We have already pointed out that the optic fibers coming from the nasal half of each retina cross to the opposite side in the chiasm and that in the optic tracts behind the chiasm there are collected all fibers coming from the same side of each retina. In affections of the mid-portion of the chiasm, such as result particularly from pressure by pituitary tumors, the fibers which are crossing may be injured, while the fibers which do not cross are relatively unaffected. In such a case the nasal half of each retina is cut off, more or less, from its central nervous connections. Consequently vision is impaired or lost on the temporal half of each visual field. Such a bi-temporal hemianopsia is characteristic of lesions of the midportion of the optic chiasm. Naturally, however, pressure upon the chiasm is rarely limited to the crossing fibers and the visual disturbances are commonly more marked in one eye. Occasionally diseases in the region of the optic chiasm spare the decussation fibers but injure the direct fibers that lie on each side of the chiasm. This will interrupt impulses from the lateral half of each retina and result in nasal or binasal hemianopsia (Fig. 145).

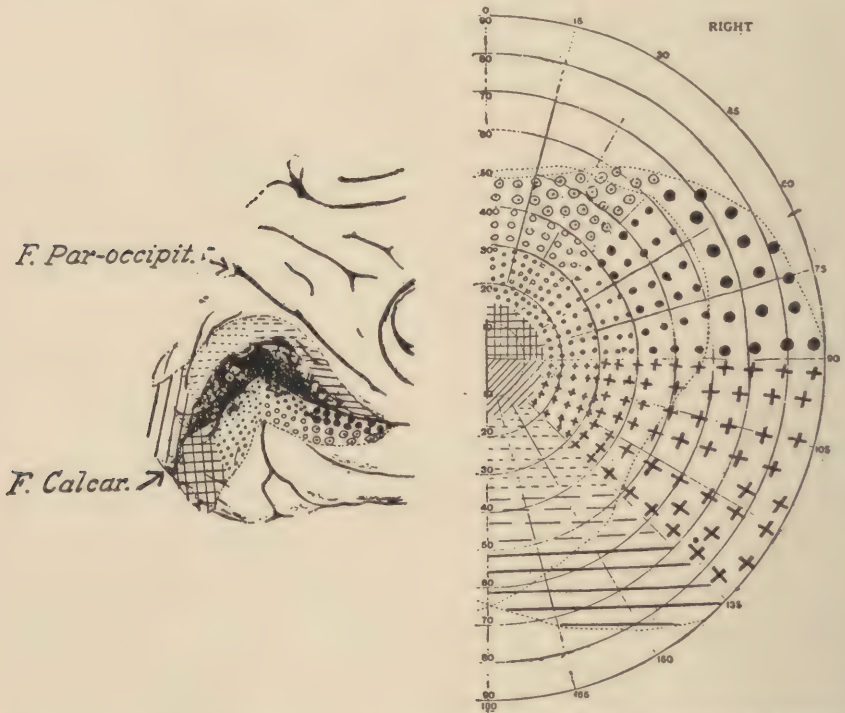
A lesion behind the optic chiasm which involves the optic tracts or their central nerve connections will interrupt impulses coming from the same side of each retina and will produce blindness toward the opposite side in both eyes, the so-called homonymous hemianopsia.

**Cortical Centers of Vision.**—The visual impulses coming from the eyes are transmitted first to the lateral geniculate bodies and from here to the visual centers in the occipital lobes. The primary cortical centers for vision lie on either side of the calcarine fissures, which are situated on the median surfaces of the occipital lobes (Fig. 143). The upper retinae are represented in the cortex lying just above the calcarine fissures, while the lower retinae are represented in the cortex lying just below these fissures. Finally, the central portions of the retinae (macular region) are represented at the posterior poles of the occipital lobes near the posterior terminations of the calcarine fissures, while the peripheral portions of the retinae are represented by the cortex on either side of the more anterior portions of the calcarine fissures (Fig. 146).

These various relationships have been demonstrated by the study of patients with occipital disease or injury and particularly by the study of soldiers who have received localized head injuries during the Great War. A destruction of the entire visual area in one occipital lobe causes a loss of sensation from the same side of both retinae. There is a bilateral homonymous hemianopsia in the opposite visual field. Destruction of the cortex above the calcarine fissure on the right side leads to a loss of vision which corresponds to the upper right quadrants of the retinae of both eyes. There is a left lower quadrant blindness in each visual field. Injury to the posterior poles of both occipital lobes causes a central or paracentral scotoma of both eyes, while lesions limited to the anterior

portions of the fissures appear to produce peripheral scotomata. It may be mentioned in passing that the study of war injuries has not supported the older belief that the macular region of each eye has a bilateral representation in the cortex.

The cortex on either side of the calcarine fissure is the portion of the brain primarily concerned in visual perception. Its destruction leads to blindness, more or less extensive, according to the area destroyed. Adjoining and surrounding the primary visuo-sensory area is the visuo-



*Courtesy of Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine*

Fig. 146.—Diagram to Represent the Localization of the Different Portions of the Visual Field in the Visual Cortex. The Drawing on the Left Represents the Mesial Surface of the Occipital Pole of the Left Hemisphere with the Calcarine Fissure Opened Out. The Figure On the Right Represents the Right Half of Each Visual Field. The Markings Indicate Corresponding Portions of the Visual Field and the Occipital Cortex. (From Nelson's Loose-Leaf Living Medicine.)

psychic area where the primary sensations are correlated with each other and with previous visual experiences. Lesions in this region, especially on the left side (in right handed individuals), do not cause blindness, but they do alter the judgments concerning things seen. An object may be seen but not recognized or the orientation of objects in space may be difficult. Such a patient is said to suffer from psychic blindness.

### ***Disturbances of Hearing***

The receptive sense organ for hearing is the ear. Sound waves in the air that enter the external auditory canal impinge against the tympanic membrane and the vibrations of this membrane are transmitted across the middle ear by means of the chain of ossicles, which are known as the hammer, the anvil, and the stirrup. The last is connected with the foramen ovale of the internal ear and its movements set the perilymph of the internal ear in vibration. By acting upon the receptive fibers of the Organ of Corti, which is situated in the cochlear canal of the internal ear, these vibrations give rise to the sense of sound. Different portions of the cochlear scale appear to vibrate to different tones, and in this way different sounds and tones are distinguished.

From the cochlea, sound sensations are conducted by the cochlear branch of the eighth nerve to the acoustic nuclei which lie in the upper medulla. Connections are then established with the upper olivary bodies, especially of the opposite side, and from these with the posterior corpora quadrigemina and the median geniculate bodies. Finally the auditory stimuli reach the cortex of the temporal lobe.

**Deafness from Ear Disease.**—Impairment of hearing is most commonly due to disease of the ear itself, and may result from changes in either the middle or the internal ear. In middle ear disease the appreciation of low pitched tones is usually first affected, whereas, in diseases of the cochlea or its immediate nervous connections, there is more apt to be an impairment in the appreciation of high-pitched tones. Where the cochlea is normal but the transmission of sound waves across the middle ear is deficient, a tuning fork placed upon the mastoid region may still be heard (bone conduction) at a time when the sound is no longer audible if the fork is held close to the external auditory canal (air conduction). This is known as Rinne's test. In unilateral deafness the location of the disease may also be determined by pressing a vibrating fork against the frontal bone in the mid-line. If the unilateral deafness be due to disease of the internal ear or its nervous connections, the sound is heard more distinctly on the normal side. If the deafness be due to disease of the middle ear, the sound is better heard on the deaf side.

After entering the medulla, the fibers which conduct sound perception pursue more than one path and each ear has a bilateral representation. For these reasons circumscribed lesions above the medulla rarely cause complete unilateral deafness. Destruction of the cortical or subcortical auditory regions on one side usually impairs hearing, especially in the opposite ear, but the loss is never complete. Bilateral cortical lesions, on the other hand, may cause complete deafness in both ears.

**Cortical Centers of Hearing.**—The cortical centers for hearing are located in the upper portions of the temporal lobes. As is the case with



both common sensibility and vision, two types of auditory appreciation may be distinguished. The first of these is the simple perception of the sound; the second is the interpretation of its significance. The simple perception of sound is believed to take place in that portion of the temporal cortex which lies concealed in the Sylvian fissure (transverse gyri of Heschl). The interpretation of the sounds heard takes place more particularly in the superior temporal convolution, which lies on the external surface of this lobe just below the Sylvian fissure (Fig. 143). Other portions of the temporal lobe may also be involved in the interpretation of auditory sensations.

Lesions in the superior temporal convolution, particularly on the left side of the brain (in right handed individuals) lead to the condition known as *word deafness*. This condition is characterized by an ability to hear articulate speech but an inability to understand it. Such a defect may influence the patient's own speech, causing him to use the wrong words (*heterophasia*), to make grammatical errors (*agrammatism*) or to speak only a jargon (*paraphasia*).

More extensive lesions of the temporal cortex may lead to an inability to interpret sounds, other than those of articulate speech. Thus the musical sense or the identification of common sounds may be lost. The ringing of a bell is heard but the cause of the sound is no longer recognized (*psychic deafness*). Such defects are almost invariably accompanied by word deafness also.

**Alexia.**—The ability to read requires a complex association of visual and auditory impressions. The word seen on the printed page evokes memories of the sound produced when this word is uttered and at the same time the conception of its meaning. The angular gyrus lying between the cortical centers of hearing and of vision has been regarded as the reading center. Lesion of this region on the left side (in right-handed individuals) are said to have produced an inability to read printed or written words although in other ways speech was unaffected. This condition is known as *alexia*.

### *Disturbances of Equilibrium*

Information concerning the location of one's body and the position of its various parts is obtained through a number of senses. The deep sensations keep us informed concerning the position and movements of our joints and muscles. With our eyes we observe our relation to other objects and the relation of various parts of our body to one another. In addition to these, there is a third system which has to do particularly with sensations of position and motion. Its receptive sense organ is the vestibular apparatus of the internal ear.

**The Receptive Organs.**—The membranous labyrinth of the internal ear contains two groups of structures which have to do with the sense of

equilibrium. The first of these consists of the tiny membranous sacs known as the utricle and saccule. On the wall of each there is a group of specialized cells which terminate in hairs projecting into the sac. Imbedded among these hairs are small concretions of carbonate of lime, the otoliths, which by their pressure on the hairs, stimulate the underlying afferent nerves. The direction and amount of pressure varies with changes in position or motion. The otolith organ is phylogenetically the oldest part of the internal ear and many lower animals possess it, though devoid of the cochlea and semicircular canals.

The second group of structures in the membranous labyrinth which has to do with the sense of equilibrium are the semicircular canals. These are composed of fine membranous tubules which contain endolymph and which are suspended in the perilymph that fills the corresponding bony canals. In each ear there are three semicircular canals which lie on planes that are at right angles to one another (Fig. 147). Any movement of the head will cause the fluid in one or more canals of each ear to be set in motion and this motion will stimulate the receptive sense cells whose fine hairs extend into the canal. The direction of the movement is analyzed through the amount of stimulation in each of the three canals.

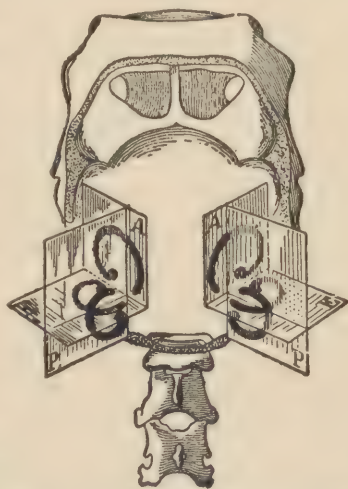


Fig. 147.—The Semicircular Canals of the Ear, Showing Their Arrangement in the Three Planes.

**Central Connections.**—The vestibular nerve receives impulses from the vestibular apparatus of the internal ear and passes as a part of the eighth cranial nerve to the upper medulla. Here it establishes connections with the primary vestibular nuclei of the brain stem (Deiter's nucleus and Bechterew's nucleus). From the medulla impulses reach the cortex of the brain by way of the thalamus. Of special importance however, are the more immediate connections with lower parts of the central nervous system. Connections with the nuclei of the third and sixth nerves are responsible for the nystagmus which occurs on stimulation of the vestibular apparatus. Connections with the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord by way of the tractus vestibulo-spinalis influence voluntary movements. Finally, connections with the cerebellum influence equilibratory control through this important center for muscular control.

**Aural Vertigo.**—Complete absence of vestibular sensations is not necessarily accompanied by serious symptoms. In certain deaf mutes the vestibular apparatus is non-active, and, in bilateral diseases of the internal

ear, it may be completely destroyed. Nevertheless, such individuals may pursue their ordinary activities without discomfort and without serious impairment from this cause. Their equilibrium is controlled by vision and by deep sensibility.

On the other hand, *excessive stimulation of the vestibular apparatus* produces definite and often very distressing symptoms. Irrigation of the external auditory canal with hot or cold water will cause nystagmus, which may be followed by vertigo, nausea and vomiting. When an individual is subjected to unusual and continuous movements, as in a swing or on a ship at sea, the unusual stimulation of the vestibular apparatus by the constant and irregular motion leads to giddiness, headache, nausea and vomiting (*sea-sickness*). Deaf mutes with non-active vestibular apparatus and infants in whom the vestibular apparatus is not fully active do not suffer from sea-sickness. Kreidl showed that when dogs are rotated they may develop salivation and vomiting, but that these symptoms do not occur if the vestibular nerves have been cut.

The vestibular apparatus may be stimulated or irritated by disease. Hemorrhage or inflammation in the labyrinth, or acute disease of the vestibular nerve or of the primary vestibular nuclei in the medulla cause a group of symptoms which are known as *Meniere's complex*, or aural vertigo. This group of symptoms frequently comes in attacks. It is characterized by nausea and vomiting, by marked prostration and by giddiness, which may be so severe that the patient falls. During an attack symptoms may persist even when the patient remains motionless, but they are usually made worse by any movement. Nystagmus is frequently present during the attack. The site of the lesion producing a Meniere's complex is judged mainly by the presence or absence of other associated symptoms. In disease of the labyrinth or of the eighth nerve, hearing is commonly affected. In disease of the vestibular nuclei in the medulla, hearing is usually not involved, but there may be symptoms due to changes in neighboring nerve structures.

### *Disturbances of Motility*

The voluntary muscles of the body are innervated by fibers which arise in the large motor cells of the ventral horns of gray matter in the spinal cord. These fibers pass by way of the anterior nerve roots, through the various nerve plexuses, to their terminal endings on the muscle fibers. The immediate nervous control of the voluntary muscles, therefore, lies in the motor cells of the spinal cord and in the corresponding groups of cells in the medulla, the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves. This is the final nervous path for the control of muscular movements. Through it the nervous system not only controls muscular movements but it also influences muscular tone and muscular nutrition.



The execution of even a simple movement requires the coordinated activity of several or perhaps of a considerable number of individual

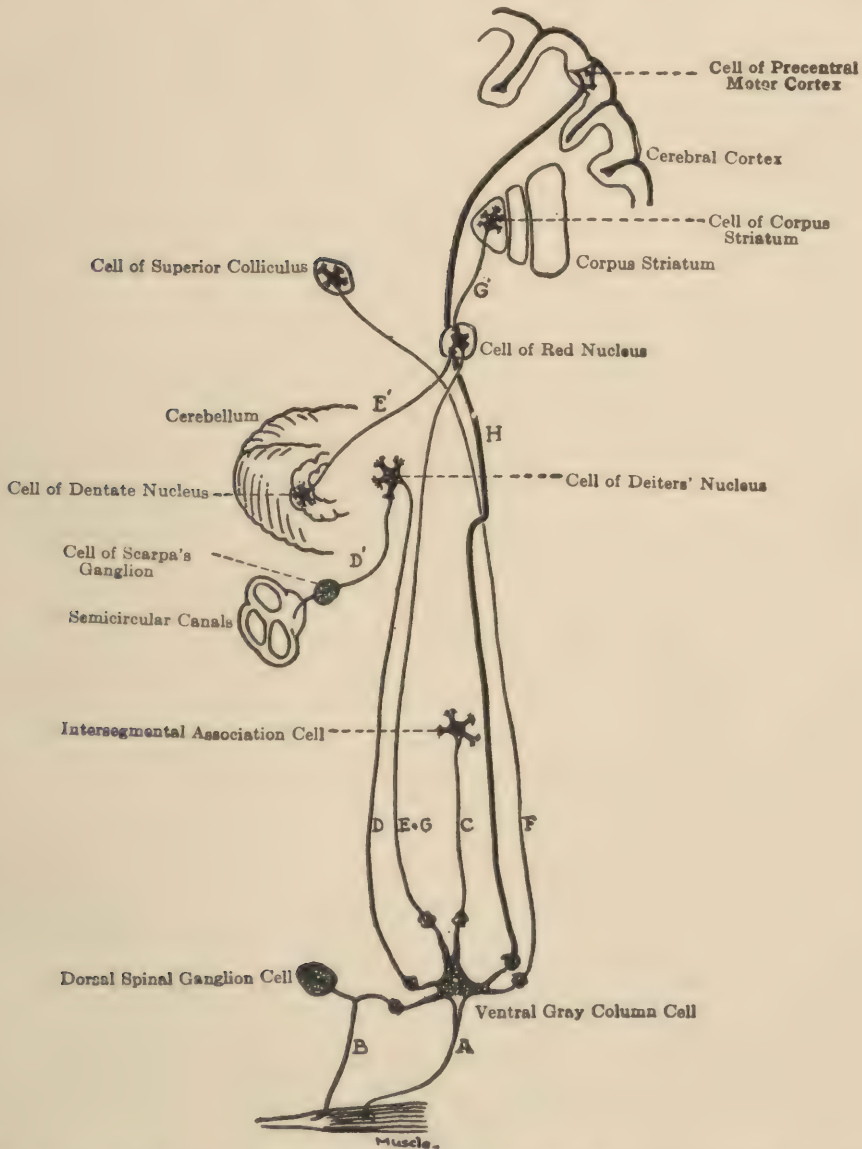


Fig. 148.—Diagram to Show the Paths through Which the Motor Cells of the Spinal Cord Are Influenced. A—Motor Nerve to the Muscle. B—Intrasegmental Reflex. C—Intersegmental Reflex. D—Equilibratory Control. E—Synergic Control. G—Automatic Associated Control. H—Voluntary Control. (From Tilney and Riley.)

muscles. These work together for a common end (synergism). In bending a joint, for example, there is not only a contraction of the flexor

muscles (agonists) but there is at the same time an innervation of the antagonistic extensor muscles. These may be relaxed through inhibition of their tonus (reciprocal inhibition) or they may contract, but to a lesser degree than the agonists, acting as a check upon them. Vastly more complex than the simple flexion of a joint are such movements as walking, writing and piano-playing. These require the coördinated activity of a very large number of muscles, the activities of which are constantly and rapidly changing as the different movements are performed.

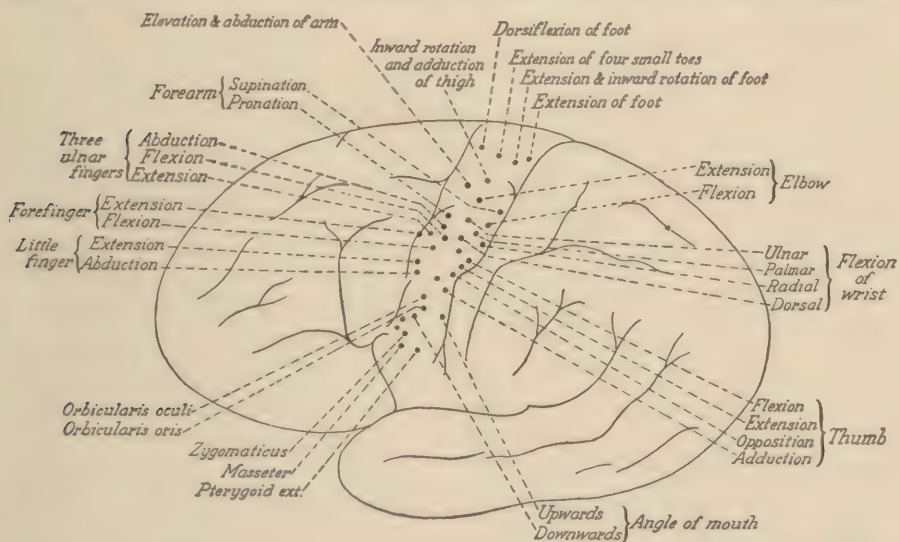
The contraction or inhibition of each muscle is governed by impulses passing out from the motor cells of the spinal cord over the final common pathway. The activities of these cells in turn are influenced by nerve impulses which come to them from various sources (Fig. 148). Those which descend from the motor cortex of the cerebrum by way of the pyramidal tracts make possible a volitional control of muscular movements. Impulses which originate in the periphery of the body also influence the motor cells of the cord. These furnish data concerning the position and movements of the body as a whole and the position and movements of each of its parts. Particularly important among these guiding afferent impulses are those received by way of the nerves of deep sensibility from the joints and muscles of the part of the body that is moved. These afferent impulses coming from the periphery may modify the activity of the ventral horn cells shortly after they have entered the cord or they may ascend to higher levels and modify the activities of centers situated in the cerebellum and in the cerebral cortex. Afferent impulses from the eyes and from the vestibular apparatus of the internal ear likewise serve to guide muscular activity. One of the central connections of the vestibular nerve is with Deiter's nucleus in the medulla, from which nucleus tracts of fibers (tractus vestibulo-spinalis) descend in the cord and establish connection with the motor cells. Finally, the motor cells of the cord are influenced by impulses descending from the cerebellum and the corpus striatum by way of the red nucleus and the rubro-spinal tract. Those from the cerebellum appear to synergise many important combinations of muscular movements. Those from the corpus striatum appear to control certain automatic and associated movements. These last associations are of considerable significance in the lower mammals, where there is little cortical development. They are of less significance in man because the activities of the cerebral and cerebellar centers overshadow the activities of the corpus striatum. None the less, serious motor disturbances in man may result from disease of the corpus striatum.

### *Paralysis and Paresis*

By paralysis is meant a complete loss of voluntary control of a muscle or group of muscles. Incomplete loss of voluntary control is known as paresis. Paralyses are divided into two major types according to the

group of cells or fibers that are injured. In the lower neuron type of paralysis the final common pathway extending from the ventral horns of the spinal cord to the muscles is damaged. In the upper neuron type the pathway which carries volitional impulses from the cortex of the brain to the ventral horn cells is injured.

**Lower Neuron Paralysis.**—Paralyses of this type result from injuries to the final common pathway. Serious damage to a nerve, whether from mechanical injury, prolonged pressure or inflammation, will interrupt, more or less completely, the transport of motor impulses from the cord to the muscle. Lower neuron paralyses also result from diseases which injure the ventral horn cells of the spinal cord or which involve the analogous collections of motor cells in the brain stem. In acute anterior polio-



Courtesy of Nelson Loose Leaf Medicine

Fig. 149.—Representation of the Points on the Cortex of the Precentral Convolution of Man From Which Movements of the Opposite Half of the Body Were Obtained by Electrical Stimulation. (Adapted from F. Krause, Nelson's Loose-Leaf Living Medicine.)

myelitis, for example, damage to these motor cells causes the paralysis characteristic of this disease.

Paralyses of the lower neuron type are accompanied by a number of changes which serve to distinguish them from paralyses caused by diseases affecting the upper neurons. In the first place, destruction of the final common pathway abolishes all reflex activities of the affected muscles. Tendon and skin reflexes are alike lost, so far as these muscles are concerned. In the second place, the tone of the paralyzed muscles is lost. They become soft and flabby. Finally, as time goes on, the affected muscles show a very marked atrophy. They become small, owing to a disappearance of their contractile elements.

This atrophy is accompanied by changes in the electrical excitability



of the paralyzed muscles and their nerves. These electrical changes, known as the *reaction of degeneration*, are characterized (1) by a loss of nerve excitability to both galvanic and faradic stimulation, (2) by a loss of muscular excitability to faradic stimulation and (3) by an altered response when the muscle is stimulated by opening or closing the galvanic current. The response is sluggish and wormlike and it is more readily excited by anodal closure than by cathodal closure, thus reversing the normal effectiveness of these two types of stimulation.

**Upper Neuron Paralysis.**—The nerve fibers of the upper motor neuron take their origin from the large pyramidal cells of the motor cortex. This motor region of the cerebral cortex lies just anterior to the fissure of Rolando, the different portions of the body being represented by different subdivisions of the motor cortex. From above downward the representation is as follows: lower extremity, trunk, upper extremity and face (Fig. 149). The nerve fibers which descend from the motor cortex form part of the corona radiata and inner capsule. They are later united in a compact bundle, known as the pyramidal tract. In the lower medulla the majority of the pyramidal fibers cross to the opposite side (pyramidal decussation) and continue their descent as the lateral pyramidal tract of the spinal cord. A much smaller number descend uncrossed in the anterior column of the cord.

The upper neuron may be interrupted at any point in its course. Disease of the motor cortex frequently causes irritative symptoms (convulsive movements) before paralysis occurs. When only a portion of the motor area is involved, the paralysis on the opposite side of the body is correspondingly limited. The internal capsule is a common site of cerebral hemorrhages. Here the fibers from the corresponding hemisphere are in close juxtaposition and the entire opposite half of the body is usually paralyzed. In the cord, the pyramidal tracts may be injured by the pressure of a tumor or a fractured vertebra, or they may be the seat of degenerative processes. Cord lesions commonly injure the pyramidal tracts of both sides and consequently cause a bilateral paralysis below the site of disease.

In upper neuron paralysis there is loss of volitional control over the affected muscles. Since the final common pathway, together with some of its various connections, are still intact, movements of the paralyzed muscles are still possible. The paralyzed extremities may, for example, be moved during yawning or coughing or the paralyzed arm may move at the same time as the opposite leg during walking. These are automatic associated movements which originate in the corpus striatum.

Reflex movements are often altered in a characteristic manner. Such reflex changes constitute one of the important signs of upper neuron paralysis. The *tendon reflexes* are usually exaggerated and, in place of obtaining a single reflex movement, one may, under proper conditions,

obtain the series of contractions known as *clonus*. Apparently the upper neuron normally exerts an inhibitory influence upon the tendon reflexes, and, when this restraint is removed, the reflexes are increased. After complete transverse cord lesions the tendon reflexes are first lost below the level of the lesion but they may later reappear. The cause of these changes is not clear.

In upper neuron paralysis, certain *superficial skin reflexes*, such as the abdominal and cremasteric reflexes, may be diminished or lost. Other skin reflexes become qualitatively altered. When the sole of the foot is scratched with a dull instrument, the normal response is a plantar flexion of the great toe. In upper neuron paralysis the characteristic response is a slow, deliberate movement of the great toe towards the dorsum of the foot, accompanied by spreading of the other toes (Babinski's sign). A similar reflex may be elicited by firmly rubbing the edges of the tibia (Oppenheim's sign).

*Muscular tone* is not lost in upper neuron paralysees. On the contrary, it is usually increased. This increased tone causes the affected extremity to become stiff and unwieldy (spasticity). It may also lead to contractures, when the spastic muscles are not opposed by muscles of equal strength or increased tone. For this reason the hemiplegic commonly carries his paralyzed arm close to the body with the elbow, wrist and finger joints flexed, and he walks with the affected knee stiffly extended. Since the tone of the muscles is preserved, no marked (degenerative) atrophy takes place. Also there are no changes in the response to electrical stimulation.

**Mixed Types of Paralysis.**—Diseases of the cord, medulla or pons may injure both the pyramidal tracts and the motor nuclei situated in the region of the disease. The former produces an upper neuron paralysis below the level of disease. The latter produces a lower neuron paralysis at this level. Disease of the cord in the lower cervical region, for example, may cause an atrophic paralysis in one or both hands and a spastic paralysis of the legs.

A unilateral lesion involving the pyramidal fibers above their decussation in the lower medulla can cause a spastic paralysis of the opposite arm and leg. At the same time, it may injure a lower motor neuron which supplies the same side of the face. When this occurs at the level of the eye muscle nuclei, there results a homolateral eye muscle paralysis and a contralateral hemiplegia (Weber's Syndrome). When it occurs a little lower down, there is a homolateral facial paralysis and a contralateral paralysis of the extremities (Millard-Gubler Syndrome).

### **Motor Apraxia**

It has been pointed out that the immediate volitional control of muscular movements is exercised by the large pyramidal cells of the precentral convolution. Nerve impulses from these cells pass by way of the pyra-

midal tract fibers to the motor cells of the spinal cord and medulla; and these latter cells, in turn, guide muscular acts through the nerve fibers which extend from them to the voluntary muscles. Destruction of these cells or nerve paths leads to a loss of volitional control over the corresponding muscles.

As we have pointed out, however, there is a vast difference between a simple muscular contraction and the group of movements which accomplishes a given result. To accomplish such a result various muscles must act together, some more powerfully than others. The speed, force and duration of each contraction must be properly adjusted and the succession of various movements must be properly timed. Such a complex combination of muscular activity is guided in part by afferent impulses from various parts of the body and in part by arrangements within the central nervous system itself. For each act, or part of an act, there is, as it were, a pattern in the central nervous system which determines the successive impulses. The location of these governing patterns varies. As we have pointed out, the cerebellum synergizes many complex movements and the corpus striatum is of importance in controlling automatic associated movements. Patterns also occur in the spinal cord, for, after section of the upper cord in dogs, irritation of the flank may cause a scratching reflex which requires the coördinated activity of a group of muscles. Patterns for muscular movements also exist in the motor cortex of the brain, for stimulation of the cortex does not cause a contraction of individual muscles, but causes movements which involve the use of several muscles.

Some complex patterns are present at birth—such, for example, as that which controls the sucking movements. Others are normally acquired as the child grows older, while still others are only learned after considerable conscious effort. Piano-playing, writing, and speech are some of the common motor activities which are acquired with more or less conscious effort. Eventually, these are executed almost unconsciously. A pattern for the movement in question has been acquired through practice.

The nervous patterns for skilled acts such as writing and speaking, which are characteristically human attributes and which have been acquired through effort, are believed to be located in the intermediate precentral cortical area. This lies in the frontal lobe just anterior to the precentral motor cortex. The destruction of this region does not cause muscular paralysis, but is believed to cause an inability to perform certain skilled acts.

Motor speech is a highly developed skilled act, essentially human, which involves the use of many muscles about the larynx, the pharynx and the mouth. Lesions of the lower left frontal lobe, just in front of the motor area (Broca's convolution), frequently cause a serious disturbance in the speech, which is not dependent upon a paralysis of the speech muscles. It appears to be due to a loss of the center which normally



guides the use of successive muscles in articulation. Such a person is said to have *motor aphasia*. Similarly, a lesion in the intermediate precentral area just anterior to that portion of the precentral cortex which controls the right hand may lead to an inability to write, even though there is no paralysis of the corresponding muscles. This is known as *agraphia*. Other types of the loss of skilled muscular movements are less common than the two that have been cited. Such conditions in general are known as *motor apraxia*.

### ***Irritative Motor Symptoms***

Certain types of injury to the upper and lower motor neurons cause an increased activity of the corresponding muscles. Such irritative motor symptoms seldom result from diseases that affect the nerve fibers only. They usually indicate an injury of the motor nerve cells, either in the motor cortex of the brain, or in the ventral horns of the spinal cord. Such irritative symptoms may eventually be followed by paralysis; for the same lesion, which at first stimulates, may later destroy the center.

### ***Fibrillary Twitchings***

Fibrillary twitchings consist of irregular incoördinated contractions of small groups of muscle fibers within the affected muscles. These contractions are easily seen on close inspection of a superficial muscle. They involve minute portions of the muscle and occur in constant succession; now here, now there. They resemble the fibrillary movements observed when an individual is chilly. Fibrillary twitchings are most commonly observed in diseases which irritate and eventually destroy the cells of the lower motor neurons, such as progressive muscular atrophy, bulbar paralysis, etc. In these diseases, there eventually develops a lower neuron paralysis of the affected muscles with atrophy and the reaction of degeneration. Occasionally, fibrillary twitchings are seen in lesions of the motor nerves, such as neuritis.

### ***Myoclonic Contractions***

Myoclonic contractions consist of momentary contractions of muscles or groups of muscles. There is a cortical form of myoclonia in which synergic groups of muscles are affected and considerable locomotor effects produced. In a stricter sense, however, the term myoclonia is applied to momentary contractions which appear to be of spinal origin. In their sudden onset and brief duration as well as in their limitation to single muscles, to portions of muscles or to groups of muscles that are not normally used alone, myoclonic contractions resemble the contractions produced by electric stimulation of nerves or muscles. In both electric stimulation and myoclonic contractions of the spinal type there is no co-

operative activity of muscular groups toward the production of a given movement (synergism) but only a brief purposeless twitch of one or more muscles. Myoclonic contractions usually recur irregularly in the same or different muscles.

Myoclonic contractions have been noted particularly in patients suffering from epidemic encephalitis. In this disease they may be followed by local recovery or by local paralysis, according as the disease process ends in local repair or in local destruction. They appear to be due to an irritative lesion involving the motor cells of the ventral horn of the spinal cord.

### *Convulsions*

Extensive convulsions may be due to irritative lesions which affect either the motor centers of the central cortex or those of the spinal cord and medulla.

**Spinal Convulsions.**—The best known examples of convulsions caused by increased irritability in the spinal cord and medulla are those of tetanus and strychnin poisoning.

The convulsive seizures due to these causes are mainly of a tonic type; that is to say, the wide-spread contraction of muscles over the body is accompanied by relatively little movement. In *strychnin poisoning* the seizures usually begin with a number of rapid intermittent convulsive movements, but soon the tonic spasm develops and all muscles of the body pass into a state of violent contraction. Since the stronger muscle groups overcome the weaker, the back and the neck are arched (opisthotonos), the legs and arms are rigidly extended, and the jaw is clenched. The reciprocal relation, which characterizes normal innervation and which leads to inhibition of one muscle group when its opponents contract, is entirely absent in strychnin poisoning. The convulsions of strychnin poisoning last but a few minutes. They are succeeded by a period of relaxation and exhaustion and later by a recurrence of the spasm.

In *tetanus* the tonicity of the affected muscles is more continuously increased than it is in strychnin poisoning. The convulsions are due to a further and violent increase of this tone. The head is thrown back, the back is arched, either forward or backward, the arms and legs are rigidly extended and the face is tense and drawn, producing the sardonic grin. In tetanus there is a peculiar tendency toward tonic spasm of the muscles which close the jaw (lock-jaw) and this may be the earliest or indeed the only convulsive manifestation of the disease.

In both tetanus and strychnin poisoning, the convulsions are due to changes in the spinal cord and the corresponding portion of the medulla. They are not affected by removing the brain. The convulsions themselves are frequently precipitated by sudden sensory stimuli, such as a loud noise, a flash of light or a sudden movement. If such stimuli are avoided,

so far as possible, the convulsions are less frequent but not entirely abolished. Animal experiments have shown, however, that if all sensory stimuli are prevented from reaching any portion of the cord—which can be accomplished by cutting its posterior nerve roots and at the same time dividing it from the remainder of the cord—then the muscles supplied by this isolated region no longer take part in the convulsions. It is evident, therefore, that convulsions of this type are excited by afferent stimuli and are reflex in origin. Recent experiments in which strychnin solutions were applied to limited areas of the cord seem to show that in order to produce typical convulsions it is necessary to poison both the posterior cord, where the afferent impulses enter, and the anterior cord, whence the muscles are innervated.

In *hydrophobia* there is usually a spasm of the muscles of deglutition, which occurs whenever the patient attempts to swallow. Thus he develops a fear of swallowing (*hydrophobia*). The mechanism of this spasm appears to be similar to the mechanism in tetanus but the spasm is commonly limited to a small group of muscles. Other nervous symptoms, particularly of a paralytic nature, are common in this disease.

**Epileptiform Convulsions.**—Convulsions of an epileptic type are usually due to an irritation of the motor portion of the cerebral cortex. This irritation may be caused by toxic substances, as in uremia and eclampsia; it may be due to a local disease of the cortex, as in vascular disease or tumor; or it may be due to reflex influences. In addition to the epileptiform convulsions of known origin we have those for which no cause has been discovered. These are commonly spoken of as idiopathic epilepsy.

The typical *major attack of epilepsy* often begins with sensory disturbances (sensory aura). The patient may see flashes of light, hear sounds, smell odors or experience paresthesias over some portion or other of the body. Following this he falls unconscious. At first the muscular contractions are of a tonic type, the arms and legs being rigidly extended. This tonic phase is shortly followed by the characteristic clonic movements. These are at first slight in extent but they rapidly become more and more marked and violent. Frequently the tongue is bitten during this stage and the patient may have involuntary losses of urine and feces. Gradually the convulsive movements die down and the patient recovers consciousness. He may then show transitory mental excitement; but as a rule he is drowsy and sleeps for several hours.

The *minor epileptic attack, or petit mal*, is characterized by a transient loss of consciousness which is not followed by general convulsive movements.

The *Jacksonian type of epilepsy* begins in a definite group of muscles. Here it may remain localized or it may spread from here over other parts of the body. The spread occurs in such a manner as to indicate that ad-



jacent portions of the cortex are successively involved. Jacksonian attacks frequently cause no loss of consciousness and the patient himself may watch the onset and spread of his convulsive movements. The movements themselves may be tonic or clonic in character, there being no such definite succession as occurs in typical major epilepsy. Jacksonian epilepsy is usually due to a local disease of the cerebral cortex. The site of the initial movements may aid materially in locating the disease.

**Hysterical Convulsions.**—Hysterical convulsions are characterized by the fact that the movements are frequently those accompanying emotions, such as anger, joy, or erotism. The movements are often purposeful, the patient resisting or striking at those who attend him. The character of the movements may also be changed by verbal suggestion. It is rare for hysterical persons to injure themselves in their attacks and, as a rule, they are not deeply unconscious.

### ***Motor Disturbances Referable to the Corpus Striatum***

Thus far, the discussion of motor disturbances has been restricted to those which arise from diseases of the lower motor neurons or of the neurons which extend from the motor cortex to the cord. We have pointed out, however, that the motor centers of the cord are also influenced by sets of fibers coming from other parts of the brain. The *lower vertebrates* possess no motor cortex and in them suprasegmental control of motion is exercised mainly through the corpus striatum. Only in mammals and particularly in the *higher mammals* does the motor cortex attain any high degree of development. This corresponds with their increasing ability to learn new and complex movements. In the lower animals, where the chief suprasegmental motor center is the corpus striatum, muscular movements are largely of a stereotyped character. The swimming of fish, the flying of birds, the running of quadrupeds, are examples of this type of muscular activity. Such movements, which follow a definite stereotyped course, and which are instinctive rather than acquired, are known as *automatic associated movements*.

Many examples might be given of automatic associated movements occurring in normal men. In walking and running, for example, each step is commonly accompanied by a forward movement of the opposite arm. This association of movements in the arms and legs during walking and running is the same as the association of movements in the fore and hind legs of walking or trotting quadrupeds. In more complex movements, such as turning, rising, sitting down or jumping, a large number of movements take place together and many of these appear to be of the automatic associated type. The bilateral expressive movements of the face appear to belong to this group. The toes of one foot commonly move together. Only by special effort and training can the individual toes be

used separately. The wrist is dorsi-flexed when the fist is closed sharply. These are familiar examples of associated movements in the normal human being.

**Automatic Associated Movements in Cortical Lesions.**—We have seen that, in man, control of associated movements by the corpus striatum is overshadowed by the volitional control exercised by the motor cortex. If the cortical control is lessened through disease, however, the automatic associated movements may become relatively prominent. The hemiplegic who is able to walk but hardly able to use his paralyzed arm may still swing that arm, even to an exaggerated degree, with each step taken by the normal opposite leg. The hemiplegic on awakening may stretch his paralyzed extremities in a yawning movement. When the hemiplegic attempts to grasp an object with the partially paralyzed hand the associated dorsiflexion of the wrist is often excessive and cannot be suppressed. If he lies on his back and attempts to lift the knee there is often an associated contraction of the tibialis anticus muscle. If he attempts to raise the shoulders off the bed the partly paralyzed leg will be momentarily raised. Such associated movements in lesions involving the pyramidal tract fibers or their cells are of interest, not only because they show the activity of other suprasegmental motor centers, but because they serve to differentiate such lesions from paralyzes due to hysteria or simulation.

**The Paralysis Agitans Syndrome.**—The clinical picture of paralysis agitans is characterized by tremor, muscular rigidity and a loss of certain automatic movements. The characteristic tremor in the fingers suggests the movements used in rolling a pill. It can usually be controlled by effort but is made worse by emotion. The rigidity is symmetrical and usually affects many muscles of the body. This gives to the patient the characteristic stooping posture, the mask-like expression of the face and the difficulty in performing many movements. The loss of automatic movements make difficult many of the commoner complex movements, such as walking, running, rising from a chair, sitting down, etc.

Recent studies of the pathology of paralysis agitans indicate that it is due to changes in the corpus striatum. According to Hunt the essential change involves the large nerve cells which are particularly characteristic of the globus pallidus of the lenticular nucleus. In the juvenile type of paralysis agitans there appears to be a specific atrophy of these cells. In the commoner senile or pre-senile type of the disease the lesion may be of an atrophic or vascular character. The paralysis agitans syndrome may also be produced by any cause that injures the corpus striatum. It has been described in hemorrhages, tumors and inflammations affecting this region. A not uncommon type of lethargic encephalitis is characterized by a group of symptoms simulating paralysis agitans.

**Other Corpus Striatum Symptoms.**—In addition to the paralysis agitans syndrome, a number of other symptom complexes have been at-

tributed to disease of the corpus striatum. One may mention Huntington's chorea, double athetosis, Wilson's progressive lenticular degeneration, and several others. Although these diseases or syndromes differ from one another, nevertheless they are characterized chiefly by changes in muscular tone and in the automatic involuntary movements. In some there are marked contractures which may be more or less restricted to certain groups of muscles. The degree and location of these contractures differ from the uniform stiffness of paralysis agitans. The movements present may also differ from those of paralysis agitans. In many of these diseases, the movements are of choreiform type. In others, the movements have the continuous, slow and twisting character known as athetosis. The exact cause of these various types of abnormal muscular activity is not definitely understood. There is a growing tendency, however, to attribute them all to alterations of function in the corpus striatum.

### *Ataxia*

By ataxia we mean an imperfect control of muscular movements. Instead of being carried out in the smooth and precise manner that occurs normally, they are uncertain and irregular. Ataxia can be demonstrated by various tests, common among which is the endeavor to touch the tip of the nose with one finger or the endeavor to place the heel of one foot on the knee of the opposite leg and then to slide the heel down the tibial crest to the toes. In these tests the lack of muscular control may become more evident if the movement is performed very slowly or if it be performed with the eyes closed. Ataxia is frequently manifest during walking, for walking requires the coördinated activity of a great number of muscles. The above types of ataxia, which appear on motion, are called *dynamic ataxia*. In *static ataxia*, the incoördination is evident when the individual attempts to maintain quiet while opposing the force of gravity. He may be unable to stand without swaying or he may be unable to extend the hands without having them execute irregular movements.

We have already pointed out that even the simplest movements require the coördinated activity of a number of muscles. Although this coördination is in part dependent upon patterns in the motor cortex and in the spinal cord, these are insufficient for the normal execution of movements. Other mechanisms exercise a guiding influence. The most important of these consists of the afferent impulses that come from various parts of the body and particularly from the joints, tendons and muscles of the portion of the body that is put in motion. These afferent impulses of deep sensibility are assisted by the afferent impulses which come from the eyes and from the vestibular apparatus. The second mechanism which lies outside of the cortical and spinal centers and which assists in the control of voluntary movement, is located in the cerebellum. The



chief function of this part of the brain appears to consist in synergizing the various muscular activities so that they work together to produce certain movements or to maintain certain postures.

### *Ataxia from Lack of Afferent Control*

Section of the dorsal afferent spinal roots from an extremity causes not only a loss of conscious sensation in this extremity, but it also produces a marked motor disturbance. In the monkey, if all afferent brachial roots except the last cervical are divided on one side, thus interrupting deep sensation from the arm but preserving cutaneous sensation from the hand, this limb may be used, but the movements are clumsy and irregular. On attempting to pick up a nut the arm sways and the hand may miss the object altogether. If the afferent roots from one hind leg of the dog are cut, the animal will be left eventually with a disturbance in gait characterized by lifting the leg very high in walking. If the dorsal roots from both hind legs are cut and the animal is allowed to recover, he will eventually use the hind legs, but the motions will be irregular and of but little help in walking, although the legs are still of assistance in standing. These and similar experiments prove the importance of afferent impulses in the control of muscular activity.

**Ataxia in Tabes.**—The most common form of ataxia encountered in man is that due to tabes dorsalis. In this disease there are lesions in the dorsal root fibers and a degeneration of the posterior columns of the cord. The individual walks with an unsteady, loose gait, which is accentuated if he does not use his eyes. He is unsteady in standing and this unsteadiness is markedly increased if the eyes are closed (Romberg sign). Other signs of dynamic and static ataxia are frequently present.

The ataxia of tabes is due to a diminution of the normal afferent control over muscular movements. Definite losses of deep sensibility can usually be demonstrated. Frequently the patient is unable to recognize passive movements of the great toe (or other parts of the body) when his eyes are closed. He may even be unable to describe the position of his legs in bed without looking at them. While some changes in deep sensibility are almost invariably demonstrable in tabetic ataxia, the severity of these changes does not always parallel the severity of the ataxia, and it is said by some that the deep sensibility may even be normal. In such cases it is possible that the deep spinal connections of these nerves are interrupted, although their cerebral connections are uninjured. Superficial skin sensations may also be disturbed in tabes. These disturbances doubtlessly increase the difficulties of the patient but in themselves do not produce ataxia. The latter is due to a loss of afferent impulses from the joints and muscular structures.

The *loss of tendon reflexes* in the legs (knee jerks and ankle jerks),

which is so common in tabes, is due to an interruption of the reflex arc, either in the dorsal root fibers, or their immediate connections in the cord.

*Hypotonia* in the muscles is also common in this disease, for the normal tone of the muscles is dependent in large part upon afferent impulses coming from the muscles themselves and from neighboring structures. The loss of tone causes the muscles to become flabby. The joints show an excessive mobility, for their movements are normally limited by the tone of the surrounding muscles.

**Other Types of Afferent Ataxia.**—An ataxia similar to that which occurs in tabes dorsalis may complicate any disease that interrupts the conduction of afferent impulses from the joints and muscles. It is observed occasionally in neuritis. It may also occur as a result of the spinal cord degenerations which sometimes complicate pernicious anemia or pellagra.

### *Cerebellar Ataxia*

The functions of the cerebellum, though much discussed, are still obscure in many particulars. It seems certain, however, that the cerebellum plays an important rôle in directing muscular activity. Studies on patients indicate that the principal function of the cerebellum consists in synergizing the various muscular groups which participate in executing many movements. We have previously pointed out that large numbers of muscles throughout the body are in constant and varying degrees of activity, partly to maintain a general equilibrium, and partly to attain smoothness and accuracy of motion. The cerebellum appears to be the principal organ which controls this simultaneous activity of different muscles for the purpose of maintaining equilibrium and executing movements.

In cerebellar disease, a great variety of muscular disturbances may be attributed to a *loss of muscular synergy*. The typical *cerebellar gait* resembles the reeling gait of a drunken man. The trunk is not properly balanced and the tendency to incline toward one side or the other leads to corresponding changes in the movements of the legs. The disturbance in gait can be increased by asking the patient to turn suddenly while walking. It is not influenced by closing the eyes to the same degree as is the ataxia of tabes. The patient with cerebellar disease, in executing movements of the extremities, may *carry out the component elements of the movement in succession instead of simultaneously*. Thus, when asked to touch an object with his foot, the patient may first flex the thigh upon the hip and then extend the leg on the knee instead of doing both together. Movements of the legs or arms are often executed in a jerky fashion, and the first movement often overshoots the mark owing to the muscular asynergy. The rapid repetition of a given movement, such as alternate pronation and supination of the hand, may bring out clearly the lack of

muscular control (*adiadochokinesis*). The *speech* may be jerky, irregular and explosive. The eyes may show continuous or irregular *nystagmus*. The extended hands may show a tremor which becomes more marked on muscular effort (*intention tremor*). All of these characteristic manifestations of cerebellar disease can be explained on the assumption that there has been a loss in the normal synergistic control of various muscle groups in the body.

### *The Visceral Nervous System*

The various glands and involuntary muscles of the body receive their nerve supply from the visceral or autonomic nervous system. This consists

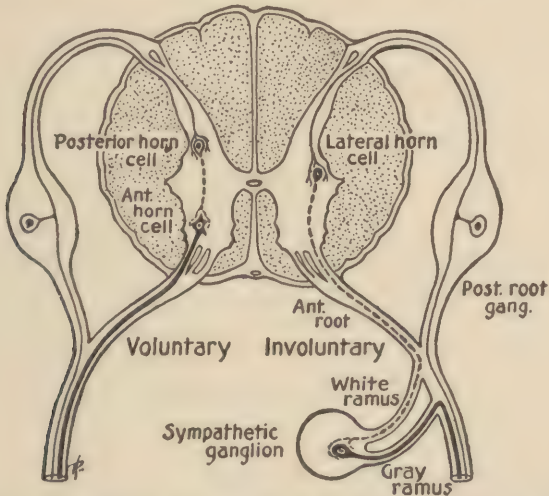


Fig. 150.—Diagram to Illustrate the Difference in the Reflex Arc in the Voluntary and the Sympathetic Nervous Systems. In the Latter the Afferent Fibers End About Cells Lying in the Lateral Column of the Gray Matter of the Cord. Connector Fibers From Here Leave the Cord through the Ventral Roots, and Pass to the Sympathetic Ganglia by the White Rami Communicantes Where They Terminate About the Cells of the Efferent Neurons. (From Gaskell.)

of two subsidiary nervous systems which differ from each other in their cerebrospinal connections, in the course of their fibers, in their actions upon the visceral functions and in their reactions to certain drugs.

**Sympathetic System.**—The first of the subdivisions of the visceral nervous system is known as the sympathetic system. It is connected with the thoracic and lumbar portions of the spinal cord and with the chain of sympathetic ganglia lying ventral to the spinal column. Afferent fibers of this system coming from the viscera and apparently having their nerve cells in the dorsal root ganglia, enter the cord in the dorsal nerve roots and terminate about cells located in the lateral horns of gray matter of the thoracic and lumbar cord (Fig. 150). From here connector neurons pass out of the cord in the ventral nerve roots and cross to the sympathetic



ganglia by way of the white rami communicantes. Some of these connector fibers end about cells in the ganglia of the sympathetic chain, frequently passing through one or more ganglia before their termination. Other fibers pass through the ganglionic chain to end in peripherally located ganglia, such as the semilunar, the superior mesenteric, and the inferior mesenteric ganglia. From the various ganglia a set of effector fibers extend to the glandular and muscular elements of the viscera. The connector fibers which establish communication between the lateral horns of the cord and cells in the sympathetic ganglia, though medullated, are much smaller in diameter than are the medullated fibers which run to the voluntary muscles. On account of their medullation the rami communicantes which carry them are white. The effector fibers which extend from the ganglia to the viscera are non-medullated. Those which leave the chain of sympathetic ganglia to enter the peripheral nerves for distribution to the vessels of the muscles and skin, to the sweat glands and to the erector pilae, form the gray rami communicantes which connect these ganglia with the peripheral nerves.

**Bulbosacral System.**—The second subdivision of the visceral nervous system is known as the parasympathetic or bulbosacral system. Its fibers are connected with the cranial and sacral extremities of the cerebrospinal axis. Visceral fibers belonging to this group are found in the third, seventh, ninth, tenth and eleventh cranial nerves and in the pelvic visceral nerve, also known as the nervus erigens. The efferent fibers found in these nerves usually terminate in ganglia that are located close to the organs supplied by them. From these ganglia the effector fibers are distributed to the tissues.

**Distribution and Action.**—The origin, distribution and physiological actions of the chief subdivisions of the vegetative nervous system are shown in the accompanying table and diagram (Fig. 151). It will be noted that in most instances a single organ receives fibers from both the sympathetic and from the bulbosacral divisions of the autonomic system. When this is the case, the two commonly exert a mutually antagonistic action. For example, stimulation of the bulbosacral fibers in the third nerve cause myosis through contraction of the circular muscle fibers of the iris, whereas stimulation of the cervical sympathetic causes mydriasis through contraction of the radial fibers of the iris. Similarly, stimulation of the vagus slows the heart rate, whereas stimulation of the sympathetic (accelerator) nerve increases this rate. Stimulation of the vagus increases the tone and contractions of the intestines, while stimulation of the splanchnic nerves causes relaxation. In other instances, the sympathetic and bulbosacral impulses to a given organ influence its activity in the same direction but in different ways. Thus the submaxillary gland pours out a viscid secretion after sympathetic stimulation and an abundant clear secretion after stimulation of the chorda tympani. Finally, certain glands

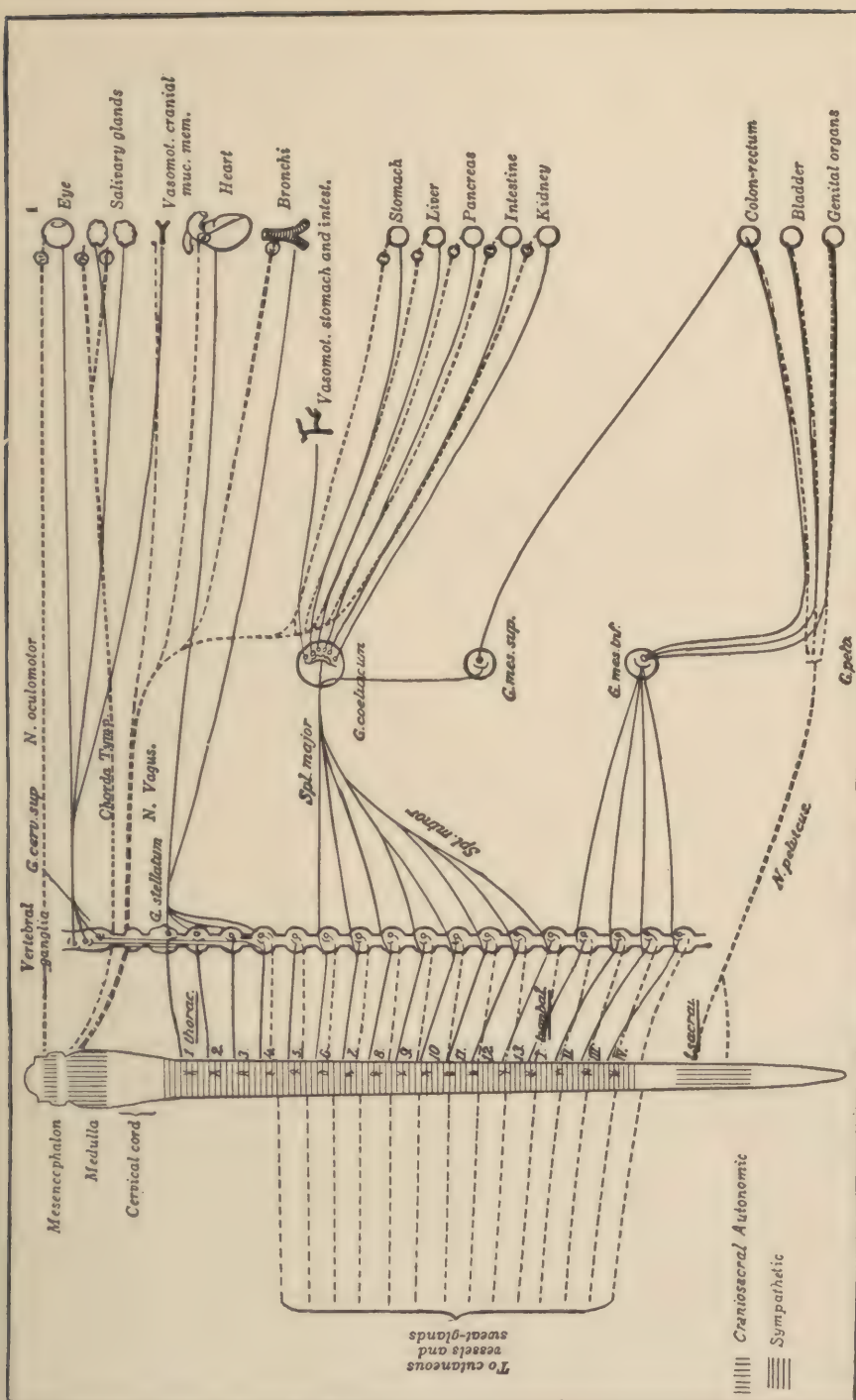


Fig. 151.—Diagram of the Autonomic or Vegetative Nervous System. The Sympathetic Innervation is indicated by the Continuous Black Line and the Light Dotted Lines Arising from the Sympathetic Segments (Horizontal Etching). The Craniosacral Autonomic is indicated by the Heavy Dotted Lines Arising from the Craniosacral Segments (Vertical Etching). (After H. H. Meyer and R. Gottlieb, "Die Experimentell Pharmacologie" published by Urban and Schwarzenberg, Berlin.)

and smooth muscles, particularly those in the skin and the muscles of many blood vessels, appear to be innervated only by sympathetic fibers.

**Effect of Drugs.**—Much of our knowledge concerning the distribution and functions of the visceral nervous system has been learned through an analysis of the effect of drugs upon its component parts. Nicotin in proper concentration paralyzes the connection between the sympathetic connector fibers and the cells that give rise to the final effector fibers. By painting a sympathetic ganglion with a weak solution of this drug it is therefore possible to stop impulses which are relayed in this ganglion without affecting those which pass through the ganglion without relay. Using this method, Langley has done much to clarify our conception of the complex course of sympathetic impulses.

Certain drugs exert a selective action upon one or other of the chief subdivisions of the visceral nervous system. Atropin in proper doses paralyzes the bulbosacral terminals. After its administration, the pupils dilate, the heart rate increases, and bronchial and intestinal spasms may be relieved. Pilocarpin stimulates the bulbosacral system, producing effect opposite to those produced by atropin. On the other hand, epinephrin stimulates the sympathetic terminals. After a sufficient dose, the blood pressure is raised, sugar is discharged from the liver, and under proper experimental conditions, the pupils dilate, the heart rate increases and the intestines are relaxed. Other drugs show similar selective effects. It should be noted, however, that this selection is not perfect. A particularly striking exception are the sweat glands. These are innervated from the thoracicolumbar region of the cord, but their reaction to drugs suggests a bulbosacral nerve supply. They are hardly influenced by epinephrin, but are excited to activity by pilocarpin and are depressed by atropin.

### *Nervous Disturbances of the Internal Organs*

In discussing functional disturbances of the various organs, frequent reference has been made to those which depend upon nervous influences. We may recall here the vagus arrhythmias and the vagus alterations of heart rate, emotional syncope, nervous hyperchlorhydria and pyloric spasm, nervous glycosuria, bronchial spasm from vagus stimulation, fever following brain injuries and the reference of pain from various organs to the surface of the body. In the present place it is our purpose to discuss some general aspects of nervous disturbances of the internal organs.

The activities of the internal organs are by no means so dependent upon nervous control as are the activities of the voluntary muscles. If the nerve supply to the latter is interrupted their activities cease. If it is interrupted to the former no serious result necessarily follows. The heart continues to beat when all its extrinsic nerves are severed, the



arterioles ultimately regain their tone after having been isolated from their nerve supply, and other analogous relations might be cited. Nervous impulses direct and modify the activities of the internal organs, but in most instances they are not essential for a continuation of these activities.

The study of nervous disturbances of the internal organs in patients leads to similar conclusions. In themselves, these rarely threaten life, but they play an important rôle in producing and modifying the symptoms of various ailments, and they may at times be the determining cause of a serious train of disturbances. For example, the rise of blood pressure caused by strong emotion may be the exciting cause of a cerebral hemorrhage or an anginal seizure. Prolonged nervous strain is said by some to play a rôle in producing such serious conditions as chronic arterial hypertension, diabetes mellitus and hyperthyroidism.

**The Causes of Nervous Disorders.**—We have just seen that alterations in the visceral functions may be initiated by changes in the *higher cerebral centers*. The major emotions, fear and anger, are accompanied by changes in the cardiac activity, by changes in the blood pressure, by hyperglycemia and by a depression in the secretory and motor functions of the gastrointestinal tract. Syncope may be due to emotion. Fever may be caused by injury to the brain and particularly to the basal ganglia. The bradycardia of meningitis or increased intracranial pressure is due to stimulation of the *vagus center in the medulla*. Medullary injury may also cause a discharge of glycogen from the liver or alterations in respiration.

Nervous disturbances of the internal functions may also be caused by *reflexes* from other parts of the body. Reflex vomiting may follow changes in the semicircular canals or in the abdominal viscera. Gastric hyperacidity and pyloric spasm are not infrequently associated with disease elsewhere in the abdominal cavity, and the correction of this disease may cause the gastric symptoms to disappear.

Finally, the functions of the internal organs may be disturbed by *toxic substances* which act upon some portion of their peripheral nerve supply. It has been demonstrated that many drugs affect the visceral nervous system in this manner, and it seems not unlikely that various toxic substances which may develop within the body act in a similar manner. Indeed, it has become a rule, in patients showing "nervous" disorders of the internal organs, to search for a toxic or infectious cause. Whether such toxic or infectious causes act primarily upon the visceral nervous system, or whether they influence the parenchyma cells of various organs directly, is difficult to decide; but the involvement of function in many different organs frequently suggests an action upon the nervous structures which are common to all, rather than an intoxication of the parenchymatous structures, which differ so widely, one from the other.

**Vagotonia and Sympatheticotonia.**—We have pointed out that certain drugs act in a selective manner upon one or other of the two main sub-

divisions of the visceral nervous system. This selective action may be explained by assuming that all of the affected nerve structures possess some common chemical structure. The fact that atropin paralyzes the bulbosacral terminals in a variety of organs indicates that all these terminals contain certain chemical substances which are not present in other parts of the body. Similarly, the stimulating effect of epinephrin upon the sympathetic nerve terminals suggests that these possess a common chemical structure which is not present elsewhere. This specific sensitiveness to certain drugs indicates that each subdivision of the visceral nervous system is in a sense a distinct functional unit.

From this, it follows that one might expect to encounter pathological processes in which one or other subdivision of the visceral nervous system was specifically affected. Eppinger and his associates have indeed described two major symptom complexes of this type. One of these is characterized by an overactivity of the bulbosacral nervous system and the other by an overactivity of the sympathetic nervous system. The first is called vagotonia, the second sympatheticonia. The first might be expected to show contracted pupils, bronchial spasm (asthma), bradycardia, sinus irregularity of the heart, partial heart block, gastric hyperacidity, pylorospasm and intestinal hyperperistalsis and spasm. The second might be expected to show dilated pupils, protruding eyeballs, thyroid and adrenal hyperactivity, rapid heart, increased blood pressure, diminished tone and lessened activity in the gastro-intestinal tract, and hyperglycemia with a tendency to alimentary glycosuria.

This conception of systemic visceral neuroses is logical and attractive; yet little success has in fact attended the effort to establish disease complexes of this type. Widely distributed nervous alterations of internal functions are rarely of such a character that they can be attributed to a single type of change in either the bulbosacral or the sympathetic system. As a rule, both subdivisions of the visceral nervous system appear to be involved, or a single division may be overactive at one place and underactive at another. Pure examples of either vagotonia or sympatheticonia are exceedingly rare. To describe others as mixed types is to acknowledge that they do not conform to the fundamental conception of a disease which affects in a specific manner either the bulbosacral or the sympathetic system only.

### ***The Cerebrospinal Fluid***

The central nervous system is surrounded by three membranes. The outer, or *dura mater*, is a tough membrane which lies in intimate contact with the inner table of the skull and is loosely connected with the inner surfaces of the vertebrae. Just within the *dura mater* lies the subdural space. This separates the *dura* from the *arachnoid* membrane, and this

is in turn separated from the *pia mater* by the subarachnoid space. The *pia mater* is closely applied to the central nervous structures and dips into each fold of the brain. The arachnoid, on the other hand, is loosely stretched over these folds. Hence the subarachnoid space shows an enlargement wherever there is a deep depression on the surface of the brain. These enlargements of the subarachnoid space are known as cisterns. The largest is the cisterna magna, which lies between the dorsal surface of the medulla and the lower surface of the cerebellum.

The subarachnoid space contains the cerebrospinal fluid. The latter is also present in the ventricular cavities of the brain. The two communicate through the openings in the roof of the fourth ventricle; viz., the foramen of Majendie and the two foramina of Luschka.

In the adult the spinal cord itself does not extend beyond the level of the first lumbar vertebra. The dural cul-de-sac, however, extends to the second sacral vertebra; and, since the arachnoid follows the dura, there is a prolongation of the subarachnoid space well below the termination of the spinal cord. Cerebrospinal fluid may be withdrawn, without fear of wounding the central nervous structures, by inserting a needle between the lower lumbar vertebrae into this portion of the subarachnoid space. It is a clear, limpid fluid containing some salts, a little globulin and a tract of sugar. The composition of cerebrospinal fluid, therefore, differs from that of most fluids in the body. It resembles the lachrymal secretion more than any other.

**The Circulation of Cerebrospinal Fluid.**—The cerebrospinal fluid is constantly being secreted and absorbed. Where a fracture of the base of the skull has established an opening between the subarachnoid space and the nasal cavity, cerebrospinal fluid escapes continuously, and large quantities may ultimately be lost in this manner. The cerebrospinal fluid is secreted mainly by the choroid plexuses within the ventricles of the brain. Some additional fluid is probably formed in the perivascular sheaths of the arachnoid. The main absorption of cerebrospinal fluid takes place through the subarachnoid villi, which are minute projections of the arachnoid into the veins and sinuses covering the surface of the brain. Absorption also appears to take place by way of the lymphatics.

The major part of the cerebrospinal fluid is therefore formed within the ventricles of the brain. From here it passes through the foramina of Monro to the third ventricle, through the Aqueduct of Sylvius to the fourth ventricle, and from there through the foramina of Majendie and Luschka into the cisterns of the posterior cranial fossa. Eventually it reaches the surface of the cerebrum, where it is absorbed by the veins that are pierced by the subarachnoid villi.

**Functions of the Cerebrospinal Fluid.**—The most obvious function of the cerebrospinal fluid is the protection it affords to the brain, and especially to the pons and the medulla, against the injury that might result



from sudden movements or blows. The cerebrospinal fluid also assists in regulating the intracranial tension. The brain is placed within an unyielding bony cavity. When the contents of this cavity vary, the brain is partly protected against excessive alterations of pressure by movements or variations in the amount of the cerebrospinal fluid. In addition to these mechanical functions, the cerebrospinal fluid is believed by many to play a rôle in the metabolic functions of the central nervous tissues. Details concerning this possible function are not known.

**Variations in Pressure.**—With the patient in the recumbent posture, the average pressure in the cerebrospinal fluid as determined during lumbar puncture is about 110 mm. of water. This pressure is raised by a variety of pathological conditions. Among these are meningitis in its various forms, cerebral tumor and intracranial hemorrhage. In conditions associated with general edema, such as nephritis, eclampsia and advanced cardiac disease, there may be a high cerebrospinal pressure. In all these conditions, headaches and other cerebral symptoms are sometimes relieved by withdrawal of fluid. Occasionally death has followed the withdrawal of spinal fluid from patients with intracranial tumors, particularly those located in the posterior fossa. In such cases, the fatal result appears to have been caused by compression of the bulbar structures which were forced down into the foramen magnum by the high pressure above and the release of pressure below.

Lumbar puncture is not infrequently followed by such unpleasant symptoms as headache, nausea, vomiting and general prostration. These can usually be lessened by assuming a recumbent position, and they are less apt to develop if the patient remains recumbent for twenty-four hours or more after the puncture. Occasionally, however, these symptoms persist for days. Since the secretion of cerebrospinal fluid would rapidly replace the few cubic centimeters of fluid withdrawn during the puncture, the cause for these symptoms is to be sought either in alterations in the brain, which take place at the time of the puncture, or, as many believe, in a continued loss of fluid from the subarachnoid space into the body tissues through the puncture hole in the membranes. The latter would explain the not infrequent cases where prolonged and severe symptoms have followed the withdrawal of even small quantities of fluid.

**Variations in Composition.**—Changes in composition of the cerebrospinal fluid may affect either its chemical properties or its cellular content. The most important chemical change is an increase of protein. This occurs in inflammatory conditions of various kinds. It is particularly marked in the various forms of acute meningitis. In tuberculous meningitis the increase may be marked even though the fluid is quite clear, and a fine fibrin coagulum frequently forms if the fluid is allowed to stand. In syphilitic diseases of the central nervous system with meningeal involvement, some increase of globulin is the rule. In such conditions the

cerebrospinal fluid may show a positive Wassermann reaction even when the blood is negative. These changes in the cerebrospinal fluid have proved of great value in the diagnosis of syphilitic disease of the central nervous system.

Normally the number of cells in the cerebrospinal fluid does not exceed four or five per cubic millimeter, and any increase beyond 8 white cells per cmm. may be regarded as definitely abnormal. Very high cell counts are found in the acute or subacute stages of meningitis. In acute epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis these cells are the polymorphonuclear leucocytes. In tuberculous and syphilitic meningitis, as well as in the chronic stages of infectious meningitis, the prevailing cell is the lymphocyte. An increased cell count, due to meningeal involvement, is common also in acute anterior poliomyelitis, encephalitis lethargica, general paresis, cerebral abscess, herpes zoster, mumps, sleeping sickness, cysticercus disease of the central nervous system, and after the injection of serum and various other substances into the subarachnoid space.

### ***Hydrocephalus***

In hydrocephalus, of the internal type, there is a large collection of cerebrospinal fluid within the ventricular cavities of the brain, and particularly within the lateral ventricles. This leads to pressure atrophy of the brain with loss of function in the affected brain tissue and symptoms of increased intracranial tension. In infants, the cranium becomes enlarged, at times to an extraordinary extent.

The collection of cerebrospinal fluid in hydrocephalus is manifestly due to some lack of balance between its secretion and its absorption. Various chemical substances are known to increase its secretion but it is doubtful if pronounced hydrocephalus ever results from chemical causes alone. Dandy has shown experimentally, however, that passive congestion of the choroid plexuses, produced by ligating the great vein of Galen, may in some cases lead to hydrocephalus, evidently because the passive congestion increases the secretion of fluid. In man, also, obstruction to the outflow of blood from the choroid plexuses appears to be an occasional cause of hydrocephalus.

More commonly hydrocephalus is due to a defective absorption of the cerebrospinal fluid. We have pointed out that this fluid is secreted mainly by the plexuses within the ventricles and that it is absorbed mainly through the arachnoid villi which are situated over the surface of the brain. Any obstruction to its escape from the fourth ventricle into the surrounding cisterns or to its passage from the posterior cranial fossa to the cranial vault might lead to a failure of absorption and a marked collection of fluid behind the obstruction.

In the so-called *obstructive type of hydrocephalus* there is a demon-

strable mechanical obstruction either within the brain or between the fourth ventricle and the surrounding cisterns. The experiments of Dandy and his co-workers have shown how an obstruction within the brain leads to hydrocephalus. By blocking the aqueduct of Sylvius in dogs they succeeded in producing bilateral hydrocephalus. By blocking one foramen of Monro they produced a unilateral hydrocephalus in the corresponding lateral ventricle. Finally they showed that if the choroid plexus were removed from a lateral ventricle previous to the obstruction of its foramen, no hydrocephalus resulted, thus demonstrating conclusively that the choroid plexus and not the ependyma of the lateral ventricle is the main source of the fluid. In man hydrocephalus may follow a demonstrable obstruction to the flow of cerebrospinal fluid through the Aqueduct of Sylvius owing to a tumor in this region. In basilar meningitis the openings between the fourth ventricle and the surrounding subarachnoid space may become closed, thus causing hydrocephalus.

In the so-called *non-obstructive type of hydrocephalus* no obstruction to the flow of cerebrospinal fluid within the brain or to its escape from the ventricular system is demonstrable. Dandy has shown experimentally, however, that it is possible to obstruct the subarachnoid space between the posterior and the middle cranial fossae by exciting an aseptic inflammation about the brain stem where it passes through the tentorium cerebelli. He believes that a similar obstruction, perhaps from inflammatory disease, may be the cause of some cases of so-called non-obstructive hydrocephalus. Such an obstruction would interfere with the flow of fluid to its principal area of absorption over the surface of the brain. Other cases of non-obstructive hydrocephalus may be due to little understood alterations in the absorption or secretion of the fluid.

One can determine *intra vitam* whether or not a given hydrocephalus is due to obstruction to the escape of fluid from the ventricular system by injecting a dye (phenolsulphonephthalein) into one of the distended lateral ventricles and ascertaining by lumbar puncture whether the dye passes freely into the spinal subarachnoid system. When the hydrocephalus is caused by an obstruction within the brain or at the openings on the roof of the fourth ventricle, little if any dye can be recovered on lumbar puncture. Where there is no such obstruction the dye can be recovered by lumbar puncture within eight minutes.

### References

#### *Nervous System*

- Barker (L. F.).** *Monographic medicine. IV.* D. Appleton & Co., 1916.  
**Brown (W. L.).** *The sympathetic nervous system in disease. II.* Frowde, London, 1920.  
**Dandy (W. E.).** *Experimental hydrocephalus.* *Ann. Surg.*, 1919, lxx, 129.  
**Dandy (W. E.) & Blackfan (K. D.).** *Internal hydrocephalus.* *Am. Jour. Child. Dis.*, 1917, xiv, 426.



- Frazier (C. H.).** *Types of hydrocephalus—their differentiation and treatment.* *Am. Jour. Child. Dis.*, **1916**, x, 95.
- Frazier (C. H.).** *Section of anterolateral columns of the spinal cord for the relief of pain.* *Arch. Neurol. & Psychiat.*, **1920**, iv, 137.
- Head (H.).** *Studies in neurology.* H. Frowde, London, **1920**.
- Horrax (G.).** *Contributions of the war to the physiology of the nervous system.* *Physiol. Rev.*, **1921**, i, 269.
- Hunt (J. R.).** *Progressive atrophy of globus pallidus.* *Brain*, **1917**, xl, 58.
- Lewandowsky (M. H.).** *Handbuch der Neurologie.* J. Springer, Berlin, **1910–14**.
- Pollock (L. J.).** *Overlay of so-called protopathic sensibility as seen in peripheral nerve lesions.* *Arch. Neurol. & Psychiat.*, **1919**, ii, 667.
- Ranson (S. W.).** *The anatomy of the nervous system.* W. B. Saunders, Philadelphia and London, **1921**.
- Sollmann (T. H.).** *A manual of pharmacology.* W. B. Saunders, Philadelphia and London, **1918**.
- Tilney (F.) & (Riley (H. A.).** *The form and function of the central nervous system.* Paul B. Hoeber, New York, **1921**.



## INDEX

- Abdominal operations, as a cause of intestinal paresis, 203.
- Abdominal reflex, loss of in upper neuron paralysis, 723.
- Abscess, cerebral, lymphocytosis in, 741.
- Absorption, intestinal, in constipation, 193.  
in exclusion of pancreatic juice from intestines, 184.  
in intestinal disease, 188.  
in obstructive jaundice, 187.
- Accelerator nerve, effect on heart, 52.  
See Nerves, accelerator.
- Accidental murmurs, 96.  
in exophthalmic goiter, 667.
- Acclimatization, cause of, 379.
- Accommodation, disturbances of, 710.
- Acetanilid, as a cause of anemia, 615.  
as a cause of methemoglobinemia, 603.  
as a cause of polycythemia, 626.
- Aceto-acetic acid, 308.
- Acetone, 308.
- Acetone bodies, 305.  
interrelationship of, 308.
- Acetonitril, test for thyroid secretion, 669.
- Achlorhydria, 152.  
as a cause of diarrhea, 198.  
in carcinoma of the stomach, 176.  
in pernicious anemia, 593, 613, 616.
- Achylia gastrica, 152.
- Acidosis, 259.  
as a cause of increased metabolism, 298.  
effect on respiration, 375.  
in cardiac dyspnea, 399.  
in diabetic coma, 313.  
in fever, 496.  
in starvation, 233.
- Acrromegaly, 682.  
glycosuria in, 284.
- Adenin, 323.
- Adenoma, toxic, 664.
- Addison's disease, 688.  
glycemia in, 286.  
pigmentation in, 249.
- Adiadochokinesis, 733.
- Adrenal glands, 685.
- Aërophagia, 144.
- Agglutination, of bacteria, 543.  
of red corpuscles, importance in blood transfusion, 630.
- Agglutinins, 545.
- Agrammatism, 716.
- Agraphia, 725.
- Air conduction, in testing deafness, 715.
- Air hunger, of Kussmaul, 305.
- Air passages, bubbles in, 387.
- Alanin, 235.  
as a source of sugar, 297.
- Albuminuria, 428.  
alimentary, 428.  
from circulatory disturbances, 432.  
from cold, 429.  
from exercise, 428.  
from kidney disease, 432.  
lordotic, 414.  
orthostatic, 429.  
pathological, 431.  
physiological, 428.  
relation to hypertension, 110.
- Albumoses, in fever, 493.
- Alcaptonuria, 247.
- Alcoholism, alimentary glycosuria in, 278.  
effect on ciliary movements, 408.  
reduces resistance to infection, 524.  
relation to freezing, 485.  
relation to gout, 325.  
relation to sunstroke, 465.
- Aleukemic leukemia, 641, 642.
- Alexia, due to lesions of the angular gyrus, 716.
- Alexins, 536.
- Alimentary albuminuria. See Albuminuria.
- Alimentary galactosuria. See Galactosuria.
- Alimentary glycosuria. See Glycosuria.
- Alimentary levulosuria. See Levulosuria.
- Alkali tolerance, 264.  
in diabetic coma, 313.  
in nephritis, 458.  
in uremia, 463.
- Alkalosis, in Eck fistula in dogs, 348, 351.  
in experimental tetany, 675.
- Allantoin, 323.
- Altitude, high, as a cause of Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 367, 371.  
as a cause of polycythemia, 625.  
effect on basal metabolism, 223.  
respiration at, 377.
- Alveoli, ventilation of, 360.
- Ambard's formula, 439, 446.
- Amboceptor, 537, 600.
- Amino acids, 235.  
as a source of sugar, 296.  
in blood, in nephritis, 441.  
in hepatic disease, 245.  
in infectious diseases, 246.  
in liver disease, 348.  
method of combination, 237.  
requirement of body for, 238.  
synthesis in body, 239.
- Amins, toxic, 207.
- Ammonia, formation of, 245, 262.



- Ammonia, in acidosis, 262, 264.  
 in experimental tetany, 675.  
 in hepatic disease, 349.
- Amylase excretion, as a renal test, 444.
- Anaphylactic shock, electrocardiogram, 558.
- Anaphylaxis, 554.  
 and antitrypsin, 561.  
 as a cause of fever, 575.  
 circulatory changes in, 557, 558, 575.  
 Eck fistula in, 559.  
 eosinophilia in, 559, 637.  
 foreign proteins, 562.  
 incubation period in, 555.  
 leukopenia in, 640.  
 nature of reaction, 561.  
 passive, 559.  
 reactions in different animals, 556.  
 relations to asthma, 391.  
 refractory desensitization, 560.  
 rôle of cells and fluids in, 564.  
 serum sickness, 565.  
 site of reaction, 560.  
 theory of, 560.
- Anemia, 607.  
 aplastic, 617.  
   blood platelets in, 590.  
   basal metabolism in, 223.  
   blood flow in, 45, 384.  
   blood volume in, 607, 623, 624.  
   circulation in, 384.  
   classification of, 608.  
   excision of spleen in, 622.  
   from hemorrhage, 609.  
   from lack of iron, 251, 617.  
   general considerations, 607.  
   from defective red cell formation, 617.  
   megaloblastic, 612, 615.  
   pernicious, 613, 622, 624.  
   relation of cholesterol reduction in, 256.  
   relation to spleen, 620, 622.  
   respirations in, 383.  
   simple toxic, 611.  
   splenic, 621.  
   toxic, 611.
- Angina pectoris, 101.  
 blood pressure in, 107.  
 cause of sudden death in, 88.  
 in arterial hypertension, 113.
- Anoxemia, 387.  
 in cardiorespiratory disease, 385.  
 pulmonary causes of, 386.  
 relation to cyanosis, 387.
- Anterior lobe feeding, 679.
- Anterior poliomyelitis. See Polyomyelitis, anterior.
- Anthrax, immunity to, and bactericidal properties of blood, 540.  
 and phagocytosis, 551.  
 susceptibility of sheep to, 523.
- Antianaphylaxis. See Desensitization.
- Antiferments, in intestinal parasites, 171.  
 relation to peptic ulcer, 171.
- Antiperistalsis, in intestinal obstruction, 201.  
 in proximal colon, 191.
- Antiperistalsis, in pyloric obstruction, 164.
- Antithrombin, 587.  
 excess of, 594.
- Antitoxin, 530.  
 formation of, 533.  
 method of neutralizing toxin, 531.  
 time required for neutralization, 534.
- Antitrypsin, removal from blood a cause of anaphylaxis, 561.
- Anuria, 426.  
 blood pressure in, 108, 428.  
 hysterical, 426.  
 manifestations of, 427.  
 nervous, 426.  
 nitrogen retention in, 427.  
 symptoms of, 426.
- Aortic insufficiency, 33.  
 arterial pressure in, 33, 122.  
 effect on diastolic pressure, 33.  
 effect on left ventricle of, 34.  
 effect on right ventricle of, 34.  
 electrocardiogram, 33.  
 heart rate in, 34.
- Aortic stenosis, 31.  
 decompensation of, 33.  
 effect on ventricular contraction, 31.  
 electrocardiogram, 32.  
 pulsus tradus in, 32.
- Aphasia, motor, due to loss of center controlling muscles of articulation, 725.
- Appetite, 178.  
 in diabetes, 298.  
 relation to obesity, 227.
- Aqueduct of Sylvius, 739, 742.
- Arachnoid, relation to dura and pia mater, 738, 739.
- Arcus senilis, 258.
- Arginin, 236.
- Arrhythmias, cardiac, 49.  
 as a cause of broken compensation, 47.  
 auricular fibrillation, 80.  
 disturbances of conduction, 63.  
 extrasystoles, 68.  
 methods of studying, 52.  
 pulsus alternans, 88.  
 sinus, 61.  
 ventricular, 87.  
 See also the individual arrhythmias.
- Arsenic, as a cause of nephritis, 433.  
 of polycythemia, 626.
- Arterial pressure. See Pressure, arterial.
- Arterial pulse. See Pulse, arterial.
- Arterioles, rôle in regulating blood pressure, 105.  
 in chronic hypertension, 112.
- Arterial spasm, 125.  
 in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, 601.  
 See also Vascular spasm.
- Arteriosclerosis, as a cause of angina pectoris, 102.  
 as a cause of intermittent claudication, 102.  
 in Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 369.  
 cholesterolemia in, 305.

- Arteriosclerosis, coronary, as a cause of myocardial disease, 17.  
 in diabetes, 305.  
 in gastric ulcer, 172.  
 relation to blood pressure, 111.  
 relation to vascular spasms, 114.
- Arthus phenomenon, 556, 637.
- Aseptic fever, 501.
- Aspartic acid, 235.  
 as a source of sugar, 297.
- Asphyxia, acute, a cause of heart block, 67.  
 bradycardia in, 60.  
 increased blood pressure in, 107.
- Astereognosis, 705.
- Asthma, bronchial, 389.  
 eosinophilia in, 390, 637.  
 pathogenesis of, 391.  
 pulmonary distention in, 362, 389.  
 narrowed bronchioles in, 390.  
 relation to protein hypersensitiveness, 556, 568.  
 cardiac, 399.  
 thymic, 677.
- Astigmatism, as a result of irregularity in planes of refraction, 710.
- Ataxia, 730.  
 cerebellar, 732.  
 intention tremor in, 733.  
 lack of muscular control in, 732, 733.  
 loss of muscular synergy in, 732.  
 nystagmus in, 733.  
 dynamic, 730.  
 from lack of afferent control, 731.  
 in tabes, 731.  
 hypotonia of muscles in, 732.  
 loss of tendon reflexes in, 731.  
 static, 730.  
 tests for, 730.
- Athletics, effect upon the heart of, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30.
- Atony, gastric, 161.  
 intestinal, in constipation, 195.  
 in diarrhea, 200.  
 in intestinal obstruction, 200.
- Atrophy of brain, as a result of hydrocephalus, 741.
- Atrophy, optic, primary, 712.  
 secondary, 712.
- Atropin, effect of, in asthma, 390.  
 on bronchial spasm, 736.  
 on bulbosacral terminals, 736, 738.  
 on heart block, 67.  
 on heart rate, 58, 736.  
 on heart shadow, 10.  
 on intestinal spasm, 736.  
 on pacemaker of the heart, 69.  
 on pupils, 736.  
 on sweat glands, 736.
- Aura, sensory, in major epilepsy, 727.
- Aural vertigo. See Vertigo, aural.
- Auricle, left, in mitral stenosis, 35.  
 in mitral insufficiency, 38.
- Auricular fibrillation, 80.  
 action of digitalis in, 83.  
 circus movement in, 86.
- Auricular fibrillation, effect on mitral stenosis murmur, 95.  
 electrocardiograms, 81, 82.  
 in mitral stenosis, 36, 95.  
 paroxysmal form, 83.  
 pathogenesis of, 85.  
 pulse deficit in, 83.  
 relation to auricular extrasystoles, 84.  
 venous pulse in, 80.  
 ventricular arrhythmia in, 80.
- Auricular flutter, 78.  
 electrocardiogram in, 79.
- Auriculoventricular block, electrocardiogram, 64.
- Auriculoventricular node, 64.  
 extrasystoles arising in, 71.  
 rhythms arising in, 69.  
 their relation to palpitation, 100.
- Autohemolysis, 538.  
 in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, 600.
- Auto-intoxication, from intestinal obstruction, 201.  
 intestinal, 204.  
 sources of, 206.  
 symptoms of, 206.  
 toxic amines, a possible cause of, 207.
- Autolysis, 243.  
 relation to fatty degeneration, 256.
- Axis cylinder, as an agent of control, 696.
- Babinski sign, 722.
- Bactericidal properties of blood, 536.  
 due to amboceptor and complement, 537.  
 in diabetes, 304.  
 relation to immunity, 540.
- Bacteriolysis, 536.
- Banti's disease, 621.
- Basal metabolism. See Metabolism, basal.
- Basic granulations, in red blood corpuscles, 605.  
 in lead poisoning, 611.  
 in pernicious anemia, 614.
- Basilar meningitis. See Meningitis, basilar.
- Bechterew's nucleus, 720.
- Beer heart, 45.
- "Bends," 380.
- Benzol, as a cause of aplastic anemia, 618.  
 as a cause of leukopenia, 640.  
 effect on blood platelets, 590.  
 in treatment of leukemia, 642.
- Beta-oxybutyric acid, 308.  
 as a cause of diabetic coma, 313, 314.  
 derivation of, 310, 311.
- Beriberi, 252.  
 relation to Vitamin B, 252.
- Bile, as a cause of bradycardia, 60.  
 as a cause of hemorrhagic necrosis of pancreas, 356.  
 cholesterol in, 336.  
 constituents of, 336.  
 effect of exclusion from intestines, 187.  
 relation to hemolysis, 336.  
 secretion of, in icterus neonatorum, 342.
- Bile pigments, 336.  
 conversion into urobilin, 336.  
 formation of, 336.

- Bile pigments, in gall-stones, 352, 353.  
     relation to bradycardia, 60.  
 Bile salts, 337.  
     relation to alimentary lipemia, 255.  
 Biot's breathing, 369.  
 Blackwater fever, 602.  
 Bleeding time, 590.  
 Blindness, color, cause of, 711.  
     psychic, 714.  
 Blood, 580.  
     concentration of, in anuria, 427.  
     See also Hydremia.  
     neutrality of, 260.  
 Blood flow in arm, during exercise, 24.  
     during exposure to cold, 484.  
     during exophthalmic goiter, 667.  
     during hot bath, 481.  
     in fever, 489.  
 Blood pressure. See Pressure, arterial.  
     Hypertension, Hypotension.  
 Blood sugar. See Glycemia.  
 Blood volume, 580.  
     after hemorrhage, 609.  
     after sodium chlorid ingestion, 585.  
     after transfusion, 631.  
     in anemia, 623.  
     in chlorosis, 623.  
     in pernicious anemia, 624.  
     in polycythemia, 625, 626.  
 Boils, infection through unbroken skin, 514.  
 Bone conduction, as a test in deafness, 715.  
 Bone marrow, in aplastic anemia, 618.  
     in leukemia, 617, 641.  
     in leukocytosis, 637, 639.  
     in pernicious anemia, 614.  
     in polycythemia, 627.  
     tumors of, 604.  
 Bony development, after castration, 690.  
     in pituitary disease, 680, 682.  
     in sporadic cretinism, 660.  
     relation to glands of internal secretion, 690.  
 Bothriocephalus, anemia from, 612, 615.  
     hemolytic substance in, 615.  
 Bradycardia, as a cause of syncope, 114.  
     in complete heart block, 66.  
     in jaundice, 343.  
     sinus, 60.  
 Bread, relation to beriberi, 253.  
 Broca's convolution, 724.  
 Bronchial spasm, as a cause of asthma, 390.  
     effect of atrophin upon, 736.  
     in anaphylaxis of guinea-pig, 556.  
     in anaphylaxis of man, 567, 570.  
 Bronchioles, narrowed, as a cause of asthma, 390.  
     Charcot-Leyden crystals in, 390.  
     Curschmann spirals in, 390.  
     eosinophilic cells in, 390.  
 Bronchitis, relation to asthma, 391, 568.  
     relation to pulmonary emphysema, 393.  
 Brown-Sequard syndrome, 701.  
 Bubbles in air passages, 387.  
 Buds, taste, distribution of, 707.  
     disturbances of, 707.  
 "Buffer property" of body fluids, 260.  
     of carbon dioxide, 371.  
 Bulbosacral nervous system, 734.  
 Cadaverin, 246.  
 Caisson disease, 380.  
     "Bends" in, 380.  
     pathogenesis of, 381.  
 Calcium metabolism, in tetany, 674.  
 Calcium oxalate, in renal calculi, 464.  
 Calcium salts, rôle in blood coagulation, 586, 587.  
     in hemophilia, 592.  
     in jaundice, 594.  
 Calculi, biliary. See Gall-stones.  
     renal, 464.  
 Calories, daily requirement, 225.  
     in food, 216.  
     See Metabolism, energy.  
 Calorimetry, 215.  
 Camphor, effect on D: N ratio, 295.  
 Cantharidin, as a cause of nephritis, 433.  
 Capillary pressure, 106.  
 Capillary tone, loss of, 123.  
 Capsule formation, in bacteria, relation to virulence, 519.  
 Carbohydrates, as protein spacers, 241.  
     in hepatic disease, 347.  
 Carbohydrate starvation, as a cause of ketonuria, 306, 308.  
 Carbolic acid, relation to ochronosis, 248.  
 Carbon dioxide tension in lungs, in acidosis, 375.  
     in cardiac dyspnea, 398.  
     in Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 372.  
     normal, 363.  
 Carbon monoxid, as a cause of polycythemia, 626.  
     method of determining blood volume, 581.  
 Carbon monoxid poisoning, 382.  
     blood transfusion in, 630.  
     lactic acid in, 260.  
 Carcinoma, gastric, 176.  
     effect on gastric digestion, 176.  
     effect on gastric motility, 163, 176.  
     lactic acid in, 177.  
 Cardiac dilatation. See Dilatation, cardiac.  
 Cardiac insufficiency. See Decompensation of heart.  
 Cardiac output. See Systolic output.  
 Cardiac pain. See Angina pectoris.  
 Cardiac sensations, 100.  
 Cardiac sphincter, insufficiency of, 143.  
     physiology of, 140, 144.  
     relation to heart burn, 144.  
 Cardiac weakness, causes of, 15.  
 Cardiospasm, 141.  
 Castration, as a cause of obesity, 227.  
     effect on body and mind, 690.  
 Casts in urine, 432.  
 Cataract, a disturbance of dioptric apparatus, 710.



- Cataract, diabetic, 305.
- Central disease, as a source of severe pain, 706.
- Cerebellar ataxia. See Ataxia, cerebellar.
- Cerebral compression, acute, Cheyne-Stokes respiration in, 373.  
     effect on blood pressure, 107.  
     effect on heart rate, 59.
- Cerebral disease, as a cause of fever, 499.  
     as a cause of glycosuria, 283.
- Cervical sympathetic, effect of extirpation, 644, 665.  
     relation to exophthalmos, 664.  
     relation to thyroid secretion, 664.
- Chemotoxis, 548, 549.  
     as a cause of leukocytosis, 639.
- Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 367.  
     cardiovascular changes in, 373.  
     clinical types, 372.  
     from cerebral compression, 373.  
     from lessened irritability of respiratory center, 371.  
     from oxygen want, 370.
- Chiasm, optic, diagram of, 709.  
     lesions of, 713.
- Chill, febrile, 489.
- Chloroform poisoning, alimentary galactosuria in, 281.  
     auricular fibrillation, 87.  
     ketonuria in, 308.  
     nitrogenous metabolism in, 348.  
     ventricular fibrillation in, 87.
- Choloma, 643.
- Chlorosis, 622.  
     blood volume in, 623.
- Choked disc, 711, 712.
- Cholemia, 350.
- Cholesterol, 255, 337.  
     antihemolytic property, 256.  
     in gall-stones, 352.  
     local deposits of, 258.
- Cholesterolemia, 256.  
     in diabetes, 305.  
     in jaundice, 258.  
     in lipemia, 258, 305.  
     relation to arteriosclerosis, 258.  
     relation to diet, 258.  
     relation to gall-stones, 258, 352.  
     relation to xanthomata, 258, 305.
- Cholic acid, 337.
- Chorda tympani, at times affected in ear disease, 708, 734.
- Chorea, Huntington's, 730.
- Chromaffin system, 685.
- Chromium salts, as a cause of experimental nephritis, 433.
- Chvostek's sign, 673.
- Chymosin, 148.
- Cilia, as a protective mechanism for the respiratory tract, 408.
- Cinchophen, effect of, upon excretion of uric acid, 330.
- Circulation, disturbances of, 1.
- Circus movement, 86.
- Citrates, effect on blood coagulation, 586.
- Clonus, sign of exaggerated reflexes in upper neuron paralysis, 723.
- Coagulation of blood, 586.  
     in hemophilia, 592.  
     in liver disease, 594.  
     in purpura, 589.  
     transfusion of blood in delayed, 630.
- Cold, cutaneous points of appreciation, 698.  
     exposure to, albuminuria from, 429.  
     as a cause of hemolysis in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, 601.  
     effect on circulation, 123, 484.  
     effect on metabolism, 220, 484.  
     regulation against heat losses from, 484.
- Colic, biliary, 354.  
     intestinal, 204.
- Collapse, circulatory, from anaphylaxis, 557, 575.  
     in infections, 120.  
     from pleural irritation, 404.  
     See also Shock.  
     febrile, 502.
- Colles' law, 526.
- Colloids, in precipitin reaction, 547.  
     in renal calculi, 465.
- Color blindness. See Blindness, color.
- Color index of blood, 606.  
     after hemorrhage, 610.  
     in chlorosis, 623.
- Columns, of spinal cord, 700.
- Coma, from anuria, 427.  
     diabetic, 305.  
     acid intoxication in, 313.  
     intoxication by salts of ketonic acids in, 313.  
     uremic, 461.
- Compensation of heart lesions, 45.  
     causes of broken compensation, 46.  
     defects in, 45.  
     See also Decompensation.
- Complement, 537, 538, 600.
- Complement fixation, 541.
- Conduction, air. See Air conduction.
- Conduction, bone. See Bone conduction.
- Conduction, sensory, paths of in spinal cord, 700.  
     in medulla, 703.
- Conduction changes in heart, as a cause of fibrillation, 85.  
     electrocardiogram, 56.  
     disturbances of, 63.  
     in auricular flutter, 78.  
     See also Heart block.
- Conduction paths in heart, 51.
- Congenital heart lesions, 40.  
     cyanosis in, 97.  
     polycythemia in, 625.
- Connector neurons. See Neurons, connector.
- Constipation, auto-intoxication in, 206.  
     chronic, 192.  
     classification of, by site of stasis, 195.  
     cylindruria in, 432.  
     from lack of tone, 195.  
     in gastric hyperacidity, 151.

- Constipation, in gastric achlorhydria, 154.  
   indicanuria in, 207.  
   pathogenesis of, 193.  
   spastic, 195.  
   symptoms of, 197.
- Convulsions, cause of, 726.  
   epileptiform, 727.  
   hysterical, 728.  
   spinal, 726.  
   strychnin, 726.
- Coronary sclerosis, anatomical changes in, 17.  
   as a cause of angina pectoris, 102.  
   cardiac weakness from, 17.
- Corpus striatum, as a center for automatic associated movements, 728.
- Cortex, cerebral, distinctive areas of, 704.
- Corti, organ of, 715.
- Cortical center, of hearing, 715.  
   of smell, 707.  
   of vision, 713.
- Coughing, 409.
- Creatinin, in blood, in nephritis, 441.
- Creatinism, endemic, 671.  
   sporadic, 660.
- Cremasteric reflex, loss of in upper neuron paralysis, 723.
- Crisis, febrile, 489.
- Critical venous pressure, 9.
- Cutaneous sensations. *See* Sensations, cutaneous.
- Cyanosis, 96.  
   as a cause of polycythemia, 625.
- Cylindruria, 432.
- Cystin, 237.
- Cystinuria, 246.
- Cytolysins, specificity of, 539.
- Cytozyme, 586.
- Dalrymple's sign, 667.
- Dastre-Morat law, 105.
- Dead space, in lungs, 360, 362.  
   in cardiac dyspnea, 398.  
   in emphysema, 393, 394.  
   in stenosis of upper air passages, 388.
- Deafness, psychic, from extensive lesions of temporal cortex, 716.
- Decapsulation of kidney, 425.
- Decompensation of heart, 47.  
   arterial pressure in, 49.  
   causes of, 46.  
   effects of, 48.
- Defecation, act of, 192.
- Degeneration, Wilson's lenticular, 730.
- Deglutition, 139.  
   in cardiospasm, 141.  
   in esophageal diverticula, 145.  
   in mechanical obstructions of esophagus, 140.  
   in spasm of esophagus, 141.  
   physiology of, 139.
- Deiter's nucleus, 717, 720.
- Dejerine-Roussy syndrome, 703.
- Dendritis, function of, 696.
- Desensitization, 560.
- Diabetes insipidus, 430.
- Diabetes mellitus, 286.  
   acetone bodies in, 306, 309.  
   cholesterolemia in, 258.  
   classification of, 291.  
   coma in. *See* Coma, diabetic.  
   derivation of sugar in, 292.  
   diet in, 298.  
   effect of hunger contractions, 179.  
   energy requirements in, 297.  
   energy supply in, 298.  
   from pancreatic excision, 287.  
   glycogen in, 299.  
   hyperglycemia in, 290.  
   insulin theory, 289.  
   "insulin" in, 288.  
   lipemia in, 255.  
   pancreas in, 288.  
   relation to alimentary glycosuria, 279.  
   resistance to infection in, 304.  
   respiratory quotient in, 300.  
   symptoms of, 303.  
   theories of, 301.
- Diaminuria, 246.
- Diarrhea, 198.  
   in achlorhydria, 154.  
   motility changes in, 199.  
   pathogenesis of, 198.
- Diastolic filling of the ventricles, 9.
- Diet, relation to acidosis, 306.  
   to albuminuria, 428.  
   to beriberi, 252.  
   to cholesterolemia, 258.  
   to constipation, 193.  
   to diabetes, 298.  
   to diarrhea, 198.  
   to glycosuria, 276.  
   to gout, 322, 324, 325.  
   to non-protein nitrogen in blood, 440.  
   to pellagra, 254.  
   to scurvy, 253.
- Dietl's crisis, 468.
- Digestion, disturbances of, 139.
- Digestion leukocytosis. *See* Leukocytosis.
- Digitalis, as a cause of extra systoles, 75.  
   as a cause of heart block, 67.  
   effect on auricular fibrillation, 83.  
   effect on idioventricular rhythm, 66.  
   effect on normal heart rate, 60.  
   effect on T wave, 67.
- Dilatation, cardiac, acute, 15, 19, 28.  
   compensatory, 12, 33.  
   in aortic insufficiency, 33.  
   in decompensation of heart, 16.  
   from fatty degeneration of heart, 16.  
   from increased work, 17.  
   in mitral insufficiency, 37.
- Dilatation of left auricle, in mitral stenosis, 35.
- Dilatation of stomach, acute, 164.  
   in atony, 162.  
   in pyloric obstruction, 164.
- Dioptric apparatus, 710.
- Diphtheria antitoxin, 531.  
   Schick reaction for, 525.  
   *See also* Antitoxin.

- Diuresis, after decapsulation of kidney, 425.  
 after drinking liquids, 418.  
 in diabetes insipidus, 420.  
 from drugs, 418.  
 effect on non-protein nitrogen in blood, 441.  
 from glucose, 304.  
 from pituitary extracts, 679.  
 after puncture of medulla oblongata, 419.  
 relation to vascular reactions of diseased kidney, 434.
- Diverticula, esophageal, 145.
- D: N ratio in diabetes, 295.
- Dog, anaphylaxis in, 557, 558.  
 mode of regulating heat losses in, 480.
- Drinking, relation to polyuria, 418.
- Ductless glands, 656.  
 See also Internal secretion, glands of.
- Ductus arteriosus, open, 40.
- Dwarfism, in endemic cretinism, 671.  
 in pituitary disease, 680.  
 in sporadic cretinism, 660.
- Dynamics of heart muscle, in aortic stenosis, 32.  
 in normal heart, 2.  
 in weakened heart, 12, 15.
- Dyschezia, 195.
- Dysfunction, 658.  
 of thyroid, 669.  
 of pituitary gland, 658.
- Dyspnea, asthmatic, 390.  
 at high altitudes, 377, 378.  
 cardiac, 98, 385.  
 effect on dead space of lungs, 361.  
 in stenosis of upper air passages, 388.
- Dysthyroidism, 669.
- Dystrophia adiposogenitalis, 680.
- Eclampsia, blood pressure in, 108.  
 ketonuria in, 307.  
 renal functions in, 460.
- Eck fistula, alkalosis following, 349.  
 effect on alimentary galactosuria, 281.  
 effect on alimentary glycosuria, 277.  
 effect on alimentary levulosuria, 280.  
 effect on anaphylaxis, 559.
- Ectopic beats, 68.
- Ectopic rhythms, 68, 76.
- Edema, cardiac, 98.  
 pulmonary, 99.  
 nephritic, 445.  
 extrarenal factors in, 454.  
 from sodium bicarbonate, 453.  
 from sodium chlorid, 450, 456.  
 relation to hydremia, 451, 459.
- Effector fibers, 697.
- Eggs, as a cause of albuminuria, 428.  
 as a cause of asthma, 391.
- Elasticity and tension, of voluntary muscle, 3.
- Electrical stimulation, points on cortex, 721.
- Electrocardiogram, in hypertrophy of ventricles, 55.
- Electrocardiogram, normal, 33, 53, 55, 61, 90.  
 See also Anaphylactic shock, Aortic insufficiency, Aortic stenosis, Arrhythmias, Cardiac, Auricular fibrillation, Auricular flutter, Auriculoventricular block, Conductive changes, Extrasystoles, Heart block, Heart lung, mitral stenosis on ventricular filling, Paroxysmal tachycardia, Pulsus alternans, Pulsus bigeminus, Respiratory irregularity, Rhythm.
- Emotion, as a cause of glycosuria, 283.  
 effect on epinephrin secretion, 686.  
 effect on gastric secretion, 147, 155.  
 effect on thyroid secretion, 670.
- Emphysema, pulmonary, 391.  
 effect on circulation, 43.  
 dead space in, 362.  
 lung volume in, 362.
- Endemic cretinism. See Cretinism, endemic.
- Endemic Goiter. See Goiter, endemic.
- Endocarditis, malignant, relations to septicemia, 512.
- Endotoxins, 521, 573.
- Energy, in food, 217, 218.  
 requirements. See Metabolism.
- Enterokinase, 182.  
 not a cause of hemorrhagic necrosis of pancreas, 356.
- Enteroptosis, as a cause of constipation, 194.
- Eosinophilic cells, 633.  
 in anaphylaxis, 559.  
 in asthmatic sputum, 390.  
 increased number of, 636, 641.  
 in myelogenous leukemia, 641.
- Epicritic sensations. See Sensations, epicritic.
- Epilepsy, aura in, 727.  
 convulsions in, 627.  
 types of, 727.
- Epinephrin, 685.  
 as a cause of glycosuria, 284.  
 effect on asthma, 390.  
 effect on sweat glands, 736.  
 in Addison's disease, 688.  
 relation to thyroid, 249.
- Equalization of output from two ventricles, 8.
- Equilibrium, disturbances of, 716.
- Erb's sign, 673.
- Erector pilae, innervation of, 734.
- Erythremia, 628.
- Erythrophages, 596.
- Esophagus, atony of, 143.  
 dilatation of, from obstruction, 141.  
 disturbances in, 139.  
 diverticula of, 145.  
 innervation of, 142.  
 mechanical obstruction of, 140.  
 sensitiveness of, 144.



- Excision, effects produced by, of adrenals, 689.  
 of pancreas, 184, 287.  
 of parathyroids, 673.  
 of pineal gland, 684.  
 of pituitary gland, 680.  
 of small intestines, 188.  
 of spleen, 620, 622.  
 of stomach, 153.  
 of testes, 690.  
 of thymus, 677.  
 of thyroid, 552.
- Exercise, acute dilatation of heart from, 28.  
 albuminuria from, 428.  
 as a cause of broken compensation, 46.  
 as a cause of cardiac hypertrophy, 29.  
 concentration of blood after, 583.  
 effect on arterial pressure, 24.  
 effect on blood flow, 26.  
 effect on body temperature, 479.  
 effect on circulation, 24.  
 effect on dead space in lungs, 361.  
 effect on energy metabolism, 217, 218.  
 effect on energy requirements, 225.  
 effect on glycosuria in diabetes, 301.  
 effect on heart rate, 58.  
 effect on lung volume, 362.  
 effect on heart shadow, 28.  
 effect on systolic output from heart, 26.  
 formation of lactic acid in, 259.  
 relation to obesity, 225, 229.
- Exophthalmic goiter, 664.  
 alimentary glycosuria in, 279.  
 etiology of, 670.  
 manifestations of, 665.  
 metabolism in, 223, 243, 665.  
 partial inanition in, 233.  
 pathogenesis of, 668.  
 tachycardia in, 59.  
 thymus in, 678.  
 thyroxin in, 671.
- Exophthalmos, from administration of thyroid substance, 668.  
 from stimulation of cervical sympathetic, 670.  
 in exophthalmic goiter, mechanism of, 666.
- Extrasystoles, 68.  
 auricular, 70.  
 auriculoventricular, 71.  
 pathogenesis of, 74.  
 prognosis of, 76.  
 relation to paroxysmal tachycardia and fibrillation, 84.  
 recurrence of, 74.  
 ventricular, 71.
- Eye, refractive media in, 709.
- Fat, absorption of, in obstructive jaundice, 187.  
 in pancreatic disease, 184.  
 as a source of acetone bodies, 311.  
 as a source of sugar, 297.  
 caloric value of, 216.  
 combustion of, 312.
- See also Fatty degeneration, Fatty infiltration, Obesity.
- Fat necrosis, 355.
- Fatigue of heart muscle, 15.
- Fatty degeneration, 256.  
 of heart, 16.
- Fatty infiltration, 256.
- Feces, effect of lack of pancreatic juice upon, 184, 186.  
 in chronic constipation, 193.  
 in intestinal disease, 188.  
 in obstructive jaundice, 187.
- Ferments, intracellular, in acute leukemia, 643.  
 in leukocytes, 634.  
 relations to autolysis, 243, 244.  
 relation to immunity, 548.
- Fever, anaphylactic, 575.  
 as a cause of ketonuria, 307.  
 as a cause of partial inanition, 233.  
 causes of, 499.  
 conception of, 488.  
 from hemolysis, 597.  
 heat regulation in, 489.  
 heart rate in, 59, 60.  
 in acute leukemia, 642.  
 in anaphylaxis, 575.  
 metabolism in, 223, 246, 493.  
 significance of, 503.  
 types of, 488.  
 vagus irregularity after, 62.
- Fibers, bulbosacral, 734.  
 connector, 734.  
 effector, 697, 734.  
 medullated and non-medullated, 734.  
 receptor, 697.  
 sympathetic, 734.
- Fibrillary twitchings, 725.
- Fibrillation, auricular. See Auricular fibrillation.
- Fibrillation, ventricular, 87.
- Fibrinogen, 586.  
 changes of, in hepatic disease, 349, 594.  
 in hemophilia, 592.
- Filling of the ventricles, diastolic, 9.
- Fissure of Rolando, 703, 722.
- Fits, uncinat, as a result of tumors, 707.
- Food, effect on blood sugar, 271.  
 effect on metabolism, 220.  
 See also Diet.
- Foramina, of Luschka, 739.  
 of Majendi, 739.  
 of Monro, 739.
- Fragility of red corpuscles, 598.  
 after excision of spleen, 621.  
 in hemolytic jaundice, 619.
- Freezing, 485.
- Fröhlich's syndrome, 680.
- Functional tests, for kidney disease, 434, 436, 444, 448.  
 for liver disease, 245, 279, 281, 344.  
 for pancreatic secretion, 184, 186.
- Galactosuria, alimentary, 281, 347.
- Gallop rhythm, 92.

- Gall-stones, 351.  
as a cause of hemorrhagic necrosis of pancreas, 357.
- Ganglia, nerve, inferior mesenteric, 734.  
semilunar, 734.  
sensory, 696.  
visceral, 734.
- Gastric juice, acidity of, 149.  
in carcinoma of stomach, 176.  
in tetany, 674.  
in ulcer, 171.  
properties of, 147.  
relation to gastric motility, 160.  
secretions of, 146.
- Gastritis, with hyperacidity, 151.  
with anacidity, 155.
- Geniculate body, 710.
- Glands, sweat, effect of atropin upon, 736.  
effect of epinephrin upon, 736.  
effect of pilocarpin upon, 736.
- Glands of internal secretion. See Internal secretion, glands of.
- Glass blowing, effect on lung volume, 362.
- Glossitis, in pernicious anemia, 613.
- Glycemia after excision of pancreas, 287, 300.  
after puncture of fourth ventricle, 282.  
alimentary, 277.  
effect of emotions upon, 283.  
effect of epinephrin upon, 285.  
in diabetes, 290  
in phlorhizin poisoning, 274.  
normal, 270.  
"virtual," 270.
- Glucose, combustion of, 271.  
derivation of, in diabetes, 292.  
in diabetes, 301.  
in phlorhizin poisoning, 275.
- Glutamic acid, 235.  
as a source of sugar, 297.
- Glycerin, as a source of sugar, 297.
- Glycocholic acid, 337.
- Glycocoll, 235.  
as a source of sugar, 297.  
formed in body, 239.  
in bile salts, 337.
- Glycogen, 271.  
amount in liver, 277.  
after pancreatectomy, 299.  
after thyroid administration, 664.  
discharge of, by epinephrin, 285.  
discharge of, by nervous influences, 282.  
in diabetes, 300.  
in fever, 500.  
in heat puncture of brain, 500.  
in phlorhizin poisoning, 274.  
in starvation, 232.
- Glycosuria, alimentary, 276.  
cause of, 277, 279.  
in alcoholism, 278.  
in exophthalmic goiter, 279, 664.  
in infections, 278.  
in myxedema, 659.  
in pituitary disease, 682.  
relation to diabetes mellitus, 279.  
epinephrin, 284, 687.
- Glycosuria, nervous, 282, 285.  
renal, cause of, 272.  
from kidney poisons, 275.  
from phlorhizin, 273.  
in man, 276.  
toxic, 286.
- Glycylglycin, 237.
- Goiter, endemic, 672.  
in endemic cretinism, 671.  
pathogenesis of exophthalmic, 668.  
production of, in trout, 672.  
toxic, 664.
- Goiter heart, 672.
- Gout, alcoholism in, 325.  
cause of acute attacks in, 329.  
chronic lead poisoning in, 326.  
cinchophen in, 330.  
etiology of, 325.  
purin metabolism in, 325.  
theory of, 331.  
uric acid in blood in, 327.  
uric acid excretion in, 326.
- Graefe's sign, 667.
- Guanin, 323.
- Guinea-pig, anaphylaxis in, 555, 556.
- Gyrus, angular, 716.  
hippocampus, 707.  
of Heschl, 716.  
uncinatus, 707.
- Hallucinations, olfactory, 707.
- Hay fever, 568.
- Hearing, cortical centers of, 715.  
disturbances of, 715.
- Heart, decompensation of. See Decom-pensation.  
dilatation of. See Dilatation, cardiac.  
during exercise, 25.  
work of, 22, 25.  
hypertrophy of, 19.  
as a cause of broken compensation, 47.  
from exercise, 29.  
in aortic insufficiency, 33.  
in aortic stenosis, 32.  
in chronic arterial hypertension, 42, 111.  
in pulmonary disease, 43.  
myocardial changes in, 21.  
strength after, 21.
- Heart block, 63.  
auriculoventricular, 64.  
causes of, 66.  
complete, 65.  
electrocardiograms in, 67.  
evidences of, 63.  
in auricular flutter, 78.  
partial, 64.  
sino-auricular, 63.
- Heart-lung preparation, 6.  
electrocardiograms, 6, 8, 14.
- Heart murmurs, 94.  
accidental, 96.  
effect of auricular fibrillation on, in mitral stenosis, 95.  
valvular, 94.

- Heart muscle, combined contraction of, 4.  
   diastolic filling of the ventricles, 9.  
   dynamics of, 2.  
   fundamental properties of, 49.  
   tone, 8.
- Heart rate, 734, 736.  
   during exercise, 22.  
   effect on heart volume of, 9, 10.  
   effect on output, 8.  
   normal, 58.  
   relation to aortic regurgitation, 33.  
   See also Bradycardia, Tachycardia.
- Heart shadow, after exercise, 11, 28.  
   during exercise, 28.  
   effect of acute infections upon, 16.  
   effect of anemia upon, 16.  
   effect of atropin upon, 10.  
   effect of posture upon, 10.  
   effect of prolonged exercise upon, 29.  
   normal, 10.  
   variations in, 10.
- Heart sounds, 90.  
   accessory, 92.  
   electrocardiogram, 90.  
   gallop rhythm, 92.  
   loudness of, 90.  
   quality of, 90.  
   split, 91.
- Heat center, 479  
   control of, by reflexes, 482.  
   control of, by temperature of blood, 482, 495.  
   effect of heating and cooling, 499.  
   effect of puncture, 499.  
   excision of, 499.  
   in fever, 492.  
   in sunstroke, 483.
- Heat loss from body, 480.  
   in fever, 491.  
   in obesity, 229.
- Heat production. See Metabolism.
- Heat puncture, 499.
- Heat sensation, definite cutaneous points of, 698.
- Heat stroke. See Sunstroke.
- Hematin, 336.
- Hemianesthesia, crossed, 703.  
   total, 705.
- Hemianopsia, 713.
- Hemiataxia, 704.
- Hemiathetosis, 704.
- Hemitremor, 704.
- Hemoglobin, relation to bile pigments, 336.  
   saturation with oxygen, 365, 376.  
   See also Anemia, Polycythemia.
- Hemoglobinuria, 596.  
   paroxysmal, 601.
- Hemokonia, 255.
- Hemolysis, 536, 595.  
   a cause of jaundice, 339.  
   a cause of polycythemia, 628.  
   a stimulus to red cell formation, 605.  
   caused by hypotonic salt solution, 598.  
   causes of, 598.  
   from transfusion of blood, 629.  
   manifestations of, 596.
- Hemolysis, types of, 536.  
   See also Hemoglobinuria, Blackwater fever, Anemia, Methemoglobin.
- Hemophilia, 592.
- Hemorrhage, anemia from, 609.  
   blood volume after, 609.  
   effect on blood pressure, 115.
- Hemorrhagic diseases, 590.  
   blood transfusion in, 632.  
   in acute leukemia, 643.
- Hemosiderin, 597.
- Herpes zoster, inflammation of dorsal root ganglia, 705.
- Heterogenetic beats, 70.  
   See Extrasystoles.
- Heterogenetic ectopic rhythms, 76.  
   See Paroxysmal tachycardia, Auricular flutter.
- Heterophasia, 716.
- Hibernation, body temperature in, 477.  
   Cheyne-Stokes respiration in, 367.
- High pressure stasis, 49.
- Hirudin, effect on blood coagulation, 587.
- His bundle, 51.
- Histidin, 236.
- Hodgkin's disease, 645.  
   bacteria in, 645.  
   transitional cells in, 638.
- Homogenetic beats, 68.
- Homogenetic rhythms, 68.  
   ectopic, 76.  
   induced by atropin, 69.
- Homogentisic acid, 247.
- Homothermic animals, 477.
- Hookworm, anemia from, 612.  
   mode of infection, 514.
- Hormones, 655.
- Hour-glass stomach, from carcinoma, 176.  
   functional, 175.
- Hunger contractions, 179.  
   in depancreatized dogs, 179, 303.  
   in duodenal ulcer, 179.  
   in infectious diseases, 179.
- Huntington's chorea. See Chorea, Huntington's.
- Hydremia, 583.  
   from sodium chlorid retention, 451.  
   in edema, 584.  
   in fever, 497, 585.
- Hydrocephalus, 742.  
   as a cause of pituitary symptoms, 685.
- Hydrogen ion concentration of blood, in acidosis, 260, 261, 262.  
   as a regulation of respiration, 363.
- Hydronephrosis, 466.
- Hydrophobia, 727.
- Hyperacidity, gastric, 148.  
   causes of, 151.  
   effect on gastric digestion, 150.  
   in peptic ulcer, 171.  
   relation to gastric motility, 149, 159, 160.  
   symptoms of, 150.
- Hypercholesterolemia, 258.
- Hyperemia, 123.  
   active, 123.



- Hyperemia, from cold, 124.  
from inflammation, 124.  
passive, 123.
- Hyperesthesia, from diseases of peripheral nerves, 699.  
cutaneous, 706.
- Hypermetropia, 710.
- Hypersecretion, gastric, 149, 152.
- Hypertension, chronic, 109.  
anginal pains in, 113.  
arterial changes in, 111.  
cardiac hypertrophy in, 42, 113.  
Cheyne-Stokes respiration in, 369.  
extrasystoles in, 75.  
immediate cause of, 111.  
polycythemia associated with, 627.  
relation to renal disease, 110.
- transient, 107.  
dilatation of heart from, 6, 42, 113.  
effect on heart rate, 59.
- from asphyxia, 107.  
from cerebral compression, 107.  
from epinephrin, 689.  
from pituitary extract, 679.  
in angina pectoris, 103, 107.  
in anuria, 108, 428.  
in eclampsia, 108.  
in nephritis, acute, 108.
- Hypert thyroidism from administration of thyroid extract, 663.  
from administration of iodine preparations, 671.  
from administration of thyroxin, 670, 671.  
from nerve stimulation, 664.  
manifestations of, 665.  
relation to exophthalmic goiter, 666.
- Hypertrophy of heart. See Heart, hypertrophy of.
- Hypophysis. See Pituitary gland.
- Hypopituitarism, 680.
- Hypotension, 114.  
from hemorrhage, 116.  
in anaphylactic shock in dog, 559.  
in shock, 118.  
relation to heart rate, 59.  
syncope from, 114, 115.
- Hypotonia, in tabes, 732.
- Hypotonic salt solution, as a cause of hemolysis, 598.
- Hypoxanthin, 323.
- Hysteria, 703, 705, 706, 728.  
anuria in, 426.  
fever in, 500.
- Icterus. See Jaundice.
- Idioventricular rhythm, 66.
- Ileocecal incompetency, 197.  
as a cause of auto-intoxication, 207.
- Immunity, 521.  
acquired, 524.  
natural, 522.  
passive, 529.  
to tetanus, 534.
- Impulses, afferent, 696.  
efferent, 696.
- Inanition. See Starvation.
- Incubation period, in anaphylaxis, 555.  
in infections, 574.  
in serum disease, 574.
- Indican, 207.  
in blood, in nephritis, 441.
- Indol, 206.
- Indoxyl, 207.
- Infants, heat regulation in, 485.  
immunity to certain infections in, 529.  
lymphocytosis in, 638.  
tetany in, 675.
- Infection, acute and chronic, 513.  
alimentary glycosuria in, 278.  
anaphylaxis, relation to, 575.  
anemia from, 611.  
as a cause of intestinal paresis, 203.  
as a cause of gastric ulcer, 174.  
circulatory failure in, 121.  
conception of, 510.  
diminished resistance to, in diabetes, 304.  
effect on heart shadow, 16, 18.  
effect on hunger contractions of stomach, 179.  
effect on leukemia, 642.  
entry of, 514.  
eosinophils in, 637.  
general and local, 511.  
hydremia in, 585.  
in Hodgkin's disease, 645.  
intestinal, 204.  
in leukemia, 644.  
neutrophilic leukocytes in, 635.  
phenomena of, 572.  
pulse form in, 128, 129.  
relation to fever, 502, 503.  
relation to gall-stones, 353, 354.  
relation to thrombosis, 589.
- Infectious microorganisms, defensive properties of, 518.  
offensive properties of, 520.
- Inflammation, effect on local circulation, 124.
- Inoculation against smallpox, 526.
- Inorganic salts, 250.
- Insulin, 288.
- Intention tremors. See Tremors, intention.
- Intermittent claudication, 102.
- Internal organs, nervous disturbances of, 736.
- Internal secretion, glands of, 655.  
dysfunction, 658.  
hyperfunction, 657.  
hypofunction, 657.  
interrelationship of, 668.  
See also Thyroid, Parathyroid, Thymus, Pituitary gland, Pineal gland, Adrenals, Sex glands, Pancreas.
- Internal secretions, 655.  
evidences of, 656.
- Interpolated extrasystoles, 72.
- Interstitial cell of Leydig, 690.
- Intestinal auto-intoxication, 204.  
in achlorhydria, 154.

- Intestinal fermentative dyspepsia, 188.  
 Intestines as portal of infection, 516.  
 Intestines, large, motor functions of, 190.  
     in constipation, 196.  
     in diarrhea, 199.  
     in obstruction, 200.  
     small, functions of, 182.  
     motor disturbances of, 189.  
 Intoxication, bacterial, 510.  
 Iodin, content of thyroxin, 671.  
 Iron, metabolism, 251.  
     relation to anemia, 251, 617, 623.  
 Irritability of nerves, in tetany, 674.  
 Irritable heart, 665.  
 Islands of Langerhaus, relations to diabetes, 289.  
 Isohemolysins, 538, 600.  
     importance in blood transfusions, 629.  
     in cancer, 601.  
 Isometric contractions, 2.  
     of ventricles, 4.  
 Isotonic contractions, 2.  
     excursion of, 4.  
  
 Jacksonian epilepsy, 727.  
 Jaundice, 337.  
     cholesterolemia in, 258.  
     congenital hemolytic, pigment stones in, 353.  
     chronic hemolytic, 340, 618.  
     effect of, on blood coagulation, 594.  
     effect of, on heart rate, 60.  
     from acute hemolysis, 597.  
     hemolytic, 339.  
     in anemia, 340.  
     in blackwater fever, 602.  
     infectious, 340.  
     in the newborn, 342.  
     in organic liver disease, 342.  
     obstructive, 338.  
     relation to alimentary levulosuria and galactosuria, 281.  
     symptoms of, 343.  
  
 Ketonuria, 306.  
 Kidney functions, disturbances of, 416.  
 Kidney, movable, relation to hydronephrosis, 466, 468.  
 Kidneys, excretion of acids by, 260, 263.  
     in hemoglobinuria, 597.  
     impermeability to glucose, 272, 273, 274.  
     in phlorhizin poisoning, 274.  
 Kocher's sign, 667.  
  
 Lactic acid, 259.  
     in gastric carcinoma, 177.  
 Lactescence, 255.  
 Lactose, as a test of renal function, 434.  
 Large mononuclear cells, 632.  
     increased number of, 638.  
 Lead poisoning, anemia from, 611.  
     as a cause of gout, 326.  
     uric acid in blood in, 328.  
 Leads, for electrocardiograms, 54.  
 Lens, mechanism of, 711.  
  
 Leucin, 235.  
     in hepatic diseases, 245.  
 Leukemia, 640.  
     acute, 642.  
     aleukemic types, 642.  
     blood platelets in, 590.  
     chronic lymphatic, 642.  
     chronic myelogenous, 641.  
     effect on energy metabolism, 223.  
     etiology of, 643.  
     general considerations, 640.  
     uric acid in blood in, 328, 329.  
     x-ray treatment of, 642.  
 Leukocytes, 632.  
     classification of, 632.  
     properties of, 634.  
 Leukocytosis, 635.  
     eosinophilic, 636.  
     neutrophilic, 635.  
     pathogenesis of, 639.  
     pathological, 459, 644.  
     physiological, 635.  
     relation to chemotaxis, 549, 639.  
 Leukopenia, 639.  
     pathogenesis of, 554, 640.  
 Levulose, as a source of glycogen in diabetes, 299.  
 Levulosuria, alimentary, relation to hepatic disease, 280, 347.  
 Lipase, in blood, in hepatic disease, 350.  
     in lymphocytes, 634.  
     in stomach, 148.  
     relation to fat necrosis, 356.  
 Lipemia, 254.  
     alimentary, 255.  
     as a test for bile salts in intestines, 255.  
     in diabetes, 305.  
     in nephritis, 256.  
     in obstructive jaundice, 256.  
     lactescence in, 255.  
     lecithin in, 255.  
     pathological, 255.  
 Lipoids, essential for growth, 252.  
     in pernicious anemia, 616.  
     relation to hemolysis, 599.  
     some disturbances in, 255.  
 Lissaur, tract of, 700.  
 Liver, fatty degeneration of, 256.  
     formation of acetone bodies in, 310, 311.  
     formation of lactic acid in, 259.  
     formation of urea in, 245.  
     functions of, 338.  
     in anaphylaxis, 559.  
     in tricuspid insufficiency, 39.  
 Liver, acute yellow atrophy of, autolysis in, 244.  
     nitrogenous metabolism in, 348.  
     protein destruction in, 243.  
     tendency to hemorrhage in, 571.  
 Liver, cirrhosis of, amino acids in urine in, 349.  
     levulosuria and galactosuria in, 281.  
     urobilinuria in, 336.  
 Liver disease, functional tests for, alimentary galactosuria, 281, 347.

- Liver disease, functional tests for, alimentary levulosuria, 280, 347.  
 amino acids, increased in urine, 349.  
 fibrinogen in blood, 349, 594.  
 lipase in blood, 349.  
 phenoltetrachlorphthalein elimination, 350.  
 urobilinuria, 345, 346.
- Liver necrosis, in jaundice, 338.
- Lock-jaw, as an early manifestation of tetanus, 726.
- Lordosis, as a cause of albuminuria, 429.
- Lower neuron paralysis, 721.
- Lung volume, 362.  
 after exercise, 362.  
 in asthma, 389.  
 in emphysema, 392, 393, 394.  
 in glass blowers, 362.  
 in musicians, 362.
- Lutein cells, 690.
- Lymphatic leukemia, 642.
- Lymphocytes, 632.  
 increased number of, 638, 642.  
 in exophthalmic goiter, 668.
- Lymphocytosis, 638, 741.
- Lysin, 236.  
 necessary for body, 239.  
 relation to cadaverin, 246.
- Macrophage, 550.
- Malaria, immunity to, 523.  
 mode of transmission, 515.  
 relation to blackwater fever, 602.
- Mast cells, 633.
- Mediastinum, displacement of, in pleural effusions, 402.  
 in pneumothorax, 406.
- Medulla oblongata, puncture of, glycosuria from, 282.  
 polyuria from, 419.  
 sensory conduction in, 703.
- Medullation, of connector fibers, 734.
- Megaloblasts, 606.
- Megaloblastic anemias, 612.
- Megalocytes, 606.
- Melanin, 248.
- Melena neonatorum, prothrombin in, 595.
- Meniere's complex, 717, 718.
- Meningitis, Biot's breathing in, 369.  
 bradycardia in, 60.
- Meningitis, basilar, as a cause of hydrocephalus, 742.
- Mental changes, in exophthalmic goiter, 668.  
 in myxedema, 659.  
 in sporadic cretinism, 660.
- Mercuric chlorid, as a cause of nephritis, 433.
- Metabolic rate, increase following thyrotoxin injection, 671.
- Metabolism, basal, 221.  
 in diabetes, 297, 298.  
 in exophthalmic goiter, 665.  
 in fever, 223, 490, 495.  
 in leukemia, 223.
- Metabolism, in myxedema, 659.  
 in obesity, 226, 228.  
 in sporadic cretinism, 661.  
 in starvation, 231.  
 normal standards, 221, 228.  
 disturbances of, 215.  
 in starvation, 230.  
 in experimental tetany, 675.  
 See Diabetes, Gout, Obesity.
- energy, 215.  
 effect of chilliness upon, 219.  
 effect of exercise upon, 217.  
 effect of food upon, 219.  
 methods of study, 215.
- protein, 234.  
 amino acid requirements of body, 238.  
 excessive, 242.  
 in anaphylaxis, 575.  
 in exophthalmic goiter, 665.  
 in fever, 243, 493.  
 in hepatic disease, 347.  
 in starvation, 232.  
 nitrogenous equilibrium, 240.  
 protein building stones, 235.  
 protein requirements of body, 240.
- purin, 321.  
 increased, 325.  
 in gout, 325.  
 See Gout.
- Methemoglobin, relation to hemolysis, 603.
- Methemoglobineuria, respiration in, 383.
- Methylene blue, as a renal test, 444.
- Microphage, 550.
- Millard-Gubler syndrome, 723.
- Mitral insufficiency, 37.
- Mitral stenosis, 35.  
 effect of, on ventricular filling, electrocardiogram, 35.  
 heart murmurs in, 95.
- Moebius' sign, 667.
- Morphin, as a cause of Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 367.  
 as a cause of heart block in dogs, 63, 67.  
 as a cause of pylorospasm, 163.  
 effect on respiratory center, 364.
- Motility, gastric, 156.  
 after gastric enterostomy, 168.  
 in achlorhydria, 153, 160.  
 in pyloric obstruction, 163.  
 relation to hyperacidity, 149, 160.
- Motor aphasia. See Aphasia, motor.
- Motor cells in brain stem, 721.
- Motor insufficiency of the stomach, 163.
- Motor symptoms, irritative, from injury to upper and lower neurons, 725.
- Mountain sickness, 376.
- Mucous membrane, as portals of infection, 515.
- Mucus, as a respiratory protection, 408.
- Mucus, gastric, 148.  
 excessive secretion of, 156.  
 relation to ulcer, 171.
- Muscle action, analysis of, 720, 724.
- Mydriasis, as a result of cervical sympathetic stimulation, 734.



- Myeloblasts, 633.  
     in leukemia, 641, 643.  
 Myelocytes, 633.  
     in leukemia, 641, 643.  
     in leukocytosis, 640.  
 Myeloid leukemia, 641.  
 Myelomata, 644.  
 Myocardium, anatomical changes in, 16.  
     changes of, in hypertrophy, 21.  
     in infections, 121.  
 Myoclonia, spinal, significance of, 725.  
 Myogenic theory of heart action, 52.  
 Myopia, 710.  
 Myosis, as a result of stimulation of bulbo-sacral fibers in third nerve, 734.  
 Myxedema, 658.  
  
 Narcosis, as a cause of ketonuria, 307.  
 Nephritic edema. See Edema, nephritic.  
 Nephritis, acidosis in, 456.  
     cholesterolemia in, 256.  
     creatinin retention in, 441.  
     edema in, 450.  
     excretion of amylase in, 444.  
     excretion of dyes in, 444.  
     experimental, 433.  
         amylase excretion in, 444, 445.  
         diuresis in, 434.  
         functional tests in, 434.  
         glycosuria in, 275.  
         nitrogen retention in, 442, 445.  
         phenolsulphonaphthalein excretion in, 444.  
         types of, 433.  
     lipemia in, 256.  
     nitrogen retention in, 436.  
     prognosis of, 445.  
     sodium chlorid retention in, 445.  
     urea retention in, 441.  
     uremia in, 460.  
     uric acid retention in, 328, 441.  
 Nerve ganglia. See Ganglia, nerve.  
 Nerves, accelerator, 734.  
     effect of drugs upon, 736.  
     peripheral, 699.  
     systems of, 733, 734, 735.  
 Nervous system, alterations in functions of, 697.  
     autonomic, diagrammatic, 735.  
 Neuritis, 705.  
     optic, 711.  
     retrobulbar, 712.  
 Neurocirculatory asthenia, 665.  
 Neurogenic theory of heart action, 52.  
 Neuron paralysis, lower, 721,  
     upper, 722.  
     clonus in, 723.  
     exaggeration of tendon reflexes in, 722.  
     loss of muscular tone in, 723.  
 Neutrophils, 633.  
     increased number of, 635, 641.  
 Nicotin, effect on sympathetic connector fibers, 736.  
 Nitrites, as a cause of methemoglobin formation.  
  
 Nitrites, effect on pulse forms, 128.  
 Nitrogen equilibrium, 240.  
 Nitrogen excretion, in nephritis, 436.  
     in heart disease, 459.  
     in eclampsia, 460.  
 Nitrogen gas, as a cause of caisson disease, 381.  
 Nitrogen loss, in fever, 243.  
 Nitrogen metabolism. See Metabolism, nitrogen, Protein.  
 Nitrogen, non-protein, in blood, 438.  
     in anuria, 428.  
     in heart disease, 459.  
     in uremia, 461, 463.  
 Nitrogen retention, 240.  
     in renal disease, 436, 442.  
 Normoblasts, 606.  
 Nucleic acids, 321.  
 Nucleoproteins, catabolism of, 321.  
     in food, 324.  
 Nucleus cuneatus, 703.  
 Nucleus gracilis, 703.  
 Nystagmus, 718, 733.  
  
 Oatmeal treatment of diabetes, 293.  
 Obesity, 225.  
     basal metabolism in, 226.  
     caisson disease favored by, 381.  
     constitutional, 226.  
     heart, effect of, on, 230.  
     in castration, 227, 691.  
     in hypothyroidism, 660.  
     in pituitary disease, 680.  
     pathogenesis of, 225.  
 Obstruction, intestinal, 200.  
     pyloric, 163.  
     gastro-enterostomy in, 169.  
 Ochronosis, 248.  
 Olfactory hallucination. See Hallucination, olfactory.  
 Oligemia, 582.  
 Oliguria, 424.  
 Opisthotonos, 726.  
 Opium. See Morphin.  
 Oppenheim's sign, 723.  
 Oppler-Boas bacilli, 177.  
 Opsonic index, in diabetes, 304.  
 Opsonins, 552.  
     relation to virulence, 553.  
 Optic atrophy. See Atrophy, optic.  
 Optic chiasm. See Chiasm, optic.  
 Optic neuritis. See Neuritis, optic.  
 Optic tract, 710.  
 Organ of Corti. See Corti, organ of.  
 Ornithin, 236.  
     relation to putrescin, 247.  
 Orthopnea, 400.  
 Oxalates, effect on blood coagulation, 586.  
 Oxidation of digestive ferments, as a protection against digestion, 171.  
 Oxydase reaction in leukocytes, 634.  
     in acute leukemia, 643.  
 Oxygen, secretion of, by lungs, 378, 379.  
     in treatment of carbon monoxid poisoning, 383.

- Oxygen in blood, 365.  
in pneumothorax, 407.
- Oxygen want, as a cause of polycythemia, 628.  
at high altitudes, 377.  
as a stimulus to red-cell formation, 605.  
effect on respiration, 369, 370.
- Pacemaker of heart, 50.  
migration of, 61, 68, 69.
- Pain, cardiac, 101.  
gastric, 180.  
intestinal, 203.  
pleural, 400, 401.  
referred, 703.  
renal, 468.  
sensation of, 698.
- Pallor, 607.
- Palpitation, 100.
- Pancreas, acute hemorrhagic necrosis of, 356.  
excision of, as a cause of glycosuria, 287.  
effect of excluding juice from intestines, 184.  
in diabetes, 288.  
relation to fat necrosis, 355.
- Paralysis agitans, syndrome of, 729.
- Paralysis, mixed types of, 723.
- Paralysis, neuron, lower and upper. See Neuron, lower, paralysis of.
- Parasites, blood sucking, diseases transmitted by, 515.
- Parathyroids, 673.  
effect of excision, 674.  
relation to tetany, 674, 675.
- Paresis, intestinal, 202.
- Paroxysmal fibrillation, 83.
- Paroxysmal tachycardia, 76.  
effect on heart shadow, 10.
- Paroxysms, single and recurrent, 84.
- Parturition, tetany after, 675.
- Pellagra, 254.
- Pentosuria, 286.
- Pepsin, 148.
- Peptic ulcer. See Ulcer, peptic.
- Peptids, 237.
- Periodic breathing, 367.  
See Cheyne-Stokes respiration.
- Peristalsis, gastric, 158, 160.  
in duodenal ulcer, 175.  
in pyloric obstruction, 164.  
in bronchial muscles, 409.  
intestinal, 190, 191, 192.  
after abdominal operations, 203.  
in diarrhea, 203.  
in obstruction, 203.  
relation to intestinal pain, 204.
- Peritoneal adhesions, constipation from, 194.  
pain from, 181, 204.  
pyloric obstruction from, 163.
- Peritoneum, sensitiveness of, 181.
- Peritonitis, circulatory failure in, 121, 122.  
intestinal pain in, 204.  
intestinal paresis in, 203.
- Permanent irregularity, 83.  
See Auricular fibrillation.
- Pernicious anemia. -See Anemia, pernicious
- Phagocytosis, 547, 550.  
opsonins in, 552.  
See Opsonins.  
relation to immunity, 551.  
relation to virulence, 553.  
resistance to, by virulent bacteria, 518.
- Phenolsulphonaphthalein excretion, as a test of renal function, 444.  
in eclampsia, 460.  
in heart disease, 459.  
relation to non-protein nitrogen in blood, 444, 459.  
test for cause of hydrocephalus, 742.
- Phenoltetrachlorophthalein excretion, as a test of liver disease, 350.
- Phenylalanin, 236.  
relation to alcapton, 247.
- Phlorhizin poisoning, basal metabolism in, 223.
- Phlorhizin poisoning, D: N ratio in, 295.  
glycemia in, 274.  
glycogen in, 274.  
glycosuria in, 273.  
protein metabolism in, 275.
- Phosphorus poisoning, alimentary galactosuria in, 281.  
autolysis in, 244.  
basal metabolism in, 223.  
fatty degeneration in, 256, 257.  
fibrinogen in, 594.  
ketonuria in, 307.  
nitrogenous metabolism in, 347, 348.  
polycythemia in, 626, 628.  
protein destruction in, 243.
- Pigmentation from melanin, 248.  
in Addison's disease, 249, 662.  
in exophthalmic goiter, 668.  
in hemolytic conditions, 597.  
in pernicious anemia, 614.  
See Melanin, Ochronosis.
- Pilocarpin, effect on sweat glands, 736.
- Pineal gland, 684.
- Pituitary extracts, 679.  
acromegaly in, 682.  
diabetes insipidus in, 423.  
Fröhlich's syndrome in, 680.  
glycosuria in, 284.  
growth in, 680, 682.  
obesity in, 227, 681.  
polyuria in, 419.  
sexual infantilism in, 680.
- Plague, mode of infection with, 514, 515.
- Plasma, antibacterial substance in, 540.  
See also Hydremia, Nitrogen, non-protein, Uric acid.
- Platelets, blood, in coagulation, 586.  
in hemophilia, 592, 594.  
in hemorrhagic diseases, 590.  
in thrombosis, 588.
- Plethora, 582.  
at high altitudes, 626.  
effect on circulation, 44.

- Plethora, in anemia, 623.  
     in chlorosis, 623.  
     in polycythemia, 625.  
 Plethora, hydremic, 585.  
 Pleura, diseases of, 400.  
     circulatory collapse in, 404.  
     pain in, 400.  
     See also Pleuritic effusions, Pneumo-  
     thorax.  
 Pleuritic effusions, 402.  
     mediastinal displacement in, 402.  
     pressure in, 402.  
 Pneumonia, agglutination tests for pneu-  
     mocoecus in, 543.  
     autolysis in, 244.  
     mode of infection in, 517.  
     opsonins in, 553.  
     sodium chlorid retention in, 497.  
     uric acid in, 330.  
     water retention in, 497.  
 Pneumothorax, 404.  
     blood gases in, 407.  
     closed, 405.  
     mediastinum in, 406.  
     open, 404.  
     respiration in, 407.  
     short circuiting of blood stream in, 386.  
     valvular, 405.  
 Poikilothermic animals, 477.  
 Pollen, sensitiveness to, 568.  
 Poliomyelitis, acute, anterior, lymphocy-  
     tosis in, 741.  
 Polycythemia, 624.  
     classification of, 624.  
     cryptogenic, 626.  
     pathogenesis of, 627.  
     symptomatic, 625.  
 Polydipsia, in diabetes insipidus, 420.  
 Polyphagia, in diabetes, 303.  
 Polyuria, 417.  
     after fever, 418, 496.  
     from drinking liquids, 418.  
     from drugs, 418.  
     from lesions of medulla oblongata, 419.  
     in diabetes mellitus, 303.  
     in pituitary disease, 419.  
     in removal of exudates, 418.  
 Portals of entry for infections, 514.  
 Positivè venous pulse. See Pulse, venous,  
     positive.  
 Posture, effect on heart shadow, 10.  
     effect on lung volume, 362.  
     effect on metabolism, 220, 221.  
 Potassium chlorate, as a cause of methemoglobin formation, 603.  
 Potassium iodid, as a test of renal func-  
     tion, 434.  
 Precipitins, 546.  
     specificity of, 546.  
     theory of, 546.  
     uses of, 546.  
 Pregnancy, alimentary glycosuria in, 276.  
     anemia, megaloblastic, in, 615.  
     glycosuria after pancreatectomy, dim-  
     inished in later stages of, 288.  
     plethora in, 582.  
 Pregnancy, renal glycosuria in, 276.  
     tetany in, 675.  
 Pressure, arterial, 104.  
     during decompensation of heart, 49.  
     during exercise, 22.  
     effect on ventricular volume, 7, 42.  
     epinephrin, effect upon, 686.  
     factors controlling, 105.  
     in anaphylactic shock of dog, 557.  
     in aortic insufficiency, 33.  
     in Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 373.  
     mean, 104, 122.  
     pituitary extracts, effect upon, 679.  
     relation to albuminuria, 430.  
     relation to renal secretion, 416.  
     See Hypertension, Hypotension.  
     capillary, 106.  
     pleural, in effusions, 402.  
     in pneumothorax, 404.  
     pulse, 122.  
     in aortic insufficiency, 33, 123.  
     in exercise, 22.  
     in orthostatic albuminuria, 430.  
     relation to secretion of urine, 416.  
     veno, control, 10.  
     effect on cardiac output, 7, 8.  
     in shock, 120.  
 Protein, absorption in pancreatic disease,  
     184.  
     as a source of acetone bodies, 310.  
     as a source of sugar, 294.  
     composition of, 235.  
     destruction of, excessive, 242.  
     digestion in carcinoma of stomach, 177.  
     effect on energy metabolism, 221.  
     fever caused by parental injections of,  
     501.  
     number of, 237.  
     requirements, 240.  
     starvation, 242.  
     toxic products derived from clearance of,  
     206, 207, 561.  
 Proteoses, as a cause of intoxication in  
     intestinal obstruction, 202.  
 Prothrombin, 586, 587.  
     deficiency of, 595.  
     in hemophilia, 592.  
     in melena neonatorum, 595.  
 Protopathic sensation. See Sensation,  
     protopathic.  
 Ptomaines, 520.  
 Puerperium, anemia in, 615.  
     tetany in, 675.  
 Pulmonary congestion, in aortic disease,  
     33.  
     in mitral stenosis, 35.  
 Pulmonary edema, 99.  
 Pulmonic second sound, accentuation of,  
     causes of, 90.  
     in mitral stenosis, 36.  
 Pulse, arterial, form of, 125.  
     effect of nitroglycerin upon, 128.  
     in arm, 127.  
     in aortic insufficiency, 128.  
     in fever, 128.  
     recorders for, 125.



- Pulse, collapsing, 128.  
sustained, 127.  
Pulse deficit, 83.  
Pulse pressure. See Pressure, pulse.  
Pulse rate. See Heart rate.  
Pulse recorders, 125.  
Pulse, venous, normal, 53.  
in arrhythmias, 61.  
See also Arrhythmias.  
Pulse, venous, positive, when auricles and ventricles contract simultaneously, 69, 77.  
in auricular fibrillation, 80.  
in paroxysmal tachycardia, 76.  
in tricuspid insufficiency, 39.  
Pulsus alternans, 88.  
electrocardiogram, 89.  
Pulsus bigeminus, electrocardiograms, 74.  
Pulsus tardus, in aortic stenosis, 32.  
Purin bodies, 321.  
metabolism of. See Metabolism, purin, Gout.  
Purkinje fibers, 51.  
Purpura hemorrhagica, 590.  
causes of eruption, 591.  
Putrescin, 247.  
Pyemia, 512.  
Pylorus, control of, 158.  
gastro-enterostomy in stenosis of, 169.  
spasm of, 163.  
stenosis of, 163.  
Pylorospasm, 163.  
Pyrosis, 144.  
Quinin, relation to blackwater fever, 602.  
Rabbit, anaphylaxis in, 556.  
Rabies virus, variations in virulence of, 518.  
Rami communicantes, grey, 734.  
white, 734.  
Red blood corpuscles, granular forms, 605, 611.  
nucleated, 604, 606.  
rate of destruction of, 595.  
after splenectomy, 622.  
in chronic hemolytic jaundice, 618.  
in pernicious anemia, 614.  
regeneration of, 604.  
after hemorrhage, 610.  
stimulus to, 605.  
types of, 606.  
Referred pain. See Pain, referred.  
Reflexes, 737.  
tendon. See Tendon, reflexes.  
Refractive index of blood serum, as a measure of hydremia, 583.  
Refractory period of heart muscle, 50.  
Regurgitation, from esophageal obstruction, 141.  
Regurgitation from insufficiency of cardia, 144.  
Renal threshold for glucose excretion, in diabetes, 291.  
classification based on, 273.  
in experimental nephritis, 275.  
Renal threshold for glucose excretion, in geese, 291.  
in phlorhizin poisoning, 274.  
in pregnancy, 276.  
normal, 272, 273.  
Renal threshold for hemoglobin excretion, normal, 596.  
in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, 601.  
Rennin, 148.  
Repletion, sense of, 178.  
Residual air in lungs, 362.  
in cardiac dyspnea, 362.  
in emphysema, 391, 392, 393.  
Respiration, pathology of, 360.  
at high altitudes, 376.  
in acid intoxication, 375.  
in anemia, 383.  
in bronchial asthma, 389.  
in caisson disease, 380.  
in carbon monoxid poisoning, 377.  
in cardiac disease, 385.  
in pulmonary emphysema, 391.  
Respiratory arrhythmia, 57.  
Respiratory center, control of, 363.  
irritability of, in Cheyne-Stokes respiration, 371.  
irritation of, 364.  
Respiratory irregularity, electrocardiograms, 61, 63.  
Respiratory passages as portals of infection, 517.  
Respiratory protective mechanisms, 408.  
Respiratory quotient, 216.  
in diabetes, 300, 302.  
Retina, appearance of, in lipemia, 255.  
in polycythemia, 626.  
Retrobulbar neuritis. See Neuritis, retrobulbar.  
Retrograde extrasystoles, 72.  
Rhythm, electrocardiogram of, 69.  
Rice, polished, relation to beriberi, 252.  
Ricin, 531.  
transference of immunity to, from mother to infant, 530.  
Right heart, valvular lesions of, 38.  
Rinne's test, 715.  
Rolando, fissure of. See Fissure of Rolando.  
Romberg sign, 731.  
Salicylates, as a cause of cylindruria, 432.  
Salt fever, 501.  
Saponin, hemolysis, 599.  
as a cause of experimental aplastic anemia, 618.  
Schick reaction for diphtheria antitoxin, 525.  
Scurvy, 253.  
relation to vitamin C, 253.  
Sea-sickness, due to excessive stimulation of vestibular apparatus, 718.  
Secretion, gastric. See Gastric juice.  
Segmentation, rhythmic, of intestines, 189.  
Segments, of body, arrangement of, 701.  
Sensation, 696, 697.  
disturbances of, 697.

- Sensation, disturbances of, classification  
     of, 697.  
     causes of, 697.  
     losses of, in hysteria, 705.
- Sensation, cutaneous, 698.  
     epicritic, 699.  
     points of, 698.  
         cold  
         heat  
         pain  
         touch.  
     protopathic, 699.
- Sensations, common, 698.  
     disturbances of, 698.  
     after division of nerves, 698.
- Sensibility, deep, diminished, 699.  
     gastric, 178.  
     intestinal, 203.  
     peritoneal, 181.  
     pleural, 401.  
     superficial, diminished, 698.
- Sensory conduction, paths of, in medulla,  
     703.  
     in spinal cord, 700.
- Septicemia, 512.
- Septum ventriculorum, open, 386.
- Sera, hemolysis by foreign, 536, 599, 629.
- Serin, 237.
- Serum sickness, 565.
- Serum fast bacteria, 540, 545, 553.
- Serozyme, 586.
- Sex glands, diseases of, 690.
- Sexual infantilism, in pituitary disease,  
     680.  
     in sporadic cretinism, 661.
- Sexual precocity, in adrenal tumors, 690.
- in pineal tumors, 685.
- Shock, experimental, by injection of his-  
     tamin, 120.  
     cause of circulatory failure in, 119.  
     low blood pressure in, due to insufficient  
         venous blood, 119.  
     surgical and traumatic, 118.
- Short circuiting of pulmonary circulation,  
     386.
- Side-chain theory, 533, 537, 545.
- Sino-auricular block, 63.
- Sinus arrhythmias, 61.
- Sinus bradycardia, 60.
- Sinus node, 50.
- Sinus tachycardia, 58.
- Skatol, 207.
- Skin, after castration, 690.  
     in exophthalmic goiter, 667.  
     infections through, 514.  
     in myxedema, 659.  
     radicular innervation of, 702.  
     urticaria from application of histamin,  
         561.
- Sleep, as a cause of Cheyne-Stokes res-  
     piration, 367.  
     effect on respiratory center, 364.  
     metabolism during, 221.
- Smell, cortical center of. See Cortical  
     center of smell.  
     disturbances of, 706.
- Snake venom, as a cause of nephritis, 433.  
     as a hemolytic agent, 599.  
     relation to toxins, 531.
- Sodium bicarbonate, as a cause of edema,  
     453.  
     effect of administration of. See Alkali  
         tolerance.
- Sodium chlorid, requirements of body for,  
     250.  
     in starvation, 232.
- Sodium chlorid, in blood, in nephritic  
     edema, 47.  
     in pneumonia, 497.
- Sodium chlorid retention, 445.  
     in eclampsia, 460.  
     in fever, 496.  
     in heart disease, 459.  
     in nephritis, 447, 454.  
     in pneumonia, 497.  
     relation to edema, 450, 453.  
     relation to hydremia, 451, 583.
- Spasm, bronchial, 736.  
     pyloric, 163.
- Spastic constipation, 189.
- Specificity of biological reactions, agglu-  
     tinins, 544.  
     anaphylaxis, 555.  
     cytolysins, 539.  
     infections, 576.  
     precipitins, 546.
- Speech, disturbances of, caused by lesions  
     of Broca's convolution, 724.
- Spinal cord section, effect on body tem-  
     perature, 486.
- Spinal convulsions. See Convulsions,  
     spinal.
- Spinal motor cells, paths of influence to,  
     719.
- Spinthalmic tract. See Tract, spino-  
     thalmic.
- Spirals of Curschmann, 390.
- Splanchnic nerves, effect on liver glycogen,  
     282.  
     relation to polyuria, 419.
- Spleen, in hemolysis, 597.  
     in hemolytic jaundice, 620.  
     relation to anemia, 620.
- Splenectomy, effect of, 620.  
     on Banti's disease, 621.  
     upon jaundice after toluylendiamin,  
         621.  
     in normal animals, 620.  
     on pathological hemolysis, 622.
- Splenic anemia, 621.
- Starvation, acidosis in, 306.  
     complete, 230.  
     effect on diabetic glycosuria, 292.  
     partial, 233.  
     relation to lipemia, 254, 255.
- Stasis, intestinal, in ascending colon, 196.  
     in transverse colon, 196.  
     in ileum, 197.
- Status lymphaticus, 678.
- Stenosis of aortic valves, 31.
- Stenosis of mitral valve, 35.

- Stenosis of respiratory passages, effect on circulation, 44.
- Stenosis of upper air passages, 388.  
effect on lung volume, 362.
- Stimulation, electrical, points of on cortex (diagram), 721.
- Stokes-Adams' syndrome, 115.
- Stomach, carcinoma of, 176.  
digestion in, 176.  
gastric form in, 176.  
gastric motility in, 176.  
motor disturbances of, 156.  
in gastric atony, 161.  
in pyloric obstruction, 160.  
in secretory disturbances, 160.  
in ulcer, 173, 175.  
secretion of. See Gastric juice.  
secretory disturbances of, 146.  
See also Gastric juice, Hyperacidity, Achlorhydria.
- ulcer of, 170.  
from infections, 174.  
from vascular disease, 172.  
motor activities in, 175.  
nervous causes of, 173.  
pathogenesis of, 170.  
relation to gastric secretion, 171.
- Stomatitis, in pernicious anemia, 613.
- Strychnin poisoning, cause of convulsions in, 726.
- Stupor, effect on basal metabolism, 225.
- Substantia genitosa, 700.
- Succus entericus, 182.
- Sudden death, cardiac, 88.
- Sunstroke, 482.  
obesity as a predisposing factor, 229.
- Sweat glands, effect of epinephrin on, 736.  
effect of pilocarpin on, 736.
- Sylvian fissure, 716.
- Sympathetic nerves, effect of stimulation of on heart, 734.
- Sympathetic nervous system, 733.
- Syncope, 114.
- Synergism, muscular, 719.  
loss of in cerebellar ataxia, 732.
- Syphilis, as a cause of diabetes insipidus, 111.  
as a cause of paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, 602.  
resistance of red cells to saponin hemolysis in, 599.  
Wassermann reaction in, 542.
- Syringomyelia, as a cause of alterations in taste, 709.
- Systolic output during exercise, 23.  
factors governing, 7.  
in aortic insufficiency, 33, 34.  
in aortic stenosis, 32.
- Tabes dorsalis, as a result of degeneration of posterior columns, 700.
- Tachycardia, paroxysmal, 76.  
pathogenesis of, 78.  
relation to auricular fibrillation, 84.  
symptoms of, 77.
- Tachycardia, sinus, 58.  
during exercise, 58.  
from thyroid stimulation, 664.  
in exophthalmic goiter, 59, 667.  
in fever, 59.  
in low blood pressure, 58.
- Tartrates, as a cause of nephritis, 433.
- Taste, 708.  
alteration in, due to syringomyelia, 709.  
due to multiple sclerosis, 709.  
due to tabes dorsalis, 709.  
disturbances of, 707.
- Taste buds, distribution of, 707.
- Taurin, 337.
- Taurocholic acid, 337.
- Tawara's node, 51.
- Temperature, body, normal, in birds, 477.  
as a factor in immunity, 522, 535.  
in man, 477. See Fever.
- Temperature regulation of body, 477, 479.  
physical and chemical, 484.  
in fever, 491, 492.
- Tendon reflexes, exaggerated in upper neuron paralysis, 722.  
loss of in tabes dorsalis, 731.
- Tetanus, cause of convulsions in, 726.  
lock-jaw in. See Lock-jaw.  
mode of infection, 515.  
tonicity of muscles in, 726.  
toxin, 530.  
disappearance from blood, 534.
- Tetany, 674.  
etiology of, in man, 675.  
experimental, 674.  
symptoms of, 674.
- Thalmus, lesions of, 703.
- Thirst from salt retention, 452.  
in diabetes mellitus, 303.
- Thrombin, 586, 587.  
effect of injections of, on blood coagulation, 590.
- Thrombogen, 586, 587.
- Thrombokinase, 586, 587.  
as a cause of intravascular clotting, 589, 590.  
in hemophilia, 592.
- Thromboplastin, 586, 587.
- Thrombosis, 587.  
septic, relation to septicemia, 512.
- Thymic asthma, 677.
- Thymus, 677.
- Thyroid gland, disturbances of, 658.  
effect on metabolism, 223, 665.  
effect on pulse rate, 59, 667.  
exophthalmic goiter, 665.  
hyperthyroidism, 663.  
hypothyroidism, 658, 660.  
myxedema, 658.  
sporadic cretinism, 660.
- Thyroid substance, acetonitril test for, 669.  
active principle in, 671.  
effect on metabolism, 223, 661, 664.  
iodin in, 671.  
susceptibility to, 663.
- Thyrotxin, 671.



- Thyroxin, 671.  
 action due to imino groups, 671.  
 relation to hyperthyroidism, 670.
- Toluylendiamin, as a cause of anemia and jaundice, 621.  
 as a cause of polycythemia, 626.
- Tone, gastric, 158.  
 in acute dilatation, 166.  
 muscular, increased in upper neuron paralysis, 723.  
 not lost in upper neuron paralysis, 723.  
 venous, in shock, 119.
- Tone of heart muscle, 9.  
 relation to dilatation, 18.
- Tonsils, as portals of infection, 516.
- Tophus, gouty, 329.
- Touch sensation. See Sensation, touch.
- Toxic adenoma, 664.
- Toxic destruction of proteins, in exophthalmic goiter, 243.  
 in fever, 243, 494.  
 in phosphorus, 243.
- Toxic substances, disturbance of function of internal organs by, 737.
- Toxin, 520, 530, 573.  
 diphtheria, effect on blood platelets, 590.
- Toxon, 532.
- Tract, spinothalmic, 700.
- Tract of Lissaur. See Lissaur, tract of.
- Transfusion of blood, 629.  
 beneficial results of, 631.  
 dangers of, 629.
- Transitional cells, 633.  
 increased number of, 638.
- Transplantation, of pancreas, 288.  
 of parathyroids, 677.  
 of pituitary, 419.  
 of testes, 655.  
 of thyroid, 661.
- Tremors, intention, 733.
- Trichiniasis, eosinophilia in, 636.
- Triacuspid insufficiency, 39.  
 relative, 39.  
 safety valve action of, 41.
- Trousseau's sign, 674.
- Trout, production and cure of goiter in, 672.
- Trypanosomes, resistant strains of, 519.
- Tryptophan, 207, 236.  
 necessary for body, 239.
- Tuberculin reaction, 571.
- Tuberculosis, mode of infection, 516, 517.  
 susceptibility of negroes to, 523.
- Twitchings, fibrillary. See Fibrillary twitchings.
- Typhoid fever, agglutination test in, 543.  
 immunity to, as shown by skin test, 526.  
 mode of infection, 517.  
 pulse form in, 128.  
 pulse rate in, 60.  
 relation to gall-stones, 353.  
 thrombosis in, 589.  
 vaccination against, 528.
- Tyrosin, 236.
- Tyrosin, in liver disease, 245.  
 relation to alcapton, 247.
- Tyrosinase, 248.
- Ulcer, duodenal, hunger pain in, 179.  
 peptic, hyperacidity in, 171.  
 motor activities of stomach in, 174.  
 nervous theories as to cause of, 173.  
 pathogenesis of, 170.  
 vascular disease in, 172.
- Uncinate fits. See Fits, uncinat.
- Uncinate gyrus. See Gyrus, uncinatus.
- Upper neuron paralysis, 722.
- Uranium salts, as a cause of experimental nephritis, 433.
- Urate deposits, 329.
- Urea, as a test of renal function, 436.  
 formation of, 245.  
 in blood, 438, 441.  
 in hepatic disease, 348.  
 toxic effects of, 461.  
 in uremia, 461.  
 relation to diamino acids, 236.
- Uremia, 460.  
 blood pressure in, 108.
- Uric acid, 323.  
 cinchophen, effect upon excretion of, 330.  
 endogenous, 324.  
 in gout, 326.  
 exogenous, 324.  
 in gout, 327.  
 in blood, in nephritis, 328, 441.  
 relation to purin bodies, 323.
- Urobilin, formation of, 336.  
 from hemolysis, 346.  
 in hepatic disease, 346.  
 in obstructive jaundice, 339.
- Urobilin excretion, after excision of spleen, 622.  
 as a measure of red cell destruction, 595.  
 in blackwater fever, 602.  
 in chlorosis, 623.  
 in hemolysis, 597.  
 in pernicious anemia, 614.  
 in polycythemia, 627.
- Uterus, anaphylactic contractions of, 560.  
 effect of epinephrin upon, 686.  
 effect of pituitary extracts upon, 679.  
 involution of, autolysis in, 244.
- Vaccination against smallpox, 521.  
 against typhoid fever, 528.  
 with attenuated cultures, 527.  
 with dead cultures, 528.
- Vagotonia, 737.
- Vagus, action of bile upon, 342.  
 bradycardias, 60.  
 differences between right and left, in  
 effect upon heart, 67.  
 effect upon conduction in heart, 56, 67.  
 effect upon esophagus, 142.  
 effect upon fundamental properties of heart muscle, 52.  
 effect upon idioventricular rate, 66.  
 effect upon liver glycogen, 282.

- Vagus, effect upon ventricular volume, 9.  
  relation to bronchial spasm, 390.  
  relation to cough, 410.  
  relation to gastric secretion, 139.  
  relation to peptic ulcer, 173.  
  relation to pulmonary ventilation, 363.  
Valin, 235.  
Valvular lesions, 30.  
  combinations of, 41.  
Vascular center, in shock, 118.  
  in infectious diseases, 120.  
Vascular disease. See Arteriosclerosis.  
Vascular reactions, in experimental nephritis, 433.  
  relation to diuresis, 434.  
Vascular spasm, general, in chronic hypertension, 112.  
  as a cause of transient hypertension, 42, 107, 108.  
  as a cause of paroxysmal dyspnea, 108.  
  local, from cold, 124.  
  in extremities in paroxysmal hemoglobinuria, 601.  
  in Raynaud's disease, 125.  
  of central artery of retina in transient blindness, 125.  
  of cerebral arteries, 114, 125.  
  of coronary arteries, 114, 125.  
  relation to chronic arterial hypertension, 114.  
Vegetative nervous system, 735.  
Venom, snake. See Snake venom.  
Venous pressure. See Pressure, venous.  
Venous pulse. See Pulse, venous.  
Ventilation of lungs, 360.  
  at high altitudes, 378, 379.  
  in asthma, 389, 399.  
  in cardiac dyspnea, 396.  
  in pneumothorax, 407.  
  regulation of, 363.  
Ventricle, diastolic filling of, two views, 9.  
  left, in aortic insufficiency, 33.  
  in chronic hypertension, 113.  
  in mitral insufficiency, 37.  
  in mitral stenosis, 37.  
  volume of, diastolic, factors governing, 5.  
    effect of arterial pressure upon, 6, 18, 42.  
    effect of vagus upon, 9.  
    effect of venous inflow upon, 7.  
  relation to intraventricular pressure in frog's heart, 5.  
Ventricle, volume of systolic, factors governing, 6.  
  See also Heart shadow.  
Ventricular complex, in electrocardiogram, 54.  
  in branch bundle block, 56, 67.  
  in complete heart block, 66.  
  in ventricular extrasystoles, 71.  
  in ventricular hypertrophy, 55.  
Ventricular fibrillation, 87.  
Ventricular outputs, 2.  
Ventricular systole, incompleteness of, 11.  
Ventricular tone and venous pressure, 10.  
Ventricular volume, vagus influence upon, 9.  
  See also Dilatation, cardiac.  
Vertigo, aural, 717.  
Vicious circle, after gastro-enterostomy, 169.  
Virulence, 518.  
  relation to phagocytosis, 553.  
Virulin, 554.  
Visceral nervous system, 733.  
Vision, disturbances of, 709.  
Vital capacity of lungs, 362.  
  in cardiac dyspnea, 396.  
  in emphysema, 391.  
Vital red, method of determining blood volume by, 581.  
Vitamins, A, B, and C, 251, 252, 253.  
Vomiting, 166, 737.  
  in intestinal obstruction, 201.  
  ketonuria in periodic, 307.  
Wassermann reaction, 542.  
Water, injections, as a cause of fever, 501.  
  retention in nephritis, 453.  
  retention in fever, 496.  
Wave of excitation, 51.  
Weber's syndrome, 723.  
Wilson's lenticular degeneration, 730.  
Wind instruments, playing of, effect on lung volume, 362.  
Work, of heart, effect of exercise on, 17, 22, 25.  
Xanthin, 323.  
Xanthomata, relation to cholesterol, 305.  
  in jaundice, 344.  
  multiple, tuberosus, associated with hypercholesterolemia, 258.  
X-ray, as a cause of leukopenia, 640.  
  effect on excretion of uric acid, 330.  
  in treatment of leukemia, 642.















QZ 4 H612p 1923

12520890R



NLM 05087634 6

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE